GENERAL HISTORY OF AFRICA · III

Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century
UNESCO General History of Africa

Volume I  Methodology and African Prehistory  
( Editor J. Ki-Zerbo )

Volume II  Ancient Civilizations of Africa  
( Editor G. Mokhtar )

Volume III  Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century  
( Editor M. El Fasi )  
( Assistant Editor I. Hrbek )

Volume IV  Africa from the Twelfth to the Sixteenth Century  
( Editor D. T. Niane )

Volume V  Africa from the Sixteenth to the Eighteenth Century  
( Editor B. A. Ogot )

Volume VI  Africa in the Nineteenth Century until the 1880s  
( Editor J. F. A. Ajayi )

Volume VII  Africa under Colonial Domination, 1880–1935  
( Editor A. A. Boahen )

Volume VIII  Africa since 1935  
( Editor A. A. Mazrui )  
( Assistant Editor C. Wondji )
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

EDITOR M. ELFASI
ASSISTANT EDITOR I. HRBEK
Contents

Note on chronology vii
List of figures ix
List of plates xi
Acknowledgements for plates xv
Preface xvii
AMADOU-MAHTAR M'BOW, Former Director-General of Unesco
Description of the Project xxiii
B. A. OGOT, Former President of the International Scientific Committee for the Drafting of a General History of Africa

1 Africa in the context of world history 1
   I. HRBEK

2 The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire 31
   M. EL FASI and I. HRBEK

3 Stages in the development of Islam and its dissemination in Africa 56
   M. EL FASI and I. HRBEK

4 Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century 92
   Z. DRAMANI-ISSIFOU

5 The peoples of the Sudan: population movements 119
   F. DE MEDEIROS

6 The Bantu-speaking peoples and their expansion 140
   S. LWANGA-LUNYIIGO and J. VANSINA

7 Egypt from the Arab conquest until the end of the Fāṭimid state (1171) 163
   T. BIANQUIS

8 Christian Nubia at the height of its civilization 194
   S. JAKOBIELSKI

9 The conquest of North Africa and Berber resistance 224
   H. MONÈS

10 The independence of the Maghrib 246
   M. TALBI
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and south</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T. LEWICKI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>The emergence of the Fāṭimids</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I. HRBEK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>The Almoravids</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I. HRBEK and J. DEVISSE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Trade and trade routes in West Africa</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>J. DEVISSE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>The Chad region as a crossroads</td>
<td>436</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D. LANGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>The Guinea zone: general situation</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thurstan SHAW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>The Guinean belt: the peoples between Mount Cameroon and the</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ivory Coast*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B. W. ANDAH in collaboration with J. ANQUANDAH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>The peoples of Upper Guinea (between the Ivory Coast and the</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Casamance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B. W. ANDAH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>The Horn of Africa</td>
<td>559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T. T. MEKOURIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Ethiopia's relations with the Muslim world</td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E. CERULLI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>The East African coast and the Comoro Islands</td>
<td>586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F. T. MASAO and H. W. MUTORO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>The East African interior</td>
<td>616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C. EHRET</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Central Africa to the north of the Zambezi</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D. W. PHILLIPSON</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Southern Africa to the south of the Zambezi</td>
<td>664</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T. N. HUFFMAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Madagascar</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B. DOMENICHINI-RAMIARANANANA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>The African diaspora in Asia</td>
<td>704</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Y. TALIB based on a contribution by F. Samir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Relations between the different regions of Africa</td>
<td>734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A. BATHILLY with the collaboration of C. MEILLASSOUX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

28 Africa from the seventh to the eleventh century:
five formative centuries 750
J. DEVISSE and J. VANSINA

Members of the International Scientific Committee for the drafting of a
General History of Africa 794
Biographies of Authors 796
Bibliography 799
Index 848

*Note: The official designation of Côte d'Ivoire is Côte d'Ivoire in all languages but with
respect to the English practice, Ivory Coast will be found in this book.

---

Note on chronology

It has been agreed to adopt the following method for writing dates. With
regard to prehistory, dates may be written in two different ways.

One way is by reference to the present era, that is, dates BP (before pre-
sent), the reference year being +1950; all dates are negative in relation to
+1950.

The other way is by reference to the beginning of the Christian era.
Dates are represented in relation to the Christian era by a simple + or −
sign before the date. When referring to centuries, the terms BC and AD are
replaced by ‘before the Christian era’ and ‘of the Christian era’.

Some examples are as follows:

(i) 2300 BP = −350
(ii) 2900 BC = −2900
AD 1800 = +1800
(iii) 5th century BC = 5th century before the Christian era
3rd century AD = 3rd century of the Christian era
List of figures

1.1 The Old World, c. 230/845 15
2.1 The expansion of the Islamic state 50
3.1 The Islamized areas of Africa by c. 1100 58
3.2 The Islamized areas of Africa by c. 1500 77
5.1 West Africa in the eleventh century 124
6.1 Bantu expansion 144
6.2 Early Iron Age pottery (Urewe) from Rurembo, Rwanda 153
6.3 Early Iron Age pottery (Urewe) from Kabuye, Rwanda 153
6.4(a)–(c) Profiles of reconstituted Early Iron Age furnaces in the Butare area, Rwanda 158
7.1 Arab Egypt 167
8.1 Christian Nubia 197
8.2 The mosque building in Old Dongola 201
8.3 Plan of the Christian site of Debevre West 205
8.4 Plan of Kasr al-Wizz, a Nubian monastic complex 205
8.5 The Second Period in the development of Nubian church architecture 218
8.6 The Third Period in the development of Nubian church architecture 220
9.1 The Arab conquest of the Maghrib 230
11.1 The Sahara 279
12.1 The Maghrib in the first half of the fifth/eleventh century 316
13.1 The Almoravid empire: towns and monuments 338
13.2 Localities on the Senegal in the Almoravid period 358
14.1 The desert area to be crossed: map showing present-day isohyets 370
14.2 Trade routes described by Ibn Ḥawkal 375
14.3 Gold mints on the eve of the Fāṭimid conquest 393
14.4 Minting of dirhams in the Western Maghrib during the Idrīsīd period 394
14.5 Minting of gold in the Western Muslim world after 910 395
14.6 Almoravid gold coinage: mints 401
14.7 Al-Bakrī’s itineraries: western part 407
14.8 Al-Idrīsī’s itineraries: western part 411
14.9 Sites of trans-Saharan trade, ninth to eleventh centuries 415
14.10 Gold production areas in West Africa 424
16.1 The Guinea zone: places mentioned in the text 463
16.2 Plan of the Wassu site 472
16.3 Two stone circles at Wassu 473
16.4 The lyre stone at Kerbatch 474
17.1 Towns and sites mentioned in the text 489
17.2 Language groups, peoples and kingdoms mentioned in the text 490
17.3 Tenth- to eleventh-century painted pottery from Begho, Republic of Ghana 497
### List of figures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17.4</td>
<td>Seventh- to ninth-century pottery from New Buipe, Republic of Ghana</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>Seventh- to ninth-century pottery from New Buipe, Republic of Ghana</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>Pottery from period II at Nkukoa Buoho, Republic of Ghana</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.7</td>
<td>Kintampo Culture artefacts from period I at Nkukoa Buoho, Republic of Ghana</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>Middle Iron Age Shai Dangme pottery from Cherekecherete, Republic of Ghana</td>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>West Africa: major physical regions</td>
<td>532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>Language families of West Africa</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>Manding peoples and languages</td>
<td>537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>Population movements in the Upper Guinea region</td>
<td>542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>The Horn of Africa</td>
<td>561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>Pottery excavated at Mro Deoua, Comoro Islands</td>
<td>596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>Old Shirâzi mosque of Domoni Anjouan, Comoro Islands (eleventh century)</td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.1</td>
<td>Major eastern African societies from about the seventh to the ninth century</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.1</td>
<td>Archaeological cultures in eastern and southern Africa</td>
<td>645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.2</td>
<td>Archaeological sites in central Africa</td>
<td>647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.3</td>
<td>Pottery and an ivory bangle from Sanga, Zaire</td>
<td>652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.4</td>
<td>Luangwa tradition pottery from Makwe rock-shelter, eastern Zambia</td>
<td>660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5</td>
<td>Modern Lungwebungu tradition pottery</td>
<td>662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.1</td>
<td>Some of the ethnic groups defined by ceramic style in southern Africa between 700 and 900</td>
<td>666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.2</td>
<td>Ethnic groups and movements in southern Africa between 950 and 1000</td>
<td>668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.3</td>
<td>Spatial organization of the Bantu Cattle Culture</td>
<td>670</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.4</td>
<td>Stylized reconstruction of the K2 site, c. 1050</td>
<td>675</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.5</td>
<td>Stylized reconstruction of Mapungubwe at 1075 and 1150</td>
<td>677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.1</td>
<td>Madagascar and the Comoros</td>
<td>683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.1</td>
<td>Relations between the different parts of Africa from the seventh to the eleventh century</td>
<td>735</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The publishers would like to thank the following for supplying maps and/or drawings for this volume: Professor B. W. Andah, Professor J. Anquandah, Professor A. Bathily, Professor T. Bianquis, Professor J. Devisse, Mme B. Domenichini-Ramiaramana, Professor C. Ehret, Professor I. Hrbek, Professor T. N. Huffman, Professor S. Jakobielski, Professor S. Lwanga-Lunyiigo, Professor F. de Medeiros, Professor D. W. Phillipson, Professor Thurstan Shaw, Professor P. Vérin.
List of plates

Cover page The Karāwiyyīn in Fez, founded in 245/859: front view.

2.1 Representation of Medina 34
2.2 Representation of Mecca 36
2.3 Koran leaf 39
3.1 Detail of a minbar from the Mosque of Kayrawān 60
5.1 The Mosque of Tegdaoust/Awdāghust 136
6.1 Banana plantation at Rutare 154
6.2 (a) Reconstruction of an Early Iron Age furnace in Rwanda: Nyaruhengeri I 156
6.2(b-d) Excavations of Early Iron Age furnaces:
   (b) Kabuye XXXV 156
   (c) Nyaruhengeri I 157
   (d) Gisagara VI 157
7.1 The Mosque of Ibn Ṭūlūn in Cairo 175
7.2 Fāṭimid Mosque: eleventh-century decoration of the façade 175
7.3 Tomb from the Fāṭimid era at Fustāṭ 176
7.4(a–b) Egyptian (Fāṭimid) lustre-painted ceramics
   (a) Tenth-century vase 187
   (b) Eleventh-century bowl 187
7.5 Bāb al-Naṣr 191
7.6 Al-Djuyūshī Mosque 192
8.1 The royal building in Old Dongola 201
8.2 Portrait of Kyros, the Bishop of Faras (866–902): a mural from Faras Cathedral 203
8.3 Glass chalice found in Faras Cathedral 208
8.4 Portrait of Marianos, the Bishop of Faras (1005–36): a mural from Faras Cathedral 214
8.5 View of the north transept of Faras Cathedral with the great mural of the Nativity, c. 1000 222
9.1 Arch of Caracalla, Tebessa 234
10.1 General view of Fez 257
10.2 Minaret of the Karāwiyyīn Mosque in Fez 257
10.3 The Kubba Barādiyyīn in Marrakesh 259
10.4(a–b) The ribāṭ of Sūs
   (a) View of the surrounding wall 262
   (b) Inner courtyard 262
10.5 The great lake of Rakūkāda, near Kayrawān 272
10.6 West façade of the Mosque at Cordoba 273
11.1 Tenth-century mosque at Tozeur, Djarīd 296
11.2 One of the oases of the Mzāb 301
12.1 The peninsula of Mahdiyya 320
13.1 Marrakesh: excavations in the first Almoravid palace 349
List of plates

13.2(a–b) Almoravid decoration
   (a) Detail of a bronze door 352
   (b) Bronze door-knocker 353
13.3 (a) Almoravid coins and minting tools found in Algeria 362
   (b) Almoravid gold coins 362
14.1 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: locally made ceramics 390
14.2 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: Fatimid glass weight 398
14.3 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: gold wire 404
14.4 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: half-ingots of gold 404
14.5 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: silver chain 405
14.6 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: pottery oil lamp 418
14.7 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: imported glass goblet 419
14.8 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: anthropomorphous statuette 430
14.9 Tegdaoust/Awdâghust: hammer-wrought iron scales 434
15.1 Bronze objects from excavations at Houlouf (northern Cameroon) 442
15.2 Anthropomorphous earthenware jar from Houlouf (northern Cameroon) 442
15.3 Deguesse hill (northern Cameroon) 443
16.1(a–h) Igbo-Ukwu excavation finds
   (a) Miniature bronze pendant head 478
   (b) Bronze pendant representing a decorated ram’s head 478
   (c) Bronze skull of a leopard 478
   (d) Bronze pendant in the form of a bird and two eggs, with crotals and beads attached by copper-wire chains 478
   (e) Bronze cylindrical bowl 479
   (f) Bronze ‘altar stand’ 479
   (g) Bronze shell surmounted by an animal 479
   (h) Bronze crescent-shaped bowl 479
17.1 Terracotta head from a figure of an ori (king), excavated at Ita Yemoo, Ife 509
17.2 Terracotta head from a figure, possibly of a queen, excavated at Ita Yemoo, Ife 510
17.3 Terracotta head found beside the Ifewara Road, Ife 511
17.4(a–f) Igbo-Ukwu excavation finds
   (a) Bronze pendant ornaments in the form of elephant heads 518
   (b) Bronze staff-head 518
   (c) Bronze pendant ornament in the form of a ram’s head 518
   (d) Bronze roped pot, with bronze ‘altar stand’ 519
   (e) Globular pot 519
   (f) Pottery vessel 519
19.1 Coinage of King Armah 562
19.2 Gospel book of Abba-Guerima 569
19.3 Interior of the Church of Tcherqos (St Cyriacus) at Agowo 571
21.1 Site at Manda 592
23.1 Early Kisalian tomb, Kamilamba site 650
23.2 Tomb from the classical Kisalian period, Sanga site 651
25.1 Cinnamon tree 687
List of plates

26.1 The Battle of the Clans, from Khamsa of Nizâmi 713
27.1 Transhumance of shepherds in the Sahel region of Mali 737
28.1(a–g) Cattle breeds in Africa
   (a) Afrikaander cows, Zaire 754
   (b) Lugware bull, Zaire 754
   (c) Bull from Rwanda 754
   (d) Devon and Afrikaander cross-bred heifer 754
   (e) Ndama bull, Zaire 755
   (f) Herd of Friesian cows, Zaire 755
   (g) Jersey heifer, Zaire 755
28.2 House built of clay brickwork: a vaulted chamber 763
28.3 Sixth-tenth century terracotta statuettes (Republic of Niger) 765
28.4 Terracotta female torso from Kumbi Saleh 766
28.5 Potsherd pavement, Ita Yemoo, Ife 767
28.6 Gold filigreed jewelry found at Tegdaoust 769
28.7 (a) and (b) Igbo Ukwu: carnelian and glass bead pendants and strings of
glass beads 771
28.8 (a) and (b) Trapezoidal tunics from Tellem 774
28.8 (c) Skull with cotton cap from Tellem 774
28.9 Spindle whorls found at Tegdaoust 775
28.10 Indigo dye-pit in northern Côte d'Ivoire 775
28.11 Salt production at Walata: a caravan carrying bar-salt 777
Acknowledgements for plates

Brett, Dr M., 9.1, 11.1
Centre national de la recherche scientifique, Paris, 28.2
Devisse, J., 7.3, 14.1, 14.5, 28.9, 28.10
El Fasi, HE Mr Mohammed, 10.1
Fehervari, Dr G., 7.6
Freer Gallery, Washington, 7.4 (a), 7.4 (b)
Gado, B., 28.3
Hachette (Albert Shoucair), 7.5
Holl, A., 15.1, 15.2, 15.3
IMRS, Nouakchott, 5.1, 14.2, 14.3, 14.6, 14.7, 14.9, 28.4
Jansen, G., 28.8 (b), 28.8 (c)
Marcot, P. de, 23.1, 23.2
Meillassoux, C., 27.1
Ministry of Culture and Tourism, Algeria, 13.3 (a)
Ministry of Culture of Ethiopia, 19.1, 19.2, 19.3
Ministry of Culture, Morocco, front cover photograph, 10.2
Musée royal de l’Afrique centrale 28.1 (a)–(g)
Museum d’Histoire naturelle, Paris 25.1
Nantet, Bernard, 3.1, 13.3 (b), 14.4, 14.8, 28.6, 28.11
National Commission for Museums and Monuments, Lagos, 16.1 (a)–(h)
National Institute of Archaeology and Art, Tunis, 10.4 (a), 10.4 (b), 10.5
Office de la topographie et de la cartographie, Tunis, 12.1
Research Centre for Mediterranean Archaeology, Polish Academy of Sciences,
Warsaw, 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5
Réunion des musées nationaux, Louvre, 2.1, 2.2
Shaw, Thurstan 17.4 (a)–(f), 28.7 (a), 28.7 (b)
Stelling, F., 28.8 (a)
Terrasse, H., 13.1
Topkapi Saray Museum (Reha Günay), 26.1
UNESCO 7.1 (A. Khalil), 13.2 (a)–(b) (Dominique Roger)
Unwin, Sheila 21.1
Van Grunderbeck, M. C., Roche, E., Doutrelepont H., 6.2 (b)–(d)
Van Grunderbeck, M. C., Roche, E., Doutrelepont, H., Craddock, P., 6.2 (a)
Van Noten, F., 6.1
Werner Forman Archives, 2.3, 10.6, 11.2
Willett, Frank, 17.1, 17.2, 17.3, 28.5
For a long time, all kinds of myths and prejudices concealed the true history of Africa from the world at large. African societies were looked upon as societies that could have no history. In spite of important work done by such pioneers as Leo Frobenius, Maurice Delafosse and Arturo Labriola, as early as the first decades of this century, a great many non-African experts could not rid themselves of certain preconceptions and argued that the lack of written sources and documents made it impossible to engage in any scientific study of such societies.

Although the *Iliad* and *Odyssey* were rightly regarded as essential sources for the history of ancient Greece, African oral tradition, the collective memory of peoples which holds the thread of many events marking their lives, was rejected as worthless. In writing the history of a large part of Africa, the only sources used were from outside the continent, and the final product gave a picture not so much of the paths actually taken by the African peoples as of those that the authors thought they must have taken. Since the European Middle Ages were often used as a yardstick, modes of production, social relations and political institutions were visualized only by reference to the European past.

In fact, there was a refusal to see Africans as the creators of original cultures which flowered and survived over the centuries in patterns of their own making and which historians are unable to grasp unless they forgo their prejudices and rethink their approach.

Furthermore, the continent of Africa was hardly ever looked upon as a historical entity. On the contrary, emphasis was laid on everything likely to lend credence to the idea that a split had existed, from time immemorial, between a 'white Africa' and a 'black Africa', each unaware of the other's existence. The Sahara was often presented as an impenetrable space preventing any intermingling of ethnic groups and peoples or any exchange of goods, beliefs, customs and ideas between the societies that had grown up on either side of the desert. Hermetic frontiers were drawn between the civilizations of Ancient Egypt and Nubia and those of the peoples south of the Sahara.
It is true that the history of Africa north of the Sahara has been more closely linked with that of the Mediterranean basin than has the history of sub-Saharan Africa, but it is now widely recognized that the various civilizations of the African continent, for all their differing languages and cultures, represent, to a greater or lesser degree, the historical offshoots of a set of peoples and societies united by bonds centuries old.

Another phenomenon which did great disservice to the objective study of the African past was the appearance, with the slave trade and colonization, of racial stereotypes which bred contempt and lack of understanding and became so deep-rooted that they distorted even the basic concepts of historiography. From the time when the notions of 'white' and 'black' were used as generic labels by the colonialists, who were regarded as superior, the colonized Africans had to struggle against both economic and psychological enslavement. Africans were identifiable by the colour of their skin, they had become a kind of merchandise, they were earmarked for hard labour and eventually, in the minds of those dominating them, they came to symbolize an imaginary and allegedly inferior Negro race. This pattern of spurious identification relegated the history of the African peoples in many minds to the rank of ethno-history, in which appreciation of the historical and cultural facts was bound to be warped.

The situation has changed significantly since the end of the Second World War and in particular since the African countries became independent and began to take an active part in the life of the international community and in the mutual exchanges that are its raison d'être. An increasing number of historians has endeavoured to tackle the study of Africa with a more rigorous, objective and open-minded outlook by using — with all due precautions — actual African sources. In exercising their right to take the historical initiative, Africans themselves have felt a deep-seated need to re-establish the historical authenticity of their societies on solid foundations.

In this context, the importance of the eight-volume General History of Africa, which Unesco is publishing, speaks for itself.

The experts from many countries working on this project began by laying down the theoretical and methodological basis for the History. They have been at pains to call in question the over-simplifications arising from a linear and restrictive conception of world history and to re-establish the true facts wherever necessary and possible. They have endeavoured to highlight the historical data that give a clearer picture of the evolution of the different peoples of Africa in their specific socio-cultural setting.

To tackle this huge task, made all the more complex and difficult by the vast range of sources and the fact that documents were widely scattered, Unesco has had to proceed by stages. The first stage, from 1965 to 1969, was devoted to gathering documentation and planning the work. Operational assignments were conducted in the field and included campaigns to collect oral traditions, the creation of regional documentation centres for oral traditions, the collection of unpublished manuscripts in Arabic and
Ajami (African languages written in Arabic script), the compilation of archival inventories and the preparation of a Guide to the Sources of the History of Africa, culled from the archives and libraries of the countries of Europe and later published in eleven volumes. In addition, meetings were organized to enable experts from Africa and other continents to discuss questions of methodology and lay down the broad lines for the project after careful examination of the available sources.

The second stage, which lasted from 1969 to 1971, was devoted to shaping the History and linking its different parts. The purpose of the international meetings of experts held in Paris in 1969 and Addis Ababa in 1970 was to study and define the problems involved in drafting and publishing the History; presentation in eight volumes, the principal edition in English, French and Arabic, translation into African languages such as Kiswahili, Hausa, Fulani, Yoruba or Lingala, prospective versions in German, Russian, Portuguese, Spanish and Chinese, as well as abridged editions designed for a wide African and international public.¹

The third stage has involved actual drafting and publication. This began with the appointment of the 39-member International Scientific Committee, two-thirds African and one-third non-African, which assumes intellectual responsibility for the History.

The method used is interdisciplinary and is based on a multi-faceted approach and a wide variety of sources. The first among these is archaeology, which holds many of the keys to the history of African cultures and civilizations. Thanks to archaeology, it is now acknowledged that Africa was very probably the cradle of mankind and the scene — in the neolithic period — of one of the first technological revolutions in history. Archaeology has also shown that Egypt was the setting for one of the most brilliant ancient civilizations of the world. But another very important source is oral tradition, which, after being long despised, has now emerged as an invaluable instrument for discovering the history of Africa, making it possible to follow the movements of its different peoples in both space and time, to understand the African vision of the world from the inside and to grasp the original features of the values on which the cultures and institutions of the continent are based.

We are indebted to the International Scientific Committee in charge of this General History of Africa, and to its Rapporteur and the editors and authors of the various volumes and chapters, for having shed a new light on the African past in its authentic and all-encompassing form and for having avoided any dogmatism in the study of essential issues. Among these issues we might cite: the slave trade, that ‘endlessly bleeding wound’, which was responsible for one of the cruellest mass deportations in the history of man-

¹. Volume I has been published in Arabic, Spanish, Portuguese, Chinese and Italian; Volume II in Arabic, Spanish, Portuguese, Chinese and Korean; Volumes IV and VII in Spanish.
kind, which sapped the African continent of its life-blood while contribut­
ing significantly to the economic and commercial expansion of Europe; colonization, with all the effects it had on population, economics, psycho-
logy and culture; relations between Africa south of the Sahara and the Arab world; and, finally, the process of decolonization and nation-building
which mobilized the intelligence and passion of people still alive and some-
times still active today. All these issues have been broached with a concern
for honesty and rigour which is not the least of the History's merits. By
taking stock of our knowledge of Africa, putting forward a variety of view-
points on African cultures and offering a new reading of history, the
History has the signal advantage of showing up the light and shade and
of openly portraying the differences of opinion that may exist between
scholars.

By demonstrating the inadequacy of the methodological approaches
which have long been used in research on Africa, this History calls for a
new and careful study of the twofold problem areas of historiography and
cultural identity, which are united by links of reciprocity. Like any histor-
ical work of value, the History paves the way for a great deal of further
research on a variety of topics.

It is for this reason that the International Scientific Committee, in close
collaboration with Unesco, decided to embark on additional studies in an
attempt to go deeper into a number of issues which will permit a clearer
understanding of certain aspects of the African past. The findings being
published in the series 'Unesco Studies and Documents – General History
of Africa' will prove a useful supplement to the History, as will the works
planned on aspects of national or subregional history.

The General History sheds light both on the historical unity of Africa
and also its relations with the other continents, particularly the Americas
and the Caribbean. For a long time, the creative manifestations of the des-
cendants of Africans in the Americas were lumped together by some his-
torians as a heterogeneous collection of Africanisms. Needless to say, this is
not the attitude of the authors of the History, in which the resistance of the
slaves shipped to America, the constant and massive participation of the
descendants of Africans in the struggles for the initial independence of
America and in national liberation movements, are rightly perceived for
what they were: vigorous assertions of identity, which helped forge the
universal concept of mankind. Although the phenomenon may vary in

2. The following eleven volumes have already been published in this series: The
peopling of ancient Egypt and the deciphering of Meroitic script; The African slave trade from the
fifteenth to the nineteenth century; Historical relations across the Indian Ocean; The
historiography of Southern Africa; The decolonization of Africa; Southern Africa and the Horn
of Africa; African ethnonyms and toponyms; Historical and socio-cultural relations between black
Africa and the Arab world from 1935 to the present; The methodology of contemporary African
History; Africa and the Second World War; The Educational Process on Historiography in
Africa; Libya Antiqua.
different places, it is now quite clear that ways of feeling, thinking, dream­ing and acting in certain nations of the western hemisphere have been marked by their African heritage. The cultural inheritance of Africa is visible everywhere, from the southern United States to northern Brazil, across the Caribbean and on the Pacific seaboard. In certain places it even underpins the cultural identity of some of the most important elements of the population.

The History also clearly brings out Africa's relations with southern Asia across the Indian Ocean and the African contributions to other civilizations through mutual exchanges.

I am convinced that the efforts of the peoples of Africa to conquer or strengthen their independence, secure their development and assert their cultural characteristics, must be rooted in historical awareness renewed, keenly felt and taken up by each succeeding generation.

My own background, the experience I gained as a teacher and as chair­man, from the early days of independence, of the first commission set up to reform history and geography curricula in some of the countries of West and Central Africa, taught me how necessary it was for the education of young people and for the information of the public at large to have a history book produced by scholars with inside knowledge of the problems and hopes of Africa and with the ability to apprehend the continent in its entirety.

For all these reasons, Unesco's goal will be to ensure that this General History of Africa is widely disseminated in a large number of languages and is used as a basis for producing children's books, school textbooks and radio and television programmes. Young people, whether schoolchildren or students, and adults in Africa and elsewhere will thus be able to form a truer picture of the African continent's past and the factors that explain it, as well as a fairer understanding of its cultural heritage and its contribution to the general progress of mankind. The History should thus contribute to improved international cooperation and stronger solidarity among peoples in their aspirations to justice, progress and peace. This is, at least, my most cherished hope.

It remains for me to express my deep gratitude to the members of the International Scientific Committee, the Rapporteur, the different volume editors, the authors and all those who have collaborated in this tremendous undertaking. The work they have accomplished and the contribution they have made plainly go to show how people from different backgrounds but all imbued with the same spirit of goodwill and enthusiasm in the service of universal truth can, within the international framework provided by Unesco, bring to fruition a project of considerable scientific and cultural import. My thanks also go to the organizations and governments whose generosity has made it possible for Unesco to publish this History in different languages and thus ensure that it will have the worldwide impact it deserves and thereby serve the international community as a whole.
The General Conference of Unesco at its 16th Session instructed the Director-General to undertake the drafting of a General History of Africa. The enormous task of implementing the project was entrusted to an International Scientific Committee which was established by the Executive Board in 1970. This Committee, under the Statutes adopted by the Executive Board of Unesco in 1971, is composed of thirty-nine members (two-thirds of whom are African and one-third non-African) serving in their personal capacity and appointed by the Director-General of Unesco for the duration of the Committee’s mandate.

The first task of the Committee was to define the principal characteristics of the work. These were defined at the first session of the Committee as follows:

(a) Although aiming at the highest possible scientific level, the history does not seek to be exhaustive and is a work of synthesis avoiding dogmatism. In many respects, it is a statement of problems showing the present state of knowledge and the main trends in research, and it does not hesitate to show divergencies of views where these exist. In this way, it prepares the ground for future work.

(b) Africa is considered in this work as a totality. The aim is to show the historical relationships between the various parts of the continent, too frequently subdivided in works published to date. Africa’s historical connections with the other continents receive due attention, these connections being analysed in terms of mutual exchanges and multilateral influences, bringing out, in its appropriate light, Africa’s contribution to the history of mankind.

(c) The General History of Africa is, in particular, a history of ideas and civilizations, societies and institutions. It is based on a wide variety of sources, including oral tradition and art forms.

(d) The History is viewed essentially from the inside. Although a scholarly work, it is also, in large measure, a faithful reflection of the way in which African authors view their own civilization. While prepared in an inter-
Description of the Project

national framework and drawing to the full on the present stock of scientific knowledge, it should also be a vitally important element in the recognition of the African heritage and should bring out the factors making for unity in the continent. This effort to view things from within is the novel feature of the project and should, in addition to its scientific quality, give it great topical significance. By showing the true face of Africa, the History could, in an era absorbed in economic and technical struggles, offer a particular conception of human values.

The Committee has decided to present the work covering over three million years of African history in eight volumes, each containing about eight hundred pages of text with illustrations, photographs, maps and line drawings.

A chief editor, assisted if necessary by one or two co-editors, is responsible for the preparation of each volume. The editors are elected by the Committee either from among its members or from outside by a two-thirds majority. They are responsible for preparing the volumes in accordance with the decisions and plans adopted by the Committee. On scientific matters, they are accountable to the Committee or, between two sessions of the Committee, to its Bureau for the contents of the volumes, the final version of the texts, the illustrations and, in general, for all scientific and technical aspects of the History. The Bureau ultimately approves the final manuscript. When it considers the manuscript ready for publication, it transmits it to the Director-General of Unesco. Thus the Committee, or the Bureau between committee sessions, remains fully in charge of the project.

Each volume consists of some thirty chapters. Each chapter is the work of a principal author assisted, if necessary, by one or two collaborators. The authors are selected by the Committee on the basis of their curricula vitae. Preference is given to African authors, provided they have requisite qualifications. Special effort is also made to ensure, as far as possible, that all regions of the continent, as well as other regions having historical or cultural ties with Africa, are equitably represented among the authors.

When the editor of a volume has approved texts of chapters, they are then sent to all members of the Committee for criticism. In addition, the text of the volume editor is submitted for examination to a Reading Committee, set up within the International Scientific Committee on the basis of the members' fields of competence. The Reading Committee analyses the chapters from the standpoint of both substance and form. The Bureau then gives final approval to the manuscripts.

Such a seemingly long and involved procedure has proved necessary, since it provides the best possible guarantee of the scientific objectivity of the General History of Africa. There have, in fact, been instances when the Bureau has rejected manuscripts or insisted on major revisions or even reassigned the drafting of a chapter to another author. Occasionally,
specialists in a particular period of history or in a particular question are consulted to put the finishing touches to a volume.

The work will be published first in a hard-cover edition in English, French and Arabic, and later in paperback editions in the same languages. An abridged version in English and French will serve as a basis for translation into African languages. The Committee has chosen Kiswahili and Hausa as the first African languages into which the work will be translated.

Also, every effort will be made to ensure publication of the General History of Africa in other languages of wide international currency such as Chinese, Portuguese, Russian, German, Italian, Spanish, Japanese, etc.

It is thus evident that this is a gigantic task which constitutes an immense challenge to African historians and to the scholarly community at large, as well as to Unesco under whose auspices the work is being done. For the writing of a continental history of Africa, covering the last three million years, using the highest canons of scholarship and involving, as it must do, scholars drawn from diverse countries, cultures, ideologies and historical traditions, is surely a complex undertaking. It constitutes a continental, international and interdisciplinary project of great proportions.

In conclusion, I would like to underline the significance of this work for Africa and for the world. At a time when the peoples of Africa are striving towards unity and greater cooperation in shaping their individual destinies, a proper understanding of Africa's past, with an awareness of common ties among Africans and between Africa and other continents, should not only be a major contribution towards mutual understanding among the people of the earth, but also a source of knowledge of a cultural heritage that belongs to all mankind.
Africa in the context of world history

I. HRBEK

If an extraterrestrial visitor had looked at the Old World at the beginning of the seventh century of the Christian era and had then revisited it after five centuries – by 1100 – he might well have come to the conclusion that the world was on the way to becoming Muslim.

At the time of his first visit, the community around the Prophet Muḥammad, who preached the new religious system, Islam, in the small town of Mecca, lost in the boundless wastes of the Arabian desert, did not count even a hundred people fighting for survival against the growing hostility of their compatriots. Five centuries later the adherents of this faith were to be found on a territory stretching from the banks of the Ebro, the Senegal and the Niger in the west, to the Syr-Darya and the Indus in the east, and from the Volga deep in the heart of the Eurasian continent to the East African coast.

In the central parts of this territory the Muslims formed the majority of the population whereas in some fringe areas they were rulers or traders, expanding further and further the Islamic frontiers. Although at this time the Islamic world had already lost its former political unity, being divided into many mutually independent states, and had even lost some of its territories (in northern Spain, in Sicily and just at the end of the period also a small territory in Palestine and Lebanon), it still represented a fairly homogeneous culture and civilization whose creativity was far from being exhausted.

In the meantime Islam had ceased to be an exclusively Arab religion; the new faith showed the capacity to win over and assimilate ethnic elements of the most diverse origins, fusing them into a single cultural and religious community. Islam, born in the sun-scorched peninsula of Arabia, was later able to acclimatize itself in various regions of the world and among such diverse peoples as the Persian, Egyptian and Spanish peasants, the Berber, Somali and Turkish nomads, the Afghan and Kurdish mountain-tribes, the Indian pariahs, the Soninke traders and Kānemi rulers. Many of these peoples became in their turn fiery champions of Islam taking the torch from the Arabs and expanding the faith in new directions.

No wonder that such a magnificent achievement would have impressed
our hypothetical extraterrestrial visitor, as it has many historians who have not hesitated to call the period from the seventh to the eleventh century—and even beyond—‘the Islamic age’. This label does not imply that the Muslim peoples dominated the whole world or that they exercised a decisive political, religious or cultural influence outside their own sphere. We have to understand it in relation to other cultural zones and in the sense that the Islamic world was during that period the most dynamic and the most progressive in several fields of human activity. It would, of course, be misleading to neglect the changes going on in other zones or to underestimate the achievements of other peoples in Africa, Asia and Europe at the same time, since there already existed germs of later evolution that did not remain without impact on the destinies of the world.

The rise of Islamic civilization

The Arab conquest was in many ways similar to but also in many ways different from all other conquests known to the world. First, although inspired by a religious teaching, the Arabs did not expect the conquered people, in principle, to enter their religious community; the conquered people were allowed to maintain their old religious allegiances. But after a few generations the majority of the urban population adopted Islam and even those who did not do so tended to use Arabic as a common medium of culture. The Arab empire had been conquered by a pastoralist military force but this force was led by urban merchants who were already acquainted with the culture of the occupied lands. The empire created by the Arabs, in contrast to those founded by other pastoralists, stayed in one piece and endured. In contrast also to, let us say, the Mongols, the Arabs did not adopt the local languages and religious systems but instead imposed their own language and allegiance on the various peoples they had conquered.

The Arab conquests in the seventh and eighth centuries produced two momentous and enduring effects. The more immediate and dramatic was the creation of a new world state in the Mediterranean Basin and the Near East. The second effect, less rapid and tumultuous but no less important, was the development of a new world culture within this state.

The Arab world state was launched as an imperial system with a rapidity seldom matched in history. Within a century of their appearance on the world scene, the Arabs held sway from the Pyrenees on the border of France to the Pamirs in Central Asia. Spain, North Africa, Egypt, the former Byzantine territories south of the Taurus Mountains and the Persian empire in the east were welded together into an imperial realm that rivalled that of Rome at its peak.

For a little over a century the Arab conquerors were able to hold their subject lands together. After the mid-eighth century, various regions began
to break away and non-Arab Muslims began to assert their right to share in the rule of state and society. In the west, Spain, North Africa and later Egypt gradually achieved independence and went their own ways. In the east, various dynasties of Persian and Turkish (but culturally Persianized) origin emerged until they became masters of the eastern parts of the Caliphate. By the end of the eleventh century the original Arab empire had long since ceased to exist. It was transformed into a bewildering array of petty states, regional powers and contending dynasties, few of them of Arab origin.

Thus the Arab empire of the first conquerors was transformed into the Muslim world of the Middle Ages. It was a world and not an empire, a political realm consisting of individual and often mutually hostile states, yet aware of common identity that distinguished it from the other world regions. It was Muslim, not solely Arab, based upon a common religion rather than on ethnic bonds.

The second enduring result of the original Arab conquest was the creation, within this Muslim setting, of a new world culture. The Arab conquerors used both their new faith, Islam, and their military prowess to establish an empire but the culture they brought from their desert home was rather unsophisticated and simple. Compared with the rich Classical, Hellenistic or Persian heritage, found in the conquered countries, the Arabs' cultural contribution was rather limited although in many ways significant. Apart from the religion, they contributed their language as the main vehicle of administration, literature and science and also their poetry and aesthetic values.

The distinctive and rich civilization that characterized the Muslim world at its height came into being through the amalgam of varied traditions of all the people who adopted Islam or lived under its sway. It inherited not only the material and intellectual achievements of the Near Eastern and Mediterranean world but also appropriated and absorbed many elements of Indian and Chinese origin and transmitted them further.

It would be erroneous to see the Muslim civilization merely as a simple conglomerate of bits and pieces of borrowed cultural goods. At first, of course, many traits were appropriated directly without any reshaping but gradually they were combined, enlarged and developed into new patterns that served both as resource and stimulus to creative Muslim sciences, artistic expression and technological innovations. In this way emerged the Muslim civilization with its own distinctive pattern corresponding to the new universalistic spirit and new social order.

Geographic and economic factors

The flowering of this civilization was made possible by a set of favourable, dialectically interlocked factors. The Muslim empire was erected in the
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

region of the most ancient world civilization. The conquering Arabs found there an age-long tradition of urban life and urban economy; very quickly they seized this opportunity and besides settling in ancient towns they founded many new ones. It was this urban character of the Muslim world and civilization that most profoundly marked its difference from the Christian West in the early Middle Ages. The existence of many populous cities in the Muslim empire was of considerable importance for the economy of the empire as a whole and especially for its commercial relations with other parts of the Old World. It was in the Muslim core lands that the most important centres of economic and cultural life were to be found, Western Europe offering at that time a quite different picture of scattered rural communities with only a minimum of commercial and intellectual activity. Thus the major trends of social and economic development in the Muslim world were exactly contrary to those that characterized the history of Europe at the same period.

The incorporation of so many countries in the Muslim empire created conditions for the expansion of trade activities on a scale that had been impossible to achieve when the region was politically fragmented. From the late seventh century to the end of the twelfth century the Muslim empire functioned like a free-trade area. The commodities produced in one part of the world became available in other parts so that a uniformity of consumer goods existed among a large, diverse population inhabiting a wide territory. The Muslim world, lying midway between East and West, served also to disseminate technological innovations among the peoples of outlying areas. The increased commercial activity between various parts of the Muslim world and beyond its frontiers stimulated local production of commodities for markets in other places. It also stimulated advances in applied and theoretical techniques, for example in navigation and the allied fields of shipbuilding, astronomy and geography as well as in commercial and banking practices.

The economic boom that had started in the eighth century and continued for some centuries was also to a great extent brought about by the flow of precious metals to the central lands of the Near East. Gold dinars were minted for the first time at the end of the seventh century by the Umayyads and circulated mainly in the former Byzantine provinces whereas the eastern parts had remained for a long time traditionally the silver area. The increase of gold supply in the ninth century led to a change in the monetary system of the Muslim empire: the countries where from time immemorial only silver coins had circulated, went over to bimetallism and all mints in the eastern parts of the Caliphate began to strike gold dinars. In the western part of the Muslim world the situation was different; for a long time the Maghrib and Muslim Spain remained in the orbit of silver currency, mainly for want of easily accessible gold mines. This began to change only in the tenth century with increased gold imports from the Western Sudan of West Africa, to reach its highpoint with the Almoravid
dinar, a coinage that became internationally recognized. The issue of great quantities of excellent gold and silver coins had many consequences for economic life in the Muslim countries. Production was stimulated as people increased consumption of various goods but at the same time there was a steep rise in prices.

As a region the Muslim empire was favoured also by its central position in the heart of the Old World. By their domination of the isthmus area between the two great maritime domains of the Mediterranean and the Indian Ocean the Muslims gained a decisive advantage in long-distance trade. The sheer extent of the Muslim world from the shores of the Atlantic to the Chinese borders created a unique situation; it was the only one of the great cultural areas to be in direct contact with each of the others – with Byzantium, with Western Europe, with India and China. This geographical position also allowed it to enter into contact with the great frontier areas and new peoples – in the Eurasian fluvial plains, in Central Asia, across the Sahara in the Sudanic Sahel, in South-east Asia. These were the regions where Islam expanded after the first wave of the conquests following mainly the major long-distance trade routes, either the great continental route – the route of steppes, deserts and oases going from Central Asia to West Africa – or the maritime one leading to the countries around the Indian Ocean and to East Asia.

This central position predestined the Muslim world to the role of intermediary – or channel – between all the other regions of the Old World. Together with commercial commodities transported by land and sea routes went many new ideas and concepts, and innovations in technology and sciences. Some of them were accepted only by the Muslim peoples but many more were transmitted further to neighbouring areas. The actual routes or dates of cultural or material borrowings are in most cases obscure but there is no doubt that they were transmitted. The case of paper serves as an early example of an important product that was sent all the way from China to Europe via Muslim lands. Originally a Chinese invention, it was introduced to the Muslim empire by Chinese prisoners-of-war who were brought to Samarkand in 751. These Chinese papermakers taught the Muslims the technology of its production and Samarkand became the first place outside China to have a paper industry. From there the industry spread to Baghdad, then to Arabia, Syria and Egypt and lastly to Morocco (in the ninth century) and to Muslim Spain (in the first half of the tenth century). There the town of Játiva (Arabic, Shatiba) became the main centre of the industry whence the technology was introduced in the twelfth century to Catalonia, the first European country to produce paper. It is not necessary to stress the far-reaching consequences of the spread of one of the greatest inventions for culture and civilization in general.

In a similar way the Indian invention of positional notation in mathem-

atics, the so-called Arabic numerals, was early (already in the eighth century) adopted by the Muslims (who called them Indian numerals) and at some time between the end of the ninth century and the middle of the tenth century the Western world came to know this system. The adoption of positional notation by the Muslims made possible the evolution of algebra, a branch of mathematics which until that time had not been the object of any serious, systematic study; the algebraic mathematics then became the foundation without which the modern branches of mathematics and natural sciences would have been impossible.

The Islamic world and Africa

Let us now turn to Africa and African peoples in the context of the Muslim world and its civilization. At first we shall consider those parts of the continent that became an integral part of the Muslim empire as a result of the first wave of conquests, i.e. Egypt and North Africa, then we will turn our attention to the regions that felt in various ways the impact of Islam or Muslim peoples without being politically integrated within any of the great Muslim states of the time.

The history of Islamic Egypt between the seventh century and the end of the eleventh century offers a fascinating picture of the evolution of an important but rather peripheral province of the Caliphate to become the core land of a new powerful Fāṭimid empire; from a mere granary to become the most important entrepôt for trade between the Mediterranean and the Indian Ocean; from the situation of a rather poor relative in the field of Muslim intellectual activities to become one of the main centres of Arab cultural life. In relation to other parts of Africa, Egypt played manifold roles; it was the starting point both of the Arab conquests in the Maghrib in the seventh century as well as of the Hilālī invasion in the eleventh century. The first led to the Islamization of North Africa, the second to its Arabization. It was from Egypt that Arab Beduins began their advance to the south and made their way gradually into Nubia thereby paving the way for the eventual downfall of its Christian kingdoms and the Arabization of the Nilotic Sudan. Although Egypt lost its Christian character during this period and the majority of the population was converted to Islam, the Alexandrian patriarchate still retained its control over the Monophysite churches in Nubia and Ethiopia and at times became the tool of Egyptian politics in these countries.

It must not be forgotten, too, that Egypt was the final destination of many black African slaves imported from Nubia (in accordance with the famous bakt treaty), Ethiopia, and the Western and Central Sudan. Amongst this unfortunate human merchandise was one slave — Kāfūr — who emerged eventually as the virtual ruler of the country. Others, in their thousands, served as members of the armed forces who wielded consider-
able influence in domestic politics. The vast majority, however, were employed variously in humble and menial positions.

Although the prominent role of Egypt as the champion of Islam against the European Crusaders and the Mongol invaders came only later (in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries), it was made possible by the political and economic consolidation of the previous centuries.

In the Maghrib the conquering Arabs encountered staunch resistance from the Berbers and it was not until the end of the seventh century that the main regions were subdued. The majority of the Berbers then adopted Islam and although they resented the political domination of the Arabs, the Islamic faith gained vigorous new adherents among them who helped to expand it across the Strait of Gibraltar as well as across the Sahara. The Berber warriors formed the bulk of the Muslim army that conquered Spain for the Umayyads, of the Aghlabid troops that took Sicily away from the Byzantines, and of the Fātimid contingents in their victorious campaigns in Egypt and Syria.

North Africa occupied an essential strategic place in the Muslim world both politically and economically. It was from the Maghrib that the conquest of Spain and Sicily started with all its consequences for the history of the western Mediterranean and Europe. It constituted the important connecting link that permitted contact between civilizations and through which various influences flowed in both directions. Muslim domination reintroduced the Maghrib into the orbit of an extensive world-wide economy in which it played a very important role; during this period it underwent new demographic growth including major urbanization, and new economic and commercial prosperity.

From the religious point of view the role of the Berbers was twofold. First, their democratic and egalitarian traditions led them very early on to adhere to the teachings of those Islamic sects that preached these tendencies. Even though Berber Khāridjism was crushed after having flourished for several centuries and continued to exist in only a few communities, the spirit of reform and populism remained part and parcel of Islam in the Maghrib. It revealed itself in the great movements of the Almoravids and Almohads as well as in the proliferation of the ṣūfī brotherhoods.

The second important role of the Berbers – seen both in Islamic and African perspective – was to introduce Islam to trans-Saharan Africa. The caravans of the Berber traders that crossed the great desert to the more fertile regions of the Sahel and the Sudan carried not only material products but also new religious and cultural ideas that had found a response at first among the commercial class and later at the courts of African rulers. A second wave of Islamization of the Sudanic belt came about in the eleventh century with the rise of the Almoravids, a genuinely Berber religious movement. The imprint of Berber Islam with its reforming spirit never

2. For further information on the spread of Islam, see Chapter 3 below.
died out in the Sudan and it came to the fore most markedly in the nineteenth-century *djihad*.

It was the opening up of the Sahara and the Sudanic zone that gave North Africa its specific significance for the economy of the Muslim world. When Sudanese gold started to flow in steadily increasing quantities to the Mediterranean coast it brought about an economic boom permitting many dynasties in the Muslim west to go over from silver to gold currency. The exploitation of the Saharan salt mines became more intensive in response to the growing demand for this indispensable mineral in sub-Saharan Africa. According to a recent authority the trade with sub-Saharan Africa was through many centuries probably the most profitable branch of the Muslim foreign trade.³

The Sudanic zone of West Africa was one of the African regions that were not conquered by the Arabs or other Muslim peoples and thus never formed a constituent part of the Caliphate; nevertheless it felt an ever-increasing impact from the Muslim world through commercial and cultural contacts and became to a certain degree integrated into its economic structure. A similar situation obtained, with some important deviations, on the East African coast.

Since Classical times this coast had been visited for commercial purposes by merchants from southern Arabia and Persia. After the rise of Islam and the foundation of the Islamic empire there emerged on the Indian Ocean a vast commercial network controlled by Muslims, mostly Arabs and Persians; it had stretched from the Persian/Arabic Gulf⁴ and (later) the Red Sea to India, Malaya, Indonesia and southern China and included the East African coast, the Comoros and also parts of Madagascar. The prosperity of the coastal towns belonging to this network depended to a large degree on the general economic situation of the whole Indian Ocean area, particularly that of the Muslim countries. And since this economy was steadily expanding in the period under discussion, especially after the Fāṭimids had started to develop their commercial relations with the Indian Ocean, East African coastal settlements with their exports of gold, iron, hides and other commodities played a still more important role in the whole network. Not only the material welfare of the coastal cities benefited from this process but indirectly so did Islam as a religion and culture, contributing thus to the flowering of the Swahili culture in the next centuries.

There is no doubt that the rapid expansion of Islamic power did considerable damage to the economic life of Ethiopia by cutting it off from access to the Red Sea and by monopolizing the trade in adjacent regions. The repercussions of this were also felt in the political sphere; the country was politically fragmented and for more than two centuries the central authority of the state was weakened. Another result of the Muslim

⁴. The official name is 'Persian Gulf'.
supremacy in the coastal regions was the shifting of the centre of the Ethiopian state southwards and a more energetic expansion in this direction. These southern regions in their turn became the core from which the revival of the Christian Ethiopian state started in the ninth century. From the tenth century on there began a new period of Islamic penetration of the Ethiopian interior by Muslim merchants from the Dahlaq Islands and Zaylā and also the foundation of the first Muslim states in the southern parts of present-day Ethiopia. Thus by a combination of various factors the essential conditions were created for the long struggle between Islam and Christianity in the next centuries for the domination of the Ethiopian region.

If one tries to sum up the role that the rise of the Islamic empire played in regard to Africa during these five centuries, the conclusion will be as follows:

1. The Mediterranean façade of the continent, from the Isthmus of Suez to the Strait of Gibraltar, and the adjacent Atlantic coast had been incorporated as an integral part of the Islamic world. It had ceased forever to be part of the Christian world and even served as the starting point for further Muslim expansion in Spain and Sicily on the one hand and in the Sahara and the Sudanic zone of West Africa on the other.

2. In north-eastern Africa it had brought about the weakening of the Christian states of Nubia and Ethiopia, though neither of them was conquered. Whereas Nubia had come more and more under the economic and political control of Muslim Egypt and nomadic Arabs had begun to penetrate it so that it eventually lost its Christian character, Ethiopia had survived as an independent political and cultural unit although it had to accommodate its external relations to the growing Muslim influences surrounding it.

3. The Sahara and large parts of the Sudan had now been linked through the trade network to an Islamic economic sphere in which their main exports — gold and slaves — played an increasingly important role. The religion and culture of Islam had penetrated along the trade routes, becoming gradually incorporated into the African ways of life.

4. In East Africa the role of international trade controlled by the Muslims was similar with the important exception that the Muslim merchants had restricted their activities to coastal settlements and Islamic influence did not penetrate into the interior. But the growing demand, in Muslim countries and India, for Zimbabwe gold even seems to have led to some changes in the Zambezi region. Some parts of Madagascar and the Comoro Islands were also made a part of the great Indian Ocean commercial network.

Thus in the first five centuries of the Islamic era large parts of the African continent had come directly or indirectly under the impact of the new
Islamic empire. In some regions this had helped break down former isolation from the outside world, and the external contacts offered the possibility of cultural exchange and borrowing. The adoption of Islam by the ruling classes of some of the West African states and East African coastal towns forged the links of these states and regions with the Muslim world. In West Africa where states had existed before the coming of Islam, their further expansion into large empires seems to have been fundamentally a reaction to the development of trade with North Africa.\(^5\)

The contacts of the Muslim world with tropical Africa were important, too, in another way: the accounts of Arab geographers and historians are an indispensable and unique corpus of information about these regions.\(^6\) Without these we would know much less or hardly anything at all about the politics, economics and cultures of many African peoples during a crucial period of their history. This aspect, too, should not be forgotten in the general assessment of the interaction between the Muslim world and Africa.

Africa and medieval Europe in the age of transition

At the time when Muhammad started to preach the new faith in faraway Arabia, the western peninsula of the huge Euro-Asiatic continental mass, known as Europe, was divided into three areas that differed profoundly in their stages of general development: the Byzantine empire, the former Roman provinces of Western Europe now under the domination of various Germanic peoples, and lastly the part to the east of the Rhine and north of the Danube inhabited by Germanic and Slavonic peoples, many of them still on the move to their more permanent homes.

The Byzantine empire

Only the Byzantine empire could claim to continue Graeco-Roman tradition and to have a developed state organization with an efficient administration, a prospering money economy and a high degree of cultural activities in many fields. After surviving the upheavals of the first great migrations of peoples the empire was able in the sixth century – under Justinian – to reconquer and re-establish its domination in most of the central and western Mediterranean and to make it again a Byzantine lake. From its Asiatic provinces and Egypt, the part of the empire least touched by migrations, the Byzantines attempted to re-open the trade routes to the East both on land (the Great Silk Route to China) and on sea (through the Red Sea to India). These attempts were, however, frustrated by the other great power in the area, the Sassanid Persian empire, which ruled all the

---

5. J. D. Page, 1964, p. 32.
Irano-Semitic core area save the Syrian end of the Fertile Crescent. The struggle between these empires continued from the mid-sixth century until the first third of the seventh century with supremacy alternating between the Byzantines and Persians, although the latter eventually gained the upper hand.

This heavy struggle had exhausted both sides financially and militarily to such a degree that they showed themselves shortly afterwards unable to withstand the onslaught of the new dynamic force of Muslim Arabs. This onslaught spelt the disappearance of the Sassanid empire forever, whereas Byzantium lost some of its most valuable provinces; Syria and Egypt, during the first wave of the Arab conquest, and all North Africa by the end of the seventh century.

Throughout the ninth and tenth centuries the fighting between the Arabs and the Byzantines degenerated into frontier clashes in Asia Minor and northern Syria without much changing the balance of power, even if the empire was able to reconquer parts of Syria and Mesopotamia during the time of political disintegration of the eastern Caliphate.

The Arabs — exhausted as a political force — were then replaced by the Seljuk Turks who resumed the Muslim advance in Asia Minor, definitively taking its major part by the end of the eleventh century. This new Muslim offensive constituted one of the main causes of the Crusades.

In relation to Africa the Byzantine empire ceased to play any significant role in the course of the seventh century. Egypt was lost very quickly and sporadic attempts to reconquer it from the sea were not successful; some coastal regions of North Africa remained in Byzantine hands until the end of the same century, the delay in ousting them being caused by civil wars among the Arabs who for some decades stopped their offensive. The Orthodox state Church of the Byzantines had never been strong in the African provinces because the Egyptians adhered tenaciously to their Monophysite creed, and the North African urban population to the Roman Church. Whatever influence the Orthodox Church had had in previous centuries, it lost for ever through the Muslim conquest. Although Nubia had never formed a part of the Byzantine empire, Byzantine cultural and religious influence remained comparatively strong there even after the Arab conquest of Egypt, especially in Makuria, the central of the three Christian Nubian states, which adopted — in contrast to the others — the Orthodox (Melkite) creed. The administration was modelled on Byzantine bureaucracy, the higher classes dressed in Byzantine manner and spoke Greek. But gradually the links with Byzantine culture and religion were weakened and at the end of the seventh century the king of Makuria introduced Monophysitism into his state which was now united with the northern Nobadia. This change led to a strengthening of the ties with Coptic

Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Egypt and partly with Syria and Palestine, too, where Nubian Christians found more inspiration in contacts with their Monophysite coreligionists. During its struggle against Persia, Byzantium was interested in an alliance with Christian, although Monophysite, Ethiopia. The Arab expansion cut off Byzantium from the Red Sea and the trade with India, thus making the alliance impossible as well as impracticable. As Monophysite Christianity became more and more the symbol of the Ethiopian state and nation, hostile both to Islam and to any other form of Christianity, it developed its own original identity without any reference to Byzantine models, either in theology or in artistic and literary expression.

Western Europe

When we turn our attention to the western provinces of the former Roman empire, i.e. the part we call usually Western Europe, we encounter here, on the eve of the period under discussion, a situation totally different from that of Byzantium. All the territory to the west of the Rhine and to the south of the Alps including parts of the British Isles, had become, between the fourth and the seventh centuries, the theatre of the great migration of Germanic peoples.

These migrations left Western Europe to a high degree devastated; urban life declined and social life became highly localized in small agglomerations of population. Western Europe ceased to be an urban civilization, and became a civilization of small agricultural settlements which maintained only vestiges of mutual relationship.

The general disorganization of life changed Europe between the fifth and tenth centuries into a congeries of small disconnected territories. Its societies lived practically in the forests and plains where people fought desperately to survive until the next harvest; to have enough to eat every day was the prerogative of a few great and powerful men. These societies could hardly adopted the ways of classical urban civilization.

During these troubled times trade, local as well as long-distance, could hardly progress; a tendency to autarkic economy on all levels led to the progressive disappearance of market exchange and the money economy. As cash became rarer, payment for necessary goods and services was made in agricultural products; the land and its tenure were now the chief source — besides war — of wealth and power. The peasants working on these lands entered, voluntarily or under duress, into various kinds of contractual relationship with their landlords giving a greater or larger part of their products in exchange for security and defence against foreign or domestic enemies. In this way there slowly emerged the feudal system which characterized the historical process in Europe for many centuries to come.

During the seventh century, at a time when the Byzantine empire had to fight against invaders from south and north, Western Europe, not yet
threatened by external foes, was able to reorganize itself into some more-or-less stable territorial units. In the west the Visigoths dominated the entire Iberian peninsula, in Gaul and adjacent lands the Frankish Merovingians established their domination and in England the Anglo-Saxons founded their kingdoms. Italy was at the end of the century divided among the Byzantines in the south and the newly arrived Germanic Longobards in the north. In the course of the next centuries the Catholic creed was adopted by all Germanic peoples in Western Europe. Thus, by the seventh century Western Europe, divided ethnically, politically and economically, acquired an element of religious and cultural unity.

The Arabo-Berber conquest of Visigothic Spain at the beginning of the eighth century amputated a considerable part of the Latin West. The Franks were able to stop further Muslim penetration into Gaul but Arab incursions and raids on coastal places in southern France and in Italy continued for more than two centuries, contributing to general insecurity in the Mediterranean. Nevertheless at the end of the same century the first and for a long time the only successful attempt to give political unity to Western Europe was made; it was the work of the Carolingians. Charlesmagne's predecessors unified the Frankish territories between the Pyrenees and the Rhine and repulsed the attacks of other Germanic peoples from the east. Charlemagne (768–814) himself incorporated the majority of eastern Germans into his state and established a frontier against the Slavs on the Elbe. The northern half of Italy as well as some territories in northern Spain also fell under Frankish domination and it is no wonder that Charlemagne - as the most powerful monarch in the Latin West - was crowned Emperor in 800. But many parts of Western Europe remained outside his empire: the British Isles, the larger part of Spain under Muslim rule, and southern Italy still in Byzantine and Longobardian hands.

With Charlemagne is connected the famous thesis of the Belgian historian Henri Pirenne that has led to vigorous debates concerning the relationship between the emergence of the Muslim empire and the fate of Western Europe. The Pirenne thesis claims, in a generalized way, that it was not the invasions of the 'barbarian Germanic tribes' in the fifth century that ended Rome's control of trade in the Mediterranean Basin but rather the creation of the Muslim empire. The wresting of North Africa and the eastern provinces from Byzantium by the Arabs created a final break between East and West. This forced Western Europe to turn inward upon itself and its own resources, substituting for the maritime economy of the Merovingians the landlocked and continental Carolingian economy, so that Western Europe became poor and barbarian. 'Without Muḥammad, no Charlemagne' runs the Pirenne formula; in this view the founder of the Western empire appears rather as a symbol of renunciation than of a

renewed greatness and thus marks a change of direction in the destinies of the Latin West. Stagnation was overcome only after the tenth century with the emergence of a new European urbanism which, in the final analysis, enabled the rise of modern society.

Although this thesis has been finally rejected by the majority of historians, its main merit was to have drawn attention to important problems of change in medieval economies and to the rise of European feudalism. It also made historians aware of the impact of the Arabs and their domination of North Africa on developments in Europe, a long-neglected theme.

Whether there was a total closure of the Mediterranean and an interruption of long-distance trade as a result of the Arab conquests, or only a diminution in its volume – those were the moot points in the discussion – seems to be less relevant in view of the chief weak point of the Pirenne thesis, namely that this interruption should have had such far-reaching consequences. The long-distance trade, however lucrative or voluminous, did not play the decisive role in the social and economic life of Western Europe attributed to it by Pirenne. Consequently its interruption could not have caused such profound changes in the economic structure. The autarkic latifundium, which seriously menaced even the existence of towns in the empire, had existed long before the Germanic and Arab conquests.

The lasting Arab and Islamic impact on Europe did not result from the military confrontation or the interruption of trade contacts across the Mediterranean but rather from the long years of Muslim rule in Spain and Sicily. Through the innovations brought to these regions, new crops, agricultural processes and technology, and – mainly in sciences and philosophy – new concepts were introduced into a Europe that was less developed in these matters than the Islamic world. Although the European Renaissance began later – from the thirteenth century onwards – the foundations from which it arose were laid in the period of the greatest flowering of Islamic civilization, between the eighth and twelfth centuries.

Eastern and Northern Europe

In the rest of Europe – beyond the ancient Roman frontiers on the Rhine and the Danube – the westward migrations of Germanic tribes opened the way for Slavonic expansion which took two general directions: southwards across the Danube to the Balkans and westwards into the territory of present-day Poland, Czechoslovakia, Hungary and the German Democratic Republic. In the Balkans the ancestors of Yugoslovans and Bulgars, after crossing the Danube in the sixth century, attacked Byzantine European provinces and gradually settled there, changing totally the political and ethnic pattern.

With regard to the Muslim world the Slavonic peoples were to play for some centuries a similar role to that of black Africans; they were imported
FIG. 1.1 The Old World, c. 230/845
thither as slaves. As victims of incessant wars and raids waged against them mostly by their German neighbours, or of their own internecine wars, they were not only retained as a labour force in Europe but were also exported abroad to the Muslim countries. Those captured in central Europe went through the Frankish state to Muslim Spain, whereas those from the Balkans were mostly sold by the Venetians to North Africa. Called by the Arabs 'al-Ṣaḵaliba' (sing., al-Ṣaḵlabî) they were employed mainly as soldiers, in state administration and, when castrated, in harems. Whereas in Muslim Spain the term 'al-Ṣaḵaliba' soon expanded to designate all European slaves of whatever nationality, in the Maghrib and in Fāṭimid Egypt it retained its original meaning. And it was here that the Slavs of Balkan origin did play an important role, participating as soldiers and administrators in the consolidation as well as expansion of the Fāṭimid power. The most famous among them was Djawhar, the conqueror of Egypt, founder of Cairo and of the al-ʿĀzhar University. Although the Slavs were soon absorbed, ethnically and culturally, by the Muslim Arab society in the Maghrib and Egypt, they nevertheless did contribute to the shaping of the destiny of these parts of North Africa in the course of the tenth and eleventh centuries.

With the adoption of Christianity the majority of Slavonic peoples entered into the community of European 'civilized' nations and ceased to be sold as slaves abroad. At the end of the eleventh century the states of Bohemia, Poland, Croatia, Serbia and Bulgaria already existed, whereas in the east the state of Kiev accomplished the unification of the majority of eastern Slavonic peoples.

Between the eighth and tenth centuries another group of peoples from beyond the horizon of Mediterranean nations emerged on the European scene, the Viking (or Norman) invaders, conquerors and merchant-adventurers who from their Scandinavian homes attacked coastal regions, and along rivers even some parts of the interior, from their technologically advanced ships. These attacks and raids were repeated over many years and caused heavy devastation and general insecurity in many regions such as the British Isles and France; but some Normans (called by the Arabs 'al-Mādžûṣ') reached as far south as Muslim Spain and even Morocco. In Eastern Europe the Vikings (known here as Varyags) combined raids with

9. It is significant that in all West European languages the word for 'slave' (Sklave, esclave, esclavo, escravo, etc.) is derived from the ethnonym 'Slav', the name various Slavonic peoples used for themselves. This points to the fact that during the formative period of European national languages, which coincides precisely with the period under discussion, the Slavonic prisoners of war must have formed the main bulk of the slave population in Western Europe.
10. The castration, being forbidden by the Muslim law, was performed already in Europe with the town of Verdun as the most important place so that Reinhard Dozy called it a 'eunuch factory'.
commerce, establishing their factories along the Russian river system. Descending the Volga they reached the Caspian Sea and made contact with the countries of the Caliphate; sometimes they plundered the coastal regions of Transcaucasia, sometimes they travelled as merchants as far as Baghdad, trading in furs, swords and slaves.

Until the eleventh century the Normans, with the exception of the above-mentioned raid on the Moroccan coast in 858 or 859 which remained an ephemeral episode, did not enter into any direct contact with Africa. A group of Normans settled permanently in northern France (Normandy) founding there a strong state. Apart from conquering England in 1066, these same Normans also carved out for themselves a state in southern Italy. From here they undertook the conquest of Muslim Sicily making it their base for further expansion directed partly to North Africa. For one century the Normans of Sicily became an important factor in the political history of Muslim North Africa.

The Muslim raids from the south and Norman incursions from the north deeply influenced Western Europe. It became almost impossible to offer a centralized and organized resistance to these sudden attacks on so many places. Thus the local defence was organized by local lords; in consequence they became more and more independent of their nominal rulers, kings and emperors, and in many cases became even more powerful and wealthy than these. This process of gradual dissolution of centralized authority had already begun in the mid-ninth century and strengthened the already existing tendency to feudal fragmentation.

A relative security returned to Europe by the eleventh century; the dangerous invasions and migrations with their accompanying upheavals came to an end and in large parts of the continent a more-or-less permanent ethnic pattern emerged. From now on changes in political frontiers or the emergence and disappearance of states were due mainly to dynastic policies and aspirations, not to migrations of whole peoples.

It would not be inappropriate to call the period between the seventh and eleventh centuries in Europe the age of transition or transformation, in the sense that during these centuries there emerged a new Europe which differed profoundly from the Europe of Classical times.

New nations living in Antiquity beyond the horizon of the Greeks and Romans and therefore not considered belonging to Europe, became accepted into the European community by their adoption of Christianity and its cultural values and by their adherence to the common political system. The continent was politically and even more so economically fragmented into innumerable small units but already in the eleventh century there was a vague but growing awareness of religious and cultural solidarity especially vis-à-vis the Muslim world. But this awareness was not strong enough to stop the quarrels between the Orthodox and Catholic Churches or to avert the great schisms of the mid-eleventh century.

The eleventh century also marks the end of the transitional period in the
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

economy; serfdom was from now on the dominant mode of production in medieval Europe in which ties of vassalage were also dominant, forming thus the socio-political structure properly called feudal. In some parts of Western and Northern Europe, after a long stagnation, agriculture went through a process of innovation with the introduction of the heavy plough, open fields, triennial rotation, all of which improved methods of producing food. There also emerged new technologies in industrial production such as the application of water power in cloth-making or to activate hammers and bellows in producing more and better iron and iron implements. Transport was made easier on land by the invention of the whippletree for long wagons and the better harnessing of horses; much improvement was also made in ship construction.

No less important was the rise of European towns after so many centuries of decadence. Most spectacular was the revival of Italian towns, especially the ports of Venice, Amalfi, Pisa and Genoa. Before the tenth century their merchants had already started to develop trade with the Byzantine empire as well as with Muslim countries of North Africa and the Near East, exporting timber, metals and slaves, and importing luxury goods such as silk fabrics and spices but also flax, cotton, olive oil and soap. In the eleventh century the Italian merchant republics already dominated the Mediterranean trade; the most active among them, Venice, was given free-trade privileges in all Byzantine ports by the Byzantine emperor and nearly monopolized maritime transport so that Byzantium became a commercial colony of the Venetians.

In the eleventh century Western Europe, until then involved in the struggle for survival in the face of many invasions, gained enough forces to abandon the defensive and prepare to take the offensive.

The offensive started in Sicily; between 1060 and 1091 the Normans conquered the entire island from its Arab rulers and founded a strong state from which they attacked the North African coast and its towns. In 1085 Toledo, one of the most important Muslim cities in Spain, fell into the hands of the Christians. Although the Christian offensive was then halted by the interventions of Berber Almoravids and Almohads for more than a century, this date nevertheless marks the real beginning of the reconquista, the Spanish Muslims being driven permanently onto the defensive.

By the end of the century the First Crusade — the earliest serious overseas enterprise and one in which various European peoples were represented — had also achieved its first success with the conquest of Jerusalem and some other towns in the Levant. For nearly two hundred years the Europeans, called Franks by their Muslim enemies, animated at the beginning by a sincere religious zeal and later by the more mundane interests of feudal lords and Italian merchants, tried to incorporate the eastern Mediterranean into their sphere of influence. But the Muslim counteroffensives, in spite of further Crusades, gradually eroded the Latin states in the Levant and succeeded at the end of the thirteenth century in expelling
the last Crusaders from Palestine. In the meantime the Byzantine empire, regarded by the Westerners with envy and hostility, became the main victim of the Crusades, emerging at the end much weaker than before. The real victors of this two centuries' long struggle were the Muslims and then the Italian republics which became great mercantile powers.

In the preceding pages we have amply shown the various implications which the Muslim presence on the southern shores of the Mediterranean in North Africa had on Western Europe. Although we do not subscribe fully to Pirenne's thesis, it nevertheless remains a historical fact that with the Arab conquest of North Africa the Mediterranean Basin ceased to be a part of a single large cultural area as it has been in the preceding millennium and became divided between the European (or Christian) and the Arabo-Berber (or Muslim) zones, each with its own culture and going separate ways.

From the Western European point of view, Africa became identified with the Muslim world as it was from this region that the main incursions and invasions, but also various influences and ideas, were coming. When more intensive commercial contacts between the northern and southern shores of the Mediterranean developed later, Africa, which the Europeans then came to know, was still Muslim Africa. It is thus not surprising that Africa was identified with the arch-enemy of Christianity, and its inhabitants, irrespective of their colour, were regarded and treated accordingly. The lack in Europe of any direct contacts with Africa beyond the Muslim sphere must have inevitably led to the emergence of a very distorted image of the continent and particularly of its black inhabitants. Some recent studies, mainly those by J. Dévisse and F. de Medeiros have clearly shown how both this ignorance, and the presumed identification of black Africans with Muslims, fashioned the European image of black Africans as the impersonation of sin, evil and inferiority. It was in those early medieval times that European negative attitudes, prejudices and hostility to peoples of black skin emerged, to be later strengthened by the slave trade and slavery.

Africa, Asia and the Indian Ocean

Since the general aspects of the Indian Ocean factor in African history, particularly those of a geographical and oceanographical nature, are discussed in Volume II of the General History, we shall here examine only such developments that were significant in the period between the seventh and eleventh centuries.

12. The term 'Moors' (and other derivates of Lat. Mauri) signified for a long time both the Muslims and the blacks; only later the distinction was being made between 'white Moors' and 'black Moors' (Blackamoors); cf. J. Devisse, 1979a, pp. 53-4 and notes on p. 220.
In the course of the last two decades a few specialized colloquiums and some collective studies have been dedicated to the problem of relations between different parts of the Indian Ocean region;\(^{15}\) a common feature of them was to call attention to extant problems and to indicate orientations for future research rather than offering definitive answers to a great number of as yet unsolved questions of paramount interest for the history of Africa and the adjacent islands.

The period under discussion is especially beset by these unsolved problems. The main difficulty arises from the fact that owing to some peculiar coincidences—in contrast to the preceding and subsequent periods—our knowledge about the history of the Indian Ocean and the relations between the countries bordering it, is based on rather slender evidence.

It consists up to now of a few, mostly second-hand accounts written by Muslim authors after the tenth century, of some scattered archaeological findings of goods of Asian provenance on the East African coast and on the islands, and of some parallels in the material culture. The situation is not helped by the insufficiency of historical material originating in South India and South-east Asia whose history at this period is far less well known than that of the Islamic countries to the west of India. Another difficulty concerns the dating; in Africa we do find some plants of unquestionably Asian origin, and some African languages—particularly Kiswahili—contain many Indian loan-words, but to pinpoint the precise time of their introduction is problematic. As for other problems and questions that are waiting to be tackled, it suffices to look at the long list catalogued in the report of the Unesco meeting on historical relations across the Indian Ocean\(^{16}\) to see the enormous research that needs to be done before a clearer picture of the mutual contacts in this region emerges.

**Muslim commerce**

The important place that the Islamic empire held in inter-continental relations was demonstrated earlier on in this chapter and we do not propose here to recount all the factors that played a role in establishing its predominance in the fields of economics, trade, navigation etc.

In contrast to the Mediterranean Sea, the Indian Ocean has been in general an ocean of peace. The trade relations between its peoples, going back to early times, though not always advantageous in the same way to all participants, were only rarely disturbed by wars. Permanent trade tendencies seem to have been stronger than transitional political ones, the push towards economic exchanges stronger than political antagonism. In the early medieval Mediterranean, Muslim and Christian powers were involved in a continuous struggle and although commercial contacts never


\(^{16}\) Unesco, 1980.
totally ceased, the state of war was not generally favourable to trade. By
contrast, the expansion of Islam in the Indian Ocean had not negatively in­
fluenced Arabo-Persian trade activities since the merchants were anxious
not to disturb established commercial relations through forceful conver­
sion.

This does not mean, however, that the Indian Ocean trade has been an
idyllic one. In addition to the slave trade, which was often accompanied by
warlike deeds and the use of force, there existed throughout the period
large-scale piracy. But it should be pointed out that it never reached the
extent known from the Mediterranean where it was inflamed and even jus­
tified by religious differences.

There were some other negative factors that interfered with the other­
wise continuous prosperity of the Muslim enterprise. In the second half of
the ninth century two incidents seriously disrupted the Indian Ocean
trade. The first was the great Zandj revolt in the region of lower Iraq and
the Persian Gulf in the years 252/866–270/883.17 Some of the most
important ports – Baṣra, Ubulla, Abadan – were devastated and Baghdad
was cut off from access to the sea. The merchants of these ports who sur­
vived the massacres fled into the interior or to other ports, and many ships
were lost. For more than fifteen years the maritime trade in this region
stagnated from want of merchant capital, goods and ships.

The second blow to the Muslim trade occurred almost simultaneously,
in 265/878, when the forces of the Chinese rebel Huang Ch’ao sacked Can­
ton and massacred a huge number of foreign traders, mostly from Muslim
countries. The lives of some merchants were apparently spared, for accord­
ing to the narrator of this disastrous incident, the rebels oppressed Arab
shipmasters, imposed illegal burdens on the merchants and appropriated
their wealth.18

Two calamities of this order could not, of course, occur without leaving
traces on Muslim merchant seafaring. The ports at the terminal of the Per­
sian Gulf went through a period of decline and in the East the Muslim
merchants preferred to stop at Kalah (on the west coast of the Malayan
peninsula) at that time a part of the Śrīvijāya empire of Sumatra (cf. pp.
27–9 below) and to meet there with their Chinese counterparts.

In spite of the calamities of the ninth century, and the monopolistic ten­
dencies of the Śrīvijāya rulers, the Muslim trade gradually recovered and
slowly started to regain its former importance. Not even some disasters of
the tenth century, such as the sack of Baṣra by the Karmatians from eastern
Arabia in 308/920, the burning of the whole Omani fleet in 330/942 by the
ruler of Baṣra besieged by this fleet, or the earthquake that destroyed Śirāf
in 366/977, were able to stop the movements of Muslim ships on the sea­
lanes of the Indian Ocean.

The eleventh century witnessed a major shift in the Muslim trade caused by the decline of the Abbasid Caliphate in the Middle East and the simultaneous rise of the Fatimids on North African soil. The age-old rivalry between the route terminating in the Persian Gulf, and the route leading through the Red Sea, was then resolved to the advantage of the latter after many centuries in which it played a minor role in Indian Ocean commerce.

So far we have spoken about the role of the Muslim Arabs and Persians in Indian Ocean interrelations. What about the others; Africans, Indians, Indonesians and Chinese? To what degree did these peoples participate in these relations? Did their cultural and material interchange occur through direct or only through indirect contacts?

All this is connected with another problem: do we not overestimate or exaggerate the part played by Muslims in the Indian Ocean merely on the grounds that the evidence and documentation for their activities is at present the most abundant? Only a careful study of all available evidence could bring a definitive answer; already the discovery of some new facts and aspects of the question permits a better assessment of the role played in Indian Ocean relations by non-Muslims. Nevertheless the overall picture of Muslim predominance in this area seems to be unaffected by the recognition of other peoples’ roles.

This is only natural: the dominant position of Muslim trade did not emerge ‘ex nihilo’, it reflected the dynamics of the whole socio-economic structure of the Muslim world in these centuries as well as its favourable geographical situation on the crossroads of continents. As mentioned earlier, none of the cultural areas of the Old World was able at this time to sustain continuous contacts with all the others; the Islamic area was the only one to develop a truly intercontinental trade network. And the period between the seventh and eleventh centuries was just the time when this intercontinental trade evolved to reach its maturity, even if its greatest expansion was to be achieved only later.

Chinese commerce

Now to the participation of other nations; we will deal firstly with the Chinese, mainly for the reason that there are already some exhaustive studies on their enterprise in the Indian Ocean and contacts with Africa.\(^{19}\) Chinese contacts in ancient and medieval times with the other main areas of the Old World – India, western Asia and the lands around the Mediterranean – were established almost entirely through the export trade in which the most important commodity was silk and, later, chinaware.

Although China already possessed the necessary technical knowledge

and means for long-distance sea voyages on the Indian Ocean under the 
T'ang dynasty (618-906), she did not employ her own ships for trade 
beyond the Malayan peninsula. The reasons for Chinese absence from the 
Indian Ocean were of a cultural and institutional order. In the centuries 
immediately preceding the rise of Islam, Ceylon (now Sri Lanka) was the 
main entrepôt for sea trade between China and western Asia. Ships from 
Champa or Indonesian states used to sail as far west as Ceylon; from here 
westwards the trade was in the hands of Persians and Axumites. 
The Chinese came to know the Indian Ocean through Indian, Persian 
and later Arab intermediaries. They presumably were not aware of the 
existence of another continent at the other side of the ocean. The fragmentary 
accounts in Chinese literary sources about Africans and Africa seem to 
be drawn from Muslim accounts. In consequence they came to think of the 
Africans as subjects of Muslim rulers and of their countries as forming part 
of the Arab empire. African commodities wanted and welcomed by 
China were easily obtainable through foreign merchants who came in their 
own ships to Chinese ports. 
Among the African goods that reached China the most important were 
ivory, ambergis, frankincense and myrrh as well as Zandj slaves. In the 
well-known account of Ibn Lâkîs about the attack on Kanbalû (Pemba) in 
the year 334/945-6 by the Wâk-Wâk people, the Chinese are also said to 
demand tortoiseshell and panther skins. 
For some time the opinion was held that the history of East Africa has 
been written in Chinese porcelain. Indeed, in East African coastal cities 
an enormous quantity of Chinese porcelain has been found, so that this 
ware must have formed an important part of Chinese exports to Africa. 
Sherds which closely correspond to finds on the East African coast have 
also been found in Somalia and South Arabia; all this indicates that the 
whole area of the western Indian Ocean may be considered as forming one 
single area from the point of view of imports of this type. But the bulk of 
the Chinese porcelain belongs to a period later than the eleventh century. A 
similar situation obtains for Chinese coins found on the coast. The evidence 
thus points to the conclusion that whereas African commodities 
formed a constant part of Chinese imports from early times, the arrival of 
Chinese goods in significant quantities could be placed only in the period 
after the eleventh century. As mentioned above, the exchange between 
China and Africa was not direct, but passed through the Muslim trade 
network in the Indian Ocean.

21. ibid.
23. Buzurg ibn Shahriyâr, 1883-6; cf. also Chapter 25 below.
25. ibid.
Indian commerce

The entire problem of India's role in the Indian Ocean, particularly in the first millennium of the Christian era, is still open. It concerns mainly the participation of Indians in international trade, and the Indian influence on various parts of this region. The task of solving this complex problem is not made easier by the almost total lack of evidence of Indian provenance in the period under discussion.

One of the first observations that springs to mind is the great difference between the Indian impact on the eastern and western parts of the Indian Ocean area; throughout the whole of South-east Asia the Indian cultural influence is more than evident both in material and spiritual spheres, notwithstanding the fact that in some parts it was overlaid later by Islam. On the opposite side of the Indian Ocean there is nothing comparable to Borobudur, the Old Javanese Ramayana epics, Balinese Hinduism, the Sanskrit loan-words in dozens of languages and so on. It seems as if the Indians had established a north-south line across the Indian Ocean, deliberately deciding to turn their eyes only eastwards and to avert them from the west. This must have occurred sometime in the middle of the first millennium; in the first centuries of the Christian era there is enough evidence of Indian ships plying between India and the western parts of the ocean and of Indian influence in Ethiopia and even Nubia, but as has been rightly remarked by D. K. Keswani, this glorious period of Indian maritime activities did not last very long. But even so, the Indian cultural impact in this part of Africa is weaker than that in South-east Asia and not comparable with it. Later, at the time of the flourishing of the East African coastal cities, the Indians started to participate in steadily growing numbers in the trade between Africa and India but it was then too late for Indian culture to exercise any deeper influence on the already Islamized coastal society.

In the period between the seventh and the eleventh centuries, relations between Africa and India seem to have been at their lowest ebb. Contact nevertheless existed, and was mostly connected with the exchange of goods. One of the most important African commodities exported to India has always been ivory. The ivory trade flourished already in Antiquity and there is hardly any Arabic source that does not mention it when describing the East African coast. Al-Mas'ūdī (d. 345/956) wrote that ivory from East Africa was destined for export to India and China and adds that its main entrepôt was Oman. This confirms the already expressed suggestion that there was no direct connection between Africa and India at this time. As

27. There is evidence about the activities of Indian pirates operating from Socotra during this time, but pirates do not usually fulfil the role of cultural apostles. Al-Mu'kaddasi, 1877, p. 14; al-Mas’ūdī, 1861–77, Vol. 3, pp. 36–7; cf. G. F. Hourani, 1951, p. 80.
28. Cf. G. S. P. Freeman-Grenville, 1962a, pp. 201–2, who discusses the commercial and nautical reasons for the lack of direct communications.
for other export goods no evidence is available from these centuries but we have to bear in mind that al-Idrïsï’s (d. 549/1154) well-known report of African iron exports to India relates in all probability to earlier times and therefore to our period. This African product played an important role in the development of one branch of Indian industry, the production of steel blades. It seems that this is one of the rare occurrences of African export goods that did not belong in the category of primary commodities; it must be stressed here that Africa did not export iron ore (in any case too bulky a cargo for the capacity of contemporary vessels) but already a processed product, probably pig-iron.  

Although in later periods many people of African origin imported as slaves came to prominence in India, nothing similar occurred in our period. Some African slaves were certainly exported to India via Arabia or Persia but so far no corresponding documents or other evidence has come to light. Nor do we have sufficient indications about population movements in the opposite direction, of Indians towards Africa. In many oral traditions from the coast and adjacent islands there are many references to people called Debuli (Wadebuli) who are believed to have arrived at the coast even before the Shirazi and thus before the twelfth century. Some ancient buildings are connected with them. Their name is considered to be derived from the great port of al-Daybul (Dabhol) in the mouth of the Indus River. The date of their arrival at the coast is highly controversial, some traditions placing it before the conversion of the coastal towns to Islam, others connecting it with the introduction of firearms, and thus rather late. Only one person with the nisba al-Dabuli is recorded, a man whom the Portuguese installed as sultan of Kilwa in 1502.

All this does not exclude the possibility that some people of Indian origin had settled – most likely as traders – on the coast in earlier times. But in any case their number would not have been great since otherwise more concrete traces, in written sources or in material culture, would have been preserved. Kiswahili contains, indeed, many loan-words of Indian origin but until now it has been impossible to determine the epoch in which they were introduced. However, owing to the well-documented increase of Indian expatriates in later centuries, these loan-words seem to have been borrowed comparatively recently, certainly not in the period under discussion.

Contacts with Indonesia

Whereas the contacts between Africa on one hand, and China and India on the other, have been, as indicated, indirect rather than direct, there existed on the other side of the Indian Ocean one region that left indubitable traces
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

in at least some parts of Africa. The Indonesian contribution to the peopling of Madagascar has been long recognized. At present one of the main tasks of Malagasy history is to elucidate the process of mingling of elements of Indonesian and African origin in the Malagasy culture. As these and cognate problems of Malagasy history are discussed in other chapters of this work,\textsuperscript{31} we shall deal here only with those topics that have a direct bearing on the African continent.

It seems now that the impact of the Indonesians on the African mainland has been exaggerated. There is virtually no evidence for direct Indonesian penetration of East Africa similar to what obtains in Madagascar. Until now no archaeological, linguistic or somatic data have been discovered to demonstrate a prolonged presence of Indonesians. The theory of H. Deschamps\textsuperscript{32} that before settling in Madagascar the proto-Malagasy made a stay on the coast of Africa where they mixed or married with Africans, lacks any supporting evidence. Raymond Kent has expanded this hypothesis, assuming a movement from Indonesia into East Africa before the arrival of the Bantu-speaking groups; later the Indonesians and Bantu met and mixed in the interior and from this mingling the Afro-Malagasy population resulted. The expansion of the Bantu to the coastal areas forced this population to migrate to Madagascar.\textsuperscript{33}

These theories were developed on the ground that the Indonesians were believed to be unable to accomplish a non-stop migration across the Indian Ocean. As a corollary to this some further stopping places like the Nicobars, Sri Lanka, India, the Laccadives and Maldives are mentioned so that the Indonesian migration is seen as a series of relatively short springs from island to island with some stops in India and East Africa. Such a reconstruction is in itself not impossible or improbable but similar stops must have been of rather short duration as the Indonesians have left no discernible vestiges of their presence in these places.

Much has been made, chiefly by G. P. Murdock, of the so-called 'Malaysian botanical complex' comprising such plants as rice, bananas, taro (coco-yam), yams, breadfruit tree and others that came to form the staple food of many Africans. Murdock and others believed that this complex had been brought to Madagascar during the first millennium before the Christian era by migrants from Indonesia who travelled right along the coast of southern Asia before reaching the East African coast. Leaving aside the complex problem of the origin of these plants, it should be pointed out that the diffusion of cultivated plants does not depend on physical migrations of the peoples who first started to cultivate them or had earlier adopted them, as is more than clearly demonstrated by the diffusion of some American crops through western and central Africa after the sixteenth century. This, of course, does not exclude the possibility that some

\textsuperscript{32} H. Deschamps, 1960.
\textsuperscript{33} R. K. Kent, 1970.
of the South-east Asian plants were introduced later to the African mainland from Madagascar.

There is, however, no doubt that the Indonesians were capable and accomplished navigators and that they undertook many voyages in all directions from their island homes. Apart from being perhaps the first to open maritime commerce with China, they were particularly active on the sea routes towards India. In Sumatra and Java there emerged in the second half of the first millennium great maritime powers such as the empire of Śrīvijāya in Sumatra (seventh to thirteenth centuries) and the state of the Sailendra dynasty (eighth century) in Java which later also came to power in Śrīvijāya.34

We are here concerned merely with those aspects of their history that relate to the general situation in the Indian Ocean region on the one hand, and to their possible contacts with Africa on the other. The Śrīvijāya state, with its first centre in south-eastern Sumatra, emerged as a maritime power in the second half of the seventh century. During the following centuries its territorial as well as commercial expansion continued and when in the tenth century the first accounts of Arabic/Persian geographers started to appear, the Śrīvijāya ruler became for them the 'Maharaja' par excellence, being the most powerful and important sovereign of the whole region, the 'King of the isles of the eastern seas'. The Śrīvijāya rulers imposed their control on the main export ports in the region, thus securing a vast monopoly on the spice trade. The control of the Malacca Strait gave them an enormous advantage since all maritime traffic had to flow through it and to call at its ports. The relations with the Cholas in South India on the one hand, and with China on the other, were continuous and friendly until the first quarter of the eleventh century.

After the almost total destruction of the Muslim merchant colony in China in 265/878 (cf. p. 21 above) and the ensuing decline of direct Muslim–Chinese trade, the Śrīvijāya's rulers seized the opportunity to insert themselves into this lucrative enterprise; the eastbound Muslim ships met with the southbound Chinese ships at Kalah in the Malacca Strait, a port under the suzerainty of the Śrīvijāya empire. At the same time the ships of Śrīvijāya participated in the Indian Ocean trade; the close contacts with South India are documented by inscriptions in Buddhist monasteries and schools of Negapatam. As for the voyages to the western Indian Ocean we dispose of a few but extremely important Arabic texts. The first is the well-known account about the attack of the Wāk-Wāk people on Қanbalū (Pemba) in 334/945–6.35

The mention of the whole year's journey necessary to accomplish the

35. Cf. Buzurg ibn Shahriyar, 1883–6, pp. 174–5; a full translation of this account is to be found in Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. II, pp. 706–7, where the second sentence should read: '... they arrived in about a thousand of ships and fought vigorously against them (inhabitants of Қanbalū) but were not able to defeat them.'
voyage from their homes to East Africa already led the narrator to the conclusion that the islands of Wāk-Wāk are situated opposite China. G. Ferrand has shown that under the term Wāk-Wāk the Muslim authors understood two regions or people, one somewhere in the south-western part of the Indian Ocean, including Madagascar and the African coast to the south of Sufāla, the other in South-east Asia, in present-day Indonesia. Various fables and ‘mirabilia’ were narrated about them and successive authors added a lot of contradictory details so that the picture is highly confused. But it seems that until the present nobody paid attention to the curious coincidence that the Wāk-Wāk appear in Arabic geographical literature always in connection with those areas where people of Indonesian/Malayan origin lived together with or were neighbours of or mixed with the Negroids. This seems to be confirmed by al-Bīrūnī who says that the peoples of the Wāk-Wāk island are dark-skinned although in their neighbourhood live others of lighter skin and resembling the Turks (the Muslim stereotype for the Mongoloids). Al-Bīrūnī had in mind here parts of South-east Asia and his Wāk-Wāk is either New Guinea (Irian) where a locality called Fakfak is still to be found, or some of the Moluccas Islands partly inhabited by Melanesians, or both. Many Muslim authors were not always capable or they did not care to ascertain the precise ethnicity of the people called Wāk-Wāk. So each single reference has to be analysed in its own context before reaching the probable concrete meaning of the term.

In this case some details of Ibn Lākīs’ narrative point unmistakably to South-east Asia as the home of these Wāk-Wāk people. And since we know that at this period the Śrīvijāya empire was the major maritime power in the eastern Indian Ocean, it is not too far-fetched to see in this long-distance expedition an attempt to expand the area of Śrīvijāya’s trade network in order to reach directly the sources of African commodities, thus evading the Muslim monopoly. It was perhaps not the first voyage of this kind, and it is possible that these expeditions began at the time when Muslim commercial activities were severely restricted by the Zandj revolt as well as by the expulsion of foreign merchants from Chinese ports in the second half of the ninth century. How far these expeditions — and al-Idrīsī confirms that Indonesian ships continued to visit African shores and Madagascar in later centuries, too — were related to the new waves of Indonesian migrations to Madagascar between the tenth and twelfth centuries, remains an as yet unsolved problem. On the other hand it is not excluded that these late migrations were in some way connected with the invasions or raids of the South Indian Cholas on Śrīvijāya in the first half of the eleventh century that considerably weakened the state and could have led

36. G. Ferrand, 1929. For the most up-to-date discussion on this problem, see G. R. Tibbets, 1979, pp. 166–77.
Conclusion

In comparison with the preceding period the extent and character of mutual contacts between the African continent and other parts of the Indian Ocean region underwent some quantitative and qualitative changes.

First we can observe a steadily increasing presence of Middle Eastern peoples in all parts of the area and particularly on the East African coast. There the Arabs and Persians were able to develop further their commercial activities whose foundations had already been laid in the first centuries of the Christian era. This new expansion was connected with the rise of the Caliphate as a unifying political, cultural and economic great power. With this background it was possible for the Muslims to monopolize the East African trade and achieve a dominating position in the external relations of this region. While these contacts undoubtedly contributed to the flourishing of some coastal cities as centres of international trade and led to the rise of an African entrepreneurial class, it should not be forgotten that at the same time great numbers of African slaves were exported outside the continent to contribute to the economies of various Asiatic countries, mostly in the Middle East.

Secondly there was a marked decline of direct contacts with India. Before the seventh century Ethiopian ships traded with some Indian ports and these relations are well attested by hoards of Indian (Kushan) coins found in Ethiopia as well as by many traces of Indian influence in Ethiopian material and intellectual culture. Between the seventh and eleventh centuries nothing comparable is to be observed; it was due mainly to the passing of the traffic between India and Ethiopia into the hands of Muslims who imposed their own cultural layers on these relations.

Thirdly, notwithstanding the Muslim preponderance in the Indian Ocean the Indonesians were still able to maintain contacts with Madagascar and even with some parts of the African coast. Their impact on the mainland, however, must have been negligible; assertions of some scholars about the decisive contribution of Indonesia to African culture are to be considered as hypotheses without sufficient evidence. The situation in the case of Madagascar is, of course, quite different as the Indonesian connection is more than evident.

We shall now investigate the role played by peoples of African origin in the Indian Ocean context. In assessing it we should bear in mind that during this period only a tiny part of the African continent, i.e. the narrow coastal strip, was in contact with the outside world. The number of Africans with any opportunity to exercise any influence or to be exposed to it, must have been rather restricted. There was thus a substantial difference from the situation obtained in West Africa where cross-cultural contacts
occurred on a wider and deeper front. But even so, their role has been in no way negligible, on the contrary, it was the Africans who contributed substantially to profound changes in the destinies of a great empire. The Zandj revolt, an authentic social rising, had far-reaching consequences in many fields – political, social, economic. The uprising shattered the unity of the Muslim empire as great provinces broke away from the Caliphate, and it paved the way for the downfall of the old Abbasid regime. The political crisis ushered in by the Zandj revolt had deepened the cleavage between the social classes, and the well-to-do classes, being afraid for their privileges, began to put their confidence in the professional armies of Turkish and other mercenaries as the only force capable of keeping order; this heralded the new era in the history of the Muslim Middle East. The revolt also taught a lesson to the Muslim ruling classes; never again do we find in the Muslim East any large-scale enterprise based on concentration of slave labour and it seems that the exploitation of slaves in agriculture and irrigation was abandoned. This in turn led in the next century to the rise of feudalism as the prevailing mode of production in eastern Muslim countries, the slave exploitation giving way to the feudal one. Whether there was as a consequence a decrease in the number of imported African slaves is, in the absence of any statistics, an open question. Another consequence of the Zandj revolt seems to have been a hardening of racial feelings in those times; the black Africans came to be held in contempt, in spite of the teachings of Islam, and there emerged in Muslim literature many previously unknown themes expressing a negative attitude towards blacks.

Other aspects of African history during this period were partly due to the interaction of various Indian Ocean regions. Among them we should mention the growth of the participation of towns on the East African coast in the international maritime trade. Even if the shipping was controlled by foreign merchants, the producers and exporters were African coastal peoples. Although the full flowering of Swahili political, economic and cultural life occurred in the next centuries, it was in our period that its foundations were laid.
In Chapter 1 an attempt was made to look at the main events in the Old World in their relations to African history in the period between the first/seventh and fifth/eleventh centuries. This survey indicated that one of the most dynamic forces at work during this period was Islamic society in all its manifestations in the spheres of religion, politics, economics and culture.

The purpose of this chapter is to describe the coming of Islam, its political expansion and doctrinal evolution, as the background needed for a better understanding of historical and ideological issues that will be dealt with or touched upon in this as well as in the remaining volumes of the General History of Africa.

Preliminary remarks

From the Islamic point of view it is not correct to say that the Prophet Muḥammad is the founder of Islam or that he was preaching a new faith. Islam is not the name of some unique faith presented for the first time by Muḥammad, as he was the last of the prophets each reiterating the faith of his predecessor. This is based on the following Islamic doctrine: God having, since He created men, sent prophets to guide them and to show them the best path to follow on earth and prepare for their eternal bliss, decided at last that mankind had reached such a degree of perfection that it was fit to receive His last revelation and to understand and appreciate the laws that should govern its behaviour in every field. His choice for the role of this last prophet fell on an Arab from the town of Mecca called Muḥammad ibn ‘Abd Allāh, belonging to the tribe of Kuraysh.

Muḥammad’s predecessors in the prophetic missions were – apart from some lesser figures – Abraham, Moses and Jesus Christ, who all preached belief in one unique God on the ground of scriptures that were sent and revealed to them from Heaven. Those who believed in those prophets and scriptures, Jews and Christians, are called ahl al-Kitāb (people of the Book) and as possessors of a part of the revealed truth, have the right to special consideration from Muslims. It was God’s purpose from the start to let all
mankind believe solely in Him as the highest being. Thus the successive
messages contained two main tenets: monotheism and universality. The
first people to be given this message were the Jews but in the course of their
deviated from the original message by usurping the mono­
theistic belief for themselves and denying it to others. To rectify this devi­
ation from His original purpose God sent Jesus, who indeed restored the
universality of monotheism. But the Christians, like the Jews, deviated,
this time by proclaiming Jesus son of God and thus abandoning the mono­
theistic creed. And it was Muḥammad who was entrusted with the mission
of bringing the whole of humanity back to genuine universal monotheism,
Islam. Muḥammad is thus not the founder of Islam, a religion that already
existed, but the last in the chain of the prophets, being the ‘Seal of the
prophets’ (khätimu l-anbiyä’). Islam thus venerates all preceding prophets
as messengers of God’s will. According to the Islamic doctrine, Jesus was a
mortal, although it was God’s will to make his birth a miracle like the
creation of the first man, Adam, ancestor of the human race. It does not
follow that he had the least particle of divinity. His mother, the Virgin, our
lady Miryam – mawlätunä Miryam as the Muslims call her – enjoys the
greatest respect in the Islamic world. Jesus was not killed by the Jews but
God recalled him to His presence. He did not need to redeem the sin of
Adam since God forgave Adam before compelling him to leave paradise
and live on earth.

Muḥammad himself insisted that he was only a man and made a clear
distinction between his humanity and his role as Prophet: ‘I am a mortal
like you. In matters revealed to me by God, you must obey my instruc­
tions. But you know more about your own worldly affairs than I do. So my
advice in these matters is not binding.’ But since it was inconceivable that
Muḥammad as the Messenger of God would act contrary to Divine will,
belief in his guidance in worldly matters became firmly established in the
Islamic faith. We will return to the role of Prophetic tradition (sunna) later.

The life of Muḥammad

It would obviously take too long to recount the Prophet’s life here in detail.
Since there exists a vast literature in several languages dealing with it, we
will point out only the main events.

The Arabian peninsula on the eve of the seventh century of the Chris­
tian era was inhabited by a great number of politically independent tribes
who together formed a linguistic and cultural community. The majority of

1. C. Quran, 28:53 where the people of the Book say: ‘Verily before it [i.e. the Quran] we
were Muslims’.
2. It is therefore erroneous to call the Muslims Muhammadans or Islam Muhammadan­
ism. These words were introduced into European languages on the model of Buddhism and
Christianity, religions in which the founders are worshipped as divine beings.
them were nomads (Beduins) but in South Arabia as well as in numerous oases sedentary populations practised agriculture. Along the ancient trade route leading from the shores of the Indian Ocean to the Mediterranean existed a few towns whose inhabitants were engaged in commerce but still retained the customs and moral code of the nomads. Mecca was the main commercial and religious centre of Arabia. The religion of the pre-Islamic Arabs was largely animistic and gods or spirits believed to inhabit blocks of stone, rocks, trees or wells were worshipped. Some of the gods were of astral origin (the Sun, the planet Venus). There was also a notion of a supreme being called Allāh but he was not the object of worship; more important seems to have been the worship of Al-Lāt, ‘the goddess’. The idols of some of these gods were set up in an ancient sanctuary in Mecca known as the Ka'ba. In general the Arabs in these times - both nomadic and sedentary - cared little for religious matters, religion being for them only a part of the customs of their forefathers.

In Arabia there were also large settlements of people of Jewish faith; many of them were converted Arabs who lived mainly in oases and had a similar 'tribal' organization to the Arabs, who practised traditional religion. Christianity had found its way into Arabia very early; its main centres were in South Arabia (Nadjrán) and on the fringes of the desert in Mesopotamia and Transjordan. Individual Christians were scattered in all towns while in the desert lived solitary monks.

But it was first to the pagan Arabs that Muḥammad was sent with the Divine message. Born in Mecca after his father’s death and early orphaned, he had spent his life as a trader until he was 40. He was known for his probity and justice in all his dealings; in no other way was he distinguished from the others. In about the year 610 of the Christian era he received the first revelation of God. Dictated to him by the angel Gabriel this ordered him to preach Islam to his fellow men. These first revelations centred on the unity of God and the last day and exhorted men not to neglect religion in favour of worldly business. They also contained a statement of the principles of equality of all men without regard to their social position or wealth.

When Muḥammad started his preaching and assembled around himself a small community of believers, the Meccan oligarchy of wealthy merchants and bankers soon became aware of the revolutionary content of the message and considered it a threat to their privileges. There was also the danger that Mecca as the centre of Arabic traditional religion with its sanctuary of the Ka'ba would lose its importance through the new religion. The annual pilgrimage visited by thousands of the Arabs from the whole peninsula, was a source of considerable profit for the Meccan merchants. And although Muḥammad at the beginning did not aspire to any political leadership in Mecca, his moral and intellectual qualities strengthened by his Prophetic mission and communication with God made him in the eyes of the oligarchy a dangerous rival. So the history of Muḥammad and his community until the year 622 is a story of persecution and even attempts
on the Prophet’s life. Under these circumstances the Prophet ordered several of the new converts including one of his daughters and her husband to emigrate to Christian Ethiopia where they were friendlyy received by the Negus. The idea of leaving a country where injustice, oppression and persecution are prevalent, and taking refuge somewhere else where the Muslims can gather their forces before returning to renew their quest for life according to Islamic principles, is a key idea in Islam, repeated often in the subsequent history of many Islamic revivalist movements.

When the persecutions reached their peak, Muḥammad and his followers moved to the oasis town of Yathrib, subsequently called Madīnat al-Nabī (the City of the Prophet), shortly to be known as Medina. This happened in the year 622 of the Christian era and that date is the first year of the Muslim calendar. The transfer from Mecca to Medina is called ḥidjra; the usual translation ‘the flight’ is incorrect as the true meaning of the Arabic word is ‘severing previous tribal ties and entering into new ones’.

Muḥammad was invited to Medina by its inhabitants who came to be known as Anṣār (the Helpers); the Meccan emigrants were called Muhādjirūn (those who undertook the ḥidjrā, or Emigrants) and these two groups form together the Aṣhāb – the Companions – (of the Prophet). In the next years until his death in 11/632 the Prophet strengthened and governed the Muslim community (Arabic, umma), beat off the attacks of his Meccan enemies and gained supremacy by means of diplomacy and war over a wide confederacy of the Arab ‘tribes’. When he was sufficiently strong he returned to Mecca as the victor and religious and political leader whose authority was supreme. At the time when God recalled him from this life, Muḥammad was virtually lord of most of Arabia and already prepared to expand Islam outside the peninsula.

The Qur’ānic teachings
Both in Mecca and Medina the Prophet received a continuous flow of revelations in the form of verses (āya, pl., āyāt) arranged in chapters (sūra, pl., sūrāt). The 114 sūras of unequal length form together the Qurʾān.

The Qurʾān is not a ‘holy book’ written by Muḥammad. The word means

The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire

recitation and what Muḥammad did was to recite the word of God spoken to him by the angel Gabriel. ‘The Quran is purely divine, while at the same time being intimately related to the inmost personality of the Prophet Muḥammad. The Divine Word flowed through the Prophet’s heart.’ It is not, as generally believed, the Bible of Muslims; the position of the Quran in Islam is quite different because for Muslims the Quran is what Christ himself is for the Christians: the Word of God. The nearest parallel in Islam to the Christian New Testament as the record of Jesus’s deeds and sayings is the hadith. It would be therefore highly blasphemous to attempt to apply textual criticism to the Quran as was done with the Bible, whereas criticism of the hadith is permissible and has since early times been exercised by Muslim scholars.

The teachings of the Quran are comprehensive and destined to give man guidance in his relations with God as well as with other members of human society. The Qur’anic precepts and principles form the basis of the Islamic faith.

The first principle is the absolute monotheism expressed in perhaps the shortest and simplest credo of any religion in the world: ‘There is no god but God and Muhammad is the Prophet of God.’ To pronounce this short sentence (shahāda) is all that a convert to Islam needs to do to become a Muslim. The belief in Muhammad’s prophetic nature is an integral part of this credo because without his prophetic mission the perfection of Islam would not exist.

The shahāda thus forms the first of what are called the ‘Five Pillars of Islam’ (arkān al-islām). The second is the duty of every Muslim to perform ritual prayer (salāt) five times a day. The prayers fix the minds of the believers on God throughout the whole day. It is recommended that prayers should be performed in common with others standing and sitting in ordered rows; all believers pronounce them facing the direction of Mecca. An indispensable part of the prayer is the prescribed ablution before its performance. Thus the prayers have also a practical hygienic value and instil in men the values of collective discipline.

The third pillar is the fast (saum) which consists of forgoing all material pleasures (eating, drinking, sexual relations etc.) from dawn (not from

PLATE 2.2 Representation of Mecca: this plaque, which was made in Iznik, shows in elevation, the plan of the Great Mosque of Mecca with its seven minarets. In the middle of the courtyard one can see the Ka’ba — said to have been built by Abraham — in an angle of which is embedded the Black Stone that every Muslim should, if possible, come to worship at least once in his lifetime. Each small building — and each door — is designated by its name in Naskhi script. Above the plan a Qur’anic inscription, also cursive (Sūra 3: 90–2), recalls the duty of pilgrimage.
sunrise as is often believed) to sunset during Ramḍān, the tenth month of the lunar year. Hence the expression ‘to observe Ramḍān’, meaning to observe the Muslim fast. The sick, persons travelling during Ramḍān, women in labour, workers engaged in arduous tasks and warriors in campaign are exempt from the fast provided that they fast for an equivalent number of days at another time of the year. Fasting is an act of renunciation, of self-denial and as such enhances the spiritual life. It also teaches the rich to undergo the pangs of hunger and so to sympathize with the poor who suffer these privations during the whole year.

The fourth pillar is a highly important obligation to society. It is the compulsory alms known as zakāt which consists in giving to the poor and to certain categories of needy persons a part of the goods that have remained in one’s possession for the whole year. This portion varies from 2.5 per cent to 10 per cent. The zakāt not only emphasized the importance of charity but was also necessary in the early days of Islam to sustain the community which was composed largely of poor emigrants without any means. The zakāt was collected by the Islamic community (umma) and then divided among the categories indicated by the Qur’an. It corresponded to the modern social welfare of the state.

The fifth pillar is the annual pilgrimage to Mecca (ḥādj). This institution reflects Islam’s continuous concern that men should get to know one another and meet as often as possible. It is in the ḥādj that the universal message of Islam is most visible and evident as the Muslims from every corner of the world assemble in the month of Dhu ḥijja at Mecca to perform various ceremonies whose purpose is to commemorate Abraham’s sacrifice at this place. The pilgrimage is obligatory for every Muslim but he is compelled to carry out this duty only if he has the means to do it, if there is no danger on the journey, or if his health is good. He must also be able to leave his family with sufficient means during his absence. For all these reasons the number of people able to carry out this duty is small in relation to the total number of Muslims. But even so, the ḥādj is the largest multinational gathering of human beings on the face of the earth today. Those who perform it are given in these few days a visible proof that they are members of a vast worldwide brotherhood of Islam without distinction of race or language. It fills the pilgrim with a deep awareness of Islamic values and makes him a venerated person after his return as one who was present at the place where the Prophet Muḥammad lived and where God revealed the Qur’an.

Another set of Muslim beliefs is contained in Sūra 4, verse 135: ‘Believe in God and in His Prophet and in the Book which He has sent down to His Prophet and the books which He sent down formerly. He who disbelieves in God and His angels, His books and His apostles and the Last Day, has strayed away [from the truth].’

The Day of Judgment is one of the cornerstones of the Islamic faith; the whole history of mankind will find its end by the resurrection and the Day
of Judgment. The dead await this hour in their tombs whereas the Prophets and martyrs go directly to paradise. All people will appear at the Last Judgment before God to be judged according to their deeds and then sent either to paradise (djanna, lit. garden) or to hell.

The Qur'an also contains a number of prohibitions and recommendations for the worldly life. It forbids the eating of pork and some other animals and the drinking of wine and other alcoholic drinks. In Sūra 17, verses 23–40 we find guidance for everyday behaviour: ostentatious waste, pride and haughtiness are condemned and the Faithful are ordered to give just weight and measure.

Although slavery is considered to be a recognized institution, slaves must be kindly treated, allowed to marry and encouraged to buy their liberty. Masters are recommended to free slaves who are believers.⁵

Islam proclaims the equality of men and women. The Prophet proclaimed that ‘Women are fully men’s sisters before the law.’ Customs wholly alien to the orthodox doctrine have masked this fine aspect of Islam. But in law Muslim women have enjoyed a legal status that women in other

⁵ For a discussion of the Islamic attitude to slavery, cf. Chapter 26 below.
religious systems might until recently have envied them. Muslim women have always had the right to go to law without referring to their husbands and to administer their property independently of them. A woman is not required to bring her husband a dowry, it is the latter who is compelled to pay the bride a certain sum and to give her certain gifts, all of which becomes the wife’s personal property.

The Quran allows a man four legal wives; it thus constituted progress compared with pre-Islamic times when polygamy was unrestricted. Islam, moreover, subjected polygamy to such conditions that it could be regarded as having taken a step towards the abolition or at least a diminution of this social phenomenon. This is clearly to be seen from these Qoranic verses: ‘Marry of the women who seem good to you, two or three or four; but if you fear that you cannot do justice [to so many] then marry one only or any female war-captive you may possess’ (4:3) and ‘You will not be able to deal equally between your wives, even if you wish it’ (4:129).6

**Sharī‘a and fiqh**

Islam is not only a religion, it is a complete way of life, catering for all the fields of human existence. Islam provides guidance for all walks of life; individual and social, material and moral, economic and political, legal and cultural, national and international.7

The sharī‘a is the detailed code of conduct comprising the precepts governing modes and ways of worship and standards of morals and life. It consists of laws that allow and prescribe and that judge between right and wrong. Though each Prophet had the same dīn (religious faith), he brought with him a different sharī‘a that would suit the conditions of his time and his people. Muḥammad as the last Prophet brought with him the final code which was to apply to all mankind for all time to come. The previous sharī‘a were thus abrogated in view of the comprehensive sharī‘a of Muḥammad.

The sources of the Islamic sharī‘a are the Quran and the hadīth, i.e. the words and deeds of the Prophet Muḥammad preserved and handed down by his Companions. Thousands of hadīths were sifted and collected by scholars in collections of traditions, the most famous of them being those of al-Bukhārī (d. 256/870) and Abū Muslim (d. 261/875). The content of the Prophetic tradition is called sunna, i.e. the conduct and behaviour of Muḥammad.

The science that codifies and explains the precepts of sharī‘a is called fiqh and the scholars who are concerned with it are the faqīhs (Arabic pl.,


The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire

fuqahā‘) or doctors of law; fiqh being the Islamic science par excellence, the fakīhs are considered as scholars ('ulamā‘, sing., ‘ālim).

After the great conquest of many countries with different social and economic conditions inherited from ancient times, a number of problems were encountered by the Muslim community. Others arose from the establishment of a state widely different from and more complex than the original community in Medina. Since the Qur'an seldom deals with particular cases and sets out only general principles governing the lives of Muslims, it soon became apparent that the answers to some problems confronting the Muslim community were to be found neither in the Holy Book nor in the hadīths of the Prophet. So two additional sources were added to the Islamic law. First, the reasoning by analogy (kiyās) that consists of comparing the case for which a solution is sought with another similar case already settled on the strength of the Qur'an or a particular hadīth. Secondly, the answer to a problem might be also resolved by the consensus of eminent doctors of law (idjmā‘).

Between the second/eighth and third/ninth centuries eminent scholars in various intellectual centres of the Muslim world, particularly in Medina and Baghdad, codified the whole of the Islamic law into a coherent system. Their individual approaches to this enormous task differed and so emerged four legal schools (madhhab, pl. madhāhib) named after their founders who bear also the honorific title of Imam.

These four madhāhib are the Hanafi, Māliki, Shāfi‘i and Hanbali schools. All of them are completely orthodox (Sunnite) and differ mainly on points of detail; it is not proper to call these schools sects. The founders of these schools codified the law on the basis of the principles set out above and added others. While unanimously agreed on the text of the Qur'an and on the hadīths regarded by all Muslim scholars as the most authentic, each Imam by personal preference (known as idjtihād) gave priority to one or other of the other sources of the law.

Although there were various shifts in the course of history, each of these schools is now adhered to in specific geographical areas: the Hanafite school is dominant in those regions that came under the sway of the Turkish dynasties, i.e. Turkey, Syria, Iraq, Central Asia and northern India/Pakistan; the Shāfi‘ite madhhab is to be found mostly along the shores of the Indian Ocean, from southern Arabia and East Africa to Indonesia; Mālikism very soon implanted itself in North Africa, Muslim Spain and in the western and central Sudan. The last school, the Hanbali, which was formerly widely adhered to in Syria and Iraq, is now virtually confined to Saudi Arabia.

The differences between the various madhāhib are not fundamental, they mostly concern details of ritual and minor points of law. One of the central features of Islamic law is the assessing of all human acts and relationships in terms of the following concepts: obligatory (wāḍjib), recommended (mandūb), indifferent (mubāh), reprehensible or disapproved (makrūh) and
forbidden (mahzur). The whole of Islamic law is permeated by religious and ethical considerations such as the prohibition of interest on loans or unjustified enrichment in general, the prohibition of gambling and other forms of speculation, the concern for equality of two contracting parties and the concern for a just average, together with abhorrence of extremes.

Another feature that distinguishes fiqh from other legal systems is that it was created and developed by private jurists. It did not grow out of an existing legal system: it created itself. The state did not play the part of legislator, it did not decree the laws and there were for a long time no official codes of laws issued by state organs. Instead the laws were incorporated in scholarly handbooks that had the force of law and served as references in actual juridical decisions.

Islamic religious structure, true to its egalitarian principles and conscience, had never produced any form of external organization or any kind of hierarchy. There is no priesthood and no church. Everybody is his own priest and there is no intermediary between the believer and God. Although it recognized idjmā', the consensus of doctors of law as a valid source of doctrine, there was neither council nor curia to promulgate its decisions.

The consensus was reached informally, either by tacit assent on the part of those qualified to express their opinion or sometimes by prolonged debate in writing before an agreement was reached by the majority. Thus the elaboration of Islamic doctrine in all fields developed, pushed forward by a number of eminent and brilliant thinkers who followed the famous saying of the Prophet: ‘Seek science from the cradle to the grave.’

It happened, however, that the 'ulamā’ in their quest for establishing Islamic precepts for every minute detail of worship and everyday life were too much absorbed by the formal side of the Divine law leaving not enough place for individual devotion. Thus a reaction against the intellectualism and formalism emerged in the form of Islamic mysticism, sufism. There was already a strong note of asceticism and mysticism among the early Muslims and many famous mystics before the twelfth century contributed positively to the intensification of the Islamic faith. On the other hand some adherents of sufism were prone to neglect religious obligations of the shari‘a, considering themselves absolved from the universal obligations of the Muslim. In the eleventh century the great theologian al-Ghazālī (d. 505/1111) achieved the incorporation of sufism into orthodoxy by stressing both the necessity of a personal approach to God and the duty to follow the precepts of the shari‘a as being inseparable parts of Muslim religious life. Soon afterwards the sufis began to organize themselves in mystical associations or brotherhoods (Arabic, turuk, sing. tariqa) around different spiritual leaders known as shaykhs. The oldest of these tariqas is

8. From Arabic süf, wool, to denote the practice of wearing a woollen robe. In Arabic Sufism is called tasawwuf.
The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire

the Kādiriyā, founded in Baghdad by 'Abd al-Kādir al-Djîlânî (d. 561/1166) which soon expanded into various Muslim countries. With time the number of the tarīkas increased so that nearly every Muslim belonged to this or that tarīka and participated in the mystical exercises called dhikr (invocation or litany).

From these respectable and recognized brotherhoods must be separated the cult of saints who are called marabouts in the Maghrib; many of these marabouts exploited naive Muslims by pretending to perform miracles, by preparing various amulets and talismans, and by claiming to have a direct access to God thus being able to intercede for others. This is highly un-Islamic as every Muslim is his own priest and only God may be venerated and directly approached. Islam makes man completely independent of all beings except God. From the point of view of genuine Islam the cult of ‘saints’ is the result of a parasitical excrescence.

The Islamic sects

The origin of the main divisions into sects is political; it became a matter of doctrinal divisions only later.

The chief problem around which the opinions of early Muslims revolved was that of the succession of Muḥammad, not as a Prophet — as he was the last of the Prophets — but as the head of the Islamic community. During his lifetime the Prophet indicated on several occasions that the valid system for governing the community was shurā or consultation, today known as democracy. After his death his immediate successors were elected and began to be designated as caliphs. The first four caliphs, called by Muslims al-khulafa’ al-rashīdūn (the rightly guided caliphs) were Abū Bakr, ‘Umar, ‘Uthmān and ‘Alī; all of whom belonged to the Kuraysh tribe and were related to Muḥammad by marriage. ‘Alī, moreover, was the Prophet’s cousin. When the third Caliph, ‘Uthmān, was murdered by a group of Muslims who had revolted because they were offended by some of his policies, ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib was elected Caliph in Medina, then the capital. His appointment, however, was not accepted by some companions, particularly Mu’āwiya, Governor of Syria. The result was civil strife between the followers of ‘Alī and those of Mu’āwiya. The Caliph ‘Alī agreed to the setting up of an arbitration commission consisting of two members, one representing him and the other Mu’āwiya. But many of ‘Alī’s followers rejected that solution and expressed their disapproval by seceding from him; hence their name Khāridjites (from Arabic, kharadja — to go out). They regarded the arbitration — which did not end favourably for ‘Alī — as an act of treason against God, the sole arbiter. During the first/seventh and second/eighth centuries, and in some places even later, the Khāridjites revolted again and again against the caliphs and the central government of the Umayyads and then the Abbasids, mostly in Iraq, Arabia, Iran and adjacent countries. The Khāridjites very early split into many sects that differed both in theory.
and practice. But there were some common features. They insisted on the importance of acts, not only faith, and asserted that anyone guilty of grave sin was an unbeliever and an apostate and should therefore be killed. One of their main doctrines concerned the *Imāmate*, that is the leadership of the Muslim community. In contrast to other Muslims who considered that the *Imāmate* (or Caliphate) is the prerogative of certain lineages (either the Kurayshites in general or specifically the family of ‘Alî), the Khāridjites insisted that anyone, even a black slave, could be elected as the head of the Muslim community if he possessed the necessary qualifications of piety, integrity and religious knowledge. These democratic tendencies, verging sometimes on anarchy, attracted many people who were dissatisfied with the government for one reason or another. In general the Khāridjites, although democratic, pious and preaching a purified Islam, repulsed many by their intolerance towards other Muslims and thus constituted only minorities in the eastern lands of the Caliphate. In the Maghrib some of the Khāridjite sects, the Ibādites, the Nukkārites and the Şufrites found a fertile soil for their doctrines among many Berbers dissatisfied with the oppressive Umayyad regime.9

Those Muslims who stayed with ‘Alî were those who were persuaded that the Caliphate (they preferred to call this institution *Imāmate*) should go to the family of the Prophet, represented by ‘Alî and his descendants from his marriage with Fāţīma, the daughter of Prophet Muhammad. They were called *Shī‘a* ‘Alî, i.e. the party of ‘Alî, whence their name Shī‘ites in European languages. Whereas the Khāridjites differed from orthodox Islam on political and ethical issues only, the Shī‘ites went further and added many new doctrines of purely religious content. The Shī‘ites rejected the principle of the consensus of the community, and substituted for it the doctrine that there was in every age an infallible *Imām* to whom alone God entrusted the guidance of mankind. The first *Imām* was ‘Alî, and all succeeding ones were his direct descendants. The *Imāms* are considered to be divinely appointed rulers and teachers of the faithful, and to possess superhuman qualities which were transmitted to them from the first man, Adam, through Muhammad. For these reasons they are the only ones to have the right to lead the Muslim community; the Shī‘ites believe that even after the last *Imām* has ‘disappeared’ from the world, he continues his guidance as the ‘hidden *Imām*’. He will reappear one day to restore peace and justice to the world as the *Mahdī* (the divinely guided one).

Shī‘ism very soon split into a large number of sects between which the main difference arose from the question of who should be the ‘hidden *Imām*’. The most important in the course of history became the group called the Twelvers (*Ithnâ‘ ashârîyya*) which recognizes the twelfth descendant of ‘Alî, Muhammad al-Mahdī, who disappeared in 266/880. The stronghold of the Twelvers today is Iran where this brand of Shī‘ism

9. See Chapters 3, 9–12 below.
has been the state religion since the eleventh/sixteenth century. Significant groups are found also in Iraq, Syria, Lebanon and India. During the Abbasid Caliphate the adherents of Twelver Shi‘ism were more numerous, mainly in the big cities.

Those Shi‘ites who recognized the seventh Imam, Isma‘îl, separated themselves from the main body and became known as Isma‘iliyya or the Seveners (Sab‘iyyuna). Apart from beliefs held in common with other Shi‘ites, the Isma‘iliyya developed a set of special doctrines based mostly on Neo-Platonism, such as the theory of emanation of the world intellect that manifests itself in Prophets and Imams. In their exegesis of the Quran they looked for hidden meanings accessible only to initiates. The Isma‘iliyya functioned for a long time as a secret society; it came into the open with the coming of the Fatimids who were the most successful among all the Shi‘ite branches and founded an empire that stretched from the Atlantic to Syria and Hijaz.10 Late offshoots of the Isma‘iliyya were the Druzes in Lebanon and Syria and then the ‘Assassins’ (al-Hashishiyûn), a terroristic sect, who were active in the period between the sixth/twelfth and eighth/fourteenth centuries in the Middle East with centres in Iran and Lebanon.

From the struggle among the Muslims orthodoxy at last emerged victorious in the shape of Sunnism, comprising adherents of the sunna, i.e. the way of the Prophet. Sunnites comprise today more than 90 per cent of the world's Muslim population. The doctrinal differences between the Sunnite and Shi‘ite Islam are these: the sources of Sunnite laws are the Quran, the hadith of the Prophet, the consensus of the community and analogy, whereas the four bases of Shi‘ite law are the Quran, the hadith of the Prophet and of the Imams, the consensus of the Imams, and reason. Although the Shi‘ites perform the pilgrimage to Mecca, they prefer to visit the tombs of ‘Ali and his son Husayn in the towns of Najaf and Kerbelâ in Iraq.

Not all descendants of ‘Ali and Fatima – those who have the right to the honorific title shârîf – were eo ipso adherents of Shi‘ite doctrines. The majority of Shârîfs were and are Sunnites. In many parts of the Muslim world where the shârîfs came to power as sultans or emirs, as in Morocco (the Idrisids and the two Shârîfian dynasties of Sa‘dis and Alawis) or the Hashimites in Hijaz, Iraq and Jordan, they followed the path of orthodoxy and never claimed any of the supra-human qualities ascribed to the Imams by Shi‘ites.

Nevertheless one concept of Shi‘ite origin, the belief in the coming of the Mahdi, penetrated into Sunnite Islam. It was not an official teaching as in Shi‘ism but on the level of popular religion in which the Mahdi is seen as a Messiah who will return to the earth, slay the anti-Christ and fill the world with justice as it was before filled with injustice and tyranny.

Islam makes a sharp distinction between those non-Muslims who belong to a religious system with revealed Books, that is the *ahl al-Kitāb* ('People of the Book') and those non-Muslims considered to be polytheists, idolaters or adherents of traditional religions. In conformity with the doctrine of the successive revelations and of the Prophetic chain, the Jews and the Christians as possessors of the Holy Books are not forced to adopt Islam. This tolerance was applied also to the Zoroastrians as well as to the adherents of some ancient Near Eastern religious systems known as the Sabeans and later even to the Hindus (notwithstanding their multitude of gods) and the Buddhists.

As regards the second group, since the Prophet Muḥammad was sent to preach Islam particularly to those who as yet have not received any revealed guidance, he and his successors were obliged to combat traditional religion and to convert the ‘infidels’. These were given the choice of either becoming Muslims or fighting; in the case of defeat their lot was captivity and slavery.

There are many erroneous conceptions about the *djihād*. This word is usually, but erroneously, translated as ‘holy war’ but nothing of this sort is encompassed in the term which means ‘effort to the utmost of one’s capacity’. The true meaning of the word is best illustrated by the saying of the Prophet on returning from an expedition against an Arab *kabīla* that adhered to traditional religion: ‘We have returned from a lesser *djihād* to accomplish the greater *djihād*’, that is, to struggle for inner perfection.

As far as the *djihād* as warlike activity is concerned, there was in the early days a tendency to make it the sixth ‘Pillar’ of Islam, mainly among the Khāridjites, but this was not generally accepted. The legal schools (with the exception of the Hanbalites) considered *djihād* an obligation if certain conditions were fulfilled, among them that the unbelievers should begin hostilities and that there should be a reasonable hope of success. In special situations *djihād* becomes an individual duty incumbent even on slaves, women and minors; this happens when the enemy attacks Muslim territory and whoever abstains from this duty is a sinner and a hypocrite.

The wars of expansion of the Islamic state after the death of the Prophet were not directed to the religious conversion of the conquered peoples since the majority of these adhered to religions with revealed scriptures, being Christians, Zoroastrians and Jews. These peoples were obliged to pay the poll tax (*djizya*) and then became protected (*dhimmī*) without being forced to abandon their religions. The conversion to *Īslām* of individuals or even of groups was a very minor part of the aim of the *djihād*; the essential
aim was the expansion of the Islamic state as the sphere within which the 
shari’a was paramount. This came to be expressed in the distinction 
between Dār al-islām and Dār al-ḥarb, the sphere of Islam and the sphere 
of war. The term Dār al-islām, or the Islamic oekoumene, does not imply 
that all its inhabitants must be Muslims but rather that it is the part of the 
world where Islamic social and political order reigns supreme and Islamic 
public worship is observed. The Dār al-ḥarb is the opposite of the Dār al-
islām, the rest of the world that is as yet not under Islamic sway; theoretic­
ally it will one day disappear and integrate into the Islamic oekoumene as 
expressed in the Qoranic words (9:33): ‘He it is who sent his Messenger 
with guidance and the religion of truth to make it prevail over all religions 
despite the pagans.’

Nevertheless, from the third/ninth century onwards, when the universal 
Caliphate broke up into smaller states, a relation of mutual tolerance was 
established between the Muslim world and the Dār al-ḥarb; its conquest 
was postponed from the historic to the messianic time. Political and com­
mercial relations with European, Asiatic and African states were governed 
by the recognition of some of them as belonging to an intermediate 
category. Dār al-ṣulh, the sphere of truce. This provided the main legal 
basis for peaceful contacts and communications with non-Muslim states. 
Another measure to facilitate these contacts was the introduction of the 
safe-conduct, called aman, which the head of a Muslim state could give to 
the subjects of any non-Muslim state (they were then called musta’minûn) 
and this made possible not only diplomatic exchanges but also the resi­
dence of European and other merchants in Muslim countries.

Islamic expansion, the rise and fall of the Caliphate

Some aspects of the rise of the Islamic world and its impact on various 
parts of Africa were already touched upon in the preceding chapter. Here 
we propose to present a brief outline of the political history of the Cali­
phate from the death of the Prophet Muḥammad to the end of the fifth/ 
eleventh century. As the history of the African parts of the Islamic world 
are fully covered in a number of chapters in this Volume, we will focus our 
attention more on the developments in its more eastern provinces. This is 
necessary not only owing to the obvious importance of the Islamic world as 
the leading cultural area of the period but more so because the repercus­ 
sions of the historical changes in Persia, Arabia and adjacent countries were 
of immediate importance in the Indian Ocean region and thus in parts of 
East Africa, too.

Under the first four caliphs (al-khulas‘a al-rashīdūn, ‘the rightly guided 
caliphs’), Abū Bakr, Ṭ‘umar, Ṭ‘ūḥmān and ‘Alī, Muslim Arabs started

35/656–40/661.
their expansion outside the Arabian peninsula. The nomadic Arab *kabīlas*, united now by the bond of a common faith and forbidden by it to continue their internecine fighting, led by a pleiad of brilliant generals of Meccan origin, won in a few years a series of victories over the armies of the two great powers, the Byzantine empire and Sassanid Persia. The campaign against the Byzantines in Syria took only two years before the emperor and his troops evacuated these provinces forever in 15/636. The conquest of Persia lasted longer and after initial setbacks the Arabs went from victory to victory. The battle of Kādisiyya and the occupation of the capital, Ktesiphon, in 16/637 opened all the fertile lowlands of Iraq west of the Tigris to the Arabs. From their newly founded military bases of Baṣra and Kūfah the Muslim armies penetrated the Iranian highlands in pursuit of the retreating Persian armies. The last great battle at Nihāwend (21/642) sealed the fate of the Sassanid empire. The Muslims then occupied other parts of Iran and pushed their advance to the east so that by 29/650 they stood on the borders of India, in northern Iraq, in Armenia and on the Amu-Darja (Oxus).

After the conquest of Syria the Arab armies turned towards Egypt which offered an even easier field of conquest. Between 18/639 and 21/642 the whole of Lower Egypt with its capital, Alexandria, fell to the invading forces and Byzantium thus lost another rich province. It served later as the starting point for a further Arab advance into North Africa.\(^{12}\)

One of the principal reasons for the lightning successes of the Muslims was the financial and military exhaustion of both empires after their long series of wars. In addition, the Byzantines were hated by their Semitic and Coptic subjects because of their oppressive taxation and their persecution of the 'heretical' Monophysite churches. The situation in the Sassanid empire was somewhat similar; the most fertile provinces of Iraq were inhabited by the Christian Aramaic-speaking peoples who stood in opposition to the Zoroastrian ruling classes. Just before the Arab onslaught dynastic strife had torn apart the empire, weakening its political and military structure. In general in most of the conquered countries the local inhabitants offered no resistance to the invading Arabs as they had little or nothing to lose by the change of masters; in some cases the Muslims were even welcomed.

The civil war after the death of 'Uthmān between 'Alī and Muʿāwiya, which ended with the death of the former and the coming of the Umayyad dynasty to power in 41/661, as well as the need for the dynasty to consolidate its power, stopped the external expansion of the Arab state for some years. But already in the reign of Muʿāwiya the frontiers were expanded in North Africa under 'Ukba ibn Nāfi', and in the east, where the entire province of Khurāsān (north-eastern Iran and Afghanistan) was conquered and the River Oxus crossed (between 43/663 and 54/674). Twice at this time

\(^{12}\) Cf. Chapters 7, 8 and 9 below.
The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire

the Arab armies penetrated to the walls of the Byzantine capital but in both cases were unable to conquer it. A third and most serious attempt was made much later, in 98/716–17, when the Arabs unsuccessfully attacked Constantinople from sea and land. It was left to the Ottoman Turks to add this bastion of Eastern Christianity to the Islamic world in the ninth/fifteenth century.

A second wave of conquests on all fronts was launched under the Caliphs 'Abd al-Malik (65/685–86/705) and al-Walid I (86/705–96/715); in the West the whole Maghrib was subjugated and Spain invaded, in the north-east Central Asia (Transoxania) was conquered and at the same time the Arab armies pushed as far as the Indus River, adding the new province of Sind to the Caliphate. Campaigns in Transcaucasia achieved the incorporation of Georgia and Armenia into the orbit of the Arab empire. Further advance in the West was stopped by the Franks, while the attempts to the north of the Caucasus were frustrated by the Turkish Khazars, so that for a long time the Pyrenees and the Caucasus marked the limits of the empire.13

Thus a hundred years after the Prophet's death the Arab state already comprised an enormous territory that became the core of the Islamic world. At this time the Arabs were its undisputed masters and formed the exclusive ruling class. The Umayyad policy was to perpetuate this situation in which all non-Muslims had to pay taxes, whilst Muslim Arabs were exempt and even had pensions paid out to them from these revenues. The Arab ruling class did not look favourably therefore on mass conversions in the conquered lands and the new Muslims, each of whom had to attach himself to an Arab kabīla as a client (māwīlā, plural māwālit), still had to pay the taxes as before. On the other hand the conquered peoples, be they Persians, Copts or Arameans (in Syria and Iraq) were employed in growing numbers in an increasingly complex state administration. The Arabs, with their unsophisticated background of nomadic life, were unable to cope with the enormous administrative problems arising from the continuing expansion. Thus they willingly adopted the Byzantine and Sassanid administrative systems already existing in the provinces and left their running in the hands of the converted natives. The contradictions arising from the fact that a minority usurped all the political power together with the economic privileges, while the majority, although already Muslim, was denied access to them, were the main causes of the crisis that ended with the fall of the Umayyads and the coming of a new dynasty, the Abbasids. The victory of the latter was made possible by the support of all the dissatisfied elements, mostly non-Arab Muslims, who claimed their full share in a community founded on the principle of equality among all believers. The Abbasid revolution put paid to the 'Arab kingdom' – as the Umayyad period is

13. The Arab troops defeated by Charles Martel at Poitiers in 114/732 seem to have been merely a raiding party, not an army of occupation. Whether the campaigns against the Khazars aimed at the total conquest of the South Russian steppes is open to question.
FIG. 2.1 The expansion of the Islamic state
The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire

sometimes called - and inaugurated the Islamic empire where distinctions followed religious, not national lines. The Arabs lost the privileged status conferred on them as the first bearers of Islam but Arabic continued to be the language of the state, literature and science employed widely by peoples of non-Arab origin.

Under the Umayyads the centre of the empire was Syria with its capital at Damascus; although the eastern provinces were in no way neglected, most attention was naturally turned to the Mediterranean world, Egypt, North Africa and Spain.

The transfer of the capital from Syria to Iraq where the Abbasids founded Baghdad (in 144/762) was not only a geographical shift of the centre of gravity of the empire, it was also a symbolic act opening a new era. In place of the Umayyad emphasis on Arabism, their successors laid stress on Islam as the basis of their regime and the promotion of orthodox Islam became one of the chief tasks of the caliphal administration.

During the first century of Abbasid rule the territory of the Caliphate continued to expand but on a less grandiose scale than before: the Caspian provinces were annexed and in 212/827–8 the dependent dynasty of the Aghlabids began to conquer Sicily. On the other hand the Abbasid realm had been from the start much smaller than that of the Umayyads since Muslim Spain never belonged to it. A totally independent dynasty had already been founded in Spain by a scion of the house of Umayya in 138/756 and this lasted for two-and-a-half centuries. In the course of the first fifty years of their rule the Abbasids lost control of all the African provinces west of Egypt either to the Khâridjites or the Idrîsids; in 184/800 the governor of Ifrikiya, al-Aghlab, became virtually independent and founded his own dynasty.¹⁴

The causes of the gradual disintegration of great empires in former times are well known: the impossibility with the available means of communication to control effectively from one centre an enormous realm composed of countries with heterogeneous populations on various cultural and economic levels, and, as corollary to this, the tendency of provincial governors to break away from the central government. In the case of the Abbasid Caliphate these general causes were intensified by the presence of dissident movements of heterodox sects, often combined with social upheavals.

Until the second half of the third/ninth century, however, a succession of remarkably efficient caliphs was able to maintain effective rule and control. But after the Zanj revolt¹⁵ the inevitable process of disintegration gained momentum as an array of short-lived local dynasties emerged in Iran and Central Asia as well as in Arabia and Syria. During the fourth/tenth century even the core of the Abbasid realm, Iraq, fell under the sway of the ShiTite dynasty of the Buwayhids, who made the Abbasid caliphs

¹⁴. Cf. Chapter 10 below.
¹⁵. Cf. Chapters 1 above and 26 below.
their puppets. In the west the Fāṭimids founded a rival caliphate and began to put into effect their grandiose plans of domination over the whole Islamic world. They did not succeed entirely but detached Egypt, Syria and Arabia from the Abbasid territory. And since in 317/929 the Spanish Umayyad 'Abd al-Rahmān III took the caliphal title of the ‘Prince of the believers’ (amīr al-muʾminīn) there were for a while three caliphs in Islam. Although in the mid-fifth/eleventh century the Turkish Saldjiks, who adhered to Sunnite Islam, liberated the Abbāsids from the yoke of the Buwayhids, they were in no way prepared to restore the political power of the caliphs of this dynasty.

The Central Asiatic Turks had been a dominating factor in Muslim Near Eastern countries since the third/ninth century; the armies of the Muslim states were composed mostly of the Turkish cavalry and Turkish generals (amirs) soon assumed the role of kingmakers. The novelty of the Saldjuk invasion was that a whole Turkish people was now on the move to conquer most of western Asia for themselves. This move inaugurated the era of Turkish pre-eminence in the political and military history of large parts of the Islamic world. Taking the torch from the Arabs the Turks expanded Islam in various directions. Already the predecessors of the Saldjiks, the Ghaznavids of Afghanistan, had launched the military conquest of India to the east of the Indus River; in their steps followed other dynasties so that the mightiest of them, the Great Mughals, who came to power in the tenth/sixteenth century, could claim that the greater part of India belonged to Dār al-islām.

The Saldjiks themselves added to the Islamic world many new territories in eastern and central Asia Minor, the great bastion of the Byzantine Christian empire which had for so long stood in the way of Muslim advance. In the following centuries the rest of it fell under the sway of other Turkish dynasties; the crowning of the new Turkish Muslim offensive came about with the conquest of Constantinople in 857/1453 by the Ottoman sultan Meḥmed II Fāṭih.

In the eighth/fourteenth century the whole Islamic world with the exception of the Maghrib and Muslim Spain came under the rule of the Turkish or the Turkicized Mongol dynasties who gave a new vigour to Islam. The great historian Ibn Khaldūn considered the almost universal supremacy of the Turks in Islam as a proof of God's concern for the welfare of the Muslims. At a period when the Muslim world went through a crisis and became weak and defenceless, God in His wisdom had brought new rulers from among the Turks to revive the dying breath of Islam and restore the unity of the Muslims.16

In terms of the development of Islamic religious thought the Abbāsids period represents a formative period for various branches of religious sciences, particularly of jurisprudence (fīkh) and of speculative theology.

The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire

(kalam). These branches evolved not in a straightforward way but they took their shape as a result of fierce debates within the Muslim community itself and of controversies with outside opponents, mostly Christians and Manicheans (called zindiks).

A fundamental place in the birth and development of Muslim thought as a whole is held by the Mu'tazila. This is a name given to an early school of Muslim religious thinkers who, influenced by Greek philosophy, wished to place at the service of Islam the resources of reason and thereby take these weapons from their opponents and turn them against them. In European literature the Mu'tazilites are sometimes called ‘freethinkers’ or ‘liberals’ but those labels are erroneous. The Mu'tazila was not a sect and among its adherents were numbered Sunnites and Shi'ites alike; they tried to present the dogmas of Islam as acceptable not only to faith but also to reason and also to give a systematic presentation of religious beliefs. Among the themes dealt with by the Mu'tazilites the principal ones concerned the nature of God, the nature of the Qpran and man’s relation to God. They insisted on the unity and oneness of God, even rejecting the real attributes of God and all forms of anthropomorphism. As far as concerns the Qpran, they held the opinion that it was not eternal but created in time. The last great theme derived from the Islamic tenet about the Divine justice. The Mu'tazila found it difficult to reconcile the doctrine of predestination with the goodness of God; it was abhorrent to them to think that man would be punished for deeds which God had commanded him to perform. God is always obliged to command good and since He does not desire evil, He does not ordain it; it is man who creates evil. For some time in the first half of the third/ninth century the Mu’tažilite doctrine achieved the status of the Abbasid state religion; the Mu'tazilites were highly intolerant of the view of others and insisted with force on having theirs widely accepted. But after a brief reign as the dominant school they were in their turn persecuted and suppressed. However, in spite of the rejection of its main doctrines the Mu'tazila was of crucial importance for the development of Sunnite orthodox theology. By forcing the orthodoxy to rethink some fundamental issues of the faith it was indirectly responsible for the definitive formulation of the beliefs of ‘those who are faithful to the tradition of the Prophet’ (ahl al-sunna) as represented by the teachings of the prominent figures of the Islamic theology like al-Ash'ari (d. 324/935) and al-Bâkillânï (d. 403/1013).

These Sunnite theologians lived and worked at a time when the prospects of Sunni Islam and of the Abbasid Caliphate were at their lowest ebb. The schismatic Fâtimids reigned over a half of the Islamic world and threatened the rest ideologically and politically. The Shi’a was flourishing even within the Abbasid domain where the Buwayhids made the caliphs into puppets. Petty Shi'ite dynasties governed in parts of Arabia, in Syria and northern Iran.

The coming of the Saldjuks did more than restore the territorial unity of Islam; it was accompanied by a great religious revival of Sunni orthodoxy.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

It is interesting to note that this revival of orthodoxy and the reaction against heterodoxies started almost simultaneously in the East (the Saldjucks) and the West (the Almoravids); in both cases the bearers of the orthodoxy were recently converted nomadic peoples from the fringes of the Islamic world. The religious zeal and military prowess of the Turks and Berbers also found expression in the renewal of the struggle on the frontiers with the Christians, in Anatolia as well as in Spain.

Conclusion

The end of the fifth/eleventh century was thus marked in the Islamic world by significant changes on many levels. In political terms it heralded the definitive preponderance of the Turks in the East and of the Berbers in the West. The Fāṭimids, whose power reached its zenith just in the middle of the century, had by its end lost their Maghribian provinces (to the Zirīds and the Hilālī Arabs) as well as Syria with Palestine but retained their hold on Egypt and the Red Sea regions. The Saldjuk offensive against the Byzantines in Asia Minor evoked reaction in Western Europe which took the form of the First Crusade. Although the territorial gains of the Franks, as the Crusaders were called in Muslim countries, were not excessively large, the implantation of the Christians in the Holy Land and on the Mediterranean shores of Asia introduced a new political factor into the Near Eastern scene. It took nearly a century before Jerusalem was taken back by the Muslim armies, and another before the last remnants of the Christian states were wiped out.

In Muslim Spain the occupation of Toledo in 478/1085 and the Christian offensive against the Muslim mulūk al-tawā’if that followed threatened for the first time the existence of Islam on the Iberian peninsula. The danger was for a while stopped by the intervention of the Berber Almoravids. In the central Mediterranean the Muslims lost Sicily forever.

No less important were the changes in economy and trade. With the arrival of the Saldjucks the institution of ʾiktāʾ - a kind of system of military fief-holdings - became characteristic of the economic life and socio-political structures in large parts of the Muslim world. In spite of various interpretations of this institution it is clear that on it was built a production system typologically corresponding to European feudalism. Although in Egypt and the Maghrib this system developed fully only later, it became universal and typical until the twelfth/nineteenth century.

The period of the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries also saw a gradual shift of the terminal of the Indian Ocean trade from the Arab/Persian Gulf to the Red Sea and thus to the Fāṭimid orbit. Egypt profited most from this change and became for a long time to come the main centre of the transit trade between the Mediterranean and the Indian Ocean. At the same time the Italian merchant republics monopolized the European
The coming of Islam and the expansion of the Muslim empire

side of the transit trade and soon also the maritime control of the eastern Mediterranean from where Muslim shipping almost disappeared.

We have already mentioned the triumph of orthodox Sunnite Islam in the fifth/eleventh century. Although the Shi‘a lost much both territorially and religiously, it continued to exist in many parts of the Islamic world; none the less with the gradual decline of the Fāṭimids the Shi‘ite religion was deprived of its powerful exponents and it had to wait some centuries until the Safawid dynasty in Persia raised it once again to the level of a state religion.

Two measures contributed substantially to the victory of Sunnite Islam at this time: the first was the establishment of madrasas, higher religious institutions for the education of the ‘ulamā’. Although a few schools of the madrasa type existed in the East already before the Saldjuks, it is generally accepted that under this dynasty on the initiative of the famous vizier Nizām al-Mulk (d. 485/1092) the madrasas became universal religious teaching institutions, being quickly established in nearly all Muslim countries. The madrasa was founded as a counterweight to similar institutions in Fāṭimid Egypt and to provide a more effective defence against the organized spread of Isma‘ili propaganda; the madrasa was rightly called ‘the bulwark of the orthodoxy’. The second contributory factor was the recognition and incorporation of sufism into the fold of official Islam and the emergence of śūfi brotherhoods; ‘ulamā’ became their members and were thus able to steer both the leaders and members towards orthodoxy and away from heterodoxy. Orthodox sufism as practised by the recognized tarikas, also stressed moral perfection, preached personal effort (the greater dījhād) as an indispensable basis of Muslim social values and insisted on charitable acts and self-negation.
Stages in the development of Islam and its dissemination in Africa

M. EL FASI and I. HRBEK

General introduction

Islam – together with Buddhism and Christianity – belongs in the category of missionary religions, i.e. those in which the spreading of the truth and the conversion of 'unbelievers' were considered a duty by the founder of the religion and then by the whole community. Muslims employ for the proselytizing activity the Arabic word *da'wa*, whose literal meaning is 'call, appeal, invitation', in this case to the truth of the Islamic faith.

The duty to invite non-Muslims to accept Islam is contained in many Qoranic Sûras such as: 'Call unto the way of thy Lord with wisdom and fair exhortation; and reason with them in the kindest manner' (16:126) or 'Say to those who have received the Scripture and those who are ignorant: do you accept Islam? Then, if they accept Islam, they are rightly guided, but if they turn away, then thy duty is only to convey the message' (3:19).

Similar exhortations are found in many other Sûras.

During Muhammad's life Islam became the religion of the Arabs; it fell to his immediate successors, the first caliphs, to carry the new religion beyond the borders of the Arabian peninsula. There the Muslims encountered a different situation; whereas the majority of the Arabs had been adherents of traditional religion before their conversion (Arabic *mushrikûn*, polytheists) the surrounding countries were inhabited by Christians, Jews and Zoroastrians, who were, according to the Islamic view *ahl al-Kitâb*, people of the Book, that is those who made use of revealed Scriptures and were thus adherents of a revealed, even if imperfect, monotheistic religious system. The attitude to these peoples did not entail any obligation on the part of the Muslims either to convert or to exterminate them, since ideologically Islam discourages compulsory conversion. The appeal it hopes to exercise consists in the existence and the availability of the ultimate truth made visible through the life of the Muslim community in which it is embodied. There was surely during the great Arab conquest no attempt to convert the *ahl al-Kitâb* by force.

Although generations of scholars have already clearly demonstrated that the image of the Muslim Arab warrior with sword in one hand and the
Stages in the development of Islam and its dissemination

Quran in the other belongs to the realm of mythology, this image still persists in popular writings on Islam and is generally believed in non-Muslim countries. This misinterpretation has arisen from the assumption that wars waged for the extension of Muslim domination over lands of non-Muslims were aimed also at their conversion.\(^1\) Islamic political theory, in fact, requires control of the body politic for the Muslims, but it does not require bringing every subject of the Muslim state into the fold. The conquests during the first century of the hidjra were made not for conversion's sake but actually for the extension of the Islamic sphere of domination (Dār al-Islām). The Muslims were more interested in the incorporation of non-Muslims into the Islamic state, which in their eyes represented the ultimate realization of a divinely ordained plan for mankind, than in their immediate conversion.\(^2\) Conversion was desirable from the religious point of view, but not necessarily from a governmental point of view.

The ahl al-Kitāb were given substantial autonomy in all ecclesiastical matters on the condition that they paid djizya, the poll tax. The Muslims were exempted from this tax and Muslim Arab warriors and their families were paid pensions from the central state treasury (diwān) and also enjoyed a privileged social position. The obvious advantages of belonging to the faith of the victors were not lost on conquered peoples and many of them went over to Islam.

Under the Umayyads conversions became so numerous that the tax revenue in many provinces had fallen alarmingly low; the answer was an official policy which discouraged further conversions by ordering that the new converts should continue to pay land tax and poll tax as before. Only during the reign of the pious Caliph 'Umar II (99/717–101/720) who is said to have pronounced the famous sentence 'God had sent Muḥammad to call men to a knowledge of the truth and not to be a collector of taxes',\(^3\) was this policy stopped for a short time, but later the general practice reverted to one of discrimination against newly converted Muslims. It was not until Abbasid times that the neophytes were integrated as full members into the Islamic community and that the Arabs lost their privileged position as the ruling class.

Not until the second and third centuries after the hidjra did the bulk of the Near Eastern people profess Islam; between the military conquest of the region and the conversion of its people a long period intervened. The motives which led to conversion were manifold — some were attracted by the simple and straightforward teachings of Islam, others wanted to escape tribute and taxes, and still others sought to identify themselves with the ruling class and participate fully in the emerging Islamic culture.

It remains true, nevertheless, that the Arab conquest resulted — not immediately but in the long run — in the Islamization of the majority of the

\(^1\) T. W. Arnold, 1913, p. 5.
\(^2\) I. Goldziher, 1925, p. 27.
\(^3\) Ibn Sa'd, 1904–40, Vol. 5, p. 283.
FIG. 3.1 The Islamized areas of Africa by c. 1100
Near Eastern and North African populations. The rule of Muslim Arabs created political, religious, social and cultural conditions that favoured conversions to the religion of the politically dominant group without there being any need to employ force.

**Part I: The Islamization of North Africa**

M. EL FASII

**Egypt**

Egypt — then a Byzantine province — was the first African country to be invaded by the Arabs. Its conquest did not take long as the Byzantine garrisons were not numerous and the local Copts did not offer any resistance; on the contrary they welcomed the Arabs as deliverers from the Byzantine yoke. They had suffered not only from a heavy tax burden and other forms of exploitation but also from religious persecution to which they were subjected as Monophysites by the official orthodox Byzantine church. This oppression had increased just before the Arab conquest through attempts to forbid the Coptic form of worship and through relentless persecution of Coptic clergy.

It may be suggested that this struggle between the two Christian churches in Egypt facilitated to some degree early conversions of Egyptians to Islam. The interminable theological controversies of the most abstruse and metaphysical character must have been unintelligible to the great mass of Christians who were doubtless also wearied and perplexed by the futility of them. Many of the Copts turned therefore to a faith that offered them a simple and clear truth about one God and his Prophet. This helps to explain the rapid spread of Islam in the early days of the Arab occupation. Although in later periods the Copts were from time to time persecuted by some intolerant rulers and many of them were thus driven to abandon their faith, such cases were the exception rather than the rule. Paradoxically, it was under the Fāṭimids and Ayyubids — both dynasties considered to be champions of Islam — that the non-Muslim subjects enjoyed a freedom of religion rarely seen in earlier or later periods; this tolerance, by bringing Muslims and Christians together, led to the gradual disappearance of the Coptic language from everyday use and its replacement by Arabic. In the sixth/twelfth century only the more educated clergy knew the language and it even became necessary to translate liturgical books into Arabic to make

---

5. Even before the conquest was complete, thousands of Copts went over to Islam and later every year witnessed mass conversions. Jean de Nikiou, 1883, p. 560; Severus ibn al-Muṣaffa', 1904, pp. 172–3.
PLATE 3.1 Detail of a minbar (in carved cedar) from the Mosque of Kayrawān
them comprehensible to the majority of the lesser clergy and the mass of Christians. The Copts filled many posts in the state apparatus, farmed the taxes and held in their hands financial and administrative responsibilities; in this they were not alone, as numerous other Christians (Armenians) and Jews were similarly employed.\textsuperscript{6}

The Islamization and Arabization of Egypt was also furthered by the steady influx of Arab Beduins from the Arabian peninsula and the Fertile Crescent who settled down as peasants, mixed with the native Copts and thus increased the number of Arab-speakers and Muslims. Another factor leading to conversions was the increasing corruption and degeneracy of the Coptic clergy from the fifth/eleventh century onwards which resulted in the neglect of the spiritual and moral needs of the people. In the seventh/thirteenth century whole dioceses became Muslim since there were no priests, owing to a long quarrel between contending candidates to the Patriarchate of Alexandria, during which no new priests were ordained.\textsuperscript{7}

The Islamization of Egypt was thus a rather complicated process in which many factors -- sincere religious adherence, fiscal and social advantages, persecutions, the decay of the Coptic Church, and an influx of Muslims from abroad -- played their role. The combined result was that Egypt in the Mamluk period was already a country with a Muslim majority and Coptic and Jewish minorities.

The Maghrib

The religious situation in North Africa to the west of Egypt was at the time of Muslim advance more complex than the one found in Egypt. The Romanized population in the towns and on the coastal plains had for a long time adhered to Christianity, whereas the Berbers in the interior remained largely adherents of traditional religion although some of the mountain inhabitants had adopted Judaism. Already under Roman and Byzantine rule the Christianized Berbers had been given to sectarianism: the Donatists and Circumcellions -- sects that professed egalitarianism and a simple creed -- revolted many times against Church authorities and refused to pay taxes, thus expressing the characteristic Berber love of independence and an aversion to state authorities.\textsuperscript{8}

The dramatic story of the Arab conquest and of the fierce Berber resistance is fully discussed elsewhere in this Volume and does not need to be

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{6} Cf. G. Wiet, 1932, p. 199; C. Cahen, 1983, p. 87 et seq.
\item \textsuperscript{7} The decay is fully described by J. M. Wansleben, 1677 and by E. Renaudot, 1713.
\item \textsuperscript{8} Cf. on the situation in the Roman and Byzantine periods, Unesco, \textit{General History of Africa}, Vol. II, ch. 19.
\end{itemize}
repeated here; our task in this chapter is to describe the Islamization of the Maghrib.

The information we possess about the spread of Islam in this region is rather meagre; moreover the beginnings of Islamization are coloured in later Arabic sources by the 'Ukba legend that transformed this gallant warrior into a peaceful missionary. It nevertheless remains true that through the foundation of Kayrawân in the year 50/670 'Ukba ibn Nâfi' created not only a military base but also an important centre for the radiation and propagation of Islam.

Although Ifrikiya (present-day Tunisia) had already become an integral part of the Caliphate in the course of the first century after the hidjra and the Arab domination here was more stable than in the rest of the Maghrib, the process of Islamization even here went rather slowly. In many regions, mainly in the Sahil, in the southern parts and in the zone of Mzäb, Romanized and Christian Africans continued to represent the majority of the population during the first two centuries after the conquest. In more remote parts, but also in some towns like Carthage and Tunis, small Christian enclaves were still found in later centuries: in Mzäb in the fifth/eleventh century, in Kafoil in the sixth/twelfth century and in some Nafzâwa villages in the eighth/fourteenth century. In the town of Tozeur the ancient Christian population persisted until the twelfth/eighteenth century. In the fifth/eleventh century there were forty-seven bishoprics in the Maghrib; and in the city of Tunis a small community of native Christians, quite distinct from foreign Christian merchants, formed the bodyguard of the Hâşid sultans in the ninth/fifteenth century. But the very fact that these Christian remnants evoked the curiosity of observers in later centuries indicates that already by the fifth/eleventh century they lived among a majority of Muslims. Some papal documents from this century, lamenting the lack of clergy, also bear witness to the decay of Christianity in North Africa at this time.

This long survival of the native Christians is a strong argument against the supposition of forced conversion; as elsewhere it was general social conditions that led to a gradual change of religion. The conversion was doubtlessly aided by the active missionary activities of Muslim clergy and pious men from Kayrawân and other Islamic centres. And as in other parts of the Islamic world the spread of Islam was more rapid among the townspeople than in the countryside.

Although we are not able – for lack of sufficient evidence – to answer precisely why and how various Berber groups (and there were many dozens of them) adopted the religion of Islam, we can at least discern some general trends characterizing this process in its successive stages.

9. See Chapter 9 below.
In the first stage many Berber groups, after offering a fierce resistance to the Arab armies, were subdued and converted. Conversions under these circumstances were largely formal and were probably restricted to chiefs and clan elders, who by this act recognized the sovereignty of their new masters. As soon as the Arab armies withdrew or were expelled and this happened many times during the first/seventh century — the Berbers reverted to their traditional beliefs, considering themselves to be free of any political or religious allegiance. This led Ibn Khaldūn to his famous remark that the Berbers apostasized as many as a dozen times during the first seventy years of their contact with Islam.  

When in 84/703 the last great Berber revolt under al-Kāhina was on the point of being crushed, this intrepid woman sent her sons to the Muslim camp with instructions that they were to embrace Islam and make common cause with the Arabs. Whether this act was prompted by the realization that further resistance was useless or by the wish to retain the chieftainship of the Djarāwa Berbers in her lineage, or both, is difficult to decide.  

When the Arabs finally learned that it was beyond their capabilities to subjugate the Berbers by force, they changed their policies: the famous governor Mūsā ibn Nuṣayr started to select young men of noble origin from among the prisoners, liberate them on the condition that they embraced Islam and then appoint them to high commands in the army. This policy soon bore fruit as many Berber warriors encouraged by the example of their chiefs joined the Arab armies. The Arabs were aided in their effort to convert the Berbers by the successful invasion of Spain which almost immediately brought to their side large numbers of Berbers eager to participate in conquest and receive their share of booty. The Muslim army in Spain was composed mostly of recently converted Berbers and its first commander, Tārik, was also a Berber. Thus shortly after the crushing of the last great resistance against the Arabs and Islam, thousands of Berbers joined both the armies and the faith of their enemy of yesterday. These conversions, however, only touched a minority of the population since large parts of present-day Algeria and Morocco remained beyond any effective Arab control and it took a long time before Islam penetrated into mountain areas.  

Nevertheless, it can be said that during the first three or four decades of the eighth century Islam made considerable progress among the urban, rural and partly even the nomadic population in the plains and coastal strips. And it was precisely at this time that the characteristic Berber attitude towards the Arabs and Islam began to manifest itself: the Berbers were ready to accept Islam as a religion, or even the Arabic culture, and did so massively, but at the same time they resented being politically domi-

15. An Arab governor, Ḥassān ibn al-Nu‘mān exclaimed: ‘To subjugate Africa is impossible!’  
nated by a foreign bureaucracy, representing a faraway sovereign, which discriminated against new converts, exacting from them heavy taxes as if they were unbelievers. To this was added the injustice suffered by Berber warriors in Spain where they were allocated less-fertile lands, although they had played at least as much part in the conquest as the Arabs.

Thus the stage was set for the next phase when the Berbers' struggle against foreign domination found its expression on an ideological level within the Islamic context. As a protest against the oppression of the orthodox Arabs they started to adhere to the doctrines of Khāridjism, the oldest Islamic politico-religious sect.

The Khāridjite political and religious teaching was democratic, puritan and fundamentalist, and in all these respects its adherents were radically opposed to the orthodox and absolutist Caliphate. From their egalitarian principles arose their doctrine concerning the choice of the Imam (the head of the Muslim community): he should be elected and not hereditary, and every pious believer, irreproachable in his morals and faith, whether Arab or non-Arab, a slave or a free man, could hope to attain the office of Imam.17

After leading several revolts against the Umayyads, the Khāridjites of the eastern provinces of the Caliphate — soon divided into a number of mutually hostile branches — were savagely repressed. Some survivors emigrated to North Africa to escape persecution and to preach their doctrine. There it fell on fertile ground among the Berbers, many of whom enthusiastically adopted it as the ideology of their struggle against Arab domination. The principle of equality of all believers corresponded both to their social structure and ideals as well as to the aspirations of those opposed to the heavy taxation and harsh treatment meted out by the Arab bureaucracy. No less attractive was the teaching that since all Muslims are equal, luxurious living and ostentation by some is sinful and that true believers should live soberly and modestly, practising charity and strict honesty in their personal or commercial dealings. This puritanical element must have exercised profound influence on the frugal Berber peasants and semi-nomads, scandalized by the luxury and immorality of the Arab ruling classes. Nowhere in the whole Islamic world did Khāridjism gain so many adherents as among the Berbers. As Reinhard Dozy aptly put it: 'Islamic Calvinism finally found in North Africa its Scotland'.18

In its two main forms — Ibâdism and Šufrism — the Khāridjite doctrine spread chiefly among the Berber population in the area of steppes stretching from Tripolitania in the east through southern Ifnkiya to southern Morocco in the west, and particularly influenced the Berbers of the great

17. This doctrine was in opposition both to the Shi‘ites who insisted that the Imāmate could be held only by members of the Prophet's family through his daughter Fāṭima and her husband 'Aṭī, and to the Sunnite view that only the members of the Kuraysh tribe from Mecca are qualified for this office.

18. R. Dozy, 1874, Vol. 1, p. 150; see also A. Bernard, 1932, p. 89.
In the middle of the second/eighth century the Khāridjites created two theocracies: the imāmate of Tāhert which commanded the allegiance of all Ibādites from Tripolitania to southern Algeria, and the smaller Şufrite principality in Sidiqlmāsa. These states remained outside the control of the central Abbasid government or of the semi-independent Aghlabid governors of Ifrīkiya until destroyed in the course of the fourth/tenth century by the Fātimids.  

It is obvious that the adoption of the Khāridjite doctrine by so many Berbers had its roots in the social and national opposition to the domination of Arab ruling classes. The Berber Khāridjism was in no case an anti-Islamic movement, on the contrary it was an expression of Berber acceptance of Islam as a religion. And through the incessant activities of numerous Ibādite shaykhs and scholars a large part of the Berbers became better acquainted with Islamic doctrine and duties, and were genuinely and not merely nominally converted.

Similarly the Berber resistance was not aimed against Muslim Arabs as such, but only against their ruling class. Berbers vigorously opposed any forceful or arbitrary imposition of foreign rule or rulers, but were ready to accept by free choice non-Berber Muslims as their chiefs. This happened in the case of the Persian Ibn Rustum in Tāhert, the Alid Idrīs in Morocco and the Fātimid 'Ubaydullah among the Kutāma Berbers. In all these cases these men were accepted not only as leaders of the anti-government opposition, but also for their specific Islamic appeal. This fact indicates yet again that the Berbers in question were already acquainted with Islam and sought to give an Islamic character to their opposition, whether Khāridjite (Ibn Rustum), orthodox Sunnite (Idrīs) or Shi'ite ('Ubaydullah).

There were also some attempts to found an exclusive Berber religion as a counterpart to Islam, the most famous and durable being that of the Barghawāta, a fraction of the Maṣmūda, who lived on the Atlantic plain of Morocco between Sale and Sāfi. Their chief, Sāliḥ ibn Țarīf, proclaimed himself a prophet in 127/744–5, composed a Qārān in the Berber language and issued a code of ritual and religious laws based mostly on local customs. Although all this put the Barghawāta religion outside the Islamic fold, its Islamic inspiration is clearly apparent and it represents one of the most original attempts to ‘Berberize’ the religion brought to the Maghrib from the East.

This heresy encountered much success among the Moroccan Berbers. Sāliḥ proclaimed himself ruler of a state independent of the Caliphate and his successors continued to dominate a large part of the Atlantic littoral until the fifth/eleventh century. They successfully defended their religion and state against all outside attacks, being finally subdued by the Almoravids, whose founder, 'Abdallāh ibn Yāsīn, died fighting these heretics.

19. T. Lewicki, 1957, and also Chapter 13 below.
In other parts of northern Morocco, among the Awrâba, Miknâsa, Ghomâra and others, Islam had already made some progress in the course of the second/eighth century, but it seems that the real breakthrough and a more profound implantation occurred here during the rule of the Idrïsid dynasty.\textsuperscript{21} The Berbers enthusiastically welcomed the founder, a scion of the Alid family, as faith in the special harâkâ (blessing power) hereditary in the line of Prophet’s descendants had already begun to take root among the masses of believers, both in the East and the West. Invited to lead the anti-Abbasid movement, Idrïs seized the opportunity and after being proclaimed Caliph (in 172/788) launched an offensive to bring under the sway of Islam those Berbers who had not as yet been converted. This policy was continued by his son, Idrïs II, so that in the course of the next century northern Morocco was to a large extent Islamized, with the exception of the heretical Barghawâta. It should be pointed out that contrary to the opinion of some scholars,\textsuperscript{22} the Idrïsids could not be counted as a Shi‘ite dynasty as they never preached the Shi‘ite form of Islam. The Islamization of the Berbers in the Idrïsid domain was aided also by the steady immigration of Arabs from Andalusia and Ifnkiya into the newly founded city of Fez which played a role in the western Maghrib comparable to that of Kayrawân in the eastern parts.

The Islamization of the whole Maghrib was substantially complete by the fourth/tenth century; only in some regions and towns did small Christian and Jewish communities still exist and a few Berber groups in remote mountain areas clung to their ancient beliefs while the ‘heretic’ Barghawâta were still unsubdued. But in the meantime the political and social conditions underwent many changes that deeply influenced the whole religious situation.

In these changes the role of the Fâtimids was paramount, even if highly paradoxical. By sweeping away the Khâridjite states of Tâhert and Sidjilmâsa and by suppressing several Khâridjite revolts, the Fâtimids dealt a mortal blow to Berber Khâridjism. But they were, however, unable to attract the Berber masses to their form of Islam, Shi‘ism. Rather, the Berbers now turned to Sunnite Islam and especially to the Mâlikite madhhab (religious-legal school). The surviving Khâridjites either retired to remote regions (Mzâb, Djabal Nafûsa, etc.) or gradually abandoned their doctrines and went over to Mâlikism which was already firmly rooted at Kayrawân in Ifnkiya and in parts of Morocco. Khâridjism ceased to be the specific Berber form of Islam because at this time it lost its raison d’être as the expression of Berber opposition to foreign rule. There was no foreign domination in the Maghrib after the Fâtimids transferred the centre of their empire to Egypt and left the Maghrib under the governorship of the Berber Zârids who in due time proclaimed their independence.

\textsuperscript{21} On the beginnings of this dynasty see Chapter 10 below.
\textsuperscript{22} For example P. K. Hitti, 1956, pp. 450–1.
and swore allegiance to the Sunnite Caliph in Baghdad. Shortly afterwards the western part of the Maghrib came under the domination of the Berber Almoravids who exterminated the last vestiges of Khāridjism, Shī‘ism and the Barghawāta heresy in this area, and established definitively the domination of the Mālikite school of Sunnite Islam.

Part II: The spread of Islam in Africa to the south of the Sahara 1. Hrbek

Since the Islamization of the northern part of Africa came about as a result of the Arab conquest, it is often thought that the spread of this religion into tropical Africa followed a similar pattern, that is, that the local peoples were first subdued by the Arabs (or Berbers) and then forced to adopt Islam. The Almoravid conquest of Ghana is usually quoted as the most outstanding case of this kind of Islamization but recent research has demonstrated that such an interpretation of Ghana's conversion is not substantiated by available evidence (see below). External conquest by Muslim invaders played a negligible role except in the Eastern Sudan where extensive Arab settlement was of crucial importance for the dissemination of Islam. Even here, however, the conversion of autochthones followed much later. The conquest of African societies by local Islamized states was a significant factor in the Chad region or in southern Ethiopia, although there, paradoxically, the final extension of the Christian Amhara empire in the nineteenth century had a far more profound and permanent effect on the promotion of Islam than the military actions of previous centuries. But in various parts of Africa to the south of the Sahara the normal course of the spread of Islam has been quite different as will be seen presently.

The Sahara

The Berbers of the western Sahara could have got into contact with Islam either through the Arab warriors who had penetrated their country from al-Sūs al-Aḵṣā or through the Muslim merchants whose caravans from Sidjilmāsa or from other towns of al-Sūs al-Aḵṣā had appeared on the western Saharan trade routes just after the Arab conquest of the Maghrib. These contacts certainly led to the conversion of some individual Berbers who served as guides and escorts for the caravans. In a few commercial and political centres along the routes where the Muslim traders had established themselves permanently, the influence of Muslim culture on the local population must have been more strong and profound.

The oldest information about the contacts between the Arabs and the

Saharan Berbers is an account of the expedition of 'Ukba ibn Näfi' to southern Morocco. In 63/682 he attacked the Massüfa Berbers to the south of al-Süs al-Aksä and after making some of them prisoners, he retired.\textsuperscript{24} It seems that that expedition had reached as far as Wâdï Dar‘a (Oued Dra). Although much embellished by the later 'Ukba legend, this expedition seems to have been only a kind of reconnaissance similar to that undertaken by the same Arab general in 47/666–7 to the south of Tripoli towards Fezzân and Kawâr;\textsuperscript{25} it is highly improbable that such short forays would have led to the Islamization of the local people.

Not much different were the campaigns of Müsä ibn Nuşayr, the Umayyad governor of Ifrïkiya who between 87/705–6 and 90/708–9 had conquered, pacified and allegedly converted most of the Moroccan Berbers. He, too, entered al-Süs al-Aksä and even arrived at Sidjilmâsa and as far as to the town of Dar‘a on the frontiers of the Massüfa territory.\textsuperscript{26} But the same sources maintain that the definitive conquest of al-Süs al-Aksä and the conversion of its inhabitants occurred only as late as the 730s as a consequence of the expedition of Habib ibn Abî ‘Ubayda.\textsuperscript{27} The Arab army came back with many prisoners and a quantity of gold. Amongst the prisoners was a considerable number of the Massüfa; this indicates that these Berbers refused to accept Islam.

Further Arab military expeditions to the western Sahara stopped after the great Berber revolts in the 740s which had led to the decadence of Arab domination and a general anarchy in the Maghrib.

The first of the Saharan Berbers whose conversion is attested seem to have been the Lamtüna since Ibn Khaldün wrote that they had accepted Islam shortly after the Arab conquest of Spain, in the second decade of the second/eighth century. On the other hand, al-Zuhri (sixth/twelfth century) speaks of the conversion of the Lamtüna, Massüfa and Djuddâla during the reign of the Umayyad Caliph Hisâm ibn ‘Abd al-Malik (106/724–125/743).\textsuperscript{28} Their Islam, however, must have been only a thin veneer for many centuries to come; the whole history of the beginning of the Almoravid movement offers eloquent evidence about the superficial Islamization among these three Berber peoples.

The Western and Central Sudan

Islam had been carried across the desert to the Western Sudan even before


\textsuperscript{26} Al-Balâdhurî, 1866, p. 230.


the Maghrib and the Sahara themselves were fully converted. According to al-Zuhri the rulers of the commercial town of Tädmekka, the Berbers of Banū Tānkam, were Islamized seven years after the people of Ghana, being forced to do this by newly converted Ghana.29 It is, of course, quite possible that in this case the ‘conversion’ had meant the enforcement of orthodox Almoravid Islam among a people that already professed the Khāridjite faith. Tädmekka had been visited by Ibāḍī traders from North Africa since the third/ninth century and had become a centre of their missionary activities among the Sudanese peoples. The famous leader of the anti-Fāṭimid Khāridjite revolt in the fourth/tenth century, Abū Yazīd, was probably born in Tädmekka.30

This brings us to consider the role of the Khāridjites, especially the Ibāḍī sect, in the spread of Islam in the Sudan. Recent work by T. Lewicki on the Ibāḍites in North Africa, in the Sahara and in the Sudan has thrown much new light on the activities, commercial as well as missionary, of these puritanical Muslims. It is quite clear today that Ibāḍī traders penetrated the Sudan much earlier than orthodox Sunnites and it is likely that some of the first converts among the Sudanese were won for Islam solely by the proselytizing efforts of the Ibāḍites. The majority of the classical Arabic sources did not mention these activities, as their authors, being orthodox Muslims, were biased against the heretics;31 only sporadically or in an indirect way do we learn from them about the Ibāḍite presence in the Sudan.32 On the other hand, the writings of Ibāḍī authors from North Africa are full of information about the Ibāḍite trade network in the Sahara and the Sudan from the second/eighth century on. There is evidence of settlements of Ibāḍī merchants who came from Tähert, Wargla, southern Tunisia and Djabal Nafūsa, in various Sudanese towns such as Ghana, Gao, Awdāghust, Tädmekka, Ghayārū, Zāfunu and Kügha. The Khāridjites of the Ṣufri sect were ruling Sijilmāsa, one of the most important northern termini of the caravan trade until the fourth/tenth century; the Ibāḍite dynasty of the Banū Ḥaṭṭāb in Zawīla (in the Fezzān) dominated the northern end of the important trade route from Libya to the Lake Chad Basin. The picture that emerges from recent research shows us the great extent of these trade relations. Although reports about the missionary activities of these merchants are not numerous, it can be surmised that their centuries-long presence in the most important Sudanese centres exercised a religious influence on the local inhabitants. The first converts

31. Among many victims of the Almoravid conquest of the town of Awdāghust, al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 24 (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, pp. 91–2), regrets only the death of a ʿKayrawānī Arab, i.e. Sunni Muslim, and passes without comment the massacre of the Zanāta Berbers, in majority Ibāḍites.
32. Ibn Baṭṭūta, 1969, p. 395, mentions a group of white Ibāḍīs in Zaghari. Although the Taʾrikh al-Südān, 1900, p. 61, describes Sonni ʿAlī of Songhay as a Khāridjite, it seems that this term has here the general meaning of a heretic. Cf. T. Hodgkin, 1975, p. 118, n. 3.
would have been, of course, their Sudanese partners in trade. On the other hand, no traces of the religious tenets of the Ibāḍite faith remain alive in the Sudanese belt. It seems that only in the religious architecture can we detect more profound Ibāḍite influence: the minaret forms extant in many parts of the Sudan came originally from southern Tunisia, whereas the rectangular minbars are copies of those from Mzāb, the main Ibāḍite centre from the fourth/tenth century onwards.33

The early Ibāḍite influences in the southern Sahara and the Western Sudan were eradicated under the impact of the Almoravids who preached orthodox Islam and ensured that the Sudanese Muslims would thenceforth adhere to Mālikism. At the same time, in the fifth/eleventh century, the invasion of North Africa and the northern fringes of the Sahara by the nomadic Banū Hilāl contributed further to the decline of Ibadī communities and the definitive loss of their commercial preponderance in the caravan trade.

There are two curious episodes that could be interpreted as echoes of the former Ibāḍi influence in the sub-Saharan region. The Hausa legend of Daura contains the story of an Abuyazidu (or Bayadjidda), 'son of the King of Baghdad' and the legendary ancestor of the Hausa ruling dynasties. This Abuyazidu legend seems to be somewhat connected with the famous leader of the anti-Fāṭimid Khāridjite uprising, Abū Yazīd, who was killed in 335/947. Although it is historically impossible to identify these two as one person, it is nevertheless admissible to see in this legend a distant echo of an Ibāḍi tradition in the Sudan, the more so as we know that the historical Abū Yazīd was born of a Sudanese mother in Tādmekka (or Gao).34

Al-Dardjīnī (seventh/thirteenth century), an Ibāḍite author from the Maghrib, narrates an anecdote about his great-grandfather who about 575/1179–80 travelled to the Sudan and there converted the king of Mali (situated inland of Ghana) to Islam. This anecdote reminds one of the well-known story of al-Bakrī about the conversion to Islam of a king of Mallel; this must have happened before the work of al-Bakrī had been written (before 460/1068). The chronological discrepancy indicates that what we have here is a pious deceit by al-Dardjīnī who has ascribed to his ancestor the success of an anonymous missionary.35 But this does not diminish the value of this anecdote as evidence for early missionary activities of the Ibāḍites and the awareness of this in later centuries.

How effective or profound this first wave of Islamization was is difficult to assess. Taking into account the situation of Islam in more recent times, it can be surmised that in a general way this early Islam contained many elements of various pre-Islamic faiths known in the Maghrib since the end

Stages in the development of Islam and its dissemination

of the Roman epoch (Judaism, Christianity) as well as survivals from the Berber and African religions. No wonder that the intransigent orthodox (mainly Mâlikite) reformers of the type of Ibn Yâsîn were horrified by the survivals of traditional religion and the 'mixed' nature of this early Islam in the Sahara and the Sudan. It took many centuries before the genuine Islam preached by a long chain of reformers and revivalists achieved some success.

To the Ibâdites belongs the undeniable merit of having been the first to introduce Islam to the Sudanese peoples; even if their success cannot be quantitatively measured – and it seems that it was not very great – they laid the foundation on which later propagators of Islam were able to build a firmer structure.

The association of Islam and commerce in sub-Saharan Africa is a well-known fact. The groups most commercially active in later centuries, the Dyula, the Hausa and the Dyakhanke, were among the first to be converted when their respective countries came into contact with Muslims. The explanation of this phenomenon is to be found in social and economic factors. Islam as a religion born in the commercial society of Mecca and preached by a Prophet who himself had been for a long time a merchant, provides a set of ethical and practical precepts closely related to business activities. This moral code helped to sanction and control commercial relationships and offered a unifying ideology among the members of different ethnic groups thus helping to guarantee security and credit, two of the chief requirements of long-distance trade. As it was well put by A. G. Hopkins: 'Islam helped maintain the identity of members of a network or firm who were scattered over a wide area, and often in foreign countries; it enabled traders to recognise, and hence to deal readily with each other; and it provided moral and ritual sanctions to enforce a code of conduct which made trust and credit possible.'

Muslims in these early days tended to form small communities dispersed along the main trade routes all over the Sahel and Sudan. In some capital cities like Ghana or Gao the merchants and Muslims – in fact, these categories were in most cases identical – lived in separate quarters, sometimes enjoying a certain political and judicial autonomy. This pattern was repeated until quite recent times not only in the trading centres but also in many villages where Muslims preferred to live separately from the pagan majority under the jurisdiction of their own Shaykhs or kâdis.

In their quarters they established mosques and soon acquired a distinctive character through some of their habits and customs associated with the practice of Islam such as the five daily prayers, the mode of dressing and the total abstention from alcohol by some pious Muslims.

Thus Islam appeared first not as a moving frontier of mass conversion in a continuous area but rather as a series of urban enclaves at the centres of

trade and political power while the peasants were only little touched by Islam. These settlements along the trade routes and in the major centres constituted the nursery for the eventual propagation of Islam.

Of course, not every Muslim trader could have had enough time or inclination to do missionary work among the local people. But in the wake of the traders and with the growth of Muslim communities in many parts of the Sudan came Muslim clerics for whom religious activities were generally more important than commercial ones. At first they performed a variety of clerical functions for established Muslim communities to which they later added healing, divining and the manufacture and sale of charms and amulets. It was in this way that they won respect and prestige among non-Muslims whose religious tenets were not exclusive and who often sought the aid of these clerics in attempts to manipulate the world of the supernatural. The side of their activities that touched on magic and superstition constituted the major appeal of Islam in non-Muslim eyes in the Sudan countries. Interpretations of dreams, healing by faith, divining the future, belief in the power of prayer, especially of prayers for rain, were of great relevance.

Since its appearance in West Africa Islam has always had to contend with non-Islamic customs and practices. For most converts, the acceptance of the new religion has never meant a complete abandonment of all non-Islamic practices associated with the African Traditional Religion. In fact, many initially accepted Islam because early Muslim leaders were liberal in their interpretation of what constituted the profession of Islam and were therefore very tolerant of some non-Islamic practices.

The second social group – after the merchants – to be converted to Islam were the rulers and courtiers. Whereas the adoption of Islam by the Sudanese traders through their contacts with North African counterparts went on gradually and unobtrusively for many years, thus failing to arouse the curiosity of the Muslim authors of our written sources, the conversion of a ruler had always attracted their attention, being an event duly recorded as a victory for Islam. We are therefore much better informed about the Islamization of the royal families and courts; moreover the given dates permit us to put this process into a relatively sure chronological framework.

It is generally admitted that the first ruler in the Western Sudan to become Muslim was Wār Dyābī of Takrūr on the lower Senegal. He had adopted Islam even before the rise of the Almoravids in the 420s/1030s. According to al-Bakrī he undertook to spread the new religion into the neighbouring country of Silla; and in 448/1056 his son Labī joined

38. H. J. Fisher, 1977, p. 316. But some clerics were less than zealous about spreading Islam to the unconverted, preferring to claim the monopoly of esoteric powers for their own group; cf. Y. Person, 1968-75, Vol. 1, p. 133.
Yaḥyā ibn 'Umar in fighting the rebellious Djuddāla. Although the Fulbe-speaking people on the lower Senegal are today called Tukulor (but they themselves do not use the name), a distortion of Takrūr, it is not quite sure whether they already inhabited this country in the fifth/eleventh century. It seems more probable that the ancient Takrūr was peopled by the Soninke. In later centuries the name of Takrūr tended to designate, in North Africa and in Egypt, all the Muslim countries of the Western and Central Sudan. Whether this usage goes back to the fact that Takrūr was the first West African Muslim country or to the fact that by the eighth/fourteenth century the people of Takrūr, at that time already Fulbe-speaking, had begun to produce the class of Muslim clerics (the Torodbe) who played such an important role in the Islamization of the whole Western Sudan, remains unsolved.

An even earlier, pre-Almoravid, conversion of a local ruler occurred in Gao (Kāw-Kāw), where in about 400/1009–10 the fifteenth Dyā (Zā) ruler Kosoy adopted Islam. Al-Bakrī does not mention the circumstances of this conversion but reports that when a new ruler was installed at Gao he was given a sword, a shield and a copy of the Qurān said to have been sent from a caliph as his insignia of office. He adds that the king professed Islam, never giving supreme power to anyone other than a Muslim.

But the court ceremonial at Gao described by al-Bakrī was clearly non-Muslim. This pattern of Islam as the official royal religion with the mass of the populace non-Muslim and with a largely traditional court ceremonial remained a general fashion in many Sudanese states and is an indication of the very delicate balance which always existed between Islam and the indigenous religious structure.

To this same period also belongs the already mentioned conversion of the king of Mallal, one of the earlier chiefdoms of the Malinke. The ruler is reported by al-Bakrī to have been gained for Islam by a Muslim resident whose prayers brought a long-awaited rain to the country. Although the royal family and court became sincere Muslims, the rest of the people continued in their traditional religion. This king proclaimed his allegiance to the new religion openly, being called ‘al-Muslimān?; but already his colleague, the ruler of Alūkan, had to conceal his Islam before his subjects.

The first establishment of Islam in the Central Sudan occurred in the fifth/eleventh century with the conversion of the mats of Kanem. In the mahram (grant of privilege) of Ḥummay Djilmi (c. 472/1080–490/1097) we read that:

---

40. Wār Dyābē is a Soninke proper name; cf. C. Monteil, 1929, p. 8. The immigration of the Fulbe-speakers into the country on the lower Senegal began only later.
42. Ta’rīkh al-Sūdān, 1900, p. 5.
44. Cf. note 35.
the first country in the Sudan which Islam entered was the land of Bornu. It came through Muhammad ibn Mani who had lived in Bornu for five years in the time of King Bulu..., fourteen years in the time of King Umme (Hummay). Then he summoned Bornu to Islam by the grace of King Umme... Mai Umme and Muhammad ibn Mani spread abroad Islam to last till the day of judgment'.

It is interesting that already under the reigns of some of Hummay's predecessors (from the beginning of the fifth/eleventh century) there lived at the court Muslim clerics who even instructed the rulers in Islamic precepts and read parts of the Quran with them; nevertheless none of mais publicly professed Islam. It is for this reason that al-Bakri, writing a generation before Hummay, considers Känem to be still a kingdom of 'idolatrous Negroes' although exposed to Muslim influences, illustrated by the interesting story of the presence there of some Umayyad refugees who 'still preserve their Arab mode of dress and customs'.

The son and successor of Hummay, Dünama (490/1097-545/1150) undertook two pilgrimages to Mecca, being drowned on the second occasion.

The fifth/eleventh century seems to represent the period of the first real breakthrough for Islam in the Western and Central Sudan: from the lower Senegal to the shores of Lake Chad Islam was accepted by various rulers and chiefs, thus gaining an official recognition in the framework of African societies. The same century also brought about the conversion of the most famous and at the time most powerful of the Sudanese states, that of Ghana.

It used to be thought that this conversion was brought about as a result of the Almoravid conquest of Ghana in 469/1076. Recent research by scholars such as D. Conrad, H. J. Fisher, L. O. Sanneh and M. Hiskett, has, however, cast serious doubts on this view and it is becoming increasingly accepted that no such conquest ever took place and that the two powers in fact maintained friendly relations throughout. As a recent authority has concluded, 'it seems more likely that the Soninke of Ghana were on good terms with the desert Almoravids, that they became their allies not their enemies, and were peacefully persuaded by them to adopt Sunni Islam as the official religion in the Ghana empire.' From Arabic sources, principally al-Bakri, we know about a large Muslim community in the capital in the pre-Almoravid period, consisting not only of merchants but also of courtiers and ministers. The rulers of Ghana had thus already been exposed to Islamic influences for a long time; it is also likely that Islam came to Ghana first in its Khâridjîte form. The conversion mentioned by

47. Al-Bakri, 1913, p. 11; J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 82; cf Chapter 15 below.
al-Zuhri - that the people of Ghana were converted by the Lamtūna in 469/1076\(^{51}\) could therefore mean merely an imposition of the orthodox Mālikite Islam on a previously Ibādite community as was earlier done in Awdāghust. The most important achievement of the Almoravid intervention was doubtless the conversion of the king and his court.\(^{52}\) Also rejected by revisionist scholars is the view that the conquest and enforced Islamization of Ghana led to a massive population movement of the Soninke who opposed Islam and preferred to leave their ancestral homes rather than abandon their traditional religious beliefs.\(^{53}\) Since no such conquest or enforced Islamization took place the migration which did occur could not be attributed to these factors.

It would be, of course, mistaken not to acknowledge the profound impact of the Almoravids and the changes that their intervention brought to the Sudan. But these changes were of a quite different order to those supposed by the adherents of the migration theory. The Soninke really started to disperse but it was a continuation of a process that had begun much earlier. The Islamized Soninke merchants - the Wangara of the Arabic sources - gradually established their commercial network in the Sāhel and to the south of it, towards the fringes of the tropical forest. Far from being averse to Islam they in fact substantially helped to spread this religion to non-Muslim parts of the Sudan where neither Arabs nor Berbers ever penetrated. The Soninke who moved from Dya (Dia) on the Niger to a new centre at Dyakhaba on the Bafing became known as Dyakhane. They adopted the Malinke language and developed a closely knit community in which clerical and commercial activities went hand in hand.\(^{54}\) Other traders of Soninke origin, but often linguistically Malinkized, developed other trade networks: the Dyula mostly to the southern parts, the Marka in the Niger Bend and the Yarse in the Voltaic states. Most of their history and their role in spreading Islam belong to later centuries but it was in the period immediately following the Almoravid intervention in Ghana that this process gained its initial momentum.

There is no doubt that after the Almoravid intermezzo Islamic activities south of the Sahara became more intensive. The Islamization of the Mai Ḥummay of Kānem is sometimes ascribed to Almoravid influence but this is unlikely. There were, as we have seen, other Sudanese rulers who became Muslims before the rise of the Almoravids. It would seem that in the fifth/eleventh century the dynamics of previous development in many Sudanese states had reached a stage in which the adoption of Islam offered a certain set of advantages to the ruling classes and to a widening group of

---

53. This concept stood at the roots of the theory that the ancestors of the Akan peoples of the modern republic of Ghana (Akan being allegedly a corruption of Ghana) came from ancient Ghana after its conquest by the Almoravids.
local traders. These advantages became even more apparent in the following centuries, in the period of the rise of the great Sudanese empires, Mali and Songhay.

Reasons of state that led to a degree of Islamization in the formerly non-Muslim empires were both internal and external. The external ones were connected with trade since the function of these empires from the economic point of view was the control and exploitation of the Sudan's trade with North Africa. The ruling class had a real interest in presenting an Islamized front — by the organization of its courts and by performing the pilgrimage — in order to establish and improve good relations with its North African clients and partners. In the internal sphere one of the great problems of the imperial rulers was how to secure the allegiance of other subjected pagan clans and peoples which possessed totally different ancestor and land cults from those of the ruling dynasty. A universal religion such as Islam seemed to offer a suitable solution; an effort was made to implant it at least among the heads of other lineages and clans and to establish a new common religious bond. The increasing extent of the empires made the effective administration of the realm more complicated; in this respect the help of Muslim scribes and other literate persons was indispensable for correspondence and control of state affairs. The influence of Muslim clerics at the courts must have been great, thus preparing the ground for the ultimate conversion of the ruler and his family.

This does not mean that the kings were necessarily very devout or deep Muslims. They also had to reckon with the local customs and traditional beliefs of the majority of their non-Muslim subjects who looked upon the rulers as incarnations of or intermediaries of supranatural powers. None of the rulers had the political power to enforce Islam or Islamic law without compromising the loyalty of the non-Muslims. This helps to explain the numerous pagan rites and ceremonies at the courts of Muslim kings like the mansas of Mali and of the askiyas of Songhay, men who had performed the pilgrimage and were commonly considered to be devout Muslims.

In the Mali empire the Islamization of its rulers occurred at the end of the seventh/thirteenth century under the descendants of Sundiata. Although Ibn Baṭṭūta and Ibn Khaldūn maintain that this founding hero was converted to Islam, the Malinke oral tradition vehemently insists on his character as a ‘pagan’ magician and denies any conversion. But already Sundiata’s son and successor Mansa Uli performed the pilgrimage during the reign of the Mamluk sultan, Baybars (658/1260–676/1277). Under his rule Mali expanded over the Sahel and took control of the trading towns of Walāṭa, Timbuktu and Gao, thus coming into a more direct contact with Islamized peoples than in the centuries before. From his reign onwards

55. C. Coquery-Vidrovitch, 1969, especially p. 73.
FIG. 3.2 The Islamized areas of Africa by c. 1500
the royal pilgrimage became a permanent tradition among the *mansas*. The Islamic outlook of the empire took shape in the eighth/fourteenth century under Mansa Müsā (c. 712/1312–738/1337) and his brother Mansa Sulaymān (c. 738/1341–761/1360) who encouraged the building of mosques and the development of Islamic learning. Ibn Batūta, an eye-witness, praised the zeal of the Malian Muslims in memorizing the Quran and in attendance at the public prayers. The general feeling one has in reading his account is that Mali in the mid-eighth/fourteenth century was a country in which Islam had already taken root and whose inhabitants followed the main Islamic precepts. He does not mention any pagan religious practices and apart from the nakedness of women he did not observe anything prohibited by Islamic law.⁵⁸

The general security reigning during the heyday of the Mali empire was favourable to the expansion of trade in the Western Sudan. Muslim traders operated various trade networks across the entire empire and even ventured beyond its frontiers. More and more Malinke were converted as well as some people from other ethnic groups like the Fulbe in the Senegal Valley and in Masina. An important development was the emergence and growth of a local clerical class that was concentrated in the main political and commercial towns, in Niani and Gao, but particularly in Jenne and Timbuktu. There is sufficient evidence to show that at least until the ninth/sixteenth century the majority of Muslim scholars in Timbuktu were of Sudanese origin; many of them studied in Fez and excelled in Islamic science and piety to such a degree as to arouse the admiration of foreign visitors.⁵⁹ All the main offices in Timbuktu (*kādīs, imāms* and *khaṭibs*) were held by black Muslims who had come from the interior of the Mali empire. A similar situation obtained in Jenne and also in Dyagha (Dya) whose inhabitants Ibn Batūta praised as ‘Muslims of old and distinguished by their piety and their quest for knowledge.’⁶⁰ The establishment of a class of learned Muslim scholars and clerics of Sudanese origin was an important event in the history of Islam in Africa south of the Sahara. It meant that from then on Islam was propagated and spread by autochthons armed with the knowledge of local languages, customs and beliefs; this knowledge facilitated their missionary work and assured them a greater success than that obtained by their North African coreligionists in earlier times. In the eyes of the Africans Islam ceased to be the religion of white expatriates and, because it was now carried by Africans themselves, it became an African religion.

The influence of this new class of African clerics was felt as far as the Central Sudan. Until the eighth/fourteenth century the region between Lake Chad and the middle reaches of the Niger had formed something of a

---

⁵⁸. Ibn Batūta, 1969, pp. 423-4; he encountered similar nakedness in the Maldive Islands without doubting the genuineness of the Islamic faith of their inhabitants.
⁵⁹. Cf. Ta'rikh al-Sūdān, 1900, pp. 78-84.
backwater in the spread of Islam, Hausaland in particular having been barely touched by missionary activities. Then, under the reign of Sarki Yaji of Kano ‘the Wangarawa came from Melle bringing the Muslim religion’.

According to Palmer’s chronology, Yaji ruled from 750/1349 to 787/1385; but the recently discovered eleventh/seventeenth-century Chronicle of the Wangarawa explicitly states that these missionaries arrived in Kano during the reign of Muḥammad Rumfā (867/1463–904/1499) having left their original home in the year 835/1431-2. The chronological difficulties in early Hausa history being well known, it is not surprising that scholars disagree as to the date of the first introduction of Islam into Hausaland. Notwithstanding the arguments forwarded by the editor of the Chronicle of the Wangarawa it seems more likely that the entry of these Muslims had occurred during the eighth/fourteenth century under Yaji and not under Rumfā a century later. Yaji is presented in the Kano Chronicle as a strict Muslim requiring his subjects to pray; and many sarakuna between him and Rumfā, apart from bearing Muslim names, are depicted as Muslims. Under the immediate predecessor of Rumfā, Muslim Fulbe (Fulani) came from Melle ‘bringing with them books on Divinity and Etymology’ whereas formerly the Hausa Muslims had only had books on the Law and the Traditions.

It is, of course, possible that Hausaland received several waves of Wangara Muslims at different times and that their earlier representatives had succeeded in spreading Islam mainly among the traders whereas the group recorded in the chronicles preached the new religion to the ruling classes.

It was in the second half of the ninth/fifteenth century that a strong Islamic tradition began to be established. Three major rulers, perhaps contemporaries, Muḥammad Rabbo in Zaria, Muḥammad Korau in Katsina and Muḥammad Rumfā in Kano altered the character of Hausa development by introducing or confirming Islam. Apart from the fact that he was the first Muslim sarki of Zaria, nothing is known about Muḥammad Rabbo. The next ruler of Katsina, Ibrâhîm Sūra, is remembered as a severe master who imprisoned those who refused to pray, whereas his son ‘Alī was called murābiṭ (man of the ribāṭ). Many of these rulers came under the influence of the great Muslim reformer Muḥammad al-Māghilî who at Rumfā’s request wrote the Obligations of Princes as a guide for the conduct of Muslim rulers. There are also accounts of the arrival of šārīfīs (descendants of the Prophet) in Kano at that time; their presence led to the

63. The main weakness of the Wangarawa Chronicle lies in the fact that it confuses the arrival of the Wangarawa with that of the reformer al-Māghilî which happened at the end of the ninth/fifteenth century.  
strengthening of the faith and the elimination of some pagan survivals. Islam was at that time still permeated by many local customs and practices and some rulers asked guidance for correct conduct not only from al-Māghilî but also from the famous Egyptian scholar al-Suyūṭī.⁶⁷

Even after these attempts to foster its strength Islam was by no means generally accepted. It became the religion of small communities of traders and professional clerics; the court circles were influenced superficially, whereas the masses of people continued in their traditional beliefs. But gradually Islamic concepts and attitudes became more pervasive creating a situation of ‘mixed’ Islam. Important for further spread of Islam in those parts of the Sudan was the ready acceptance of it by the Hausa traders who became – after the Dyula – the second most active Muslim commercial class. With the opening of trade routes to the kola-producing countries in the hinterland of the Gold Coast (present-day Ghana) – where they met with an eastward movement of the Dyula – they carried Islam to the forest fringes.

By the tenth/sixteenth century the position of Islam had been further improved by the policies of Aṣkiya Muḥammad of Songhay as well as by the exodus of the mais from Kânem to Borno and the long rule of Idrīs Alāôme. It is supposed that the intervention of that ruler in Mandara in favour of one of his protégés paved the way for the introduction of Islam into that country and it may be that at that time the Tubu adopted the religion. The newly founded Bagirmi became a Muslim state in the same century and some time later, through inspiration drawn from Bagirmi, ‘Abd al-Karîm was able to weld Wadai into a state that was at least nominally Muslim.

At the other end of the Sudanese belt, in Senegambia, that period also witnessed an Islamic offensive. At the beginning of the tenth/sixteenth century the great majority of the Gambian populations were already considered to be Muslim.⁶⁸ In the second half of the century the spread of Islam was even more manifest in connection with the progress of the Tukulor in Futa Toro. Nearly everywhere on the coast Muslim clerics (called by the Portuguese bixirim) circulated, propagating the faith of Islam, prohibiting the consumption of pork and distributing amulets. Three ribāts on the bank of the Gambia specialized in the formation of clerics who were then sent to proselytize in all neighbouring countries.⁶⁹

There were also, of course, some setbacks in the progress of Islam. The Mosi (Mossi) people in the Niger Bend had resisted the spread of Islam for a long time in spite of their having already come into contact with it in the eighth/fourteenth century when they had attacked and sacked Timbuktu.

⁶⁷ In his letter to Ibrāhīm Sūra al-Suyūṭī wrote: ‘I have been informed that among the people of Gobir are those who sacrifice a male or female slave if they are ill claiming that this will be their ransom from death.’ Cf. T. Hodgkin, 1975, p. 119.
⁶⁸ D. Pacheco Pereira, 1956, pp. 69–73.
⁶⁹ M. F. de B. Santarem, 1842, p. 29.
and even Walâta. In the closing years of the next century Askiya Muhammad launched a dhijâd against them because of their rejection of his summons to adopt Islam. But not even the defeat of his army could persuade the Mosi ruler to abandon his traditional religion and the majority of his subjects followed his example. The Mosi kingdoms started to be penetrated by Muslim merchants (Yarse) only after the eleventh/seventeenth century and it was as late as the thirteenth/nineteenth century that some Mosi were converted.

Another island of traditional religion was formed by the Bambara in the territory of the ancient Mali empire. And even the Islamic culture of Mali regressed after the decline of the empire; having lost their external possessions and being separated from the Saharan trade the Malinke lived in small kafu (chiefdoms) without any central administration and without urban life. Islam, being abandoned by the political class, was represented by the commercial group (Dyula) or by the clerics (moriba) only.

But in general, by the tenth/sixteenth century Islam was established all along the Sudanese belt from the Atlantic to Lake Chad and beyond. The ruling classes of all the great states and of the majority of the smaller ones were at least nominally Muslim. In all the towns and in many villages there lived communities of African Muslims of various ethnic origins, sometimes Muslims only in name, but often men of piety and learning with a wide outlook and in contact with the wider world to the north of the Sahara. Although the majority of the peasants were only lightly touched by this universal religion, Islam had become, after so many centuries of its presence, a familiar phenomenon, a part of the cultural scene in West Africa.

Nubia and the Nilotic Sudan

The Islamization of Nubia and the Nilotic Sudan has been — and indeed still is — a continuing process. Although Nubia had been in contact with Islam since the time of Arab conquest of Egypt in the early first/seventh century, Islam’s spread there was blocked by the existence of the Christian Nubian states and the attachment of the Nubians to their Christian faith. The Muslims from Egypt tried in 31/651–2 to conquer Nubia and even penetrated as far as Dongola but the fierce resistance of the Nubians forced them to seek a truce. The ensuing treaty, commonly called the bakt, was a non-aggression pact which allowed the Nubian state of al-Makurra to retain its independent status. It conferred on the subjects of each side the right to travel and trade freely in the other’s territory and stipulated also

70. It is, however, not sure, in the light of recent research, whether these Mosi were identical with those of the Volta Basin, cf. Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 19.
72. On the bakt cf. Chapter 8 below.
that the lives of Muslims in Nubia were to be safeguarded. The treaty remained in force for six hundred years, an exceptionally long term indeed for an international agreement to last. It shows also that the Muslims had abandoned the idea of occupying Nubia; they were more interested in putting an end to Nubian raids and keeping the country as a sphere of influence. Although there were occasionally attempts to convert the rulers (for example at the beginning of the period of Fātimid rule in Egypt), the general policy of the Muslim Egyptian governments was to leave the Christian kingdom undisturbed.

The friendly relationship between Egyptian rulers and Nubian monarchs opened the doors for the penetration of Muslim traders. In the capital of al-Maḵurra there existed, from early times, settlements of Arab merchants who inhabited—in accordance with the pattern established in the whole Sudanic belt—separate quarters of the town. Although it does not seem that these merchants actively propagated the Islamic religion, they nevertheless brought the first elements of the new faith into this hitherto wholly Christian region.

The Islamization (and the Arabization, too) of Nubia was the work of quite different agents. Already in the second/eighth century some Arab nomadic groups had started to move from Upper Egypt towards Nubia, choosing mainly the region between the Nile Valley and the Red Sea littoral. In the fourth/tenth century they were already established in the extreme north of Nubia and at the same time some of the Nubians to the north of the Second Cataract had been converted to Islam.

Another gateway for the penetration of Islam, although of less importance than the Nile corridor, was the Red Sea littoral. There the Arab merchants had already started to settle in coastal towns like 'Aydhāb, Bāḍī' and Sawākin in the second/eighth century. The hinterland was inhabited by the turbulent nomadic Bëdja whose repeated incursions harassed Upper Egypt for a long time. The Muslim governments tried to pacify them by treaties similar to that concluded with the Nubians but as the Bëdja were without any centralized political organization, these treaties covered only a part of their groups. Nevertheless the Bëdja chiefs allowed the settlements of Muslim merchants on their territories, thus opening this region to the influence of Islam.

This influence was strengthened by the immigration of some Arab nomadic groups into the Bëdja country where their members intermarried with the Bëdja ruling families; their children became chiefs of some of the Bëdja groups. This process was repeated over a long period of time and Muslims thus gained prominence. A similar process of intermarriage went on in Nubia, too, and led to the establishment of powerful Muslim lineages. The Islamization of the Bëdja was also stimulated between the

73. Here we deal only with those parts of the treaty which have a direct bearing on the spread of Islam.
fourth/tenth and seventh/thirteenth centuries by the development of trade routes across the Bédja country from the Nile Valley to Red Sea ports. The northernmost Bédja groups, the Hadâriba and 'Ababda, gradually became Arabized, even adopting fictitious Arab genealogies, but their ancient beliefs were only thinly disguised by Islam. Other groups did not feel the influence of the Muslim Arabs so strongly but even they in the long run accepted Islam, or at least some of its precepts. It can be said that by the eighth/fourteenth century the majority of Bédja were formally Islamized; that is to say they considered themselves Muslims and were recognized as such by their coreligionists but with many of their traditional beliefs and practices still alive.

In the meantime northern Nubia witnessed an uninterrupted flow of Arab immigrants; until the end of the sixth/twelfth century, as long as the kingdom of al-Makurra still remained independent, this flow took rather a form of gradual infiltration of small Beduin groups. With the Mamluk interventions in the internal strife of the royal family, the Nubian kings became vassals or puppet rulers. In 715/1315 the Mamluks chose as Nubian king a prince who was already converted to Islam; this event heralded the beginning of the decline of Nubian Christianity. The passing of power into the hands of a Muslim turned Nubia from a Dar al-harb to a Dar al-Islâm; the payment of dīzya (poll tax) to the Muslim rulers of Egypt ceased. 74 The Islamization of the rulers also brought an end to the bakt.

The disintegration of the northern Nubian kingdom, to which the earlier penetration of Arab tribesmen had substantially contributed, facilitated the great Arab breakthrough to the rich pasture lands beyond the Nubian desert. Although these Arab Beduins were nominally Muslim, there is no reason to suppose that their Islam was any less superficial than that of other nomads. They can hardly be considered as fanatical proselytizers for their faith. On the other hand the end of the Christian dynasty and thus the end of Christianity as a state religion must have greatly facilitated the acceptance of Islam by the sedentary population along the Nile Valley. Additional factors contributing to the decline of Nubian Christianity included the growing isolation from the outside world, and also the deterioration of the status of Christians in Egypt from where most of the higher clergy came. Christianity was not wiped out at once but it lingered on over a long period and rather died out by internal weakness. Its place was taken gradually by Islam. In the more southerly state of 'Alwa it remained alive until the beginning of the tenth/sixteenth century when it was overthrown by the joint action of Arab 'tribesmen' and the Fundj.

At this time the Arab nomads had already penetrated into the Djazira (Gezira), between the Blue and White Niles, as well as into the Butâna, between the Atbara River and the Blue Nile. There they settled in the

metropolitan area of 'Alwa and in Sennār and progressed to the south as far as the island of Aba on the White Nile. In a similar way the Arabs penetrated into Kordofān and southern Dārfūr.

In the wake of the nomadic Arabs came Muslim clerics and holy men. They arrived from or had studied in the older lands of Islam and they were the first to bring to this country some knowledge of the Holy Law (ṣāriʿa). The earliest of these pious missionaries was a Yemeni, Ghulām Allāh ibn 'Ayd, who came in the second half of the eighth/fourteenth century to the Dongola region; he found the Muslims in a state of ignorance due to lack of teachers. In the following centuries the missionaries of ṣūfī orders began to settle in the Sudan and to contribute to the preaching of Islam. They succeeded in converting the Fundj, a dark-skinned people, whose immediate provenance was the upper Blue Nile. Under the rule of Fundj kings Islam was encouraged and many scholars and pious men migrated to their kingdom. By the tenth/sixteenth century the southern frontier of Islam was stabilized along the line of the 13°N parallel of latitude. The process of Islamization was accompanied by a process of Arabization that left its mark on a large part of the country.

The Horn of Africa

The penetration of Islam into Ethiopia followed two major trade routes leading into the interior from the Dahlak Islands and Zaylā'. The Dahlak Islands had become Muslim at the beginning of the second/eighth century and at the same time other coastal places on the Red Sea shores began to be settled by Muslims, mostly of Arab or other non-African origin. From these centres Islam was propagated among the local, predominantly nomadic peoples along the coast, but the impact of Islamization was not strong until after the fourth/tenth century.

Although the great number of Arabic inscriptions found on the Dahlak Islands indicate the wealth and importance of the Muslim community which developed later into an effective sultanate, the islands do not seem to have played a great role in the spread of Islam into the interior regions of Ethiopia. The main obstacle was the solid establishment of the Christian Church in northern Ethiopia among the Tigré-speaking and Amharic-speaking peoples. The rulers undoubtedly welcomed Muslim merchants from the coastal settlements – Dahlak being for a long time the only commercial outlet for the Ethiopian kingdom – but they forbade them to propagate their faith. Nevertheless in the third/ninth century Muslim communities had already emerged in the main centres and along the major trade routes. Trade in Ethiopia, and particularly the long-distance caravan

77. On these inscriptions see B. Malmusi, 1895; G. Oman, 1974a, 1974b.
trade had been monopolized since these early times by Muslims as the Christian society had always looked down on commercial activities and crafts.\textsuperscript{78} Traces of early Muslim communities have been found in the fully Christian province of Tigré;\textsuperscript{79} the merchants presumably had freedom of movement and were allowed to settle with their families and servants in the Christian kingdom.\textsuperscript{80}

While the Dahlak Islands were certainly the gateway for the founders of Muslim communities in northern Ethiopia, those in the south, in the Shoa province, must have received their inspiration from Zaylā', an important port in the Gulf of Aden. In this respect Zaylā' has been of greater importance than Dahlak and it was in these southern parts of the Ethiopian region that Islam was destined to play a most prominent role.

The situation in the hinterland of Zaylā' was quite different from that prevailing in the north: it was a frontier region for both Christians and Muslims who started a struggle there to win for their respective faiths the souls of the large indigenous population with traditional religious beliefs. Side by side with this religious competition went the struggle for political and economic domination which was to continue for many centuries to come.

During the second/eighth and third/ninth centuries Islam became firmly established in the coastal areas of the Gulf of Aden; during the next centuries its political and religious significance in the whole region and especially in the interior increased. The conditions that allowed the growth of Islamic influence were partly internal, the decline of the Christian kingdom, and partly external, the rise of Fātimid power in the Red Sea followed by a revival of trade. More and more Muslim traders penetrated the southern interior, founding small communities and political units. This created favourable conditions for the arrival of Muslim clerics who began to convert the local people to Islam.

The early Muslim trading cities and principalities on the shores of the Gulf of Aden began to expand along the Harar plateau at the end of the fourth/tenth century. By the beginning of the next century the expansion of Islam had led to the founding of Muslim sultanates among the Semitic-speaking and Cushitic-speaking peoples of the region. A local Arabic chronicle maintains that the first prince of the sultanate of Shoa had already begun to rule at the end of the third/ninth century, but it is more likely that the foundation of this state came about only at the beginning of the sixth/twelfth century.\textsuperscript{81} The ruling lineage claimed an origin from the well-known Makhzūmī family of Mecca. There were also other non-Makhzūmī principalities of Arab origin in this region.

\textsuperscript{78} Cf. M. Abir, 1970, p. 123.
\textsuperscript{79} M. Schneider, 1967.
\textsuperscript{80} Cf. al-Mas'ūdī, 1861–77, Vol. 3, p. 34 on the Muslim families in ‘Habasha’ as tributaries to the local peoples.
\textsuperscript{81} E. Cerulli, 1941, pp. 5–14; cf. Chapter 20 below.
One of the more important Muslim kingdoms was that of Ifat, whose rulers also claimed descent from the family of the Prophet Muhammad through Abū Ṭalīb; in 684/1285 its greatest Sultan, ʿUmar Walasma, annexed the sultanate of Shoa to the Ifat state.

Arabic and Ethiopian sources indicate the existence of at least three Muslim kingdoms apart from Ifat: Dawâro (to the west of the Harar region), Sharka in Arusi, and Bâf, south of Dawâro. In later times we find mention of some other states like Hadyâ, Arabâbî and Darah. Hadyâ in particular became famous after the seventh/thirteenth century as a centre of the slave trade. Ifat remained for a long time the leading Muslim state thanks to its strategic position on the important trade route leading from Zaylā' to the provinces of Amhara and Lasta as well as to other Muslim principalities.

Although from the seventh/thirteenth century on the Solomonid emperors gradually annexed the Muslim states and principalities in the south, the caravan trade on the plateau remained to a large extent in the hands of Muslims.

How far and deep the Islamization of the local people, apart from the merchants and courtiers, went in these early centuries, is difficult to assess. The chronicle of the Shoa sultanate reports major conversions in the interior only by the beginning of the sixth/twelfth century, especially on the eastern foothills of the Shoa plateau. In the Harar area Arab inscriptions dated to the seventh/thirteenth century bear witness to the existence of well-developed Muslim communities, thus confirming the importance of Harar as a diffusion centre of Islam in this area. During the Christian offensive to the south Islam undoubtedly suffered losses in influence and numbers; it nevertheless continued to be professed by many ethnic groups not immediately touched by the offensive, like the Afar and Somali. When in the tenth/sixteenth century Ṭhān Grañ started his dhīhād against Christian Ethiopia, he was able to recruit into his army Afar and Somali from the plains as well as the various Semitic-speaking and Cushitic-speaking peoples from the plateau, who had long been under Islamic influence. Even if this attempt to found a Muslim Ethiopian empire in the end failed, the eastern and southern fringes of Ethiopia remained firmly in the Islamic orbit.

While the early spread of Islam in Ethiopia can be traced with the help of written documents, the beginnings of Islamization of the Somali are more obscure. We certainly have some records of Arab geographers about coastal towns like Zaylā', Berbera, Mogadishu, Brava and Marka, and even some dated inscriptions from these places, but as far as concerns developments in the interior where the great mass of the Somali were living, only some general traits can be deduced from historical traditions. There is no

82. Al-ʿUmarî, 1927, pp. 20ff.
doubt that the Somali groups living along the coast of the Gulf of Aden came very early into contact with Muslims. Arab and Persian merchants seem to have been the first settlers in coastal towns where they intermarried with local women and eventually merged with local Somali inhabitants. They brought with them Islam as a religion, and influenced the Somali living in these settlements and in the immediate hinterland, who gradually became Muslim, too. But it took some centuries before the impact of these Muslims achieved more permanent success. Somali traditions record that Shaykh Darod Isma'il arrived from Arabia, settled among the Dir, the oldest Somali stock, married a Dir woman and later became the ancestor of a huge clan family called after him, Darod. This cannot be dated with certainty but it is generally accepted that this event occurred in the fourth/tenth or fifth/eleventh century. There is a similar tradition about the arrival, some two centuries later, of another Arab, Shaykh Ishâk, the putative founder of the Isaq Somali, who settled to the west of the Darod. Although many traits of these patriarchs are legendary, it appears that the traditions reflect a period of intensive Islamization among the northern Somali, as well as the growth and expansion of the Darod and Isaq clans at about this time. The creation of big clan families unified by the bond of Islam released the internal dynamic forces and prompted a general movement of these groups into the interior of the Horn in a generally southward direction. It can be surmised with some certainty that during these migratory movements, the already Islamized clan families exercised a proselytizing influence on the hitherto untouched Somali-speaking groups. How long it took is impossible to ascertain.

The Somali living along the Indian Ocean coast became acquainted with Islam from the coastal towns of Mogadishu, Brava and Marka in a similar way to their counterparts in the north. Already in the first half of the fourth/tenth century Arab and other Muslim merchants had established themselves in considerable numbers in these towns. These first settlers were later followed by many successive waves of immigrants from Arabia, Persia and even India. An eventual merging with the local inhabitants gave rise to a mixed Somali-Arab culture and society. It was not uniform throughout the coastal towns but its most important common feature was its Muslim character. These coastal towns, being primarily trading posts, must have been in regular contact with the Somali of the hinterland. Whether they contributed to the spread of Islam in the same degree as did the profoundly Islamized northern groups, remains unknown.

A special feature of Somali Islam is that it was not accompanied by Arabization. Although the Somali are proud of their traditions, which proclaim their descent from noble Arab lineages, and their language contains a large number of Arabic loan-words, they never lost their own ethnic identity, in contrast to what happened in North Africa or in the Nilotic Sudan.

This can be explained by the fact that the Arabs never migrated massively
to the Horn of Africa but came rather as individuals, merchants or clerics,
who were soon absorbed in Somali society.  

The East African coast and the Islands

The coming of Muslim Arabs and Persians to the East African coast and
the Comoro Islands and Madagascar and their settlement there is
discussed in detail in other chapters of this Volume. Here we will be con­
cerned only with the spread of Islam; in this respect the region offers – in
the period under review – a picture widely different from the parts of trop­
ical Africa already discussed. Whilst in the Sudan belt or among the Somali
Islam gradually penetrated entire peoples and influenced more or less the
lives of African ethnic groups, no corresponding impact was felt among the
Bantu-speakers and other peoples of East Africa. True, Islam flourished
here, but only as a religion of immigrants from overseas living in closed­
class communities in coastal or insular settlements. Although archaeology
as well as Arabic sources provide ample evidence for the Islamic character
of many coastal towns stretching from Lamu to Mozambique, at the same
time they confirm that Islam did not penetrate into the interior and that
neither the Bantu-speakers nor any other ethnic groups were touched by
this religion until the thirteenth/nineteenth century. Islam attained success
only among those coastal peoples who came into immediate contact with
the Arab and/or Persian expatriates in the towns. There are reports that
even villages in the vicinity of Muslim settlements were inhabited by
‘unbelievers’ (kāfirs), victims of slave raids.  
The society of coastal cities was doubtless Islamic but not Arabic. The
immigrants, never very numerous, intermarried with African women and
became integrated with the local inhabitants. Their descendants of mixed
blood soon abandoned Arabic for Kiswahili which gradually evolved as the
lingua franca for all Muslim communities along the coast. But for a long
time to come the Islamized element in East Africa was a tiny minority,
which looked towards the ocean rather than to Africa itself.

An exception to this general rule was the penetration of Muslim, mostly
Swahili merchants, into the hinterland of present-day Mozambique and
into Zimbabwe. Chinese and Persian ceramics dated to the seventh/
thirteenth and eighth/fourteenth centuries found in Zimbabwe are indica­
tions of commercial relations with the coastal settlements, particularly with
Kilwa and its southern outposts like Sofala. Later, from the ninth/fifteenth

86. Many originally Arab families were gradually Somalized; the Mukrī clan, from
which the chief kādi of Mogadishu has been always nominated, changed its name into a
century on, at the time of the decline of the Kilwa-Sofala gold monopoly, the traders based on Angoche and Mozambique entered into brisk trade contacts with the rising Mutapa empire. The Portuguese sources from the tenth/sixteenth century abound with accounts of the presence of thousands of ‘Moorish’ merchants active in the Mutapa empire whose competition was bitterly resented by the Portuguese. The importance of Muslim traders in the empire is shown also by the fact that the second wife of the mwene mutapa was minister for Muslim affairs. The majority of these traders were black Africans, either Swahili immigrants from the older coastal centres to the north, or local people who had adopted the international trading culture of Muslim urban societies.

The penetration of coastal Muslims into the interior of south-eastern Africa did not leave any discernible Islamic heritage among the peoples of the region. To all intents and purposes Islam failed to be accepted as a religion by the Africans in the interior in spite of their centuries-long contacts with Muslims. The traditional maxim that the spread of Islam followed the activities of Muslim traders seems not to be applicable to this area for reasons still to be investigated.

The coastal Muslims showed a more proselytizing spirit in the Comoro Islands. The ‘Shirazi’, to whom the Kilwa Chronicle ascribes the Islamization of Kilwa, are said also to have settled on Anjouan, and the local traditions on the islands confirm this in a general way. The chronology of these events is rather uncertain but it is likely that the first Muslims came around the seventh/thirteenth century; as everywhere they mixed with the local Malagasy and Africans on the islands and gave rise to a people known as Antalaostra (‘people of the sea’) whose language is a dialect of Kiswahili enriched by many Malagasy loan-words. According to recent studies the final Islamization of the Comoro Islands occurred in the ninth/fifteenth century.89

In spite of the considerable progress achieved during the last few decades in the study of Islam on Madagascar, there still remain more unanswered than answered questions. There is no doubt that Islamized peoples, be they of Arab or more likely of Kiswahili origin, were installing themselves from the fourth/tenth century onwards on the north-western coast and on nearby small offshore islands, as witnessed by archaeology, oral traditions and early Portuguese accounts. The culture of the first settlers offers many analogies with that of the East African coast between Lamu and Kilwa. On the north-eastern coast there flourished between the fifth/eleventh and eighth/fourteenth centuries a variant of the ancient Swahili culture of the north-west. The Islamized inhabitants of these settlements traded with East Africa, the Persian Gulf, South Arabia and East India exporting, in particular, vessels made from chlorite schists. From the north-east the Islamized peoples spread along the whole east coast as far as

Fort-Dauphin. The ebb and flow of the Muslim immigrants seems to have followed in a general way the expansion of the Indian Ocean trade network, particularly of its East African component.

The traditions of some Malagasy groups claim an Arab origin for their ancestors, not only in the north but especially in the south-east. Among these groups the most important are the Zafiraminia, the Onjatsy and the Antemoro. The 'Arab' immigrants were gradually assimilated to the local Malagasy population and all that remained of their Islamic civilization was the Arabic script — the sorabe — vague memories of the Quran and some socio-religious practices (mostly in the field of geomancy and magic). The scribes (katibo) and soothsayers (ombiasy), specialists in the writing and interpreting of the sorabe were held in veneration — the veneration of the written word is a typically Islamic feature — but there are traces neither of any Islamic institutions nor of mosques. We could thus hardly speak of these groups as Muslims.

On the other hand, the Muslims in the north, being in continuous contact with the outside Islamic world, and strengthened by waves of new immigrants, retained their religion and even spread it to some of their Malagasy neighbours. The profoundly Islamic character of the settlements is confirmed by early Portuguese visitors in the tenth/sixteenth century, who spoke of many mosques and of shaykhs and kādis as representatives of political and religious authority. As in the Comoro Islands, the inhabitants of these city-states were known as Antalaotra, an expression still used today to denote a category of Islamized inhabitants of Madagascar.

In conclusion it should be stressed that in Madagascar Islam did not play the same role as in other parts of tropical Africa where in the course of time it became the religion of entire ethnic groups and profoundly influenced African societies. It never superimposed its own culture over the Malagasy one; on the contrary, in more remote parts of the island a reverse process, i.e. the absorption of Islamized people by the local cultural milieu, can be observed. 90

Conclusion

Between the first/seventh and tenth/sixteenth centuries Islam was established through large parts of Africa. Its dissemination had not been a uniform and linear process in all areas since in each part of Africa different methods, ways and agents were employed. We can roughly discern the following patterns of Islamization:

(1) The Arab conquest of Egypt and North Africa. Although it was

90 The problems of Islam and its influence on Madagascar are discussed in P. Vérin (ed.), 1967; and in Chapter 25 below. See also Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 24.
not accompanied by any enforced conversion of the Coptic and Berber autochthons, it nevertheless created social and economic conditions which in due course led to the acceptance of Islam by the majority of local peoples.

(2) The commercial activities of Muslims, firstly the long-distance or overseas trade, later the regional one, functioned as a stimulus to Islamization in much of tropical Africa. The first agents were merchants of Arab (in the east predominantly from Arabia itself), Persian (in the same region) and Berber (in the west) origin. From the fifth/eleventh century on, the proselytizing was continued through the activities of Muslim Africans: Soninke, Malinke, Fulani, Kanembu, Hausa, etc.

(3) The clerics or holy men were the first to introduce Islam among the Somali, whereas in other regions they contributed to the deepening of faith among already formally Islamized peoples (West Africa and eastern Sudan) and to spreading it further in the wake of merchants.

(4) In the Nilotic Sudan Islamization followed the penetration of Arab nomads, whereas in Somaliland the migrations of some clan families to the south were a contributory factor to the spread of the new faith to other groups.

In North Africa, in Nubia and in Ethiopia the incoming Muslims encountered a rival monotheistic faith, Christianity. The resistance of local Christians to Islamization varied according to local political and social conditions. In the Maghrib where the Christians represented only a minority (mostly of mixed or foreign origin), Islamization has been more complete and Christianity died out by the fifth/eleventh century. In Egypt the process took a longer time being accelerated only under the Fatimids; Islamization has never been complete, as about 10 per cent of Egyptians still belong to the Coptic Church.

In Christian Nubia, by contrast, the impact of Islam until the end of the seventh/thirteenth century was minimal but during the next two centuries Christianity gradually vanished, being superseded by Islam. Only in the Ethiopian highlands were the Christians able to resist. Neither the peaceful penetration of Muslim merchants nor the military campaigns of Muslim states to the south of the plateau shattered the fidelity of Ethiopians to the faith of their fathers. Although Christianity in Ethiopia emerged from this centuries-long struggle victorious, it remained an isolated outpost amidst a Muslim sea.
Islam as a religion, and thus as a constituent part of spiritual and social culture, is one of the fundamental aspects of modern African civilizations, to such an extent that many inhabitants of the continent often regard Islam and Africa as being a single entity. Indeed, Africa and the religion of Islam are old acquaintances. Even before the *hidjra* certain companions and converts, on the orders of the Prophet, had found refuge in Ethiopia at the court of the ruler of Axum. This little community of refugees, which included relatives of Muhammad and some of the first Meccan converts to Islam, was very generously received by the sovereign. Hardly eight years after the death of the Prophet, Islam was gaining a firm foothold in Egypt; the conquest of the north of the African continent was to be completed during the following century.

Islam was carried by a people — the Arabs — who had in pre-Islamic times been the repository of varied forms of cultural life which arose in the desert and in the towns and which the Byzantines, the Persians, the Christians and the Jews had endeavoured to influence. The message of Islam was expressed in a language in which God had ‘sent down His word’; quite apart from questions of linguistic pride,\(^1\) it was invested with the certainty of having brought about a unified Arab culture. Islam could therefore be the bearer of a cultural hegemony which was a source of conflicts with other cultures rooted in other types of societies. The pre-Islamic cultures and societies dominated by Islam in the Near East were worthy of note, in particular, by reason of their written heritage. There is no need to dwell on the subject here. The case of African cultures and societies is more difficult to deal with. As in many other cases, the oral transmission of their knowledge, the implicit nature of their rich and ancient cultural life, means that factual evidence concerning them is often derived from external sources; in this instance, the evidence comes from Arab historiography which is

\(^1\) In order to form an adequate idea of the consequences of this sublimation of the Arabic language it is necessary to remember the immense effort made in the third/ninth century to translate into Arabic everything in pre-Islamic cultures that was of any significance. This is not without points of similarity with what had been accomplished by Latin-speaking Christians three or four centuries earlier.
Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century

marred by prejudice and by ideological assumptions which must be identified and clarified. If this is not done, there is once again the risk that the history of Africa will seem to be a history without any inherent originality and will appear, for long periods of time, as an ‘object-history’, the history of a land that was conquered, exploited and civilized. Indeed, since, unlike the inhabitants of the Near East and the Ethiopians, they did not possess a Book which is the pledge of a Divine revelation, the black Africans and their religion were, from the outset, categorized among the peoples without a respectable religion, incapable of acquiring the status of peoples ‘protected’ by Islam and therefore as hardly likely to possess respectable languages and cultures.2

Islam, African peoples and their cultures

Islam proclaims a profound unity which does not theoretically preclude cultural diversity. It strongly affirms the unity of the human race and recognizes all men as having an identical nature, created by God. They all belong to the ‘race’ of Adam to whom God has granted, in pre-eternity, the ‘primordial pact’. At this level of theoretical generality the profound unity of Islam could not raise any problems for Africans. It did, on the other hand, raise very serious problems for the Egyptian Christians, the Ethiopians and in general for Christian and Jewish monotheists. The Süra entitled ‘The Table’3 establishes a historical continuity after Abraham, through Moses, Jesus and Muḥammad, three Messengers of a single God. The human beings who received the message of the first two Prophets failed to remain faithful to it; the rigour imposed by the third Prophet concerning the observance of divine commands is explained both by man’s tendency to infidelity and by the fact that the revelation through Muḥammad is, historically, the last.

Underneath this unity which, except for Christians and Jews, is easy to grasp and to accept, there appears a second level of contact with Islam: the observances that denote that one belongs to the Muslim community and thus, also, the possible prohibition on engaging in forms of religious life other than those required by the Quran. The obligations are well known: they are contained in the ‘five pillars’ of Islam: the shahāda or profession of faith which is expressed in the affirmation ‘there is no divinity but God, and Muḥammad is the Prophet of God’; the ṣalāt or set of ritual prayers,

2. This question is important in that it was one of the most hotly debated problems at the Arab-African Symposium held in Dakar from 9 to 14 April 1984 by the African Cultural Institute (ACI) and the Arab Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (ALECSO) on the subject of the ‘relations between African languages and the Arabic language’. The general conclusions of the Symposium were that no African language suffered any adverse effect at all as a result of its contacts with the Arabic language. This view of the matter is one with which we do not at all agree.

five times a day; the fast of *Ramādān*, one month per year; the *zakāt* or legal almsgiving which provides for the support of the poor and of orphans; and, lastly, the *hādjī*, or Pilgrimage to Mecca, once in a believer’s lifetime, if this is materially possible. Unity in the faith and in religious practice, the fraternal solidarity among believers who are all ‘brothers’, hospitality and justice which flow from this sense of community: these, similarly, pose no serious theoretical problems. The social ideal of the Muslim faithful is seen as being adapted to the forces of human nature by practising mutual assistance, hospitality, generosity, the honouring of commitments towards members of the Community (*umma*), first, but towards other communities, too, and the tempering of desire. Beyond that, this ideal offers through *djiḥāḍ* (the holy war)⁴ and the sacrifice of one’s life, the opportunity to transcend oneself. This is the expression of the profound unity which characterizes Islam and which gives it its uniqueness. This spirit of community is clearly compatible with deep-seated African traditions of social organization. Muslim texts coincide with underlying African assumptions: in the *ḥadīth* of Gabriel, al-Bukhārī wrote that Islam is also ‘giving food [to the hungry] and giving the greeting of peace [salạm] to those whom one knows and to those whom one does not know’⁵ or again: ‘None of you becomes a true believer if he does not desire for his [Muslim] brother what he desires for himself’.⁶ However, this unity coexists with a truly personal moral responsibility; no one can be charged with the fault of another; everyone must be responsible for his own actions. Thus, the sense of community, the feeling that one is part of a whole, is united, as though by a dialectical process, with a concern for one’s own destiny and for one’s own obligations. The believer is aware of being in a personal relationship with God who will require him to give an account of himself.

It must at the outset be noted that the act of embracing Islam is an individual one; if it is to be a responsible act it must be freely chosen: moral and physical coercion are prohibited by the Quran. But it is also an irreversible act: it is a social conversion which denotes the act of joining a community of a new type and severing links with other types of socio-cultural community. This is a fundamental point at issue for the relations between the Muslim world and the societies and cultures of Africa. *Historical* situations are certainly varied, both in time and space. An African of a different religion could not be forced to embrace Islam; however, his religious status — without a Scripture — made him entirely dependent on Islam and with no protection *vis-à-vis* the Muslim community.

We have thus moved towards a third and much more dramatic level of contacts: that of the law. It was almost three centuries before legal rules were established in the Muslim world in accordance with the Quran and the teachings of the Prophet — the *Sunna*. These rules involved a compila-

⁴ *Djiḥāḍ* means literally: ‘effort to achieve a certain aim’; cf. Chapter 2 above.
⁶ Al-Nawāwī, 1951, pp. 21, 33, 36, 42, 43.
Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century

tion of 'all the [Prophet's] sayings, deeds, ways of eating, drinking, dressing, accomplishing his religious duties and of treating both believers and unbelievers'. The law - shari'a - gathers together the Qur'anic prescriptions supplemented by the prohibitions and clarifications contained in the jurisprudence - fikh. The law has been interpreted by four schools of jurisprudence in varying ways and in a spirit which differed in its degree of literalness and rigour. One interesting feature of the debate on the relationship between Islam and African societies is that the legal schools of jurisprudence with which the Africans had to deal were not the same in the west of the continent as they were in the east. The west, from the Maghrib to West Africa, bore the deep and almost exclusive imprint of Malikism. The Maliki school, which was more formalistic than certain other juridical schools, particularly after its triumphs in the fifth/eleventh century, was brought in conjunction with Sunnism to a high degree of intransigence by the jurists (fuqahä'). These played a highly important role, in particular from the fifth/eleventh to the tenth/sixteenth century. To the east, Shafi'ism, which was strongly established in Egypt and was more liberal, was generally predominant in the Horn of Africa and on the East African coast. Numerous subtle distinctions can probably be accounted for by this fact.

Lastly, it must be added that the fifth/eleventh century witnessed a movement in two directions which are contradictory only in appearance. On the one hand, the increasing rigour of Sunnism, from the time when the Turks became dominant in Baghdad, which was ultimately triumphant and which tended to impose uniformity, through the law, on the authority of the state and on education, and a single Muslim rite; on the other hand, the reappearance of mystic currents of thought - sufism - which had long been opposed and which sought to express religious feeling through asceticism and rejection of the world. The Maghrib was the first to extend a warm welcome to these mystics. In the seventh/twelfth century şüfi brotherhoods began to appear, the first of which was that of the Kadiryya, associated with Baghdad; in Morocco, the Shadhiliyya brotherhood was popularized by al-Djazuli in the ninth/fifteenth century and played both a political and a religious role. Both these fifth/eleventh-century trends had profound repercussions on the relations between Islam and African societies. The first, which was dominated by Malikism, made the Muslim community more intransigent in its dealings with African cultural traditions.

8. The juridical conditions governing the life of the Muslim individual in his community are defined in the Mu'āwalat of the Qur'an. These consist mainly of Sūras 2, 4 and 5 and of some 500 verses.
9. According to H. Massé, 1966, p. 175: 'Perhaps in no other Muslim country was the cult of saints taken to greater extremes; it can be said without hesitation that it constitutes the sole religion of rural people, particularly women accompanied by the rites of animism and nature worship'.

95
The other spread with great success the cult of holy men – the bearers of the blessing (baraka) that was equal to that which the hâdjjis derive from the Pilgrimage. These took on the role of healers and divines and thus Islamized certain very ancient aspects of the daily life of the Africans. In the eyes of simple people who are always ready to believe in miracles, the saints and marabouts seemed more accessible than the majestic and distant God of Islam. More important still, the cult of local saints sometimes negated the obligation of the Pilgrimage to Mecca and sometimes incorporated an earlier cult. In this way there developed first in the Maghrib and then, particularly after the eleventh/seventeenth century in West Africa, the character of the marabout, a dominant social figure of western Islam.

Thus the development of Islamic law, its sponsorship of specialists supported by the state, and the rise of mysticism, concern the life of African societies much more intimately than faith or mere observance. In these doctrinal matters the meeting was not to be as easy as earlier meetings had been. The danger here was one of confusion between the norms of the social life of the Near East and the faith of Islam.

There was a risk that a fourth dimension would play a part: that of cultural emulation of the Arab model, thus implying renunciation of African cultural traditions and total endorsement of the values of the Arab world whether they were regarded as desirable and superior or whether they were imposed. In this context there was a possibility of confusion between Arabization and Islamization.

This is something that can be gauged even before one embarks on an analysis of the process whereby Islam became established as a social system in Africa; it was a meeting between peoples, cultures and societies of different traditions, a meeting the results of which depended on the extent to which each side was able to distinguish between what was merely cultural and what was of general religious significance, and this was ultimately a question of the permeability of African societies and cultures, which were in no sense passive, to the new influences that came from the east. This also means that any approach to Islam as a social system implies a study of

10. The word does not have the same sense in the Maghrib and in black Africa. In the former it applies both to the saintly founder of the brotherhood and his tomb; in sub-Saharan Africa it denotes any person more or less versed in knowledge of the Quran and other sacred texts and who uses such knowledge to act as an intermediary between the believer and God, while at the same time drawing on the traditional lore of divination and on the practice of talismans. He is regarded by the public as a scholar, in the religious sense of the term, as a magician and as a healer.

11. Many assumptions and propositions have taken this theme as their foundation. The question whether a black Islam existed has been examined. To do so is perhaps to overlook the monolithic nature of the religion in question and to dwell more on the sociological aspects of its place in the world than on the metaphysical and theological aspect of the matter. The very clear approach which is that adopted in this Volume – the social system – seems, at the present state of knowledge, to accord better with the conclusions that can be drawn today.
the phenomena of Islamization and conquest, the meeting of peoples. The fact of geographical co-existence made it inevitable that there would be dialogue between Muslims of diverse origins and between Muslims and non-Muslims through the delineation of Islamic space within which the following problem is posed: is there, or is there not, unity in the monolithic meaning of the term or is there unity in diversity?

A period of easy co-existence: the fifth/eleventh century

The tenacious struggle of the Berbers against certain forms of Islamization has all too often been cited as evidence to support the claim that in black Africa the conquest was violent. In fact, the Arabs often halted in their progress southwards when they encountered resistance which was too difficult to overcome in historical and political contexts that were unknown, little known or difficult to control: hence their very limited incursions towards Nubia, towards the Fezzân and Kawâr, towards the Sûs and the western Sahara. In these regions, the leaders of the empire applied the same policy as they did north of the Pyrenees or in central Asia: being aware of the risks inherent in massive military defeats, they confined themselves to incursionary expeditions entrusted to small groups. In spite of the triumphal tone in which some of these incursions were later celebrated, they did not have far-reaching effects and their results were in most cases compromises which provided a safe means of supplying the Muslims with slaves but which ensured that the populations of the south enjoyed peace. The Islamization of the north of the continent in Egypt and in the Maghrib, took, in the long term, forms which are considered in other chapters of this Volume.

In fact, the penetration of Islam into black Africa had very complex and essentially non-violent aspects during this initial period as is shown by many recent studies: the Berbers of the desert, or those of them who embraced Islam, the Ibadite or Sufrite merchants, and the representatives of Fâtimid interests played roles that were different but were not marked by significant violence. Opinions vary even on the methods employed by the Almoravids in their dealings with the black peoples at the end of this

12. See Chapter 3 above.
13. See Chapter 3 above.
14. About 500 slaves a year delivered to Aswân by the King of Nubia; 360 - a symbolic figure - delivered by the Fezzân and by Kawâr (Ibn'Abd al-Ḥakam, 1948, p. 63); in other words a total of some 1300 to 1500 slaves a year.
15. See Chapters 3 above, Chapters 7 and 9 below.
16. See Chapter 3 above and T. Lewicki, 1981; D. C. Conrad and H. J. Fisher, 1982, 1983. These authors have tried to show that the Almoravid episode was not as violent as has hitherto been claimed. Cf. Z. Dramani-Issifou, 1983b; 'The historical relations between the Arabic language and African languages', report to the Arab-African symposium in Dakar (cf. note 2 of the present chapter). In that report see principally notes (11) and (26). See also A. R. Ba, 1984.
first period. There has no doubt been too great a tendency to rely on historical writings that were of wholly Arab or Arab-Berber origin and were strongly influenced by the victory of the believers over the unbelievers, even if they were ‘people of the Book’ and the glorification of certain heroes, the most popular of whom and the most widely celebrated in mythology was 'Ukba ibn Nafi'.

This situation has given rise to a muted and subtle debate in which there are differing ideological assumptions. The debate involves two opposing tendencies in historical explanation, or rather interpretation, of the conversion of Mediterranean Africa to Islam. In general, Eastern and Middle Eastern historians, whether Arabs or otherwise, those from the regions of Africa which have come under the cultural influence of the Middle East (Egypt, the Sudan, Libya and Tunisia) and those of the rest of the Maghrib who are in addition specialists in Islamic studies, have difficulty in accepting – or unequivocally reject – the thesis of the Arab conquest as a preliminary to the conversion of populations. In support of their point of view they argue that Islam does not allow conversions by force. The other specialists in African history, almost all of them, like the former, specialists in Muslim matters and the expansion of Islam, are divided between those who support their analyses by referring to the phenomenon of the conquest and those who accept the conquest as a fact but view it in its correct historical proportions as a long-term phenomenon. The latter include Westerners, sub-Saharan Africans and, to a very limited extent, historians of the Maghrib (particularly Morocco) specializing in Berber studies. Is this no more than an academic dispute? We do not think so and we believe that this debate is important for the understanding of the entire range of human and cultural factors which brought the Arabs into contact with the peoples of Africa. In short, we think that the encounter between these peoples was initially more a political and economic matter than a religious one.

In fact, in the early centuries, the Muslim world had preoccupations which were very different north of the Sahara on the one hand, and south of the Sahara and in East Africa on the other.

In the first case the strategic considerations were of immense importance both as a springboard for further expansion towards Spain, the Mediterranean islands and Italy and for the defence of a bastion against any return of the warring Christians who remained a constant threat.

Seen from this twofold standpoint, Egypt occupied a position of worldwide importance of which the Byzantines were well aware. It was vital to keep Egypt within the House of Islam – Dār al-Islām – and its inhabitants had to be induced, by the most varied means, not to break the agreement obtained from them at the time when the Arab troops established themselves. Here the highly structured organization of the Islamic community predominated; Christians and Jews were obliged to take their part in it as dhimmi.
In a few centuries, the Berbers occupied vast areas from the Atlantic to the Nile; they travelled through them and controlled them by means of the camel. They led highly varied forms of life ranging from the completely sedentary to the fully nomadic. To the north of the African continent they were also obliged to conform to the warlike and therefore political demands of the Dar al-Islâm; although efforts were made by the orthodoxy to eliminate the dangerous—and persistent—traces of religious syncretism, the Berbers were allowed to retain for a long time a degree of originality within Islam and a certain linguistic autonomy. Moreover, for a long time a tolerant view was taken of their respect for traditions which did not affect the essential features of Muslim life. A striking example concerning Ibn Tûmart is given by Ibn Khaldûn:

He took pleasure in frequenting the mosques and, in his youth, he was given the nickname of Asafu, that is to say, Brightness, because of the large number of candles that he was in the habit of lighting.

Ibn Tûmart was thus showing a traditional Berber fondness for lights to which Saint Augustine had also referred. Other and more far-reaching examples of the survival of these practices may be cited. In certain tribes of the Awrâs, of Kabylia, of the Nile and the Atlas, the Berbers preserved their language and their customs, the sources of their originality. For instance, customary law and non-Qur'anic judicial organization are characteristic features of Berber law as exemplified by the collective oath as a means of proof, as are the regulations and scale of penalties known by the name of Ikanûn (kânûn), and justice administered by judge-arbiters or village assemblies. Such customs did not come into conflict with Qur'anic law, but they may have constituted an element of resistance to the standardizing progress of Mâlikîte Sunnism in the Almoravid period; in any case, we find these features reflected in the organization of the Almohad empire. In return for this relative liberty, the Berbers of the north allowed themselves to be integrated, and granted their military assistance even though the latter was sometimes the subject of bargaining between rival princes, in particular in the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries. After the major confrontations of the second/eighth century, the territorial and political integration of the Berbers of the north was more or less an accomplished fact; it was vital for the Muslim world.

17. See Chapter 9 below.
19. For denunciation of funeral feasts in the cemetery with candles, see J.-P. Migne (ed.), Vol. 33, p. 91.
20. The Mâlikîte school considers al-'amal, the customary usages, as one of the juristic principles. The appeal to a custom is possible if it does not contradict Islam; it was thus thanks to the Mâlikism that Berber customs were recognized in North Africa.
21. See Chapter 3 above, Chapter 9 below.
22. See Chapter 3 above, Chapter 9 below.
South of the Atlas and on the East African coast there was no imminent danger that required comparable policies. The mass of the nomadic Berbers to the west joined Islam fairly quickly. Arabic sources remain vague on this point. Even Ibn Khaldūn contradicts himself: he says, on the one hand that the Lamtūna 'embraced Islam some time after the conquest of Spain by the Arabs' \(^{23}\) and on the other, that they were converted 'in the third century of the hidr̩a'. \(^{24}\) As T. Lewicki shows, it appears from the present stage of research that the Islamization of the Berbers in contact with the black populations began during the years 117/735–122/740. This was a beginning, for during the same decade the Massūfa Berbers resisted Islam. \(^{25}\) Thus, there was no haste and no pressure to achieve integration: as late as the eighth/fourteenth century, Ibn Baṭṭūta noted that, in more than one respect, the social traditions of the desert Berbers which he, as a Muslim, found deeply shocking, remained intact: Muslim law was not strictly respected, still less so the rules of marriage and the Arab principles of decency. \(^{26}\)

The Muslims, therefore, had strong reasons for showing prudence when they entered regions of the continent inhabited by peoples with a strong cultural and social identity – even if more than one author found this coherent identity surprising – and where, contrary to what was for a long time thought and written, there existed ancient states that were as powerful as those in North Africa or in Western Europe at the same date. The world of the Soninke, to the west, that of the Zaghāwa or the Känembu in the centre, that of the Bantu-speakers to the east, surprised the Muslims who were not slow in making major ethnographical descriptions of them. They did not seek to convert them and still less to make them abandon their religious, cultural and social practices, before the sixth/twelfth century. For a long time they were content to coexist as merchants, a situation which was of benefit to them and in which they enjoyed for the most part cordial relations with the black princes and merchants. This policy, moreover, was not without benefit even from the religious point of view. We are now gaining a better knowledge of the ways in which the conversion took place, probably in the tenth century, of the princes and merchants in the Senegal Valley. \(^{27}\) We are also well aware of the case of Gao. The historian Ibn al-Ṣaghīr wrote in 290/902–3 a chronicle on the Rustumid imāms of Tāhert. He mentions that between 159/776 and 166/783 there were commercial relations between Tāhert and Gao, the ruler of which claimed to be a Muslim. \(^{28}\)

At Känem, the rulers converted to Islam, probably during the fifth/
Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century

eleventh century, even before the change of dynasty which brought Hummay (478/1085-490/1097) to power; the latter may have been responsible merely for the introduction of Sunnism, in which case the event was contemporary with what was being done further west by the Almoravids. It is likely that trade in the region of Lake Chad played an important role in Islam's progress southwards. To some extent, conversion was a means of protecting oneself against being sold into slavery, a flourishing trade on the route between Lake Chad and the Mediterranean according to al-Ya'kubī, as early as the third/ninth century. This is a form of social change for African societies, somewhat unexpected for Islam but undoubtedly important. It did not probably play the same role at that time in East Africa as there was a decline in the sale of Zanj slaves after the revolt which bears their name and which ravaged Iraq in the third/ninth century. Equally reliable information is not at present available on this period concerning the East African coast and Madagascar as for West and Southern Africa, apart from interesting descriptions such as that of al-Mas'ūdī.

Thus, without wars, without violent proselytism, Islam advanced on African soil prior to the sixth/twelfth century. These advances had no decisive bearing on Dār al-Īslām; they were not irreversible; they took far greater account of princes and merchants than of cultivators. At least it can be said that, before the great efforts to extend Dār al-Īslām which developed from the fifth/eleventh century onwards, certain major achievements had been made. Coexistence had had more striking results than may appear even if it was accompanied by major compromises.

Often what took place was no more than a formal conversion of the prince: the anecdote relating to the conversion of a chief of Mallal, which is cited several times by Arab authors, eloquently bears out this point; later we shall refer to the somewhat surprising fact that the Mansa of Mali, when in Cairo during the Pilgrimage, showed a very superficial knowledge

31. For the region of Chad, this fact is of great historic interest judging by the persistent references in the source literature, until the modern age, of the sale of slaves from the regions of central Africa.
32. See Chapter 1 above, Chapter 26 below.
33. The range of problems posed in general terms by the relations between the populations of Mediterranean Africa, the Sahara and Sudanic Africa (chronology, nature of these relations, formation of states, etc.) have been raised and discussed with the help of appropriate hypotheses by a considerable number of researchers. Among the most recent, the following may be mentioned: T. Lewicki, 1976; J. Ki-Zerbo, 1978; J. Deviss, 1982; Z. Dramani-Issifou, 1982. There are certainly many others whom we have not mentioned, but we draw the reader's attention in particular to the constructive scientific quality of the studies by two young Senegalese researchers on Takrûr and its associated problems. These are Y. Fall, 1982, pp. 199-216 and A. R. Ba (1984) in his thesis on Takrûr.
34. J. M. Cuq, 1975, pp. 102 and 195-6. See also Chapter 3 above.
of the Muslim rules of life. If this is true of the princes who were soon to be criticized by pious jurists for their ‘false Islam’, what is to be said of the ‘converted’ merchants who were loyal associates for short-term commercial purposes but were probably rather superficial Muslims. As for the rural world, there was no question of influencing its beliefs and practices: that would have meant disrupting an entire society and its modes of production. It remains possible, moreover, like a king of the Kongo in relation to Christianity at the end of the fifteenth century, that the rulers who converted to Islam saw a very definite advantage in doing so: they were thereby enabled to shed the numerous obligations inherent in the exercise of power in Africa, with its organized counterbalances that controlled its execution, and not to share the advantages of the new faith with their dependants. Up to a certain point Islam was able, as long as there were no strong religious counterbalances south of the Sahara, to exalt the ancient powers and even the authority of kingship: the question is one that warrants serious study.

Other types of compromise, even more important, emerge from Arab sources. It is an often repeated commonplace to refer to the disappearance of gold when the producers were converted to Islam. This possibility was equally disastrous for the north (as the client) and for the rulers who were the middlemen. Thus the gold producers were not converted, and they were very numerous. In the eighth/fourteenth century thought was given to endowing this exceptional situation with an appearance of legality: al-'Umarî explains that the Mansa of Mali tolerated in his empire ‘the existence’ of populations still practising traditional religions which he exempted from the ādāb that was imposed on unbelievers but which he employed in gold-mining. The situation appears to have remained much the same until quite recent times. The fundamental reason really is that gold prospecting and production were accompanied by a number of magical operations and were bound up with a system of beliefs of which we can still discern traces.

The same applied to iron which provides perhaps an even clearer example than gold. In many areas, accounts describing power relations indicate the close association between royal authority and the master smelters and smiths. The figure of the ‘blacksmith’ is also associated with magic, with the dangerous power of the ironmasters. With the passage of time, this ‘type’ becomes more and more antithetical to that of the marabout; in 1960 the Soviet scholar D. Olderogge drew attention to this opposition and developed a parallel line of reasoning to the above.

The marabout — or, more simply, the bearer of Muslim law — was to

36. See Chapter 14 below.
eliminate the influence of the iron-worker: as A. R. Ba showed in his thesis, ‘Le Takrûr des Xe—Xle siècles’, Islamization as it was becoming established, even if it remained urban and gregarious, seems to have been accompanied by a break in the earlier alliance between royal power and the iron-workers. The latter were first debarred from all political influence and were feared on account of their magical and economic power and gradually formed an isolated group hemmed about by prohibitions but still feared. They were not excluded from economic life, since their role was essential. Gradually there arose around them the notion of caste: in the twelfth/eighteenth century, their religious and social isolation was considerable: the contempt in which they were held provides an indication of the fear inspired by their magic and their longstanding reputation as men of power. This example probably indicates what a long and slow process was the introduction of the Muslim social system, and how cautious it was when it first came into contact with such deep-rooted habits; it may also provide a different insight into the account of the confrontations between the Sumaoro, surrounded by ‘bad pagan blacksmiths’ and Sundiata who was also an ironmaster but no longer gave in to pressures from adherents of traditional religions. Hence the importance of the theoretical battle that was joined concerning the personal commitment of the Sundiata to Islam.

The groups of Muslim merchants established south of the desert ultimately agreed to live there in minority communities that were partly Islamized by the Africans but in no way dominant; they accepted, from the autochthonous rulers a treatment comparable to that accorded to Christian or Jewish minorities in Islamic lands but were probably excused the payment of taxes. This explains the success of the Muslim quarters, close to the royal cities and in many cases with their own mosques, which did not however exert any pressure on the population as a whole.

The Ibâdites clearly played a major role during this period. Their easy relationship with the Sudan (Negroes) may be noted with some surprise, particularly as they behaved with such acrimony towards other Muslims. This is probably one indication of the excellent relations which, for centuries, the Saharan Berbers maintained with the black populations.

Ibâdite sources that have recently emerged from the obscurity in which religious orthodoxy kept them for centuries give a good account of the situation. They provide examples of genuine mutual religious tolerance and of a large measure of understanding — which would probably have been intolerable from the point of view of the Mâlikite Sunnis — towards African cultures impregnated with traditional religion designated as ‘pagan’ and their social practices.

After the brilliance of the Fâtimid fourth/tenth century, so important for Africa, things changed everywhere with the triumph in the fifth/eleventh

40. The founder of this sect was 'Abdallâh ibn Abâd, but as the spelling Ibâd (and Ibâdites) is traditionally adopted, we continue to use it.
41. T. Lewicki, various works (see bibliography), and see Chapter 11 below.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

century of Sunni orthodoxy and the emergence of religious phenomena that were far less ready to display tolerance, such as the Almoravid movement, at least in its African aspects. Even in East Africa, the sixth/twelfth century saw a hardening of Muslim attitudes towards African cultures and societies. This was the beginning of a second period in which the efforts of Islam were increasingly directed towards the standardization of patterns of life in the lands under its control.

Social and cultural tensions related to the success of Islam after the middle of the fifth/eleventh century

The causes of tension

If the hadith which states that 'the angels do not enter a house where there is a dog' were to be taken literally, there would have been no future for contact between Islam and the peoples of Africa since, in African societies, dogs are a permanent feature of domestic life. It is also to be noted that Islam resolutely opposed the excessive manifestations of the keeping of dogs, in particular cynophagy.

Everything depended in the last analysis in the social sphere on the permeability of African societies to any changes proposed or imposed by Islam since there were no obstacles in principle to the adoption of Islam’s belief in a single God.

The black African societies which were penetrated by Islam were rural; they had functional links with the land and with all features of their immediate environment (mineral, vegetable, air and water). In these agrarian cultures, based on the oral tradition, it may be possible to see analogies with certain socio-cultural aspects of the pre-Islamic Arab World. That does not mean that the social structures of the Islamic world resembled those of Africa. In African societies the nuclear family – man, wife, children – was unknown as an autonomous unit; the extended family consisting of the descendants of a common ancestor bound together by ties of kinship and land, was the basic component, united by a high degree of economic solidarity. The history of the flourishing of these basic social groups, up to the limits of segmentation, the history of the various ways in which they associated together in larger groups, recognizing a common ancestor – more or less fictive – or working a common stretch of terrain, need not be retold here. The important thing is that these communities, whatever their size, considered that their bonds – even if they were fictive – were religious and were shared by the totality of their ancestors, the living and children as yet unborn, in an unbroken chain of generations, having a sacred bond with the soil, with the bush, and with the waters, which provided food and were objects of worship. These socio-religious structures could not be dissociated without destroying the entire balance of their life;
they had a sense of oneness, thanks to a long historical awareness of a common past and the slow pace of the changes to which they were subject. Beside them, other more complex societies existed: those in which favourable geo-economic conditions had made it possible to amass reserves that justified the existence of social categories specializing in distinct tasks. Some categories were socio-economic in nature and ensured an increasing division of labour. Others were socio-religious: they maintained, through the activity of magicians, diviners, healers and intercessors between the visible and the invisible, a social cohesion that would otherwise have been threatened by the division of labour; still others represented a more highly developed political organization than in the purely agrarian societies. In all cases, however, the African man retained his vision of the world as a vast confrontation of forces that were to be exorcised or exploited. As Joseph Ki-Zerbo rightly puts it: 'in this ocean of dynamic and conflicting currents [man] made himself into a fish in order to swim'.

Within two different frameworks, one more urban and the other always rural, African societies have taken widely divergent forms depending on whether the people were savanna-dwellers or forest-dwellers, sedentary or nomadic, cultivators or stock-raisers, hunter-gatherers or members of an urban community. Very often, however, the unity of the religious perception of social relationships prevailed over differences in material detail; very often, the role of the mother and the woman in the transmission of property remained considerable. The forms of life remained very remote from that of the clan and of the patrilineal family of the Arabs with which Islamic law is in almost perfect harmony.

It was, of course, in this field that tensions and conflicts arose, particularly when, above all in West Africa, pressure was exerted by Muslim jurists who would have liked to induce the Africans to commit themselves more fully to a 'model of society' which such jurists assumed to be Islamic even though it was perhaps primarily Near Eastern. However, the forms taken by these tensions varied widely from one region to another and at different times, depending also on relationships of strength of every kind, primarily numerical, between Muslims and non-Muslims, and between Muslims from the east and the north and African Muslims. Thus, when we endeavour to appraise the way in which Islam transformed or failed to transform the societies of black Africa, we are dealing with a rich and complex history.

When the scene of events was a town, it was probably permissible in the fourth/tenth century, as it is today in Rwanda, to abandon any reference to ancient rural alliances and to change one's name and merge into a new Islamic community which satisfied all one's needs, and to establish in that community, when the time came, a new family on new ideological founda-

42. J. Ki-Zerbo, 1978, p. 177.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

tions. The change of name permits an elegant and simple transfer, from the social point of view, from the original community to the Muslim community. In Sahelian Africa, this transfer seems to have been easy but, rightly, it does not denote a total break: a Muslim name, strongly Africanized — Muḥammad sometimes becomes Mamadu, Ṭabl becomes Aliyu — is added to the existing African names: these are only Islamized in the long term and in accordance with very precise codes. The process is one of slow fusion whether in the case of kings, merchants or rural dwellers, even later than the sixth/twelfth century. The same was not the case in other regions of the continent where onomastic breaks were massive and dramatic. The Muslims themselves were, of course, divided as to the attitude to be adopted towards the African socio-cultural traditions. The jurists from the north, armed with their learning and proud of the society they represented, tended to see in the ‘non-conformist’ actions of black societies the proof that they belonged to a world that was alien to Islam and must be opposed; the black Muslims who were born in these societies and who wished to live in them, sometimes as small and tolerated minorities, were much more inclined to regard the practices of African religions as not constituting a real obstacle to the acceptance of Islam; their tolerance might be very extensive and their coreligionists from the north readily accused them of permissiveness, of collusion or even of treason to Islam. It was, however, the latter rather than the former who, as we shall see, ensured the most lasting successes of Islam from the sixth/twelfth to the tenth/sixteenth century.

Juridical intransigence, indeed, was a cause of extreme tension over the question of altering the matrilineal rules of succession in favour of the patrilineal practices imposed by the Qur'an. No comprehensive study has yet been made showing the successive stages of this conflict which undoubtedly arose as early as the fifth/eleventh century and whose most celebrated instance was the consultation of al-Māghili to which we shall refer later: the author stated that those who rejected Muslim legislation and applied a matrilineal line of inheritance were not Muslims.

Pressure on this matter was clearly exerted first of all on those who held power: genealogies reveal hesitation between the two forms of succession.

It was probably in connection with the concept of the ownership of goods that the incompatibility between one society and the other proved the strongest. When al-Bakrī spoke of the ‘bizarre decisions’ of ‘Abdallāh ibn Yāsīn, he displayed the distaste of an individual and individualistic

44. In Somalia this change was total.
45. Ben Achour, 1985. This is not restricted to black Africans only. In Berber languages Muḥammad becomes Ḥammū, Moḥa, Mūḥ; Fāṭima becomes Ṭamū, Ṭīma, etc.
46. These examples are strictly comparable in the case of the conversion to Christianity, for example after 1930 in Rwanda-Burundi.
48. J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 344, for example.

106
Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century

owner towards ‘socializing’ forms, equality and the redistribution of property which the Almoravid cleric wished to impose. All the more reason, then, that the African community of land, work and harvests was barely comprehensible to Muslims accustomed to individual family and urban wealth. Once more, the consultation of al-Māghīlī raises, in different terms, the problem of the ownership of goods and his reply was, once again, a radical one.\(^{50}\)

The apparently milder protests against ‘African immorality’ were equally ineffectual: the excessive laxity in the behaviour of women, their failure to wear the veil,\(^{51}\) nudity among adolescents; Arab writers could do no more than record\(^{52}\) or denounce\(^{53}\) the ‘scandals’ which offended their sight.

At all these levels underlying their respective and hardly compatible forms of organization, the differences between Arab-Muslim societies and African societies, whether they were Muslim or otherwise, remained unreconciled between the sixth/twelfth and the tenth/sixteenth centuries. They no doubt tended to see these opposing forms of social life as indicating an incompatibility between Islam and African religion.

The role played by African rulers

Whether friends of Islam or Muslims, from the fourth/tenth century in the Takrūr, or from the sixth/twelfth century in Mali, for example, African rulers in general accepted fairly readily a division of space and labour which ensured that the administrators they required would be available to them in the towns which had been wholly or partly Islamized, while the rural world constituted an inexhaustible source of compliant agricultural manpower whose conversion was not a matter of urgency. Islamic practice seems to have adjusted to this situation: after all, it recognized a privileged territory – Dār al-Īslām – side-by-side with the territory inhabited by the infidels and the pagans – Dār al-Kufr, Dār al-ḥarb. Being content with the conversion of the princes who, in the long term, were the guarantors of the conversion of the masses, Islam probably adopted a ‘pastoral’ attitude which was also to be found in Christian Europe at the same periods.\(^{54}\)

African rulers, even if they were Muslims, cannot by any stretch of the

\(^{50}\) J. M. Cuoq, 1975, pp. 410 et seq.

\(^{51}\) Veil wearing is not a religious obligation in Islam and the veiling of women as understood in some Muslim countries, is not orthodox.

\(^{52}\) Ibn Baṭṭūṭa in J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 311.

\(^{53}\) Al-Māghīlī in J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 431.

\(^{54}\) Although historical comparisons must not be taken to unreasonable extremes, it is none the less interesting to note that the methods used by both Christianity and Islam to penetrate and establish themselves in ‘pagan’ societies often display important analogies: the violence of Christianity, however, was incomparably greater, for example against the Slavs and the Scandinavians.
imagination be said to have been active proselytizers. However, there was no lack of attempts to achieve political and social integration on the Islamic model, both on their part and on that of their Muslim advisers from sub-Saharan Africa. They are sometimes even accused of cultural imitation. One thinks, for example, of Mansa Kanku Musa returning from the east with the architect al-Sâhîlî, or Askia Muhammad I or the dynast of Kano, Muhammad Rumfa, both of whom called on the services of the pious cleric of Tlemcen, al-Mâghilî, or on those of the Egyptian al-Suyûṭî, or of the emperor Mansa Sulaymân of Mali (742/1341-761/1360), a friend of the Marinid Sultan Abû'Inân, who attracted Mâlikite scholars and clerics to his court. Many authors tend to endorse the severe judgement pronounced by al-Idrîsî: 'men of learning and distinction are almost unknown among them, and their kings only acquire what they know about government and justice from the instruction of learned visitors from further north'. This opinion probably overlooks two essential things; the first is that this judgement does not allow for circumstances and it reinforces the pernicious notion that nothing of importance came from Africa itself, but always from outside. Furthermore, and this is still more serious, to think like al-Idrîsî is to forget that African societies, long before their contact with Islam, invented forms of political organization of which we are today gaining a better knowledge but of which both Muslims and Christians knew nothing for centuries. The ways in which power was exercised, which formed an integral part of the African religious sense, could not be abandoned without the consent of society as a whole and without total submission to Islam: we have already referred to the anecdote which is told differently by al-Bakrî and by al-Dardjînî, concerning the conversion of a king of Mallal in the fifth/eleventh century. He adopted Islam in highly dramatic circumstances after a drought in order to obtain from the God of the Muslims the rain that was necessary for the survival of his people: in so doing, he was acting in accordance with an African model of power. The price of the conversion was a heavy one: the destruction of all the instruments of the ancestral religion, the hounding of sorcerers, the devastation of age-old traditions. The response of the people was unexpected: 'we are your servants, do not change our religion!'. We are thus entitled to wonder whether the black rulers did not take from Muslim society, with its belief in a single God, what was convenient and effective for the administration of their empire and whether these attempts at 'modernization' did not constitute a series of attempts to establish a balance between the 'weight' of pre-Islamic African traditions and the 'requirements of the new religion'.

Using a few specific examples, we can examine the real scope of the royal policy of integration with Islam.

The eighth/fourteenth century is often regarded in the historiography of

Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century

Africa south of the Sahara as being the age which saw the high point of the empire of Mali, characterized by remarkable economic development, political influence on an international scale involving diplomatic relations with Morocco and Egypt, and, above all, by the decisive establishment of Islam. It was thus a triumph of the Muslim religion which is powerfully underlined by Jean-Luc Moreau when he writes: 'With the empire of Mali, Islam embarked on yet another phase in the Western Sudan: it was, at least in part, the initiator of a new society'.

Joseph Ki-Zerbo represents Mansa Müsä as 'a fervent Muslim [who] gave new impetus to the expansion of Islam'.

Although there is no doubt of the Islamic piety of Mansa Müsä, the pilgrim king, and without denying that, mainly in the towns, Islam was to some extent established, we think that these two authors who are, moreover, not the only ones, have been misled both by the relatively large mass of documents on Mali in the eighth/fourteenth century and by the triumphant euphoria of the Arab and Sudano-Berber sources of the eleventh/seventeenth century. Moreover, Ki-Zerbo himself acknowledges that: '...the peasant masses (who formed the overwhelming majority of the populations of Mali) retained their animistic faith and this was tolerated by the Mansa in exchange for their obedience and their taxes'.

Furthermore, we cannot see how Mansa Müsä would have managed to give fresh impetus to the 'expansion of Islam' as, in common with all the other rulers of Mali, he did not launch a holy war (djihād).

Let us look one and a half centuries ahead: the end of the ninth/fifteenth century and the tenth/sixteenth century provide other examples of the desire expressed by certain Muslim clerics to bring about a profound transformation of African habits, and of the indecisive response of rulers to such pressure.

Askiya Muhammad, who seized power by means of a coup d'état, made considerable efforts to achieve political and social integration in line with the ethic of the Qur'an. In order to legitimize his coup d'état he resorted to every means afforded by the Muslim religion. With the support of the 'Muslim party' of the scholars of Timbuktu, he made the Pilgrimage to Mecca at the end of the ninth/fifteenth century. The title of caliph (khālīfa) invested him with spiritual authority in the Sudan. In the interior, he sought the advice almost exclusively of Muslim scholars. Faced with the difficulty of resolving the social problems raised by part of the inheritance he had received from Sonni 'Alî the Great, he requested four consultations from three outstanding jurists: 'Abdullāh al-Ansamānī of Takedda, al-Suyūṭī, and al-Māghilī. The latter appears to have taken the greatest trouble. At the request of the askiya he wrote a kind of handbook of the

59. Ibn Batṭūta, al-'Umarî, Ibn Khaldūn, etc.
perfect Muslim prince, the *Answers to the Questions of the Emir al-Hādijdī 'Abdullāh ibn Abū Bakr.* At the request of another black ruler, al-Māghīlī wrote a book in the same style: *The Obligations of Princes* (Risālat al-Mulūk), intended for the king of Kano, Muḥammad Rumfa (870/1465–905/1499).

Askiya Muḥammad, wishing to conform to the model of what was required of a caliph, adopted the oriental insignia of power: a seal, a sword, a Qurān; he declared Friday to be the day of the weekly audience, he undertook holy wars – though without success – against the ‘infidels’. He was no more successful however, than the emperors of Mali who had preceded him in distancing himself from the African traditions which enjoined him to retain the ancestral attributes inherited from the time of the Shi: a drum, sacred fire, precise regulations concerning dress, hairstyle, regalia, the catching of the ruler’s spittle, the existence in the higher administration of the *Hori farima*, in other words the high priest of the worship of ancestors and genies.

Ultimately, he did not put into practice the unbending advice given by al-Māghīlī against the ‘false Muslims’ by whom, according to the jurist, the askiya was surrounded. The teachings of al-Māghīlī remained dormant in West Africa until ‘Uthmān Dan Fodio turned them into a doctrine and a weapon to use against the princes who were then of no further use to the expansion of Islam.

In Bornu, the successor to the state of Kānem, the rulers (*mai*) who were true living gods, nevertheless filled their courts with learned Muslim *imāms*. These tried in the reign of ‘Alī ibn Dūnāma (877/1472–910/1504) to bring the morals of the notables into line with Qurānic prescriptions. The ‘sultan’ acquiesced but the notables refused to comply. Similarly, the justice administered by the *kādi* was confined to the towns and did not replace the law of African groups. Parts of Hausaland, which were converted to Islam in the eighth/fourteenth century by Fulani and Wangara missionaries, rulers and zealots, experienced the same difficulties in inducing rural, or even urban, populations to adopt the Muslim religion. In Katsina, after the visit of al-Māghīlī to try and purify the lukewarm Islam of the Hausa, ‘sacred woods of the animists were razed to the ground and in their place mosques were built’. The Near Eastern form of life was dominant in Muslim society: the harem and the veil for women, the employment of eunuchs, a fiscal system based on the Qurān and so forth. But these changes did not last. Ultimately, the apparent inaction of the kings was probably an indication of their awareness that social pressures would lead to the rejection of Islam.

It was outside their control, ‘at the grass-roots’, that the most substantial advances of Islam were ultimately achieved during these centuries. African

merchants, Wangara and later Dyula and Muslim missionaries of all types carried the message of the Prophet out to the countryside and to the towns as far as the forest fringe. This slow expansion did not, for sound reasons, overturn the habits of societies within which small groups of Muslims were coming into existence. Such societies continued, for example, to produce the cultural wares in keeping with their traditions: the remarkable discovery in recent years of an art of statuary in terracotta in the middle of 'Muslim' Mali bears witness to this.62

The results

In the present state of research, the results are very difficult to assess and their apparent contradictions are disconcerting.

There is no doubt that the art of writing and techniques of weighing63 were introduced by Islam south of the Sahara as early as the fourth/tenth century. To what extent did these two innovations upset earlier habits? What were the earlier habits as regards conservation of traces of the past, counting and mathematical knowledge?

It may justifiably be said that literature in the Arabic language south of the Sahara seems to have paid no regard to African cultures and their languages. In order to be sure of this it would be necessary to ascertain and evaluate the contents of libraries which are now being studied in Mauritania, Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger, Chad and the Sudan. It would also be necessary to make a scientific study of the development of certain African languages in contact with Arabic. It is probably correct to say that those who were literate 'in Arabic' ignored ancient African cultures both because they were 'pagan' and, more simply, because they were unaware of their existence; in that regard they showed themselves to be as unperceptive as the majority of Christian missionaries some centuries later. It would probably be unjust to regard such ignorance as denoting preconceived contempt for African societies and cultures.

It may be said that these scholars north of the Sahara who were, in most cases, unacquainted with the region up to the ninth/fifteenth century (although the same is probably not true in East Africa), brought with them their own preoccupations. After the seventh/thirteenth century these seem no longer to have had the brilliance of the great age of Arab-Muslim culture; even though Morocco in the seventh/thirteenth century, for example, seems to have had several great thinkers; it may be that many branches of knowledge withered at that time in the Muslim world, even though some continued to flourish. It may be that authors of the past were copied too much and that legal formalism prevailed over living thought. Here again,

in order to reach valid conclusions, it will be necessary to wait until thousands of manuscripts, so far not studied even if they have been catalogued, have been analysed; we shall need, for example, to be aware of the treasures of the Karawiyîn Library of Fez and the Bibliothèque Royale at Rabat where so many manuscripts from Timbuktu and works on Africa are housed.

At present it seems that it was normal, at the outset, for educated Malinke, Fulani, Soninke, Berbers or Negro-Berbers, such men as Mouri-magha Kankoi of Jenne, Baghayogho, Kâti, ibn Dansal al-Fulânî, Ahmed Bâbâ, ibn al-Mukhtâr Gombele of Timbuktu, and so forth, who were committed to the letter and spirit of Islam, to think in Arabic, write in Arabic and produce commentaries on books belonging to the Islamic tradition. This Islamo-centrism no doubt made the universities of Timbuktu seem less brilliant than black Africans today would wish, as they can discern in those universities, as far as our present knowledge goes, hardly a trace of their cultural past. 64 This being so, there is only one comment to be made: the Muslim scholars belonged to a fairly closed world and were still a minority group facing a mass of adherents of African traditional religion, whom they thought themselves duty bound to convert and perhaps to guide towards other styles of life; thus they were not predisposed to become enlightened historians of the African past or even sympathetic observers of the life of autochthonous societies which they considered to be ‘pagan’.

It is probably in this area that research is least advanced and where the researcher has the greatest difficulty in maintaining objectivity.

Islamization—Arabization

It was probably in Kânem and in East Africa that the last transformation of African society first took place: the ‘Arabization’ of their origins and their past; West Africa was not slow in taking the same path.

When, in the seventh/thirteenth century, the genealogists of the Kânembu dynasty tried to reconstitute the noble lineage of the reigning princes, they did not demur to make one vitally important innovation, namely to seek those origins in the East and even in biblical traditions. 65 This was the inception of an idea that was to prove enormously successful and to bring about a profound change in the cultural relationship between African societies and the Muslim world. Any prince of any standing had to come from the East; the only noble origins were those of the East and no past was to be so spoken of except if it were related to the Prophet, his family or his companions. A start was made (not, by any means, for the last time) on the rewriting of African history and the ‘new history’ was to strike


112
Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century

a blow at the obsolescence and the absurdity of the cosmic or animal origins with which African societies sometimes endowed themselves.

Genealogical literature was to flourish after the eighth/fourteenth century in East Africa where it became one of the weapons in the ideological conflict between opposing Muslim tendencies and between reigning houses as late as the thirteenth/nineteenth century. A great deal of work remains to be done to clarify this literature. In West Africa, the transformation of the stories concerning the origin of the 'Mandingo' was spectacular; that of the origins of the founders of the Wagadu was equally so. Gradually, every Islamized group of any importance discovered an ancestor from Arabia. This considerably strengthened a theory of biblical origin according to which African populations came from the Middle East, with all the diffusionist consequences that this theory implied. Another aspect was the propensity for discovering 'white' origins - in this case Arabic and Persian - for everything of any value in Africa even if that meant totally devaluing the most anciently attested African cultures. Thus began the eclipse of African history which was later to be considerably exacerbated by the Europeans.

No dominant family or group ultimately escaped this logic of 'Arabization'. In the thirteenth/nineteenth century, the Yarse of Burkina Faso in their turn claimed Arab origins at a time when their commercial supremacy, which dated from two centuries earlier, and the privileged position which had earned them a real historical compromise with the Mosi of Ouagadougou seemed to them to be in jeopardy. Even the remote Bet-sileo of central Madagascar, who had no Muslim tradition, were fascinated by the 'civilizing model' of Islam and sought out Arab origins for their princes; they were not, incidentally, the only ones to have done so in Madagascar.

In the last analysis, there is nothing surprising in the fact that Islam inspired such confidence and infatuation. The phenomenon is one which ought to be studied dispassionately since it is so important and, for several centuries, was so characteristic of an 'oriental' temptation for Islamized African societies.

This 'genealogical snobbery' provided a guarantee of the age and quality of the Islamic practices of those who traced their origins to Arab ancestors; it also guaranteed the 'historic rights' of aristocracies that were becoming established. It finally took on so much importance, particularly in the region between Lake Chad and the Nile, that it became the normal process of the Arabization-Islamization of many groups. The Maba are a good case in point. Islam had been gaining ground in Kânem when the Bulala arrived

70. E. Flacourt, 1913.
and helped to extend its influence eastwards through contact with other peoples including the Maba. The latter, until the ninth/fifteenth to tenth/sixteenth century, had not been exposed to any Islamic influence. The actual or mythical arrival among them of an Arab claiming to be of Abbasid origin, called Djâmê at the end of the tenth/sixteenth century, changed the course of events. Djâmê chose a wife belonging to a Maba clan and his entry into the Maba group made things simpler. As the new religion progressively gained more ground, certain Maba clans laid claim to an Arab-Muslim origin. The contact that had existed between the Arabs and the indigenous populations just prior to the penetration of Islam had no religious or cultural implications. Such contacts were based mainly on the black slave trade, and on the trade in gold and ivory. The Arab kabîlas referred to the Maba as ‘ambây’ (primitives) whereas the indigenous peoples dignified their guests by the name of ‘aramgo’ (savages, barbarians, anarchists). Until that time they had not been brought together by language or by religious outlook. Before long the Arabs married into the great Maba families; they became semi-sedentary and more or less adopted the Islamic traditions of the Maba. The influences were in both directions. The Maba learned the language of the Arabs and thus considered that they had no difficulty in understanding the Qoran. Religion commanded the observance of Islamic rites and also the language of the Qoran. As the teaching of Islam spread, the Maba ‘sought not only to imitate the Arab model offered by Islam but also to identify themselves with the Arabs. In each clan, the chief who was installed and maintained by power sought out an origin in the Arab-Muslim world: the line was traced back in most cases to the family of the Prophet or, more modestly, to one of his four direct companions’. Moreover, writes Issa Khayar, ‘to adopt the religion of the Arabs, the customs of the Arabs, the language of the Arabs, to ally themselves with the other Arab or Muslim peoples, was the irresistible trend of the entire Maba society’.

Islamization, together with Arabization, had very important repercussions on the whole of Maba society. The Maba unconsciously tried to rewrite their history by fabricating fictitious genealogies accompanied by a complete change of names.

Such more or less collective changes of name explain the difficulty encountered by present-day historians in studying the sequence of past events. From the point of view with which we are concerned, the example of the Maba is remarkable in many ways. In their case, as in that of the Waddaïans in general, their own system of cultural values underlies and cohabits with the Islamic ethic. But Islam, because of the cultural dynamism conferred on it by a written and oral system of teaching, tended to overshadow and to overthrow these traditional socio-cultural values, which became latent.

Islam as a social system in Africa since the seventh century

The last link in the chain of transformations brought about by Islam in the life of African societies is probably the most significant of all. It leads to a total 'deculturation' of the societies in which it gains a complete hold, creates a 'black Arabism' which seems like a historical contradiction and which culturally impoverishes the Muslim community. Many African societies did not react like the Maba. They assessed the damage implied by the alternatives offered or imposed. On occasion their reaction was even to reject Islam. Ultimately those most concerned by this problem were those who, having been kept aside from the transformations brought about by Islam, suffered from them because of the contempt for their beliefs and an ideology that viewed them as no more than an inexhaustible source of slaves of which the main beneficiaries were the proponents of Islam and the black states engaged in the slave trade. In many cases, therefore, mistrust arose and induced a certain number of African societies to open rejection and confrontation.

The interrupted dialogue: the late tenth/sixteenth – early eleventh/seventeenth centuries

The end of the tenth/sixteenth century and the beginning of the eleventh/seventeenth century mark an important stage in West African history. This period has with some justification been described as a turning point. We would prefer to regard it as an interlude which comes at the end of a long and extremely rich period which saw the emergence and development of the principal black sub-Saharan states and the confrontation of two world views, that of the traditional religions of the African continent and that of Islam. It was also the starting point of another, admittedly shorter, period of serious disturbances and uncertainty during which the Muslim religion apparently paused in its expansion or even, in many regions, retreated. The main impression given is that the majority of the African peoples which had had contacts with Islam returned to their origins. This interlude is seen to have been historically necessary when one analyses the role of Islam as a motivating force in African socio-economic relationships, a role which appeared to offer a greater threat where Islam was less firmly established: sedentary agrarian societies were dominated by African oligarchies when it advanced; under cover of Islam, entire regions of the continent became reserves of slaves.

It was in the Songhay empire, under the leadership of Sonni 'Ali (868/1464–897/1492) that this anti-Muslim reaction took its most vigorous form; it was directed not against persons but rather against the influence of the ideology they professed which was regarded as incompatible with traditional African values. A number of circumstances favoured the conduct of what really ought to be termed a counter-offensive.

During the last quarter of the eighth/fourteenth century and during the
early years of the following century there was a weakening, followed by the almost total disappearance of the central authority of Mali which had been a source of political cohesion between the various peoples of which the empire was composed. Spurred on by the exactions of certain rulers of Mali, satellite states, regions, country areas and urban centres found it easier, the more remote they were from the capital, to cast off the central authority. The rich, cosmopolitan urban populations, well organized and structured by Islam, began to act as autonomous or even independent merchant republics. This was the case with Jenne, Walâta and Timbuktu, for example. In the new Songhay empire, which, by conquest, had inherited the eastern provinces of Mali, the relations between Sonni 'Alî and these towns, particularly Timbuktu, rapidly deteriorated into serious conflict. Economic and strategic reasons were among the causes of the conflict but the determining factor seems to have been the reason of state rooted in the primacy of the imperial authority. Sonni 'Alî, the emperor magician, raised in the ethos of the all-powerful African monarch - who was, after all, known as Dâli, in other words the All Highest - could not bear to see his supernatural power, which was recognized by the great mass of his subjects who adhered to African traditional religions, challenged by the Muslim scholars of Timbuktu, who were, moreover, foreigners.72 The Berbers, the Negro-Berber half castes and the Fulani formed, indeed, the overwhelming majority of the population of that town. The city was therefore severely harassed in the person of its scholars much to the discomfiture of the learned authors of the Ṭārikhs.73 The reign of Sonni Alî was marked by the bringing into line of Timbuktu, by the supremacy of Gao,74 and in a sense by the backlash of African traditional religion against Islam. The coup d'état of 898/1493 organized by Askiya Muḥammad and the desire to make the ‘Islamic option’ irreversible can be explained only in this context.

Apart from two interludes.— the reigns of the askiyas Muḥammad I (898/1493–934/1528) and Dâwûd (956/1549–990/1582) — during which a relative revival of interest in Islam was manifested by those two rulers, the end of the tenth/sixteenth century was marked by the Moroccan conquest. The collapse of the political framework and the disorganization of the social fabric led to a definitive decline of the Songhay cities. Resistance to the occupying Moroccan force over the course of some ten years brought about a southwards movement of populations, mainly into Dendi. These populations organized themselves as little independent states with socio-religious structures drawn from the ancestral traditions and kept nothing of Islam except their names.

A pamphlet by Ahmad Bâbâ (963/1556–1038/1628), generally known by the name of Mi'râḏî al-Suhûd, written between 1001/1593 and 1025/1616,

73. Ta'rîkh al-Südân, 1900, pp. 105, 107, 110 and 115; Ta'rîkh al-Fattâsh, 1913–14, pp. 80, 84 and 94.
74. Z. Dramani-Issifou, 1983a.
provides an insight into the extent of the social upheavals caused by the Moroccan conquest and by the intensification of slavery at the turn of the eleventh/seventeenth century. Having been called on by the merchants of Tüwät to give his opinion (fatwa, fatwā) on the subjugation and sale into slavery of certain populations of the Songhay empire, Aḥmad Bābā took the opportunity to describe the social and religious scene in the greater part of the Nigerian Sudan in the early eleventh/seventeenth century. In this description, which aspires to be in conformity with Islamic ethics, the author, wishing to defend populations which had been the victims of lawless capture, shows that the economic activities of the time relied mainly on the trans-Saharan black slave trade. He drew attention to the extent and variations of the Islamization of the peoples of the region, and the retreat of the Muslim religion emerges clearly.

Still more significant than this retreat is the social and religious disarray in the political vacuum created by the disappearance of the Songhay state and the disorders of the Moroccan occupation, the emergence of an 'animistic' kingdom ostensibly professing allegiance to African values. This was the Banmana (Bambara) kingdom of Segu during the eleventh/seventeenth century. This was caused both by the destruction of the 'imperial Muslim power' and also by the decline in the urban fabric of the empire and the open rejection of Islam which had taken place in rural environments since the seventh/thirteenth century, in spite of the mansas of Mali and the askiyas of Songhay.

Islamic contact with Africa proved one of the most fruitful human ventures in world history. Islam offered what might be termed 'a choice of society'. Its implications were variously conceived at different times and in different places in the black continent. The stakes were high: neither more nor less than a change in outlook, in ways of conceiving and representing the world, in behaviour. It was a matter of exchanging one's own culture for that of another, in short of becoming someone other. In spite of the resistance that was shown between the first/seventh and the start of the eleventh/seventeenth centuries, Mediterranean Africa accepted the Muslim option. It was Islamized and started to become Arabized.

In the rest of Africa, Islam did not find the propitious historical circumstances which explain its success in the east and north of the continent and in Spain. Although it was neither a conqueror nor totally in control of power, which it had to leave in the hands of princes who were still imbued with African traditions — even though they sometimes made themselves 'foreigners' to the peoples whom they ruled by their own conversion and often, thanks to the profits earned by such rulers from the sale of slaves — Islam obtained substantial religious results south of the desert and in East Africa. By the tenth/sixteenth century Islam had still not found an overall solution which would enable it to integrate black societies and their cultures without problems in the House of Islam. The subsequent interlude was not any more conducive to the discovery of such a solution.
Lastly, on more than one point, social integration was to occur in the course of revolutionary events in the twelfth/eighteenth and early thirteenth/nineteenth centuries: those events alone, in certain regions, were to make Islam into a comprehensive expression of the social and cultural life of the people.
The peoples of the Sudan: population movements

F. DE MEDEIROS

The problem and the sources

At the present stage of African historiography, study of the movements that culminated in the establishment of the peoples of the Sudanic zone of West Africa is an indispensable but extremely complex task.

The context in which the question arises is clouded by debates that give prominence to presuppositions concerning the cultural supremacy of certain groups from the north and east. This is a problem of major concern which must be constantly borne in mind in the course of our examination in so far as it has a bearing on the methods and the main lines of emphasis of African history; it calls for strenuous critical thinking and a commensurate effort of empathy.

In most books and monographs on African history, population movements occupy a prominent place; they are usually introduced before any other topic is developed, with the widespread notion of 'migrations'. The vast area occupied by the Sudan was conducive to movement, contacts and exchanges; in the absence of solid geographic and chronological points of reference, there is a strong temptation to invoke outside influences. Similarly, use is often made of oral tradition which goes back to the beginnings of the peoples of the Sudan in an attempt to establish a connection between their cultures and the culture of prestigious ancestors. Finally, the very theme of 'migrations' lends itself to new interpretations that utilize, among other procedures, comparative investigations, seeking to rediscover in the facts and realities of African history patterns and structures originating in more ancient cultures that are taken as models.

The Hamitic hypothesis, which served to explain the evolution of African cultures in ancient times, has been widely used as a palpable interpretative framework. According to this theory, the 'Hamites' were an African people distinct from the other blacks of sub-Saharan Africa from the standpoint of race (Caucasian) and linguistic family. The northern branch

1. R. Cornevin, 1960, pp. 70–1 tries to account for the two terms 'Chamite' and 'Hamite', but he endorses the former; cf. C. G. Seligman, 1930, 1935.
of the 'Hamites' would, therefore, include the inhabitants of the Sahara, the Berbers, the Tubu and the Fulani. The 'Hamitic' hypothesis draws a clear distinction between the pastoral 'Hamites' and the agricultural blacks, considering them as two separate and well-defined categories.

Because of their 'natural' kinship with the peoples who founded the Mesopotamian and Egyptian civilizations of the Middle East, the Hamites are regarded as having been responsible for all the progress and innovations made by and in Africa. That being so, the occupation of pastoral cattle-breeder is credited with cultural superiority. These white nomads would, it is said, have transmitted the elements of 'civilization' to the sedentary blacks.²

Authors like M. Delafosse, H. R. Palmer and Y. Urvoy in particular, who have provided much of our knowledge about the peoples of the Sudan, deliberately adopted this diffusionist standpoint;³ Urvoy is even convinced that 'the whites brought the seed of a superior type of organization' to Africa.⁴ Contemporary African historiography is becoming sensitive to the ideological presuppositions inherent in such assumptions which are being subjected to methodical criticism.⁵ But it must be admitted that much arbitrary data of this type is still fashionable in textbooks and other works. For although these theories and their influence are now being challenged in earnest, it is far harder to replace them with fresh contributions based on the results of research (which has itself become more rigorous).

Another set of problems stems from the fact that we do not have the material for an exhaustive treatment of this subject. The period in question — the first/seventh century to the fifth/eleventh century — usually comes under the heading of the 'dark ages'.⁶ And yet despite the recent expansion of African historical studies, the information we have for the early periods is still incomplete.

It is true that the Arab conquest of North Africa ushered in a period of contacts calculated to yield more reliable information than the previous centuries. But the limitations of the written sources originating from the Arab geographers are now becoming more and more apparent.⁷ Conceived from the standpoint of their own cultural environment, they are fragmentary, and reflect considerable gaps as regards the specific question of the peoples of the Sudan. Their authors were mostly easterners such as al-Ya‘kūbī, who never went beyond the Nile delta. Some of them had to take account of the interests and expansionist designs of the masters who had sent them to collect information, as with Ibn Ḥawkāl (who worked for the Fāṭimids). Al-Bakrī is undoubtedly the author whose contribution has

². C. G. Seligman, 1930, p. 96.
proven to be the most important; but he did not know the countries he described from Spain, and the facts in his account come mainly from the works of earlier authors (largely thanks to the official archives of the Caliphate of Cordova) and from the stories of travellers he questioned. In all likelihood, none of these writers visited the Sudan before Ibn Battūtā (eighth/fourteenth century).

But the subject can be approached from a new angle. The collections of Arab sources of J. M. Cuoq and of N. Levtzion and J. F. P. Hopkins are invaluable works of reference alongside the individual studies, especially when research in the field is making progress. A positive attitude towards oral tradition is found throughout Africa. The Wagadu legends, accounts by chroniclers and traditionists from Mali and ‘Mandingo’ land, and Songhay, Zarma, Hausa, Fulani (Peul) and Mosi (Mossi) traditions, together with the archaeological work being carried out from Mauritania to Chad, make it possible to view the subject in a more critical light and to widen the field of information.

The area in question is enormous. The Land of the Blacks – Bilād al-Sūdān – now denoted by the name Sudan comprises not only the Senegal, Niger and Chad basins but also ports of the savanna and forestlands further south. Here documentary material is even scantier, and research is in its infancy. Work is in progress at Kong (Ivory Coast), Begho (Ghana) and Poura (Burkina Faso); but apart from Taruga and Ife in Nigeria these sites cannot compare with what has been achieved at Tishīt, Tegdaoust or Kumbi Saleh or in Dogon country. This wealth of investigations in the Sahel in fact provides valuable material for a reassessment of the Sudan’s relationship with its Saharan fringes, which can hardly be ignored. This in turn makes it possible to see under what conditions the peoples of the Sudan occupied their environment, and how they fitted into it and acquired their cultural resources.

The northern border

We have long been accustomed to looking at the sub-Saharan area through what may be called ‘the spectacles of Islam’, that is, seeing its history exclusively through the eyes of the Muslim society settled in North Africa, which is our main source of written literature. The Muslim period and the new situation it introduced in the Maghrib unquestionably represents a major stage in our knowledge of the sub-Saharan area. The study of the peoples of the Sudan starts here, for Muslim Arab culture and society brought with it impressions that affected its relationship with the Sudan. This is useful historical material and Arabic sources are viewed with favour, coupled with the prestige of the written word so prized by the

Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

'People of the Book'. But if we step back a little from this very widespread attitude we find that knowledge of the Sudan and its peoples is largely influenced and determined by the concerns of the Eastern and Maghribi Muslim world.

The tendency to look at the 'Land of the Blacks' from a North African viewpoint goes back a very long way. It originated in antiquity, when the 'known world' around the Mediterranean basin was the geographical centre of the world. This structure did not change fundamentally during the Islamic period. Moreover this predominance of the north to the neglect of sub-Saharan Africa, at least until the ninth/fifteenth century, is reflected in many contemporary works which were certainly not written by supporters of diffusionism. The result is an imbalance between a plethora of writing about ancient and medieval trans-Saharan traffic on the one hand and very incomplete knowledge of the black peoples during the same period on the other. But this fact is itself a sufficient reason to look at the northern approaches to the Sudan, which connect through the Sahara with Berber country.

The Berbers played an important role in West Africa from the point of view of population movements. Since prehistoric times they were constantly active in the Sahara, as far as its southern edges. Their ancestors from the Fezzān, the Garamantes, are said to have been active intermediaries between Provincia Africa and the Land of the Blacks during the Roman period.10

The Berbers, who had never really formed part of the zone controlled by successive hegemonies in North Africa, from the Carthaginians to Byzantium, found their mobility in the direction of the desert enhanced by the increase in the number of camels. Whether it had previously resulted in the establishment of sedentary kingdoms and principalities far to the north or in the formation of major nomadic confederations adjacent to the desert and in the Sahara itself, the Berbers' independent attitude brought about prolonged opposition to the new Arab power; this expressed itself in various resistance movements, but especially in the favourable welcome given to the Khāridjite heresy.11

Indeed, it was the principalities and centres controlled by the Khāridjites which had the initiative in trade with the Sudan from the late second/eighth century. Djabal Nafūsa, Wargla, Tāḥert and Sidjīlmsā in one way or the other engaged in such activities.12

To the west the Berbers formed a great confederation, which al-Fazārī (second/eighth century) called the state of Anbiya; it probably consisted of the Massūfa, the Lamātūna and the Djuđđāla.13 Al-Ya'kübī classified them among the Ṣanḥādja, who played an important role throughout the western

11. See Chapter 3 above, Chapter 10 below.
12. See Chapter 11 below.
The peoples of the Sudan: population movements

Sahara. This huge grouping must have been in contact to the south with the area controlled by Ghana. Another group of Berbers, the Hawwāra, originally from Tripolitania, marched with the Land of the Blacks. To avoid being conquered they went west, and while crossing the Maghrib took part in the various uprisings against the Arabs. In the second/eighth century they embraced Khāridjism. After Abū Yazīd’s last Khāridjite revolt, in which they took part, they dispersed westwards and eastwards, while some of them fled south. During this period their presence was reported in the Fezzān.

The Hawwāra were also in the Hoggar. The link between the ethnonym Hawwāra and the toponym Hoggar is an indication of this. Ibn Khaldūn, the historian of the Berbers, states that a fragment of the latter crossed the sands and settled next to the veil-wearing Lamṭa, who lived near the town of Kāw-Kāw (Gao) in the Land of the Blacks.15

The Ṣanhāḍja played an active role in the trans-Saharan traffic which took the western route: moreover, this explains the coming into being, in what had already been an occupied post in ancient times (and was henceforth to be known as Awdāghust), of a trading centre that soon came to be dominated by the Lāmtūna and was inhabited in the third/ninth and fourth/tenth centuries by Berbers belonging to the region, blacks and traders from the north. A road linked Awdāghust to Ṣidjilmāsa the great caravan port of the Tafilālet in southern Morocco.

To the east the Ibāḍite Berbers played a similar role in the traffic leading to the outlets of Ifrīkiya and Tripolitania. They took part in the trade in black slaves brought from the land of the Zaghāwa, in Kānem. The Berber capital, Zawīla, was the hub of this trade, acting as a warehouse for slaves waiting to be sent north.

Writing about this trade, al-Ya‘kūbī was not greatly upset by the fact that Ibāḍite Muslims were trading in black pagans; he merely showed slight surprise on learning that ‘the kings of the blacks thus sell blacks for no reason, and without the motive of war’.16 The slave trade thus seems to have been not a sporadic occupation for those engaged in this traffic but a steady economic activity dependent on the needs of the Maghribi and Mediterranean market, i.e. on the laws of supply and demand. Thus these Ibāḍite Berbers (who were religious dissidents because they adopted Khāridjite doctrines) were in economic terms well integrated into the Muslim world. Their special position in relation to the Sudan made them the driving force of a large Arab-Berber grouping which extended as far as the southern Sahara.

Among the Saharan Berber groups, the Tuareg – the name by which they would later become known to us – occupied a special position. Their

14. See Chapter 12 below.
FIG. 5.1 West Africa in the eleventh century
The peoples of the Sudan: population movements

area was relatively near the Land of the Blacks. They formed a number of confederations and occupied a territory extending from the Ghadamès area in the northern Sahara to the Niger and beyond, their main settlements being in the massifs of Hoggar, Air and the Adrār des Ifoghas. They managed despite adherence to the Muslim religion to preserve fundamental aspects of their culture, such as their language, *tamasheq*, their script, *tifinagh*, and their social structure, with warrior, religious teacher, tributary, slave and craftsman classes. In their accounts of their origins they claim an ancestry which also indicates an undoubted cultural identity. According to their oral traditions the Tuareg are descended from Tin Hinan, a woman from the Tafilālet. This queen, the ancestress of the Kel Rela nobles, is said to have arrived in the Hoggar on a white she-camel accompanied by her servant Takamat, ancestress of the Dag Rali. Excavations carried out in 1929 and 1933 in a funeral monument at Abalessa, west of the Hoggar, seem to confirm these traditions. They brought to light a large quantity of objects dating from the fourth century of the Christian era, which also suggests the existence of an old route between southern Morocco and the Hoggar at a time when camels were in use.\(^7\)

In anthropological terms the Tuareg in fact represent a halfway house between the Sahara and the Sudan. They fall into two groups: those who live in the Tassili-n-Ajjer and the Hoggar in the north and the southern branch, the Awellimid and the Kel Wi of Air who have intermarried with the black Hausa peoples. In the circumstances the black peoples must have exerted some cultural influence on the Tuareg. H. T. Norris notes that the Tuareg practise a type of divination called *tachchelt* (‘the viper’), in which the reptile is questioned according to certain forms of words.\(^8\) The snake also appears in many other circumstances, its meaning being ambiguous: it has a protective function, but it appears in dreams as a harbinger of ill fortune. On the strength of comparison with a similar legend reported by al-Bakrī and attributed to the Zāfākāwa people of the Sudan, the author suggests cultural contacts between the Tuareg and Ghana.\(^9\)

There are black peoples in the Sahara in the eastern and central desert and particularly in the west. The latter, the Harāfīn, usually form part of the population of the oases of southern Morocco and Mauritania. The question of their origin is still debatable: they have been called black Berbers.\(^10\) New approaches to the ancient peopling of the Sahara throw a different light on the issue. This problem can therefore only be dealt with as part of an overall study of the role of the Saharan environment in the development of the peoples of West Africa. There are plausible indications

that they are living specimens of black peoples whose southward movement goes back a very long way.

Integrative tendencies among African peoples in the melting pot of the Sudan

If we look at the question of the peoples of the Sudan from the standpoint of the fringe components, i.e. on the basis only of the impressions and interests of Mediterranean societies from the Maghrib eastwards, we are in danger of distorting the picture of the specifically West African environment and its peoples. The results of such an analysis are bound to be incomplete. It is true that our information is still fragmentary despite the progress made, and that many questions remain unanswered. We shall try first to demarcate the area within which African societies organized and structured themselves during the period concerned. Here we must use the results of work based on the latest research techniques, such as palaeoecology, palynology and archaeology. By combining their contributions with more easily available data from oral tradition and the Arabic sources, we may possibly arrive at some sound hypotheses. The work done in Mauritania on Saharan prehistory and later periods will serve as an example. In this respect the Adrār, Tāgant and Awkār areas stand out. The research projects carried out there by H. J. Hugot and P. Munson can be regarded as a sample of what is needed in order to make headway with the question of population movements in other sectors of sub-Saharan Africa. They are directly concerned with the western sector of the ‘Land of the Blacks’, and hold out promising prospects for the understanding of groups as representative as the Fulani and the Soninke. The study of relevant population movements in this area takes us back to the neolithic period in the Sahara, and particularly to the major geoclimatic event of the desiccation and desertification of this area. The process, which entered its active phase in about the fourth millennium before the Christian era, brought about considerable social and historical changes which affected the whole of the continent. It is now established that the population map of the neolithic Sahara was perceptibly different from the situation following the climatic change, and there are plausible indications of a sedentary majority black population. The first millennium of the Christian era may have been characterized by the continued existence of black peasant communities as well as entrenched cores among Libyco-Berber and then Berber nomads. Pressure from these latter set off a gradual southward movement, i.e. towards the habitat which the black peoples have largely retained. We must

22. See, on the geographical conditions of this region, C. Toupet, 1977.
now consider whether these hypotheses allow us to understand the very moot questions of the origins of Fulani and Soninke in the Sahel.

The Fulani inhabit a very large area of the West African savanna, and their presence in several regions between Senegal and Cameroon lends importance to the question of their provenance and the various stages of their journeyings.23 Their way of life makes them sometimes seem marginal in relation to other groups, which tends to make the latter think that the Fulani are essentially unstable and always ‘migrating’. This largely explains why diffusionist speculation has found in the Fulani fertile ground on which to deploy a variety of ‘Hamitic’ theories. The cradle of the Fulani has been sought in all sorts of areas, both inside and outside Africa: their ancestors were perhaps the Tziganes, perhaps the Pelasgians or, according to Delafosse, Judaeo-Syrians. Some people have thought they came from India, because of the supposed affinity of Fulfulde and Sereer with the Dravidian languages; others found anthropological and sociological similarities between the Fulani of the Adamawa and the ancient Iranians; some hold that they are descended from the Berber Arabs; while others again hold that they are Nubian, Ethiopian or at any rate East African in origin, and link them with the Nuba of Kordofan.24

Most of these theories are supported with various linguistic and anthropological arguments. None of them is really convincing. They all share the ‘Hamitic’ presupposition that the formation of the great states of the Sudan is primarily due to outside factors contributed by pastoral peoples such as the Fulani. These ideas are not supported by current studies, all of which tend to agree that the Fulani phenomenon belongs within the West African context and forms an integral part of its human geography, its historical development and its culture. There is no possibility of solving the problem of their origin and movements except in this context. From the linguistic point of view, improved knowledge of their vernaculars reveals that Fulfulde has an undoubtedly African substratum showing similarities to Wolof and Serer, though pre-Berber components have been grafted on to this core. As regards their provenance, the evidence points to southern Mauritania, where the Fulani were to be found at the beginning of the Christian era. Striking resemblances and influences of Fulfulde have been found in the toponyms of the Brakna and Tägant areas of Mauritania. This set of hypotheses suggests that the Fulani are descended from the cattle rearers for which there is evidence in Mauritania datable to the third and second millennia before the Christian era. In the period that concerns us they moved at the same time as the black peoples towards the Senegal Valley, and played a part in the formation of some states, such as Takrür. The Fulani presence in West Africa is especially evident in Futa Toro in the fifth/eleventh century, although they are not explicitly mentioned in

23. There is a great deal of literature on the Fulani; cf. C. Seydou, 1977.
24. The various hypotheses have been described by L. Tauxier, 1937 and D. J. Stenning, 1959.
the Arabic sources before al-Makrīzī and the *Kano Chronicle* (eighth/fourteenth to ninth/fifteenth century).

Something should be said at this point about the ethnonyms Fulani (Peul) and Tukulor (Toucouleur): the Fulani (Peul) call themselves Pullo (in the singular) and Fulbe (in the plural). All those who speak their language—Pular or Fulfulde—are called Hal-pularen. The latter is also the term used by the inhabitants of Futa Toro whom European sources refer to as the Tukulor (Toucouleur). Ethnographers and other scholars of the colonial period who came in contact with the Fulbe in Senegal began calling the herdsmen the Fulbe (Fulani, Peul) proper while for the sedentary people speaking the same language they suggested the name Tukulor (Toucouleur), regarding them as a different ethnic group. Although the two groups have different customs, the differences are due to socio-economic factors and have nothing to do with ethnic, linguistic or cultural considerations. It is an irony of fate that in the region which was the point of departure of the migrations of the Fulbe towards the east, that is, the Senegal Valley (Futa Toro), the Fulbe should be called by a name that is alien to them.26

If speculations and hypotheses about the origin and prehistoric migrations of the Fulani are set aside, it is almost unanimously recognized today that in historical times the Fulani came from the Senegalese Futa and that the Senegalese group, the neighbour of their close relatives, the Sereer and the Wolof, should be regarded as the nucleus from which other groups whose language was Pular or Fulfulde spread out and emigrated towards the east and the south.

Between the fifth/eleventh century and the ninth/fifteenth century the Fulani moved towards Masina, passing through Diombogo and Kaarta. It should be noted that the Fulani settled by a process of gradual contacts. Thus small groups and families from Ferio and Futa Toro settled in Futa Jallon. There was thus a slow integration as the result of interchange with the peoples who were already there when the Fulani arrived.27 The Fulani's movements were nothing whatever like invasions; and hence they are not consonant with the usual scenario of the 'Hamite theories' about the transformation of the archaic structures of the black peoples by 'white Hamites'. The question of the origin and movements of the Fulani is crucial to the history of the peoples of West Africa, for it affects all groups in the Western and Central Sudan. But other aspects of the Fulani's relations

25. The term Fulani is prevalent in English Africanist literature and the term Peul in French. This is largely because the French first encountered these people in a context (Senegal) where they retained their own name for themselves, whereas the English met them in northern Nigeria where those in political power had adopted the Hausa name, Fulani.

26. The Fulbe are called Fula by the Mandingo, Fulani (sing., Ba-Filanci) by the Hausa, Fellata by the Kanuri and the Arabs of the Sudan, and Fulani by the Arabs.

with these groups, especially the Wolof, the Sereer, the Soninke and the 'Mandingo', and also with the ancient kingdom of Ghana, need to be further investigated.

The foundation of Ghana, like the origin of the Fulani, has been interpreted in diffusionist terms, based on what was said by the authors of the ta’rikhs; Delafosse attributes to Ghana Syro-Palestinian founders who came to the Soninke of Awkär from Cyrenaica, stopping on the way in Air and the Sudanic zone of Niger. These foreigners were supposedly the ancestors of the Fulani as well, and were said to have set up the powerful state of Ghana in the third century of the Christian era. Towards the end of the second/eighth century Soninke blacks with Kaya Maghan Cissé as their first king (tunka) supposedly drove the whites back towards Tagant, Gorgol and the Futa.28

Paradoxically, the legends of the kingdom of Wagadu seem to lend colour to this. The versions reported by C. Monteil give Dina, the founder of Kumbi, capital of Wagadu, a Jewish origin (Job) in the case of the first version and an Iranian one (Salmān the Persian, companion of the Prophet) in the case of the second.29 But the agreement suggested is more apparent than real, since an analysis of the Wagadu stories shows that they claim no basis in history. The point of these stories lies elsewhere, particularly in the religious and social spheres. In that sense they do not tie in with the circumstantial details contained in the theory of a Syro-Palestinian origin for the founders of Ghana.

It is now seems established that the neolithic population of the Sahara was quite dominated by blacks, traces of whom can be found as far as the Adrar. Following the change to a drier climate, the white population (the Libyco-Berbers) moved southwards, but came up against organized black peasants like those of Dhār Tishīt ancestors of the Soninke of Ghana. The defensive sites of Dhār Tishīt show that the blacks were indeed organized to resist the pressure of the Libyco-Berber nomads. Given these factors it seems likely that the foundations of an organized state like the Ghana of the Arabic sources date back to the first millennium before the Christian era and it is not impossible that the Chebka phase between —1000 and —900 is a credible hypothesis, as suggested by A. Bathily on an interpretation of Munson’s work.30

Hypotheses about the very old establishment of Ghana by a black population, and its initial habitat in the neolithic Sahara in an area further north than later phases of Ghana, are not purely arbitrary, especially since the persistence of ‘residual’ elements right from the Arab period to our own time greatly adds to their plausibility. This at any rate is the conclusion to be drawn from the role attributed by the Arab geographers to the Gangara-

30. A. Bathily, 1975, especially pp. 29–33.
Wangara and the Bañur, and especially from the existence to this day of Harâtîn blacks scattered across the Sahara.

Even a study of Arâb texts and the oral traditions shows that the blacks in historical times inhabited an area much further north than they do today. They controlled the Tâgant, Aawkâr, Hôdh (Hâwd), Tîris and Adrâr areas. Analysis of these texts and traditions makes it possible to situate the Soninke in Tâgant and Hôdh and the ancestors of the Serer and Fulani in other parts of present-day Mauritania. The last two groups had earlier lived together in southern Mauritania and afterwards in Futa Toro.31 Whereas the Fulani remained in the Senegal Valley, the Serer moved further south towards the territory they now occupy in Sine and Salum.

Undue emphasis has often been placed on divisions between the Berber nomads and the sedentary black peoples and fierce, unrelenting and merciless struggles between them. While there is no denying the fact that these two groups clashed with each other, it should not be forgotten that the necessities of economic and political life led them to live and co-operate very closely together. That is why it is no longer valid to interpret the relations between the whites and blacks of the Sahel solely in terms of racial and religious confrontation.32

It is not enough to attribute the dispersion of the Soninke solely to the pressure exerted by the Berbers and especially the Almoravids; there were many factors, the foremost being the climatic factor. Their original habitat – Wagadu of Soninke legend – was situated in a region of unstable climate but well placed from the commercial standpoint. The Wagadu legend tells us that the people of Wagadu fled south after a drought that was to last seven years. This climatic disaster, which is reminiscent of the drought of the 1970s, seems to have been the primary reason for the dispersion of the Soninke. Their migrations took them over large parts of the Western Sudan, from Gambia as far as Songhay, but one very large group remained behind in their initial habitat in Aawkâr and Hôdh, where they established their first state, ancient Ghana. It is not yet possible to establish even a rough chronology of these events, but there is absolutely no doubt that the migrations of the Soninke extended over several centuries.

The emergence of the Sudanese hegemonies

During the first millennium of the Christian era, a succession of organized societies appeared in the central and eastern Sudan and developed into veritable states. Some like Kânem or Ghana became very powerful. Others in the process of formation like those of the Hausa, the Songhay and the Takrûr were less extensive. When the Muslims arrived in the Sudan during the first centuries of Islam, they found themselves in the presence of

these groups and had to come to terms with them. While there are still gaps in our knowledge as to the stages in the formation of these states, we can trace them in broad outline by focusing on the groups that formed Ghana and Kānem.

Amongst the oldest homogeneous groups of the Sudan, the Kanuri people occupy a special place. Their origin dates back to the period after the desiccation of the Sahara. The black farming peoples withdrew around the residual depression of Lake Chad, distributing themselves on both sides of an area with a harsh climate, the triangle delineated by the line Borku–Azben–Chad. Whilst the so-called Chadic language peoples such as the Hausa settled to the west of this area, the Teda-Daza language groups, in particular the Kanuri, the Kānembu and Zagha, occupied the east. Local traditions attribute the foundation of the Kānem state to an Arab hero, Sayf Ibn Dhi Yazan, who took control of a group of nomads, the Magumi, settled to the north-east of Lake Chad.\(^{33}\)

In the Western Sudan the empire of Ghana was built up on a very broad ethnic base: the great Mande-speaking family extended from the southern forest land to the Sahel adjoining the Sahara. The kingdom of Ghana was located in the northern part, peopled by Soninke who were in contact with the white nomads of the Sahara. Oral traditions collected at Timbuktu some thousand years after the founding of Ghana relate that the first ruling dynasty of that country was white.

The frequency with which the oral traditions originating in Sudanese societies themselves attribute their origin to white ancestors might seem surprising. That raises the question of the origin of state structures in the Sudan. However, the late date of these accounts and the situation of the black societies that produced them provide some answer to the question: those accounts simply project into the past facts that were contemporary with those societies. The oral traditions concerning white ancestors appear, in fact, in a context where the northern Berber groups play a dominant role.

The attitude of Arab authors towards this specific question provides some valuable information here: generally speaking there is a widespread tendency in the Muslim world to link the ruling classes of a group or dynasty to the Prophet or his entourage and thereby give legal sanction to their power.\(^{34}\) However, Arab authors before the middle of the sixth/twelfth century make no mention of the white origin of the dynasties that ruled the Sudanese states, whether they speak of Ghana, Takrūr or Songhay. Al-Bakri, who provides most information on the fifth/eleventh century, dispels all doubt on this question: Ghana was ruled by a black pagan king.\(^{35}\) It was not until al-Idrīsî (sixth/twelfth century) that the theme of

---

33. See Chapter 15 below.
34. See Chapter 4 above.
white origins was developed;\textsuperscript{36} this theme accordingly falls into the context of the growing expansion of Islam in the Sudan. Al-Idrīṣī, moreover, was the first to chronicle the events following the Almoravid conquest which was spearheaded by the Ṣanhādja Berbers of the western Sahara. Critical scrutiny both of the accounts transmitted by oral tradition and the texts of Arab writers before al-Bakrī clarify the reasons why the theme of white origins took on such importance; at the same time, the effort made to suppress it reveals the importance of the opposite thesis.

The states of the Sudan were specific creations of the black peoples. They were in contact with the Berbers of the southern edge of the Sahara, and maintained complex relations with these neighbours of white origin. Certainly the black farmers initially withdrew under the pressure of the nomadic herdsmen and settled in the less rigorous areas of the Sahel, but they later organized themselves so as to be in a better position to resist such pressure. The Sudanese found within themselves the political and social resources necessary to face up to the threats coming from the desert. But a permanent state of antagonism existed, for the powerful empire of Ghana was, from 380/990 on, in a position to dominate Awdāghust economically, thanks to the activities of the Zanāta who had come from North Africa, and so establish political hegemony. One century later, under pressure from the Almoravids, this same Ghana lost its indisputable primacy among the Sudanese states. Nevertheless, the state of tension that existed between the Berbers and the black peoples did not result in the Berbers taking over the Sudanese states, for the latter had built up a solid organization.

The basis of the prosperity of the Sudanese states

The coming into being and development of the states of the Sudan in the period under review were based on the use of certain instruments and techniques which made it possible for those who possessed them to impose their rule on the small groups of farmers and herdsmen of the Sahel. Two factors seem to have played a decisive role in this regard: the possession of iron and the use of horses and camels.

Some studies (for the moment, still fragmentary) about metals in Black Africa have pointed out the connection between iron and the formation of the large Sudanese states. Apart from the importance iron has for hunting and farming, it is a factor of military strength conferring its possessor with technical superiority over others. As far as the Sudan is concerned, the role of the army was decisive in the formation of states like those of Kānem or Ghana. Increasing interest is being shown in oral tradition having to do with the trade in iron and with blacksmiths who form a category of persons holding power in a variety of ways. This can throw light on the role of iron

\textsuperscript{36} J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 133.
in ancient times; but the question of the initial acquisition of techniques and their spread is much more complex and has been little studied.

Two hypotheses exist. According to the first, iron from the Middle East reached the Sudan through the Nile Valley via Meroe, an important and flourishing metallurgical centre. From there it spread southwards and westwards into the savanna. According to the second hypothesis, the iron came from North Africa, and was brought by the Phoenicians and the Carthaginians (fifth century before the Christian era) to the Sudan. The weapons depicted on rock paintings discovered in the Sahara have been referred to in support of that theory. But objects found at Nok, in a region south of the Jos plateau in northern Nigeria, are evidence that iron metallurgy existed in ancient times in Black Africa. In the third century before the Christian era, iron was already widely used. These new facts point to the need to reassess previous theories and suggest several possible routes by which iron entered Africa, without excluding the possibility that some centres of iron-working grew up locally.

As has often been suggested, there is a close connection between iron and use of the horse because both are linked to the formation of the large states of the Sudan. It is known that there were horses in the Sahara during the second half of the second millennium and the first centuries of the last millennium before the Christian era. However, they followed population movements, the Barbary horse also being found in the Maghrib and the Dongola in the south-east. The Barbary (or Mongol) horse was used in West Africa in Hôdh and the Sahel as far as Jerma. But from the outset of the Christian era, the horse was replaced by the camel, an animal more resistant to the rigours of the desert, for trans-Saharan communications. The latter played a considerable role in the establishment of Sudanese dominion from Takrûr as far as Kânem. The camel was bred throughout the Sahel and was used for transporting salt and the rounding-up of slaves, to say nothing of its military importance.

Features of an original civilization

In the present state of our knowledge about the peoples of the Sudan, much work is being done on trade between these peoples and their partners to the north – Berbers and Maghrabis – to the detriment of the domestic trade within the black communities themselves. This is even more true of the relationships between the great Sahel states and the countries of the savanna and the forest. Here the documentary material available is scanty, and current information is not helping to put the balance right.

38. On the introduction of the different animals, and their importance, see H. J. Hugot, 1979.
39. See Chapter 14 below.
Nevertheless, we can analyse the position of the black states in the balance of power thus created by contact between the Berber and Maghribi peoples and the blacks of the Sudan through their trans-Saharan relations. The prevailing impression is that this was a massive piece of exploitation of the countries of sub-Saharan Africa by better equipped northern states, which had a greater variety of more highly developed instruments and techniques borrowed from a Mediterranean world swarming with up-to-date inventions of all kinds.

An old and relatively steady phenomenon like slavery, at least for certain areas, would suffice to demonstrate this. Much of the trade network seems to have been set up by the Maghribi and Saharan Berber masters responsible for establishing the main routes. They turn up both at the northern outlets and on the routes, which were studded with staging-posts. There were bitter struggles for the control of the routes, and the powers of the moment tried to ensure satisfactory safety conditions for the orderly conduct of an often very lucrative traffic. The question that then arises is how the states of the Sudan behaved in this situation, bearing in mind the many circumstances that favoured the people of the north and the consequent imbalance in their favour. The activities of the black states can be observed at three levels: the growth of their power, real control of the sector under their authority and their adoption of a policy suited to the interests of their people.

Al-Bakri's descriptions of the kings of Ghana and Kāw-Kāw (Gao) give a series of details which show how the monarchy in both kingdoms was aggrandized to prompt the veneration of the people. The king of Ghana was distinguished by ritual apparel: only he and the heir apparent could wear sewn clothes, and he also wore a gilded cap and a turban, necklaces and bracelets. The king held audience to dispense justice in the setting of an impressive ceremonial, with strict etiquette described in minute detail by al-Bakrī. The latter mentions a practice of extreme importance because of its religious implications: the king's subjects prostrated themselves at his approach and threw earth on to their heads. But this custom (hardly consistent with Islam) was spared to Muslims, who merely clapped their hands. Lastly, the grandiose ceremonies marking the king's funeral are described: the custom of burying servants with the sovereign, the sacrifices and libations offered to him, the sacred woods that sheltered the tombs of the kings and their inviolable character; all this helped to make the monarchy a sacred institution worthy of reverence.

As regards the king of Kāw-Kāw (Gao), al-Bakrī relates that his meal was accompanied by a special ritual: women dancing to the sound of drums, all business in town suspended during the king's meal, and public announcement of the end of the royal meal by shouts and yells.

Royalty of a sacred kind seems to have been a specific feature of the culture of the great black states of the Sudan, at least during the Islamic period. Attempts have been made to use the features of this type of monarchy as support for a diffusionist interpretation. But in the context of a medieval Sudan confronted with a relatively homogenous Muslim world this institution stands out as something indigenous: thus it is significant that the Arab geographers do not, for instance, describe the situation of an Islamized, integrated ruler like the ruler of Takrûr. Such an institution can also be regarded as an effective instrument in the hands of these societies for governing their states, especially in the case of kingdoms exerting hegemony over a very wide area, like Gao and Ghana.

While the kings of the Sudan had authority and power within their states, which they governed firmly by means of a suitable institution, mastery of external relations was not completely beyond them. Ghana’s relations with the Berbers who reigned at Awdâghust from its foundation by the Lamtûna in the third/ninth century can be so interpreted. The rulers of Ghana extended their frontiers in all directions from the late second/eighth century onwards. The existence of a Berber trading centre at the extreme southern edge of the desert could be conducive to trade with the north, and from this point of view the town of Awdâghust had a raison d’être. All the same, the role of these traders had to be within limits compatible with Ghana’s sovereignty. It was enough for them to be brokers and intermediaries in a traffic whose real southern terminus must have been Ghana. Escalation of their claims and the strengthening of Lamtûna power at Awdâghust could represent a threat to the state of Ghana, which reached the height of its power in the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries. This is the explanation of the installation of a Soninke governor to control thenceforth the power of the Lamtûna. Soninke management seems to have fulfilled its purpose very efficiently, for the blacks were to keep control of the situation at Awdâghust until the Almoravids, chafing at their alliance with Ghana, destroyed it in 446/1055.42

Control of the political situation was inseparable from a real Soninke stranglehold over the entire economic sector in the area under their jurisdiction. One of the necessary conditions for this power was information about the sources of their prosperity. The rulers of Ghana exerted strict and effective control in this important domain, especially as regards the provenance of gold and how it was acquired. It is not impossible that this went back a very long way. A story such as that of the ‘silent trade’ in gold, very widespread even beyond Africa, may have served, inter alia, as a ‘red herring’.43

The ruler of Ghana, in his efforts to control the springs of commercial transactions south of the Sahara, pursued an intelligent policy: he levied a

tax when goods were brought into or taken out of his territory. Traders had to pay twice on salt: one dinar on bringing it in and two dinars on taking it out. Ghana was thus the hub for the distribution of salt, a vital product in sub-Saharan Africa. According to al-Bakri, the ruler of Ghana kept for himself all nuggets extracted, to avoid a slump in the price of gold. Since he had a good understanding of the economic mechanisms of which Ghana was the hub, he meant to keep the monopoly of a product as vital as gold. Thus the black world organized its trading economy to withstand the power of the salt producers, salt being exchanged for gold.

This being so, it is hardly likely that trade and the whole system of economic exchanges it entailed was introduced to Ghana’s blacks by the Libyco-Berbers, as has sometimes been suggested. The latter are supposed to have contributed not only the idea but also the techniques of this trade (including the slave trade), and to have brought about the birth of the state of Ghana. The control exercised by the Sudan’s rulers over their own commercial sector rules such a hypothesis out of court. The case of the Sefuwa of Känem is instructive in this connection. Having taken over from the Zaghawa rulers (Duguwa dynasty) when Känem was Islamized, they realized that the religious development of the country could threaten their

The peoples of the Sudan: population movements

economy, which was based primarily on the slave trade. The point was that it was forbidden to enslave a free Muslim. As D. Lange has demonstrated in his article on the progress of Islam and political changes in Kanem from the fifth/eleventh century to the sixth/twelfth century the Sufuwa continued a type of politico-economic domination reminiscent of the practices of their non-Muslim predecessors during the Zaghawa period.45

The kings of the Sudan showed great political skill in their relations with the Muslim world and the culture of all their northern partners with whom they had dealings. They used the abilities of the Muslims who frequented their states to their own advantage. According to al-Bakri, the king of Ghana chose his interpreters, his treasurer and his ministers from among the Muslims.46 Thus in entrusting some sectors of his administration to educated Muslims he expected some measure of efficiency from it. In return he tried to create favourable conditions for the practice of their religion. Ghana, like Gao, had a town next to the king's town in which the Muslims lived, with twelve mosques all with their imams, muezzins and lectors. Lawyers and scholars also lived in this town. Lastly, Muslims were not obliged to comply with customs incompatible with their religious convictions.

As regards the ruler of Gao, he was normally supposed to be a Muslim. Moreover the attributes of royal authority handed over to him at his investiture comprised, besides the seal, the sword, and the Quran 'supposedly', according to al-Bakri, 'the gifts sent by the Emir of believers'.47 But the fact that both sovereigns governed peoples who freely practised traditional religions raises the problem of the Sudan's relations with the Muslim world in this initial period of Islamization.48

On the whole their persistent attempts to control their environment in a responsible way can be regarded as a characteristic of the states of the Sahelian Sudan (corresponding to the known part of the Land of the Blacks). In this way we can see the emergence of a specific culture, deeply rooted in the world of traditional religion. The latter has often unobtrusively but effectively challenged much of the data which arrived with the pretensions and prestige of an apparently better-equipped society.

Conclusion

The study of population movements entails first and foremost a rigorously critical reappraisal of widespread notions about the 'migrations' of the black peoples over very long distances. The movements of the peoples of

47. Ibid., p. 109.
48. On these issues, see Chapters 3 and 4 above, Chapter 28 below.
the Sudan before the fifth/eleventh century bore no resemblance to anarchic movements over enormous areas.

The first settlement dates from the end of the neolithic period when the erstwhile flourishing Sahara had become barren and forbidding after a ‘slow agony’. The blacks who constituted the predominant population of the Sahara had to withdraw southwards into the Sahel to look for favourable agricultural conditions. They abandoned their lands to groups of specialized nomadic herdsmen who were able to adapt themselves to the new conditions while continuing to attempt to impose their rule on the peoples of the Sahel region, subjecting them to frequent pressure. The latter found there other groups of blacks with whom they aligned themselves in order to face the threats coming from the north. This gave impetus to the gradual development of socio-political units of varying size that extended from Kānem in the east to Takrūr in the west during the period preceding the arrival of Islam in the Sudan.

When the Muslims arrived in the Sudanese Sahara, they found themselves in the presence of a series of states, some of them fully established, others still in the process of formation. The powerful Soninke kingdom of Ghana dominated the extended Mande group in the region between the Senegal and Niger rivers while the nucleus of what would become the Songhay kingdom took shape in the eastern part of the Inland Niger Delta. That kingdom controlled the river traffic as well as the route linking the Niger to North Africa via Adrār des Ifoghas and the Hoggar. On the other side of Lake Chad, the Sao were in the process of consolidating their position and they acquired the instruments of their future policy of conquest. The use of horses and camels would aid them in their systematic expansion northwards where they would take their place among the Kanuri who were beginning to emerge as a group.

The arrival of Islam in the second/eighth century introduced a new factor which, in the century that followed, would stimulate increased economic and cultural exchanges. But it was above all the religious factor that was destined to play an important role in the political and social development of the region from the Maghrib to the Sudan.

The period from the second/eighth century to the fifth/eleventh century was decisive for the peoples of the Sudan. Because of the sound organization and powerfully centralized structure of their monarchies, they were able to realize the importance of trade with Mediterranean and Saharan Africa. However, their constant concern was to retain control over the transactions to prevent the Saharan intermediaries from gaining a stranglehold on trade and the sources of their prosperity. However, perceiving the cultural and economic advantages to be gained from the presence of their northern partners, they adopted a sufficiently tolerant attitude towards their outlook and religious demands and even went so far as to become converted to Islam while remaining rooted in their own religious traditions. In so doing, the Sudanese leaders, and above all those of Ghana, were able to
withstand the competition of their neighbours, the Şanhdajja, who were part of the Almoravid movement in the fifth/eleventh century. That prevented their complete decline despite the Almoravid onslaught and a temporary eclipse. In that way, the black states succeeded in safeguarding their personality and thus ensured the foundations of a lasting civilization whose subsequent development found expression in Mali, the Songhay empire and in the city-states of the Hausa.

Note of the Rapporteur of the International Scientific Committee

Research on iron metallurgy in Africa in ancient times is now making rapid strides and is no longer in the dark. The period of the great theoretical debates about the spread of this craft has come to an end. Excavations and confirmed datings have now proved that iron was being produced through the process of reduction in a furnace in several parts of the continent at least five centuries before the Christian era. Sites from that period have so far been located not only in Nigeria but also in the Air region of the Niger, present-day Mali, and in Cameroon, Tanzania, Rwanda and Burundi. Of course, this list is very provisional. Almost every year, new research findings change the overall picture, challenging postulates regarding the general or limited spread of that craft. Iron was also produced in the bend of the Senegal, the bend of the Limpopo and in Ghana from the first centuries of the Christian era. Many African and Malagasy researchers are now at work on this problem from Mauritania to Madagascar. The technological importance to be attached to this ancient African production of iron by the direct process has been shown at various meetings, such as the ones which took place in 1983 at the University of Compiègne, at the Collège de France in Paris (proceedings published) and at the University of Paris I (proceedings in the course of publication). Research is also going on at the same time into the history of metallurgy. The essential work of revising the descriptive vocabulary of these technologies, too much of which was left vague and imprecise in the past, has also been begun.

49. The proceedings of the Compiègne meeting have been published, but neither entirely nor satisfactorily; those of the Collège de France meeting were published under the title: ‘Métallurgies africaines’, 1983. Mémoires de la Société des Africanistes, no 9, published by Nicole Echard; as for those of the University of Paris I meeting, they are still in the course of publication.
Almost all the peoples occupying the southern third of the African continent, from the Cameroon–Nigeria sea coast in the west to the Somalia–Kenya coastline in the east and southwards as far as Port Elizabeth, speak a closely related group of languages known as the Bantu languages.

The Bantu family of languages

The Bantu family consists of over four hundred languages all deriving from the same ancestral language known as 'proto-Bantu'. This is a fact that has been established beyond doubt on the basis of lexical, phonetic, morphological (grammatical) and syntactic resemblances which cannot be accounted for by mere chance or by borrowings. A common parentage must be assumed. Take, for instance, the word meaning 'people' in the following languages:

- Duala: bato
- Bushong: baat
- Fang: bot
- Luba: bantu
- Tio: baaru
- Rwanda: abantu
- Kongo: bantu
- Shona: vanhu
- Mongo: banto
- Herero: abandu

All these words follow the same pattern. It can be seen that they all derive from the form made up of the root *-ntu and the prefix *ba-, denoting the plural. In addition, the differences between languages are regular, as may be gathered from other comparisons. For instance, a -t- in the second position of the root invariably becomes -r- in Tio. This rules out the possibility of fortuitous similarities and borrowings. A proto-Bantu glossary has been drawn up for over five hundred roots,¹ all following regular phonetic patterns.

But vocabulary is only one aspect of language. Analogies, even in points of detail, are also to be found in the morphological (grammatical) system of the Bantu languages. In the above example, the prefix governs the gram-

matical agreements (concordances) and belongs itself to a specific class of prefixes. The corresponding singular prefix is *mu-* which, combined with the root, forms the word meaning 'person'. The system of agreements, the formation of adjectives, all kinds of pronouns, the breakdown of the verb into prefix, marker, infix, stem, extension and ending and the way these elements function, the invariants, the deverbative formation of nouns are all as alike in the Bantu languages as is the grammatical structure of the Romance languages deriving from Latin. A common grammar of Bantu has in fact been produced. What has been said of the morphology applies equally to the syntax and phonological system. All the evidence, therefore, bears out the fact that more than four hundred languages spread over one-third of the great landmass of Africa have their origins in a single ancestral language. The historical implications of such a vast phenomenon are evident.

Origins and subdivisions of the Bantu languages

The phenomenon of Bantu relationships was certainly one that did not pass unnoticed. As early as the beginning of the sixteenth century, the first Portuguese navigators were surprised by the linguistic bonds linking the inhabitants of the kingdom of the Congo and those of the continent's eastern seaboard. Since Wilhem Bleek first identified the speakers of Bantu as a group in 1862, dubbing the family 'Bantu' because of the structure of the words meaning 'people', anthropologists, linguists, historians and others have been intrigued by the Bantu question and have tried to account for the origins and movements of the Bantu-speaking peoples. In 1886, H. H. Johnston outlined a theory for the identification of the birthplace of the proto-language and for retracing the history of its geographical expansion. His study, published between 1919 and 1922, was the first serious attempt to locate the origins of the Bantu and plot the stages of their dispersal. Using linguistic evidence, he located the ancestors of the Bantu in the Bahr al-Ghazâl, 'not far from the Bahr al-Jebel, to the east of Kordofan in the north, or in the Benue and Chad basins in the west'. According to him, the first movement of the Bantu was eastwards towards Mount Elgon and from there to the northern shores of Lake Victoria, mainland Tanzania and the Zairian forest, with the first large-scale incursion into central and southern Africa beginning around — 300.

In 1889, Carl Meinhof provided formal (phonetic) proof of the unity of the Bantu languages. Ever since then, linguists — often known as 'Bantuists' — have been adding to our knowledge of the Bantu linguistic
Two major theories have been put forward by linguists to account for the origins of the Bantu-speaking peoples. Joseph Greenberg thought that they must have originated in the area of greatest Bantu language divergence and, following this theory, he traced their origins to the middle Benue region of Nigeria, to the north-west of the vast territory where the Bantu languages are firmly rooted.

As this conclusion was not accepted by the influential Bantuist Malcolm Guthrie, it was subsequently subjected to close investigation but is now accepted as accurate by all linguists. In Guthrie’s view, the most likely location for the birthplace of ‘proto-Bantu’ was in the area of greatest Bantu language convergence, that is to say around the watershed of the Congo and Zambezi rivers, with a nucleus in the Shaba province of Zaire. These conflicting hypotheses advanced by eminent linguists have been used by many specialists as the basis for their own theories on the origins and expansion of the Bantu.

Suggesting that the hypotheses of Greenberg and Guthrie were complementary, the distinguished historian Roland Oliver put forward a brilliant theory which divided the expansion of the Bantu from their original homeland in West Africa to southern Africa into four phases. These phases were as follows: (1) very rapid migration along the Congo (Zaire) waterways of small groups speaking ‘pre-Bantu’ languages, from the woodlands of central Cameroon and Ubangi to the woodlands south of the Zairian equatorial forest; (2) the gradual consolidation and settlement of the migrant peoples and their expansion through the southern woodland belt extending from coast to coast and embracing the central African region between the mouth of the Congo (Zaire) River in Zaire on the western coast and the Rovuma River in Tanzania on the eastern coast; (3) rapid Bantu penetration into the more humid region north and south of the area of their former lateral expansion and; (4) occupation of the remainder of present Bantu Africa, a process which began during the first millennium before the Christian era and only came to an end towards the middle of the second millennium of the Christian era.

Since 1973, three groups of linguists working independently have proved that Guthrie was wrong. All three adopt a similar approach (based on studies of vocabulary) but they do not use the same data. In fact, one of the studies takes Guthrie’s own data as its starting-point. That the Bantu languages originated in the west has therefore been established. Ideally, one would have to discover the subgroups belonging to the family in order to retrace the routes by which these languages dis-

5. C. Meinhof, 1899. For a historical synopsis and bibliography, see J. Vansina, 1979-80.
8. R. Oliver, 1966; some years ago Oliver totally abandoned this theory. See R. Oliver, 1979.
The Bantu-speaking peoples and their expansion

persed and developed. In the comparative approach to historical linguistics, the primary task is to construct a genealogical tree in which the ancestor of the family is the direct antecedent of the ancestors of subgroups which are themselves the forerunners of the ancestors of language subgroups, etc. In order to do this, massive comparisons must be made both of basic vocabulary (lexicostatistics) and grammatical phenomena. So far, nobody has proposed a genealogical subdivision of the Bantu group of languages based on evidence solid enough to be acceptable. The reason is what is known among linguists as ‘phenomena of convergence’, that is to say massive borrowings among Bantu languages from the time of their common ancestor up to the present day. Among the similarities it is very hard to say what is a borrowing and what dates back to the ancestor of a common subgroup. This circumstance is itself of cardinal importance to historians, since it proves that various Bantu-speaking groups have remained constantly in close contact with their neighbours and have never been really isolated from one another.

The studies currently in progress are using computers and are constructing models of genetic divergence on the basis of comparative elements of basic vocabulary or – in very recent projects – grammatical elements.9 It is now generally agreed among linguists that there were two major blocs of Bantu languages, the western bloc located principally in the equatorial forest regions and the eastern bloc extending from Uganda to the Cape.

Furthermore, the languages belonging to the eastern group are more closely related to each other than those of the western group. This implies that the expansion of the eastern group began at a later stage and occurred more rapidly than that of the western group, assuming that the rate of change and the amount of convergence were the same in each case, which is not necessarily true. At the other end of the time-scale, it is generally agreed that a number of small genetic groupings have their roots in the relatively recent linguistic past, for instance a Kongo genetic group and a genetic language group from the region of the Great Lakes. Recent studies have made it possible to track down these minimal groupings with increasing accuracy.

Experts did not wait for the results of these studies before subdividing the Bantu languages. As early as 1948, Guthrie began to apply what he called a practical system of classification, grouping blocs of geographically contiguous languages in zones ‘of resemblance’,10 based on comparisons of

9. Y. Bastin, A. Coupez, B. de Halleux, 1981. Comparisons between the two types of data enable conclusions to be drawn with virtual certainty in the event of congruence. The western Bantu bloc differs quite sharply from the eastern bloc and within the former, a north-western group is clearly distinguishable from the central forest group. The computer programme is expanded as new data are gathered.

FIG. 6.1 Bantu expansion
existing data. These categories were only provisional and intended for practical purposes, but they proved so useful that they are still frequently employed today. Each zone is assigned a letter between A and T, followed by a figure for each smaller grouping and a second figure standing for the language itself. Thus, A70 refers to the so-called ‘Pahouin’ group of languages and A74 denotes the Fang language.

At first glance, this classification system appears to have no historical value, a fact that is borne out by increasingly elaborate attempts to devise a reliable system of historical classification. Even the subgroups designated by figures cannot always be compared. In addition, a practical system of classification cannot be used for the purposes of historical argument. For instance, the fact that the Banga of Gabon and the Bubi of Malabo Island both belong to the A30 group cannot be taken to indicate that the Bubi languages have their origins on the coast occupied by the Banga or that the Banga came originally from the island. In other words, the categories do not have the value of historical proof.

Broadly speaking, however, some zones clearly correspond more closely to genetic facts than others. Among those that have proved invalid, mention may be made of zone B (Gabon/Congo), Guthrie’s former zone D, which has long since been reclassified under D and J, and, on somewhat less convincing evidence, zones F and D. Although the drawbacks of applying a system having no historical validity are enormous, linguists are none the less reluctant to use a system of notation or terminology based on genetic data until the subdivisions of the Bantu family have been established beyond doubt.

It promises to be a time-consuming task, first because the data currently available, even in respect of basic vocabulary, cover only about half of all Bantu languages, whereas in order to draw authoritative conclusions, the least that is required is correct linguistic notation, a more extensive vocabulary and an outline of the grammatical structure of each language. If these conditions were fulfilled, one could proceed with confidence. Thus the basic requirements for really definitive work are a comprehensive set of dictionaries and grammars. There are very few available at present. The bulk of the linguistic heritage of the Bantu-speaking peoples has not yet been recorded. A further difficulty lies in the fact that for much of their history the Bantu languages developed by a process of differentiation of one language, or a small number of languages, from the whole nucleus of languages, so that blocs of languages cannot be compared with one another as, for instance, in the case of the Indo-European languages. It will be necessary in the long run to obtain detailed knowledge of almost every Bantu language — especially in the west — in order to place it in its proper historical perspective.11 There is no short cut.

Linguistics and history

It is an undeniable fact that linguistic data have historical implications. The phenomenon of a single family of languages spread over such a wide area must have some significance beyond what meets the eye. But what exactly is it? All authors have assumed that the languages in question spread as a result of the migration of their speakers. There is also a tendency to juxtapose or even confuse language, culture and race. Many hope to rediscover a Bantu society, a Bantu culture or a Bantu philosophy still surviving, despite the geographical expansion from an original nucleus to the confines of the African continent and the lapse of thousands of years while the expansion was continuing. But just how valid are these assumptions?

The equation between language, culture and race does not, in any case, hold water. This is a fact that can easily be demonstrated. The Bira language, for instance, is spoken by farming and trapping communities in the forest of north-eastern Zaire and by pygmy hunters living in close contact with them or with other neighbouring crop-growers. The same language is therefore spoken by two different ethnic groups. The same language is also used by the Bira farmers of the savanna whose way of life differs sharply from that of the forest Bira.\(^\text{12}\) So here we have one language which cannot even be associated with a single culture. On the contrary, each culture and each way of life is also found among people speaking different languages and living in communities adjacent to those of the groups mentioned above. The forest Bira have the same way of life as the Walese who speak a Central Sudanic language. The pygmies have the same lifestyle as neighbouring pygmy hunters who speak Sudanic languages, and the stock-breeders live like other stock-breeders speaking Central Sudanic, Bantu or even Nilotic languages. Hence, there is not any strict correspondence between language and culture.

It may, of course, be pointed out that the above cases are easily explained. The pygmies adopted the language of the farmers with whom they were associated. The latter, in the forest, adopted the culture of the peoples of the savanna when they emigrated to the savanna, unless the group first lived in the savanna and then adapted itself to the forest. But that is immaterial. The main thing is that originally there was only one community speaking that language and hence the correspondence between culture, language and race was valid. Many other cases could be mentioned, of course, in which culture, language and race overlap. One may go still further and point out that the original Bira-speaking community was undoubtedly not the only one in the race to which it belonged, nor even the only one with a specific way of life, form of society or expressive culture, but must certainly have shared them with speakers of other languages.

\(^{12}\) M. A. Bryan, 1959, pp. 89-90.
Although in the beginning there was a Bantu community, speaking the proto-Bantu language, belonging to a specific ‘race’ and with a characteristic way of life, the matter is still not entirely clear because data indicate that while the community’s main occupation was fishing, some of its subgroups probably lived by farming instead. In addition, languages are our only source of information concerning the proto-Bantu culture. It is quite possible that situations such as that of the Bira existed at that time. Indeed, they must have existed subsequently, since autochthonous communities gave up their own languages and began to speak a Bantu language.

The other assumption, concerning the spread of the family of languages by migration, is not as watertight as it seems. The Romance languages, for example, did not spread through massive migration of the inhabitants of Latium. A whole range of socio-linguistic mechanisms exists which can lead to changes in the geographical location of languages, one of the most important being a change of language. A people may learn a foreign language, become perfectly bilingual and then abandon its own language for the foreign one. This is what happened in the case of the Sekyani of Gabon who are now all bilingual in Mpongwe and are beginning to lose their original language. The same is true of the inhabitants of the western Cape and southern Namibia, who lost the Khoi and San languages and now speak only Afrikaans. These changes are brought about by socio-cultural power relationships. The Roman empire accounted for the spread of the Romance languages, and the Chinese empire, with its steady stream of emigration from the north, accounted for the Sinization of southern China. Demographic processes also play a role. The Norman conquerors of England lost the use of the French language, having been assimilated by their more numerous subjects, and the same thing had happened previously in Normandy itself where they adopted the French language. Commercial or cultural predominance may also influence developments. The Sekyani adopted Mpongwe because it was the language of trade. The cultural predominance of France in Europe accounts for the spread of French in Belgium in the eighteenth century. In conclusion, it may be noted that quite frequently commercial, socio-political and even religious links may engender new common languages, derived from a language invested with prestige, for instance the Koines, the Creoles and the Sabirs. Judging by the massive scale of convergence phenomena among the Bantu languages, this type of situation must have arisen more than once. In the comparatively recent past, mention may be made of Lingala, Swahili or Monokituba as trading languages belonging to the Creole category.

To obtain a more accurate explanation for the expansion of the Bantu languages, historians must proceed by analogy and bear constantly in mind the whole range of socio-linguistic mechanisms involved. They cannot automatically ascribe everything to migration. In any case, given the probable population density prior to our own era, it is misguided to speak in terms of massive population movements. Local demographic superiority or
social, economic, cultural or political advantages are far more likely to shed light on the phenomenon. In addition, the history of the spread of the Bantu languages is so long and the area affected so vast that it must be assumed that at one time or another the majority if not all of the factors known to us by analogy could have played a role.

In reality, the linguistic data are of direct use in only one respect, namely the reconstruction of the proto-Bantu community on the basis of what its vocabulary reveals; and the vocabulary, of course, corresponds to a whole period and not to a point in time, for the proto-Bantu language itself evolved, broke up into different dialects and became more sharply differentiated from other related languages. The Bantu vocabulary utilizable today\textsuperscript{13} refers to the Bantu group narrowly defined, the 'Common Bantu' closest to us in time. While the evidence available makes it easy to reconstruct the vocabulary in terms of form, the same is not always true of meaning, since meaning also changes over time and may now vary considerably from language to language. For instance, the root \textit{*kùmù} means 'healer' or even 'diviner' in the east and 'chief' in the west and in one western bloc of languages (the \textit{A7os}) it means 'one who is rich'. Of course, the meanings can be linked and we may envisage the proto-Bantu chief as being rich, a healer and a diviner. But the result may prove somewhat artificial. In this case, we have to opt for the meaning 'leader', which is correct but rather vague.

It may, however, be deduced from the old vocabulary that the community which spoke the ancestral Bantu language cultivated the yam, certain other roots and even cereals. The goat was the only domestic animal known. The community hunted (especially the wart hog) but their speciality was fishing. As we have seen, the language may very well have been common to two communities leading comparatively different lives. Kinship was a major principle in internal organization and the community had its specialists, leaders and religious experts. The notions of ancestry and belief in sorcery were well established. One can even form some idea of the attitude of groups of wife-givers to wife-receivers. But there is still a great deal of ground to be covered in the study of vocabulary, and if all goes well a far more lengthy description of this aspect of the question may be expected.

The vocabulary, correlated with archaeological data and a knowledge of the geographical origins of the community, enables us to provide a date for the beginning of the Bantu expansion. We are dealing with a Neolithic community that engaged in agricultural activities (cereal cultivation for instance) but was not familiar with metal-based technology. These clues enable us to narrow down proto-Bantu to the period between $-1000$ (or even earlier) and $-400$.\textsuperscript{14}


\textsuperscript{14} T. Shaw, 1978, pp. 60-8, 78-80; P. de Maret and F. Nsuka, 1977, examine the question of metallurgy.
The expansion itself was an enormously long process, since even in the nineteenth century it was still not entirely completed in East Africa. The first Arab travellers nevertheless brought back Bantu words from Africa's east coast. By about the eighth century, therefore, Bantu-speaking communities were already settled on the shores of the Indian Ocean. It follows that the Bantu expansion covered not only a third of the continent but a time-span of two to three thousand years. Under the circumstances, it is by no means surprising that we are left with only very general and often sharply divergent evidence of how it came to pass!

Linguistics and archaeology

The line followed by scholars is clear and is reflected in the way the beginnings of Bantu expansion were established. The vocabulary must be combed for information that can be confirmed by finds in archaeological sites. Again, but it is less conclusive, archaeological evidence of large-scale migrations can be compared with what is known about the spread of the Bantu languages.

In theory, this should provide the answer. However, when one considers that Indo-European specialists still hold widely divergent theories in their own field, in which all the languages are well described and excavations have been far more numerous than in Africa, it becomes clear that the task of reconstituting the processes is neither an easy nor a rapid one. Some of the more obvious difficulties may be mentioned. An early Iron Age site may date from after the first movement of expansion of the Bantu languages, but that does not imply that, later on, only the Bantu-speaking peoples of that third of Africa knew how to smelt iron. One cannot automatically attribute all Iron Age sites to communities speaking Bantu. There is evidence in East Africa of the very rapid spread of a type of pottery dating from the early Iron Age, and as the sites are all in the area of expansion of the eastern Bantu languages, this coincidence (and coincidence it is) has been taken as proof that these were the archaeological traces of the Bantu expansion. In the first place, however, very few finds have been made at excavations in other parts of Bantu-speaking Africa. Secondly, it is just as plausible to suggest that this rapid spread of iron was the work of iron-smiths and potters who perhaps represented only a tiny minority of the population in which they settled.

We must constantly bear in mind the fact that archaeology cannot prove what language was spoken by the people who made or used the pottery, cultivated the cereals or fashioned the objects in metal, stone or bone discovered in the sites. Linguistic and archaeological data may, on the other

15. A case in point are the Mbugwe in Tanzania.
hand, be compared, and the more remarkable the correlation seems to be, the greater its value as evidence.

This is not the place for a review of the sites of the early Iron Age, since the subject was dealt with in several chapters of the preceding volume. Suffice it to note that the earliest sites of Bantu-speaking peoples are undoubtedly associated with tools classified as Neolithic and that the Iron Age sites in southern, central and eastern Africa may conceivably be associated with the traces left by speakers of Bantu languages.17

The Bantu expansion

Two theories have been put forward to explain the Bantu expansion from their original homelands. One is that the abandonment of a precarious hunting and food-gathering economy in favour of an agricultural economy led to a population explosion, which in turn led to migrations of people seeking space in which to live. Writing in the early 1960s, the archaeologist Merrick Posnansky suggested that the migrations of the Bantu peoples from West Africa to central Africa involved agricultural communities and that the movement gathered momentum after the agricultural techniques (banana and yam cultivation) introduced by the Indonesians between −400 and +200 spread to the forest peoples of central Africa.18 Another theory, based on the notion of conquest, establishes a link between the expansion of the Bantu and the beginnings of the Iron Age. The working of iron, it is claimed, facilitated agricultural production by making tools more effective and enabled the Bantu to dominate the peoples in the areas where they settled. The main exponent of this theory, C. C. Wrigley, claims they 'were a dominant minority, specialized to hunting with the spear, constantly attracting new adherents ... by their fabulous prestige as suppliers of meat, constantly throwing off new bands of migratory adventurers, until the whole southern sub-continent was iron-using and Bantu-speaking'.19

Judging by the pattern of migrations in the second part of the present millennium, other, probably more serious reasons can be adduced to explain the incessant movements of the Bantu during the first millennium of the Christian era in sub-equatorial Africa. Famine, the search for more favourable living conditions in the form of better farming and grazing land, epidemics, wars and a sheer spirit of adventure could also have motivated the early Bantu movements, but these factors have hitherto received only scant attention.

Turning to the population explosion and conquest theories, it should be noted that the introduction of agriculture was a gradual process and did not immediately displace the earlier hunting and food-gathering economy in sub-equatorial Africa. Indeed, these two types of economy supplemented

The Bantu-speaking peoples and their expansion

one another, as they still do in some parts of Africa up to the present day. The beginning of agriculture should not therefore be seen as a dramatic turning-point. It was an evolutionary process which could not immediately have caused a demographic revolution leading to mass emigration of the Bantu in search of more living space. The working of iron only gradually revolutionized agriculture because only small quantities of the metal were initially produced in Bantu Africa. Iron technology did not by any means revolutionize agriculture during the early Iron Age. Up to the beginning of the present century, most forest and bush clearing was done by fire, and the digging stick survived into the twentieth century in Africa. How much more true then of the early Iron Age! Iron technology undoubtedly improved the arsenals of the Bantu of that period, the iron-tipped spear and arrow being the most notable additions, but for a long time after their invention they were probably not regarded as more effective than stone or bone-tipped arrows, wooden spears and clubs, and did not make their possessors more aggressive.

The expansion of the Bantu did not assume the dimensions of an exodus from one area to another. It was most probably a movement of small numbers of people from one village to the next and sometimes back again, a process that was repeated over and over again until successive generations reached all parts of sub-equatorial Africa, perhaps over the space of a thousand or more years. It should not be imagined that the Bantu migrations took the form of a linear progression, unidirectional, in a perpetual forward movement. On the contrary, over thousands of years, movements must have occurred in all directions.

All things considered, what can we say today regarding the Bantu expansion? Proto-Bantu was spoken close to an ecological dividing-line, hence in a comparatively rich environment in so far as the inhabitants were capable of exploiting it. Migration of surplus population, at least on a small scale, probably occurred here. In addition, there were movements of whole villages when, every ten years or so, they moved in order to be closer to newly cleared fields. Their penetration of the forest was most likely a gradual process. The distribution of the north-western languages, sharply divergent from those of the centre of the equatorial forest, shows that they spread out in three main directions, first along the sea-coast towards the south, and across the sea towards Malabo Island. During this first movement, they may even have reached the Gabon estuary. The second movement took the form of a thrust along the edge of the forest towards the east, at least as far as the Sangha River. The third involved penetration of the forest from various points along its edge, either because of the normal advance of agriculture or perhaps again through the activities of fishermen on the Sangha.

The first achievement of the Bantu was mastery of the Zaire forest en-

20. There is a clear dividing-line in both lexical and grammatical classification.
The process of infiltration occurred in two phases: (1) from north to south, with the Bantu merely following the rivers and the narrow strips of alluvial land, and (2) through the progressive destruction of the primary forest by the Bantu agricultural populations advancing on a broad front.

Very little is known about the early agricultural and metallurgical history of the western proto-Bantu region. It has, however, been suggested that equatorial Zaire was an independent centre of agricultural development, a development due to the great importance attached to yams and palm oil. On Malabo Island, agricultural development based on palm-oil production began in the sixth century and agriculture in the wider equatorial region probably began at much the same time. In the Stanley Pool/Kasai region of Zaire traces of a ‘neolithic’ culture have been found in the form of heavy stone picks, stone discs, polished stone axes, adzes and pottery. It is believed that the Bantu cultivated yams and oil palms but there is no direct evidence, since these activities leave little trace of their existence for the archaeologist.

There are two major early Iron Age traditions in Zaire, the Kasai/Stanley Pool tradition and the Shaba/eastern Kivu tradition. In the western proto-Bantu region (that of the Kasai/Stanley Pool tradition), no stratified sites have so far been investigated, although large quantities of ‘dimple-based’ pottery dating from the early Iron Age have been found on the surface. Unfortunately, it has not been possible to obtain isometric dates in this region, but it is reasonable to assume that the working of iron did not occur much earlier there than in the Shaba/eastern Kivu zone where carbon-14 dates in the fourth century were obtained for Shaba and in the first millennium of the Christian era for Kivu. While the stratified sites of Shaba give a clear date for the start of the Iron Age, those of Kivu do not, since comparable sites in Rwanda and Buhaya (Tanzania) have been assigned a much earlier date, around 300 to 500 years before the Christian era.

The agricultural innovations in the western proto-Bantu region started from within and although they encouraged population movements, it is fair to assume that such movements occurred for the most part within the region. The equatorial environment does not facilitate such movements and up to the end of the first millennium of the Christian era the western Bantu were probably the more stable of the two major Bantu groups. Although the evidence is scanty in this region, the Bantu were definitely using iron in the first millennium of the Christian era, but they are unlikely to have developed its use to the point where an improvement in plantation agriculture generated a population explosion leading to expansion, or where warfare was revolutionized to the extent of encouraging the western Bantu to embark on military campaigns outside their own region.

fig. 6.2 Almost complete specimen of early Iron Age pottery (Urewe) found above the hole designated as the grave of Mutara I Semugesht, at Rurembo, Rutare, Rwanda (after F. Van Noten, 1972)

fig. 6.3 Early Iron Age pottery (Urewe) found in the region of Kabuye, Rwanda (after F. Van Noten, 1983)
Nevertheless, given the overall distribution of the Bantu language groups, there must have been a much stronger thrust eastwards, along the edge of the forests, carrying the predecessors of the eastern Bantu languages as far as the Great Lakes. This theory is neither borne out nor invalidated by other data. No eastern Bantu languages are found in these regions although some languages spoken in the Sudan and in the eastern part of the Central African Republic might very well belong to that group. The only thing that is probable is the existence of the eastern group of languages. Furthermore, during this first stage, the expansion took place of the ancestors of other languages spoken by the western Bantu, especially the ancestor of the language bloc of the central forest towards the lands beyond Ubangi and Zaire. Assuming that a direct advance was precluded by the existence of a huge swamp, the second largest in the world, either the northern route, to the north of Dongo, or the southern route, to the south of the mouth of the Sangha, must have been taken. The geographic distribution of the languages belonging to this bloc indicates that the southern route was chosen, and the ancestral language may have been spoken between the Alima River and the forest, on the right bank of the Zaire/Congo. Subsequently, these languages were carried to all parts of the forest by fishermen advancing along the rivers that spread fanwise throughout the region, and by nomads wandering from village to village.

This region between the Alima and the forest contained a mixture of
The Bantu-speaking peoples and their expansion

forest and savanna, similar to the area in which the proto-Bantu community has been located. But the languages advanced into sharply different environments, a development which could hardly have occurred without some interruption or at least deceleration in the movement of expansion. Gradually, for instance, some groups must have adapted to life in savannas where there was a lack of water, as is the case in the Bateke plateaux. In the east, on the other hand, there was an excess of water and some communities adjusted to swamp life, either then or much later. But the bulk of the languages were spoken by people who preferred life in the forest, either as farmers or fishermen. Some languages, however, were spoken in lower Kasai, in an environment with extremely rich aquatic resources but where the forest was reduced to narrow fringes along the watercourses, yet another variation of the savanna and forest environment. Finally, some other languages developed during this second stage in the south and southwest along the edge of the forest, which in that region extends in a north-south direction, and subsequently in lower Zaire in a fresh mosaic of forest and savanna.

No trace of autochthonous languages remains in this part of the western Bantu-language zone. How can we account for the assimilation of these autochthonous languages? The fact that the Bantu-speaking peoples lived in villages gave them an undeniable advantage over the less-settled hunters and food-gatherers. The village became the centre of the surrounding territory and the influence of its language grew accordingly as the territory was reorganized. The villages stimulated trade (in agricultural products!) and perhaps marital interchange, and there were probably also visitors who simply wished to satisfy their curiosity and for whom the village was a metropolis. In a forest environment, this is quite a plausible scenario and fits in well with the theory of rapid propagation of languages by fishermen along the major rivers and the sea-coast. These people were highly mobile, though, paradoxically, they also tended to build fairly large villages which could, in particularly favourable locations, become fairly permanent. They must have influenced the lives of the farming people all around them, either directly or through the trading of fish, pottery and sea-salt for the products of hunting or food-gathering. A look at the map enables us to say with certainty that the fishing communities were responsible for the high degree of linguistic homogeneity in the central basin because of their intensive contacts with the farmers. These contacts checked tendencies to linguistic divergence and favoured convergence, especially with regard to grammar.

It is not known when the western Bantu languages spread beyond the southern limits of the forest or even whether it was before or after metallurgy had become widespread in that area. In addition, recent data provide no conclusive evidence of the subsequent expansion of these languages to the south of lower Kasai and lower Zaire.

Many later linguistic movements occurred in that area. In the north, es-
PLATE 6.2(a) (left) A reconstruction of an Early Iron Age furnace in Rwanda: Nyaruhengeri I
PLATE 6.2(b) (left) Excavation of an Early Iron Age furnace: Kabuye XXXV
PLATE 6.2(c) Excavation of an Early Iron Age furnace: Nyaruhengeri I
PLATE 6.2(d) Excavation of an Early Iron Age furnace: Gisagara VI
FIG. 6.4 (a)–(c) Profiles of reconstituted Early Iron Age furnaces in the Butare area, Rwanda
(a) Gisaga vi (+255)  (b) Kabuye xxxv (+32)  (c) Nyaruhengeri I (+380)
The Bantu-speaking peoples and their expansion

pecially between Ubangi and Zaire, from Bangui to the Uele River, movements in different directions were discernible. In some cases, Bantu languages displaced other linguistic groups (for instance the Mba-Mondunga group from Lisala to Kisangani); in others, they were overshadowed by the Central Sudanic languages, especially in Ituri where a large bloc of Bantu languages was, in addition, strongly influenced by the grammatical structure of those languages. In some cases exchanges between languages also occurred.

The linguist Christopher Ehret developed a theory to the effect that the Sudanic languages spread as far as southern Africa but were assimilated by the subsequent expansion of the Bantu. In his view, the eastern proto-Bantu around the western shores of Lake Tanganyika evolved in three successive series of communities between −600 and −400, namely the Lega-Guha, who occupied eastern Zaire to the west of the western Rift Valley system, the Lacustrine Bantu, who occupied the present territories of Rwanda, Burundi, western and southern Uganda (and probably parts of the interlacustrine belt of Tanzania), and the Tuli, who occupied a very extensive area in eastern, central and southern Africa. These Tuli were later to split into two groups, the Pela and the Pembele, the former including all speakers of Bantu dialects in Kenya and parts of Tanzania and the latter the Bantu-speaking peoples of most of Malawi, Mozambique, eastern Zambia and the whole of south-eastern Africa. By the end of the first millennium before the Christian era, these Pela and Pembele communities had emerged as different entities from their eastern proto-Bantu ancestors to the west of Lake Tanganyika and spread very rapidly during the first two or three centuries of the first millennium of the Christian era to eastern and southern Africa. The present Bantu-speaking peoples of these regions are their descendants.\(^{22}\)

No linguist has followed up Ehret’s theory, doubtless because the evidence on which it is based is still too slender. Even though some of the available archaeological data bear out certain aspects of Ehret’s theory, it should be noted that so far, no archaeological research on the early Iron Age has been conducted in the region to the west of Lake Tanganyika which, in his view, is the area from which the eastern proto-Bantu split up into different groups. It must be admitted, however, that we still do not understand how the Bantu languages came to predominate in eastern Africa. It was a completely new environment, the indigenous populations were technically more advanced than the Bantu-speaking groups and some of them doubtless spoke Central Sudanic languages, at least in the north-western part of the region.

Linguistics shed less light on the expansion of the eastern Bantu languages than on what preceded it. Archaeology tells us that metallurgy was already quite advanced in that area by the last centuries before the

Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Christian era and that it spread from the Great Lakes to Transvaal and Natal in the first few centuries of the Christian era. One is naturally tempted to visualize a corresponding linguistic movement extending from the Great Lakes to Cape Province and to conclude that it was technical superiority that enabled the Bantu languages to gain supremacy throughout the region. Towards the south, indeed, the advantage of technical superiority would also have included agriculture and animal husbandry. But at this point caution is indicated. Many languages in East Africa itself are so closely related that there is as yet no clear-cut system of subclassification, except for the languages to the south of the Limpopo and the Shona languages to the south of the Zambezi. Besides, we must bear in mind that eastern Bantu languages are also spoken further to the west, in southeastern Zaire and in Zambia. And there is still some doubt regarding the position of the various languages from the south of lower Zaire as far as Namibia. These languages were, to say the least, strongly influenced by the eastern Bantu languages, and the regions where they are spoken, in the rare cases in which they have been explored archaeologically, do not correspond to the typical distribution of cultures in the early Iron Age.

It is still possible, therefore, to share Professor Ehret's view that these languages originated to the west of Lake Tanganyika and subsequently spread northwards and southwards. It is equally defensible to place their origins in the far north or in any one of a number of areas along the upper Kasai or the upper Zambezi. Nothing has yet been established beyond doubt.

Within that area, traces of non-Bantu languages are discernible in the southernmost Bantu languages which have borrowed some of their vocabulary and phonology from the Khoi and San languages. In East Africa, the geographical distribution of languages shows that their progress there was highly eventful. Bantu and other languages are closely intertwined, and even in the recent past non-Bantu languages have encroached on Bantu languages and vice versa. The Bantu expansion did not proceed without reverses. On the contrary, it is more than likely that reverses occurred and that the setbacks lasted for centuries, affecting large portions of the Bantu-speaking region. If this is so, however, it should be possible to find the traces of these other languages, as in the case of the Central Sudanic influences in eastern Zaire.

Our study comes to an end around the year +1100, when the Bantu had settled in most of sub-equatorial Africa (an area which they still occupy) and, most importantly, when their cultures had begun to assume well-defined regional characteristics. At the present stage of research, it is not possible to make a definite statement about the origins of the Bantu or why they expanded throughout the length and breadth of sub-equatorial Africa.

Of course, as linguistic research becomes more intensive and is extended to more and more Bantu languages, many new facts will come to light, since so many languages are still little known. The foregoing survey will certainly be expanded.

In conclusion, the need to separate linguistic data from archaeological data should again be emphasized. This is necessary in order to avoid the danger of confusing the probative value of different disciplines and, more important still, to avoid the intellectual danger of creating a myth — a powerful one but none the less unfounded. There is a temptation on hearing the word Bantu to associate it with an ethnic or national reality, whereas it is only a linguistic label. It does not denote a people or a society or a culture. Bleek’s choice of a label was somewhat too apt and we must now defend ourselves against the consequences. For just as the ‘Hamitic’ myth grew out of the confusion of language, culture and race, so also a Bantu myth would be sure to develop from a similar confusion.

Editor’s note

As this chapter is the work of two experts with different scientific training and divergent opinions, it consists, up to a point, of a combination of ideas. Surprisingly enough, the two authors agreed on the most important questions, thus bearing witness to the fact that years of fruitful discussion have resulted in genuine progress in the study of the Bantu question. On one point only was there serious disagreement, namely the theory put forward by one of the co-authors — S. Lwanga-Lunyiigo — whose view differs from that of most specialists in the field. We have therefore reproduced below what the author himself said in his original contribution.

Basing my conclusion on archaeological evidence, I suggested recently that the speakers of Bantu languages occupied from very early times a broad swath of territory running from the Great Lakes region of East Africa to the shores of the Atlantic in Zaire and that the supposed movement of Bantu-speakers from West Africa to central, eastern and southern Africa did not take place.  

The evidence indicates that peoples of Negroid physical type occupied sub-Saharan Africa from the Middle Stone Age and that it was from this Negroid stock that the speakers of Bantu languages emerged. It is possible that Bantu languages developed through the interaction of various early Negro communities, borrowing from one another and in this way helping to develop new ‘Bantu’ languages from the various Negro language amalgams. This does not, of course, rule out the genetic factor which points to a single origin of the speakers of related languages, but it should be pointed

out that the genetic factor which linguists have advanced to explain the origin or origins of the Bantu-speakers is by no means exclusive.

Archaeological evidence indicates several areas of early Negro settlement in sub-Saharan Africa, areas of Negro communities which may have interacted with one another to form entirely new languages. In West Africa the earliest evidence of Negro existence comes from Iwo Eleru in western Nigeria where a ‘proto-Negro’ skull excavated there was dated to the early tenth millennium before the Christian era (9250). Elsewhere in West Africa a Negroid skull was excavated at Asselar in Mali and was dated to the early seventh millennium (6046). Other early Negroid remains excavated at Rop in northern Nigeria and Kintampo in northern Ghana were dated, respectively, to the second millennium (1990 ±120) and the fourth millennium before the Christian era. In East Africa the Negro clearly begins to emerge during the terminal Pleistocene/early Holocene period. At Ishango in eastern Zaire ‘an indigenous Negro population emerges in Africa from the older palaeolithic stock’ between —9000 and —6500. The Kanga Negroid skeletal material in Kenya is dated to the third millennium before the Christian era. Southern African Negroes began to emerge during the middle Pleistocene. These Negroes are represented by Broken Hill Man in Zimbabwe, by the Tuinplaat and Border Cave skeletons and by the late Stone Age skeletal material in the Cape Province of the Republic of South Africa. The Oakhurst, Matjes Rock shelter, Bambandyanalo and Leopard’s Kopje Negroid material further indicates that Negroes were already in existence in much of southern Africa in late Pleistocene/early Holocene times. So the population from which the Bantu emerged was widespread in sub-Saharan Africa from the middle Stone Age onwards.

Whether the Bantu originated in West Africa, the Bahr al-Ghazäl region of the Republic of the Sudan, around the Congo-Zambezi river watershed or the interlacustrine region of East Africa, one factor seems to be well established. Whatever were the origins of the speakers of Bantu languages, they moved from their original homelands and eventually displaced and incorporated Khoisan and probably Sudanic stocks in vast regions of sub-equatorial Africa, an exercise they had largely accomplished by the end of the early Iron Age and the beginning of the second millennium of the Christian era.

27. ibid.
Introduction

The Arabs had already conquered vast territories in Syria and Mesopotamia when they entered Egypt, attracted by the legendary opulence of its countryside, and its large industrious population. Through this territory, Islam, organized and triumphant, came in touch with Africa. Right up to the present, Egypt has retained this vital role of mediator between the Arab East and the black world.

Since the fall of the Ptolemies, a dynasty alien by origin and by language, Egypt had had no centre of authority on its own soil. A colony for exploitation by the Romans, then by the Byzantines, it produced a considerable proportion of the cereals fed to the populace in the imperial capitals. Its prosperity was vital to the security of the princes.

During the first two centuries of Islam there were few changes. However, the central authority, in Medina, in Damascus, finally in Iraq, varied its instructions according to whether its chief object was to convert the Copts to Islam or, on the contrary, to obtain a high yield from the gold and grain taxes demanded of them.

From the third/ninth century onwards, an inclination to resist the demands of the Caliphate was displayed by those who were invested with authority in Egypt. Thus began a new history, that of the slow rise to autonomous, then independent, finally imperial authority. This transfer of political power from Baghdad, first to Fustat, then to Cairo, followed a shift in the trade routes of the Gulf and Mesopotamia towards the eastern Mediterranean, the Nile Valley and the Red Sea. Nubia and the innermost recesses of Africa, unknown until then, came to play an active part, thanks to Egypt, in the economic exchanges of the Mediterranean world.

Egypt in subjection

The conquest

Byzantine Egypt was subjected to the authority of an Augustal duke resident in Alexandria. The country was divided into five duchies, each
comprising two eparchies made up of a number of pagarchies. This strict territorial hierarchy, reflecting a society of highly organized dominant groups and dominated groups, was designed to facilitate the levying of taxes in cash and kind, the collection of the *annona*, or wheat levy, and the financing of its transport to Constantinople, to which 2.5 million hectolitres of grain had to be brought each year before 10 October.

Territorial forces recruited in Copt families specializing in armed service maintained order in the countryside. They were necessary to strengthen the authority of those entrusted with tax collection; they were of scant military value and lacked mobility. The cities had to be surrounded by ramparts to ensure effective protection from nomad raiders.

The solicitude of the Byzantine state was directed to the population of Alexandria, Greek-speaking, Melchite Christians, whose culture and way of life approached those of the inhabitants of Constantinople. Responsibility in the provinces was taken over by high-ranking officials, also Greek, and Hellenized families with big landholdings.

The Copt peasantry had preserved the linguistic inheritance of Pharaonic Egypt. It rejected the Chalcedonian doctrine of the Melchites and held to Monophysitism. Each of the two churches had its Patriarch. The Copt religion expressed itself in a strong inclination towards monastic life, a trend strengthened by the large number of peasants fleeing to evade the pressure of excessive taxation. Rural activity and, more especially, a hermit’s life in the desert on the fringe of the cultivated areas, were recognized values, whereas the towns, and above all Alexandria, represented disorder, debauchery and heresy.

The Persians conquered Egypt without difficulty in 619 and they remained there some ten years, persecuting the Greeks and members of the Melchite Church, but adopting a relatively benevolent attitude to the Copts. After their departure, the theologians of the Byzantine state tried to obtain general recognition for a doctrine acceptable to both churches: in this they failed and the persecutions started up again. The Arab conquest came at a time when the Egyptian population keenly resented the distant authority of Constantinople and its local representation in Alexandria. That population could not identify with the Byzantine state on either the political, religious or linguistic plane.

The Arab general, 'Amr b. al-'Ās, entered Egypt at the head of a modest army in Dhu 1-hijjda 18/December 639. The conquest of Syria, which had just been completed, ensured that he would not have to face any offensive by land on the part of the Byzantines. 'Amr occupied al-Arish, al-Farāma, and, advancing in a south-westerly direction along the eastern

1. *Annona*: wheat sent by certain provinces, including Egypt and North Africa, to Rome, when that city was the capital of the Empire, and later to Constantinople, so that the Emperors could distribute it to the population.
branch of the Delta, he reached Bilbays, then Heliopolis, east of the point where the Nile branches to form the Delta. Babylon (Bābalyūn), the strongest fortified town after Alexandria, lay just to the south, also on the right bank, facing the island of Rōda (Rawḍa).

The Byzantine defence was led by the Chalcedonian Patriarch Cyrus, and the commander-in-chief Theodore. 'Amr, who had received reinforcements, carried out expeditions in the Fayyūm and in the Delta while laying siege to Babylon, which fell in Dījumādā l-ākhīr 20/April 641. In Radjāb 20/June 641 began the siege of Alexandria, centre of Byzantium's maritime power in the southern Mediterranean. This gigantic fortified town, sheltering a population of six hundred thousand, finally capitulated and the Arabs occupied it in Shawwāl 21/September 642. The party dissensions that divided the Greeks, and their hatred of the Copts on religious grounds facilitated the task of the invaders. The Byzantine elite had been unable to arouse a spirit of resistance in the commonalty and the help given by the mother-city, Constantinople, had been inadequate.

Breaking with the tradition instituted by the Lagids of establishing the centre of political authority in the port of Alexandria, 'Amr chose Babylon, just between the Delta and Middle Egypt, as capital of the province. He settled the Arab kabūlas to the north of the fortress. A mosque, centre of religious and political assembly, set the seal on the unity of the new city, which was referred to as Fustāṭ, or Fuṣṭāṭ-Miṣr. The texts do not enable us to form an idea of this first town — doubtless a camp gradually replaced by houses, first of sun-dried clay bricks, then of burnt bricks and stone. Non-Arabs settled in the Ḥamrā's alongside the kabīlas.

From that time right up to the Fāṭimid period Alexandria was a town of secondary importance kept under close supervision by the provincial authority. For there was a risk of a Byzantine landing in its port, which would have made possible the establishment of a bridgehead in a milieu favourable to Byzantium. Indeed, in 25/645–6, the imperial navy briefly reoccupied the town, and its reconquest by the Muslims, led by 'Amr, who was called back for the purpose, was no easy matter.

It is difficult to describe the fiscal regime imposed on Egypt by the Arabs at the time of the conquest, for early works such as that of al-Balādhūrī, report contradictory traditions. Egypt was either a land conquered by a bloodless capitulation — sulḥān² — or one wrested from its inhabitants by armed force — anwatān.³ In the former case the land remained in the hands of those who cultivated it; to keep it they were obliged to pay a tax in kind, sometimes called kharāḍj,⁴ in addition to the poll tax, sometimes

2. Sulḥān: refers to the capture of a town by the Muslims by capitulation.
3. Anwatān: refers to the taking of a city by the Muslim army by assault after refusal to capitulate.
4. Kharāḍj: land tax, sometimes paid in kind, levied on agricultural lands not abandoned at the time of the Islamic conquest; by extension, land taxes generally.
called *djizya*, due in return for having their lives spared without being converted to Islam. In the latter case the land went to the Muslim community, which was free to employ conquered peasants whose lives had been spared as workmen or as tenant farmers.

The confusion may be due to the concern of the chroniclers of traditions to allude by a single legal formula to successive episodes far apart in time and in space. The Byzantine army was able to take up arms again, whereas the Copts, owing to the capitulation of the local territorial forces, had managed to keep their land. Elsewhere, the Muslim authorities sought some reason for refusing Arabs of the *kabïlas* parcels of land which cultivated by Copts produced a more regular yield.

The ambiguities of the situation following the conquest seem to have been turned to account. The existence of the treaty of capitulation seems to have stood in the way of the land claims of the Arab chiefs; Copts reluctant to meet the demands made on them seem to have been reminded that the land conquered by armed force could be taken away from them. The poll-tax paid by Christians and Jews varies according to the texts, ranging from one to four dinars per annum for every male over the age of 14. As for tax in kind, based on the area of the land worked, it consisted of provisions of grain, oil, vinegar, sometimes clothing or animals. By means of the Nile/Red Sea route, the victuals could be sent to Arabia; similarly, a large part of the gold collected was sent to the Caliph. Initially, the authorities fixed a total figure for the tax revenue demanded of each administrative division, leaving it to the tax collectors and the Church to distribute the load among individuals and among farms. This two-level fiscal system explains the difference between the facts described in the Greek papyri of Arab times and the theoretical systems worked out *a posteriori* by Arab historians.

Caliph 'Uthmân, conscious of the danger represented by a provincial governor, with an army at his disposal, and in command of the gold that financed the Caliphate and the wheat that was consumed by its capital, suggested that 'Amr place fiscal administration in the hands of the Governor of Upper Egypt, 'Abd Allâh b. Sa'd, while retaining political and military responsibility. 'Amr refused to 'hold the horns of the cow while someone else milked it', a retort which situates him in the line of the Roman and Byzantine prefects. 'Abd Allâh was appointed sole governor of Egypt in 23/644.

In 31/652 'Abd Allâh launched an expedition against Nubia, in present-day Sudan, and got as far as Dongola, upstream from the Third Cataract. The Christian population, close to the Monophysitic Church of Egypt, put up a fierce resistance. The invaders, discouraged by the precision of the archers, who pierced the eyes of the Arab horsemen, and by the poverty of

---

5. *Djizya*: poll-tax that had to be paid to the Islamic state by non-Muslims, in particular Christians and Jews, whose permanent presence in Islamic territory was tolerated. In return they were exempted from military obligations, had the right to practise their religion with discretion and were entitled to the protection of the Muslim ruler.
FIG. 7.1 Arab Egypt (after G. Duby, 1978)
the country, preferred to negotiate. The *bakt,* signed with the Nubians provided that the latter would deliver slaves and would receive victuals and fabrics. Regarded by Muslim jurists as a trade treaty—and not as a political instrument—negotiated on equal terms with a handful of barbarians, this *bakt,* amended on several occasions, was still in force at the end of the Fāṭimid period. Incidents sometimes broke out—raids by Nubian pillagers in Upper Egypt, struggles for the gold or emerald mines—but the country upstream of Aswān remained independent.

Islam easily took possession of immense territories in which political and social stratification was based on cultural oppositions; but when it came up against relatively homogeneous populations it failed. Its abandonment of Nubia made southern Egypt a ‘land’s end’ for the time being and was to defer the Islamization of Nilotic Africa to the Mamluk period.

**The Umayyads in Damascus**

The installation of the Caliphate in Damascus in 41/661 represented a northward shift of the centre of the Islamic world. The maritime war between Arabs and Byzantines, which began with the Victory of the Masts won by the Egyptian seamen in 35/655, dealt a heavy blow to trade in the Mediterranean. From then onwards the Red Sea was abandoned in favour of the Gulf and land routes which, in Egypt, ran east–west, and no longer north–south.

The crisis that was to bring Mu‘āwiya to the Caliphate began in 35/656 with the assassination of the Caliph ‘Uthmān in Medina. The first crisis in the Islamic community during its period of growth led to its division into groups opposing each other on the relationship between religious law and political authority or on succession to the supreme magistracy. This early break in Arab-Islamic unity enabled new converts of all origins to fit easily into a disjointed structure and spared this religion the temptation of disputes over priority, of racialism and of an exclusive attitude. The various populations, on entering Islam, could bring with them elements of an earlier culture to which they were attached. The Copts, whose Christianity was simple, faithful and sensitive, had rejected the speculative theology of the Byzantines. They brought into an untroubled Sunnism their obsessive desire to keep in touch with the loved ones who had passed on. The Karāfā cemeteries testify to the uncertain boundaries between the here and the hereafter to the same extent as the necropolises of the Old Kingdom.

The revolt which led to the assassination of the Caliph ‘Uthmān, leader

6. *Bakt:* from the Latin *pactum,* an almost unique instance of a bilateral treaty concluded by the Arabs with a people that refused Islam. The Nubians delivered slaves to the Muslims and received wheat, perhaps wine, and fabrics. Concluded under ‘Uthmān in 651–2, the treaty was renewed and amended several times, remaining in effect until 1276, at which time Nubia was reduced and made subject to Mamluk Egypt by the armies of Baybars.
of the Umayyad party, started among the Arab troops in Egypt, and yet this province was associated, through the action of its Governor, 'Amr, with the defeat of the claims of the Caliph 'Ali both at Siffin and at Adhruh. When 'Amr died, 'Utba, brother of Mu'āwiya, replaced him as governor of Egypt (44/664–5). Shi'ism therefore never had many followers in Egypt, despite the posthumous affection always shown for the descendants of the Prophet.

When the Arabs first came to Egypt they took over the Byzantine state set-up. The Greek language, the subordinate tax officials, the administrative divisions, the coins, were kept; the system went on functioning for the benefit of the new rulers of the country instead of Constantinople. The Monophysite Church retained its role of intermediary between the state and the villages and between the state and the individual. When the presence of the Arabs persisted, this respect for the past was no longer appropriate. The first step was to replace the Christian symbols, with which the Byzantine state stamped its coins and the papyrus used in its offices, by texts from the Quran. In 87/706 Arabic had to be used for the drawing up of official instruments throughout the Caliphate. Bilingual, Arabic/Greek, papyri appeared in Egypt soon after the conquest and this practice was not to be abandoned until about 102/720. Greek texts dating right up to the end of the eighth century are to be found. In the first quarter of the second/eighth century Egypt went over completely to Arabic. Coptic survived in the countryside for two centuries, and longer in the Monophysite (Jacobite) Copt liturgy. By the fourth/tenth century, Egyptian historians, whether Chalcedonian or Monophysite, were writing their chronicles in Arabic. Unlike the Persians and the Turks, who adopted Islam but retained, or returned to, their national language and thus enjoyed cultural autonomy, the Egyptians became merged in the Arab-speaking world stretching from the Atlantic to Mesopotamia. Born in the Middle Ages, its bounds not reproducing those of any previously existing empire or any natural unity, the Arab-speaking world has survived up till the present, integrating Egyptian civilization for the first time into a wider framework than the Nile Valley. This Arab-speaking world is independent from any constraint from Islam, for many non-Muslims speak Arabic, whereas not many speak Turkish or Persian.

Under the Umayyad Caliphate, few Arabs lived in the Egyptian countryside and the presence of the Muslim soldiers, often Yemenite, among the Egyptians in the towns raised no problem. Mutual acculturation quickly took place and both parties acceded together to an urban way of life, previously reserved for the Hellenized classes. The number of persons not participating in agricultural production increased: soldiers drawing pensions in accordance with the ḏiwān, administrators, artisans working for the governor, military chiefs and fiscal administrators. However, the urban way of life entailed increased expenditure and from the 80s/700s onwards...
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

conquests slowed down and the treasury could no longer rely on the spoils of war. Fiscal pressure became more burdensome and levies were made to the detriment of the countryside.

Resistance to the new fiscal demands was passive at first, as in the Byzantine period. The peasants deserted the villages where they were registered, disappearing or becoming monks in order to evade the poll tax. When 'Abd al-'Azîz b. Marwân extended the poll tax to cover monks (65/685–85/704), the Copts found a solution in conversion to Islam. The Muslim authorities had to choose between encouraging conversions, which entailed a decrease in fiscal revenue, or amending the law with a view to not exempting new Muslims, so as to prevent conversions for selfish reasons. Kurra b. Sharîk, political and financial governor from 90/709 to 95/714, refused to abolish the poll tax for converted Copts and proceeded against fugitives, levying in addition special taxes to finance the naval war against Byzantium. He increased production by placing fallow land under cultivation and planting sugar cane. His successor was ordered by the Caliph Sulaymân b. 'Abd al-Malik to 'milk the cows dry and to shed blood until it was spent'. Caliph 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azîz (99/717–101/720) introduced a legal solution to the problem of conversions, which, as a fervent Muslim, he wanted to increase: he separated the person of the new Muslim, who was exempted from poll tax, from his land, which kept its previous status, and he continued to oblige whoever cultivated it to pay the kharâdj, even converts.

As the taxes levied on the Egyptian countryside became more and more burdensome and the traditional means of evading them were then prohibited, in 107/725 the first Copt revolt broke out. The Muslim authorities settled the Delta with Kaysite Arab kabîlas: some ten thousand men, accompanied by their families, arrived in three successive waves. In this way the control of the countryside was facilitated, while the Yemenite population, predominant at the time of the conquest, was counterbalanced. Again, in an attempt to achieve balance, this time directed against the influence of the Monophysite (Jacobite) Church, in 107/725 the Melchites were given their churches back. A Chalcedonian Patriarch was appointed with the agreement of Byzantium, although the Byzantine navy had effected a raid on Tînis in 101/720 and was to effect another in 118/736. Simultaneous recourse to military action and negotiation and a concern to balance the pressure of different social groups are both features of medieval Arab policy.

The great revolts at the beginning of the Abbasid Caliphate

In 132/750 the Umayyads were overthrown and their last Caliph was killed in Egypt in August. The wars between Kays and Yemenites had diverted their attention from the Khorasân, where discontent was developing among the non-Arab Muslim combatants. The seat of the Caliphate was
transferred to Mesopotamia, beyond the historical bounds of the Hellenis-
tic and Roman world, far indeed from Egypt. Damascus was eclipsed as an
autonomous centre of authority. Mecca and Medina were abandoned by
the Kurayshite aristocracy, that of the šārīfs in particular, sure of being
well received by the Abbasid caliphs. The regional function of Fustāt, relay
of a distant authority in Mesopotamia separated from the Mediterranean
by vast steppes, was enhanced and broadened.

From 150/767 to 254/868, revolts continued almost without interruption
in Egypt. Those of the Copts were stirred up by the replacement of the
local Christian officials by Muslims, particularly in the small towns in the
Delta. This was a further reason for the discontent of the Copts, who felt
like aliens in their own country. As a result, between 150/767 and 155/772
the Delta Christians tried to drive out the Muslim officials by force. In 217/
832, in the region of the Bucolics, in the north of the Delta, a rustic Chris-
tian population rose in rebellion: it was not easily put down. For the last
time Christians had taken up arms alone against the Muslim authority in
Egypt; in all the subsequent revolts they combined with Muslims in move-
ments led by the latter.

From the third/ninth century onwards, the Arabs of the kabīlas and the
soldiers were at the root of the main disturbances. The initial enthusiasm
waned. Military engagements took place in Islamic territory, often against
poor peasants: they could no longer be financed by the spoils of war. The
soldiers had to be paid in peacetime and additional expenses had to be de-
frayed when they were in action. Their loyalty depended on the regularity
of their pay. In the event of a revolt, local armies, too closely assimilated,
were unreliable: troops were brought at great expense from Mesopotamia.
In 193/809 a mutiny broke out in Fustat and the following year the gover-
nor had a residence built outside the town on the hill where the citadel of
Cairo was later to be erected.

The Arabs of the kabīlas, settled on the edges of the Delta, had retained
a semi-nomadic pastoral way of life: they would have liked to use for pas-
ture the fields cultivated by the Copts and they refused to pay the kharādj
for the lands that they occupied. Other Arabs, on the contrary, had turned
peasant, adopting the way of life and the customs of the Copts, from whom
they were difficult to distinguish, since the latter were assimilating to the
Arabs and Islam. All alike were up in arms against the tax collector.

Participation of Arabs from the kabīlas in the revolts is reported from
169/785 onwards, and the Hawf, the eastern Delta, was in a state of rebel-
lion right up until 194/810. From 198/814 to 217/832 there was total
anarchy in Egypt, the authority of Fustät no longer being recognized
except upstream, in Middle and Upper Egypt. Refugees from Cordova in
Spain had constituted a state in Alexandria and held the western Delta.
The eastern Delta, from Tinnis to Bilbays and al-Farāma, formed another
unit. Without entering into details, one might mention that the despatch of
four thousand Turkish soldiers and the presence in Egypt of the Caliph al-
Ma'mūn were required to restore order in 217/832. From the following year onwards, the Arabs were excluded from the dīwāns: freed from military obligations, they were no longer entitled to the state pension.

For the descendants of the Arabs of the conquest three destinies were taking shape. The members of the aristocratic or merchant families of Arabia, those of the kabīlas settled around the old towns or in towns established in Iraq or in Egypt, had become urbanized. As officials, jurists and merchants, they benefited from the economic development of the cities, centres of prosperity that sprang from the extent of the market and their field of action, prosperity financed by the taxes levied in the countryside.

Other groups, as we have seen, assimilated with the indigenous rural populations and shared the burden of this taxation. Finally, many Arabs remained Beduins, whether semi-nomads settled on the fringe of the cultivated lands, as in Egypt, or real nomads wandering over the steppes. Thrown out of the armies, they became marginalized once more, while still being dependent on the laws of the market, which determined the prices of the grain they consumed. They displayed resentment and contempt in the face of the urban luxury from which they were barred. They were receptive to the claims of the Hasanid or ʿKarmatian rebels. The pillaging of caravans, and of holy places of weakly defended towns enabled them to regain possession of property amassed as the result of wars waged by their ancestors in former times. So the Arab conquest led to a situation in which, two centuries later, descendants of the victors were to be found both among those privileged by the regime and among the exploited and the rejected.

Egypt autonomous

The Tulunid dynasty

Under the reign of Caliph al-Muʿtaṣim (218/833–227/842) Turkish slaves were introduced into the Mesopotamian troops in such great numbers that they gained control of the army and exerted an influence on civil, fiscal and provincial administration. The Palatine troops had reduced to a figurehead a Caliph whom they set up or brought down as they wished. The administration of provinces or groups of provinces was entrusted to members of the Caliph’s family or to Turkish chiefs, who continued to reside in Baghdad or Samarra, in their turn delegating the actual government of the province to a relation. For instance, ʿĀḥmad b.Ṭūlūn, who arrived in Egypt in 254/868, appanaged by Bākbāk, had been given the ʿalāʾ (political and military authority over the province) but not the ʾkharādij (financial and fiscal authority), which was retained by Ibn al-Mudabbir.

Thirty-three years of age, Ibn Ṭūlūn, like his Turkish comrades, was possessed of excellent military references, having served seven years at Tarsus against the Byzantines. However, he stood out from them by reason
of his religious and literary culture. Throughout his lifetime he placed his intelligence in the service of an ambition beyond measure and seldom resorted to brute force. By 258/872, as a result of intrigues conducted in Samarra, Ibn al-Mudabbir was transferred to Syria.

Ibn Tülin had first to intervene in Upper Egypt, where three revolts broke out in 255/869 and 256/870. The Wādī al-‘Allāki gold mines, southeast of Aswān, and the slaves of Nubia were tempting spoils. In 221/836 the treaty with Nubia had been renewed and the king’s sons were received in Fustāt and Baghdad. The Bēdja nomads settled between the Nile Valley and the Red Sea had similarly concluded a treaty and one of them lived at Aswān. Under these circumstances the towns of the Ša’īd went over to Islam and new trade links were established with the Red Sea and Arabia or with the Maghrib by the trails leading from the oases. In 259/873 the most dangerous of the rebels, Ibn al-Ṣūfi, defeated, took refuge in Arabia. Shortly afterwards al-‘Umari, who controlled the Wādī al-‘Allāki mines, was killed. The security of the links with the south was ensured.

Ibn Tülin had considerable funds at his disposal and he turned them to account by constituting an army enabling him to intervene outside Egypt. He sent it to Tripolitania to put down a revolt, and in 256/870, when the tribute he sent to Iraq was seized in Syria, he was about to enter the country. However, the Caliph's entourage preferred to settle the affair without his help for his ambition was beginning to cause apprehension. Ibn Tülin had at his disposal the wheat of Egypt, the gold and the slaves of Nubia; the Caliphate needed the tribute he sent to Iraq in order to pay the troops, whereas he had nothing to expect from that institution. Two courses were tempting to the powerful governor of Egypt: to make himself independent of the Caliph like the princes of North Africa and keep the tribute for the financing of his army, or, conversely, to intervene in Iraq's domestic affairs. In 256/870 a new Caliph, al-Mu’tamid, had been installed and had entrusted his brother al-Muwaffak with the eastern part of the empire. Ibn Tülin secured from the Caliph the responsibility for levying the kharādż in Syria and in Cilicia and, in exchange, he sent the tribute from Egypt to the Caliph direct for his personal needs. Al-Muwaffak, who was faced with two dangerous revolts – those of the Saffārids in Persia and the Zandj black slaves in the south of Iraq – considered the amounts he received from Egypt insufficient. Out of a fiscal revenue of 4.3 million dinars, Ibn Tülin apparently sent 2.2 million a year to the Caliph, and in 876 an additional 1.2 million to al-Muwaffak. At the same time, it is true, he was building an aqueduct and a hospital, and a new town north-east of Fustāt with barracks for his soldiers, a palace and a large mosque in the Samarra style. According to Ibn Taghrībirdī, these edifices were built with the gold – 1.5 million or 2.5 million dinars in weight – taken from a Pharao- nic tomb discovered near Fustāt. Was this a legend to justify his refusal to give more assistance to al-Muwaffak, engaged in a difficult war for the safety of the Caliph? At all events al-Muwaffak sent an army to drive Ibn
In 264/878 Ibn Tulun invaded Syria without encountering any resistance except at Antioch. Ill-received at Tarsus in Cilicia, he had just installed a governor when he had to return to Egypt, his son al-'Abbās having revolted. The young prince was brought back to Fustat as a prisoner in Ramaḍān 268/February 882 and Ibn Tulun, in undisputed command of Egypt and Syria, secretly invited the Caliph to come and reside in Fustat. However, the Caliph, after an attempt at flight, was brought back to his capital and compelled to sign an instrument removing Ibn Tulun from office. The latter, in Dhu l-ka‘da 269/May 883, assembled in Damascus kādīs, jurists and šari‘īs representing the Muslim people of Egypt, Syria and Cilicia and obtained a vote from them legitimizing djihād against al-Muwaffak, pressures imposed on the Caliph by him invalidating any instrument emanating from the Caliphate. The only ones to refuse to vote in favour were three Egyptians, including the kādī of Fustat. Less than a year later, in Ramaḍān 270/March 884, Ibn Tulun fell ill and died in Fustat.

He was succeeded by his son Khumārawayh, who managed to combine Tarsus and Djasira (Upper Mesopotamia) with his principality, and in 273/886 the Caliphate acknowledged the sovereignty of the Tulunid dynasty over Egypt and Syria for a period of thirty years. In 279/892 the Caliph al-Mu‘taḍid married Khumārawayh’s daughter, Kaṭr al-Nadā, who brought him a million dinars, the wedding festivities were the most sumptuous in Arab history. In 282/896 Khumārawayh was assassinated in Damascus, leaving the treasury empty. The reign of his son Djaysh, then of his son Hārūn, completely ruined the dynasty which was incapable of defending Syria against the Karmatians. This sect of Ismā‘īlī Alid origin, which arose in Mesopotamia in the second/eighth century, had exploited the bitterness of the Arabs of the kābilas sent back to the desert when the Caliphate’s armies had become Turkish or black. The Beduins invaded Syria from 289/902 onwards and easily overcame the Tulunid army of Damascus, commanded by Tughdj. Drawing the inference from this defeat, an Abbasid general, Muḥammad b. Sulaymān, entered Syria and crushed the Karmatians in 290/903 then marched on Fustat, which he entered on 20 Rabi‘I 292/10 January 905. Hārūn b. Khumārawayh had just been killed.

Al-Kindi’s account of the Tulunids provides evidence of an evolving social state. After the death of Ibn Tulun political authority was fragile; it was threatened by the prince’s peers, his relations or his generals, who knew the military basis of his legitimacy. Once a prince was replaced by force, this group granted his successor the bay’a and had the mosque authorities recognize the innocence of the new prince with regard to any violence used to seize power from or take the life of his predecessor. Any act strengthening a de facto political authority capable of functioning was morally and
PLATE 7.1 *The Mosque of the Ibn Tulun in Cairo: partial view of the courtyard, the minaret and the pavilion of ablution*

PLATE 7.2 *Fatimid Mosque: eleventh-century decoration of the façade*
legally commendable. This easy consensus ill concealed the real disinterest of the religious authorities in the legal bases of a provincial authority so long as the *khutba* was pronounced on behalf of the Caliph. The split between civil society and military comradeship began to appear. A sudden change of *kādī* or *imām* disturbed the marketplace more than a change of prince. Fustāt and Damascus, provincial towns of artisans and merchants, haggling and narrow-minded, distrusted the Tulunid princes, whose morals and culture were marked by a Persian indulgence. This nascent middle class identified itself with the mosque, *ahl al-masjid*, and regarded the securing of judicial responsibility as a promotion. It kept a close watch on the lower classes, *asfal al-nās*, sons of peasants or of soldiers, maladjusted to city life, and denounced them to the authorities if need be.

Another inadequacy of the dynasty was due to its army, incapable of coping with the extent of the territories to be protected and of encountering the armies of Cilicia, hardened by constant warfare. The Tulunid army was heterogeneous, comprising Turks, Daylamites, blacks, Greeks and Berbers. The latter stemmed from peoples settled in the Delta; the eastern Delta had supplied Arabs from semi-nomad *kabīlas* who constituted a formidable guard.

These weaknesses must not blind us to the irresistible progress of the Egyptian economy. The fury with which the Abbasid army pillaged Fustāt

7. *Khutba*: an oration delivered by the *khāṭib* from the *minbar* of the great mosque at Friday mid-day prayers, in the course of which God's protection was invoked on behalf of the Caliph recognized in the city, and also on behalf of the ruler from whom the governor had received his delegated authority, where such was the case.

and destroyed all the Tulunid buildings with the exception of the great mosque proves that it was aware of that progress and of the threat it represented to Iraq's preponderance.

Fragile Abbasid restoration: anarchy

From the fall of the Tulunids in 292/905 to the installation of Muḥammad b. Ṭughdj as governor in 323/935 Egypt underwent a series of disorders which it would be idle to recount. Governors, whose functions were confined to military and political affairs, succeeded one another, while the al-Mādharāʾi family sat firmly at the head of the fiscal administration, even opposing certain nominations to the office of governor. The army, irregularly paid, took to pillaging. To escape this, the inhabitants of Fustāt got the mosque authorities to ask for the troops to be transferred to Giza, a logical request since that town was threatened by the Berbers. Settled on the left bank of the Nile, in the Delta, in the Fayyūm, they acted on behalf of the Ismaʿīlīte dynasty of the Fāṭimids established in Ifnkiya. Berber contingents had been merged with the Egyptian army together with the other troops recruited during the Tulunid period; only the Arabs from the kabīlas had been discharged. This mosaic of ethnic groups gave rise to disciplinary problems; the violent clashes between 'westerners' and 'easterners' were a prelude to the great encounters of the Fāṭimid period.

Two institutions characteristic of the second Arab Middle Ages, the ikṭāʾ and the wakf developed in Egypt at the end of the Tulunid period and during the disorders that ensued. The pay in cash and the allowances in kind due to the soldiers were the responsibility of the provinces in which the army was engaged. Now, whereas the disorders demanded the presence of the army, the financial services were the first to be affected, while on the other hand it was no easy matter to transport over a great distance the funds required by a large army. In order to decentralize the financial operation, the officer in command was given a mandate to collect taxes from a rural district and was wholly or partly responsible for maintaining the men whom he commanded, or in some cases owned. The ikṭāʾ bound the officer in command to the territory he was helping to defend, while relieving the provincial administration of the burden.

9. Ikṭāʾ: delegation of authority to levy taxes granted by the ruler to a military or civilian officer in a fiscal district as a reward for services rendered to the state. The concession was revocable.

10. Wakf: an inalienable legal and religious donation made by the owner of a piece of real property to bestow the revenue from it on a religious institution or an institution of public or social interest and/or on the owner's descendants. The instrument of donation, drawn up in a recognized form and backed by a religious or charitable intention, provided for a trustee for the wakf and the beneficiaries. If all else failed, the kādī could be asked to enforce compliance with the legitimate intentions of the founder. The desired effect of declaring private property a wakf was to avoid the possibility of confiscation by the ruler or the dispossession of orphans during their minority.
Civil iktā’s were no doubt constituted for the benefit of financial administrators, such as the Mādhārahā, to guarantee their advances to the treasury. Their office undoubtedly enabled them to build up an immense fortune (they had one million dinars confiscated) in landed property and real estate: a fortune rapidly acquired, which was envied by those in power. The Mādhārahā resorted to setting their property up in wakfs to ensure that only their descendants would have the use of it.

As a result of these two institutions the towns weighed more heavily on the countryside, increasing the taxation of the agricultural yield, leaving the peasant at best the bare minimum for the subsistence of his family. It was impossible to put anything by. Then again, the existing situation was frozen and the field of action of the central or regional authorities was limited. At the same time the peasants ceased to have recourse to violence, at least in the form of large-scale revolts. This was due to the more widespread supervision of the countryside as a result of the iktā and the absolute military superiority of the professional soldier over the armed civilian owing to the new techniques of fighting with sword or lance.

The Ikhshidids and Kāfur

In Sha’ban 323/July 935, Muḥammad b. Tūghdj, appointed governor of Egypt with responsibility for both the salāt and the kharāḏj, arrived in Fustāṭ. This twofold responsibility, which ran counter to the practice followed since the fall of the Tulunids, was obtained thanks to the support of al-Faḍl b. Dja’far Ibn al-Furāt, tax-inspector for Egypt and Syria. Ibn al-Furāt, who had been the vizier of the great Abbasid amīr of Baghdad, Ibn Rā’ik, to whom he was related by a matrimonial alliance, concluded a matrimonial alliance with Ibn Tughdj as well. He had begun to bring down the financial power of the al-Mādhārahā family when he died in 326/938. His son, Dja’far b. al-Faḍl was vizier at the end of the Kāfürid period and, much later, under the Caliph al-ʿAzīz. Alliances between a family of Iraqi civil financiers and tax-farmers and a Turkish or Persian governor or military chief were current during this period. With other financiers, the Banū al-Furāt brought from Baghdad to Fustāṭ a cultural environment favourable to Shi’ism, indirectly facilitating Fātimid propaganda.

Grandson of a Turkish soldier in the Samarra guard, son of a former governor of Damascus, Ibn Tughdj had exercised numerous commands. Appointed to Fustāṭ with the mission of protecting the western flank of the Caliphate against an imminent attack by the Fātimids, he was granted the right to constitute an autonomous principality. In 327/939, he was given, on request, the title of al-Ikhshīd, the Servant, a title traditionally borne by the princes of the Ferghāna. In the year of his appointment to Egypt, 323/935, he was forced to confront the Berbers, who had occupied the Island of Rūdā (Rawḍa) opposite Fustāṭ and set fire to the arsenal on the island. After going off towards Iṣrīkiyya, they came back in 324/936 with a Fātimid
army to attack Egypt, but they were defeated. The wealth of Ifrîkiya, the
gold it received through the Sahara and its relations with Andalusia and
Sicily had attracted considerable traffic coming from the Red Sea, and so
trails parallel with the Mediterranean coast and linking North Africa with
the Delta, the oases and Upper Egypt had increased in number. Their
military control was difficult.

Going back to the Tulunid tradition, Ibn Ṭughdîj regarded Syria as an
integral part of his principality. He had to dispute that province with the
military chiefs driven out of Mesopotamia, who saw in it a compensation.
Ibn Rāʾîk, turned out of Baghdad by his lieutenant Bâdjkâm, attempted to
conquer Syria in 326/938. After uncertain engagements, Ibn Rāʾîk and Ibn
Ṭughdîj concluded a matrimonial alliance and divided the province
between them, the south to the Ikhshîd, the north and Damascus to the
former great amîr of Baghdad. In 330/942 the Hamdânîd ruler of Mawsil,
Nâṣîr al-Dawla, had Ibn Rāʾîk killed and in 332/944 he sent his brother
ʿAlî, the future ʿSayf al-Dawla, to occupy Aleppo. At the same time the
Caliph al-Muttaki, threatened in Baghdad by the Turkish amîr Tûzûn,
took refuge in Rakka, where Ibn Ṭughdîj, like Ibn Ṭûlûn before him, went
and invited the Caliph to take up residence in Fusṭâṭ. The Caliph returned
to Baghdad where, in 334/945, the Persian amîr Muʿîzz al-Dawla set up an
Alid authority, the Buyid dynasty, for a century. Also in 334/945 Ibn
Ṭughdîj died after having agreed to make peace with the Hamdânîd ruler of
Aleppo. Unudjûr ibn al-Ikhshîd took up the struggle and in 336/947
divided Syria up with the Hamdânîd ruler, whose right to the
djûnûds11 of Kînnaṣrîn-Aleppo and of Homs was recognized. The Ikhshîdîd ruler
retained, along with Egypt, the djûnûds of Râmîla-Palestine, of Tîbèreîs-
Jordan and of Damascus. The boundaries thus drawn were to remain in
force for a century and a half, except during brief periods.

Ibn Ṭughdîj had placed at the head of his army a black eunuch, Kâfûr, a
remarkable personality, who combined indisputable military, administra-
tive and diplomatic abilities with a deep Sunnite faith. Brought to Küs as a
slave when he was still a child, he identified more than any of his pre-
decessors with the people of Fusṭâṭ, with whom he liked to mingle. After
the death of Ibn Ṭughdîj, Kâfûr directed the Ikhshîdîd state under the
principate of Ibn Ṭughdîj’s two sons, Unudjûr (334/946–349/961) and ʿAlî
(349/961–355/966). From 355/966 until his death in 357/968 Kâfûr exer-
cised power in his own right in Egypt and southern Syria with the title of
al-Uṣṭâdh, and his authority was recognized by the Abbasid Caliph.

The Kâfûrid period was marked by growing insecurity in Egypt and
Syria. In addition to the Fâṭîmid threats in the west there was the new
aggressiveness of the Nubians in the south, who attacked the oases in 339/
950 and Aswân in 345/956. The Beduins of Arabia and Syria fell upon
caravans of pilgrims. In the opinion of some historians the Fâṭîmids, too

11. Djûnd: territorial district corresponding to a military recruiting unit.
busy repressing revolts in North Africa, were following a policy of harrying Egypt through their allies, particularly the Ḥarmatians and the Nubians. On the other hand, these incidents can be connected with the frequency of food shortages in Egypt at the time owing to inadequate floods. The Beduins, like the Nubians, bought cereals and when the rise of prices in Egypt made the terms of exchange too unfavourable for them they resorted to armed force in order to eat cheaply.

Kāfūr therefore strengthened the army, introducing black slaves bought on the markets of Upper Egypt. These Kāfūriyya were never completely integrated into the Ḥkhṣidiyya — white ghulāms, Turks or Daylamites — and the two formed separate hostile groups. Kāfūr had pushed out those of his former comrades in arms whose presence might have been prejudicial to him and he had bought the loyalty of the others by granting them large ikṭā's. After his death the senior officers were unable to find a successor from among themselves and they allowed themselves to be manoeuvred by Ibn al-Furāt. The original system introduced by Kāfūr did not survive him. If there had been a man of his character among the military chiefs assembled in Fustāt in the spring of 358/969 a régime anticipating that of the Mamluks might have come into being on the banks of the Nile three centuries earlier than it did.

Imperial Egypt

The first three Fāṭimid imāms of Egypt

At the beginning of the summer of 358/969 the Fāṭimid general Djawhar gained a victory on both banks of the Nile downstream from Fustāt giving him access to that town and forcing the Ḥkhṣidīd and Kāfūrid chiefs to flee to Syria. The inability of the latter to unite and organize the defence of the country against the Berbers accounted for a defeat which their undeniable superiority in the technique of warfare ought to have spared them. The Fāṭimid victory had been prepared by propagandists with considerable funds at their disposal, who exerted their psychological influence on a public opinion disconcerted by the political vacuum that followed the death of Kāfūr and paralysed by the effects of a very serious famine. The Alid sympathies of the Iraqi notabilities of Fustāt had facilitated matters. Recourse to arms had brought to a successful issue a long process of destabilization of the state in Egypt. An understanding of political and ideological warfare enabled al-Mu'izz and his successors to achieve excellent results with mediocre armies.

Djawhar had just conquered Egypt for his master, the Fāṭimid imām al-Mu'izz, who had remained in Ifṣkiya. Before inviting the latter to join him, Djawhar had two further tasks to carry out: creating a capital worthy of receiving a caliph and ensuring the security of the country. He founded Cairo (al-Kāhira), to the north of Fustāt, built a palace there for the imām,
a mosque palatine, known today by the name al-Azhar, and barracks for the different army corps. He lost no time, for by 360/971 the first buildings were completed and Djawhar sent a message to his master announcing that he was awaited in his new capital.

Ensuring the security of Egypt was a more difficult matter. A few words on the Fāṭimid doctrine are required to situate it in the ideological struggles of the period. Al-Mu'izz claimed to be the descendant of al-Ḥusayn, the son of Fāṭima, daughter of the Prophet Muḥammad, and of 'Alī, the Prophet's spiritual successor. This genealogical principle had been the pretext for the Alid revolts against the Umayyads, persecutors of the Family, then against the Abbasids, who were accused of having misappropriated the Family's inheritance. Alongside the Imamite Shi‘ism, which recognized twelve descendants of 'Alī there was the Ismā‘ilī Shi‘ism, which recognized only seven, and which embodied the most radical religious and social claims of the movement. Karmatism, which stemmed from Ismā‘ilism, had taken up arms against the Abbasid theocracy at the end of the third/ninth century. Calling into question the religious rites and the social and family ethic, it was a response to the secret aspirations of those who had not become assimilated in the new urban centres. It could not win over the middle classes, with the exception of a few outstanding minds. The only way it could survive military defeat was to become institutionalized on the parcel of territory it controlled and to place its military force at the service of foreign ambitions.

The origin of the Fāṭimid movement was identical, but it had separated from the Karmatians at the beginning of the fourth/tenth century, when the latter extended their influence to Syria. 'Ubayd Allāh al-Mahdī, the Fāṭimid imām, had left Salamiyya for Ifnkiya, where he established a caliphate. Relying on the devoted courage of a few Berber groups, his successors gained possession of the greater part of North Africa and Sicily. They made preparations for the conquest of Egypt, the last stage before that of Baghdad. The Islam they preached could scarcely shock Egypt: a few minor differences in ritual, equal rights to inheritance for women, but a rather harsh moral attitude towards them, were not enough to put off the Sunnites of Fustāṭ, who were, moreover, attracted by devotion to the Family. Djawhar, in his letter of amān to the people of Fustāṭ, had promised to re-establish pilgrimage, to resume dījāhād, to maintain the mosques and to pay those who served them. He did not have to face any religious opposition and he kept the same kādī, who continued to judge in the mosque of ‘Amr. It is true that alongside the public doctrine, close to Twelver Imamism, a secret doctrine was reserved for initiates.

The Karmatians, who had openly condemned the rites, and pilgrimage in particular, did not resign themselves to the proximity of the Fāṭimids. The pretext for war was the invasion of Syria by a Berber army sent by Djawhar in the months following the fall of Fustāṭ. The former Ikhshidid domain – Ramla, Tiberias and Damascus – was conquered by the Kutā-
mite general Dja'far b. Faläh. Taking advantage of the weakened resistance of the Hamdânids as a result of the deaths of Sayf al-Dawla and of Nâṣir al-Dawla, Dja'far dispatched an army against Antioch, which the Byzantines had just occupied. However, Dja'far had to recall his army for he was attacked in Damascus by the Karmatians, acting on behalf of the Abbasid caliph of Baghdad and coming to regain control of Syria. Since the death of Kâfür they had brought this province into their orbit. Dja'far b. Faläh was killed in 360/971 and Syria was evacuated by the Fâtimids. Djawhar repelled with difficulty the Karmatians besieging Cairo.

In Ramaḍān 362/June 973 the imâm al-Mu'izz took possession of his new capital and his palace. In the spring of 363/974, the Karmatians attacked Cairo again, but, driven off by the amîr 'Abd Allâh, son of al-Mu'izz, they fell back on Syria, which they also had to abandon. Security was re-established in the east; in the north, commercial shipping in the Mediterranean was able to develop as a result of an agreement with Byzantium; in the south, the bakt with the Christian sovereign of Nubia was renewed. In fact the real vocation of the Fâtimid empire was trade. The influence of al-Mu'izz's adviser, Ya'küb ibn Killis, was decisive in this respect. This Iraqi Jew, a merchant in Syria, a convert to Islam under Kâfür, informer of al-Mu'izz at the time of the conquest of Egypt, and vizier during the greater part of the reign of al-'Aziz, son of al-Mu'izz, had elected to become erudite in Ismâ'îlism. He applied an intelligent foreign policy. Preferring to support protectorates in Syria rather than to engage in costly military operations, he concerned himself mainly with the smooth functioning of economic relations. He owned agricultural concerns in that province, which enabled him to import wheat into Egypt in years of short supply, or even to export to Byzantium. This very profitable grain trade is still not well known by historians, whereas the activity of the Jewish merchants in Fustâṭ has been studied thanks to the documents of the Geniza of Old Cairo. It was a long-distance trade of high-priced or very high-priced merchandise linking southern Europe and North Africa to the Indian Ocean and the Horn of Africa. The Ismâ'îlite merchants, too, were active in Yemen and in India, as also in Syria. They established communities professing their beliefs in the towns at which they stopped.

Once the Karmatians were defeated and famine was a thing of the past in Egypt, pilgrimages could be resumed in 363/974 and the invocation on behalf of the Fâtimid sovereign was pronounced in Mecca and Medina, then provisioned in wheat from the Nile. Pilgrims from all over the Islamic world took part in the glorification of the Cairo dynasty.

Under the reign of al-'Aziz (365/975–386/996) Egypt experienced calm and prosperity. Its influence spread over the southern Mediterranean, North Africa, the Arabian peninsula and central and southern Syria. In the latter province a very cautious policy was followed until the death, in 381/991, of Ibn Killis, particularly towards Tripoli, which constituted the coastal frontier with Hamdânids and the Byzantines and which made it
Egypt from the Arab conquest until the end of the Fātimid state

possible to evacuate part of the Syrian wheat. From 382/992 to his death in 386/996, al-'Azīz launched more venturesome actions. Relying on an army that had been thoroughly reformed from 369/980 with the introduction of Turkish armoured horsemen and improvements in siege engineering, he attacked the Hamdānid ruler of Aleppo and his powerful Byzantine protector. At the same time he installed a Fātimid governor in Damascus and drove the Beduins out of Palestine. Al-'Azīz saw his generals triumph, but in the months preceding his death he tried in vain to assemble a powerful army to go and attack the Byzantines in person.

Al-'Azīz bequeathed a situation less brilliant than it appeared to be to his son al-Hākim, who reigned from 386/996 to 411/1021. The population of Fustāṭ and Cairo, the dual capital of the richest empire of the period, had increased tremendously. Berber, Turkish and black soldiers, Iraqi and Syrian merchants, artisans, mosque and other officials had flocked to these towns where gold was said to flow freely. The entry of tribute from the provinces and the taxes levied on traffic crossing Egypt caused the precious metal to accumulate. However, the main source of fiscal revenue, in metal and in kind, was, to their detriment, the Egyptian countryside or the artisans of the provincial towns. Tax-farmers and fiscal officials took a large part of what they collected for themselves. Often Jews or Christians, they had aroused in the Sunnites of Fustāṭ a tendency to reject minority groups, an attitude which was already to be observed in the time of Ibn Killis. The Cairo courtiers, the officials, the military chiefs and the big merchants possessed means of payment such that when shortages threatened, demand far exceeded the supply, aggravating price increases. Shortages then spread to the surrounding markets, stirring up the Beduins and the inhabitants of the provinces.

The rapid promotion of Turks in the army and the financial profit they derived thereby provoked the envy of the Berber tribes, which seized power on the death of Al-'Azīz, taking advantage of the youth of al-Hākim. The persecuted eastern soldiers allied with the Slav eunuchs (al-sakāliba) and the Christian and Iraqi officials to eliminate the Berbers.

Al-Hākim was the last Arab sovereign in history to have exercised absolute power over a vast empire. He had no vizier, but a chief of dīwān, who also acted as an intermediary between the imām and his subjects. He very soon ceased to appoint an army chief, instead designating a general for the duration of operations. He had many dishonest kādīs executed, but when he came upon one of integrity, he respected his independence, with rare exceptions. In his youth al-Hākim had observed the parasitic behaviour of the courtiers of al-'Azīz. Later on, without the protection of his tutor, Bardjawan, he would have been killed by the Kutāmites. All his life he entertained hatred and contempt for the palace entourage. He liked to frequent Fustāṭ, its sūks and its humble quarters, and, unlike his father and his grandfather, he was in direct contact with the Sunnite artisans and the merchants. He became aware of the burden imposed on the real country by
the luxury and quickly made fortunes of the court and the barrier raised by
the civil and military dignitaries between the sovereign and his subjects.
He tried to remove this intermediary body by executing all those whom he
suspected of dishonesty or personal ambition. He failed in this undertaking
for it did not meet with the approval of the Sunnites of Fustat. Suffering
from the tensions imposed by absolute power, he tried to find a solution.
However it was too much for him: his reason was clouded by fits of
buffoonery and sanguinary, desperate madness.

His religious policy was inconsistent. He tried to win acceptance for the
Fatimid ritual in Fustat, then, in order to attract the Sunnites, he pressed
Christians and Jews into converting to Islam and erected mosques over
their places of worship. In 399/1009 he even had the Holy Sepulchre in
Jerusalem pulled down. Around the same time, from 396/1006 to 404/
1013, he adopted a tolerant attitude to the Sunnite ritual and appointed
Sunnite teachers to the dār al-ʿilm which he founded. Then he reverted
to the prohibition of the Sunnite rite and in 408/1017 he let some Persians
preach his divinity. This was a failure: the propagandists who had been
unable to find refuge were massacred and in the following year al-Hākim
saw the northern quarters of Fustat sacked by the black soldiers. Feeling
vaguely that he had failed in his attempt to found a direct monarchy on a
consensus of the Sunnite urban middle classes, without having offices and
the army acting as intermediaries, he lost interest in Fustat, took to walking
alone on the Mukattam and authorized Jews and Christians who so desired
to abjure the Islam he had imposed on them ten years earlier. His murder,
disguised as a disappearance, was instigated by his immediate entourage
who feared further purges. Some of the adepts of his divinity founded the
sect of the Druses in Syria.

The Arab 'tribes' had caused many disturbances during al-Hākim's
reign. Abū Raḵwa, an Umayyad, stirred up the Zanāta Berbers and the
Banū Kurra Arabs to revolt in Tripolitania. Having defeated several Fāti-
mid armies, he threatened Fustat in 396/1006. The civilian population then
showed its loyalty to al-Hākim: acts of treason were reported at the court
and in Berber forces. Abū Raḵwa was captured thanks to the support of the
Nubians and executed near Cairo. The Fatimid army had shown signs of
ineffectiveness and it had cost the treasury one million dinars to put it into
action. So when, in 402/1011, the Ṭayy chief of Palestine, Ibn al-Djarrāh,
installed the Hasanid ruler of Mecca as Caliph in Ramla, al-Hākim bought
over certain individuals close to Ibn al-Djarrāh and obtained the anti-
caliph's return to Mecca without having recourse to the army. Similarly,
the conquest of the town and province of Aleppo in 407/1016 was the result
of skilful diplomatic manoeuvres.

12. Dār al-ʿilm: house of learning, an institution for religious instruction and the propa-
gation of doctrine, endowed with a public library, founded by the Fatimid imām al-Hākim.
In certain respects it foreshadowed the Sunnite madrasas founded by the Seldjukids as
centres for the dissemination of the dominant religious ideology.
The great crisis of the fifth/eleventh century

Under the reign of al-Żāhir (411/1021–427/1036), and under that of his son, al-Mustansir (427/1036–487/1094), the policy followed was no longer determined by the will of the imām, but by the complex interaction of pressure groups. Right up until 454/1062 the situation of the empire steadily deteriorated under the effects of the weaknesses mentioned earlier. The army was made up of a variety of ethnic groups, often mutually hostile, of different status; Berber or Arab allies, ghulāms, black slaves and mercenaries. In peacetime it consumed the greater part of the public revenue. When it went into action the troops had also to be equipped with mounts and weapons and to receive additional pay. Being a soldier meant being assured of a state pension more than exercising the profession of arms. Edicts reiterated the injunction to strike off the state pension registers descendants of soldiers who no longer served the state, but they tended to be laxly applied in practice. As each ethnic group was administered by a special diwān and the funds at the disposal of the treasury did not increase in line with the number of persons entitled to pensions — the extended family of the imām, sharīfs, civil servants, troops — conflicts of interests constantly arose. Poorly paid, the soldiers pillaged the countryside and the suburbs. The army was no longer a factor in keeping order but was itself the basic cause of insecurity.

The towns were overcrowded: the cemeteries of the Karafa were peopled by populations driven from the countryside by Beduin incursions; and the elite left the outlying districts to seek security in the centre of Fustāṭ or Cairo. The merchants awaited the great Muslim feasts with anxiety, for the crowds took to pillaging the closed süks. Food shortages became more acute and more frequent. The city-dwellers grabbed the peasants' plough-oxen and also the land subject to inundation, where the notables of the regime raised huge herds, for the affluence of the towns increased the consumption of meat. Whenever a poor flood was anticipated, speculation pushed up the price of wheat. Al-Djardjarâl, vizier from 418/1027 to 437/1045, managed to put a stop to the price rises by imposing a single market for grain and encouraging price-cutting competition among the bakers, but all the high officials, including the imām, built up stocks and speculated.

A general destabilization of the population on the fringe of the desert also became apparent: the three great kabīlas of Syria – Ṭayy, Kalb and Kilāb – made an alliance in 415/1024 and emissaries contacted the tribes in the Delta and Tripolitania. A solidarity due to their circumstances overcame former mutual hostility; they wanted to obtain access to the cultivated lands for their herds and incidentally to pillage the towns. A climatic change – drier winters – may account for this. Up until 433/1041 the Fāṭimid general al-Dizbiri, though poorly supported by Cairo, held the tribes in check in Syria. In Upper Egypt advantage was taken of the
treason of the Zīrīd Ibn Bādis to send to Tripolitania and to Ifrīkiya the Banū Hilāl and the Banū Sulaym who were ravaging the Śaʿīd (442/1050).

In 451/1059 the Fāṭimids won their last great diplomatic victory: a Turkish general, Al-Basāsīrī, sent the Abbasid Caliph al-Ṯāʾīm into captivity and had the invocation pronounced in the mosques of Baghdad in favour of al-Mustānṣir. However, a few months later Tughril Bek, chief of the Seldjukids, the new Sunnite masters of the east, retook Baghdad and re-established al-Ṯāʾīm. The situation was reversed in 462/1070, when the Fāṭimid general Nāṣīr al-Dawla, in rebellion in Alexandria, recognized the Abbasid Caliphate and, in 464/1072, confining al-Mustānṣir in Cairo, called to the Seldjukids for aid. The Fāṭimid state might have come to an end on that occasion.

A great famine, which began in 454/1062 and was very serious from 457/1065 onwards, had starved to death a large part of the population of Egypt. Al-Mustānṣir sold the treasures of the dynasty and only survived by begging. The whole edifice, undermined by the parasites whom he had sheltered, was collapsing. In 466/1073 the imām called the Armenian Badr al-Djamālī, Governor of Palestine, to his assistance. This rough warrior came to Cairo in Dūmādah 466/January 1074 and executed the chief officers, dispersed the dissident armies and reconstituted around his Armenian troops a small and effective army. He received the title of vizier with full powers. He then went and put down the blacks who were ravaging Upper Egypt, returning in 468/1076 to defend Cairo which had been attacked by the Turk Atsiz, an ally of the Seldjukids. In 469/1077, he drove the Lawātā Berbers out of the Delta, selling 20 000 women of that tribe on the market. In the meantime he had passed through Syria where he was unable to retake Damascus but managed to consolidate Fāṭimid rule over the ports of Palestine. He had the towns of Syria protected by stone walls and it was at Badr’s command that the three monumental gates of Fāṭimid Cairo which still exist were built.

In order to enable the peasants to resume cultivation of their devastated fields he remitted three years’ taxation. He reformed the administrative districts and restructured the state and the army, thus extending by a century the life of the Fāṭimid regime. The texts of al-Kalkashandī and other authors describing the functioning of Fāṭimid institutions refer to the state born of Badr’s reform, which was very different from the first Fāṭimid state.

The sixth/twelfth century: death throes of the Fāṭimid regime

Following the 454/1062–468/1076 crisis, the Fāṭimid empire was dead. The invocation on behalf of al-Mustānṣir was no longer pronounced either in Ifrīkiya, or in Mecca, or in Aleppo, or in Damascus. Egypt, reorganized around the Nile Valley, was recovering from its wounds. Alexandria was regaining its prosperity through trade with Italy, while Kūs, the prefecture of Upper Egypt, was distributing black slaves from Nubia and spices from
India. In 487/1094 Badr died, and al-Mustansir’s death followed. Badr’s son, al-Afdal, proclaimed al-Mustansir’s young son, al-Hasan, as Caliph and immured his elder brother Nizār. The master of the Ismā’ili da’wa in Seldjukid territory, Ḥasan b. al-Ṣabbāḥ, recognized Nizār as imām; his movement, that of the assassins, which, like the Druse movement, developed solely outside Egypt, put an end to the traditional Fāṭimid da’wa.¹³

Al-Mustansir had reigned for almost three-quarters of a century. In the period, not much longer, that elapsed before the dynasty died out, six caliphs succeeded one another. Not one exercised power in reality; not one chose his successor. Authority was in the hands of the military viziers: some of them conquered power at the point of the sword, some inherited it. Some of them were remarkable—as, for instance, Ṭalā‘ī’ b. Ruzzīk—others were nothing but upstart brigands. In an Egypt in which the teaching of the Fāṭimid doctrine had apparently disappeared, they flaunted various religious convictions. Al-Afdal Kutayfāt, who was Badr’s grandson, established Twelver Imamism and installed four kādis of four rites. Rīḍwān was a Sunnite and opened a Shāfi‘ite madrasa in Alexandria. The people appeared to be indifferent to the coloration of Islam that held power; attachment to the dynasty was motivated only by pride in an Islamic power the centre of which was on Egyptian soil. Only the presence of a non-Muslim vizier, Bahrām, bearing the title of ‘Sword of Islam’ was not well received.

¹³. Da’wa: designates both some particular Shi‘ite doctrine, frequently Ismā‘ili or Fāṭimid, spread by clandestine or semi-clandestine missionaries, and the various resources made available to the latter for propaganda purposes.
Then, three years after Badr’s death, the Franks entered Muslim territory, overthrew the Seldjukids and, in 492/1099, took Jerusalem. They defeated the Fāṭimids at Askalon. There things rested for many years, apart from a few skirmishes. There was no active complicity between Franks and Fāṭimids, but rather a certain nonchalance on the part of the latter, which is readily understandable. In the fourth/tenth century the Fāṭimid state’s resources had been derived from the levying of tribute in metallic currency and from the grain trade. It had had to control extensive territories and hold the Syrian Bekā‘a and Ḥawrān. In the sixth/twelfth century the price of grain had dropped after the demographic disasters of the fifth/eleventh century and also no doubt owing to the extension of lands under cultivation following another climatic change in Syria. Gold, which was rarer in Syria, circulated mainly between India and the West. So the Fāṭimids had only to hold the Nile Valley and the trading posts on the Palestine seaboard, frequented, like Alexandria, by Italian merchants. The army was grouped in the south of Palestine and in Egypt, ready to encounter the Seldjukids, who wanted to restore Sunnism in Cairo. For the Fāṭimids, the presence of the Crusaders in Syria—raising a barrier between the Seldjukids and Egypt and diverting traffic from the Red Sea to the Nile Valley—had its uses. Now, until 549/1154, when Nūr al-Dīn was installed in Damascus, there had been no sign of any Muslim solidarity for the purpose of driving the Franks out of Syria. Egypt, which suffered merely moral injury as a result of their presence, felt no more concerned than the other Muslim states.

Nūr-al-Dīn, relying on a powerful army, undertook the reconquest of Syria. The fragile Fāṭimid state, with its army divided into rival ethnic groups, had to choose between a policy of support for the counter-Crusade—a policy that exposed it to attack by the Franks—and an appeal to the latter against Nūr al-Dīn, who wanted to take over the Seldjukids’ plan to restore Sunnism. The parties disputing power in Cairo chose in turn one or the other of these two alternatives, sometimes both at once, hoping to keep the situation in hand. They hastened the decadence of the state.

In 548/1153 the Crusaders abandoned their neutrality with regard to Palestine and seized Askalon. The installation of Nūr al-Dīn in central Syria prompted them to seek compensation in Egypt. The first concern of the Fāṭimid viziers, who were often former governors of Küs, was the protection of the great southern Red Sea route to Alexandria via Upper Egypt. They would have been ready to pay Nūr al-Dīn large amounts in gold dinars for relieving them of the necessity of defending the eastern frontier. However, Ṭalā‘i‘ b. Ruzzik launched two expeditions in Frankish Palestine. He was victorious but obtained no lasting result, for Nūr al-Dīn had remained inactive. In 556/1161 the Franks launched an offensive against Egypt. They were to launch four more, some in response to appeals from the Cairo viziers, in the period up to 564/1169. It was only in 558/1163 that they came up against troops sent by Nūr al-Dīn and commanded by
Shirkūh and the latter's nephew, Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn. As a result of broken promises, sudden changes of alliance and betrayal on the part of the vizier Ibn Sallār and the Caliph al-'Ādīd, these military actions came to nought. So in 564/1169 Shirkūh took the Fātimid vizier's office for himself. He died shortly afterwards and was replaced by Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn.

The last Fātimid vizier was therefore a Sunnite Kurd general, vassal of the Prince of Damascus, the Sunnite Turk Nūr al-Dīn, whose name was mentioned in the invocation, following that of the imām, al-'Ādīd. This was an intolerable situation for the imām, who instructed Djawhar, a eunuch, to assassinate Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn. When the latter heard of it he had Djawhar executed. The black guard of Cairo mutinied. A very hard struggle ensued and al-'Ādīd had to disavow the black soldiers who laid down their lives for him. The guard was massacred. Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn, to whom the Fātimid Caliphate's fiction was of use, refused to put a stop to it despite the reprimands of Nūr al-Dīn. However, in 566/1171 a Persian publicly pronounced the khutba on behalf of the Abbasid Caliph and so the Fātimid Imāmate of Egypt came to an end without there being any need for removing al-'Ādīd. At that point the latter obligingly died a natural death. A regime that had lived for two centuries finally left the political scene without any display of emotion on the part of the population of Cairo.

Islamic monuments in Egypt built before 566/1171

Most of the beautiful monuments of Arab architecture that can be seen by visitors to Cairo date from the Ayyubid and Mamluk periods. In old Cairo and in the province of Egypt, apart from a few exceptions at Luxor, Kūs and Alexandria, the remnants of medieval architecture dating to the periods before the Crusades are in general Christian. However, the first five centuries of the Arab presence in Egypt have left some buildings to posterity. These are few in number, and have often been substantially rebuilt or altered. They are impressive, however, because of their scale, their style and the spiritual power that they have possessed since their first construction or have acquired in the course of history.

Four major mosques were founded by or on behalf of four prestigious rulers of Egypt. The great mosque of Fustāṭ was built close by the Nile by the governor, 'Āmr ibn al-'Āṣ in 20-1/641-2. Extended, altered and modernized on several occasions, it retains no visible traces of its original form. It is to be hoped that the Egyptian antiquities department, which conducted important investigations of the mosque site between 1970 and 1975 that threw light on the chronology of successive extensions, will publish the reports and photographs to which we can turn for further information.

In 265/879, Aḥmad ibn Tūlūn established the great mosque that bears his name on the high ground of al-Katā'i' to the north-east of Fustāṭ (Plate 7.1). Since it was never completely adopted by the population, it is much
better-conserved and much less transformed than many other buildings of this period. In the heart of an animated and bustling city, it maintains a vast preserve of silence and devotion in an architectural framework that is austerely beautiful, severe and rigorous. The British historian, K. A. C. Cresswell has analysed this vast architectural ensemble; around an almost square courtyard with sides of 92 m open off four elegant and lofty porticoes. These incorporate five rows of pillars on the _kibla_ side and two rows on the other three sides. Miṣr-Fuṣṭāt’s vocation as one of the temporal and spiritual capitals of the Islamic world was affirmed for the first time with the foundation by a pious Turkish warrior of this admirable monument constructed in burnt brick, and profoundly impregnated with Asiatic influences.

When Djawhar founded Cairo in 359/970 for his master, al-Mu‘izz, he established a great mosque in the heart of the capital, to the north of al-Kaṭā’ī’. To this day it is known worldwide as al-Azhar. The animation that it manifests contrasts with the silence and solitude that entrances the visitor to the Ibn Tülün mosque. Cairo was founded by Africans; the acculturation of Africa to Islam was the achievement of the teaching provided by al-Azhar. The success of this institution as the privileged source for the diffusion of Muslim knowledge to both Arab and non-Arab peoples is sufficient indication that the building must have been extended on several occasions; indeed only the courtyard shows evidence of the original Fāṭimid plan. The whole history of Egypt and of its role beyond its frontiers is evident in this ensemble of buildings. The foundation of Cairo was indeed the beginning of a great adventure.

In 400/1010 al-Ḥākim established a great mosque on the northern outskirts of the city of Cairo. The sites of the four mosques we have described are evidence of the regular translation of the centre of gravity of the successive capitals of Egypt towards the north-north-east over the first three and a half centuries of the Islamic era. The true centre had, however, essentially been fixed by Djawhar, and al-Ḥākim was aware of this fact. His mosque never knew the success enjoyed by al-Azhar and, henceforth, it was above all either the city of Cairo or the area between it and Fuṣṭāt that received the principal buildings constructed for the use of the living by the Ayyubid and Mamluk princes. Long abandoned, the al-Ḥākim mosque was later restored for the use of the Ismā‘īlites.

The grand vizier Badr al-Djamāli, an Armenian by origin, introduced building in stone to Cairo, where bricks had previously been used. He had the city walls of the capital reconstructed, and had monumental gateways erected. Three of these may still be admired: Bāb Zuwayla, to the south of the great axis of the Fāṭimid town; Bāb al-Futūḥ, to the north of this same axis; and Bāb al-Naṣr (Plate 7.5), to the north-east. The architectural conception behind these was skilful, seeking at the same time a majestic appearance and military effectiveness. Their realization was perfect thanks to careful stereotomy. Indeed, the heritage of the Byzantine stonemasons
who had built many churches in Syria and Asia Minor in the sixth century
had been preserved intact by the Armenians in their remote mountains. In
the sixth/twelfth century, it was diffused once again across the whole of the
Frankish and Muslim east.

Four smaller mosques date from the second Fāṭimid period. On the
Moḥattam hill, the al-Djuyūshī mosque-martyry, founded in 478/1085,
seems to watch over the destiny of the dead and the living of the great city;
its style, unusual in Egypt, once again evokes there the churches of Armenia (Plate 7.6). In 519/1125 the small al-Akmar mosque was built on the principal artery of Cairo, between the al-Ḥākim and al-Azhar mosque. Its façade in carved stone and its ornate main entrance announce a stylistic revolution in religious buildings. The dummy mausoleum dedicated to Sayyida Ruḵayya, built around 527/1133 in the cemeteries to the southeast of the Ibn Ṭūlūn mosque, attests to the desire of the Fāṭimid rulers to attract to Cairo all the pilgrims devoted to the Holy Family of Islam. It was with the same political and religious intention that in 555/1160 the vizier Sāliḥ Ṭalāʾiʿ had the mosque that bears his name built to the south of the Bāb Zuwayla. Its beautiful façade, which takes up and develops certain elements of the al-Akmar mosque, modifying them to take account of the tastes of the day, is evidence of the rapid progress of religious architecture in the sixth/twelfth century and foreshadows the full blossoming of the art under the Ayyubids and Mamluks.

Conclusion

In 566/1171, more than five centuries after the conquest of Egypt by the Arabs, this land was the richest in the East. The ceramics, the glassware, the fabrics and the objects of metal and wood that came out of its workshops attained unparalleled perfection. Agriculture retained the characteristics it had acquired over several millennia, while integrating new crops that had come from Asia. Architecture, both religious and military, had
produced powerful monuments; the following centuries were to be even more fruitful. A literature in Arabic was steadily developing and gradually losing its provincial character. The Iraqis and Syrians residing in the capital played an important role, but the quality of the historical works and of the descriptions of the features of the land of Egypt gave this literature its originality. Here again though, the richest works were to be written later.

Yet acculturation to Islam had been neither quick nor complete. A large proportion of the people, peasants of Upper Egypt or artisans of the provincial towns, had remained Christian. As for the Sunnites of Fustat, they displayed indifference to the struggles for power that set against each other military chiefs — often risen from slavery — who were at the head of troops consisting of an admixture of different ethnic groups. An Egyptian personality, about which only a few texts tell us anything, was evolving slowly, in contrast with the rapid development of Fustat and Cairo. Yet, in the following centuries the Islam of Africa was guided by the scholars and the šūfīs of Egypt.

It is time that historians brought together the elements that might make it possible to trace the rise of this deep river, so that the history of Egypt might not remain only that of its successive masters.
Early relations with Muslim Egypt

The emergence of a powerful Christian kingdom to the south of the First Cataract on the Nile\(^1\) created favourable development prospects for the Nubian population. Two factors made it possible for the kingdom to attain economic prosperity. The first was the uniting of the northern kingdom of Nobadia (Arabic, Nūba), having its capital at Faras, with the central kingdom of Makuria (Arabic, Muḵurra), with its capital at Old Dongola (Arabic, Dünkūla al-ʻAdjūz), and in conjunction with this, the creation of a strong central government. The second factor was the propitious settlement of relations with neighbouring Egypt by the signing of a treaty known as the \textit{bakt} following the Arab invasion of Dongola led by 'Abdallāh ibn Abī Šarḥ in 651. Both of these facts in the history of Nubia are known mainly from reports by Arab historians and travellers, and have hitherto been only partly verified by archaeological investigations. So let us deal with these factors in detail.\(^2\)

It appears that at the time of the Arab invasion, northern and central Nubia were united under King Qalidurut of Dongola. Thus 'Abdallāh ibn Abī Šarḥ signed only one treaty – that in Dongola – paying no attention to Nobadia with whom the settlement of a correct relationship might seem to have been more important, since that country directly adjoined Egypt. The \textit{bakt} was a special form of treaty, having no precedence in the Muslim world. It was really a truce or pact of non-aggression. The complete text of this agreement has been preserved in the \textit{Khīṭāt} of al-Maḳrīzī.\(^3\) The text

---

contains definitions of the following matters: the Arabs should not attack Nubia, under the terms of the agreement; and citizens of both countries should enjoy the right of free passage through the country in question as travellers but not as settlers, and under such conditions the authorities would be responsible for the safety of the other country’s citizens. It also contained a clause providing for the extradiction of fugitives from one country to the other. The Nubians were to be responsible for the upkeep of the mosque built in Old Dongola to cater for visiting Muslims. Nubia also had imposed on her an annual tribute of 360 slaves, to be supplied to the Governor of Aswān. Another source (‘Alī Khalīfa Ḥumayd b. Hishām al-Buḥayrī) recalls that in exchange for those slaves, the Arabs should supply 1300 ardeb of wheat, 1300 kanīr of wine and certain defined quantities of linen and cloth etc. Thus this treaty had some qualities of a trade agreement. In principle the truce was upheld throughout the next five centuries of Christian civilization in Nubia, and in its initial phase was crucial for maintaining peace and possibilities for national development at a time when Arab armies occupied large areas of North Africa and Spain and were threatening Byzantium.

With regard to the date when the two Nubian kingdoms were united, a hypothesis should still be mentioned that ascribes unification to the activities of King Merkurios, who was crowned in the year 697, which date can be established thanks to foundation inscriptions of Bishop Paulos concerning the cathedral in Faras, dated to 707, and referring to the eleventh year of the reign of that king. It appears that after the unification of his kingdom King Merkurios directed his attention principally towards the question of religious unity throughout Nubia, and at the beginning of the second/eighth century concerned himself with the subordination of the Nubian Church to the Monophysite patriarchate in Alexandria.

Both the unification of the land and later of the religion, i.e. the creation of a common plane embracing – under the auspices of the Monophysite Church from Egypt – the united kingdom of Nubia, the southern kingdom of Alodia (about which we know very little from this period), and including Ethiopia, undoubtedly created favourable conditions for the development of Nubia. The lack of any real threat from the Arabs and the possibility of carrying on trade with Egypt and maintaining contacts with Byzantium or at least with Jerusalem which was the goal of pilgrimages, led to the development of a distinctive Nubian culture in the subsequent period. This

5. For its suggested capacity cf. L. Török, 1978, p. 301, n. 3.
could be seen in the growth and maturity of a literate civilization with its architecture and cultural traditions connected as much with the Coptic tradition as with the Byzantine, the latter being particularly influential as a source for models of state administration and court organization as well as in building construction and the arts and crafts.

Thus the end of the eighth century saw Nubia moving into its period of prosperity, which lasted up to the beginning of the second half of the twelfth century and was also conditioned by a favourable economic situation. One of the factors essential for this was the relatively high level of the waters of the Nile, which gave Nubian agriculture a chance to develop.8

Our knowledge of political events in this period is largely drawn from Arab sources and chiefly concerns the united kingdom of Nubia. Her borders stretched from al-Ḳasr in the north (a few kilometres to the south of Aswān) south to the area between the Fifth and Sixth Cataracts (al-Abwāb), where it encountered the northern border of Alodia (Arabic, 'Alwa) with its capital at Soba, in the vicinity of modern-day Khartoum.

We know next to nothing of Alodia. An account by Ibn Sālim al-Aswānī, quoted by al-Maḳrizī,9 informs us that Soba possessed magnificent buildings and gardens as well as churches overflowing with gold. It is also reported that the king of 'Alwa was mightier than the ruler of Makuria, had a formidable army and ruled over a land that was far more fertile. Recent excavations done in Soba by the Expedition of the British Institute for Eastern Africa have come close to verifying this view about the city's munificence.10 A complex of churches and episcopal buildings of red brick have recently come to light. But this is still a very small part of the entire picture.

There are not even direct data about the unification of Alodia with Makuria, though in the mid-tenth century both courts were united by blood relationships. Ibn Ḥawkāl reported on this when he journeyed through Alodia about 945–50 and quotes the kings Stephanos, son of Georgios (II, King of Nubia) and his predecessor Eusebios.11 In the mid-eighth century, King Kyriakos was described by the Coptic biographer Deacon Ioannes as being the ruler of the whole kingdom of Nubia, 'right as far as the southern end of the earth ...'12 It seems, however, that judging by later reports, Alodia may have only temporarily been included within the united kingdom of Nubia, being for almost the entire period of Christianity in Nubia a separate state entity.


196
FIG. 8.1 Christian Nubia
East and west of the Nile

The eastern border of the kingdom of Nubia adjoined lands occupied by the Bêdja tribes. From the eighth to the tenth century, they were an important factor in shaping political relations in this part of the world. They had always constituted something of a threat to southern Egypt, which had been in danger from raids on the part of the earlier Blemmyes, a nomadic Bêdja people from the Eastern Desert.

By the beginning of the third/ninth century, most of the Bêdja peoples living in the Red Sea Hills area were still 'pagans', though some had nominally accepted the Christian faith, while still others - particularly in the north - seem to have been under the strong influence of Islam. In the year 831, as a result of continual border disputes, the Caliph, al-Mu'tasim sent a punitive expedition against the Bêdja. After suffering defeat, their leader Kânün ibn 'Abd al-'Azîz was forced to recognize the suzerainty of the Caliph. At that point a kind of treaty was negotiated and although it contained some clauses identical to those of the bakt its meaning was altogether different. The Bêdja were to be subject to an annual tribute, with no guarantee on the part of the Arabs. The latter received the right to settle on Bêdja lands, whose ruler now found himself in the position of a vassal.13

The treaty did not put an end to hostilities, but rather created a situation conducive to further conflict. The lands occupied by these nomadic kabiñes abounded in gold mines (particularly in the Wâdî al-'Allâkî area) and Arab penetration into these lands grew in strength. Open war broke out again in the mid-ninth century, when the erstwhile leader of the Bêdja, 'Alî Bâbâ had to submit in the face of overwhelming Arab forces under the leadership of Muhammad al-Kummi. According to certain Arab sources, the tribute by now amounted to approximately 2400 gm of gold annually.14

It was natural that the Bêdja should seek the protection of the Nubians since they were under constant threat. There are conflicting Arab reports on this matter, but there seems no doubt that Nubian forces were in some way involved in the above-mentioned battles. Ibn Ḥawkal even reported that 'Alî Bâbâ and the Nubian King Yurkî (Georgios) were both taken prisoner and brought before the Caliph al-Mutawakkil in Baghdad.15 We shall return to the matter of the sojourn of King Georgios in Baghdad below. In any case, even during the period of its greatest prosperity, the kingdom of Nubia witnessed constant hostilities along the Red Sea, beyond Nubia’s eastern borders.

Relations with those kabiñes living to the west of the Nile Valley followed a different trend. Though we have little information on this matter,

15. G. Vantini, 1975, p. 158, according to writings of Ibn Ḥawkal (d. 988).
it seems from reports by Ibn Ḥawkāl that in a land many days' journey from the valley over the sandy desert, there lived some pastoralists called the Djährīliyyūn (Highlanders) and the Ahadiyyūn, whom we may place in southern (Nuba Mountains) and northern Kordofān. The latter folk were supposed to have practised Christianity. It has already been proved that there existed obvious linguistic links between certain groups in the Nuba Mountains (Dair, Dilling) and Dārfūr (Birgid, Midob, Tundjur) and those speaking the Nubian dialects in the Nile Valley, which is evidence of contacts or migration. Contacts between the Nubian kingdom and that part of the Sudan have been partially confirmed archaeologically, for example in the finding of Christian pottery of the Nubian Classic Period at ‘Ayn Farah (northern Dārfūr) and of a slightly later type at Koro Toro in Chad. According to Ibn Ḥawkāl, both of the above-mentioned peoples bore allegiance to the king of Makuria or the king of Alodia.

It cannot be ruled out that Kordofān and Dārfūr were actually the source of the slaves which Nubia was obliged to supply to Egypt in accordance with the terms of the bakt. We do not know to what extent slave-dealing was a state enterprise rather than an economic mainstay, nor do we know to what extent these western areas of the present-day Sudan republic were colonized by the Nubians.

Dongola, Faras and other towns

Old Dongola, situated on the eastern bank of the Nile, halfway between the Third and Fourth Cataracts was the capital of the united kingdom of Nubia. The development of this town may be traced from the findings of excavations carried out there since 1964 by the Polish expedition. The early eleventh-century town of Dongola was described by Abū Šāliḥ in the following way: 'Here is the throne of the King. It is a large city on the banks of the blessed Nile, and contains many churches and large houses and wide streets. The King's house is lofty with several domes built of red-brick and resembles the buildings in Iraq... The results of excavations seem to confirm this account to the letter. At the present time the town

consists of a complex of ruins extending over an area of 35 ha, in which the remains of the earlier buildings are concealed under the structures of the Muslim period (ninth/thirteenth to fifteenth/nineteenth centuries). The central part of the town which is located on a rocky outcrop was once surrounded by massive walls. To the north extends the Christian city including the complex of churches discovered by the Polish archaeologists (which makes it possible to completely revalue the theories hitherto held about sacral architecture in Nubia, as will be described below). Further northwards extend a second/eighth- to third/ninth-century housing complex. The houses discovered here differ in their hitherto unencountered spatial layout as well as their functional programme (water supply installation, bathroom with heating system) and interiors decorated with murals.

The turn of the eighth century is taken as the date of the monumental two-storeyed royal building, situated on a rocky spur to the east of the centre of the town. Standing almost 11 m tall, this building contained the king's Throne Hall on its representative storey, decorated once with murals (Fig. 8.2), (for that reason it had been mistaken for a church). In 1317 it was converted by Sayf al-Dīn 'Abdallāh into a mosque, which was used for religious purposes until the year 1969. The building itself had been destroyed and rebuilt many times and its external appearance has changed over the ages (Plate 8.1); it is however the only Christian Throne Hall surviving intact in all the areas which had once been under the cultural influences of Byzantium, and may have been modelled on the one which used to be in the Great Palace in Constantinople and is known only from descriptions.  

The other important sites in what was formerly Makuria have not yet been investigated. During this period an important centre was quite possibly the Island of Sai, the seat of one of the bishoprics. We have, however, more precise data from the northern part of the realm (the former Nobadia, also known in the sources as the province of Maris) obtained during the great Unesco campaign to save the monuments of Nubia from being flooded by the waters of the Nubian Lake in the 1961-6 period.

Faras, also investigated at that time by the Polish team with its

25. For a bibliographical summary of the Unesco campaign see L.–A. Christophe, 1977; for recent discoveries and a new bibliography on sites excavated during the Nubian campaign, see J. Leclant, 1958–74; 1975–83; see also W. Y. Adams, 1966; 1977, pp. 81–90; F. Hinkel, 1978; for a catalogue of all archaeological sites in the territory of the Sudan see F. Hinkel, 1977–
FIG. 8.2 The mosque building in Old Dongola in its present state. Top: plan of the upper storey with the king’s throne hall, converted to a mosque in 1317. Bottom: the east-west section of the building (elaborated by St Medeksza).

PLATE 8.1 The royal building in Old Dongola, converted to a mosque in 1317.
splendid cathedral, churches, palaces and monasteries, placed in the central point of the town and surrounded by the older walls, retained its role as the religious centre. This was now reinforced by the raising of Faras to the status of Metropolitan Bishopric with the assumption of the episcopate by a Nubian, Kyros (866–902) whose splendid portrait decorates the walls of the Faras Cathedral (Plate 8.2). The Metropolitan Bishop resided in Faras until the end of the tenth century, the last to bear that title being Petros I (974–99).

Faras probably also remained a centre of administration, the seat of the eparch, the royal administrator of the northern part of the kingdom, whose duties included not only control over the province, but also responsibility for contacts between the kingdom and Egypt. He was also the chief treasurer. The Nubian administration, both royal and local in Nobadia, maintained various court functionaries. Their Greek titles, known from the Byzantine period in Egypt and North Africa, were adopted in Nubia, but their functions were not necessarily the same. Such titles as domestikos, protodomestikos, meizon, protomeizoteros, nauarchos, primikerios and others can be found alongside many others, attested exclusively in the Old Nubian language.

According to some scholars, the residence of the eparch was now transferred to the stronghold of Kasr Ibrîm; the only archaeological site that has survived above the waters of the Nubian Lake, because it is located on a high rock. It is being investigated systematically by expeditions of the Egypt Exploration Society. Apart from the cathedral, and the remains of its urban architecture, Kasr Ibrim has provided us with a wealth of material discoveries and several hundred fragments of manuscript finds, among them ecclesiastical and literary writings, letters and documents.

Also of great importance was the vast town of Gebel Adda, about a dozen kilometres to the north of Faras on the eastern bank of the Nile. These towns were quite possibly inhabited by several thousand residents, while other smaller centres such as Kurta, Kalâbsha, Sabagura, Ikhmindi or Shaykh Dâwûd had usually been fortified in the previous period and

30. Cf. J. M. Plumley, 1975a, p. 106; another opinion is expressed by W. Y. Adams, 1982, p. 29. There is no doubt, however, that Kasr Ibrîm was the eparch's residence in the Late Christian period.
PLATE 8.2 Portrait of Kyros, the Bishop of Faras (866–902): a mural from Faras Cathedral
contained several hundred people each.\textsuperscript{33} Still smaller centres — better known from excavations — such as Tamit, Arminna (Ermenne), Meynarti, Debeyra West (Fig. 8.3), or 'Abdallah Nirki\textsuperscript{34} have provided important information about daily life in Nubia in the Classic Christian Period. There are also typical monastic centres here like Kasr al-Wizz (Fig. 8.4), ar-Ramal in northern Nubia or al-Ghazâli in Makuria, in the desert not far from today’s Merâwe.\textsuperscript{35}

**Economic and social conditions**

Despite the wealth of archaeological remains, we know very little about the features of the Nubian civilization of the period under discussion that were most vital for the population. Settlements investigated, such as Debeyra West or Arminna, present a picture of a prosperous and at the same time surprisingly free and egalitarian society, where differences in social status were not necessarily reflected in material culture.\textsuperscript{36} Small-scale farming continued to provide the basis of subsistence. Unlike in Egypt, farmers produced several crops a year. The chief crops cultivated were barley and millet. Dates were probably also of considerable economic importance. The area of land under cultivation was now clearly expanded, especially on the islands of the Second Cataract and in Batn al-Ḥadjar.\textsuperscript{37} The farmers had been keeping cattle, sheep, donkeys and chickens while now their livestock also included pigs.

Most of the land was in small holdings, but in practice Nubians were tenant farmers, since according to law all land was owned by the king.\textsuperscript{38} Taxation in Nubia was based on land tax (and possibly other taxes) and the clergy most probably served as tax-collectors.\textsuperscript{39} Presumably Nubian monasteries were also endowed with landed estates for their support.

The villages and small towns were largely self-sufficient and Nubian craftsmen perhaps supplied most of the articles in daily use. Among the articles produced in great quantities during this period, the most remarkable were finely decorated pottery, superior to and not copies of contem-
FIG. 8.3 Plan of the Christian site of Debeyra West (24-R-8). Black areas indicate early buildings (after P. Shinnie, 1975).

FIG. 8.4 Plan of Kasr al-Wizz, a Nubian monastic complex (after P. M. Gartkiewicz, 1982a)
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Temporary Egyptian wares. The end of the eighth century saw the development of a new style in ceramics, known as Classic Christian. This introduced a wealth of new forms (all kinds of vases, bowls and jars), decorated with bright colours and elaborate floral patterns and zoomorphic motifs. Here one may perceive Byzantine or even Persian influence. Others consider that some of the wreaths and interlocking geometric figures in their decoration were copied from motifs used in contemporary Coptic manuscript decoration. The Classic Christian artistic canon shows much more resemblance to that of Meroitic times than it does to anything in the intervening five centuries. The sublime development of local production may have resulted from external causes. At some time during the second/eighth and early third/ninth centuries there was a marked decrease in the amount of Egyptian pottery imported to Nubia, especially of amphorae (and the wine they contained) produced in the Coptic monasteries of Upper Egypt. The accession to the throne of the Abbasid dynasty in Baghdad resulted in an increase in the persecution of the Copts and in restrictions which were placed on Egyptian monasteries.

One of the greatest known Nubian potteries was the factory at Faras. There must have been in Old Dongola itself or its vicinity some major production centre, which somewhat modified the style of decoration. Examples of similar pottery have also been encountered in the monastery at al-Ghazālī, to the south of the Fourth Cataract. Many of the local centres were producing crockery such as storage jars and cooking-pots or kadūs, a special vessel used on the sākiya (or water-wheel). The Classic Christian pottery produced during the third/ninth and fourth/tenth centuries was sufficient to satisfy completely the domestic needs of the country. It was only in the eleventh century that imported ceramics from Egypt (the so-called Aswān ware) began to appear alongside local products, as did glazed Arabic pottery which had never been copied in Nubia.

Another important industry of the Classic Christian period was weaving. The main products were made from wool or camel-hair by contrast with weaving in Egypt, where flax was predominant. Nubian woollen robes

were mostly decorated with alternating stripes in bright colours or occasionally in a chequered design. Such robes have many analogies among those depicted in Nubian mural painting, such as at Faras and other sites. Judging from the finds, one of the greatest weaving centres was undoubtedly Kasr Ibrim.

Nubian craftsmen also manufactured iron implements (hoes, knives, etc.) as well as leather products and all kinds of matting, basketry and artistic plaited goods made from palm-fibre (sandals, mats and tabak plates), the tradition for producing which has been maintained until the present date.

Apart from these local products the material culture of the period discussed indicates the use of many articles of foreign origin. In addition to items mentioned in the bakt treaty (wheat, barley, wine, but also linen, cloth and ready-made garments), the archaeological evidence demonstrates that Nubia imported from Egypt all sorts of glass vessels. However, the great diversity of forms and decorative technique—marvering, cut decoration, appliqués, painting—found on the vessels discovered, indicates that these were not of one origin. Among the liturgical vessels found in the cathedral of Faras was a beautiful chalice of dark-purple glass (Plate 8.3).

Trade in Nubia was largely carried out through the system of barter. There was no monetary system, with the exception of the northern parts of Nubia where Egyptian coins were used in trading with the Arabs. Thus in foreign trade Nubia was compelled to pay with money but internal financial dealings were forbidden as is shown by the strict border (in reality a customs frontier) established in Upper Maṣṣ (‘Akāsha) in the Baṭn al-Ḥadjar area, which separated the foreign trade zone from the heart of the country, where foreign trade was under the strict control of the king. Nubia’s exports consisted mainly of slaves but the traditional products, such as gold, ivory and skins must have played no mean role in foreign trade. The Dongola region must have also been in contact through Kordofān and Darfūr with merchants operating trade routes in the countries of the Central and Western Sudan of West Africa.

Political history from the third/ninth century on

The best sources of information on the political events of this period are the writings of Arab authors: al-Ya’kūbī, al-Ṭabarī, ibn Ḥawkal and Ibn Sālim al-Aswānī (the last two travelled in Nubia in person). There are also Christian sources: the writings of Severus, the Bishop of Ashmuneyn and those of Abū Ṣāliḥ the Armenian (both drew from Coptic documents) and


Michael the Syrian, who utilized the Chronicle of Dionisius, the Patriarch of Antioch. 51

In the third decade of the third/ninth century Nubia took advantage of the unstable situation in Egypt caused by warfare over the succession to

Caliph Hārūn al-Rashid and stopped paying the baḵt. As soon as Ibrāhīm (al-Mu'taṣīm) took over the Caliphate in 833, his actions to restore order included a letter sent to Zacharia, the King of Dongola requesting not only a resumption of annual tribute but also the repayment of all arrears. The Nubian king, who was unable to meet the demand, decided that his son Georgios, the one who subsequently — perhaps in 856\(^5\) — became king of Nubia, should go to Baghdad to negotiate with the Caliph and at the same time to get an opinion of the military strength of the Abbasids.\(^5\) Georgios was crowned as successor to the Nubian throne before he left for Baghdad in the summer of 835, accompanied by bishops and members of his court. His journey to meet the Caliph was an unprecedented event and a great political success for the Christian Nubian kingdom and was to make it widely known in the Near East. The embassy concluded a bilateral treaty revising the terms of the baḵt which was now declared payable once every three years. The arrears were cancelled. Georgios received abundant gifts from al-Mu'taṣīm and returned to Dongola sometime in 837, accompanied this time by the Alexandrian Patriarch Joseph for part of the journey home.

The story is known from many sources and there are also many confusions in the versions. Some sources say that the treaty was signed in Cairo sometime before 833, and it is not impossible that Georgios travelled to Baghdad twice, the other time under less happy circumstances — as a prisoner — together with the Bëdja king, 'Alī Bābā in 852, but the source of this information is ambiguous.\(^5\)

From the time of the long reign of Georgios I we have a detailed description of events that occurred in the seventh decade of the ninth century. This concerns the expedition into the heart of Nubia of the Arab gold prospector and theologian Abu 'Abd al-Rahmān al-'Umarī who, with his private army, succeeded in taking over for a time some of the gold mines near Abū Ḥāmād. King Georgios sent his troops under the command of his nephew Niuty to fight the invader. After several armed encounters with the forces of al-'Umarī, Niuty concluded an agreement with him. Then Georgios, treating Niuty as a traitor, sent first his eldest son and, later, Zacharia, the younger one, against Niuty. Zacharia made an alliance with al-'Umarī and then used some men of his to kill Niuty by a trick. Then Zacharia turned against al-'Umarī and forced him to withdraw northwards. There, in the Bëdja country al-'Umarī again got involved in fighting and local conflicts and was eventually treacherously killed by agents of Ibn Ṭūlūn.

The expedition of al-'Umarī was not an expression of official Egyptian policy towards Nubia, but it does clearly substantiate the fact that the Arabs were endeavouring to penetrate far into Nubia with the purpose no

---

\(^5\) S. Jakobielski, 1972, pp. 92–6. The date has been questioned by G. Vantini, 1981a, p. 112 where the year 839 is suggested.


doubt – as in the conflict with the Bédja – of ensuring the flow of gold from the south into Egypt. Al-Maqrīzī gave a detailed account of al-'Umarī's adventure, probably culled from earlier writings, and informs us about the Nubian kings and their dynastic customs.

Georgios I, whose longevity is attested by several sources, reigned in Nubia until 915. The date of his death can be deduced from an inscribed lintel bearing a Coptic dedication of the Church on the South Slope of the Kom in Faras, erected in 930 by Iesou, the Eparch in the fifteenth year of the reign of King Zacharia (III), Georgios's successor. As a matter of fact, Zacharia's claim to the Nubian throne did not arise from the fact that he was the son of Georgios but because he was at the same time the son of the king's sister's daughter, i.e. the sister of Niuty, who was the lawfully first in line to the throne. After the death of Niuty, Zacharia became the sole heir. Dynastic succession in Nubia depended exclusively on the endogamous principles of the matrilateral line, but because parallel-cousin marriage was commonly practised, it often happened that a son succeeded his father on the Nubian throne.

The above-mentioned Coptic inscription also refers to Mariam, the mother of the king, attesting also to one of the significant court titles 'Queen Mother', otherwise known later as nonnen in Old Nubian texts. Another Queen Mother, Martha, is represented under the protection of the Virgin Mary on one of the Faras murals dated to the beginning of the fifth/eleventh century. This designation not only shows the importance of the maternal line in the system of succession to the throne but it equally reflects, perhaps, an ancient tradition in Meroitic Nubia which accords a considerable role to the king's mother.

The fourth/tenth century in Nubia seems to have been a period of prosperity in the country, as was the second half of the previous century. This prosperity was apparently only disturbed by the great flood of the Nile, which led in some regions of Nobadia to the resettlement of the population. However, the Nubian state with its firm economic foundations succeeded in overcoming the difficulties. Historical events appear to indicate that the kingdom was a powerful one, and not only in the military sense.

In 956 Nubia was again at daggers drawn with Egypt. This time how-

55. In the publications of this text (S. Jakobielski, 1966b, pp. 107–9; 1972, pp. 110–13) an error was made in reading 'tenth' year instead of the correct 'fifteenth'. This led to establishing erroneously the date of death of Georgios I as 920 (the one commonly quoted) in place of the correct one: 915. Cf. S. Jakobielski, 1982b, p. 132, note 27.
ever, it was not the Arabs who were the aggressors, but the Nubians, who raided and plundered Aswān. An Egyptian punitive expedition very soon after got as far as Kasr Ibrīm, but this was a short-lived success. In 962 the Nubians occupied a large part of Upper Egypt as far as Akhmim. This incursion no doubt resulted from the prevailing situation in Egypt during the time of the last Sultans of Fustat, the Ikhshidids (936–68) and could have been intended to bring about the victory of the Fātimids in this country, with whom Nubia later retained good relations.

The Nubian occupation of Egypt did not cease with the coming into power of the Fātimid Caliphate in 969. Perhaps the frontiers of the occupied area were only redefined so that Edfu still remained within the frontiers of Nubia. This city was an important centre of Nubian culture until the middle of the fifth/eleventh century. This was also the time when the famous monastery of St Simeon near Aswān was rebuilt by the Nubians.

Most of our information for this period is based on the writings of Ibn Sālim al-Aswānī, who c. 969 was entrusted with a mission to the Nubian ruler Georgios II. The king accorded the Arab embassy a warm reception. However, as Nubia was then a powerful state, the king was in a position to refuse payment of tribute as stipulated by the bakt and conversion to Islam.

Religious developments

Intensive persecutions of the Copts again occurred in Egypt at the end of the tenth century, during the Caliphate of al-Ḥākim (996–1021). At first, Nubia did not intervene on behalf of the Egyptian Coptic Church, perhaps because of its political friendship with the Fātimids, or for some other reasons, but the Nubians did eventually open their frontiers to refugees from Egypt and a vast number immigrated into Nubia.

In the fourth/tenth century, the Church in Nubia played a significant role in the affairs of the country; this is confirmed by the fact that when the Arab embassy came to Dongola in the time of Georgios II, the ruler called a council composed of bishops to decide on the reply to be given to the Arabs. The king was later to act as an intermediary in purely ecclesiastical affairs as when he interceded on the request of the Ethiopian authorities...
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

with the Patriarch Philotheos (979–1003) concerning the nomination of an appropriate metropolitan for Ethiopia. This fact gives us proof of the concurrence between the interests of Church and State at that time. It also indicates the Church’s affinities with Monophysitism and the cordial relationship existing between Nubia and Ethiopia.

From among seven of the Nubian bishoprics known from Arab sources, five of them – Kurta, Kasr Ibrim, Faras, Sai and Dongola – have been confirmed by archaeological discoveries. The most complete data concerning the history of a bishopric has been established in the case of Faras where, thanks to the List of Bishops inscribed on one of the cathedral walls, tombstones and graffiti, it has been possible to establish an unbroken chronological sequence of the dignitaries of the Church in this diocese from the time of its founding in the first/seventh century up to 1175. As was already mentioned, five of the bishops of the third/ninth and fourth/tenth centuries bore the title of Metropolitan of Pachoras (i.e. Faras). Thanks to portraits of bishops preserved there in seventeen paintings, we know exactly what the Nubian bishops’ vestments looked like over the different historical periods. Graffiti in Faras, Sonkí Tino and Tamit may constitute a source of information about the ranks in the Church hierarchy.

The Monophysite character of the Nubian Church is attested by the numerous data concerning Faras and the other dioceses as regards the fourth/tenth century. However, the evidence from Faras suggests on the other hand that there was some variation in allegiance at the close of the fourth/tenth and the beginning of the fifth/eleventh century. In the years 997–9 we find two bishops simultaneously on the episcopal throne of Pachoras: Petros I (974–99) and Ioannes III (997–1005). A reasonable explanation could be that Ioannes represents a confession different to that of the Monophysite Petros, the Metropolitan of Faras, that is the Greek (or Melkite) faith. The situation is far from clear and the hypothesis put forward on the basis of the Faras evidence has caused vivid discussion among scholars and some doubts. Some historical facts are, however, worth mentioning here in support of the opinion that there was a Melkite take-over in the diocese. The episcopate of Ioannes comes just after the death of al-‘Aziz who openly favoured the Melkites in Egypt, his wife (or concubine) being of that confession. One of her brothers, Jeremías, was appointed by al-‘Aziz as the Patriarch of Jerusalem, the other, Arsenius,

Christian Nubia

became Melkite Patriarch of Egypt.\(^\text{70}\) It seems likely that the Melkites profited considerably from the leniency of the Caliph, and their efforts to reclaim some of the episcopal sees could have been at times successful. Two successors of Ioannes on the episcopal throne in Faras – Mariano\(s\) (1005–36) and Merkurios (1037–56) – were called in inscriptions ‘his sons’. This expression can be understood to mean that they shared the same confession. Mariano, known from his magnificent portrait in Faras Cathedral (now in the National Museum in Warsaw) (Plate 8.4), died in Kasr Ibrîm, where his tombstone was found. From the text of this stele\(^\text{71}\) one can deduce that he came to Faras having already been for two years bishop in another diocese. The text also says that he was ‘envoy of Babylon’ (i.e. Old Cairo), which is in perfect accord with his light complexion as represented on the Faras mural.

Not much is known about the nature of the liturgy in Nubia. Greek remained probably the most important language in the Church, being at the same time a sort of lingua franca in the whole Christian world of those times.\(^\text{72}\) Alongside Greek, the Coptic language was also extensively used in Church writings, for official inscriptions and on tombstones. It was, however, perhaps mostly used by numerous Coptic communities inside Nubia. From the mid-tenth century on Nubia showed a considerable increase of texts written in the indigenous language known as Old Nubian (called otherwise Medieval Nubian), a language that is ancestral to the modern Mahas dialect of riverain Nubian and belongs to the Eastern Sudanic language group. Old Nubian is written in the Coptic alphabet (itself an adaptation of the Greek one) with the addition of four signs for specific Nubian sounds.

The earliest dated text attested in Old Nubian is a graffito left in 795 in the church of al-Sebü’a by one Petro, a priest from Faras.\(^\text{73}\) The textual material in Old Nubian is largely religious in character and the corpus of Old Nubian writings comprises canonical texts (Gospel fragments), codices containing lives and sayings of the saints (among them the Miracle of St Menas)\(^\text{74}\) and the Homily of Pseudo-Christsom,\(^\text{75}\) prayer books, a litany to the Cross, and the extraordinarily rich collection of legal documents and letters found recently in Kasr Ibrîm\(^\text{76}\) as well as quite a lot of Nubian or mixed Greco-Nubian graffiti. All this material is of the greatest


\(^{71}\) J. M. Plumley, 1971b.


\(^{73}\) F. L. Griffith, 1913, p. 61; E. Zyhracz, 1928, pp. 163–69.


\(^{75}\) G. M. Browne, 1983.

PLATE 8.4 Portrait of Mariano, the Bishop of Faras (1005–36): a mural from Faras Cathedral
importance not only from historical and religious points of view but also for linguistics, because both lexicography and Old Nubian grammar are far from being sufficiently elaborated\textsuperscript{77} and the newly found texts remain largely unpublished.

For the greater part of the fifth/eleventh century not much historical information is available. The history records King Raphael reigning around 1002. Arab chronicles mention the revolt of Abū Rakwa against the Fāṭimids in about 1006, when having met with defeat in his own country he fled to Nubia. Because of this, Nubia was again involved in the affairs of her northern neighbour. In general, however, during the 200-year long period of Fāṭimid rule in Egypt (969–1169) the two countries were at peace and Nubia maintained the best of relations during the reign of Caliph al-Mustanṣir (1036–94). The Nubians were now even being recruited to the Fāṭimid army and in the period of his rule, their number increased to 50 000. This information comes from the writings of Nāṣir-i Ḵhusraw, who visited Egypt and Nubia in 1050.\textsuperscript{78}

The information about the Nubian Church derived from the History of the Monophysite Patriarchs\textsuperscript{79} mainly concerns the period of activities of the sixty-sixth Patriarch, Christodulos (1047–71). The first ten years of his patriarchate in Alexandria is the time which brought a renewal of the persecution against the Copts, which this time entailed the closing of their churches by the decree of Vizier al-Yazūrî, 1051–9. Christodulos, who was imprisoned for a time, sent two Egyptian bishops as envoys to the king of Nubia, requesting assistance and intervention. Through them the king sent funds to pay a ransom in order to free the Patriarch. A dozen or so years later he nominated a new metropolitan for Nubia (Dongola) – Victor. Christodulos’s contacts with Nubian kings could have brought about the reinforcement of the Monophysite Church which, as the example of Faras has illustrated, was for some time in danger. The Patriarch was by this time on better terms with the vizier of Egypt, Badr al-Djamāli, who during the next mission from the patriarchate to the Nubian king, with Merkurios bishop of Wāsim as envoy, sent with him his own envoy Sayf al-Dawla to obtain the extradition from Nubia of the traitor Kanz al-Dawla, and was successful in doing so. Badr al-Djamāli shortly afterwards (1080) received the former Nubian ruler Salomon in Cairo. This king had abdicated in favour of his sister’s son Georgios (III) so that he could devote his life to monasticism. We hear also about Nubian King Basilios reigning in 1089.

With the fall from power of the Fāṭimids (1170) the relations between Nubia and Egypt rapidly deteriorated. At about the same time, Nubia’s Golden Age came to an end. Armed encounters with the troops of Ayyubid

\textsuperscript{79} The source is Severus (Sawirus Abu’ l-Bashar ibn al Muḥaffa’), see G. Vantini, 1975, pp. 189, 209–18.
Sultan Şalâh al-Din (Saladin) opened the next period (called Late Christian) in Nubian history.

**Arts and architecture**

**Architecture**

The tenth and eleventh centuries in Nubia were an extremely favourable period for the development of arts and architecture. Research into sacral architecture is undoubtedly the key problem for the understanding of Nubian architecture in general.\(^8^0\) Church-building was the most important aspect of architecture for the whole Christian world at this period and in it the art of building and architectural conceptions are most fully reflected. The material which we possess is apparently very rich. There are over 120 churches known in Nobadia and about 40 in Makuria.\(^8^1\) Such an unequal distribution of the known churches in Nubia (and nearly all the northern ones have been excavated) has led to an acceptance of the opinion\(^8^2\) that Nubian sacral architecture is derived only from the 'basilican' type of church, a type which in fact prevailed in the north. It was only when the Polish Expedition discovered the Old Church in Dongola and superimposed on its plan that of the Church of Granite Columns and also the Cruciform Church\(^8^3\) that it became apparent that we have to deal here with two equally important tendencies in sacral architecture – the central design and the elongated basilican pattern – both exerting an influence on individual church edifices. The main trends in architecture are manifested, first of all, in the great structures created in cultural and administrative centres in which bishoprics were also located, like Old Dongola, Faras or Kasr Ibrim. Parallel to this creativity there runs the development of provincial architecture that is modelled to a certain extent on the latter but has at its disposal limited possibilities as to the execution and material. This last line of development is responsible for the creating of the so-called 'typical Nubian plan' of church encountered mainly in northern Nubia in the Classic Christian and Late Periods. In this type most of the local, internal features are manifested. Such a church is normally a rectangular building, oriented east–west, divided by piers or columns into a nave and two aisles. A considerable part of the nave, in the east closed by an apse with semi-circular tribune, contains the presbytery (called the *haykal*) with

81. The 'inventory' of all known churches in Nubia was published by W. Y. Adams, 1965b; general conclusions are also found in W. Y. Adams, 1977, pp. 473–8.
82. W. Y. Adams, 1965b.
an altar in the centre. On either side of the apse there are two rooms, the northern one served as a vestry and the southern as a baptistery. They are connected by a narrow passage behind the apse. In the western part of the church two rooms are built at the corners. The southern one, as a rule, contains a staircase, the purpose of the northern one remains obscure. The entrances to the church lead from the south and from the north straight to the aisles. In the central part of the nave an ambo is placed at the north side.

In the entire sacral architecture certain periods and lines of development influenced also from outside Nubia, are to be identified as follows:

**First Period**

Phase 1: the initial foreign influence on Nubia’s religious architecture. Churches were based on an elongated uniaxial three-aisled plan. They were generally built of mud-brick and covered with wooden ceilings supported by mud-brick piers.

Phase 2: development of building activity. Erection of the great cathedrals of ashlars or burnt-brick. The plan remains the same, three- or five-aisled, roofs supported by columns. Alongside this activity, the tradition of building in mud-brick was still continued in smaller edifices. Barrel vaulting was being introduced. The most typical Nubian church building, already described, was developed during this phase.

**Second Period**

The evolution of types of churches combined with Armenian and Byzantine architectural influences completely transformed the conception of spatial form in buildings. During this period two tendencies were developed: whilst the traditional style maintained itself in the provinces, a new and official mode of building characterized by a central plan made its appearance in the capital. Burnt brick was widely used. In this period the Church of Granite Columns in Dongola was built, which comprised a composition of the cruciform design incorporated into a basilican interior. Nubian architecture reached the climax of its creative possibilities. One of the examples of the original conceptions of Nubian architects that profited from the architectural achievements of the wider Christian world is the Mausoleum (Cruciform Church) in Old Dongola, based on the plan of a Greek cross. Undoubtedly Dongola became in this period the main centre of architectural activities in Nubia (Fig. 8.5).

**Third Period**

In this period one cannot distinguish the main stream of continuation in the line of development. The building activities were dispersed into several

---


85. According to P. M. Gartkiewicz, 1980; 1982a, pp. 73–105.
Fig. 8.5 The Second Period in the development of Nubian church architecture. Top: the traditional (conservative) provincial building activity (B2); monastery church in Ghazāli and the church on the south slope of the Kom in Faras. Middle: the progressive line, main trend, first phase (A3); example of the spatial arrangement and central (Church of the Granite Columns in Old Dongola) or longitudinal plan (the Great Cathedral, Kasr Ibrim). Bottom: Example of the main trend, second phase (A4), the Mausoleum in Old Dongola, a cruciform church (after P. M. Gartkiewicz, 1982d)
centres absorbing diversified influences mainly of Byzantine origin. The common general feature was at that time the introduction of the domed covering towards the end of the tenth century. This conception was connected with the new approach to the form of a church in which the vertical axis was to play the most important role. Both the elongated (basilican) and the central-plan churches were now being transformed by the addition of domes in the central part and the replacement of columns with brick piers. Mud-brick is now commonly used again. Beside the rebuilding of the older churches, new ones were now being erected, the form of which resulted from various simplifications and local mutations of Nubian solutions (Fig. 8.6).

Church art

At the end of the eighth century, the standard decoration of the interior of sacral buildings became figurative mural painting, replacing the earlier architectural decoration (lintels, door-jambs and capitals decorated in relief). Examination of the set of paintings from Faras, depicting — apart from the many representations of Christ and the Virgin Mary — saints and archangels, scenes from the Old and New Testaments and also portraits of local dignitaries presented under the protection of holy figures, have made it possible to get a coherent picture of the development of mural painting in Nubia which was different in its means of expression from this branch of art in the neighbouring countries.

Material from Faras has made it possible to distinguish and place in chronological order the various stylistic groups of painting some of which are mentioned in Volume II of the General History of Africa. Of these the violet style was predominant at the end of the second/eighth century, followed by the late violet and intermediate styles of the early third/ninth century and the white style of the second half of the third/ninth century, an example of which is the portrait of the first Metropolitan, Bishop Kyros (Plate 8.2). Murals of this early period inspired a new generation of local Nubian artists who in the fourth/tenth century created their own school of painting, the most characteristic features of which were the decorative forms where the foreign elements, transformed in a peculiar way, formed a kind of ornamentation that was unique to Nubia, and a selection of colours that was characteristic for each period. Thus at the beginning of the fourth/tenth century, after a re-plastering of the Faras Cathedral interior had taken place, a new style which has been called yellow-red was de-
FIG. 8.6 The Third Period in the development of Nubian church architecture. Examples of churches developed along diversified trends. Top: C1— influenced by domed basilica type (the Basilica at Tamit). Second row: C2— influenced by the double-shell composition (church at Nag' el Okba) or cross-in-square pattern (church at Sonki Tino). Third row: C3— influenced by domed-cross pattern (Faras Cathedral rebuilt by the end of the tenth century, and Church of Angels at Tamit). Bottom: C4— influenced by multi-axial hall composition (St Raphael Church at Käw) (after P. M. Gartkiewicz, 1982a)
veloped. It was then that the realistic trend of the white style was being abandoned in favour of far-reaching idealization and schematization of facial features. Embroidery and decoration of the robes of the figures represented now became apparent. As an example of this style, the portrait of King Georgios I may be used, added at the beginning of the fourth/tenth century to the composition of the Holy Virgin and Apostles in the apse of Faras Cathedral. After the great rebuilding of the Cathedral, which had occurred by the end of the fourth/tenth century the multicoloured I style was being created. This is one of the most widespread styles in northern Nubia, attested in several churches, for example in 'Abdallāh Nirḵī, Sonḵī Tino and Tamit. It is characterized by brilliant colours and lavishly ornate details in the treatment of robes, books, crowns and other items represented. Among forty-eight paintings of this style an outstanding example of this new art is the portrait of Bishop Marianos (Plate 8.4), painted in the opening years of the eleventh century. The great composition of the Nativity, now in the Sudan National Museum, Khartoum (Plate 8.5), comes from the same time; it is the largest mural in Nubia. We have here evidence that the Nubian artist had mastered the art of painting scenes with many figures on several planes one above the other. There is no strip composition here, which is so characteristic of the art of Egypt but a pattern of several groups (the Magi, shepherds, archangels, flying angels) closely interconnected as regards subject and form.

One of the characteristically novel themes in Nubian painting is the representation of local nobles under the holy protection of Christ, the Virgin or the Archangel Michael. A stylistic canon applies here in which the authentic shade of secular personages’ complexion is retained, unlike representations of Saints and Christ who were always shown as having white faces.

The multicoloured style was continued until the end of the Christian Period in Nubia; its further developments are called Multicoloured II (second half of the fifth/eleventh century), Multicoloured III (sixth/twelfth century), and Late Style (seventh/thirteenth–ninth/fifteenth centuries).

The chronological order established for the Faras paintings has been confirmed by the discovery of other murals decorating Nubian buildings – to such a degree that they may serve as a basis for dating. In this regard, investigations into Nubian painting have preceded work of this sort carried out on Coptic painting in Egypt, which hitherto has not been completely catalogued or classified.

91. Cf. especially M. Martens-Czarnecka, 1982c.
Plate 8.5 View of the north transept of Faras Cathedral with the great mural of the Nativity in multicoloured I style, painted c. 1000
In general in the Nubian painting of the Classic Christian period one can see the predominant influence of Byzantine art (seen even in the profusion of ornamentation), which did not wholly replace Coptic elements prevailing in the earlier periods. The main expression of this art exhibits purely local features typical only of Nubian painting.

Here one could draw attention to the iconographic value of this branch of art in Nubia, which indicates a profound knowledge of the earliest traditions of Christian thought and the text of the Holy Scriptures. Nubia in its Golden Period remained, after all, an important limb in the Christian oikoumene and through its contacts (visible at least in local art and architecture) not only with Copts in Egypt and most probably with Ethiopia, but with the entire sphere of Byzantine culture, from Armenia to Syria and Palestine, drew inspiration from all these sources, creating in the process her own separate cultural personality.


94. Oikoumene (from oikouménē in Greek, meaning inhabited territory). Used by ancient geographers to designate that part of the Earth that was inhabited, as opposed to the Earth as a whole.
In Volume II of the *General History of Africa* the reader may obtain an initial glimpse of the Berbers, their origins, their ethnic structure and some of their characteristics. However, as this is the first chapter to deal with the Maghrib (Islamic North Africa exclusive of Egypt), it may be useful at this point to acquaint the reader with the Berbers as the Arabs found them at the time of the Arab conquest of the Maghrib, from 21/642 onward.

Some modern writers regard the term Maghrib as an anachronism since it now applies to only one part of the land in question. Some six hundred years ago Ibn Khaldūn (732/1332–808/1406) was of the same opinion; according to him, the term al-Maghrib was not so much a proper name as a geographical definition. He added, however, that by his time it has become the proper name for the particular territory concerned.

E. F. Gautier began his work *Le passé de l’Afrique du Nord—les siècles obscurs* with a chapter strikingly entitled ‘A country without a name’. Presumably this is meant humorously, since al-Maghrib (‘the west’ of the land of Islam) was in fact, both historically and geographically, a clear and precise name for a clearly defined part of the world: that part of northern Africa (exclusive of Egypt) lying to the north of the great African desert, the Sahara.

Until recently North Africa (or the Maghrib) was considered, except for a few pockets of arable soil, to be an infertile land of rock and sand where, as in Arabia, the very poverty of the land made its inhabitants a proud, free, hardy people. In fact the Maghrib is far from poor. The coastal belt possesses ample resources of water and vegetation. The northern slopes of the Atlas Mountains afford excellent wooded pastureland and produce fine olive trees. In the north the coast and the mountain-sides enjoy all the mildness of a Mediterranean climate, referred to by Ibn Khaldūn as *mizādj al-tulūl*. The High Atlas plateau is covered with woodland and forest, and along the Atlantic coast lies a wide band of fertile soil.

The Atlas Mountains, with their abundant forests, arable lands and pastures, are both hospitable and beautiful. They were the cradle of one of the sturdiest and most enduring peoples on earth: the Berbers. Ibn Khaldün is unstinting in his praise of the beauty and magnificence of 'the land of the Berbers' (mawāţin al-Barbar), in which he includes Libya and a good part of the Sahara.

Having given this brief description of the geographical environment, we should say a word or two about the Arab and modern source texts dealing with the Arab conquest of North Africa. A number of old Arabic texts are still extant, written by such reputable historians as al-Balādhun, Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam, Ibn al-Athīr, Ibn ‘Idhārī, al-Mālikī, al-Dabbāgh, Ibn Khaldūn, Abū’l-‘Arab Tamīm and al-Nuwayrī; these are a rich mine of largely trustworthy information. Even so, they contain occasional inconsistencies, erroneous dates and contradictions, attributable to the gap of over two centuries between the conquest itself and the earliest of these historians’ works. Most of the writers mentioned may be regarded simply as chroniclers and annalists without much critical sense; the sole exception is Ibn Khaldūn, a true historian who has left us not only much sound factual material but also a reasoned interpretation of the history of the Berbers. However, all these historians were Arabs, and their point of view was that of conquerors; the point of view of the Berber resistance remains unknown, even though some traces of their tradition have been preserved in the Arab chronicles.

Until very recently, North African studies were monopolized by French and Spanish scholars (and Italian scholars in the case of Libya), whose works covered the whole history of the Maghrib from antiquity to independence. While we must recognize the admirable work done by these historians in publishing, translating and interpreting the Arabic source texts, and their great contribution to the clarification of a variety of historical problems, it must nevertheless be remembered that the majority of their works date from the colonial era, and that their particular interpretations tended, to a large extent, to serve the objectives of colonial policies, as for example the integration of Algeria into metropolitan France. Today, thanks to the serious efforts of Arab scholars and others over the past twenty years, a new generation of historians has transcended the French scholars’ judgements on virtually all the great historical problems of Islamic North Africa.

The American researcher Edmund Burke III expresses the prevailing opinion on this development among historians in the following terms:

The historical study of North Africa has until quite recently been an

4. See Bibliography.

225
almost exclusively French preserve. The few English-speaking historians who ventured to deal with the Maghreb did so at their peril, always vulnerable to criticism for not having sufficiently mastered the enormous French literature. To a large extent this situation was an artifact of a colonial division of labour. The dictum that 'scholarship follows the flag' received empirical confirmation in the mutual myopia of national traditions of scholarship about the Islamic world.6

Nevertheless, the French historians' immense labours are worthy of the utmost respect and the greatest esteem, even though we may often disagree with the textual interpretations of such respected scholars as Henri Fournel, C. Diehl, E. Mercier, E. F. Gautier, H. Basset, William and George Marçais, R. Brunschwig, E. Lévi-Provençal, and C.-A. Julien, to name but a few.7

The Berbers on the eve of the Arab conquest

At the beginning of their conquest of North Africa, the Arabs discovered that the Berbers were organized, as they were themselves, in kabīlas. These kabīlas were divided into two categories: the Butr and the Barānis.

Oddly enough, the names of these two groups make their appearance only at the time of the Arab conquest, never before. Ibn 'Abd al-Hakam, the earliest chronicler of the conquest, speaks matter-of-factly of the Barānis and Butr, but Stéphane Gsell, in his extremely detailed chronicle of the ancient history of North Africa, makes no mention of either of these names, nor indeed does Charles Diehl in his voluminous history of Byzantine Africa.8

The two terms Butr and Barānis sound Arabic: the Barānis are those who wear the burnus, a garment already known to the Arabs before their arrival in Africa, since 'Umar ibn al-Khattāb, the second Caliph, is said to have worn one; and the Butr, according to Arab writers, were the descendants of a man named Mādghīs al-Abtar. Abtar, which is the singular form of Butr, means a man without offspring, or a man missing a hand or leg, or without headgear. Since the Butr can hardly have been descended from a man without offspring, we are left with only one explanation: Mādghīs, the ancestor of the Butr, was given the name of abtar because he wore no hood.

We cannot, in any case, accept any of these linguistic explanations. We can only recognize the fact that, on the basis of the testimony of Arab and Berber genealogists, Ibn Khaldūn, the historian of the Berbers, wrote that the Berbers had been divided into two blocs since time immemorial, and

7. See Bibliography.
8. S. Gsell, 1913–28; C. Diehl, 1896. It is possible that this classification was applied to the Berber-speaking world by the Arab writers who created the vocabulary, on the basis of the familiar realities of life in the Middle East, where the Arabs were themselves divided into two great groups.
The conquest of North Africa

that their mutual hostility and incessant quarrelling had been the dominant factor throughout their history both before and after the advent of Islam.

According to E. F. Gautier, this classification corresponded to two different ways of life, the Barānis being sedentary mountain-dwellers and the sons of Mādghīs the Butr, being nomads of the plains. This is a hypothesis that many researchers have found attractive, but it is too speculative to be accepted without careful scientific scrutiny. Even so, a classification into two great groups probably does reflect the feelings of the Berber population of the Maghrib themselves as regards their respective ancestries. It would seem that Berber and Arab genealogists constructed this division *a posteriori*, but in so doing took into account the facts of historical experience.

According to Ibn Khaldūn, at the time of the Arab conquest the main Butr confederations of *kabīlas* were those of the Zanāta, the Matghara and the Nafzāwa. The Zanāta seem to have enjoyed supremacy over the others, as they are said to have given their name to all the nomadic Butr groups. Zanāta was the grandson of a man named Māzīgh. It seems that the Barānis were also descended from Māzīgh. The word *māzīgh* means 'free man'.

As regards the Barānis, and again according to Ibn Khaldūn, their most important confederations of *kabīlas* at the time of the conquest were the Awrāba, the Hawwāra and the Şanhāda.

However, as soon as we move on to study the Arab conquest and the history of North Africa under Islamic domination, we find new *kabīlas* and tribal groupings emerging that prove to have been more important than those mentioned above. It should also be noted, however, that the genealogical tables given by Ibn Khaldūn were drawn up at a later period, certainly no earlier than the fourth/tenth or fifth/eleventh century, for political or dynastic purposes.

The tables themselves are full of contradictions, and vary according to the source consulted. The geographical distribution of the *kabīlas* poses another problem; one *kabīla* or confederation of *kabīlas* may, for example, have branches and offshoots in different parts of the Maghrib, especially after the invasion of the Banū Hilāl in the fifth/eleventh century.

This is why, to avoid inaccuracy, we shall be well advised to restrict ourselves to a broad outline of the Berbers' tribal divisions at the time of the Arab conquest and afterwards, up to the sixth/twelfth century.

At the time of the Arab conquest, the Barānis were divided into a

10. Some younger Maghribi scholars, fascinated by this name and its meaning, would like to replace the name 'Berber' by 'Imāzīghen' (plural of Amāzīgh). They consider 'Berber' a pejorative term, which in fact it is not; Berber is a proper noun which has lost all connotations of the term 'Barbaroi'.
number of large groups such as the Şanhâdía, Kutâma, Talkâta, Awrâba and Maşmûda or Masâmîda. The Zanâta (or Zanatians) inhabited Cyrenaica and Tripolitania, extending southward as far as the Djabal Nafûsa and the oases of Fezzân, the predominant confederations of kabîlas being those of the Hawwâra, Luwâta, Nafûsa and Zaghâwa.

These groups also ruled the eastern part of what is now Algeria, an area known during the Arab period as the al-Mzâb region. They occupied the pasturelands on the northern slopes of the Central Atlas Mountains as far as the Mulûya River. This was the homeland of that great group of kabîlas known as the Miknâsa, who extended southward as far as the fertile region of the Tafilâlet oases.

The Kutâma and the Şanhâdía inhabited the central Maghrib, including the Awrâs massif and the alité country (Grande Kabylie), living in the regions around Tähert and Tlemcen. This was the common homeland of a number of great groups: the Kutâma, who contributed to the establishment of the Fatimid Caliphate; the Talkâta, founders of the two Zîrîd emirates; the Awrâba, who played a major role in the foundation of the Idrîsid emirate in northern Morocco and other, smaller kabîlas. Ibn Khaldûn calls these Sanhâdía of central Morocco 'the first generation of Şanhâdía (al-tabâka al-ülûî min Şanhâdía)'. There were other small enclaves of Şanhâdía in the western Maghrib, the largest being that of the Haskûra who lived in the High Atlas, in Maşmûda country; the Şanhâdía later joined forces with the Maşmûda, merging with them to create the Almohad empire.

A further group of Şanhâdía inhabited an area stretching from the desert land south of Wâdi Dar'a (Oued Dra) to the strip of the Sahara that lies along the Atlantic coast as far as the Senegal River. Their most important groups were the Lamtûna, Massûfa, Djuddâla, Gazûla (Djazûla), Banû Warîth, Lamţa and ʾṬarka. These last were in fact the famous Tuareg (al-Tawârik), who have remained the lords of the great Sahara right down to our own day. All these groups were camel-breeding nomads.13

Ibn Khaldûn calls this Şanhâdía group 'the second generation of Şanhâdía (al-tabâka al-thâniya min Şanhâdía)'.

Some genealogists entirely exclude the Kutâma from the Şanhâdía and from the Berbers as a whole, holding them to be of Arab descent and giving them a South Arabian Himyarite ancestry.

But the most important Barânis group was that of the Maşmûda or Masâmîda. They controlled practically the whole of the western Maghrib with the exception of a few small enclaves of Şanhâdía and Zanâta. The most important branches of this group were the Ghûmûra (in the Tangier region and throughout the Rîf), and the Barghawâta who ruled the Šebû valley along with the Awrâba. The Masâmîda inhabited the mountainous regions of the High Atlas and Anti-Atlas ranges and the fertile plain of Sîs, which stretches between the two Atlas ranges to the south of the Sirwa massif. These were the founders of the Almohad religious movement and

13. Cf. chapter 13 below.

228
Empire, which subsequently united the Maghrib and Spain. Among the larger kabilas included in the group were the Hintâta, Haylāna (or Aylāna), Urika, Hazardja, Masfiwa, Dughâgha, Hargha, Ahl-Tin mallal, Sawda, Ganfisa, Banû Wawazgit, Fatwâka and Mastâna.

The above, of course, is only a very brief survey of the Berbers and their groups at the time of the Arabs' arrival in North Africa. Some resisted the Arabs, while others rallied to them and were converted to Islam during the long period of conquest.

Virtually all the Berbers followed their ancient cults of worshipping the forces of nature. The Arabs called them mādjûs, i.e. 'fire-worshippers', but in the context of the early history of Islam this term usually means simply 'pagans'.

Christianity had not become widely spread among the Berbers: only the inhabitants of the coastal belt, the people called al-Afärika by the Arabs, were Christian. The Afarika were a marginal people, a mixture of Berbers and Romanized Carthaginians, Romans, and Greeks. In comparison with the powerful Berber groups further inland they constituted only a small minority. Among the Berbers properly so called, the spread of Christianity was slight: only in Zeugetania and Byzacena had it become established in the interior. Moreover, the Christians of Byzantine Africa were divided by schisms; for these Berbers, Christianity had long been a source of unity against Roman domination, and they had ardently embraced such heresies as Arianism and Donatism which stood in opposition to the doctrine of the Church of Rome. A similar situation developed later in opposition to Byzantine religious policies.

Judaism too had made many converts, and although it never played the role some writers have attributed to it, nevertheless it had spread throughout North Africa. The majority of native-born North African Jews are descended from those converted prior to the advent of Islam.

The first stage of the conquest: the conquest of Cyrenaica and Tripolitania

In the year 20/641, the Treaty of Alexandria was concluded between 'Amr ibn al-‘Āş and the Patriarch Cyrus, the last Byzantine governor of Egypt, ratifying the conquest of his territory by the Arabs. Shortly thereafter, on 16 Shawwâl, 21/17 September 642, the last Byzantine garrison evacuated Alexandria.

But 'Amr ibn al-‘Āş, the conqueror of Egypt, thought it necessary to annex Cyrenaica as well; since the last reorganization of the Empire by the Emperor Maurice (582–602), Cyrenaica had in fact belonged to the province of Egypt, as had Tripolitania. 'Amr marched on Cyrenaica at the be-
FIG. 9.1 The Arab conquest of the Maghrib
beginning of 22/643, and seized it almost without meeting any resistance. He found neither Greeks nor Rûm (Byzantines) to oppose him, only Berbers of the Luwâta and Hawwâra groups. These eventually surrendered and agreed to pay an annual tribute of 13,000 dinars, which thenceforth constituted part of the tribute payable by Egypt. 17

In the Arabic source documents, Cyrenaica is sometimes referred to by the name Antâbulus (i.e. Pentapolis, the Five Towns). It is also termed Kûrinâ, a slight deformation of the Greek name Cyrene. All previous names for the region were soon to disappear in favour of the new name the Arabs bestowed on it: Barka, after a small town in the region (the contemporary al-Mardj).

At the same time, 'Amr sent his lieutenant Nâfi' ibn 'Abd al-Kays to occupy Zawila, a small oasis between Cyrenaica and Fezzân that still exists today, a short distance south of Sabha. Zawila is quite a long way from Barka, but seems in those days to have been the most important watering-place on the route to Fezzân. This detail shows how, right from the start, the Arabs deemed it necessary to conquer the hinterland as well as the coastal plain. Nâfi' ibn 'Abd al-Kays left a garrison at Zawila and rejoined 'Amr at Barka. In Radjab 22/April or May 643, both returned to Egypt.

A year later, 'Amr ibn al-'Aṣ and his lieutenants returned to accomplish one more step in the conquest of North Africa. Their objective was Tripoli, which at the time was an integral part of Byzantine Egypt, as was Barka. It was essential to annex the port of Tripoli, with its high walls and its flourishing trade; Greek ships dropped anchor there to buy the region's products, olives or olive oil, and wool, for the region was renowned for the quality of its sheep. 'Amr captured Tripoli after a brief siege. To complete the work of conquest, he launched attacks by two columns: one, commanded by Buṣr ibn Abî Artât, attacked Sabra or Sabrâta, the last great city of western Tripolitania, while the other, under the command of Abd Allâh ibn al-Zubayr, took Waddân, the largest oasis in the hinterland of Tripoli. The occupation of Waddân effectively meant the annexation of the whole mountain region of Nafûsa. In those days the Djabal Nafûsa was covered with rich vegetation, olive groves and pastureland. It was also the bastion of the Nafûsa confederation.

'Amr ibn al-'Aṣ had thus put the finishing touch to his conquest of Egypt. The western frontiers of his province were secured. Beyond those frontiers lay the Byzantine province of Byzacena, corresponding approximately to modern Tunisia.

The first incursions into Ifrîkiya

In the year 27/647, 'Abd Allâh ibn Sa'd, the new governor of Egypt, launched an attack on Byzacena. At that time, the governor of Byzantine Africa was the Exarch Gregory (Djurgîr to the Arabs), who a few years

earlier had proclaimed himself independent and cut the province off from
the rest of the empire. His army included many mercenaries and Berbers.
The Arab and Byzantine armies met not far from Suffetula, which the
Arabs call Subaytula (Sbeitla). The battle ended in a decisive victory: the
Exarch Gregory was killed, his daughter captured along with many mem-
bers of his household, and Subaytula occupied. Many Byzantines took
refuge in Carthage, Süs (Hadrumetum) and other ports, and many left
Africa, never to return.

After his victory, 'Abd Allah b. Sa'd, who had quarrelled with his offi-
cers, returned to Egypt, but Arab columns carried out raids in all direc-
tions across the country, taking thousands of prisoners, especially at
Thysdrus, a Roman fortress or theatre (known today as al-Djamm). Find-
ing themselves utterly at his mercy, the African population appealed to
'Abd Allah ibn Sa'd and begged him to accept a substantial ransom as the
price of his departure. The offer seemed acceptable to him; he agreed,
took the ransom and left the country. The campaign ended in 28/649.

The second stage of the conquest

The campaigns of 'Amr ibn al-'Äs and 'Äbd Allah ibn Sa'd may be
regarded as the preliminary or preparatory stages of the conquest of the
Maghrib. By now the Arabs had some knowledge of the country and its in-
habitants. Some of those who had taken part in these campaigns had
acquired useful experience. Since the expedition of 'Amr ibn al-'Äs there
had been a permanent garrison occupying Barka; another, smaller one was
now established at Waddân. But all the Muslims' projects for conquest
were paralysed for a period of nearly twelve years as a result of the civil war
which raged among the Arabs between the middle of 'Uthmân's Caliphate
(24/644–36/656) and the accession of Mu'âwiya ibn Abî Sufyân to the Cali-
phate in 41/661.

As soon as peace was restored within the Arab empire, the new Caliph,
Mu'âwiya, founder of the Umayyad dynasty, decreed that conquest should
be pressed forward on all fronts. In 43/663, Mu'âwiya appointed his sup-
porter 'Ukba ibn 'Amîr al-Djuhanî to the post of Governor of Egypt, and
appointed Mu'âwiya ibn Hudaydj al-Sâkuni commander-in-chief of the
Arab army which was to resume the conquest of the Maghrib.

During this period, circumstances worked to the Arabs' advantage in
Africa. Profiting from the Arabs' long absence, the Byzantines had tried to re-
establish their own authority there. The Emperor Constans II (641–68)
sent out a new exarch, the Patrician Nicephorus, with orders to extract
from the province an amount in tax revenue equal to the ransom they had
paid to the Arabs. The people refused, as they were quite unable to produce
such a sum. Tension built up and led, inevitably, to armed confrontation. It
was at this point that the army of Mu'âwiya ibn Hudaydj appeared on the
horizon, in 45/665. Mu'âwiya defeated Nicephorus easily, forcing him to
take refuge within the walls of Hadrumetum (Süs), and then launched an
attack on him with a column of cavalry under the command of 'Abd Allâh
The conquest of North Africa

ibn al-Zubayr. The Arab horsemen captured Sīs and forced Nicephorus to take to the sea. In quick succession the Muslims then took Djalūla (Cululis), Bizerta, and the island of Djerba. In 46/666 they even ventured for the first time to undertake an incursion against the coast of Sicily.

In 50/670, the Caliph Mu‘āwiya dismissed Ibn Hudaydī and appointed ‘Ukba ibn Nāfi‘ as commander-in-chief of the Arab forces in North Africa. This appointment was to prove decisive for the conquest. Setting out from Waddān, ‘Ukba undertook a long expedition, going by way of Fezzān and the south of Kawār. Wherever he went he took care to establish the authority of Islam firmly, building mosques and leaving garrisons and missionaries; then he moved north again as far as Ghardāmis. Here he was joined by 10,000 horsemen sent by Mu‘āwiya to help him in his new mission. He began by attacking the last Byzantine strongholds standing between Gabēs (Kābis) and the place where he had decided to establish what was to be both a military base and the political centre (mīsur) of his province. Without delay he set about the task of founding his capital, which he called Kāraywān, meaning ‘camp’ or ‘arsenal’.

The building of the town began. Legend has it that ‘Ukba performed a number of miracles at this point; the heavens are said to have shown him the exact direction of the kibla, and in addition all snakes and other harmful creatures are said to have left the area at his command. This is part of the legend of Sīdī ‘Ukba, the first Muslim saint of Africa. With the founding of Kārwaywān, one of the oldest and most venerable cities of Islam, the first Islamic province of North Africa was born. It was given the name of Africa (Ifrīqiya). At the time, it covered more or less the same area as present-day Tunisia.

Having thus established a base from which to operate and having endowed the new province with a capital, ‘Ukba began to prepare his campaign; then came the unpleasant shock of learning that he had been relieved of his command (56/675). His successor, Dīnār ibn Abū al-Muhādjjir, who held the post from 56/675 to 63/682, proved to be one of the most brilliant men ever to direct the Arab conquest of the Magrib. On his arrival in Africa, he realized that the situation had shifted slightly to the disadvantage of the Arabs. Already the Byzantine Emperor Constantine IV (Pogonatus) had emerged victorious from the first major Arab attack and the siege of Constantinople which they had undertaken during the reign of the first Umayyad Caliph, Mu‘āwiya. Constantine decided to take advantage of this victory to recover part of his lost territory. He retook Cyprus and some of the Aegean islands, and dispatched emissaries to re-establish contact with such Byzantines as remained in Carthage and other parts of the former province. After accomplishing this mission, the envoys won over to the Byzantine cause the most powerful contemporary Berber leader, Kusayla, chief of the Awrāba and of the Șanhādja confederation which ruled the whole of the central Magrib. 18

18. Ibn al-Athīr, citing Muḥammad ibn Yusuf al-Warrāk as his authority, gives this name as Kasīla.
Upon being informed of the situation in Ifrikiya, Abū al-Muhāḏjir, in accordance with the custom of the Arab leaders of his day, decided to meet the enemy as soon as possible. He therefore marched immediately to the territory of the Awrāba, in the Tlemcen region. Once there, he tried to make contact with the enemy before engaging battle. He met with Kusayla and succeeded in winning his confidence: he explained Islam to the Berber chief, assuring him that if he accepted the faith and rallied to its cause he and all his clan would become full members of the Muslim community.

Kusayla was convinced; he and all his tribesmen embraced the Islamic faith. The year was 59/678, a memorable date in the history of the Islamization of the Maghrib. The following year, in 60/679, Abū al-Muhāḏjir, with the help of his powerful ally, sent an army under the command of his lieutenant Sharīk ibn Sumayz al-Murāḍī to conquer the peninsula known today as Iklībiyya or Djazirat Bashū, but which for centuries bore his name: Djazirat Sharīk. Having taken the peninsula, Abū al-Muhāḏjir attacked Carthage, capturing Mila, a key stronghold of the Byzantines situated a short distance north of Cirta (modern Constantine).

Shortly after this success, Abū al-Muhāḏjir was relieved of his command and 'Ukba was reappointed governor of Ifrikiya and commander-in-chief of the Arab army of the West, as a result of the death of Mu‘āwiya and the accession of his son Yazid in 61/680. This second appointment of 'Ukba ibn Nāfi' at the head of the conquering Arab army of the West was unquestionably the most important event in the Arab conquest of North Africa. He restored the town of Kayrawān, repaired its mosque and declared his intention of opening up the whole of the Maghrib to Islam.
The conquest of North Africa

But instead of choosing the easy route along the coastal plain, he ventured into the Awrās Mountains, intending to attack the Berbers in the heart of their territory. First of all he launched an attack on Bāghāya, which had once been the centre of the Donatist schism under the Byzantines; indeed, there were still many of these Christian schismatics in the region, entrenched in their mountain fastness to escape the Byzantines. At 'Ukba's approach they united with neighbouring Berbers in an attempt to halt the invaders. But to no avail: they were defeated, and the survivors fled for refuge to the mountains. 'Ukba left them there in peace, for fear of losing valuable time. Thousands of Berbers and Christians (the Arab texts speak of Rūm) withdrew hastily westwards. Leaving Bāghāya behind him, 'Ukba took Masīla by storm, and crossed the gorges of the Awrās, emerging close to Tiäret (Tähert). There he was surprised to find thousands of Berbers - Luwāta, Hawwāra, Zugwagha, Matmāta, Zanāta and Miknāsa - waiting for him, together with a sizeable contingent of Rūm. 'Ukba and his troops swooped down on them and scattered them in a fierce battle.

This victory gave 'Ukba a reputation for invincibility. Impressed both by his victory and by his personality, thousands of Berbers converted to Islam and joined his army en masse. Leaving the Tiäret region he invaded the area around Tlemcen, the home of Kusayla and his Awrāba 'tribesmen'. Abū al-Muhādjir advised 'Ukba not to attack these people, since they were already Muslims and their chief, Kusayla, was his own friend and ally. But 'Ukba disregarded this excellent and sincerely offered advice and, with his host of fighters, swept into the heart of the Awrāba country. Kusayla was infuriated, but controlled his rage, deciding to take his revenge at an opportune time.

'Ukba then crossed the Mulūya River, went over the strategic Taza pass and marched on Tingis (Tandjia, Tangier), where Julian, the governor of the town, contacted him, advising him to move southward and conquer the Berber territories. 'Ukba advanced swiftly toward the mountain strongholds of the Masämida, the princes of the peaks, who fled in terror, withdrawing as far as Wādī Dar'a; 'Ukba pursued them and inflicted a crushing defeat on them there. Moving north-eastward from Wādī Dar'a, he crossed the Tafilālet region and then cut across westwards towards Aghmāt-Urika, where he built a mosque. He had another mosque built in Naffis, a village on the stream of the same name.

From there, 'Ukba marched south-westwards and reached the Atlantic coast at Sāfī, north of Mogador, near the village of Ighiran-Yattūf (Cap

19. It has now been established that Julian is not a personal name but a title, comes julianus, 'count of Julia Traducta', which was the Roman name for Tarifa. He was undoubtedly a Visigoth. It is for this reason that we find another Julian at the time of the conquest of Spain. Cf. J. Vallvé, 1967.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Guir). There, according to the legend, he rode on horseback into the sea, saying he had reached the end of the world fighting for God, and that if he could proceed no further it was because there was no more land to be brought into the fold of Islam.

But the return march was a tragic one. The men were exhausted, and after so long an expedition they were impatient to see their families again; 'Ukba allowed those who wished to hurry on ahead, and in the end he was left with only 5000 men. This was the moment Kusayla had been waiting for to take his revenge. As they were passing through the Tlemcen region, his homeland, he abandoned 'Ukba's camp and hastened into the very midst of the Atlas Mountains, where he contacted the Christians who had taken refuge there, and made an agreement with them to await 'Ukba on a plain near Tahudha, to the south of Biskra. 'Ukba found himself surrounded by some 50,000 men. He displayed a degree of valour worthy of his reputation: dismounting together with Abu al-Muhadjar and the rest of his companions he hurled himself upon the enemy and met a hero's death. Almost all his men were killed (Dhu l-Hijjah 63/August 683).

The tragic news alarmed the whole of the Maghrib. In Kayrawan, the Muslims were panic-stricken; the garrison left in haste and hurried eastwards. Kusayla marched on Kayrawan and seized it. He did not abjure the Islamic faith but simply proclaimed himself governor, treating the Arabs of the town with forbearance. Thus 'Ukba's tale ends in catastrophe, but Ifrikiya was not lost to Islam. For the first time in history it was governed by a man of pure Berber stock: Kusayla, chief of the Awraba.

'Ukba's campaign was not a fruitless adventure. Despite its tragic end it was the most important and decisive expedition the Muslims had undertaken in the Maghrib. This man had been feared by the Berbers, but his courageous end made him a saint and martyr (mujahid). Sidi 'Ukba's tomb became the most venerated holy place in all North Africa.

The beginnings of Berber resistance

'Ukba's campaign had one very important side effect: the Berbers came to realize that the Arab attack was directed against them, not merely against the Byzantines. It was now clear that the aim of the Arabs was to absorb the Berbers and the Berber territory into their empire and their religious community. Although the general Berber population had no objection to adopting Islam, their chiefs were unwilling to let themselves be absorbed into the empire of a foreign power. Kusayla's victory is the first demonstration of this feeling: he had been happy enough to be a friend and ally to the Arab governor Abu al-Muhadjar, but he refused to become subject to a remote caliph. On the other hand, the Umayyads were not prepared to grant sovereignty over the new province to a local chieftain, even if the latter was a Muslim. The Caliph 'Abd al-Malik ibn Marwan (66/685–
The conquest of North Africa

86/705) was for the time being not in a position to send reinforcements into Africa, but he never even considered the possibility of negotiating with Kusayla.

Not until 69/688 did a new army commanded by Zuhayr ibn Ḥays undertake the reconquest of the lost province. Kusayla, who had built up a Berber kingdom covering the Awrās, the area south of Constantine and the greater part of Ifrīkiya (68/687–71/690) felt insecure in Kayrawān when he learned that the new Arab army was on its way. He decided to await the enemy at Mamma, a small village inhabited by the Hawwāra that lay between Kayrawān and Lāribus.

The battle of Mamma was decisive. The Arabs, now past masters in the arts of war, defeated the Berbers (71/690). Kusayla was killed, and his men suffered heavy losses. The Arabs pursued the fleeing survivors far into the Maghrib, as far as the Mulūya River in some instances. The Awrāba, at that time one of the most powerful Berber clans, were utterly crushed. Abandoning the area around Tlemcen they settled to the north of Sēbū, around the town of Wulīli (Volubilis). A large number of strongholds fell to Zuhayr, among them Sicca Vaneria (Shikkahāriya, the modern al-Kāf).

After his victory, Zuhayr stayed only a year in Ifrīkiya before deciding to depart. As he was on his way to Egypt, however, a Byzantine fleet, seizing the opportunity afforded by the Arabs’ war against Kusayla, landed at Barka and occupied it. Zuhayr was not far away when he heard of this; he marched on Barka with his vanguard, followed by the rest of the army, but was killed in the battle with the Byzantines.

The news of this Byzantine victory worried the Caliph ‘Abd al-Malik considerably, but it was four years before he was able to send into Ifrīkiya the fresh contingents that were needed; he had too many urgent problems to resolve elsewhere. The new governor appointed by the Caliph was Ḥassān ibn al-Nu‘mān, who raised a large army and appropriated Egypt’s tax revenues in their entirety to cover the costs of his new expedition; he wanted to complete the conquest of the Maghrib once and for all. Ḥassān’s first objective was to defeat the Byzantines and so prevent any alliance between them and the Berbers. After reaching Kayrawān, he marched on Carthage and destroyed its port in order to make it unusable for Byzantine ships. Then he sent out columns in all directions with instructions to expel the last remnants of the Rüm. Most of these fled for refuge to the islands of the Mediterranean. There was violent fighting around Istafūra (or Satfūra) and on the peninsula where Hippo Diarhytus (Bizerta), Hippo Regius (Bōne, ‘Annāba), and Tabarka stood; all of these were Byzantine colonies and fortresses, and all fell to the Arabs.

Having accomplished this much, Ḥassān considered his military tasks completed, and set about organizing the territory. But hardly had he returned to Kayrawān when alarming and unexpected news reached him: a Berber woman whom the Arabs called al-Kāhima, ‘the priestess’ or ‘the prophetess’, chief of the Djarāwa in the Awrās mountains, had assembled
all the Zanāta of the region and announced that she would throw the Arabs out of Ifrīkiya. Al-Kāhina — for it is under this Arab name that she has gone down in history — was, without a doubt, a fearsome woman, half queen, half sorceress, with dark skin, a mass of hair and huge eyes; according to the Arab chroniclers, when she was angry or possessed by her demons her eyes would turn red and her hair would stand on end. She is one of those curious figures around whom legends grow up.20

As the chief of a large Zanāta group, she had been very much disturbed by the unexpected victory of Kusayla, the Şanhādja chieftain who had imposed his rule over the region bordering on her own. Now that the Arab newcomers had defeated the Şanhādja and threatened to extend their domination to the whole of the Maghrib, her fears increased, and she determined to defy the Arabs.

News of the rising came as a surprise to Hassān, but he immediately went on the offensive against his new enemy. Al-Kāhina expected the Arabs to try to seize Bāghāya, which would have served as a good base from which to attack her in the Awrās; and so she occupied the town without delay, thus cutting off the route into the interior. Hassān advanced as far as Miskiāna, a small village on the stream of the same name, not far from the camp of the sorceress-queen. In 77/696 he launched his attack. The Djarāwa threw themselves on the Arabs so fiercely that the latter were driven back, leaving behind hundreds of dead and some eighty prisoners. So numerous were the Arab casualties that the earliest of our chroniclers, Ibn ‘Abd al-Hakam, calls the Wādī Miskiāna ‘the wādī of the disaster’. Hassān beat a retreat to Barḵa. Al-Kāhina, satisfied with her victory, withdrew into the mountains instead of marching on Kāyrāwan.

Thinking that the Arabs were interested only in plunder, she adopted a ‘scorched earth’ policy and had all the standing crops destroyed between the Awrās and Ifrīkiya. This action turned the sedentary tribes against her, and it was not long before they sent emissaries to Hassān asking him to come to their assistance. The following year, in 78/697, the situation further deteriorated; the Byzantine emperor Leontius (695–8) sent out a fleet which sacked Carthage and killed many of the Muslims there.

Reinforcements did not reach Hassān until 80/699. The caliph ‘Abd al-Malik, tired of the interminable struggle for Africa, had decided to strike a decisive blow. The army with which Hassān marched against al-Kāhina was the largest ever seen in the region, the Arab troops being reinforced by thousands of Berbers, most of them Butr.

The final battle between Hassān and al-Kāhina took place in 82/701. The queen was killed and her followers routed. The Berbers of the Awrās immediately asked for amnesty, which they were granted on condition that they supply men to fight in the Arab armies. Twelve thousand men were sent to Hassān, who placed them under the command of the defeated


238
The conquest of North Africa

The queen's two sons. All these fighting men, including the two young princes, adopted the Islamic faith.

Hassan thus had reason to feel that Berber resistance had been broken, and returned to Kayrawan. The next step was to make sure that the Byzantines would never be able to return, and to that end Hassan gave orders for the total destruction of Carthage. The work was done in 83/702; the tale of this city, so glorious in its day, was at an end.

But Ifriqiya had to have a large port, and Hassan now chose the site of an old Phoenician port, Tares (Tarshish), lying south-west of Carthage on a shallow bay. Here he ordered that a new port should be built, and the Caliph sent him from Egypt a thousand skilled Coptic draughtsmen to help draw up the plans. A canal was dug and a shipyard or 'arsenal' (dar al-ṣinā'a) was built. Thus was born the port city of Tunis, in 83/702. Thirty years later, 'Ubayd Allāh ibn al-Ḥabhāb (116/734–123/741), governor of the entire Arab Maghrib, transformed it into a truly great city. He had the shipyard enlarged and new docks constructed, and he encouraged migration into the city to populate it. He made Tunis the centre for all the great military camps in the region where Arab troops were stationed, and transformed its mosque into a cathedral mosque (masdjid djāmi'). This was the famous Zaytūna mosque, one of the most important sanctuaries in the Islamic world.

Meanwhile, Hassan had begun to set up an administrative system for the new province of Africa. In this province he included the Tripolitania (Ṭarābulus) region, from Misrāta in the east to Tawargha in the west, Ifriqiya proper, from Gabès to 'Annāba, and the Mzâb region from 'Annāba to the upper reaches of the Chélif River, south of Algiers. Thenceforth this whole area was regarded as the province of Africa. West of the Chélif stretched the Central Maghrib, and beyond that the Western Maghrib; these, in theory, were part of the Islamic empire, and there were already Muslim communities established there, but in fact no more is heard of the two Maghribis from the time of 'Ukba's death until their real annexation to the Caliphate, which was to be the work of Mūsā ibn Nūsāyr and his sons.

For the time being, Hassan organized his province of Ifriqiya along the lines of the administrative system in force throughout the Islamic empire. In that empire, the previous administrative divisions of each province were invariably retained; at the head of each province the Muslims appointed a governor ('āmil), who himself chose a vice-governor (wālī) for each district; as a rule, taxes were levied at a rate of approximately 10 per cent on personal income. In Ifriqiya, where there were almost no Jews or Christians on whom to levy capitation tax (dīzya), this particular source of revenue, so important everywhere else—as in Egypt, for example—was presumably almost non-existent.

Ifriqiya was similar to Arabia in that both had societies organized in kabīlas. In Arabia, the government imposed a tax of about 2 per cent of
each tribe’s collective wealth in the form of camels and sheep. This was the *sadaka*, and the tax-collector was known as the *muṣaddik*. The tax-collectors were sent out once or twice a year to the *kabîlas*. Ḥassān applied the same principle to the mountain and desert regions of his province. However, the government had to appoint a judge (*kâdi*) for each tribal group and to send missionaries or teachers to instruct the population in the principles of Islam and to preside over prayers, and consequently hardly any revenue was raised from the *kabîlas*, as these various state functionaries were paid out of *sadakât* contributions.

Ḥassān, at any rate, endowed his province of Africa with a sound administrative infrastructure. It is not surprising, considering the sheer size of its area, as outlined above, that this province should have become the keystone of the entire Arab edifice in North Africa. Ḳayrawān, thanks to its mosque — now entirely renovated through Ḥassān’s efforts — became one of the most important centres of Islamic learning and culture.

Despite the absence of any Arab authority over the two Maghribīs, Islam was making steady progress there, thanks to the many preachers who were to be found throughout the region, even in such remote areas as the region around Sūs, in the extreme south of Morocco. We are assured by reliable documents that at that time the Berbers were building mosques everywhere and endowing these cathedral mosques with pulpits (*manābir*) for public prayers. Where mosques had not been built with the *kibla* oriented exactly towards Mecca, the necessary corrections were being made. The pulpit of the Aghmāt Hilānā mosque south of Marrakesh, for example, is said to have been in use since 85/704.21

The conquest of the western Maghrib

Ḥassān ibn al-Nu’mān did not remain in office long enough to complete his work. In 85/704 he was replaced by Mūsā bin Nuṣayr, an astonishingly ambitious man of 60 with extravagant tastes who was a protégé of the governor of Egypt, ‘Abd al-‘Azīz ibn Marwān. He came to Ifnkiya bursting with energy despite his age and with an incredible thirst for adventure, conquest and glory. He began his campaign as soon as he reached Ḳayrawān. He wanted to subdue the central and western Maghrib, and reckoned that he could extract a fabulous booty from it. Unfortunately for him, the Maghrib held nothing comparable to the hoards of gold and precious stones that had been seized in Iran and Iraq when they were conquered. Here there was nothing but men, their families and their flocks.

As the objective for this first campaign, Mūsā chose a djebel south of Tabarca-Djabal Zaghwān (Zengitanus). This was the territory of some

21. E. Lévi-Provençal, 1956, p. 223. The *kibla* is the direction which Muslims must face while praying, the direction in which the Ka’ba lies. In a mosque it is also the niche that indicates this direction, a recess in the wall oriented towards the Ka’ba in Mecca.
The conquest of North Africa

subgroups of the Hawwāra and Djarāwa who had not yet made their submission. He launched a fierce attack and took a great many prisoners. This hard blow struck fear into the hearts of Berbers from one end of the Central Atlas to the other. As they began to flee towards the western Maghrib, Müsā pursued them. After capturing a number of villages and compelling the submission of various kabīlas in the Rif, where Kusayla’s daughters had sought refuge, Müsā occupied Tangier (Tandja) and offered protection to Ceuta (Sabta) and its governor, Julian. From there, Müsā sent out flying columns headed by his four sons and other officers to sweep the western Maghrib in all directions. They caught up with the proud Maṣmüda on the Wādī Dar’a and defeated them in battle.

Most of the Berbers of the western Maghrib surrendered and converted to Islam. Müsā created three new provinces: the central Maghrib with Tlemcen (Tilimsān) as its capital, the far western Maghrib (al-Maghrib al-Aḵṣā), with Tangier as its capital, and al-Süs al-aḵṣā.

For each province he appointed a governor, who was based in the provincial capital with a strong garrison, made up of both Arabs and Berbers. In order to ensure the obedience of the conquered people, he took large numbers of fighting men as hostages (rahā’iri) and incorporated them in his Muslim army. At Tangier, Müsā appointed his son Marwān governor and allotted to him 17,000 soldiers of the Maṣmüda; subsequently he replaced Marwān with Tārik ibn Ziyād.

Müsā ibn Nuṣayr had thus completed the conquest of the whole Maghrib. It was a magnificent achievement, but he had employed cruel methods for which the Muslims were to pay dearly in due course. In 91/710 Müsā returned to Kayrawān. The following year he was recalled and given the greatest task of his life: the conquest of the Iberian peninsula (al-Andalus).

The conquest of the Iberian peninsula (al-Andalus)

No study of the conquest of North Africa by the Muslims can reasonably ignore the salient role played by the Berbers in the conquest of the Iberian peninsula, or their contribution to the history of Islamic Spain and hence to Muslim hegemony in the Mediterranean.

The history and civilization of Islamic Spain constitute a monumental edifice, the foundations of which were laid by Arabs and Berbers together. The first Muslim military leader to undertake (in 91/710) a reconnaissance operation in southern Iberia to explore the possibilities for conquest was Tarīf, son of Zar’a ibn Abī Mudrik. Tarīf was one of the young generation of Islamized Berbers imbued with the military thinking of Ḥassān ibn al-Nu’mān and Müsā ibn Nuṣayr. He successfully carried out the expedition, and a small port in southern Spain, Tarifa, is named after him. The Muslim general who first decided on the conquest of Spain was also a Berber: Tārik ibn Ziyād ibn ‘Abd Allāh ibn Walghū. His grandfather ‘Abd Allāh had been a member of the Warfāḏjūma kabila a branch of the Nafza;
he had been converted to Islam at 'Ukba's instance and had served under
the latter.

As we have seen, Müsä had appointed Tārik ibn Ziyād governor of the
province of Tandja, or al-Maghrib al-Aksā, 'the far western Maghrib',
which covered what is today the southern part of the kingdom of
Morocco. He commanded an army of 17 000 men, mainly Şanhādja.

With this expeditionary force and some additional Arab troops, Tārik
crossed the straits and disembarked near a rocky promontory which from
that day to this has borne his name: Djabal Tārik ('Tārik's mountain'), or,
as we now pronounce it, Gibraltar. In Shawwāl 92/August 711, he won his
great victory over the Visigoth army, in which the last Visigoth king,
Roderick, or Rodrigo (Rûdrîk in Arabic), 22 was killed in the battle.
Wasting no time, Tārik pushed on with his indefatigable Berber cavalry to
Toledo (Tulayţula in Arabic). After a forced march of over 500 km he
seized the Gothic capital, thus taking full advantage of his initial success.
Within a month, by Dhu l-Hijjdja 92/September 711, Tārik, the first of
the great Berber generals of western Islam, had already put an end to Visi-
gothic rule in the peninsula and ushered in the era of Islamic Spain.

Müsä ibn Nuṣayr joined Tārik at once and finished the work of conquest
with an army of 18 000 men, mainly Arabs. The two commanders met at
Talavera, and Tārik and his Berbers were given the task of conquering the
north-west of Spain. This they set out to do, and within three months, in
93/712, they had swept the entire territory north of the Ebro as far as the
Pyrenees and annexed the inaccessible Basque country. There they left a
small detachment of men under Munüsa, a Berber lieutenant who was later
to play a decisive role in the Muslim campaigns in southern France. Before
the period of his command in Spain was over, Tārik, with his Berber
troops, conquered the whole of the region later to be called Old Castile,
occupying Amaya, Astorga and finally León.

In the aftermath of these brilliant successes in Spain, Berbers by the
thousand flooded into the Iberian peninsula. So great was their haste to
come that some crossed the straits on tree-trunks. As soon as they arrived
they took part in the conquest of the rest of the peninsula and in the
Muslim campaign in the south of France. The battle of Poitiers, which put
an end to the Muslims' successes in Gaul, took place in the autumn of 114/
732. Thousands of Berbers stayed on in the south of France during the
next forty years. 23 Many others settled in Spain (al-Andalus, the Arabic
name of Islamic Spain), marrying either Arab or Ibero-Roman wives and
becoming Muslim Andalusians. There were Berber colonies scattered
throughout the peninsula. Their offspring were known as muwalladün, i.e.

22. The site of the battle has never been determined with certainty. The most plausible
suggestions have been the banks of the Guadelete or the Laguna de la Janda, or Jerèz de la
Frontera. But I. Olagüe, 1974, ch. 2, has shown that the battle may have taken place near
the Guadarranque River, not far from Gibraltar.

Andalusians with Arab or Berber fathers and Iberian mothers, and these made up 70 per cent of the population of Islamic Spain. These Andalusians of Berber origin, who were found in all social classes, have left us an endless list of famous names: generals, ministers, theologians, inventors, poets and artists.

The Berbers after the Arab conquest

Once the long-drawn-out conquest of North Africa by the Arabs (642-711) was over, we find a completely new country whose people were undergoing a total transformation in their social, and even ethnic, structures, their way of life, their way of thought and even their conception of the world. Their political, spiritual and cultural relations with the Christian world were severed for nearly ten centuries. From the Atlantic coast to Cyrenaica, the population now looked towards the Arab Muslim East. Little by little, as they became progressively Islamized and Arabized, they felt increasingly that they belonged to that world; such was the strength and depth of this tendency that some of the more important social groupings began to boast of remote pre-Islamic Arab forebears. Later on, professional genealogists worked out family trees that included Arab ancestors, and these were accepted by all Berbers as undisputed fact.

It is surprising to realize how irresistibly the Berbers were attracted to Islam. In the course of the conquest, they adopted the Islamic faith en masse, but at first this acceptance barely constituted more than lip-service. They continued to adhere to Islam because its clear and simple doctrine attracted them. Throughout the period of the conquest, Arab immigrants settled in all parts of North Africa. They came as peaceful newcomers, and were made welcome everywhere. Large Arab settlements were established in many areas in Cyrenaica and the provinces of Ifrikiya. They persisted for many years, especially in the two provincial divisions of Ifrikiya and Mzāb. A considerable proportion of these colonists belonged to the great Arab confederation of Tamīm. Later, during the Aghlabid period (184/800–296/909), these Arab colonies fell into decadence and were gradually absorbed into the local population.

There were also small groups of Arabs, sometimes even single families or individuals, who settled among Berber tribes where they were regarded as teachers; they acted as imāms or religious leaders. This spiritual leadership often developed into political leadership as well, the Arab imām becoming the political head of the tribe. This development involved some Berberization of the Arab colonists in turn. One characteristic example is that of the Arab family of the Banū Ṣāliḥ ibn Mansūr al-Yamanī. In 91/710, the Caliph 'Abd al-Malik offered them as a gift the region of Nakūr, near what is today Alhucemas in northern Morocco. The family settled there, they intermingled with the local population, and the Berber came to recognize them as emirs. Similarly, the Banū Sulaymān ibn 'Abd Allāh ibn
al-Ḥasan, a family of descendants of the Prophet, established themselves in the Tlemcen area where they created a number of Arab-Berber emirates with the collaboration of the local Berbers, while their cousins the Idrīsids of Fez actively worked to promote the Islamization of the western Maghrib from 72/789 onward.

Very often these Arab colonists belonged to one or another of the dissident Islamic sects known as Khāridjites (Khawāridj) that opposed the Umayyad regime. These preached egalitarian doctrines that found ready acceptance among the Berbers.

The great conquests through which the Arabs had expanded beyond their peninsula had been carried out under the banner and in the name of the new Islamic religion. In this initial period, the terms ‘Arab’ and ‘Muslim’ meant the same thing. This tendency to regard ethnic group and religion as identical, instead of fading away as the peoples of the conquered territories were converted, was maintained and even strengthened with the advent of the Umayyad dynasty. The Umayyad empire was effectively an Arab kingdom headed by the Kurayshite aristocracy of Mecca, who had once been the Prophet’s adversaries and had converted only at the last minute. This aristocracy ruled the Islamic state primarily for their own advantage, disregarding the democratic principles characteristic of Islamic doctrine. The new non-Arab converts continued to be treated as second-class citizens and did not enjoy the same rights as Arabs, especially with respect to the taxes to which they were subjected. Aiming to preserve their privileges and their revenues, the Umayyad caliphs apart from the pious ‘Umar ibn ‘Abd al-‘Azīz (99/717–101/720) were never willing to grant the newly converted their rights as members of the Islamic community (umma) or to regard them as equal to the Arabs. It was this policy that produced such a profound crisis under the Umayyad regime, leading to the fall of the dynasty in the mid-second/eighth century. As has often happened historically, ethnic and social tensions found expression in dissident religious movements. In the case of the Berbers, all the necessary conditions were present. The last Umayyad governors introduced a harsh policy that soon provoked a hostile reaction: the Berbers were regarded as a vanquished people, to be governed by force, even though almost all of them had already converted to Islam, had fought for Islam, and therefore considered themselves an integral part of the Islamic empire, on an equal footing with the Arabs. The Berbers complained that they had been poorly rewarded for their services (as was most visibly the case in Spain, where they had been given the less fertile regions as fiefs). So the Maghrib turned away from the Sunnite orthodoxy which represented official Umayyad policy; instead it adopted Khāridjite doctrines. The Khāridjites succeeded in founding communities of their sect in all regions, including such mountainous areas as the Djabal Nafusa, south of Tripoli. These centres of dissidence were established as much by the Berbers themselves as by the Arabs. Both together attacked the Umayyad administration. The general uprising
against the Umayyads that began in the western Maghrib in 123/741 under the administration of the governor ‘Ubayd Allāh ibn al-Ḥabūb was not, as has generally been asserted, a rising of Berbers against the Arabs to drive the latter out of the Maghrib altogether, but rather an Islamic revolt against the Umayyad administration. We shall describe this uprising in detail elsewhere in this volume.24

24. Cf. Chapter 3 above, Chapter 10 below.
The revolt and independence of the Maghrib

The Maghrib under the Umayyads

After the battle of Poitiers (114/732), the centripetal force that had irresistibly drawn a growing number of provinces, both to the East and to the West, into the orbit of Damascus, was spent. Eight years later, in 122/740, the contrary process began; the centrifugal reaction which was to lead to the foundation of several independent states. Between 78/697 and 122/740 there had been eight successive governors at Kayrawān, the regional capital from which all the western Muslim territories were administered, from Lebda, east of Tripoli, to Narbonne, beyond the Pyrenees. Direct government by Damascus of this vast area through Kayrawān lasted for only a little more than forty years. A period of time such as this may seem of little consequence when compared to the duration of Roman, Vandal and Byzantine domination. The results, however, were considerably more significant and more durable. Why is this so? Most probably because the native population, while rejecting foreign domination, gave its genuine support to the values that had been introduced by Islam. As we shall see, their commitment to these values was all the more profound because they contributed in a decisive way to setting in motion and stimulating the forces behind the struggle for freedom.

Rising anger

To understand the difficult beginnings of the new Maghrib, with its independence arising out of conquest, a clear distinction must be made between the presence of the Qur’an and its historical interpretation. Interpretation almost always leads to misinterpretation. The result, in the event, was that the ideal of fraternity, which was supposed to govern relations between Muslims without any distinction as to race, colour or place, was very poorly applied in practice. There was, admittedly, no racism based on doctrine or principle, and no actual segregation, either. Be that as it may, the Arabs were often inclined to consider the Berbers as little more than
The independence of the Maghrib

‘the scum of the earth’, and spread humiliating hadiths about them that were no less harmful and repugnant for being unquestionably apocryphal. In all fairness, however, it must be said, so as not to convey the wrong impression, that some of the most generous Arabs attempted to ennoble them by devising for them some distant Arab, especially Yemeni, ancestry. The aim was, in some measure, to use genealogical fiction, which exerted considerable influence at the time, to win over the Berbers, assimilate them and make brothers of them. This reflected the hesitations and the ambiguous aspects which the Arabs’ behaviour already showed towards the Berbers.

This hesistant approach was to be found in politics. Hassan b. al-Nu’mân, taking up the policies of Abû al-Muhâdjir Dinâr, friend and ally to Kusayla, integrated the Berbers into his army and involved them in the fay’ (sharing of land). His successor, Mûsâ b. Nuṣayr (79/698-95/714), while reconciling considerable sections of the Berber population to himself and surrounding himself with numerous and faithful clients from their midst, including Târik, the celebrated conqueror of Spain, took up the vigorous style of ‘Ukba and waged his pacification campaigns in a forthright manner. Caliph Sulaymân b. ‘Abd al-Malik (96/715-99/717) replaced him by Muḥammad b. Yazîd, to whom he gave, among other things, rigorous instructions on fiscal equity. This trend was further accentuated by the very pious figure of ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-‘Azîz (99/717-101/720) whose governor, a mawlä and also an ascetic, poured all his zeal into spreading Islam and giving it the best possible image. The reign of ‘Umar was unfortunately too brief. When he died, a new governor, Yazîd b. Abî Muslim, trained in Iraq at the austere school of al-Ḥadîjdâj, was dispatched to Kayrawân. So as to maintain the volume of taxes, which had been dwindling as a result of the numerous conversions to Islam, he decreed, contrary to the letter and spirit of the Quran, that those who were newly converted to Islam should continue to pay the ḏîjzîya (poll tax) and went so far as to humiliate his Berber guards by having their hands branded. The guards subsequently assassinated him (102/720-1). This was the first sign of rising anger on the part of the local population and Ibn Khaldûn rightly sees in this the earliest manifestation of the Khâridjîte spirit in the Maghrib.

From then on the situation grew steadily worse. It would be impossible to relate everything in detail here, so we shall therefore quote a text in full that provides a striking summary of the Berbers’ grievances. The following may well actually reproduce the contents of the memorandum left as a last

5. Mawlä (pl. mawâlî): non-Arab Muslim, attached as client to an Arab tribe.
6. Dîjzîya: poll-tax, paid by the non-Muslims (Christians, Jews, etc.).
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

resort with Hishâm b. 'Abd al-Malik (105/724–125/743) by the delegation led by Maysara who, after his final fruitless attempt, was to launch the revolt that marked the beginning of the independence of the Maghrib:

Maysara set off for the Orient at the head of a delegation of some ten persons in order to have a meeting with Hishâm. They requested an audience and encountered many difficulties. They then went to find al-Abrash and asked him to bring the following to the notice of the Prince of Believers:

Our Emir goes campaigning with us and his Arab troops. When he captures any booty, he excludes us from the share-out and says to us: ‘They are more entitled to it than you’. We said to ourselves: ‘All right! Our combat in God’s cause is all the more pure as a result because we get nothing out of it. If we are entitled to it, we give up our entitlement willingly for their profit; and if we are not entitled, in any event we did not want any booty’. They continued: When we attack a city, our Emir also says to us: ‘Forward!’ and he keeps his Arab troops in the rear. We said to our people: ‘Again, all right! Forward! Your share in the battle for God’s cause is all the greater and you are of those men who bear the burden for their brothers. Thus have we saved them, paying with our own lives, and we have sacrificed ourselves in their stead’.

Then it was the turn of our flocks. They set about disembowelling the pregnant ewes in search of the foetuses’ white fleeces for the Prince of Believers. They disemboweled a thousand ewes for one single fleece. We said to ourselves: ‘How simple it all is for the Prince of Believers! But we put up with everything; we let them do whatever they wanted’.

They then pushed our humiliation to the point of abducting any of our daughters who was comely. We then observed that we could find nothing in God’s Book or in Tradition to justify that. And we are Muslims.

Now we wish to know – did the Prince of Believers desire all this, yes or no? 8

Khāridjism, a revolutionary doctrine

Maysara, known as the Despised One (al-hakîr), was a former Berber water-carrier who had become converted to Şûfîte Khāridjism. Under the Umayyads, Khāridjism had been the strongest revolutionary force. It had arisen from the fiîna, 9 or the major crisis that had shaken the Muslim community after the assassination of 'Uthmân (35/656), and had been forged

9. Fiîna: rebellion or civil war among Muslims.
The independence of the Maghrib

first of all into a political theology. This theology had as a common basis, to be found in all forms of Khāridjism, the principle of an elected imām, the highest leader of the community, without distinction as to race, colour or country, power thereby being invested in the best man, 'even if he were an Abyssinian slave with a slit nose'.

There were four movements in Khāridjism that can be listed in descending order of revolutionary extremism: the Azārika, the Nadjadät, the Šufrites and the Ibādites. The first and most violent of these, the Azārika, was exterminated in the Orient by the very forceful al-Ḥadjdjādj around 81/700, and the Nadjadät had practically disappeared from the political scene a few years earlier, around 74/693, before the Maghrib was completely conquered. Subsequently, only the Šufrites and the Ibādites remained. It can be said with some degree of certitude that their propagandists headed westwards around 95/714. It was as if they had shared out their respective areas of influence; the Šufrites to the west of Kayrawān and the Ibādites to the east of it.

What were they bringing to the Maghrib? A revolutionary strategy that had been conceived and put into practice in the East, together with a doctrine adapted to that strategy. The strategy combined ku‘ūd, clandestine subversive action under the cover of takiyya or tactical dissimulation, with khurūdj, open insurrection launched at the appropriate time. The doctrine stressed the absolute equality that reigns among all Muslims, and the illegal nature of the ruling authority of the Umayyads who had come to power through violence. It condemned the unjust nature of this authority, which had repeatedly violated the letter and the spirit of the Qur’an, particularly in fiscal matters. All the main ideological themes were supported by hadīths (sayings of the Prophet) that can be found in the Ibādite Musnad of Ibn Abī’l-Rabī’ and elsewhere. There are, however, no traces of Šufrite writings, but it seems quite reasonable to believe that the two currents – between which there was no hostility – were in agreement on fundamental issues. Revolt against Umayyad tyranny, therefore, was preached not merely as a right but also as an imperative religious duty.

It should also be pointed out that Khāridjism exercised an appeal on account of its austere and rigorous nature. It is quite obvious that there was perfect complementarity between the doctrine, on the one hand, and the psychological, socio-economic or physical environment, on the other. The actual geographical setting was also of some significance. As R. Dozy once wrote, in a few lines that have retained all their vigour despite the passing

10. Al-Rabi’ b. Ḥabīb, Musnad, No. 819; A. J. Wensinck, et al., 1933–69, s.v.
12. Takiyya: dissimulation of true belief in order to escape persecution.
14. Musnad: collection of hadīths arranged according to the names of transmitters, not according to subject matter.
of some hundred years: in the Maghrib, 'Muslim Calvinism had at long last found its Scotland'. However, apart from this almost biological complementarity, the root of the success of Khāridjism is to be found in the fact that the Berbers were caught in the midst of a storm. They felt frustrated, humiliated and oppressed and their grievances had not aroused any interest in Damascus. The storm was now ready to burst; a tide of bitterness had welled up in their hearts. The Şufrite and Ibäđite movements were going to unleash this.

Victories and setbacks

Maysara thus led the revolt under the banner of Şufism (122/740) and was granted the title of caliph, in accordance with the doctrine whereby supreme authority is invested in the most praiseworthy of men, without distinction as to race or social status. Nevertheless, the reign of the first Berber caliph was to be very short. Having retreated to Tangier in the face of the enemy, he was relieved of his command and executed. It was his successor, Khālid b. Ḥumayd al-Zanāṭi who won the resounding victory of the Battle of the Nobles (123/741), which was a humiliating slaughter of the flower of the Arab aristocracy. Towards the end of the same year, this victory was followed by another, equally brilliant and just as complete, on the banks of the Sebü. Among those who died was Kulthüm b. ʿIyāḍ who had been dispatched hurriedly from the East with a sizeable army to save the situation. Everything seemed to suggest that a Berber state was about to be born in the Maghrib, united in the spirit of Şufism.

This was not to be. As triumph came nearer, the seeds of discord were sown among the ranks of the victors. The following year, at the walls of the besieged city of Kayrawān, there were two rival armies. The first, which had established its camp at al-Asnâm, was led by ʿAbd al-Wāḥid al-Hawwārī, while the second, which had chosen to encamp at al-Ḵān, was led by ʿUkāsha. They were defeated one after the other, most unexpectedly, by Hanzala b. Ṣafwān (early 125/743). Rejoicing took place as far away as the East where al-Layth, the Egyptian rival to Mālik, founder of Mālikism, compared this victory to that of Badr.

The new political map and external relations

The Şufrite kingdoms

The map of the Maghrib was completely changed after the turmoil.

Kayrawân, admittedly, had stood firm, but all the western and central Maghrib now lay beyond the reach of the authority of the East. The Khâridjite democratic spirit, with its excessive concern for self-rule, allied to tribal sectarianism, had led to a multitude of states rising from the ruins of centralized Arab authority. The smaller of these states, with their fluctuating boundaries and uncertain life-span, are scarcely known to us. Only the largest kingdoms, which played a leading part in events, have left their mark on history.

The first of these to have been set up was Tâmasnâ, on the Atlantic coast of Morocco, between Salé and Azemmour, and was better known under the disparaging term of the kingdom of the Barghawäta. It was founded by Ṭafirî, of the Zanäta, who had taken part in the Šufrite attack on Kayrawân. It was here that Berber nationalism was carried to the extreme. Šufrite Khâridjism had, in fact, facilitated political freedom, but the spiritual domination of Islam, that is to say submission to ideas imported from abroad, remained. The fourth king of the Banû Ṭafirî dynasty, Yûnûs b. Ilyäš (227/842–271/884) decided to endow his people with a national religion, based on Islam, so as to emancipate them more fully. He declared his grandfather, Sâlih b. Ṭafirî, to have been a prophet and attributed to him a Quran in the Berber language and a whole range of prescribed rites and dietary restrictions even more demanding than those of Islam, and thus considered superior. This, in short, amounted to a kind of cultural emancipation aimed at putting the finishing touches to the political emancipation that had already been achieved. This process, mutatis mutandis, is not unlike certain contemporary phenomena of decolonization. The Banû Ṭafirî succeeded in preserving their independence and their originality for centuries and this is further illustrated in the way their Sunnite Muslim enemies could not refrain from praising their courage and their moral conduct.

While the kingdom of Tâmasnä was being formed, the kingdom of Tlemcen (124/742–173/789), was founded in the central Maghrib by Abû Ḫurra, whose father’s name – Dünnäs17 (=Donnus) – testifies to his Christian origin. Abû Ḫurra had also taken part in the abortive assault on Kayrawân. According to Ibn Khaldûn18 he was raised to the dignity of caliph. His Zanäta kingdom did not, however, outlive him for long. On 15 Radjab 173/8 December 789, Tlemcen, without the slightest resistance, fell under the rule of the Idrîsids.

The third Šufrite kingdom, that of the Banû Wasûl, better known as the Banû Midrâr, was founded at Sidjîlmäsa (140/757–366/976), on what may have been an ancient site, by the Miknäsa Berbers. The kingdom, encompassing the oasis of the Tafilälet and stretching as far as the Dar’â, enjoyed a peaceful existence until 296/909 when the Fâṭimids came to power. The

future Fāṭimid caliph, ‘Ubayd Allāh al-Mahdī, entered Sidjilmāsa disguised as a merchant, where, after some hesitations, he was eventually imprisoned. At the end of 296/September 909, Abū ‘Abd Allāh al-Dā’ī took the town by storm and freed him. Al-Yasā’ b. Midrār was executed and replaced by a Fāṭimid governor who did not manage to stay in power for more than two months. The Banū Wāsūl regained power over the town and were able to govern it despite all obstacles, discarding Ṣufrism for Ibāḍism and finally for Sunnism, until they were ousted, once and for all, by the Zanātā Banū Khazrūn, backed by the Umayyads of Spain. Sidjilmāsa was, first and foremost, a major Saharan trading centre, a resting place on the gold route and a focal point for trade between the countries to the south of the Sahara, the Maghrib and the East. 

Sidjilmāsa, which no longer exists today, has left behind it the memory of a great trading centre whose prosperity and fine dwellings (ksārs) were praised by geographers. Preliminary excavations conducted on the site were regrettably abandoned.  

The Ibāḍite kingdoms

The sphere of influence of Ibāḍism was initially limited to Tripoli. It was an uncomfortable position. It was vital that Tripoli, the key point on the lines of communication between east and west, should be properly defended so as to maintain the link between Kayrawān and the seat of the Caliphate. Thus no publicly recognized Ibāḍite kingdom was ever able to maintain its authority there for any length of time. As described above, insurrection came first from the west; it was Ṣufrite in ideology and led by the Zanātā. The Ibāḍites, who were more moderate and, by necessity, more cautious, began by simply adopting a wait-and-see attitude. They had first organized themselves, in accordance with their theology which admitted the ku‘ūd and kitmān, in preparation for when the right moment came.

This happened in 127/745. Damascus was in the grip of anarchy and Kayrawān had fallen into the hands of ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥabīb, whom we shall return to later. This man made the mistake of having the Ibāḍite leader of the province of Tripoli, ‘Abd Allāh b. Mas‘ūd al-Tudjībī executed. The execution was the signal for khurūd (open insurrection). The two Ibāḍite leaders, ‘Abd al-Djabbār b. Ǧays al-Murādī and al-Hārīth b. Talid al-Ḥadramī, both Arabs, scored victory after victory and finally took

20. These excavations were started at the request of Mohammed El-Fasi, Minister of Education at the time, but were subsequently abandoned by his successors, although showing signs of promise. Mr El-Fasi has drawn our attention to the fact that they led to the discovery of ‘water-ducts with pipes that were enamelled internally’, which would indicate ‘an advanced level of civilization’.  
The independence of the Maghrib

over the whole of the province of Tripoli. Unfortunately for them, like their Sufrite brethren, they too fell under the curse of dissension. They were subsequently discovered dead, each run through with the sword of the other. A Berber, Ismā‘īl b. Ziyād al-Nafusi, became leader and besieged Gabes. This was to no avail, however, as ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥabīb managed to defeat him in 131/748–9 and regained Tripoli, where he massacred the Ibādites on a large scale so as to rid the province of heresy.

All this was in vain, however, as Ibādism survived, and merely reverted to clandestinity, or ku’ūd, with the appropriate structures of kītmān, or secrecy, and takiyya, or tactical dissimulation, which ensured that it could survive until the time came for a new resurgence (zuhūr). Ibādism was to come violently to the fore again on two occasions. It seized power in Tripoli in 137/754, thanks to the state of anarchy which prevailed after the assassination of ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥabīb. From Tripoli, Abū‘l-Khattāb went on towards Kayrawān, which had meanwhile been occupied and cruelly treated by the Sufrite Wafādjam from southern Tunisia. He entered the city in Ṣafar 141/June–July 758 and appointed as governor ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Rustum, the future founder of Tiāret. At long last, Khāridjite banners fluttered in the wind throughout the Maghrib. Was this the end of its link with the East? In fact, this was not to be. In Rabī‘ I 144/June–July 761, Ibn al-Ash‘ath came to raise yet again the black standard of the Abbasids at Kayrawān. Nevertheless, ten years later, the insurrection broke out once more with exceptional violence. Most of the Khāridjite leaders took part, including Abū Kurra and Ibn Rustum, without succeeding, however, in maintaining their alliance. In actual fact, only Abū Hātim, the Ibādite, who had come from Tripoli, put a stranglehold on the capital of Ifrīqiya and reduced the inhabitants to eating their cats and dogs. At the beginning of 155/772, the starving city fell once more into the hands of the Ibādites, but for only a few months. On 19 Dju‘mādā‘ I 155/27 May 772, Yazid b. Ḥātim al-Muhallabī put an end, once and for all, to the attempts of the Ibādites to seize power in the eastern Maghrib.

Tiāret (Tāhert) was the only Ibādite state to have been successfully established for some length of time (144/761–297/910). It was founded by the Persian, ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Rustum who had managed to escape from Kayrawān when it was besieged by Ibn al-Ash‘ath. Around 160/778, he was raised to the status of imām and his influence soon made itself felt in the Orient, whence the Ibādite congregation sent him substantial funds which contributed to consolidating the new state. The dynasty he founded, despite schisms of a serious nature, was never really challenged. The Rustumid state stretched from the central Maghrib as far as the Djabal Nafūsa, rather in the manner of a discontinuous and rather fluid plasma which engulfed the Ibādite faithful. This state, with its ill-defined boundaries, never possessed any complex structure and, beyond the limits of the city of Tiāret itself, the imām’s authority was much more of a spiritual than of a temporal nature. Despite conflicting doctrines, the Rustumids established
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

strong ties of friendship with the Umayyads of Spain and displayed with regard to their neighbours to the east and to the west a position of neutrality which was discretion itself. Only imām 'Abd al-Wahhāb (168/784–208/823) intervened against the Aghlabids by fruitlessly lending his support to the endeavours of his followers from the Djabal Nafūsa to seize Tripoli (196/811–12). Subsequently, in 283/896, Tiāret stood by when Ibrahīm II, in a battle at Mānū, crushed the Nafūsa who had been the spearhead of the kingdom and the faithful followers of the imām.

The decline of Khāridjism and the founding of the Idrīsid kingdom

Khāridjism did not enter the Maghrib alone. At virtually the same time, the i'tīzāl22 of the Wāsilite tendency also won over a number of followers, and the Ibaḍites were obliged to call upon their wisest scholars to compete against them in the public contests of eloquence which created a sensation and were long remembered. A mu'tazilite princedom, governed by a Berber, Ibrahīm b. Muḥammad al-Mu'tazīlī, had even been successfully established at Ayzaradj to the west of Tiāret. Was it the only one of its kind?

Shī'ite proselytism, aimed initially at the East, neglected the Maghrib to begin with. From the middle of the second/eighth century, however, it began to constitute a serious rival there to Khāridjism, which suffered serious setbacks. The reason for this change can be found in the abortive rebellion led by Muḥammad al-Nafs al-Zakiyya at Mecca in 145/762 and in the bloody repression that ensued. Many 'Alīds either elected or were forced to seek refuge elsewhere. Some settled in the Maghrib where they indulged in vigorous religious and political proselytism, greatly assisted by the aura of their descent from the Prophet himself. Abū Sufyān and al-Hulwānī came to settle in the western confines of Ifrikiya in 145/762, where they began to lay the first foundations for the eventual advent of the Fāṭimids. One of the brothers of al-Nafs al-Zakiyya is said to have been sent to the Maghrib on a mission of reconnaissance and proselytism. Thus Khāridjism, with its democratic spirit, was beginning to give way to a diametrically opposed doctrine, theocratic Shiism, which taught that supreme authority must be exercised for the welfare of all by the imām by divine right, descended from the Prophet's line through 'Alī and Fāṭima.

This doctrinal change was at the root of the success of the Idrīsids. Banished from the East after the abortive revolt at Fakh (169/786), Idrīs I, one of the brothers of al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, after a detour via Tangier 'where

22. I'tīzāl: a trend of Muslim theology, of which the teaching is called mu'tazila; cf. Chapter 2 above.
he did not find what he was looking for', eventually came to Wulïlï (Volubilis), an old centre of Christian civilization, where he was welcomed on 1 Rabî' I 172/9 August 788 by the leader of the Awràba Berbers, the Mu'tazilite 'Abd al-Ḥāmid. Six months later, he took the oath of investiture, the bay'a. He immediately embarked on a vast campaign of expansion and Islamization. Tlemcen soon opened its gates to him. His actions caused such concern to the Abbasid caliph that the latter had him assassinated (179/795) by a doctor, al-Shammākh al-Yamānī, sent specially from Baghdad and assisted in his task by Ibrāhīm b. al-Aghlab who was governor of the Mzāb at the time. Nothing was solved by the assassination. Idrīs I left behind him his Berber djāriya (slave), Kanza, who was pregnant. The child was named after his father and government was exercised for him until he could take the oath of investiture or bay'a. Baghdad, however, remained on its guard. An 'Alid, even if he was partly of Berber stock, could constitute a threat, even in a remote area on the fringe of the civilized world. The Caliphate therefore attempted, through Kayrawān, by means of intrigue and bribery, to crush any subversion in its embryonic stage. Rāshid, the faithful client of Idrīs I and one of the best allies of Idrīs II in childhood, lost his life in the cause. Was it to avoid the disadvantages of too lengthy a period of regency that it was decided to proceed with the investiture of Idrīs II as quickly as possible? This in fact took place as early as 187/803, but it is not known under which title; it was possibly that of īmām, in accordance with Zaydite doctrine. This, however, did not put an end to conspiracies. In 192/808, Idrīs II gave orders for the execution of Ishāk b. Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd – the leader of the Awràba who had been at the root of his father's success – for having had dealings with the Aghlabid enemy. Was this a genuine accusation or rather indicative of a desire for emancipation? Was it perhaps to escape from the domination of his Berber protectors that the young king established his quarters the following year on the left bank of the Wādī Fas and surrounded himself with Arabs? With time, however, hostilities between Aghlabites and Idrīsids gradually died away. Each of the movements became too absorbed in its internal problems. It also became clear that the Idrīsids did not constitute a danger for their neighbours, and still less so for the Caliphate. Their original Shi'i beliefs were soon discarded for Sunnism. Thus, to all intents and purposes, the Maghrib came to be divided into three spheres of influence: the Aghlabids in the east, the Khāridjītes in the central region, and the Idrīsids in the west.

Idrīs II pursued the policies introduced by Idrīs I. From Volubilis, and later from Fez and beyond, overall policy consisted of Islamization and Arabization and of extending the borders of the kingdom within the limits of the spheres of influence stated above. Idrīs II ensured that his authority was recognized by the Masmūda of the High Atlas, retained Tlemcen

within his orbit, seized Nefs in the south, but failed in the west where he met with resistance from the Barghawāṭa who were occupying the Tāmasnā plateau along the Atlantic coast.

When he died (in Djamād II 213/September 828), he was the ruler of a large and prosperous kingdom which he divided between seven of his ten sons. This division of the kingdom turned out to be quite disastrous, but it was not initially as complete as had been thought. Muḥammad (213/828–221/836), the eldest son of Idrīs II, was granted Fez and thereby received the right of overlordship. Theoretically, the kingdom remained united. His brothers, comfortably endowed, were supposed to be his vassals and remain under his authority. In actual fact, the arrangement worked badly. The achievements of Idrīs I and Idrīs II in the form of political unification and expansion were followed by the gradual disintegration of the kingdom. Subsequently, with the death of Yaḥyā II (245/859), who was notorious for his loose living, the senior branch of the family lost its regal authority. This fell into the hands of the younger branch, the Banū ʿUmar of Rif. From then on, the crisis took a turn for the worse and was little more than a monotonous series of internal quarrels, disturbances and bloody fights which terminated only when the dynasty came to an end in 375/985.

Having vanished from Morocco, it reappeared in 407/1016 in Cordoba in the person of a short-lived caliph, ʿAlī b. Ḥammūd, a descendant of the Banū ʿUmar.

The far from brilliant and yet inevitable end of the Idrīsid dynasty should not conceal the very important part it played in the destiny of Morocco. From the political standpoint, the Idrīsids were responsible for the emergence of a Moroccan national consciousness that can be traced right through to the present day. It was the Idrīsids who actually constituted Morocco and gave the country its first capital, Fez. In the extreme west of the Maghrib, Fez was to play the part that had been conferred on Kayrawān in Ifrīqiya and on Córdoba in Spain. Thanks to Lévi-Provençal, we now know that Fez was founded first of all by Idrīs I who, in 172/789, built the city on the right bank of the Wādī Fās, populated by Berbers, and subsequently by Idrīs II who, in 193/809, erected a new and better planned one on the left bank opposite the first city. Initially each of the two cities had its own fortified wall, and it was not until the advent of the Almoravids that they were unified. As it benefited from an extremely favourable position on the major east–west axis along the Taza valley, and possessed ample supplies of water, wood, stone for building and clay for pottery, Fez developed rapidly and was the pride of the Idrīsids. As the spiritual centre of the new state, it was and has remained ever since, an intellectual centre of the first order.

At the outset, the kingdom of the Idrīsids, established as it was in a Berber environment, was no more Arab than the kingdom of the Rustu-
PLATE 10.1 A general view of Fez with, in the foreground, the outer city wall, which was rebuilt several times by successive dynasties.

PLATE 10.2 The minaret of the Karāwiyyīn Mosque in Fez.
mids had been Persian. Nevertheless, by accepting refugees from Kayrawân and Cordoba, Fez rapidly became an irresistible centre of Arabization. As early as 189/805, the city welcomed five hundred horsemen, composed of Kays, Azd, Mudlidj, Banû Yahşûb and Šadaf, who had come from Ifrîkiya and Spain. It was from these men that Idrîs II, when he built his new residence, formed his first Arab court. In 202/817–18, Fez opened its gates to the crowds of survivors from the revolt of Cordoba and, in 210/825–6, to new immigrants from Ifrîkiya. Finally, the still famous mosque and university of al-Karawiyîn was founded by a woman from Kayrawân in 245/859. This was to play a decisive role in the religious and cultural history of Morocco. Thus Fez became a capital that was Arab, both politically and intellectually, within a Berber environment. Fez constituted a point of departure for the progress of Arabization and Islamization, not so much through war as through a process of osmosis and influence. Although the Idrîsids were originally Zaydite Shi‘ites, they do not appear to have made any particular effort to impose their doctrine. In fact, they seem to have encouraged the spread of the teachings of Mālik, the great scholar at Medina, perhaps because he had never made any mystery about his sympathy for the 'Alids, especially during the revolt led by al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, the brother of Idrîs I. Thus Mālikism became the dominant school in Morocco during the reign of the Idrîsids.

It should be noted that the success of the Idrîsids had a contagious effect. Other descendants of 'Ali came to win away the central Maghrib from Khâridjism with some success. Al-Ya’kübî, who toured the region between 263/876 and 276/889 listed no fewer than nine 'Alid emirates. The boundaries between these various states were naturally neither rigid nor closed. Despite political conflict and vituperation, people and goods moved quite freely throughout the region, and consequently so did ideas.

The first attempt at independence in Ifrîkiya

After the Battle of the Nobles (122/740), local Arabs began to realize how cut off they had become from their fellow Arabs in the East. Already humiliated and shocked by their defeat, they then had to suffer, on the part of the 'Easterners' who had been dispatched to their aid, the disdain that had usually been reserved for the Berbers. On the banks of the Chelif, the Ifrîkiyan army, commanded by Ḥabîb b. Ali’Ubayda b. ‘Ukba b. Nâfi’, a grandson of the conqueror of the Maghrib, almost turned its weapons, before the very eyes of the Berbers, on the ‘foreign’ reinforcements sent from the East under the command of Kulthûm b.‘Iyād and his cousin, Baldj, such was the offensive nature of the taunting sarcasm these had inflicted on them. In answer to this, ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Ḥabîb proposed a duel between his father and Baldj. An open fight was narrowly avoided.
This incident, however, together with many other corroborating factors, illustrates a phenomenon vital if one is to understand the subsequent development of the situation, namely the growth of a genuine local national consciousness in the minds of the Arabs of the Maghrib, particularly among those of the second or third generation who, having been born in the country, had never seen the East. It is this phenomenon that will provide a basis for understanding a whole series of events that would otherwise remain unintelligible.

It is thus easier to understand how 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥabīb, who had embodied Ifrīkīyan dignity in the face of Baldj's disdain, succeeded in expelling from Kāravān Ḥanzala b. Safwān (covered in glory from his victory over the Berbers, but nevertheless a 'foreigner') and in founding the first independent state in the eastern Maghrib (127/744-137/754). Acting undoubtedly in collusion with the leaders of the Ifrīkīyan army, he had only to land at Tunis from Spain where he had prepared his plot, in order to be raised to power. With independence, the Ifrīkīyan army immediately recovered from its recent humiliation and defeat and regained its former mettle. We are told that under the command of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ḥabīb, the army 'would never again admit to defeat' and inspired terror.

wherever it went. In 135/752–3, it successfully attacked Sicily, Sardinia and Tlemcen.

'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Ḥabīb was at the head of a state with an Arab leadership and living under a Sunnite doctrine; a doctrine that was anxious to preserve the spiritual unity of the Muslim community (umma). In view of this, he was bound to seek a modus vivendi with the Caliphate, i.e. with Damascus first, whose end was near, and then with Baghdad. He took without demur the oath of allegiance (bay'a) to the Abbasid Caliph. This meant that he officially recognized the new regime hoping, in return, for the sake of his own power, for de jure recognition that would confirm and strengthen the independence which existed in fact. Al-Ṣaffāḥ (132/750–136/754) gave the impression of having implicitly accepted such a development in relations between Baghdad and Kayrawān. However, his successor, Abū Dja'far al-Mansūr (136/754–158/775) clearly expressed his desire to return to the situation as it was before, especially with regard to fiscal regulations and the traditional supply of slaves. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Ḥabīb knew only too well how disastrous the consequences of such demands would be. He gave the Caliph a blunt answer: 'Today, Iṣrā'īliya has become entirely Muslim. We no longer have the right either to make slaves or to bring pressure to bear on the population. Above all, make no demands on me for money'. This was the breaking point, followed shortly afterwards by the assassination of 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Ḥabīb and by the failure of the first attempt at independence which he represented. This independence collapsed into anarchy, which Ibaḍite Khāridjism attempted to use to its advantage but to little lasting avail.

The Aghlabids

Abū Dja'far al-Mansūr succeeded in bringing Iṣrā'īliya back into the fold for another forty years or so (144/761–184/800). Over that span of time, the country only experienced law and order when the first two Muhallabids (155/772–174/791), after the second abortive attempt of Ibaḍism to establish itself at Kayrawān, managed to assert themselves through their personal stature and experience. Their efforts constituted a timorous attempt at establishing a dynasty. This did not, in fact, meet with success and, from 178/794 onwards, the bitterness of the struggle between the rival factions of the djund (Arab army) to seize power by force reached such intensity that Iṣrā'īliya became completely ungovernable. The region was now just a source of unending concern to the Caliphate, and weighed heavily on the treasury. Besides, Baghdad was increasingly in a position in which it could not afford to intervene militarily. Heeding the wise counsel of Harthama b. A'yān, Ḥārūn al-Rašīd decided accordingly to grant Iṣrā'īliya the in-

dependence that it would undoubtedly have taken by force. This decision was all the more easily arrived at through the opportune presence of a valid representative, Ibrāhīm ibn al-Aghlab, the founder of the Aghlabid kingdom (184/800–909).

Ibrāhīm b. al-Aghlab was not an unknown figure. His father had governed Ifrīkiya (148/765–150/767) and had died there. He himself was appointed vice-governor of the Mzāb (179/795) by Harthama b. A’yān, who was governor of Ifrīkiya at the time (179/795–181/797), and immediately gave proof of his allegiance to the Abbasids by contributing effectively to the struggle against the Idrīsids. In 181/797, he was raised to the rank of governor and soon had yet another opportunity to display his loyalty and discipline. In the contest for power launched by the insurrection of Tammām, vice-governor of Tunis, he chose to play the part of a champion of legality. He defeated the rebel and re-established the legal governor, the colourless Muhammad b. Mukātil al-‘Akkī. Had he been totally disinterested in acting in such a way? Was his action the result of a shrewd calculation? Whatever his motives, the fact remains that he was insistently urged and invited to take al-‘Akkī’s place. He only gave in to these solicitations on his own terms, namely that he would accede to the status of emir provided that he could not be unseated and that the title would be hereditary. He offered in exchange to give up the subsidy of 100 000 dinars made over to Ifrīkiya from the kharādji of Egypt and to contribute, for his part, an annual due of 40 000 dinars to the treasury of Baghdad. Al-Rashīd accepted the proposal, which in fact was quite advantageous to both parties. Ifrīkiya could not indeed remain the exception to the rule and be left out of the movement for independence launched in 122/740 by the revolt of Maysara.

However, the independence of Ifrīkiya was achieved through negotiations, without any schism or break with Baghdad.

The first three rulers of the new dynasty devoted their efforts to consolidating their regime. Naturally, they were not able to avoid rebellions within their army. The most serious of these insurrections, which nearly toppled the Aghlabid throne, was fomented by Manṣūr al-Ṭunbudhī (209/824–828). Its ultimate failure marked the beginning of a period of peace and maturity during which Ifrīkiya enjoyed a period of legendary prosperity. Abū Ibrāhīm Ahmad (242/856–249/863) left behind him the memory of an ideal prince, entirely devoted to the interests of his subjects. He had many ribāts built for the defence of the coast and, to ensure an adequate water supply for Kayrawān, he equipped the city with cisterns which arouse admiration even today. The golden age, followed soon after by the decline, occurred under the reign of Ibrāhīm II (261/875–902) which began very auspiciously. His subjects enjoyed a system of equitable justice and wise government. However, the king unfortunately suffered from melancholia and his mind gradually became unbalanced. He made

---

28. Ribāt: cf., for the various meanings of the term, Chapter 13 below.
PLATES 10.4(a–b) The ribāṭ of Sūs. Excavations revealed that it was built on pre-Islamic foundations

PLATE 10.4(a) (above) View of the surrounding wall, single entrance gate and minaret tower

PLATE 10.4(b) (below) Inner courtyard showing the two-storey structure: the small dome crowns the monumental entrance
more and more exactions and committed more and more political errors, providing Shi‘ite proselytism with excellent advantages.

Shi‘ite proselytism, with Abu ‘Abd Allah al-Dâ‘î as spokesman preaching among the Kutâmâ Berbers of Kabylia, proclaimed the advent of the Mahdî, or Saviour, who would establish a paradise of justice on earth where the Divine Sun, rising in the west, would shine at last with equal intensity on all. Proselytism of this kind met with success, and the Aghlabid regime, possessing vast material resources but deprived of popular support, was accordingly overwhelmed by the hordes sweeping down from the impoverished mountain areas and taking possession of the fertile valleys. The decisive blow fell in the region of El-Kêf, at al-Urbus (22 Djamâdâ II 296/18 March 909). Ziyâdat Allâh III, carrying off the riches hoarded by his ancestors, fled at night by torchlight from the opulent princely city of Rakûda which had been founded by his grandfather. On the following day, the city was looted and plundered.

The independence movement whose ebb and flow we have just studied was not limited to the Maghrib. Spain, for instance, underwent very similar developments but was hardly influenced by Khâridjism. Here, the struggle took place primarily between the two major Arab tribal groups, who were traditional enemies, the Kays and the Kalb. Yûsuf b. ‘Abd al-Rahmân al-Fihrî, a cousin of ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Hâbib, seemed at first to be gaining the upper hand (129/747–138/756). His plans were finally thwarted by a leading figure, the Umayyad, ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Mu‘âwiya b. Hishâm b. ‘Abd al-Malik, whose mother, Râh, was a Berber captive from the Nafza tribe. He escaped to the Maghrib from where, after a veritable odyssey, he was able to re-enter Spain and found an independent emirate. In 316/929, the eighth sovereign of the dynasty, ‘Abd al-Rahmân III, transformed the emirate into a caliphate, thereby following the example set by the Fâtimids. This was the golden age of Muslim Spain.

External relations

The Maghrib of the Middle Ages, with its extension into the Iberian peninsula, had interests which lay in two directions; northwards, to the Christian world, a land of trade and djihâd and southwards, to Africa south of the Sahara, the source of gold. With the advent of the Arabs, the Maghrib entered into a particularly active phase of its history characterized by territorial and economic expansion, a process that was both violent and peaceful.

The tide of expansion beyond the Pyrenees was halted once and for all in 114/732. The emirs of Cordoba were subsequently forced into a defensive djihâd aimed at containing Christian pressure on their northern border. The final loss of Barcelona as early as 185/801 illustrates the very modest success of the djihâd. The final thrust from the Maghrib towards Europe was launched in the third and fourth centuries from Kayrawân. Ziyâdat
Allāh I (201/817–223/838), to relieve some of the pressure on Ifnkiya which was enduring constant rebellions within the djund, seized the opportunity offered to him by Euphemius, the patrician of Sicily, for intervening in the island, despite opposition from most of the fākīhs, who wished to abide by the treaties binding the two kingdoms. The attack was led by Asad b. al-Furāt, a kādi who was in favour of the campaign. The conquest, in which Kayrawān was opposed by Byzantium, soon became a difficult and laborious task. Begun in 212/827, it did not end until some fifty years later with the capture of Syracuse (264/878). In the meantime, the Aghlabids settled in Calabria, in southern Italy, from where they harassed several southern towns. The foray most sorely felt by all Christendom was that against Rome, which was attacked from the sea on 23 August 846. After three months of devastation, during which even the Holy Places were not spared, the tragedy came to an end when, on the journey home, the army perished in a storm. The alarm that gripped all of southern Italy was increased still further when Ibrāhīm II, assuming personal responsibility for directing operations, landed on Italian soil in Rajab 289/June 902, fired by the foolish design of reaching Mecca via Rome and Byzantium. The venture came to a close some months later when the emir, suffering from dysentery, expired beneath the walls of Cosenza (17 Dhu l-Ḵa’da 289/23 October 902). From then on, the retreat began. It should be noted that these events enabled a small Muslim emirate, founded by mercenaries who were initially in the pay of the Italian princes, to hold its ground in Bari from 847 until 871.29

These violent clashes, which are but the accidents of history, should not conceal from us the existence of peaceful, fruitful relations which were maintained even during the hostilities. Fifty years of conflict, marked by some twenty naval expeditions launched between 84/703 and 135/752, mainly against Sicily and Sardinia, were followed by fifty years of total peace in the western Mediterranean (752–807) during which truces were concluded and ambassadors exchanged. The best known of these missions was the one which set off from Baghdad via Kayrawān to Carolingian Gaul in the spring of 801. Contrary to what H. Pirenne thought, there was no break between the Empire of Muhammad and that of Charlemagne.30

Trade was maintained and even included materials of strategic value, such as copper, iron or weapons – which Ifnkiya supplied to Sicily – despite the ban imposed by the Church on the one hand, and the protests of the fākīhs on the other. At the height of the war in Sicily, Naples, Amalfi, Gaeta, Venice and Genoa, among other ports, maintained their trade with the Maghrib and did not hesitate to conclude alliances with it. One particular event is of special significance. In 266/880, just off the Lipari Islands, an Aghlabid fleet suffered a severe defeat. It was reported that the quantity of

30. On the Pirenne thesis see Chapter 1 above.
The independence of the Maghrib

oil seized was such that it brought about an unprecedented drop in the price of this commodity in Byzantium. It was quite obviously a trading fleet on its way to Italy which was caught up unexpectedly in the battle. This goes to show that the trade routes established since Antiquity were still in use and had weathered upheavals of all kinds. There are many other indications pointing in the same direction. One, in particular, deserves to be stressed here, namely that the papal bulls of John VIII were written on Muslim papyrus.

Relations with Africa south of the Sahara were devoid of violence during the period under consideration. Africa, admittedly, supplied slaves, but this was not, within the context of the period, necessarily a violent activity, nor for that matter a specifically African concern. Naples, for instance, sold white slaves or šakāliba to the Maghrib, and the part played by Verdun in the trading of eunuchs is well known. In this instance, it would be useful to remind ourselves of the fact that the term ‘slave’ is derived from the medieval Latin *sclavus*, which came from slavus (=Slav). The Slavs, traded under the name of Šakāliba, had constituted an abundant source of servile labour in the Middle Ages. In Kayrawān or in Cordoba, the Africans purchased in the regions south of the Sahara served primarily in the army. They thereby contributed very efficiently to Ifrīktīyan expansion in Sicily and southern Italy, and inside Muslim Spain they consolidated the authority of the Aghlabid and Umayyad emirs.

Trade with sub-Saharan Africa went back to early Antiquity and was conducted mainly along two routes, one along the Atlantic coast, and the other ending at Zawīla in the south of Libya. The volume of trade was, however, modest. As the Maghrib entered the Arab Muslim world, trade, from the eighth century onwards, developed on an unprecedented scale. The main trade route at that time linked Awdāghust (Tegdaoust?) to Sidjilmāsa which was a veritable fountainhead for the distribution of gold from Bilād al-Sūdān. We know the surprise and admiration felt by Ibn Ḥawkāl, the geographer and merchant, when he visited Awdāghust in 340/951 and saw a cheque for 42000 dinars made out to a merchant of the city by a colleague from Sidjilmāsa. The cheque, symbolizing the volume of trade between these two centres, also demonstrates that the banking system, which has been studied so painstakingly by Goitein with regard to the East, through the documents of the Geniza, also underpinned the trading activities of the western territories of Islam. Sidjilmāsa was like the hub of a wheel from which the routes, like spokes, led off to Fez, Tangier and Cordoba; to Tlemcen and Tiāret; and towards Kayrawān and the East. These trade routes continued towards Europe across Sicily and Italy,

31. Mr Mohammed El-Fasi informs me that ‘even today, houses in Fez still have a room on the first floor called Şaklabiyya, because it was reserved in former times for the white slaves (Şakāliba).
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

across the Iberian peninsula, or more directly via what Charles Courtois called the 'island route' which went past Sardinia and Corsica and ended up in Provence. [34]

Within this framework of multiple movements of people and goods, the wealthy merchant was also on occasion an ambassador or an influential political figure. This is precisely what happened to 'Muḥammad b. ʿArafa, a fine, distinguished and generous man who was sent to bear a precious gift to the King of the Sudan by Aflah b. ʿAbd al-Wahḥāb' (208/823–258/871), imām of Tiāret. [35] Muḥammad b. ʿArafa, who was immensely wealthy, subsequently held the highest positions in the Rustumid capital. The embassy with which he was entrusted was the earliest one that we know, from diplomatic records, to have taken place between the Maghrib and sub-Saharan Africa.

Society and culture
Density and variety of population

The Maghrib of the Middle Ages was never as populous as it was in the third/ninth century, a fact which accounts in some way for its expansion overseas. Furthermore, the prevailing trend at the time, quite unlike that of later periods, was towards the sedentarization of the nomads who populated the central Maghrib and the areas bordering on the Sahara, and towards urbanization. The four major political and cultural capitals of the region – Kayrawān, Tiāret, Sidjîlmāsa and Fez – were the fruit of an Arab Muslim culture. Kayrawān in the third/ninth century certainly had several hundred thousand inhabitants, and Ibn Hawkal believed that Sidjîlmāsa was equally populous and prosperous. [36] The concentration of the population in towns was not the same throughout this part of the world. The eastern Maghrib, Sicily and Spain, for instance, were the most urbanized areas. It is not possible, here, to mention all the major towns. Let it be noted, however, as a guide, that Córdoba is estimated to have had a population of a million in the fourth/tenth century. [37]

The distinguishing feature of society was its very varied composition. The population of the Maghrib had as its basis the Berbers, mentioned in the previous chapter, who were themselves very diverse. Spain was populated mainly with Iberians and Goths. Various foreign elements were merged with these two basic substrata, especially at the outer limits of the region. Until the mid-fifth/eleventh century, the Arabs were few in number. In Ifrīkiya for instance, there were several tens of thousands, pos-

34. C. Courtois, 1957.

266
The independence of the Maghrib

sibly a hundred thousand or a hundred-and-fifty thousand at the most. The Arabs were even less numerous in Spain and there were practically none in the Maghrib, where traces of their presence can only be found in Tiaret, Sidjilmâsa and Fez. The Berbers, mostly from northern Morocco, had for their part spread into the Iberian peninsula where they outnumbered the Arabs. In addition to these, there were two other ethnic components whose numbers and specific role are even harder to evaluate. On the one hand, there were the Europeans – peoples of Latin, Germanic or even Slavonic origin – considered globally to be Şakāliba, or slaves; on the other hand, there were the blacks, inextricably associated with the life of wealthy or comfortably-off families or who served in the personal guard of the emirs, as has already been stated.

The social strata

Medieval society in the western territories of Islam was composed, as in recent Antiquity, of three categories of men: slaves, former slaves, generally called mawâli, and freemen by birth.

The slaves were very numerous in major urban areas, but virtually unknown in areas with a predominantly nomadic population and strong 'tribal' structures. If we estimate them to have formed one-fifth of the population of the major cities of Ifnkiya and Spain, one has the impression, reading the documents we have at our disposal, that this is well below the real figure. As in other social strata, there were those that were fortunate and those that were less so. The slaves were to be found in the harems – as white or black favourites and eunuchs – as in every sector of economic life and at all levels, ranging from the wealthy steward managing his master's fortune, to the hard-working peasant or the wretched servant who was the hewer of wood and drawer of water. Generally speaking, however, the status of the slave was unenviable, despite the safeguards provided by the fikh or law, and the exceptional success of certain slaves. Their economic role was, however, immense as they were the machine tools of the time. One has the clear impression that, in the eastern part of the Maghrib and in Spain, a very considerable proportion of domestic, craft and rural workers were slaves or semi-slaves, especially on the large estates that sometimes encompassed several villages. However, the status of the slave, no matter how unpleasant it might have been, never lasted indefinitely. There was always a way out. It is a well-known fact that the Quran lays considerable emphasis on the merits of enfranchisement. Accordingly, the ranks of slaves, through the combined effect of enfranchisement and the purchase of liberty, were constantly thinned out as slaves aspired to move up to another and equally numerous social category, that of the mawâli. Social mobility, which really did exist, worked in favour of freedom.

The mawâli, though legally free through enfranchisement, continued to live in their former master's entourage, thereby constituting his clientele. A
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

motley collection of humble folk also belonged to the *mawālī*. Non-Arabs, they deliberately put themselves under the protection of an influential person, an Arab, and adopted his *nisba* or ‘tribal’ ancestry and consequently became a member of his *gens*. Both patrons and clients found advantage in the organic ties of the *wala*.* The client benefited from his master’s protection, while the patron acquired prestige and power according to the size of his clientele.

The freemen in general were divided into two classes: the aristocratic minority, influential and usually wealthy, the *khāssa*; and the majority of plebeians, the *‘āmma*. The *khāssa* was the ruling class, with somewhat ill-defined boundaries. It consisted of the elite by birth or by military tradition, the intellectual elite, and, in general, all persons of any wealth. The influence of some members of the *khāssa* — such as the Ibn Ḫumayd, a family of Aghlabid viziers who had grown immensely rich through the ivory trade — occasionally reached fabulous proportions. The *‘āmma*, on the other hand, was composed of a variety of peasants, small farmers, craftsmen, shopkeepers and a mass of labourers who hired out their services in the fields and in the towns. At the lowest levels of the *‘āmma*, the most wretched lived in almost complete destitution. None the less, hope of gaining admittance to the *khāssa* was not denied to the members of the *‘āmma*. No rigid legal structure acted as an obstacle to this.

Religious and racial osmosis

On top of the ethnic and social barriers between men were others of a religious nature which did not necessarily follow the same paths. At the time of the conquest of the Maghrib, traditional religion, Judaism and Christianity existed side by side. Islam attracted a following from all social classes and by the ninth century had become without any doubt the religion of the majority. While virtually nothing remained of traditional religion, Judaism and Christianity retained a considerable following among the native populations. These followers were the traditional *dhimmīs*, or protégés of Islam, who, in addition to religious freedom, enjoyed a separate fiscal and legal status. In Spain, they had a *comes* as their leader, sometimes referred to also as *defensor* or *protector*. Apart from occasional short periods of agitation, many anecdotes point quite clearly to the fact that *dhimmīs* and Muslims led the same kind of life and usually lived on good terms with each other. There is no indication of the existence of a ghetto or of any religious riots. What is more, the degree of harmony was such that in some instances, certain Christians, particularly in the lower classes, gave genuine veneration to the celebrated Muslim ascetics in their community. Harmony of this kind went one stage further within the confines of family life. *Djāriyas*, or slave-wives to Muslims, who had retained their Christian or Jewish convictions,

38. *Wala*: relationship between the master and the dependent person or freed slave.
were, in fact, quite common. The children born of such mixed marriages usually took up their father’s religion. Sometimes, however, a strange compromise was reached, as in the case of certain social groups in Sicily where the daughters adhered to the religion of their mother.

Similarly, colour prejudice was quite unknown in the western territories of Islam during the Middle Ages. The Arabs undoubtedly believed themselves to be superior, as we have already stressed, but they mingled willingly with other races. Black *djāriyas* were appreciated no less than others, and mulattoes, free from any complex whatsoever, moved freely at any level in the social hierarchy. Religious and racial diversity was thus an inherent part of the basic structure of the family unit. Hence, as inter-religious and inter-racial marriages became more frequent, family lineage, despite the leading role conferred on the father by Arab tradition, became more obscure. It is a fact of life that blue blood gradually thins and loses its colour. In short, Hispano-Maghribian society, amazingly tolerant as it was during a medieval period reputed to have been one of fanaticism, and particularly composite and heterogeneous at its two extremes, was a network of cells which were both very specific and also intimately inter-related through a system of multiple and intricate ties.

Language, arts and sciences

Several languages were spoken in the western territories of Islam during the period under consideration. First and foremost were the Berber dialects, all very different from each other, and very widespread throughout the Maghrib especially in the rural and mountainous areas where Arabic could not easily penetrate. These dialects, however, never followed the armies to the northern coast of the Mediterranean. Indeed, no trace whatsoever of Berber dialects has been found in Spain and Sicily where the local tongues had to compete exclusively with Arabic. In Spain, a Hispano-Romance language, derived from Latin, did develop and came to be widely used both in the countryside and in the cities. Similarly, traces have been found of an Ifrīkiyan-Romance language which must have been particularly widely used among Christian city-dwellers. All these were essentially oral languages. The only cultural or written language was Arabic, which was used not only by the Muslims, but also by the dhimmit who, judging by the example of the Jew, Maimonides, were able to use it in some instances for expressing particularly vigorous ideas.

There were a considerable number of cultural centres. Every provincial capital, and all the major towns had their poets, their *adīhs* (men of letters) and their theologians or *fākīhs*. There were times when the most famous theologians were sought out — as when Tīaret was threatened by the *ītīzāl*

40. Maimonides (d. 1204), a native of Cordoba, a famous physician and philosopher.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

— even in the fastnesses of the mountains of Nafūṣa. However, the only detailed information we have at our disposal today concerns the three centres that were unquestionably the most outstanding, viz. Kayrawān, Cordoba and Fez. In these centres, as throughout the western territories of Islam, literature drew most of its inspiration from the East. Throughout the breadth of Islam, it was the same poets and the same adībs who awakened admiration, and the same literary paths that were pursued. The riḥla or journey, combining the virtues of study with those of a pilgrimage, maintained close and uninterrupted communication between the capitals of the West and those of the East. The peoples of the Maghrib, in particular, entertained for their masters in the East admiration that verged on superstition. People and ideas moved from one country to another at a speed that is all the more surprising as communications were slow, arduous and even dangerous. The best illustration of the presence of Eastern culture in the heart of the Muslim West is perhaps the 'Ikād al-Farīd, the anthology compiled by the adīb from Cordoba, Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi (246/860–328/939). It is composed essentially of extracts from Eastern authors, so much so that al-Sāhib b. 'Abbād, the celebrated Buyid vizier and man of letters of the second half of the fourth/tenth century, is said to have exclaimed on looking at it: ‘These are our own goods being sent back to us!’

Nevertheless, Kayrawān, Cordoba and the other big towns had poets and men of letters who, although they did not attain the renown of the great Oriental poets, would not have been out of place in the 'Ikād. In Cordoba, for example, there were the eulogist, Ibrāhīm b. Sulaymān, who sang the praises of 'Abd al-Rahmān II (207/822–238/852), Faradj b. Sallām, lexicographer, poet and doctor of medicine who, while on a journey in Iraq, befriended al-Djāhiz (d. 255/868) whose works, especially the Bayān, he introduced into Spain; and 'Uthmān b. Muthannā (179/795–273/866) who brought back from the Orient the Diwān by the illustrious Abū Tammām who had been his master in poetry. In Ifrīkiya too, no less than in other parts of the Muslim world, there was among the educated classes a taste for verse, and everyone was something of a poet. There were even some princes who were quite proficient at writing verse, such as Mūḥammad b. Ziyādat Allāh II (d. 283/896) who compiled two anthologies, both of which have unfortunately been lost: Kitāb Raḥīṭ al-Ḳalḥ and Kitāb al-Zahr. Mention should also be made of Lakū al-Mardjān, Risālat al-Wāḥida and Kutb al-Adab, all lost, by Abū' 1-Yusr al-Kātib (d. 298/910–11) who had directed the chancellery for the Aghlabids and the Fāṭimids. The capital of the Aghlabids also had its philosophers who were sufficiently eminent to have been classified separately by al-Zubaydı in his Ṭabaḳāt al-Nahwīyyīn (The Classes of Grammarians). It would seem, however, that philosophy, which was already beginning to achieve some

41. Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi (1876).
recognition in the Orient with al-Kindî (d. c. 256/870), was not, and never was to be, accepted in Ifríkiya. The city that Sîdî 'Ukba dedicated to the defence of Islam could not come to terms with freedom of thought that was as suspicious as this. This discipline was as yet only in its infancy, even in Spain where it was subsequently explored by masters of world renown, especially Ibn Masarra (d. 319/931). 42

Throughout the Muslim world of the Middle Ages, people not only enjoyed occasional indulgence in verse writing and philosophical discussion, but also enjoyed drinking (some intoxicating drinks, such as nabîdî, were considered lawful by certain schools of fiqh), singing and dancing, especially at the court and in aristocratic or bourgeois circles. A whole set of rules of etiquette, which is reflected in literature, was instituted to govern polite conduct in such circumstances. Ifríkiya and Spain in particular, were no exceptions to the rule. The ǧârîyas, trained in the singing and dancing schools of Medina and Baghdad, were much sought after and their price sometimes involved stupendous sums. Famous composers were similarly sought after. One of these, Ziryâb (173/789–238/852) built up a private fortune and exerted considerable influence. Ziryâb was black and was a mawläss of the Abbasids. As such, he was admitted to the famous singing and dancing school directed by Iṣhâk al-Mawṣili (150/757–235/850). By the skill he acquired and by the gifts he displayed, he soon provoked his master’s feelings of jealousy and had to go into exile. After spending some time in Kayrâwân he went to Cordoba at the invitation of al-Ḥâkam I (180/796–206/822) who sent Mansûr, a Jewish singer at court, to meet him. Al-Ḥâkam died in the meantime and Ziryâb was welcomed by his successor, ‘Abd al-Rahmân II (206/822–238/852) with princely courtesy. Ziryâb brought profound changes to the customs of the court and the ruling class in society. He brought with him refinement and the courtly spirit. He taught the men and women of the court how to behave at table, how to wear make-up, how to groom their hair and adapt their mode of dress to the time of day or to circumstances. Ziryâb’s music, aided by certain instrumental improvements of his own invention, soon replaced all the old melodies and has lived on through the centuries until today. The mālûf, which is still in fashion in the Maghrib today and Spanish flamenco are remotely descended from the revolution brought about in music by Ziryâb. 43

At this time, science had barely gone beyond the stage of infancy in Spain. In Kayrâwân however, the school of medicine, with such masters as Iṣhâk b. Ḳawf and Ziyâd b. Kalfûn (d. 308/920–1) already enjoyed a certain renown. The third/ninth century should be remembered especially, apart from achievements in military and court architecture, for two of the finest monuments of Islam, the mosque of Kayrâwân, which was built

42. Cf. M. Asín Palacios, 1914.
chiefly by the Aghlabids, and the mosque of Cordoba which, although founded by 'Abd al-Rahmān I in 169/785, did not reach completion until two centuries later under the rule of the mighty ‘Master of the Palace’, Ibn Abī Āmīr (377/988). It should also be noted that the celebrated university and mosque of al-Karawīyyīn, in Fez, was founded in 245/859 by a woman from Kayrawān.

Religious thought

Throughout the Middle Ages, cultural matters remained essentially in the hands of ecclesiastics, that is to say, fākīhs, in the Muslim world. In the third/ninth century no school of thought had yet gained the upper hand, so there existed relative freedom of thought and the violence of passionately held beliefs. Strangely enough, the capital city where freedom of thought was most inhibited was Cordoba. There was greater tolerance, as Ibn al-Ṣaghīr has proved, at Tiāret, though it was dominated by the Ibādītes, reputed for their intransigence. As for Kayrawān, it is an accepted fact that from the mid-third/ninth century onwards, the Great Mosque was open to the various circles of Ibādītes, Ṣufrites and Mu'tazilites, who dared to plead and openly teach their ‘unorthodox’ or ‘heretical’ opinions before the
PLATE 10.6 Door and blind arches of the west façade of the mosque at Cordoba
very eyes and ears of the Sunnites. This tolerance, however, whether broad or limited, was not, of course, indifference. Not by any means. The debates were lively, vociferous and sometimes led to violent disputes followed by blows. This was the case, for example, of Asad (d. 213/828), the undisputed champion of Sunnism in his day, who, with kicks, made Ibn al-Farrāʾ, the leader of the Muʿtazilite school, retract there and then a statement that dared to contradict him, before his own congregation, on the question of the vision of God in eternity.44

The third/ninth century was an era with a passion for law and theology, a vast enterprise for constructing and organizing the present and the future. Assertions, denials, refutations and counter-refutations followed each other in succession, either verbal or written, but invariably vehement and indignant. On the one hand, the Muʿtazilites in power in Kayrawān delved into the arsenal of dialectics, while on the other, the Sunnites, who constituted a majority within the population and often played the part of the opposition, drew their inspiration from tradition. The Ancients and the Moderns were already at loggerheads! We shall be publishing in the near future a collection of polemical works which conjure up the atmosphere that prevailed in Kayrawān at the time.

What was the subject of conversation? Irdāʾ, or faith and redemption. Was faith merely a matter of conviction or was it the formulation of beliefs and their translation into deeds? Practical problems of politics and ethics stood out against the backcloth of this abstract and metaphysical debate. The question of free will and predestination or ķadar was also an obvious subject for discussion. As the central, formative problem of the iʿtīṣāl, ķadar has been at the root of much controversy in all religions and philosophies without anyone ever having really succeeded in squaring the circle. We know today that this problem fired the enthusiasm of the Ifrikiya people and that the debates held beneath the walls of the ribāṭ at Susa led to considerable commotion. There was lively enthusiasm for a host of other questions: the attributes of the Deity; the vision of God in the afterlife; the essence of the Qurʾān; etc. Theology, therefore, was at the very heart of all discussions and pervaded all aspects of public life. The third/ninth century can therefore be said to have been a period of intense intellectual activity.

Subsequently, from the mid-third/ninth century onwards – when Saḥnūn (160/777–240/854) expelled the ‘myrmidons of heresy’ from the Great Mosque of Kayrawān – when orthodoxy was beginning at last to gain the upper hand, the wrangling went on unabated. Disputes emerged and developed within Sunnism and similar feuds were occurring in the ranks of the Ibāḍites or Sufrites.

Against this background of passion, polemics and strife, the presence of a few illustrious fakīhs stood out clearly. In Spain, there were ʿĪṣā b. Dīnār, (d. 212/827), ʿAbd al-Malik b. Ḥabīb (d. 238/852), and, above all, Yahyā b.

The independence of the Maghrib

Yaḥyā al-Laythī (152/769–234/849), the Berber mawlä. In Kayrawān, there were Asad b. al-Furāt (142/759–213/828) and his rival, Saḥnūn b. Saʿīd al-Tanūkhī. All, except Asad, who was claimed especially by the Hanafites, were instrumental in the triumph of Mālikism in the western territories of Islam. Saḥnūn played a particularly decisive role in these developments, and his Mudawwana, a monumental legal compendium, put into writing and led to the ultimate pre-eminence of the teachings of Mālik. Saḥnūn was to become venerated as a master and had a remarkable number of disciples. We are told that there were some seven hundred ‘genuine luminaries in every town’. These luminaries spread the word not only in Iṣrīḥiya but also in Spain. Spaniards indeed flocked to Saḥnūn’s lessons in great numbers. They were spoken of in Kayrawān in the third/ninth century as the Scots and Germans were to be spoken of later in Paris. ‘Iyāḍ, in his Madārik, quotes the names of fifty-seven Spanish fakīhs who had carried back to their homeland the teachings of the master of Kayrawān and had made known throughout their country his principal work, the Mudawwana.45

The period which we have just considered, all too briefly, was a decisive one in the history of the Maghrib. It was then that this part of Africa acquired its independence, succeeded in tracing its borders, which have remained virtually unchanged to the present day, and fashioned the principal features of its cultural and spiritual identity.

The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

T. LEWICKI

In this chapter we shall be discussing the history of the Sahara and the role played by that desert in the relations between North Africa and the Sudan between the second/eighth and sixth/twelfth centuries. The sole sources of information on which we can draw to retrace the past of the Sahara during that period, apart from archaeology and tradition, are written sources of Arab origin. The information they provide about the Sahara dates only from the second/eighth century and was initially very sparse. It was not until the fourth/tenth century that it became more plentiful, coming to a peak in the fifth/eleventh and sixth/twelfth centuries in the two great geographical works of al-Bakrī and al-Idrīsī, which abound in details concerning the Sahara and the Sudan.¹

Ecology and population

Owing to the fact that the transition from non-desert to desert areas is generally a gradual process, the boundaries of the Sahara are fairly vague. If, however, various geographical factors are taken into account, and especially the climate, the boundaries of the Sahara can be defined as follows: in the east the natural boundary of the Sahara (including the Libyan Desert) is the Nile, and in the west the Atlantic Ocean. In the north the Sahara extends as far as the Libyan Plateau, the Syrte Desert, Djabal Nafūsa, Shott Djarīd, Shott Meghīr, the Saharan Atlas and Wādī Darʿa, thus taking in the trade centres in the north of the Sahara, such as Fezzān, Ghadāmes, Wādī Righ, Wargla and Sidjilmāsa, which grew rich through trading with the Lands of the Black (Bilād al-Sūdān). As for the southern boundary of the Sahara, it passes roughly through the mouth of the Senegal River, the top of the loop of the Niger River and through the Chad basin (taking in Ennedi), joining up again with the Nile at around 16°N latitude. The dryness of the air and the lack of water, which are basic

¹ For this reason, we have slightly overstepped the chronological limits laid down for this volume.
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

features of the Saharan climate, cause the grazing lands of the Sahara to be very scattered and the palm groves and garden centres there to be rather insignificant, with the exception of the northern Sahara. Partly as a result of these factors, this desert was very thinly populated in the early Middle Ages, as it is today, and vast stretches of the Sahara, as for instance Madjābat al-Kubrā in the western Sahara and the Libyan Desert, were with few exceptions, completely uninhabited. Despite these facts, however, the Sahara was not only a barrier but also a link between the countries of northern Africa and the Sudan, playing an extremely important role in relations, particularly trade relations, between north and south. The rare and difficult caravan routes that crossed this desert were frequented, during the Muslim period, by traders from the Maghrib, Ifrīkiya, Egypt and the various trade centres of the northern Sahara. In this trade between the northern countries and the Sudan the main role was in fact played by North African and Egyptian merchants, alongside Ibādite Berber traders from Bilād al-Djarīd and Sidjīlmāsā.

From the second/eighth to the sixth/twelfth centuries the population of the Sahara was extremely mixed. The western and central Sahara was inhabited by peoples of Berber stock sometimes mixed with black African blood. As for the eastern Sahara, including the Libyan Desert, its northern part was also inhabited by people of Berber stock, while its southern part was peopled by negroid people belonging to the various Tubu groups, such as the Zaghāwa, the Teda and the Daza. These peoples reached as far north as the Kufrā and Taizerbo oases, that is to around the 26°N line of latitude. It is to be noted that certain features of Tubu anthropology and culture suggest a considerable degree of Libyco-Berber interbreeding. It is also to be noted that, during the period under consideration in this chapter, there was no lack of Arabs in the Sahara, including city-dwellers and nomadic herdsmen.

The Berber population of the Sahara, which played an extremely important role in the establishment of relations between North Africa and Egypt, on the one hand, and the Sudan on the other, belonged to two main Berber branches, namely the Şanhdāja and Zanāta branches. The Şanhdāja were mainly nomadic, raising camels, sheep and goats. As for the Zanāta and the other Berber groups related to this branch, such as the Mazāta and the Lawāta, they were partly nomadic and partly sedentary peoples. The impressive oases of Süf, Wādī Rīgh, Wargla, Tidikelt and Tuwāt in the Algerian Sahara were founded by fractions of these groups, probably after the period of Roman domination. These people were experienced well-sikers who bored underground water catchment and supply conduits, known as kanāt in classical Arabic and foggāra in the Arabic dialect of southern Algeria. They also sank artesian wells there. These two practices have a very long history in North Africa and the method of sinking artesian wells was described in the eighth/fourteenth century by the Arab historian Ibn Khaldūn who makes mention of such wells in the villages of Tuwāt,
Gurāra, Wargla and Rīgh. It appears that the Zanāta, whom the Arab invaders encountered in Tripolitania, learnt the art of boring foggāras and artesian wells from the ancient Libyo-Berber peoples of the eastern Sahara. As for the artesian wells in the Egyptian oases, they are mentioned, among others, by Olympiodor, a Greek writer of the fifth century of the Christian era. It is further to be noted that Herodotus (fifth century before the Christian era) mentions the abundance and fertility of the palm trees growing in Augīlā (Awdjila) and in Fezzān where the Garamantes lived.

During the period with which we are concerned here, only the Tubu of the southern half of the eastern Sahara still observed their traditional religion. All the other Saharans, except perhaps a number of Judaized Zanāta in the northern Sahara, gradually became converted to Islam. The Islamization of the Berbers inhabiting the Sahara began as early as the first half of the second/eighth century. According to Ibn Khaldūn, the Ṣanhādjā group of Lamtūna who led a nomadic existence in the western Sahara did not embrace Islam until some time after the conquest of Spain by the Arabs, in other words, in the early half of the second/eighth century. Ibn Khaldūn’s words are corroborated by a passage in the geographical treatise of al-Zuhri (c. 546/1150), according to which al-Murābitūn (the Almoravids), that is to say the Lamtūna of the western Sahara, were converted to Islam during the reign of Caliph Hishām ibn ‘Abd al-Malik (105/724–125/743), at the same time as the inhabitants of the oasis of Wargla.

It is very likely that the Ṣanhādjā and the Zanāta of the Sahara, like the Berbers of North Africa, originally adopted the orthodox form of the Islamic faith. But later, when the North African Berbers rejected Sunnism, owing to the political and fiscal oppression of the Umayyad caliphs, and, around the middle of the second/eighth century, joined (particularly the groups descended from the Zanāta) two Khāridjite sects opposed to the Sunna, namely the Šufrite sect (of radical tendencies) and the Ibādite sect (more moderate). The Saharan Zanāta, or at least some of them, also adhered to these two sects. The Saharans descended from the Ṣanhādjā who were vaguely Muslim in the second/eighth century, did not become orthodox until the middle of the fifth/eleventh century, as a result of Almoravid propaganda. As for the Berbers descended from the Zanāta who lived in the villages of the Tripolitanian Sahara, Sūf, Wādī Rīgh and Wargla, they very early on embraced Ḯudāism, a faith that had been adopted by their brethren in the eastern and central areas of the Berber region, who founded there several imāmates or states. These started with a small imāmate founded in 125/743 by members of the Hawwâra, Nafūsa and Zanāta peoples in the north-western part of Tripolitania, and finished with the Rustumid imāmate of Tāhert, whose first head, ‘Abd ar-Rahmān ibn Rustum, was elected imām in 162/776–7. This imāmate survived until

The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south.
297/909, when it fell before the army of Abū 'Abd Allāh al-Shī'ī, who founded the powerful Fāṭimid empire on the ruins of that state and of other Muslim states of North Africa. All the Ibāḍite Berbers of North Africa recognized the supremacy of the Tāhert imāmate which took in, in the south, the oases of Wādī Rīgh and Wargla. It was to Sadrāta, a town located in the oasis of Wargla, that the last Rustumid imām of Tāhert fled after Tāhert had been conquered by the Fāṭimid army; for a time the thought was entertained there of restoring the Ibāḍite imāmate.

The Miknāsa, who adopted the Sufrite beliefs, settled in Tafilālet in the south-east of present-day Morocco, where they founded a small Sufrite state, the capital of which became the city of Sidjilmāsa, founded in 140/757–8. This city, which was governed by the dynasty of the Banū Midrār and was located on the edge of the desert, soon became a major centre for trade with the Sudan and was ruled by the Sufrite chiefs until the middle of the fourth/tenth century. Despite differences of dogma, relations between the Ibāḍite dynasty of Tāhert and the Sufrite princes of Sidjilmāsa were very friendly. Indeed Arab sources reveal a marriage alliance between these two dynasties in the late second/eighth century and in the early third/ninth century. No doubt the increasing role played by the city of Sidjilmāsa in trans-Saharan trade was the cause of this rapprochement.

Lastly, some groups of the Zanāta, living in the south-western part of present-day Algeria and in the Saharan villages, joined the movement of Mu'tazila, or Wāsiliyya, which was opposed to orthodox Islam just like the Khāridjites. It may be assumed that the area occupied by the Mu'tazilite Zanāta included, on one side, the high plateaux south of Tiāret and, on the other, the Mzāb region whose inhabitants were Wāsilites before being converted to the Ibāḍite faith.

The city of Sidjilmāsa in Tafilālet, capital of the Sufrite state of the Midrārites, was one of the termini of a caravan route linking North Africa to the ancient kingdom of Ghana, the 'land of gold' of the medieval Arab geographers. Through it passed a trade route to the city of Tāhert (present-day Tiāret), the capital of the Ibāḍite imāmate of the Rustumids. At the time of the reign of the first imām, between 160/776–7 and 168/784–5, this became an important political and economic centre. This notable market city attracted not only a large number of North African traders, both Ibāḍite and non-Ibāḍite, but also enterprising Arab merchants from Ƙayrāwān, Başrā and Kūfā. This is revealed to us by Ibn al-Saghīr, an historian of Tāhert, who wrote around the beginning of the fourth/tenth century. A route linking Tāhert to the western Sudan led through Sidjilmāsa to Ghana. Another route linked Tāhert to the city of Gao; it was already in

5. Cf. Chapter 3 above, Chapter 12 below.
use before the death of the Rustumid imám, 'Abd al-Wahhāb in 208/823. This latter route appears to have passed through the oases of Wādī Rīgh and Wargla which were also involved in Tāhert’s Sudanese trade. The Saharan Ibādites continued to engage in trade with the Sudan even after the fall of the Rustumid state in 297/909.

Alongside the Ibādite merchants of Wādī Rīgh and Wargla, the Ibādites of Ghadāmes and Zawīla (in Fezzān) also organized distant expeditions to various Sudanese regions, together with the Ibādite merchants of Bilād al-Djarīd in southern Tunisia and traders from Djabal Nafūsa. The Berber traders who engaged in these relations generally belonged to the various groups of the Zanāta. As for the Saharans of Şanhādja stock, they often served as guides for the caravans equipped by North African traders from Sidjilmāsa, Tāhert, Tlemcen, Kayrawān or Tripoli, and also escorted these caravans under the protection of the Şanhādja chiefs of Awdāghust, Tād-mekka and other places.

Following this rapid review of the ethnic, religious and economic situation of the Saharan peoples, we shall consider the history of the particular regions of the Sahara during the period covered in this volume.

The Libyan Desert

Four oases in the Libyan Desert, namely, Khārja, Dākhla, Farāfra (known by the medieval Arab geographers as Farfārun) and Bahriyya (Bahnāsat al-Wāh) formed, at the time of the Arab conquest of Egypt, a small Muslim state governed by the Al-'Abdūn dynasty, of Lawāta Berber origin. This state was first mentioned in the latter half of the second/eighth century by the geographer and astronomer al-Fazārī. He called it 'Amal Wāh or the 'Land of the Oases'. Later, around the middle of the fourth/tenth century, al-Mas'ūdī gave a brief description of the Land of the Oases based on an account dating from 330/941–2. A Berber prince called 'Abd al-Malik ibn Marwān ruled there with several thousand horsemen under his command. In addition to the Lawāta Berbers, there was in the Land of the Oases a large Christian population of Coptic origin and there were also Arab nomads belonging to the Banū Hilāl tribe. The princes of this state lived in two districts of Dākhla, one of which was called al-Kalamūn and the other al-Ḵašr. Several routes linked the Land of the Oases to the various Egyptian cities on one side and the oasis of Santariya (Siwa) on the other. The oases contained a large number of date palms and other fruit trees and also alum mines.

A route said to be ten days’ walking distance long linked the oasis of

8. ibid., p. 25.
Bahnāsat al-Wāh (Bahriyya) to the oasis of Santarīya or Siwa (formerly Ammonium) which, in the fourth/tenth–sixth/twelfth centuries, was the meeting-point of all the western routes. The most important of these routes linked Santarīya to Egypt on one side and the Maghrib and Kawār on the other. Al-Idrīsī speaks of a route linking Santarīya to the port of Lakka (east of Tobruk) and adds that Santarīya abounded in palms and fruit trees. Santarīya appears to have long remained independent of Egypt. It was not until the seventh/thirteenth century that it was annexed to the province of Alexandria.\(^{11}\)

In the most remote part of the Land of the Oases there was a very prosperous region, known as Wāh Şebūr (‘the oasis of Şebūr’), to which access was very difficult and where, in the eleventh century, ‘no one ever came except for a few travellers who had lost their way in the desert’.\(^{12}\) The anonymous author of the geographical treatise entitled Kitāb al-Istibsār, composed in 587/1191, adds that that region, which he calls Wāh Dbr (which is but a corruption of Şebūr), abounded in date palms, cereals and all kinds of fruit, as well as in gold mines.\(^{13}\) In my view the mention of gold mines is no more than an allusion to the gold trade with the Western Sudan, whence gold used to be transported to Egypt. Far more precise is the information supplied by al-Idrīsī, who speaks of the ruins of a once flourishing and populated city, known as Şebūr or Shebūru, where there were said to be only few palm trees and where the Arabs went on excursions. To the north-east of this city was a lake on whose banks people known as the Kawār (Tubu?) nomads camped. To the north of this region were the oasis of Santariyya (Siwa) and the city of Zāla (Zella).\(^{14}\)

A look at the map of the Libyan Desert reveals that the only large oasis in that desert whose position corresponds exactly to the information provided by the early Arab geographers concerning Şebūr (Dbr, Shebūru) (apparently this name derives from the Copt word for village, tchōbro) is the Kufra group. There is an abundance of water there; it flows through marshes and lakes watering the luxuriant plantations. Dates, figs and lemons are grown there, together with cereals. The present-day inhabitants belong to the Zāwiya people, Arabized Berbers who came down from the north around the middle of the eleventh/eighteenth century. The conquerors found there a non-Muslim people (Kufra; kufarāʾ = ‘infidels’) belonging to the Tubu who had founded a small state there. After the conquest of Kufra by the Zāwiya, the local Tubu withdrew to the Tibesti mountain range or else were annihilated by the newcomers. Only a few hundred individuals of Tubu origin remain today in the Kufra oasis and they are completely Islamized and subject to the Arabs. As for the lake mentioned by

---

al-Idrīsī, situated at the foot of an inaccessible mountain in Shebrū, it lies at the foot of Djabal Buzema (Bzēma) in the oasis of that name.\textsuperscript{15}

The ancient caravan route that linked Egypt to Ghana before the fourth/tenth century, alluded to by Ibn Hawkal in the latter half of the fourth/tenth century, probably passed through the Kufra oasis. This route was used earlier, in the time of Aḥmad ibn Tūlūn (254/868–270/884), and would appear, after reaching Kufra, to have then headed off in the direction of Wādī al-Namūs and Wādī al-Kabīr, passed through Fezzān, and from there to have gone on to Kawār, Gao and, lastly, Ghana.\textsuperscript{16} It is likely that this is the route of which Ibn al-Faṣḥī speaks (fl. 290/903) in a section of his treatise, probably derived from an earlier source:

The route from Ghana to Egypt leads through the land of a people known as the Kāw-Kāw [Gao], then through that of a people known as the Maranda, then through that of a people known as the Murrawāt, and from there to the Egyptian oases in Malsānā.\textsuperscript{17}

Maranda is Marandet, an important waterhole south of Agadès. As for Malsānā, this place is probably to be identified with the mountain of 'Alsānī or al-Idrīsī’s ‘Alsānā, identical, in all probability, to the plateau of Gīlrf Kabīr, located to the west of Dākhla.

Ten days’ walking distance, across a sandy plain where water was scarce, lay between Santariya (or Siwa) and the Awdjīla group of oases (referred to by the ancient authors as Augila), famous for its date trees. This group included, besides the oasis of Awdjīla proper, the city and the oasis of Dījālū (Djalo). The capital of this region, was, according to al-Bakīrī, the city of Arzākiyā which contained several mosques and bazaars. The whole region was covered with villages, date trees and fruit trees. Dates from Awdjīla were exported to the city of Adjadabīya (Adjedabia). The population of Awdjīla was no doubt of Berber stock and was probably composed of groups of the Lawāta, like the population of Santariya and Barkā. The descendants of the early inhabitants, Berbers by their ethnic group and by their language, now go by the name of the Awdjīlī. Al-Idrīsī emphasizes that the capital of Awdjīla, although small, was densely populated and that its inhabitants engaged in active trade. For Awdjīla was at the crossroads of several trade routes and was an important centre on a route to the Sudan. Through this oasis one gained access to ‘the greater part of the Land of the Blacks, for instance, to Kawār and Kāw-Kāw [Gao].\textsuperscript{18} We know nothing about the history of Awdjīla during the first centuries of Islam. It is not impossible that it remained independent. Later, in the third/ninth-sixth/twelfth centuries, it already formed part of the Arab provinces of Barka.

To the west of the oasis of Awdjīla and the province of Barka stretched

\textsuperscript{17} Ibn al-Faṣḥī, 1885, p. 68; N. Levzioni and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 27.
\textsuperscript{18} Al-Idrīsī, 1866, p. 132; N. Levzioni and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 129.
the province of Surt or Sirt which took in all the eastern part of Tripoli-
tania. This is a Saharan region where the desert known by the name of the
Syrte Desert extends as far as Syrtis Major. This province owed its name
to that of Surt, a large city possessing a mosque and a few bazaars sur-
rounded by date trees. Its inhabitants, traders, spoke 'a kind of dialect
which was neither Arabic, nor Persian, nor Berber nor Copt'.

It may conceivably have been ancient Punic.

The province of Surt included two districts during this period, the first
of which, Surt proper, corresponded to the coastal area, while the second,
Waddän (so called after a city belonging to the modern oasis of Djofra),
corresponded to the inland region. The first of these districts is known by
the name of ard Surt ('land of Surt'), while Waddän was still regarded
between the third/ninth and sixth/twelfth centuries as a district ('aman) and
indeed as a separate country (ard). These two regions of the province of
Surt were peopled by the Mazâta Berber group whose neighbours were the
Lawâta of Barka and the Hawwâra who had settled in central Tripolitania.
The western boundary of the territory of the Mazâta ran close to Tawargha
(present-day Tawurgha), while in the south the area they inhabited
extended beyond Jabal al-Sawda (Jabal Soâda), whose population was at
war with the Mazâta in the third/ninth century. The latter formerly repre-
sented the majority of the inhabitants of Waddän, where, however, there
were also two Arab groups. The desert city of Tadjrift was peopled by a
mixture of Mazâta and Arabs. During that period the oasis of Zalhâ (or
Zella) also formed part of Mazâta territory, as emerges from a passage in
the work of al-Bakri.

The Mazâta of eastern Tripolitania came under the sway of Ibâdism at
an early date, the district of Surt being one of the provinces of the short-
lived Ibâdite state founded in Tripolitania by the Imâm Abûl-Khaṭâtâb
Abûl-Allâh ibn al-Sâmî al-Maṭârî (131/757-8-135/761). The Ibâdite
faith remained alive for a long time in Tripolitania, and the Mazâta con-
tinued to profess it until around the end of the third/ninth century. In 26/
646-7 the city of Waddän was conquered by an Arab officer named Bûr
ibn 'Abî Arţâ who demanded from its inhabitants a heavy tribute of three
hundred and sixty slaves. When, later on, the people of Waddän refused to
pay this tribute, 'Ukba ibn Nâfi' of illustrious name conducted a further
expedition against that territory in 46/666-7, and, after punishing the king,
again secured payment of the tribute. The city of Waddän was linked by
a route to the city of Maghmadâs (the Macemades Selorum of ancient
authors), situated on the Mediterranean coast, and to the city of Djarma
(formerly Garama). This was no doubt the route used to import the slaves
who made up the tribute paid to the Arabs by the people of Waddän. The
slaves were black prisoners from the regions of Kawâr, Tibesti and Kânem.
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

These prisoners were probably transported by the same route as that used, according to Herodotus, by the ancient Garamantes to give chase to the Ethiopian troglodytes. Throughout the period Waddān engaged in trade with the Land of the Blacks; the route between Wāddan and the Land of the Blacks passed through the city of Zawila in Fezzān.

Another route linking Wāddan to Awdjila passed through the city of Zalḥā (Zella), where dates were extremely plentiful. It was also a stopping place on the route leading from northern Tripolitania to Fezzān and the Land of the Blacks. According to al-Bakrī (Muḥammad Ibn al-Warrāk), this area was inhabited by the Mazāta; however, al-Idrīṣī, who knew it by the name of Zāla, states that its inhabitants belonged to the Hawwāra, adding that they were traders. The Arab sources do not make much mention of Ḥammāda al-Ḥamrā' and the surrounding mountains, with the exception of al-Bakrī who gives a description of the route that led from the trading city of Djādū (Djado or Giado), capital of the eastern part of Djabal Nafūsā, to the city of Zawila, the important caravanserai situated on the route leading to the region of Kawār and the other Lands of the Blacks. However, a three-day desert crossing on foot was necessary before reaching Tīrī or Tīra, a locality situated on the side of a mountain and containing a large number of date palms.

On the western borders of Ḥammāda al-Ḥamrā', between the plateaux and the Eastern Great Erg, lies the Saharan oasis and city of Ghadāmes. This place, which in remote antiquity was already the most important stopping place in the desert (known as Cydamus or Kidamē by the ancient authors), owed its importance to its geographical position. It was the gateway through which merchants passed on their way from Tripolitania to the Land of the Blacks. The route that linked the trading city of Sharūs in Djabal Nafūsā to the Takrūr region passed through Ghadāmes. Still today, in the vicinity of Sharūs, a trail can be seen that leads to Ghadāmes, which goes by the name of trīk al-Sūdān (the Sudan trail'). This no doubt is the route spoken of by Yākūt (after a sixth/twelfth-century source) which led to the region known as Zāfunu (Diafuunuu) in upper Senegal.
Al-Bakrî has described a route that started from Tripoli, passed through Djabal Nafûsa and Ghadâmes, and ended in Tâdmekka in the western Sudan.\textsuperscript{28} It is likely that, after Ghadâmes, this route passed through the territory of the Åskâr Berbers (present-day Tassili-n-Ajjer) which was eighteen days’ walking distance from Ghadâmes according to al-Idrîsî.\textsuperscript{29}

The inhabitants of Ghadâmes had since ancient times been engaged in a limited form of agriculture (they grew mainly dates there) and also in trans-Saharan trade. Medieval Arab sources make mention of this city at a very early date. The Arab historian Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam speaks of the capture of Ghadâmes by the Arab general ’Ukba ibn Näfi’ in the year 46/667.\textsuperscript{30} The population of the city consisted of several Berber groups, one of which, the Tinâwuta, had already been mentioned in the second/eighth century. Moreover, the Berber language is still spoken in Ghadâmes.

The inhabitants of Ghadâmes, converted to Christianity in the first/seventh century, appear at a very early date to have adopted Ibâdite beliefs, apparently at the same time as their neighbours in the north, the Nafûsa who inhabited present-day Djabal Nafûsa and with whom they had close relations. At the beginning of the third/ninth century the people of Ghadâmes took up the dissident doctrines of the Ibâdite sects of Khalafiya and Nukkâr, and only through the military intervention of the Nafûsa was pure Ibâdism-Wahbism re-established there. At the time the population of Ghadâmes was governed by the Ibâdite mashâyikh (shaykhs).\textsuperscript{31}

At a short distance to the east of Ghadâmes lies the oasis and city of Daradj (referred to in the Ibâdite chronicles as Dardj or Adradj) which was an important Ibâdite Berber centre. It is not inconceivable that Dardj derives its name from the Tanâta branch of the Banû Idradj (Tdrj being an erroneous form of the word), mentioned by Ibn Ḥawkal along with the Waradjma, the Banû Bûlît and other Zanâta groups of southern Tunisia.\textsuperscript{32} It is further to be noted that a route passing through Sinâwan and Dardj linked Ghadâmes to the city of Nälût (or Lâlût), situated in the western part of Djabal Nafûsa.

Between Fezzân and Lake Chad

In the southern part of Tripolitania lies the vast desert region of Fezzân, a
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

group of oases situated between Hammâda al-Ḥamrā' in the north, Tassilîn-Ajjer in the west, the Tibesti foothills in the south and the Libyan Desert in the east.

As for the ancient civilization of the Garamantes, it did not cease to exist until after the Arab conquest of the Maghrib, and there are now reasons for thinking (on the basis of the carbon-14 dating of certain excavated materials) that this civilization was not destroyed until between the second/eighth and fourth/tenth centuries by the Arab conquerors. One is led to believe that the main cause of the fall of the civilization of the Garamantes was the expedition led by the victorious Arab general Ibn al-Ash'ath who, in 145/762-3, conquered the kingdom of Zawīla in eastern Fezzân and massacred the inhabitants of the capital. It should be pointed out, moreover, that the kingdom of Zawīla survived this shock and existed around the end of the third/ninth century as an independent state.

The kingdom of Zawīla took in only part of present-day eastern Fezzân. It was founded either in the late first/seventh century or in the early second/eighth century. As for all the rest of Fezzân, it formed, between the second/seventh and the sixth/twelfth centuries, a separate kingdom, an outgrowth of the kingdom of the Garamantes, which is referred to by the medieval Arab authors by the name of Fezzân.

This state is mentioned in Arab sources as early as the year 46/666-7. Thus the historical work of Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam tells us that 'Uḳba ibn Nāfi', after conquering the city of Waddān, set off for the city of Djarma (Djerma), capital of Greater Fezzân, whose king surrendered and whose inhabitants were converted to Islam. 'Uḳba ibn Nāfi' then made his way to the other 'castles' of Fezzân, going right up to the ones furthest north.

Starting from the late second/eighth century the inhabitants of Fezzân became Ibāḍites and, from the outset, they recognized the supremacy of the Rustumid imāms of Tâhert. For some time, however, they were followers of the Ibāḍite heretic Khalaf ibn as-Samḥ. At the time of al-Ya'kūbī (at the end of the third/ninth century) Fezzân formed a vast state governed by an independent chief (rā'īs).

Al-Ya'kūbī also mentions the capital of Fezzân, which was a large city. He was no doubt referring to Djarma which flourished for several hundred years more, up to the sixth/twelfth century. At that time there was also in Fezzân, in addition to Djarma, another large city, namely, Tassāwa (Tessaoua), which the 'Blacks' (Fezzānis?), according to al-Idrīsī, called

33. The city of Zawīla is known to have not yet come into existence at the time of 'Uḳba ibn Nāfi' s expedition into Tripolitania in 46/666-7.
34. This kingdom was at war with the Mazâta of eastern Tripolitania. This war seems also to have contributed, together with the expedition led by Ibn al-Ash'ath against the city of Zawīla, to the fall of the ancient civilization of the Garamantes.
'Little Djarma'.\textsuperscript{37} The Arab sources also contain mention of other cities in Fezzân. Among these, al-Bakrî draws attention to a city by the name of Tämarmâ, situated on the route leading to Djädu in Djabal Nafüsa. This city is completely unknown to us and its name should, so we think, be corrected to read 'Tämzawâ', in other words present-day Tamzaua (Tam-séua). The Ibädite authors knew it by the name of Tämzawat. Al-Bakrî also mentions the large city of Sabhâ, which is to be identified with the present capital of Fezzân, designated as Sabbah on our maps. Sabhâ possessed a cathedral mosque and several bazaars. The Ibädite chronicles refer to this city by the name of Shabâha.\textsuperscript{38}

The population of medieval Fezzân was made up of various ethnic groups forming a people known as the Fezzân.\textsuperscript{39} Ibn Hawkal mentions in the fourth/tenth century a Berber people known as the Adjâr Fezzân whom he numbers among the Zanâta 'tribes'.\textsuperscript{40} There appears to be a link between the first part of this name and the name of the present-day area of Agar or Aggar in Fezzân, a short distance away from Tassâwa. In addition to the Fezzân (also Fazzâna), there were also other groups in this region. Al-Bakrî mentions the Banü Kaldîn (or Kildîn) who inhabited the city of Tämarmâ (Tämzawâ), together with the Fazzâna.\textsuperscript{41} The Kaldîn were probably the same as the Kadîn (Kildîn) who, according to Ibn Khâldûn, were related to the Hawwâra.\textsuperscript{42}

The inhabitants of Djarma (and apparently of all the other 'castles' of Fezzân) who, as early as the year 569, were Christians, were converted to Islam following the Arab invasion of 46/666–7. They subsequently took part in the Ibädite movement in Tripolitania (in 126/743–4) and suffered losses, like the Ibädites of Waddân and those of Zawila, following the expedition led by the Abbasid general Ibn al-Ash'ath in 145/762–3. At the time of the Rustumid imâm' Abd al-Wahhab ibn 'Abd al-Rahmân (d. 208/823) the Fezzani were already Ibädites. Thus it is that the Ibädite chronicles mention several outstanding figures from Fezzân who lived at that time.\textsuperscript{43}

The Ibädites of Fezzân appear, in the early third/ninth century, to have thrown in their lot with the Ibädite dissident Khalaf ibn as-Samî who, having revolted against the Rustumid imâms of Tähert, succeeded in bringing almost all of Tripolitania under his sway, with the exception of Djabal Nafüsa, whose inhabitants, who professed the Ibädite-Wahbite religion, remained faithful to the Rustumids.\textsuperscript{44} However, during the first
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south half of the third/ninth century, Fezzân was again regarded as a region with an Ibâdite-Wahbite population.

The second state that existed in Fezzân between the second/eighth and sixth/twelfth centuries, the kingdom of Zawîla, owes its name to the city of Zawîla (present-day Zawîlah), which was its capital. It is not mentioned at the time of the expedition led by 'Ukba ibn Nâfi' into the interior of Tripolitania and to Kawâr in 46/666–7, but appears in the sources for the first time a century later, at the time of the wars between the Sunnite Arabs and the Ibâdite Berbers. After the victory achieved, in 144/761–2, by Ibn al-Ash'ath over Abu 'l-Khaṭṭāb, the Ibâdite imām of Ifrīkiya, the Arab army captured the city of Zawîla, whose Ibâdite Berber inhabitants were put to the sword and whose chief, 'Abd Allâh ibn Hiyân al-Ibâdî, was killed. Despite these occurrences, Zawîla long remained a major Ibâdite centre. Al-Ya'kübî notes the presence there, in the latter half of the third/ninth century, of an Ibâdite people who practised date growing and traded with the countries of the Sudan.45

Around the beginning of the fourth/tenth century it appears that the city of Zawîla was abandoned, probably after the war waged by its inhabitants on the Mazâta of eastern Tripolitania. Al-Idrîsî's mention of the foundation of Zawîla in 306/918 (by which is to be understood, rather, the rebuilding of that city) is no doubt to be interpreted with reference to that war. According to al-Idrîsî, Zawîla was founded to serve as a residence for 'Abd Allâh ibn al-Khaṭṭāb al-Hawwârî and his family.46 According to Ibn Hawkal (c. 988), the dynasty of Banûl-Khaṭṭâb was descended not from the Mazâta but, rather, from the Hawwâra.47

The chief resources of Fezzân (I am thinking of the Djarma and Zawîla regions) were crops, particularly palm tree and cereal crops. Most of the information concerning these crops is derived from al-Bakrî, who speaks of a large number of date palms in Tâmarmâ (Tâmzawâ), Sabâb and Zawîla and describes the growing of cereals and the use of camels in irrigation. He also mentions the fact that the plant which yielded indigo dye was grown in Sabâb.48 Al-Idrîsî also speaks highly of the date palms of Zawîla and mentions the growing of palm trees, millet and barley in Tassâwa.49 As for irrigation, J. Despois assumes that the technique of foggāras (underground catchment conduits) became widespread in Fezzân at the end of the Roman period.50 The Arab authors provide some information about crop irrigation. Thus, according to al-Bakrî, the crop-growing area in Zawîla was irrigated by means of wells operated by camels, which are still used in

49. Al-Idrîsî, 1866, pp. 35–6.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Fezzān, and al-Idrīsī says that palm trees, millet and barley were irrigated (in Djarma and Tassāwa) by means of a machine known as an ḍāfa, which the inhabitants of the Maghrib knew by the name of ḥtāra.51

Alongside crop-growing, Fezzān’s main activity was trans-Saharan trade, for this region is, after the Nile, historically the most important channel of communication with the countries south of the Sahara. The Garamantes had already brought to the Tripolitanian ports of Leptis Magna (Lebda), Oea (Tripoli) and Sabratha (Zuwāra) products from their countries and from the interior of Africa, such as dates, ivory and precious stones known as garamantiques. From the dawn of the Muslim era the Fezzani also engaged in the trade in black slaves. Trade was carried on along a very ancient route, which was already known to the Garamantes in the fifth century before the Christian era and which linked Tripoli and the other cities on the coast of Tripolitania to Kānem in central Africa. It led through the city of Zawīla and Djabal Nafūsa, whose main city, Djadū, still contained bazaars and a large Jewish population in the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries. Trans-Saharan trade was the reason for the settlement in Zawīla, alongside the Ibādīte Berbers, of people of highly varied stock, originating from Khurāsān, Baṣra and Kūfā. The Zawīla traders mainly exported black slaves captured from the Sudanese peoples of Mīrī, Murrū, Zaghāwa and others, most of whom belonged to the Teda-Daza group.52

In the fifth/eleventh century al-Bakrī describes three routes that linked the city of Zawīla to Tripolitania proper and to Egypt. The first went to the city of Djadū and then to Tripoli. The second linked Zawīla to the city of Adjadābiya at the eastern edge of Tripolitania. The third route linked Zawīla to Fustāṭ, the capital of Egypt. Al-Bakrī also alludes to a caravan route which went from the city of Zawīla to the region of Kānem, forty days’ walking distance from that city.53

To the south of the Tummo Mountains, which constituted the southern boundary of Fezzān, there is a chain of oases which facilitate communication with Kānem. This is the finest caravan route of the Sahara, despite the dunes that lie between Bilma and Dibella (Dibela). This route has been used since very remote times. The best-known oases forming part of this chain are those of Kāwār (referred to as Kāwār by the medieval Arab geographers and as Kaouar today). They had been known for centuries as a result of the trans-Saharan trade that was carried on along these routes. In 46/666–7, when ’Ukba ibn Nāfī took possession of all the ḵūrs (castles) of Fezzān, moving from the north to the south, the inhabitants informed him that beyond this region lay the ḵūrs of Kāwār, the chief one of which

51. Al-Bakrī, 1911, p. 11; al-Idrīsī, 1866, p. 35. The machines in question are ṣadūfs, which are still used in the Fezzān and which are known as kettāra.
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

(kašaba or gašba), referred to as Khāwär by al-Bakrī was a very large fortress.54

A brief description of Kawär is given by Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam and also by al-Ya'kūbī, but it was left to al-Idrīsī to give us more detailed information. Among these 'cities', al-Idrīsī mentions al-Ḵašaba ('the chief city'), which is the same as Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam's Khāwär, which was a rather insignificant place at the time of that geographer. Kasr Um'm 'Īṣā, placed by al-Idrīsī at two days' walking distance south of al-Ḵašaba, should, in my view, be identified with the village of Aschenumma described by Nachtigal, which is now a place of no importance.55

At a distance of forty Arab miles, that is 80 km, from Kasr Um'm 'Īṣā, al-Idrīsī places the city of Ankalās, which was the largest city in Kawär and the most important as regards trade, and at the same time the place of residence of the local chief.56 Ankalās might be identified with the village of Dirki where, at the time of Nachtigal's stay in Kawär, the sovereign of that region resided. This village (also called Dirko by the Teda) was, according to Nachtigal, the oldest and the largest in Kawär.

The last place in Kawär to be mentioned by al-Idrīsī (who lists the inhabited areas in this region, going from north to south) is the small city of Tamalma (or Talamla), situated in the southern part of that region. Following J. Marquart we may identify Talamla with the modern city of Bilma (or rather Bilmā').57

According to al-Ya'kūbī, the region of Kawär at about the end of the third/ninth century contained a mixed population, made up of Muslims of every origin, the majority of whom were Berbers.58 These were Ibāḍite Berber traders from Fezzān, Djabal Nafūsa and Waddān. Alongside the Berbers (and no doubt also the Arab traders), the region of Kawār contained an autochthonous population belonging to the Tubu (Teda-Daza) group, referred to by the Arab geographer Ibn Sa'īd (before 685/1286), who calls the inhabitants of Kawār 'the Blacks' and who says that they adopted the customs of the whites.59 Already in the third/ninth century this population was Muslim and probably Ibāḍite.

The resources of the inhabitants of Kawār who, according to Arab

54. Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam apud N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, pp. 12–13; Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 12. Khāwär appears to have been identical to Gissebi (Guṣẹbi) in northern Kawār, a few kilometres to the south-west of present-day Aney. The name ‘Gissebi’ (Guṣẹbi) seems to be but a corruption of the Arab term kašba or gašba.

55. G. Nachtigal, 1879–89, Vol. 1, p. 511. The name given to this castle (kaṣr in Arabic), i.e. Um'm 'Īṣā (Um'm Aysa in Arabic dialect) is but a metathesis of that of Aschenumma (Asche-n-umma for, 'Aysa-n-umm). R. Mauny, 1961, p. 141, identifies this place with present-day Bilma.


57. J. Marquart, 1913, p. 80.


sources, were rather well-to-do, derived from crops (dates), the mining of alum, and trade, particularly the slave trade. Camels were also bred there for the use of the local traders and the fish that abounded in the large lake in the vicinity of Abzar were caught and salted. However, the main source of wealth of the inhabitants of Kawâr was the mines, which contained a variety of alum known by the name of Kawârî whose exceptional purity is praised by al-Idrîsî. According to this author, these mines were located to the south of Kawâr, in Ankalâs and Abzar, as far westward as the western Berber region, and also in the Wargla oasis. R. Mauny, curious as to the nature of these famous alum mines in Kawâr, located in areas where today there are only saltworks, takes the view that al-Idrîsî was thinking of sodium sulphate which, broadly speaking, is an alum and which today is no more than the by-product of salt extraction in Kawâr. In Bilma the proportion of sulphate contained in salt may be as much as 79 per cent. Thus, continues Mauny, 'when alum was of considerable commercial value (in the Middle Ages it was used to fix dyes on materials) there was no reason not to collect separately the salt containing the largest proportion of sulphate and to sell this product under the name of alum'.

Apart from alum, the main source of wealth of the inhabitants of Kawâr was the slave trade. Large numbers of black slaves were brought from Kawâr to the markets of Djarma, Zawila and Waddan, whence they were exported to the Maghrib and Ifrikiya, as well as to Egypt. Apparently this trade already existed in antiquity and was practised by the Garamantes.

The ancient and medieval history of Kawâr is not known to us. It seems that in the ninth century this region was independent. Subsequently, the sultanate of Kawâr was brought under the dominion of the kingdom of Zaghawa or Kânem, which we shall be discussing later. At all events, such was the situation of that region in Yakût’s time (1220).

Alongside the Tubu Kawarians and the Ibâdite Berbers who, together with Arab traders, inhabited the villages of Kawâr, there were also Lamta Berbers in that region of the Sahara, most of whom led a nomadic existence in the western Sahara, especially to the south of Sûs. According to al-Ya’kûbî, these Lamta of the central Sahara inhabited the area between Kawâr and Zawila extending towards Awdjîla. It appears that later they helped to form the Tubu or Teda-Daza or that they withdrew to Air where they joined the local Tuareg.

The peoples of the Tubu or Teda-Daza-Zaghawa, who have since very early times occupied the oases of Kufra in the Libyan Desert, as well as the region of Kawâr, also constituted the population of the southern fringe of Fezzân, the Djâdo plateau and the Tibesti mountain range. They also inhabited and still continue to inhabit Borku (as well as Bodélé and Bahr

The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

al-Ghazāl), which is a vast and very low-lying desert basin between Tibesti and Chad, as well as the plateaux of Ennedi and the areas to the north of Wadai and to the north-west of Dārfur. The Tubu group which still today continues to live in the last-mentioned areas goes by the name of the Zaghāwa. This name seems to have been at the time we are discussing the term used by the Arab geographers to designate virtually all the branches of the Tubu with the exception of the Goran and the nomadic inhabitants of Kawār and the Kufra oasis, described by al-Idrīsī as the ‘nomads of Kawār’.

It should also be added that the Arab author Wahb ibn Munabbih who wrote before 110/728 refers, alongside the Zaghāwa, to the Sudanese people of Kurān (or Korān) whose name is also to be pronounced ‘Goran’. This name is still preserved today and is given by the Arabs to the Daza, a branch of the Tubu living to the north and north-east of Lake Chad.

As for the name ‘Zaghāwa’, mentioned by Wahb ibn Munabbih (apparently as that of the northern branch of the Tubu, i.e. the Teda) among the names of the peoples descended from the Biblical Ham, alongside the Korān, the Nubians, the Abyssinians, the Berbers and the Zandj of east Africa, it is not unknown to the other medieval Arab authors. It is cited as one of the Sudanese toponyms in the work of the astronomer Muḥammad ibn Mūsā al-Khuwarizmī (d. 220/835 or 232/846). Al-Ya’kūbī mentions the people of Zaghāwa among the slaves that were exported from Zawīla and in his historical works speaks of this people in more detail: the Zaghāwa settled in a place known as Kānim or Kānem where they lived in reed huts. There they founded a kingdom.

It appears that Kānem had maintained relations with the Ibāḍites of Djabal Nafūsa since very early times. For we know that Abū ‘Ubayda ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Djināwunī, who governed Djabal Nafūsa as the representative of the Rustumid imāms of Tāḥert and who lived in the early half of the third/ninth century, besides knowing the Berber language and Arabic, was also familiar with that of the Kānem (lugha kānimiya). The Arab geographer al-Muhallabī (d. 380/990) tells us that the Zaghāwa were a Sudanese people living to the south of the Maghrib. There they founded a vast state that bordered on Nubia; ten days’ walking distance separated these two kingdoms.

In the north, the kingdom of the Zaghâwa or Kânem extended as far as Bilma and al-Kaşâba in Kawâr. The land of the Zaghâwa (the reference here is to Kânem) was not a desert area and its inhabitants subsisted on their crops, chiefly millet and legumes. They also possessed herds of sheep, cattle, camels and horses. At the time when al-Muhallâbî was writing, the Zaghâwa of Kânem were still infidels; they venerated their king whom they worshipped in the place of God. They went about naked, merely covering their loins with the skins of animals, with the exception of the king who wore woollen trousers and a silk garment from Sûs (Morocco).

Ibn Ḥawkal seems to identify the land of the Zaghâwa with Kânem. He mentions the existence of a route that linked the land of the Zaghâwa (Kânem) with Fezzân, that is, apparently Djarma, the capital of that region; two months’ walking distance lay between Fezzân and Zaghâwa, which seems to me to be an exaggeration.

Kânem was not unknown to al-Bâkri, according to whom this region lay on the other side of the desert of Zaωila, forty days’ walking distance from that city. The inhabitants of that region were at the time ‘idolaters’. Al-Idrîsî, to whom we are indebted for a highly detailed description of the Sahara and the Sudan, devoted several passages in his work to the Zaghâwa and the Kânem (he distinguishes between the two ethnic groups). Kânem was a kingdom whose sovereign inhabited the city of Mânân. The soldiers of the king of Kânem wore no clothes, as at the time of al-Muhallâbî one hundred and fifty years previously. In addition to Mânân, al-Idrîsî mentions another city in Kânem, Andjîmî (present-day Ndjimî). Six days’ walking distance from Andjîmî lay the city, or rather the centre, of the Zaghâwa, around which lived several branches of this people, who were camel-breeders. Al-Idrîsî tells us nothing about the political situation of this Tubu group which, at that time, was probably independent of the king of Kânem. Speaking of the Zaghâwa, he stresses that the territory of the Zaghâwa borders on Fezzân, thereby including the region of Kawâr in the territories inhabited by the Zaghâwa. In another chapter, al-Idrîsî speaks of two centres of the Zaghâwa, to wit, Saghâwa (which is probably identical to Sakawa, the name given to the Zaghâwa in the southern part of present-day Wadai) and Shâma (perhaps present-day Tin-Shaman, north of Agadês). The resources of these Zaghâwa branches derived from stock-raising (they subsisted on the milk, butter and meat of their herds) and

73. Al-Bâkri, 1911, p. 11; 1913, p. 29; cf. N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 64. Al-Bâkri apparently gleaned this information from a source prior to the fifth/eleventh century, perhaps from a geographical work by Ibn al-Warrâk (d. 362/973), since the fifth/eleventh century may be considered to have witnessed the beginnings of Islamization in that region, the population of which finally embraced Islam after 500/1107.
sorghum-growing. Among the Zaghāwa in Shāma and Saghāwa there also lived a group of Berber origin known as the Sadrāta. These were nomads whose way of life was in all aspects like that of the Zaghāwa. They were thus in the process of becoming assimilated with the Teda-Daza-Zaghāwa. 75

The northern Sahara

The northern Sahara embraces all the region situated between the Atlas in the north and the Ahaggar (Hoggar) in the south, to the west and southwest of Ghadāmes. It is a territory where, amidst the calcareous hammādas and sand dunes of the Western Great Erg and the Eastern Great Erg (the blēd al-atesh, or ‘land of thirst’), there are wells and magnificent oases (the blēd al-biyār, or ‘land of wells’). At the edge of the crop-growing land (mainly palm groves) in these oases are fortified villages (known as ksūrs in literary Arabic). They were established, as were the palm groves and the foggāras that irrigate them (particularly in Tuwāt), by various Ibāḍite, Mu'tazilite and even Jewish groups of the great Berber branch of the Zanāta.

These oases can be divided into three groups:

(1) The eastern oases, irrigated by artesian wells, concentrated around the foot of the Atlas.

(2) The western oases which are irrigated by foggāras, forming a strip some 1200 km long which runs between the Saharan Atlas of Figuig on one side and Tidikelt on the other.

(3) Half-way between these two groups lies a third important group of oases — the Mzāb.

The most easterly of these three groups of oases is that of Süf, surrounded on all sides by the sand, on the route that leads from Djarīd to Tuggurt and Wargla. Right from the beginning of the period of Arab domination in North Africa, if not even before, this oasis was of some importance, being one of the stages on the trade route linking southern Tunisia, inhabited between the second/eighth and sixth/twelfth centuries by the Ibāḍite Berbers, to the Ibāḍite Berber centres of Wādī Rīgh and Wargla and also to the Sudan. We do not know the period in which the palm groves and villages of Süf were established. The first mention of this oasis is to be found in the ancient Ibāḍite chronicles, where it is referred to as Süf or Asūf. In the latter half of the fourth/tenth century Süf was inhabited by Ibāḍite Berbers who maintained close relations with Djarīd, and especially with the city of Tozeur. The inhabitants of Süf belonged to the various branches descended from the Zanāta or related to that Berber family (like the Lawāta). It is further to be noted that to the north of Süf,

towards the district of Nefzawa, the Banū Mūlīt, who also formed part of the Zanāta, lived as nomads in the fifth/eleventh century.76

A hundred or so kilometres west of the oasis of Süf are to be found the many large oases of Wādī Rīgh, situated in a gully 20 km wide. In the period under consideration, Wādī Rīgh, which is known to us from Arab sources (and especially the Ibāḍite chronicles) by the name of (Wādī) Rīgh or Arīgh, was dotted with several cities and fortified villages (kusūr). Later, at the time of Ibn Khaldūn, (eighth/fourteenth century), there were some three hundred of these. We know the names of several of these places, such as Adjlū al-Gharbiyya (western Adjlū), Adjlū al-Sharkiya (eastern Adjlū), Tīdūj, Kaṣr Banī Nūba, Tīghūrt (present-day Tuggurt) and Waghūna. In addition to these five cities, the Ibāḍite sources mention several of lesser importance which are difficult to identify, except perhaps for Tīn Tamerna, probably identical to Tamerna, Tīn Islīmān (Sīdī Slīmān), to the north of Tuggurt, and the oasis of Aḵūk (Gūg).

Rīgh or Arīgh derives its name from the Rīgha Berbers, a group of the Maghrawa belonging to the great Zanāta family. However, in addition to the Rīgha, there were other Zanāta groups, such as the Banū Wartīzalen,

76. We are not acquainted with the history of Süf. We do know, however, that Sārāt al-Lawāiyīya, an Ibāḍite woman of some repute who lived during the latter half of the fifth/eleventh century, came from this oasis. It was at the time of this woman that an Ibāḍite caravan returning from Tādmeκka (in Aдрār des Ifoghas, to the north of Gao) passed through Süf, probably on its way to Tozeur.
Banū Wilîl, Banū Zalghîn, Banū Itûfa, Maghrâwa, Banū Yandjäsen and Banū Lant. Among other Berbers who inhabited Wâdî Rîgh or led a nomadic existence in the vicinity of those oases, mention should also be made of the Banû Warmâz (Warzemâr) and the three peoples who lived as Bedouins, the Banû Warsifân, the Banû Ghomâra (or Ghomra) and the Banû Sindjäsen. It is not impossible that the latter were identical to the Banû Sindjâs, a branch of the Maghrâwa who, according to Ibn Khaldûn, still inhabited Wâdî Rîgh in the eighth/fourteenth century.

Very little is known about the history of Wâdî Rîgh before the sixth/twelfth century. The autochthonous population attribute the origin of their wells to Dhu 'l-Karnayn (the man with two horns), or in other words Alexander the Great. However, no mention was ever made of the oases of Wâdî Rîgh by the ancient writers and they were no doubt established after the period of Roman domination in North Africa. The first reference to this region in the written sources has to do with the great Berber nomad chief Yâbib ibn Zalghîn who lived at the time of the Rustumid imâm Aflâh ibn 'Abd al-Wahhâb (208/823–257/871).

In the latter half of the fourth/tenth century the population of Wâdî Rîgh was mainly composed of various groups of Ibâdite Maghrâwa. In 471/1078–9 a civil war began which caused the downfall of this group of oases. A further war took place in Wâdî Rîgh in 502/1108–9. It is also to be noted that, in the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries, the oases of Wâdî Rîgh played an important role in the lives of the North African Ibâdites.

The most important of all the eastern oases of the northern Sahara is that of Wargla, known to the medieval Arab geographers as Wârdjlân or Wârkîlan. We know nothing about the origins of Wargla, having no information regarding this oasis prior to the Arab conquest. However, it is not impossible that, at the time of the later Byzantine empire, there already existed in that place a village which was a stage on the caravan route linking Numidia to the Hoggar and probably also to the Niger Bend. It was by means of this route that trade was carried on between Numidia and the central Sahara. This trade must have been fairly modest in antiquity. The name ‘Wargla’ can be found in that of the Moorish ‘tribe’ of the Urceliani, referred to by Corippus in the sixth century. It was perhaps people belonging to the Urceliani who built dwellings in Wargla at a time prior to the Muslim invasion. As well as these primitive dwellings, there were also in the oasis of Wargla several real towns which were already there at the time of the arrival of the first Arabs in the Maghrib, i.e. around the middle of the first/seventh century. V. Largeau refers to eleven towns or villages which existed at that time in the oasis of Wargla, the ruins of which are still visible.

78. V. Largeau, 1879, passim.
Wargla is mentioned in the Arab sources for the first time (as Wārḵlān) during the period of the Umayyad Caliph Hishām ibn ʿAbd al-Malik (105/724–125/742). According to al-Zuhrī (mid sixth/twelfth century), it was during this period that the inhabitants of Wargla were converted to Islam.\(^{79}\)

It appears that the inhabitants of the oasis of Wargla very soon, like nearly all the other Berbers, adopted the Khāridjite doctrines in protest against the oppressive rule of the orthodox government. They became Ibabites, adhering to the most moderate branch of that sect and they soon entered into close relationship with the Ibabite imāms of Tāhert.\(^{80}\)

As for the city of Sadrāta or Sedrāta, it seems to have been the capital of the oasis of Wargla between the fourth/tenth and sixth/twelfth centuries. The name of this city derives from that of the Sadrāta Berbers, another group of which inhabited the Mzāb, in the vicinity of Biskra. The ruins of Sadrāta are 14 km south of the city of Wargla. In these ruins the vestiges of a mosque have been found and of the tomb of the imām Yaʿkūb ibn Aflāḥ, the last Rustumid imām, who fled to Wargla following the capture of Tāhert by the Fātimid army in 296/908.\(^{81}\) In 322/934 Sadrāta was besieged by the Fātimid army and its inhabitants abandoned the city and took refuge in Karīma (present-day Gara Krīma, south of Wargla).

Later, at the time of al-Bakrī (fifth/eleventh century), there were seven ‘castles’ in the oasis of Wargla, the largest of which was known as Aghren en-Ikammen in Berber, a name which is completely unknown to the Ibabite authors. Alongside these cities and ‘castles’, the written sources mention several Berber towns or villages located in the oasis of Wargla, such as Fadjūha, Kaṣr Bakr (or Tin Bakr, Kaṣr Banī Bakr), Aghläm, Tin Imṣīwen, Tin Bā Māṭūs, Tamāwāt and Ifrän.

Thanks to the written sources, and especially the Ibabite chronicles, we also have some information about the composition of the population of the oasis of Wargla between the second/eighth and sixth/twelfth centuries. We saw earlier that the name of the oasis derives from that of the ‘tribe’ of the Urceliani or Wārdjlān, a branch of the Zanāta which founded it, according to Ibn Khaldūn. It has already been stated that among the early inhabitants of Wargla there was also a group of the Sadrāta, which belonged to a branch of the Lawāta. Among other Berbers who inhabited the oasis of Wargla, mention should also be made of the Banū Yādīrīn (or Yağrīn), known as the Yākrīn (or Yağrīn) by Ibn Ḥawkāl, the Tināwata, known from Ghadāmès, the Banū Warzemār, a group of which led a nomadic existence in the vicinity of Wādī Rīgh, and the great kabīla of the Banū Wartūzalen who also inhabited Wādī Rīgh earlier.\(^{82}\) In addition to the

---

The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

Wahbite or Nukkārite Ibādite Berbers, there was in Wargla no lack of orthodox Mālikite Muslims whom the Ibādites sometimes called the Ash'arites. It is also to be noted that Yākūt, in his brief description of Wargla, mentions, alongside the Berbers, the presence of an ethnic group known as the Madjdāna. These were African Christians of Roman origin who emigrated to Wargla after the fall of Tāhert, following the last Rustumid imām, whose faithful servants they were. It appears that the Berber inhabitants of Rīgh and Wargla had already largely interbred with the blacks before the sixth/twelfth century.

All the towns and cities of the oasis of Wargla formed part of the district known in the fifth/eleventh century as ikṭīm Wārdjlān (‘district of Wardjlān’). At the beginning of the fourth/tenth century in the oasis of Wargla there was a rā‘is (‘chief’) who lived in Tāghyārt. Al-Wisyānī mentions a rā‘is of Tāghyārt named Ismā‘īl ibn Kāsin, flanked in Wargla by the wulāt Wārdjlān (‘governors of Wardjlān’), who were no doubt subordinate to this rā‘is. In the early half of the fifth/eleventh century there were in Wargla twenty-three mutawallī, probably town administrators, whose powers, however, we know nothing about. In addition to the rā‘is and governors, the Ibādite sources mention the existence in Wargla of notables (who probably consisted primarily of the leading merchants), known as a‘yān and akābir. Such was the situation at the beginning of the tenth century. It is further to be noted that, in the oasis of Wargla, a certain role was also played by councils in which were represented the inhabitants of all the villages in that oasis. These councils met once in the village of Tamāwāt.

After the fall of the Rustumid imāmate, whose sovereignty was recognized by the inhabitants of Wargla, this oasis became completely independent despite the efforts of the Fātimids who, in the first half of the fourth/tenth century, attempted to conquer it, no doubt because of its economic importance. Later Wargla was for some time ruled by the dynasty of the Banū Ḥammād. Thus it was that the Ḥammādite sultan al-Nāsir ibn ‘Alānās (454/1062–482/1089) was represented by a governor in that oasis.

The commercial role of Wargla was considerable owing to the fact that this city was the starting-point of the route followed by all the North African and Egyptian merchants who travelled to the Western Sudan. Let us now consider Wargla’s relations with the major trade centres of North Africa and the markets of the Western and Central Sudan.

85. The ethnic situation in Wargla and Wādī Rīgh must have been similar at that time to what it was at the beginning of the tenth/sixteenth century, as described by Joannes Leo Africanus, who says in his Description of Africa that ‘the men are for the most part Negro ... because these people have many black female slaves with whom they sleep, with the result that they have black children’. Cf. Leo Africanus, 1956, pp. 437 et seq.
As early as the mid-third/ninth century a direct route, which passed through Laghwät, linked Wargla to Tähert, while another trade route existed between Wargla and the city of Sidjilmāsa, which constituted the most important northern terminus of the caravan routes between northern Africa and the Western Sudan and the destination of the gold and slaves from Ghana and the land of Wankāra. Originally Wargla was merely one of the stopping places on the great route between the Sudan and Egypt; this route passed through Tripolitania and Djariḍ on its way first to Wargla and then to Sidjilmāsa. However, the merchants of Wargla soon began to take an active part in the trade between Sidjilmāsa and the gold-bearing lands of the Western Sudan. There is frequent mention by the Arab geographers of merchants from Wargla in that city, who had apparently come via the Sidjilmāsa route, although it is not impossible that these merchants travelled to Ghana and Wankāra by the route leading from Tādmekka and Kāw-Kāw (Gao).  

Another route linked the Mzāb (present-day Zībān) to the city of Wargla and the Land of the Blacks. It is known to us thanks to al-Idrīṣī, who adds that this was the route used to export dates from the Mzāb to the Sudan.  

The next trade route was the Wargla–Tlemcen route which is known to us from al-Bakrī, who also mentions a route linking the capital of the Ḥam­mādite state Kāl’ā Abī Ṭawīl (Kāl’ā Banū Ḥammād. the ruins of which now lie 30 km away from Bordj Areridj) to the city of Wargla.  

The most ancient and, at the same time, the most direct route linking Wargla, and thereby the whole of the Maghrib, to the Sudan was that leading from Wargla to Tādmekka in Adrār des Ifoghas (the present-day ruins of Es-Sūk, at a distance of 45 km from the village of Kidal), and from there to the city of Gao. According to al-Bakrī, this route began in Tādmekka and went to Kayrawān, passing through Wargla and Kaṣṭīliya (Tozeur). We know from the Ibāḍite sources that trade between Wargla and Tādmekka was carried on as early as the latter half of the fourth/tenth century and that one of the items traded was clothing, which was exchanged for gold.  

In addition to the Wargla–Tādmekka–Gao route there was another major trans-Saharan route that linked the city of Wargla to the markets of

87. The earliest mention of the direct route linking Egypt to Sidjilmāsa is to be found in the Ibāḍite chronicle of Abū Zakariyā’ al-Wardjāni (sixth/twelfth century) and concerns an occurrence dating from the fourth/tenth century. This route passed through Tozeur and Wargla and led directly to Sidjilmāsa. Cf. T. Lewicki, 1966.


91. N. Levtzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, pp. 89, 91. It was apparently the same route that was taken by Kaydad, the father of Abū Yazīd Makhlād to travel to Tādmekka and Gao. The latter was born in Tādmekka c. 272/885. Cf. Chap. 12 below.
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

One of the oases of the Mzâb

PLATE 11.2 One of the oases of the Mzâb

the Western Sudan. I am referring here to the Wargla–Ghana route. This route was far more important than the Wargla–Tädmekka one as the city of Ghana was a major storage place for the gold brought from the gold-bearing regions of Bambuk and Buré. The Wargla–Ghana route passed through the city of Sidjilmäsa, in the land of Tafilälet, which was a major Saharan emporium, the true gateway to the Sudan. The sovereigns of Sidjilmäsa (who belonged to the Miknäsa, related to the Zanâta) professed the beliefs of the Şufrite sect, closely related to those of the Ibâdites, and were on respectful terms with the Rustumid imâms of Tâhert. It appears that the Wargla–Sidjilmäsa route passed through El-Goléa. As for the second part of the Wargla–Ghana route, after leaving Sidjilmäsa, it went on to the city of Tâmdült in Sûs al-Aksâ (Tâmdült is present-day Wâçâ in south-western Morocco). We know of this route thanks to al-Bakrî who also gives us the names of the following two stages, namely Īzîl, which is Kêdiat d’Idjîl, and the city of Awdâghust, an important market in the southern part of present-day Mauritania, where today lie the ruins of Tegdaoust.92 According to al-Zuhrî, the route from Sidjilmäsa to Ghana also passed

through the city of Azukī (Azugi) in the Mauritania Adrār.\textsuperscript{93} There was also another route from Wargla to Ghana which passed through Tādmekka. The most direct route between Wargla and Tāhert passed through the region of the Mzāb, through Tilghement and Laghwāt, i.e. through the middle group of oases of the northern Sahara, situated between Wādī Rīgh and Wargla on one side, and Tuwāt-Gurārā on the other.

According to Ibn Khaldūn, the name of the Mzāb derives from that of a Zanāta group that founded the villages in this region. However, the Banū Mzāb and the region itself were known to the Ibadites as early as the third/ninth century by the Arabized name of Mus‘ab. The Ibadite chronicles mention the Banū Mus‘ab or Djabal Mus‘ab, which corresponds to the present-day Mzāb. The Banū Mus‘ab originally professed the Mu’tazilite doctrine, but later (in the fifth/eleventh century) they were converted to the Ibadite faith.

Among the towns founded in the northern Sahara by the Zanāta, mention should be made of the fortress of Tālghemt (present-day Tilghement or Tilrhemt) and the city of Laghouat (Laghwāt), already known in the fourth/tenth century by the name of al-Aghwāt, which was under the domination of the Zanāta chief, al-Khayr ibn Muḥammad ibn Khazar al-Zānātī.

Another important city in this region was the kasr, El-Goléa, now known as Taurīrt al-Mānīa, which, in all likelihood, connected Wargla to the Sādījmāsā route. It also appears that the route leading from Wargla to Tādmekka branched off at El-Goléa. El-Goléa is mentioned by al-Bakrī by the name of al-Ḳal‘a (‘the Fortress’). It was a highly populated city ‘which contained a mosque and the remains of a few ancient monuments’.\textsuperscript{94} El Goléa lies to the east of the Western Great Erg on a cone-shaped mountain which, according to local tradition, was formerly surrounded by vast cereal fields and a large number of palm trees irrigated by twenty-four foggāras.

The western group of oases in the northern Sahara is formed by Gurārā, Tuwāt and Tidikelt, which possess a clearly marked geographical unity. Of these three, Gurārā is the most populated and has the most water and palm trees. Tuwāt forms a ‘streets of palm trees’ more than 200 km long between Būda and Taurīrt; it is less heavily populated than Gurārā and the number of palm trees contained by this group of oases is only slightly higher than the number of date palms in Gurārā. Lastly, the number of palm trees in Tidikelt is only half that of Gurārā. The oases of the western group are irrigated by means of underground water catchment and supply conduits, known as foggāras.

The history of Gurārā, Tuwāt and Tidikelt up to the eighth/fourteenth century is practically unknown. It is generally assumed that all these oases were established only recently, in the sixth century of the Christian era in


\textsuperscript{94} Al-Bakrī, 1911, p. 77; 1913, pp. 156–7.
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

the case of Gurāra and as late as the eleventh/seventeenth century in the case of some of the oases of Tidikelt. In Tamentītí, in Tuwāṭ, a stone idol with a ram’s head has been found, which gives grounds for thinking that this place was inhabited before the Islamic period by a Libyco-Berber people, probably originating from eastern Libya where they adopted, perhaps in Sīwa, the cult of Ammon with the ram’s horns. These newcomers also learned from the eastern Libyans the art of boxing foggāras.

As for the Judaization of the Saharan Berbers, this probably began in the second century of the Christian era and was the consequence of the dispersal of the Jews of Cyrenaica who, after the repression ordered by the Roman emperor Trajan, fled to Mauritania and the Sahara. Later there was a further Jewish immigration to Gurāra and Tuwāṭ. According to local tradition, a synagogue was built in Tamentītí in the year 517 of the Christian era, and another in 725.95

The Zanāta groups made a further thrust towards Gurāra and Tuwāṭ in the mid-fifth/eleventh century. This second move was occasioned by the invasion of the Banū Hilāl and also by the invasion of the Almoravids in Morocco, following which some of the Berbers, Zanāṭa and others, either Muslim or converted to Judaism, escaped to the Sahara.

The central Sahara

In the centre of the Sahara and south of El-Golea and Wargla lies a highland region known as Ahaggar or the Hoggar, which extends north-east into Tassili-n-Ajjer and westwards into Muydir. Two other masses form a continuation of Ahaggar southwards, namely Air and Adrār des Ifoghas. These Saharan regions were peopled in the second/eighth-sixth/twelfth centuries by various Berber groups descended from the branch known as the Şanğādja, who were the ancestors of the present-day Tuareg. During this period no large city or palm grove existed in Ahaggar or Tassili-n-Ajjer.

In Adrār des Ifoghas and Air, on the contrary, there were, as we are told by medieval Arab sources, true cities, the inhabitants of which engaged in trade but where there was a complete lack of palm trees and gardens (aghren), as was the case in Tädmekka in Adrār des Ifoghas, or where such vegetation was rather insignificant.

Tassili-n-Ajjer derives its name from the Adjdjer or Azger Berbers, the earliest description of whom is given to us by al-İdrîsî.96 According to that author, who calls the Adjdjer by the name of the Āzkâr (for Āzgâr), these people were camel-drivers whose political centre, which may have been in


the region of present-day Ghät or Djänet, was eighteen days' walking distance from Ghadämes and twelve from the city of Tassäwa in Fezzän. It appears that the latter route is identical to the ancient route of the 'Garamantean chariots' which, in the first millennium before the Christian era, linked Fezzän to Gao, passing through the region of Ajjer, Ahaggar and Adrär des Ifoghas. The existence of this ancient route is proved by the discoveries of Ablaessa and by several ancient coins found in the vicinity.

As for the Azkär-Ghadämes route (the starting-point of which was probably somewhere near Ghät or Djänet), it must be the same as the northern part of the Tädmekka-Ghadämes route described in the fifth/eleventh century by al-Bakri. However, the exact whereabouts of the stages on this route are unknown to us.

We know very little about the history of Ahaggar between the second/eighth and the sixth/twelfth centuries. Local tradition has it that, before Islamic times, there lived in Ahaggar an idolatrous Tuareg-speaking people by the name of the Isebeten (or Isabeten, sing. Asabat) who practised a pre-Tuareg form of agriculture (fig trees, vines and palm groves) and possessed irrigation channels. The present-day kabila of the Daggähili claims to be descended from these Isebeten and to be the true owners of the land. Later Ahaggar was invaded by the Lamta and then by the Hawwära who gave it its name (through the change of the Berber phoneme \( w w \) into \( gg \), attested by Ibn Khaldûn). According to that author, a group of the Hawwära crossed the sands and settled alongside the 'veil-wearing' Lamta who lived near the city of Käw-Käw (Gao) in the 'Land of the Blacks'.

It seems that the arrival of the Ahaggar-Hawwära in the territory where they now live must have been connected with the defeat inflicted upon the Hawwära of Awräs by the Fätimid prince al-Mu'izz in 342/953 and to the routing of these rebels, some of whom fled 'as far as the Land of the Blacks', apparently in the direction of present-day Ahaggar.

The Arab sources mention several regions (or places) in Aïr that were already known in the third/ninth century. Al-Ya'kûbî mentions there amongst the kingdoms under the sway of the Sudanese state of Käw-Käw (above the loop of the Niger) - kingdoms that were probably located in Aïr. These were the kingdoms of Maranda, al-Hazban (in the manuscript al-Harbar) and Tikarkann (in the manuscript Tidkarïr).

The first of these kingdoms, which is also known to us from the Kitäb al-Buldän of Ibn al-Fa'îh al-Hamadâni (written about 290/903) and, later, from the geographical works of Ibn Ḥawkal and al-Idrisi, derives its name...
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

from the small town and water-hole (present-day Marandet) situated to the south of Agadès. The remains of an ancient village can still be seen there that have, according to R. Mauny, provided us with vestigial evidence of an ancient copper foundry.\textsuperscript{100} According to Ibn al-Fakîh, the people known as the Maranda lived to the north of Kâw-Kâw and their ‘land’ (or rather their capital) was a stopping place on the major trans-Saharan route leading from Gao to the oases of Egypt.\textsuperscript{101} In the latter half of the fourth/tenth century Ibn Hawkal mentions Maranda as a stage on the route leading from Ghana to Adjadâbiya in Cyrenaica. It lay one month’s walking distance away from the city of Kâw-Kâw (Gao), constituting the following stage (after Gao) on this route which then passed through the city of Zawïla in Fezzân.\textsuperscript{102} According to al-Idrîsî, Maranda was a highly populated city, ‘a refuge and a place of rest for those who come and go in the course of their travels and expeditions’. However, according to the same author, ‘travellers seldom pass by there’.\textsuperscript{103}

As for al-Hazban (al-Hazbin), we are indebted for the correct form of the word to J. Marquart who identifies it as Azben or Azbin.\textsuperscript{104} This, according to H. Barth, was the early name of Air, used by the black or mixed-race population of that region, still in use at the time of that traveller, i.e. around the middle of the nineteenth century.\textsuperscript{105}

The third kingdom cited by al-Ya‘kûbî goes by the name of Tikarkarîn; this is the Berber feminine plural of Takarkart, a name which reappears on our maps as Tacarcart. This cliff is situated halfway between the city of Tahua and that of Agadès, in a region where there is no lack of evidence of an ancient civilization. In the eighth/fourteenth century Ibn Baṭṭûta speaks of a Berber sultan by the name of at-Takarkarî who had a dispute with the sultan of Takedda (present-day Azelik) in the south-western part of Air. In another part of Ibn Baṭṭûta’s work the sultan in question bears the name of al-Karkarî, without the Berber prefix \textit{Ta}.\textsuperscript{106}

Alongside Azbin which, as we just saw, is the early name for Air, a few Arab sources also contain a reference to this last name. It appears in the writings of al-Bakrî in the form of Hayr or Hîr.\textsuperscript{107} The modern Arabic form of this name is Ahîr and, in Tamashek, Air.

The massif of Adrar des Ifoghas was not unknown either to the early Arab geographers, mainly on account of the city of Tâmëkka (today the ruins of Es-Sûk, 45 km north of the present-day village of Kidal), which

\textsuperscript{100} R. Mauny, 1961, p. 138.
\textsuperscript{101} Ibn al-Fakîh, 1885, p. 68; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 27.
\textsuperscript{102} Ibn Hawkal, 1938, p. 92; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 46.
\textsuperscript{103} Al-Idrîsî, 1866, p. 47; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 125.
\textsuperscript{104} J. Marquart, 1913, pp. lxxxviii and cix–cxi.
\textsuperscript{105} H. Barth, 1857–8, Vol. 1, p. 382.
\textsuperscript{107} Al-Bakrî, 1911, p. 183; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 87.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

was its political centre. Tādmekka was also an important stage on the caravanserai route leading from Gao to Ghadames and the city of Tripoli. Nine days' walking distance lay between Gao and Tādmekka and forty between Tādmekka and Ghadames, by way of the region of Saghmāra and four deserts, described by al-Bakrī.\(^{108}\)

The Saghmāra were Berbers who lived in a region extending to the north, or rather the north-east, of Tādmekka, to a point six days' walking distance (i.e. about 120 km as the crow flies) from the ruins of Es-Sük. They also inhabited the area under the dominion of Tādmekka, which lay south of this city, opposite the city of Gao. H. Lhote identifies this group with the Tuareg Isekkamaren (sing. Asekkamar), some of whom still nomadize today in Adrar des Ifoghas.\(^{109}\)

Tādmekka already existed in the third/ninth century and was an important trade centre, visited mainly by Ibādite Berber merchants from Wargla, Djarīd and Djabal Nafūsa who frequented this city to obtain the gold that was brought in large quantities from the gold-bearing areas near Ghana. It also served as a storage place for merchandise from the Maghrib, especially clothing, which was brought in by the Wargla route. Tādmekka was better constructed than Ghana and Gao but had no crops.\(^{110}\)

In the fourth/tenth century Tādmekka formed a state governed by the kings belonging to the Banū Tānmak (a branch of the Ṣanḥādja). According to Yākjūt, the name of this state was Tādmak and its capital was called Zakrān, which should be amended to Akrām (or Agrām). However, the inhabitants of that city did not belong to the Berber branch of the Ṣanḥādja but to the Zanāta. While the Zanāta inhabitants of the capital were, from the third/ninth century onwards, Ibādite Muslims, the Ṣanḥādja of Tādmak did not become Muslims until 503/1109-10.\(^{111}\)

Another ancient city, Tasalīt, is an old site where ancient mines have been discovered and where there was copper and an ore slightly reminiscent of turquoise, formerly used to make the famous 'pearls of Gao'. In my view, this was the city known as Tasalā or Tasali, mentioned by al-Zuhri. According to that geographer, the city of Tasalā or Tasali was nine days' walking distance from Tādmekka, which suggests that it corresponded to present-day Tasalī, which lies 180 km north of Es-Sük as the crow flies. The people of Tasalā/Tasali, like those of Tādmekka, were at war with the inhabitants of Ghana; they converted to Islam in 503/1109.\(^{112}\)

Six days' walking distance from Tādmekka, according to al-Bakrī, lay a region known as Tūtak or Tawtak which possessed underground salt

---

The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

mines. \footnote{Al-Bakrī, 1911, p. 183; 1913, p. 344; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 87.} The province of Tütak derives its name from a branch of the Şanhädja known to us from Ibn Ḥawkāl’s list of Berber ḱambilas. \footnote{Ibn Ḥawkāl, 1938, p. 106; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 50; cf. T. Lewicki, 1959.} We are unable to ascertain the exact whereabouts of this region. It is not impossible that its name, as well as that of the tribe of the Tütak, is connected with that of the Tāitok, a noble Tuareg group now living in Ahnet, a region to the north of Adrār des Ifoghas and to the north-west of Tamanraset.

The western Sahara

The ethnic and political situation of this part of the Sahara, which extends westwards from Adrār des Ifoghas and southwards from Morocco as far as the Atlantic Ocean, is known to us, for the period from the first/eighth to the sixth/twelfth centuries, from Arab sources.

The earliest information concerns the expedition led by the general 'Ukba ibn Nāfī' in southern Morocco. In 62/682 this commander entered the province of as-Süs al-Aksā and even crossed its southern borders into the Sahara, where 'he attacked the Massūfā and, having taken many of them prisoner, retraced his steps'. \footnote{Ibn Khaldūn, 1925-56.}

The purpose of the expedition led by 'Ukba ibn Nāfī' was not in our opinion the permanent Arab conquest and Islamization of southern Morocco and the western Sahara, although a medieval Arab historian speaks of the conversion to Islam, under the pressure of this general, of the south Moroccan Berbers of the Dīazūla group. It appears, however, that its purpose was rather to reconnoitre the gold-bearing regions of the Western Sudan, and in this it was similar to that undertaken by the same 'Ukba ibn Nāfī' in 47/666-7 in order to survey the trade route leading from the coast of Tripolitania through Fezzān and Kawār to Lake Chad.

Twenty-five years after 'Ukba ibn Nāfī', the new Arab governor of Ḳfrīkiya, Mūsā ibn Nuṣayr, conquered, pacified and converted to Islam the major part of the territories of present-day Morocco. Between 87/705-6 and 90/708-9 Mūsā ibn Nuṣayr penetrated as far as the region of as-Süs al-Aksā whose inhabitants adopted the Islamic faith and received as their governor Marwān, the son of Mūsā ibn Nuṣayr.

But it was not until during the administration of the governor of Ḳfrīkiya, 'Ubayd Allāh ibn al-Ḥabḥāb (116/734-122/740), that this province was finally conquered and converted to Islam, as a result of the expedition led by the Arab general Ḥabīb ibn Abī ‘Ubayda. This expedition was directed not only against southern Morocco but also against the Western Sudan.
Hâbîb ibn Abî 'Ubayda returned victorious from this expedition, bringing back a large number of prisoners and a considerable quantity of gold.\textsuperscript{116}

It appears that his son Ismā'il continued the expeditions against the Berbers leading a nomadic existence in the western Sahara. No doubt these are the expeditions referred to by the eminent Muslim sectary Abûl Khaṭṭāb al-Azdi (or al-Asadî) who died in 145/762 or 147/764. In one of his accounts, transmitted by Ibn al-Faḳîh, he cites the following words of the Arab commander al-Mushtârî ibn al-Aswâd: 'I organized twenty war expeditions against the land of Anbiya, starting from as-Sûs al-recision. I saw the Nile [i.e. the Senegal River]; between that river and a salt sea [i.e. the Atlantic Ocean] stood a sandy hill at the foot of which the river had its source'.\textsuperscript{117}

This account also contains the first reference to the name Anbiya (the pronunciation of which is uncertain) to designate the territories lying between as-Sûs al-recision and the Senegal River. The name appears later in the work of al-Fazârî (c.172/788), transmitted in part by al-Masʿûdî (d. 345/956) to designate the territories situated between Sidjîlmāsa and the kingdom of Ghana, or in other words roughly the whole of the western Sahara.\textsuperscript{118} According to another passage in Ibn al-Faḳîh's work, this region extends over a distance representing seventy nights' travel through plains and deserts.\textsuperscript{119} At the end of the third/ninth century al-Ya'ḳûbî speaks of the Anbiya as a Berber people of the Ṣanḥâdja (Zenaga) group, whose country extended from Sidjîlmāsa to the city and Berber Kingdom of Ghast (referred to by other authors as Awdâghust) on the south-eastern fringe of the territories with which we are concerned here.\textsuperscript{120} The implication is that this mysterious name contains a veiled reference to the most ancient federation of Berbers in the western Sahara. According to Ibn Khaldûn, this federation was composed of the Massûfa, the Lamṭûna and the Djdûdâla; he gives the date of its fall as 306/919.\textsuperscript{121} It was against this very federation that the Arab expeditions organized by the governor 'Ubayd Allâh ibn al-Ḥâbhâb were directed.

It appears, however, that these expeditions lasted only a short time and that fairly soon an agreement was reached between the Muslims of North Africa and the chiefs of the Anbiya federation, which subsequently made it possible to pacify the territories of the western Sahara. This gave rise to favourable conditions for trans-Saharan trade in these territories and for the propagation of the Muslim religion, brought about mainly by the

\textsuperscript{116} Cf. regarding these expeditions, T. Lewicki, 1970.

\textsuperscript{117} Ibn al-Faḳîh, 1885, p. 64; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 27.


\textsuperscript{119} Ibn al-Faḳîh, 1885, p. 81; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 28.

\textsuperscript{120} Al-Ya'ḳûbî, 1892, p. 360; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 22.

North African merchants who were at the same time missionaries preaching the Faith of the Prophet. It is in our view to this brief period that the following words of Ibn Khaldûn refer: ‘When Ifrîqiya and the Maghrib were conquered [by the Arabs] merchants penetrated the western part of the land of the Sudan and found among them no king greater than the king of Ghanâ’.

These relations between the Muslim Maghrib and the Western Sudan led to a degree of rapprochement between the North African merchants and the Berber nomads of the western Sahara; the first conversions to Islam of the Berbers in this region were one of its consequences.

The first Šanhâdjâ chief to reign in the western Sahara was Tilûtân ibn Tîklân (or Itlûtân ibn Talâkâkîn) who belonged to the ‘tribe’ of the Lamtüna. According to Ibn Abî Zarî, he reigned over all the desert and more than twenty Sudanese kings paid him tribute. His territory extended over an area ‘three months long and three months wide’. He could mobilize 100,000 thoroughbred camels. His reign was long and he died at the age of eighty, in 222/837. His grandson al-Athîr ibn Bâtîn succeeded him and reigned until his death in 287/900. The last king of the state of the Šanhâdjâ was the son of al-Athîr, Tamîm, who ruled over these tribes until 306/918. He was slain by the Šanhâdjâ notables who rose up against him. As a result, a breach occurred between the Šanhâdjâ tribes, and it was not until 120 years later that they reunited under the command of the emir Abû ‘Abd Allah Muḥammad ibn Tîfât (Tîfawt), known by the name of Târsîna, one of the chiefs of the Lamtüna (460/1035). His reign lasted only three years. It was followed by that of his brother-in-law, Yahyâ, al-Djuddâlî, who became the chief of the federation of the Šanhâdjâ. It was through him that the Šanhâdjâ ‘tribes’, who had hitherto been only superficially Muslim, were converted to Sunnism by the missionary ‘Abd Allah ibn Yasîn al-Djazûlî, whom the emir Yahyâ ibn Ibrahim brought back with him when he returned from his journey to North Africa.

According to a tradition recounted by Ibn Khaldûn, supreme authority among the Šanhâdjâ lay with the Lamtüna, who already formed a large kingdom at the time of the Umayyad emir ‘Abd ar-Rahmân (139/756–172/788). Ibn Khaldûn then lists the sovereigns of the Šanhâdjâ state up to Awräken ibn Urtantak.

Another source cited by Ibn Khaldûn mentions the most famous of the Šanhâdjâ kings, who reigned ‘throughout the Sahara’ during the fourth/tenth century. He was Tínazwa ibn Wanshîk ibn Bizâr, also known as Barûyân ibn Washîk ibn Izâr. It appears that this prince was the same as the ‘Emir of the World’ mentioned in the Sanhadjam text by Ibn Khaldûn.

the one known to al-Bakrī by the name of Tin Yarūtān ibn Wīsnū ibn Nazār, who reigned between 350/961 and 360/974. Ibn Ḥawkal mentions King Tanbaruṭān ibn Isfishār, whom he calls the ‘prince of all the Ṣanhāḍja’ and who may also have been the same person.

After crossing the land of Anbiya, one reached according to al-Ya’kūbī the region known as Ghast, a pagan kingdom whose king made forays into the Land of the Blacks. Some of the inhabitants of this region lived in permanent settlements. It consisted of the Berber city and kingdom better known to the ancient Arab authors by the name of Awdāghust, which was an important trade centre, ten days’ march from the city of Ghana. Our source for this information is the Arab geographer and traveller Ibn Ḥawkal who passed through Awdāghust in 340/951-2 and who adds that two months’ march lay between Awdāghust and the city of Sidjilmāsā.

According to al-Muhallabi (writing around the end of the fourth/tenth century), Awdāghust was the name of a vast region and also of its capital, situated more than forty days’ march from Sidjilmāsā across sand and desert. According to another passage from the same source, Awdāghust contained fine markets, and travellers flocked in from all sides; the inhabitants were Muslims. The chief of the region was a man belonging to the Ṣanhāḍja group.

According to al-Bakrī, in the years from 350/961 to 360/971 the state of Awdāghust was ruled by a king known as Tin Yarūtān from the tribe of the Ṣanhāḍja whose empire extended over two months’ march. It thus appears that for a while the kingdom of Awdāghust belonged to the federation of the Ṣanhāḍja groups.

More than twenty black kings recognized the king of Awdāghust as their sovereign. Later, the Berber king of Awdāghust recognized (up to 446/1054) the supremacy of the black king of Ghana (unlike the Lamtüna, Massūfa and Djuddāla who were independent of Ghana). Awdāghust at that time was a densely populated big city whose large and wealthy population was composed of Arabs and Berbers (including members of the Nafūsa, Lawāta, Zanāta, Nafzāwa and also the Berkadjāna groups). In the Awdāghust market ‘thronging with people at all times of the day’ purchases were made with gold dust.

Awdāghust stood in a sandy plain at the foot of a mountain bare of vegetation; it was surrounded by gardens and date palms. It apparently corresponds to Tegdaoust, the ruins of which lie to the south-west of Tichitt.

125. ibid.; al-Bakrī, 1911, p. 159.
128. Ibn Ḥawkal, 1964, pp. 90-100; N. Levtzion, 1968a, is of the opinion that Ibn Ḥawkal never got as far as Awdāghust.
130. Al-Bakrī, 1911, pp. 50-3.
The role of the Sahara and Saharians in relationships between north and south

(some 200 km away) and west-north-west of Kumbi Saleh (or old Ghana) at a distance of some 400 km.\textsuperscript{131}

In the first half of the fifth/eleventh century the Berber, apparently Muslim, kingdom of Awdâghust was subject to the pagan Sudanese kingdom of Ghana. It was on these grounds that Awdâghust was attacked and conquered by the Lamtûna, Massûfa and Djuddâla of the former Şanhâdja federation, transformed around the mid-fifth/eleventh century into an Almoravid state.

Most of the inhabitants of the western Sahara between the first/seventh and fifth/eleventh centuries were Berbers of the Şanhâdja branch (Lamtûna, Massûfa and Djuddâla). The Lamtûna and Djuddâla lived in the far south of the Islamic region, in the neighbourhood of the blacks, and once formed part of the great Şanhâdja state of Anbiya. According to al-İdrîsî, the region of Tâzukkâght (present-day Sakîyyat al-Ĥamrâ) belonged to the Lamtûna.\textsuperscript{132} The territories of the Lamtûna also took in, to the north, the region of Nûl in southern Morocco.\textsuperscript{133} Further south, their territories extended to Izal (or Ayzal), which corresponds to present-day Këdia d’Idjïl. Even further south we know of a region known as Lamtûna which lies to the north-west of the region of Tâgant in south-east Mauritania. Around the year 446/1054 the Lamtûna also occupied the Mauritania Adrâr (Adrâr Tmâr), subsequently known as Djabal Lamtûna. This was a region covered with date plantations, established by a people who had settled in the area long before, the Bafûr, as they are referred to by local tradition and by certain Portuguese authors.

The chief city of Djabal Lamtûna was Azûkî which grew up between the fifth/eleventh and sixth/twelfth centuries around the Almoravid fortress of the same name. It was an important stopping place on the route leading from Sidjîlmâsa to the Western Sudan. The blacks knew this city by the name of Kûkadam (al-İdrîsî) or Kâkadam.\textsuperscript{134} It corresponds to present-day Azougï, a small settlement possessing ancient Almoravid and pre-Almoravid ruins in northern Mauritania, not far from the modern town of Atâr.\textsuperscript{135}

The Banû Massûfa lived in the desert in the region traversed by the route linking the city of Sidjîlmâsa to the city of Ghana. They possessed no

\begin{footnotes}
\item 132. The name ‘Tâzukkâght’ (for Tazuggaght) is the feminine form of the Berber word azegagh, ‘route’. The name ‘Sakîyyat al-Ĥamrâ’ means ‘the red trench’. This region was already known to Ibn Khaldûn and its centre, al-Ĥamrâ’, appears on Abraham Cresques’ map (fourteenth century) under the name of Alamara.
\item 134. Al-İdrîsî, 1866, pp. 59–60; Yâkûf, 1866–73, Vol. 4, p. 229.
\item 135. R. Mauny, 1955a.
\end{footnotes}
city except for that of Wâdî Dar'a or Tiyûmetîn, five days' distance from Sidjîlmaşâ.\textsuperscript{136}

Around the middle of the sixth/twelfth century the Massûfa went as far south as the city of Azukî. In the south-east lay the saltworks of Taghâzâ which came into their possession; through this area passed the caravan route leading to Iwâlîten (or Walâta), an important trade centre on the southern edge of the western Sahara under the dominion, in the eighth/fourteenth century, of the kings of Mali.

To the south-west of the territory occupied by the Banû Lam tüna, from the fifth/eleventh century onwards, lived the Şan-hâđja group of the Banû Djuddâla, probably descendants of the ancient Getulians. According to al-Bâkri, they dwelt directly to the north of lower Senegal near the sea, from which they were separated by no other group. The Djuddâla thus inhabited present-day south-western Mauritania and also the area surrounding al-Djâbal al-Lammâ' (Cap Blanc).\textsuperscript{137}

As regards the inhabitants of the kingdom of Awdâghust, most of them were nomads and were Şan-hâđja (Zenaga) in the strict sense. Its capital was, as we saw earlier, inhabited by natives of Ifrîkiya and members of the Barkadjâna, Nafûsa, Lawâta, Zanâta and, above all, Nafzâwa peoples; there were also a small number of people from all the major Muslim cities. These were Ibâdite traders from the various groups that had settled in Djâbal Nafûsa, Bîlâd al-Djarîd, and in the oases of Sûf, Wargla and Wâdî Rîgh. Ibâdite sources in fact contain occasional mention of the travels of Ibâdite traders from these regions to Awdâghust.

It emerges from archaeological excavations, and from the traditions collected by French scholars, that, in certain areas of the western Sahara, alongside the nomad population, there were also groups of agriculturalists whose descendants have survived to the present day. We possess some Portuguese manuscripts, dating from the ninth/fifteenth to the tenth/sixteenth centuries, from which it is possible to discover the nationality of these agriculturalists. According to these sources, they belonged to two different groups. The white agriculturalists were known as the Bâffor or Abofur (in local traditions Bafûr) and the black agriculturalists as the Barbar (Barbara, Baräbir, Barbaros), related to the Soninke.

The most ancient of these groups left in the Mauritanian Adrâr a considerable number of ruined villages and archaeological sites.\textsuperscript{138} These ancient sites are attributed by local traditions to a mysterious people known as the Baffor, Abofur or Bafour, who inhabited the Mauritanian Adrâr just

\textsuperscript{136} According to V. Monteil, 1968, p. 90, this city was in the region of present-day Tagounit, 20 km to the north of the bend in the Dar'a river.

\textsuperscript{137} C. E. de Foucauld, 1940, mentions a 'tribe' of Tuareg marabouts in Āîr and Azawagh known as the Ighdâlen. It appears that these are the descendants of the Djuddâla of the early Middle Ages.

\textsuperscript{138} See R. Mauny, 1955a.
before the arrival of the Lamtūna. According to some traditions, the Bafour were whites (which the author considers to be the most likely) belonging to the Berber group of the Zanāta. According to Mauritanian tradition, the non-Muslim autochthonous inhabitants of Adrār Tmār were agriculturalists and were responsible for the planting of the first palm trees in Adrār. The Bafour might, we think, be identified with the Libyan (Moorish) tribe of the Bavares, active in the western part of North Africa in the third and fourth centuries of the Christian era. They subsequently emigrated to present-day Mauritania, and left their culture and their name to the inhabitants of Adrār Tmār which, in the early sixteenth century, was still known as the ‘mountain of Baffor’, as recorded in one part of the account given by Valentim Fernandes.

According to Arab sources of the sixth/twelfth century (Kitāb al-Istiḥṣār and al-Zuhrî), the blacks known as the Barbar or Barbara (Arabic plural: Barābir) formed the population of the Sudanese land of Zāfunu, corresponding to present-day Diafunu. They counted among the Djanāwa, that is to say the blacks, and also, according to al-Zuhrî, lived in the centre of the desert (probably the deserts and steppes of south-east Mauritania) and in areas in the vicinity of Ghana and Tādmekka (north of Gao), the inhabitants of which invaded their lands in order to take slaves. They had their kings and wore animal skins, as was normal for a people partly composed of nomads. The Barbara believed themselves to be the noblest of the Sudanese peoples and claimed that the sovereigns of Ghana came from their ‘tribe’.

The Barbara would thus appear to be a group of the Soninke. Might not al-Barābir (Barbara, Barbar) be identified with a black people known as al-Barbar who, so local tradition has it, formerly inhabited the city of Tichitt in south-eastern Mauritania? Some observers identify this legendary people with a people of black-skinned agriculturalists referred to as the Barbaros in the ancient Portuguese chronicles and appearing in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries of the Christian era in the Mauritania Adrār, alongside the ‘Azenègues’ or Berber Zenaga (Ṣanhādja).

The foregoing is an account of the history and historical geography of the Sahara from the first/seventh to the sixth/twelfth centuries. We have done no more here than relate the basic facts, referring the reader to the Arab sources and special monographs dealing with this period.

140. These traditions are corroborated by an interesting passage in the Kitāb al-ḥāyan almughrīb of Ibn ‘Idhārī al-Marrākushī (early fourteenth century) who, speaking of the campaigns of Ibn Yāsīn, founder of the Almoravid state, relates the following: ‘Near to where the Lamtūna lived there was a mountainous region inhabited by non-Muslim Berber tribes. ‘Abd Allāh ibn Yāsīn invited them to adopt the faith. They refused. Yahyā ibn ‘Umar ordered that they be attacked: the Lamtūna raided them and took prisoners whom they shared among themselves’.
The establishment of the Fātimid dynasty: the role of the Kutāma

At the end of the third/ninth century a large part of the Muslim West (the Maghrib and Spain) was already outside the effective control of the Abbasid Caliphate of Baghdad: the Umayyads were established firmly in al-Andalus, the Idrīsid dynasty held sway over some cities and Berber groups in the Muslim Far West (al-Maghrib al-Akṣā), and on the fringes between the sown and the desert several Khāridjite states stretching from Djabal Nafūsa to Sīdīlmāsa led their independent lives. Only the Aghlabīs in Ifrīkiya still paid allegiance to Baghdad but after one hundred years of virtual independence their links with the Abbasids were merely formal.¹

In religious terms – and it should not be forgotten that in Islam the political and religious spheres are closely interwoven – the Maghrib was divided between the orthodoxy of Sunna with Kayrawān as one of the strongholds of the Mālikite legal school, and the heterodoxy of various Khāridjite sects (Ibaḍites, Şufrites, Nakkārites, etc.). Although the Idrīsids belonged to ‘Alī’s family and their establishment was preceded by Shi‘īte propaganda, it seems that the doctrinal tenets of the Shi‘a, as elaborated in the East, were not much propagated and even less followed in their realm.

All this was changed with the coming to North Africa of a vigorous and extremely active form of the Shi‘a, the Ismā‘iliyya, at the end of the third/ninth century. An essential part of Shi‘īte creed is the dogma that the leadership (imāmat) of the Muslim community belongs rightly to the descendants of Muḥammad through his daughter Fāṭima and her husband ‘Alī, the fourth caliph. Unlike the Sunnite caliph the Shi‘īte imām had inherited from Muhammad not only his temporal sovereignty but also the prerogative of interpreting the Islamic law (shari‘a), the imāms being infallible and impeccable. ‘Alī, the first imām, was succeeded by his son al-Ḥasan and then by his other son al-Ḥusayn in whose line the imāmat then continued. Another part of the imāmat doctrine is the belief that the last of

¹. Cf. Chapter 10 above.
The emergence of the Fāṭimids

The visible imāms did not die but went into hiding from which he will in due time emerge as the Mahdī ('the divinely guided one') to restore true Islam, conquer the whole world and to 'fill the earth with justice and equity as it is now filled with oppression and tyranny'. On the question, however, of who should be the last visible and who the first hidden imām (and thus the Mahdī) the Shi‘ites split into many groups. A majority consider the hidden imām to be the twelfth one, Muḥammad, who disappeared in 264/878 without leaving offspring. His adherents are known as the Twelvers (Ithnā‘-ashariyya) and form today the main body of the Shi‘ites.

Another group, although agreeing with the Twelvers as to the succession down to the sixth imām, Dja‘far al-Ṣādiq, diverged at this point, professing the imāmate of Dja‘far’s eldest son Ismā‘īl (d. 144/760) in preference to his brother Muḥāammad who was recognized by the majority of the sect. Ismā‘īl (and later his son Muḥammad) thus became in their eyes the seventh and hidden imām; the sect took the name of Ismā‘īliyya and its adherents are also known as the Seveners (Sab‘iyya).

The history of this sect and the early development of its specific doctrines through which it differs from the other Shi‘ites are rather obscure. As is often the case with dissident sects, the Ismā‘īli movement split into several branches; one of the main points of divergence concerned the nature of the imāms. On one side were those who retained the original doctrine and their devotion to the hidden imām Muḥammad ibn Ismā‘īl, maintaining also the belief that ‘Alī and Muḥammad ibn Ismā‘īl were prophets, and that the latter, on his reappearance as the Mahdī would bring a new shari‘a. The other wing, the one from which the Fāṭimids emerged, accepted the doctrine according to which there were visible imāms at the head of the Muslim community. The official Fāṭimid version claims that the line of the Fāṭimid caliphs was preceded by the series of ‘hidden imāms’ descended from Muḥammad ibn Ismā‘īl. But during the early days of their rule in North Africa their doctrine had a peculiar feature: the second ruler of the dynasty, al-Kā‘im bi-Amr Allāh had a special status and was considered as the Mahdī who would usher in the messianic era. Only when his death dispelled the hopes set on him, did the figure of the imām as a temporal and spiritual leader assume a central position in Ismā‘īli thought and that of the Mahdī was pushed into the background.

The Ismā‘īlites organized some of the most subtle and effective political and religious propaganda. Their leaders began to send missionaries (dā‘ī, plur., du‘ā‘) from their places of retreat, one of the most important being in Salamiyya in Syria, to preach their doctrines, mainly the early return of the hidden imām as the expected Mahdī. They gained numerous adherents in various provinces of the Islamic world, in southern Iraq, in Bahrain, in Persia and also in the Yemen. Ismā‘īlism appealed to various social strata discontented with the established order, promising a new era of vague social justice and reform that would come with emergence of the Mahdī. In each region the missionaries skilfully exploited particular grievances of the
FIG. 12.1 The Maghrib in the first half of the fifth/eleventh century
The emergence of the Fātimids

population; in some parts they succeeded in founding small states but nowhere did their propaganda achieve such a success as in North Africa, at first among the Kutāma Berbers. Only the Fātimids among all the Ismāʿīlī Shiʿa branches were able to found and maintain an empire that lasted for more than two centuries and that came within reach of attaining the universal goal of the doctrine. 2

The Kutāma branch of the Berbers inhabited the region of Little Kabylia between Djidjelli, Satīf and Constantine on the easternmost fringe of what was formerly Roman Mauritania. Although the Aghlabids considered themselves officially masters of that area, they only rarely tried to execute their rights there so that the Kutāma were virtually independent. Ibn Khaldūn points out that ‘they were never subjugated by the Aghlabids’. 3 In spite of minimal interference from the Aghlabids the Kutāma were animated by a profound aversion towards the Arab conquerors and rulers of Ifrīkiya; they demonstrated it by often granting refuge to numerous deserters from the Aghlabid djund.

The truce between the Aghlabids and the Rustumids of Tāhert at the end of the third/ninth century enabled the former to start a fresh attempt to subjugate the Kutāma. Their armies began to occupy some fortified places on the approaches to the Kutāma independent zone. With the loss of hope for Rustumid help the influence of Kharidjism among the Kutāma, never very strong, declined and the way was opened for Ismāʿīlīite propaganda. The Shiʿite creed was not entirely unknown in the Maghrib as during the third/ninth century two missionaries, Abū Sufyān and al-Hulwānī had led a successful although short propaganda campaign in those regions. 4

More durable, and in the last analysis of decisive importance, were the activities of another propagandist (dāʿi), Abū ʿAbd Allāh al-Shīʿi, a native of Yemen, who was sent among the Kutāma towards the close of the century. Acquainting himself with some Kutāma šaykhs during their pilgrimage to Mecca he accompanied them to their native land in 280/893.

It is not entirely clear what special appeal for the Kutāma was represented by the Ismāʿīlī Shīʿism preached by Abū ʿAbd Allāh. It is difficult to discern any clear social character in the Fātimid branch of Ismāʿīlism. In the Maghrib they exploited the general discontent of the local population and to some degree the Kutāma expansionism but even those Berbers have never assimilated their doctrines. Once in power in the Maghrib and later in Egypt the Fātimids did not implement — and never intended to — any social transformation; their theoretical writings do not even mention similar preoccupations. It was in the other branch of Ismāʿīliyya, the Kārma-

2. Literature about the Ismāʿīliyya is rather abundant; the most important and recent studies are those by B. Lewis, 1940; W. Ivanow, 1952; A. S. Tritton, 1958; W. Madelung, 1961; S. M. Stern, 1961.
tians in Bahrayn and eastern Arabia, that the primitive social ideas of the
movement stressing social justice and egalitarian ideals were incarnated.
Nothing distinguished the Fâtimid regime, in social terms, from all other
Islamic regimes.\

Whatever the reasons, the majority of the Kutâma was soon won over by
Abû 'Abd Allâh’s propaganda to the cause of the descendants of 'Alî and
Fâtimâ represented then by the imâm 'Ubayd Allâh. In a few years the
various Kutâma clans were unified into one strong army held together by
'asabîyya (ethnic solidarity) combined with loyalty to the Fâtimid imâm as
the expected Mahdî who would deliver the world from the hands of oppres-
sors, be they the Aghlabids or their distant Abbasid masters in Baghdad.

The decisive struggle against the Aghlabids started in 290/903 when the
Kutâma troops descended from their mountains into the plains of Ifrîkiya.
The Aghlabid armies were easily defeated and in a few years the greater
part of Ifrîkiya was in the hands of Abû 'Abd Allâh; the sympathy of the
people to his cause was increased by his fiscal policy since he proclaimed
illegal all the non-canonical taxes and restituted to the inhabitants of the
conquered towns the booty taken from thêm by the Kutâma. By contrast,
Ziyâdat Allâh III, the last Aghlabid emir, had increased the fiscal burden
in order to finance his army; a step highly unpopular among the masses.
After a prolonged campaign, Kayrawân, the capital of Ifrîkiya, was con-
quered by Abû 'Abd Allâh. Realizing that this was the final defeat, Ziyâdat
Allâh left his residence in Ra'kâda and fled to Egypt. The Aghlabid period
in North African history came to an end.

After the first successes of his followers in Ifrîkiya, imâm 'Ubayd Allâh,
who until then had lived in Salamiyya in Syria, decided to move into the
Maghrib. Instead of joining Abû 'Abd Allâh in Ifrîkiya, he went to Sidjil-
mâsa, the capital of the Khâridjite Midrârid state in southern Morocco.
That is a curious episode and no conclusive answer as yet has been found to
explain it. What was the purpose of his going to the Far West and among
the worst enemies of the Shi'a when there was already a large area under
the control of his followers? Was his aim to establish in Sidjilmâsa a second
centre and lay hands on the flow of gold coming there from the Sudan?6
Whatever his original purpose, some time after his arrival he was put under
house arrest and later into prison by al-Yasâ’ ibn Midrâr.

In 296/909 Abû 'Abd Allâh led the Kutâma army to Sidjilmâsa to free
his master; in the course of that expedition and with the help of the local
inhabitants he had overthrown the Rustumids in Tähert. Sidjilmâsa
capitulated without any fighting and 'Ubayd Allâh was set free.7 In the
next year he triumphally entered Ra'kâda where he was proclaimed

7. Some Sunni historians maintain that 'Ubayd Allâh was killed in prison and that Abû'
   Abd Allâh found there only his servant whom he had presented to his followers as the true
The emergence of the Fātimids

'Prince of the faithful' (a caliphal title) and 'Mahdi'; according to the Ismāʿîlite doctrine that meant the end of the epoch of tyranny and the beginning of a new 'golden' era.

The origin of 'Ubayd Allāh and thus of the Fātimids is still wrapped in obscurity. Muslim historians are divided into two camps on the question of the legitimacy of their claims. The enemies of the Fātimids denied their descent from 'Alī and Fāṭima and declared them to be impostors; it is noteworthy that no dispute as to the genuineness of their descent had arisen until the year 402/1011 when the Abbasid Caliph in Baghdad issued a manifesto signed by several Sunnite and Shiʿite notables, among them many sharīfs, declaring the falsity of the Fātimid claims. In later times we find among the supporters of their legitimacy even some notable Sunnite historians such as Ibn al-Athīr, Ibn Khaldūn and al-Maqrīzī. This is rather a complex problem and even modern scholarship has not found a satisfactory solution. But most important was the firm belief of their immediate followers in North Africa in their 'Alid descent.

'Ubayd Allāh al-Mahdī, who reigned from 297/909 to 322/934, established himself first in Raḵḵāda but shortly afterwards began to build a new capital – al-Mahdiyya – on the eastern coast, where he transferred his seat in 308/920. Later, after Abū Yazīd's revolt, the Caliph al-Manṣūr (334/946–341/953) founded a new capital to the east of Kayrawān, Şabra-Manṣūriyya, finished in 337/949. There his successors resided until 362/973 when al-Muʿizz, the last of the North African Fātimids, left it definitively for Egypt.

The foundation of a Shiʿite state in North Africa sealed the break-up of the Muslim world into three mutually hostile empires: the Abbasid Caliphate in Baghdad, the Fātimid Caliphate in North Africa and the Umayyad Emirate in Spain; shortly afterwards, in 318/929, the Umayyad emir of Cordoba ʿAbd al-Raḥmān III confronted with the spectacle of two caliphs – a heretical one in Tunisia and an orthodox one far away in Baghdad – proclaimed his own Caliphate. Thereafter there were for some time three caliphs in Islam. The collapse of the Umayyad Caliphate in 422/1031 reduced the number again to two and the extinction of the Fātimids in 567/1171 brought it to one, that of the Abbasids in Baghdad.

The struggle for hegemony in North Africa

While the overthrow of the Aghlabid dynasty and the occupation of Ifrikiya proper were accomplished in a relatively short time, further Fātimid conquests in the Maghrib proved to be more difficult and time-


consuming. This was partly because of the insecure internal situation of their realm, partly because of the narrow basis of their military strength.

The new doctrine of Ismāʿīli Shiʿism could not fail to bring trouble to a region already split between Mālikite Sunnism and Khāridjism in its Ibadite and Sufrite forms. All these groups accepted the rule of the Fāṭimids only grudgingly and often manifested their opposition, which was either sternly suppressed or extinguished by bribery. The mainstay of Sunnite opposition was Kayrawān, the famous centre of Mālikite orthodoxy, whose great influence among the townspeople and rural population continued undiminished. Although these Sunnite groups never openly revolted, their passive resistance and the possibility of their joining forces with the more radical Khāridjites contributed to the difficulties of the dynasty. The caliphs openly expressed their contempt for and even hatred of the local inhabitants and we can surmise that these feelings were reciprocal.¹⁰

From the very beginning the Fāṭimids regarded North Africa merely as a springboard for further conquests towards the East in order to supplant the Abbasids and to fulfil their universalistic dreams. These grandiose projects forced them to keep up powerful and expensive armed forces both on land and sea. Although the dāʾī Abū Ḥāmid initially gained consider-

able sympathy by suppressing many unlawful taxes, this policy was soon changed and the Fātimid state re-introduced a number of non-canonical taxes, both direct and indirect, tolls and various other contributions. In the chronicles we find an echo of the general discontent provoked by the fiscal regime of the rulers 'for whom all the pretexts to fleece the people were good.'

Military establishment was at the beginning rather precarious as the sole supporters of the dynasty were the Kutāma and some other branches or clans of the Sanhādja. These tribal contingents, moreover, could be held under discipline only by the promise of plunder and booty; if not satisfied, they were inclined to revolt. That inclination was demonstrated already two years after 'Ubayd Allāh's accession to the throne when he had Abū 'Abd Allāh and his brother assassinated for reasons that are not quite clear to us. In response the Kutāma rose in revolt and proclaimed a new Mahdī, a child; the revolt was soon suppressed with much bloodshed. Although it is generally believed that the Kutāma formed the mainstay of the Fātimid power structure — and there is no doubt that they helped the dynasty in its conquest of the Maghrib and Egypt and played there a role that should not be underestimated — there are many instances of their revolts, disloyalty and disturbances. In such a situation it was only natural for the founder of the dynasty to look elsewhere for more trustworthy recruits for his army. He found them in various Slavonic people from the Balkan peninsula: the Śakāliba (sing., Śaklabī) as they were called by the Arabs, had already served as guards under the last Aghlabids but it was under 'Ubayd Allāh and his immediate successors that the Śakāliba troops became the second — and more stable — pillar of the Fātimid military and even administrative system. The Śakāliba, mostly of South Slavonic (Dalmatian, Serbian, Bulgarian, etc.) origin came to Ifnkiya through various channels, either as slaves imported and sold by the Venetians or as captives from Arab raids on the coasts of the Adriatic Sea. In the Fātimid empire they played a role similar to that of the Turkish slave-soldiers in the more eastern parts of the Islamic world, and served not only as the elite troops but also as administrators, governors and courtiers, being known for their military prowess as well as for their loyalty. Some of them attained the highest posts, like Djawhar, the future conqueror of Egypt and founder of Cairo and the al-Āzhār Mosque and university. Under al-Mu'izz two of the Śakāliba, Kaysār and Muażaffar, were nominated governors of the western and eastern provinces respectively in North Africa and there were many others in the immediate entourage of the caliphs.

12. The conflict between the Mahdī and his dāʾī arose either because the latter had doubts of him really being the Mahdī, or because his master was afraid of Abū 'Abd Allāh's great power and gifts of persuasion.
It was the help of these two bodies of troops— the Kutäma and the Ṣakäliba— that turned the small Fātimid realm in Iffrikiya into an Empire stretching from the Atlantic to Syria, and into one of the Mediterranean big powers in the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries. The black Africans on the other hand did not play the same role as later during the Egyptian phase. They did, however, serve as troops in the army, being called Zawïlï after the great slave market in Fezzän. This points to the Chad region as their country of origin.¹⁴

Although the Fātimids are considered to be the first dynasty to establish the political unity of the whole of North Africa (Iffrikiya and the Maghrib), a close look indicates how tenuous their authority was westwards of Iffrikiya proper. It would be tedious to attempt to enumerate or describe all the campaigns undertaken in the Maghrib during the reigns of 'Ubayd Allah, al-Ḳā'im, al-Manṣūr (334/946–341/953) and al-Mu‘izz (341/953–365/975). Many regions or towns subdued by the Fātimid armies were to be repeatedly reconquered as the local people, chiefs or emirs always took the first opportunity to liberate themselves from foreign domination. So Tâhert was first seized in 295/908, to be reconquered in 299/911 and in 322/934, Fez was taken for the first time in 308/920 and retaken in 322/930, 423/935–6 and 347/958. The same is true of Sidjilmäsa where the Fātimid governors rotated with Midrärid emirs. Even Āwrås, a region close to Iffrikiya, was only pacified in 342/953.

Some regions in North Africa never came under the authority of the Fātimids. After Tâhert had been taken, the last Rustumid imām fled with his people to Wargla where the Ibādites, although not attempting the foundation of a new imāmat, remained independent and even spread to the Mzāb. The Djabal Nafusa, an ancient stronghold of the Ibādites, was never conquered and throughout the fourth/tenth century was the centre of a small independent state.

During the fourth/tenth century the whole belt along the northern fringes of the Sahara remained in the hands of the Zanāta who controlled the terminals of the caravan trade going to the Lake Chad region and to Gao. The Fātimid caliphs were never able to bring that part of the Maghrib under their domination; it was in the westernmost terminal, Sidjilmäsa, that they attempted to tap the influx of Sudanese gold so much needed for their grandiose conquest plans. It seems that the control of the western gold route, not the colonization of the whole Maghrib was the chief aim of their North African policy.¹⁵

The Fātimid attempts to implement that policy were continuously thwarted both by local centrifugal forces and by external foes joined together in common opposition against the Shi‘ite dynasty. The traditional rivalry between the Şanhâdja and the Zanāta Berbers, conditioned by their

The emergence of the Fāṭimid

different ways of life, commercial interests and religious allegiance, was
soon integrated into a more grandiose duel fought in the fourth/tenth cen-
tury by the great powers of Western Islam – the Umayyads of Spain and
the Fāṭimids of Ifnkiya. Having no common frontiers those two empires
nevertheless carried on a deadly struggle for hegemony through their
Berber allies who acted as intermediaries; whereas generally (there were
some exceptions) the Zanāta and particularly the most formidable amongst
them, the Maghrāwa, represented the interests and claims of the caliphs of
Cordoba, the Șanhāḍja groups, especially the Banū Zīrī, stood firmly on
the Fāṭimid side. For one and a half centuries, both antagonistic
alliances knew alternately successes and setbacks but as long as the Fāṭimid
base of power remained in Ifnkiya (until the eighth decade of the fourth/
tenth century), the Șanhāḍja–Fāṭimid alliance got the upper hand. During
that period their armies at least twice reached the western Maghrib: in
322/934 a Fāṭimid army led by Maysūr al-Šāklabī reconquered Fez and
re-established the Idrīsids in their domains under a Fāṭimid protectorate.
On a greater scale was the campaign of Djawhar in 347–8/958–9; with a
huge Kutāma and Șanhāḍja army under Zīrī ibn Manād, he subdued large
parts of Morocco as far as the Atlantic Ocean, with the exception of
Tangier and Ceuta which remained in Umayyad hands. Not even that
great success established a durable Fāṭimid control over those distant
regions for some eight years later Djawhar had to undertake a second
expedition into the same area to bring it again under the sway of his
masters. Shortly afterwards, with the main Fāṭimid forces concentrated on
the attack of Egypt, the western Maghrib slipped away into the Umayyad
orbit and was for ever lost to the Fāṭimids and their Zīrīd vassals.

In the background of the Fāṭimid–Umayyad and Șanhāḍja–Zanāta
struggle loomed from the start the vision of the Sudanese gold and of con-
trol over the terminals of the caravan routes. Scholars are only beginning to
appreciate the implications of that factor for North and West African his-
tory, particularly for the interpretation of Fāṭimid history.

The growing discontent of large strata of population with the fiscal and
religions oppression of the Fāṭimids has already been mentioned. Until the
last years of al-Šāʿīm’s reign the external manifestations of discontent did
not attain any dangerous form and some occasional local revolts or riots
were easily suppressed. Then, in 332/943–4 there suddenly broke out a
terrible revolt, or rather a genuine revolution, that came near to destroying
the whole Fāṭimid state. Its leader was Abū Yazīd Makhlād ibn Kaydād,
commonly called Abū ʾl-Ḥimār (the man on the donkey) born either at
Tādmekka or at Gāo (Kāw–Kāw) in the Sudan as a son of a Zanāti mer-

17. The pioneer work on this problem was done by J. Devisse, 1970; see also C. Cahen,
1981.
chant from Bilâd al-Djarîd and his black slave girl.\(^{18}\) Since his early youth Abû Yazîd had excelled as a scholar and teacher of Ibâdite dogmatics and soon became one of the leading figures of the Nukkârite branch, the most radical Ibâdite wing. When 'Ubayd Allâh al-Mahdî established the Shî'ite domination, Abû Yazîd dedicated all his powers of oratory, missionary zeal and growing influence to mobilizing people for the destruction of the ungodly dynasty. From Djarîd, where his agitation aroused the suspicion of the authorities, he fled to the central Maghrib. Both among the Berbers of the Awrâs Mountains and the peasant masses of the plains he preached a holy war against the Fâtimids, propounding the establishment of a democratic state led by a council of pious Shaykhs and run according to the Khâridjite doctrine. He gained some support from the Spanish Umayyads and entered into a rather uneasy alliance with the orthodox Mâlikite bourgeoisie in Kayrawân. His army of fanatical adherents swept over the plains of Ifrîkiya six months after the beginning of the open revolt, conquered Kayrawân (in 333/944) and defeated the Fâtimid troops in several fierce battles. Thereafter, for ten months, Abû Yazîd laid siege to al-Mahdiyya, the last stronghold of Fâtimid rule, defended by the Caliph al-Ḳâ'im with his Kutâma and Ṣakahîba troops. The Shî'ite domination in North Africa was on the brink of collapse.\(^{19}\)

A prolonged siege by an unprofessional army always saps its strength and morale and soon Abû Yazîd's contingents of tribal levies started to disperse and go home. Not even the death of al-Ḳâ'im in 334/946 improved the deteriorating situation of the revolt.

The new Caliph, al-Mansûr, soon undertook energetic steps to quell the uprising; with fresh forces, mainly from Sicily, he reconquered Kayrawân and during a six months' campaign he decisively defeated the Khâridjite army. Abû Yazîd continued to defend himself with his last adherents for one year in the Hodna Mountains; in 336/947 he succumbed to injuries inflicted on him in one of the skirmishes with the Fâtimid troops. For another year the fighting was prolonged by his son Faḍl but after the death of the latter the waves of revolt gradually ebbed away.

Abû Yazîd's revolt was the greatest ever undertaken against the Fâtimids and it nearly succeeded in overthrowing their regime. A new revolt of the Wahbite Ibâdites in 358/968–9 led by Abû Khazar in Bilâd al-Djarîd, the Mzâb and Tripolitania, whose main contingents came from the Mazâta Berbers, did not seriously endanger it, being suppressed after a short time.\(^{20}\) Al-Mansûr's victory over Abû Yazîd heralded the beginning of a gradual decline of Khâridjite fortunes in North Africa. After the invasion by the Banû Hilâl in the fifth/eleventh century the decline was even accelerated; the most rigorous Ibâdites withdrew to a few remote regions.


\(^{19.}\) On the revolt see R. Le Tourneau, 1953.

whereas the majority of them were gradually converted to orthodox Sunni Islam.

Imperial policy: Sicily, the Mediterranean and Egypt

The Fāṭimids inherited an interest in the island of Sicily from their predecessors, the Aghlabids. The Aghlabids took more than seventy years 212/827–289/902 to make themselves complete masters of Sicily and for the next two hundred years the island formed a province of the Islamic world. The Fāṭimid beginnings on the island were not auspicious as two successive governors sent after 297/909 by ʿUbayd Allāh were driven out by the local inhabitants who in 300/912 elected a governor of their own, Ahmad ibn ʿKurhub. He declared for the Abbasid Caliph and twice sent his fleets against Ifrikiya. In the second attempt he suffered, nevertheless, a defeat. After four years of independent rule Ibn ʿKurhub was abandoned by his troops and delivered to the Fāṭimids who had him put to death in 304/916. Only then did Sicily revert to the Fāṭimid domain but in the next three decades the island was the scene of many disturbances that almost amounted to civil war. The various elements of the Muslim population, the Arabs (both from Spain and from North Africa) and the Berbers, lived in constant friction complicated by the feuds arising from the old rivalry between the South Arabian Yemenites (including Kalbites) and the North Arabs. Only after 336/948 when the caliph sent al-Ḥasan ibn ʿAlī al-Kalbī (d. 354/965) as governor, did the situation improve with the re-establishment of order. Under him and his successors, the Kalbite dynasty, Muslim Sicily became a prosperous province which at the same time gained more and more autonomy.

The Muslims in Sicily built a better structure upon what were solid Byzantine foundations. They lightened somewhat the heavy burden of Byzantine taxation and they split many latifundia into small estates intensively cultivated by tenants and peasant proprietors. They also enriched Sicilian agriculture with new techniques and plant varieties. Muslim writers stress the wealth of metals and other minerals, one of which, sal-ammoniac (ammonium chloride), was a valuable export. It was in this period that the cultivation of citrus fruits, sugar-cane, palms and mulberries began. Cotton cultivation also continued for a long time, disappearing only in the eighth/fourteenth century. Still more significant was the progress of market gardening: onions, spinach, melons and other vegetables were transmitted through Sicily to Western Europe.

Equally important was the bilateral staple trade with Ifrikiya which sent oil in exchange for Sicilian grain and timber; this last commodity, whose shortage was notorious in other Islamic countries, enabled the Aghlabids and after them the Fāṭimids to build strong navies and emerge as major

21. On the history of Muslim Sicily see the classic work of M. Amari, 1933–9.
maritime powers in the central Mediterranean. And Sicily was also the main source of seasoned sailors for manning the Fātimid (and later the Zïrïd) fleets.

Control over Sicily gave the Fātimids a strategic preponderance in the Mediterranean, and Palermo became an important naval base. In order to replenish their war-chest destined for their costly plans of conquest, the Fātimid caliphs counted on the gains from raids against the shores of Christian Europe and Muslim Spain, organized either by privateers or by the state itself. Already under 'Ubayd Allāh, Malta, Sardinia, Corsica, the Balearic and other islands felt the power of the fleet which he had inherited from the Aghlabids. The Fātimid fleet was especially active between 309/922 and 316/929 when nearly every year it raided both shores of the Adriatic Sea, the Tyrrenian coast and southern Italy (chiefly Taranto and Otranto). The expedition of 323/934–5 was also very successful; the fleet harried the southern coast of France, took Genoa and coasted along Calabria carrying off slaves and other booty. Abū Yazīd's revolt seems to have curtailed these naval activities and it was not until the reign of al-Mu‘izz that the raids again reached a greater scale. In 344/955–6 the Fātimid fleet raided the coast of Umayyad Spain and a year later Djawhar won a great success against the Byzantine navy and disembarked troops in southern Italy. But his fleet was scattered by a storm on the return voyage and suffered some losses. The maritime preponderance of the Fātimids in the Mediterranean was so great that some centuries later Ibn Khaldūn nostalgically noted that 'the Christians were unable to let float on the sea even a board'.

The occupation of Sicily naturally brought the Fātimids into a conflict with the Byzantines, the former masters of the island. Owing to the rising seapower of the Fātimids and due to the changing political situation in the Mediterranean, the Byzantines were soon driven into a defensive position and sought to conclude a truce. Already under 'Ubayd Allāh the Byzantine emperor had concluded a treaty by which he undertook to pay an annual tribute of 22,000 gold pieces. The Caliph, from his side, wanted to strengthen his position vis-à-vis the Byzantines by attempting to conclude an alliance with the Bulgars: a Bulgarian embassy visited the court at al-Mahdiyya but on their return voyage, in the company of Fātimid ambassadors, the ship was captured by the Byzantines and the projected alliance fell through. When the Byzantine emperor had freed the Fātimid envoys the Caliph reduced the above-mentioned tribute to a half in recognition of this magnanimity.

During a revolt of the Byzantine population of Girgenti in Sicily in the time of al-Ḳā‘im, the emperor attempted to support the rebels but without much success. Under al-Mu‘izz during the hostilities with the Spanish Umayyads, who obtained some help from the Byzantines, the emperor

The emergence of the Fāṭimids

proposed to the Caliph that he would withdraw his troops if al-Mu’izz was willing to grant him a long-term truce. Al-Mu’izz refused and only after his fleet achieved some success and reverses was he prepared to accept Byzantine ambassadors and conclude a five-year truce (in 346/957–8). Some years later the Byzantines refused to continue the payment of the tribute and renewed hostilities in Sicily; their army, however, suffered a disastrous defeat at the Battle of Rametta and their fleet was beaten in the naval Battle of the Straits in 354/965. The negotiations that followed resulted in a peace treaty in 356/967, since al-Mu’izz wanted to have his flank secure during the Egyptian campaign.

The imperial idea was inherent in Ismā’īli ideology, of which the Fāṭimids were the most prominent champions; among all the Ismā’īli Shi’a branches only they came within reach of attaining the ecumenical goal of their doctrine. They considered their North African kingdom as merely a preparatory stage, a necessary power base on the road to the creation of a universal Ismā’īli empire ruled by the Prophet’s descendants in accordance with the esoteric doctrine of the Ismā’īliyya. Only domination over the heartland of Islam – the region from Egypt to Iran inclusively – could bring this project of universal empire nearer to realization, not the rule over peripheral Ifrikiya and the Maghrib. Nevertheless, the caliphs were realistic enough to see that for the time being this region must form their economic and strategic basis. And it was, indeed, the resources of North Africa – both human and material – that enabled the dynasty to launch the victorious march to the East.

Soon after establishing his rule in Ifrikiya, ‘Ubayd Allah al-Madhī considered – rather prematurely – that the time for the conquest of Egypt had arrived. Under the command of his son al-Ḵā’im he launched two expeditions, in 301–2/913–15 and 307–9/919–21. After some initial successes that brought the Fāṭimid army beyond Alexandria and as far as the gates of al-Fustāṭ and, on another occasion, to Fayyūm, these campaigns ended in heavy defeats. In the second expedition the whole Fāṭimid fleet was destroyed. The only tangible result was the permanent occupation of Barka (Cyrenaica) which created an important glacis for future conquests. A third expedition to Egypt in 325/935, undertaken by al-Ḵā’im after his accession to the throne, proved again to be unsuccessful. The repeated failures were due mainly to the insufficient resources of the dynasty in the early stage. It was nearly half a century before the economic, military and political situation of the Fāṭimid state improved to such a degree as to make a new attempt to conquer Egypt successful. In the meantime Ifrikiya with its direct dependencies (Sicily, parts of Algeria and Libya) went through a period of unprecedented efflorescence due partly to its role as one of the main Mediterranean trade entrepôts, partly to the control over the gold imported from the Western Sudan. The Fāṭimid army and navy were

forged into efficient tools by experiences gained in many campaigns in the Maghrib and in the central Mediterranean, where several generals and admirals showed qualities of leadership. And last but not least the Fāṭimids were able to establish a very efficient centralized administration which assured smooth functioning of supply services for their armed forces.

These achievements as well as the success of Fāṭimid armies in the Maghrib allowed the fourth Caliph, al-Mu‘izz, to prepare and launch the final attack on Egypt. The carefully planned conquest, which was also facilitated by skilful political propaganda was achieved without much difficulty by Djawhar, who entered al-Fustāṭ on 12 Sha‘bān 358/1 July 969. Shortly after the conquest of al-Fustāṭ, Djawhar started to build a new capital, Cairo – in Arabic, al-xCDhira – and in the next year laid the foundations of the al-Azhar mosque. Four years after the conquest, in 362/973, al-Mu‘izz moved from Idrīṣiya to Cairo making Egypt the centre of an empire that survived its original founders and lasted for more than five centuries.  

This shift of the Fāṭimid centre to the East had profound and manifold consequences for the history of North Africa.

The return to Berber hegemony

In the heavy fighting against Abū Yazīd’s revolt, the Talkata, a branch of the Šanhādja, led by Zīrī ibn Manād, had proved their loyalty to the Fāṭimid cause. In recognition of this the Caliph had given Zīrī, after the defeat of Abū Yazīd, the command over all the Šanhādja and their territory. During the remaining Fāṭimid period in the Maghrib, Zīrī and his son Bulukkīn led many victorious campaigns against the Zanāta and the Maghrāwa in the central and western Maghrib either independently or in alliance with Fāṭimid generals. Later, in the time of al-Mu‘izz, the Zīrīds were entrusted with the governorship of the central Maghrib (Ashīr, Tiāret, Baghāya, Msīla, Mzāb) and of the towns they had founded (Algiers, Milyāna, Médea).

It was thus only natural that the Caliph, before leaving definitively for Egypt in 359/972, should nominate Bulukkīn ibn Zīrī as his lieutenant over all the western part of the empire. Although at first glance this event does not seem to be revolutionary, in reality it inaugurated a new epoch in North African history. Until the coming of the Zīrīds all the main dynasties had been of Eastern origin; the Idrīṣids, the Rustumids, the Aghlabids,

24. So called, because on the day of its foundation the planet Mars (al-xCDhira, lit., the subduer) was in the ascendant.
25. For the history of the Fāṭimids in Egypt see Chapter 9 above and Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 15.
28. Zīrī ibn Manād was killed in 360/971 in a battle against the Maghrāwa.
The emergence of the Fātimids

The Zirīds were the first reigning house of Berber origin; moreover, they opened the period of Maghriban history which was to see political power in the region held exclusively by Berber dynasties (the Almoravids, the Almohads, the Zayyanids, the Marinids, the Hafsids).

Another change, although of lesser importance, was the rise of the Ṣanḥāja. The Fātimid army sent to conquer the East consisted mostly of the Kutāma and from that time on Kutāmis were found all over Egypt, Palestine and Syria as commanders, as insurgents or as private citizens. The exodus of the Kutāma warriors opened the way for the Ṣanḥāja Berbers to establish and consolidate their hegemony over the eastern part of the Maghrib.

Under the first three Zirīds – Bulukkīn (361/972–373/984), al-Maṣūr (373/984–386/996 and Bādis (386/996–406/1016 – the relations with the Fātimids remained in general correct. The tribute to Cairo was paid regularly and the emirs occasionally sent precious gifts to the caliphs who, nevertheless, surrounded the emirs with representatives whose role was to control them. At the same time the Zirīds tried to acquire more real independence without renouncing the de jure suzerainty of the Fātimids. These, of course, were aware of this trend but for various reasons did not wish it to come to an open rupture and therefore employed at times more devious means to recall their vassals to obedience. When al-Maṣūr deposed a powerful Fātimid representative in Ḳifrīya and proclaimed himself to be more than a simple administrator who could be exchanged by a stroke of pen, no open reaction followed from Cairo. But a dāʿī was sent to the Kutāma instructing them to rise against al-Maṣūr (in 375/986). After some years of fighting the revolt was suppressed with exceptional cruelty and the dāʿī executed. The Kutāma as a political and military factor in the region were definitively finished and the Zirīd authority strengthened.

Although Bādis showed more subservience towards Cairo and was duly rewarded with the province of Barka, he did not receive any help from his suzerain when his uncle Ḥammād proclaimed himself independent. It seems that the Fātimids, more and more absorbed by their Eastern politics, were gradually losing interest in the western parts of the empire; whether this had been caused by the economic decline of Ḳifrīya or by the inability of the Fātimids to intervene there militarily, or both, is difficult to decide. When, in the middle of the fifth/eleventh century, the final rupture at last occurred, the Fātimids retaliated not by direct intervention but in a devious way; by sending hordes of nomadic Arabs against their former vassals.

The first two Zirīds, Bulukkīn and al-Maṣūr, continued a vigorous offensive against the Zanāta and their Umayyad protectors in the west. Under Bulukkīn the Zanāta were expelled from the central Maghrib and the emir reconquered nearly all Moroccan territory with the exception of Umayyad Ceuta. As soon as his army retreated, the Zanāta between Tanger and the Mulūya River started again to name the caliph of Cordoba
in their *khutbas*. At the beginning of his reign al-Manṣūr made an unsuccessful attempt to re-establish his influence in Fez and Sidjilmāsa (385/985); occupied by the Kutāma revolt and realizing that a total occupation of the western Maghrib with its turbulent population was beyond his capabilities, he renounced the offensive and turned his attention more to the consolidation of the central province, Ifrīqiya.

The reign of Bādis witnessed some profound changes which left their marks on the political map of the Maghrib. The first was the vigorous offensive of the Zanātā (principally the Maghrāwa) who attacked the central Maghrib in 389/998–9 and reached as far as Tripoli. At the same time the Zanātā groups living in Zīrīd territory revolted and were even joined by some members of the Zīrīd family. The situation was saved by the military prowess of Ḥammād ibn Buluḵkīn, an uncle of Bādis, who by vigorous campaigns pacified the central Maghrib and repulsed the Zanātā, driving them to Morocco. Bādis was forced to give his uncle large fiefs in the central Maghrib, where in 398/1007–8 Ḥammād founded his own capital, the fortress Kal‘a of the Banū Ḥammād, one of the most imposing architectural monuments in North Africa. Its strategic position was even better than that of Ashīr, the original seat of the Zīrids, as it dominated important trade routes and a large region. In a short time Ḥammād proclaimed his independence (in 405/1015) severing relations with the Fātimids and transferring his allegiance to the Abbasids. Thus the Ṣanḥādja dynasty split into two; the Zīrids, who retained Ifrīqiya proper, and the Ḥammādīds, who ruled over the central Maghrib. Although Bādis, and after his death, his successor al-Mu‘izz (406/1016–454/1062) in the end defeated Ḥammād, they were forced to recognize the independence of the latter; an uneasy peace followed between the two branches.

Ḵammād’s change of allegiance led to a revival of Sunnite activities. The majority of the population in Ifrīqiya and the central Maghrib had always stood in opposition to the Ismā‘īli Shi‘a, the official religion of the Fātimids and the Zīrids, but this opposition was rather passive. In the last year of Bādis’ reign, however, the first massacres of the Shi‘ites occurred in Bēdja and Tunis, followed later by large-scale anti Shi‘ite pogroms in Kayrawān and elsewhere in Ifrīqiya, when thousands of Shi‘ites were killed and their houses plundered. This movement, which expressed the feelings of both urban and rural masses, showed clearly to al-Mu‘izz, just at the beginning of his long reign, the dangers of a sectarian government imposed upon a generally orthodox Sunni population. It does not mean that the religious question played the most important part in the rupture between the Zīrids and Fātimids that occurred in the middle of the fifth/eleventh century but it was certainly a contributory factor in the decision of al-Mu‘izz to throw off his allegiance to the Fātimids in Cairo and to return to the orthodoxy. That the changing of allegiances between the Abbasids and Fātimids was motivated primarily by other than religious reasons is demonstrated by the policies of the Ḥammādīds; already the founder of the dynasty.
The emergence of the Fatimids

Hammād reverted to the Fātimid allegiance in the later years of his reign, whereas his son, al-Ḵāʾid (419/1028–446/1054) changed twice in the course of five or six years, paying allegiance first to the Abbasids and then to the Fātimids.

The unity of the Maghrib, sought but never permanently achieved by the Fātimids, did not survive their withdrawal to the East. The fissiparous tendencies of the Berbers and their opposition to political centralization proved stronger than the feeble attempts of the Zirīds to continue the unifying policies of their suzerains. In the first half of the fifth/eleventh century the political map of the Maghrib offered the following picture: (1) To the east, in Ifrīkiya, the Zirīd realm constituted the most advanced and relatively stable state. (2) To the west of the Zirīd emirate the Ḥammādīds had established their independent state which permanently fought with the Zanāta and occasionally with the Zirīds. (3) After the withdrawal of the Fātimids and the fall of the Umayyad Caliphate in Spain, various groups of the Zanāta seized the opportunity to found a number of independent states, in Tlemcen, in Sidjilmāsa, in Fez and elsewhere. They never formed any centralized political organization but rather a linguistic and ethnic group united only by their hostility to the Ṣanḥāḍa. (4) On the Atlantic coast the heretical Barghawāṭa were able to preserve their independence against the attacks of the Zirīds and later those of the Zanāta. (5) The Ghomāra held a similar position in northern Morocco, strengthening their independence even more after the decline of the Umayyads. (6) The numerous Masmūda groups in southern Morocco in the Anti-Atlas and in the Sūs continued their independent existence of small communities without any higher organization (see Fig. 12.1).

In general the situation of the Berbers resembled that obtaining before the Arab conquest; the Arab element was represented only in towns and its strength diminished gradually from east to west. Parallel with it went also the political structure: in Ifrīkiya the state system was the most developed, but in the western parts of the Maghrib the societies did not as yet reach the level of state formation.

The religious situation underwent profound changes in the post-Fātimid period: by the mid-fifth/eleventh century the whole Maghrib presents itself as an orthodox Sunnite region with no traces of Shiʿism and with only a few minor enclaves of Khāridjīsm. This change may be explained as a direct consequence of the return of political supremacy to the Berbers. Under these conditions Khāridjīsm had lost its raison d'être as an ideology of Berber resistance to the Arab conquerors and dynasties professing the Sunnite form of Islam. It belongs also to the ironies of history that the Fātimids, one of the most successful and powerful Shiʿite dynasties, had – by inflicting heavy defeats and losses on North African Khāridjīsm – opened the way for the definitive victory of Sunnite Mālikīsm in the eastern and central Maghrib. After Abū Yazīd’s defeat Khāridjīsm ceased its existence as a political power in North Africa.
Surviving only in small peripheral communities, it practised defensive rather than offensive politics. But the victory over Khâridjism did not help the Shî’ite cause, it served merely to give more chance to Sunnite renaissance.

The Banû Hilâl and Banû Sulaym invasion

When the Zîrîd al-Mu’izz ibn Bâdîs had at last, in 439/1047, broken with his Fâṣimid suzerain al-Mustansîr and recognized the Abbasid Caliph of Baghdad, thus abandoning the Shî’ite creed for the Sunnite one, the revenge of the Fâṣimids took a peculiar form. Owing to the impossibility of sending an army against the recalcitrant vassal, the visier al-Yazûrî advised his master to punish the Sanhâdja by handing over Ifrîkiya to the horde of nomadic Arabs of the Banû Hilâl and Banû Sulaym, who lived at that time in Upper Egypt.

It was apparently not too difficult to persuade the chiefs of both kabîlas to undertake the westward migration as it promised them rich booty and better pastures than those in Upper Egypt. Since the nomadic Arabs were notorious for being a turbulent and undisciplined element, it must have been quite clear from the start that they would neither bring North Africa back under Fâṣimid sway nor constitute an orderly vassal state there. It was, on the part of the Fâṣimids, not an attempt to regain the lost provinces but an act of pure revenge against the Zîrîds as well as a way of getting rid of the unwelcome and turbulent nomads.

The Arabs started to migrate in 442/1050–1 and in the first stage ravaged the province of Barka; the Banû Hilâl then moved farther to the west leaving Barka to the Banû Sulaym, who remained there for some decades before moving again. When the vanguard of the Banû Hilâl appeared in southern Tunisia, al-Mu’izz, unaware of al-Yazûrî’s scheme, did not immediately recognize what a scourge was nearing his domain. On the contrary, he tried to enlist the invaders into his service as potential allies and even married one of his daughters to one of the great Hilâli chiefs. On his invitation the majority of the Banû Hilâl left Barka and soon their hordes had overrun the southern parts of the Zîrîd emirate. The ever increasing pillaging of villages and towns destroyed al-Mu’izz’s hopes of making the nomads the mainstay of his armed forces. He tried to stop their incursions but in several battles among which that of Haydarân in the region of Gabès (in 443/1051–2) became the most famous, his army — composed largely of black contingents — was utterly routed in spite of its numerical superiority. The countryside, the important villages and even some towns fell into the hands of nomadic chiefs and anarchy and insecurity spread further and further. Although al-Mu’izz married three of his daughters to Arab emirs this did not check the continued devastation and

The emergence of the Fatimids

was no more effective than his return to Fatimid obedience in 446/1054–5. Finally, in 449/1057 the Zirid was forced to abandon Kayrawân and take refuge in al-Mahdiyya which became the new capital of his now very reduced state. Immediately afterwards Kayrawân was sacked by the Banû Hilal, a disaster from which it never recovered.

When the Arabs invaded the central Maghrib, the Hammâdis of Kal’a were gradually drawn into the complicated interplay of rivalries between the kabïlas and tried to acquire some advantages from the troubles of the Zirid cousins. Using one section of the Banû Hilal as auxiliaries, they attacked Ifrîkiya, thus causing further devastation. In 457/1065 the Hammâdid al-Nâsir, at the head of a large coalition of Berbers and Banû Hilal (Sanhâdja, Zanâta and the Hilali sections of Athbadj and ‘Adî) fought against other Arab sections (Riyâh, Zughba and Banû Sulaym), suffered a heavy defeat at Sahîba. Although the immediate consequences were less abrupt than those following the defeat of the Zirids at Haydarân, the grip of the Banû Hilal became gradually so strong that al-Nâsir had to abandon his capital, the Kal’a, for Bidjâya (Bougie) which was founded shortly before, and to leave the southern parts of his domain to the nomads. Bidjâya became the new capital of the Hammâdid dynasty, to fall — as did al-Mahdiyya — into the hands of the Almohads half a century later. In the meantime the nomadic Arabs, who came with their families and herds, occupied large parts of Ifrîkiya and central Maghrib, founding numerous independent principalities which led incessant wars among themselves, against the remnants of Zirid and Hammâdid states as well as against other small states that emerged from the ruins, thus increasing the general anarchy and decline of economic life. The grip of the Banû Hilal on the country remained unchallenged until in the middle of the sixth-twelfth century the arrival of the Almohads restored order.

Such is, in brief, the account of the Hilalian migration as narrated in Arabic contemporary or later sources. Among these Ibn Khaldûn has been the first to stress the destructive role of the Beduins, comparing them with a ‘cloud of hungry locusts’. Modern historians have in general followed Ibn Khaldûn’s view and have even stressed the negative aspects of the Arab nomads’ arrival by calling it ‘the Hilalian catastrophe’ and pointing out the various adverse consequences that this event has had for North African history.

In recent years an attempt to revise the hypothesis of the Hilalian catastrophe and some of the related issues has been undertaken. It is now maintained, for example, that the Arab nomads were not so numerous, that their invasion was not so destructive and that already before their arrival there had appeared signs of decline in the economies and societies of North Africa. Moreover, the emigration of the Arabs from Egypt is now con-
sidered to have been caused mainly by the economic situation (a cata­
strophic dearth and hunger under al-Mustanṣir's reign) and not by polit­
ical considerations. The debate has contributed to the clarification
of many points and has to some degree rectified the one-sided view of the
Hilālians as the chief and sole culprits of the decline.

Nevertheless it should be stressed that the arrival of a large body – what­
ever their precise numbers – of nomadic Arabs was a turning point in
North African history from many points of view. Although the process of
Arabization was already well advanced, at least in Ifrīkiya, large parts of
the countryside remained inhabited and cultivated by a Berber-speaking
population. Whereas the Arabs of the first conquest of the second/eighth
century had been absorbed in the Berber population, the Banū Hilāl and
Banū Sulaym started a reverse process, not as a deliberate policy but as a
consequence of the necessary modus vivendi between the sedentaries and
nomads. Some Zanāta groups – particularly the Banū Marīn – were forced
to retreat westwards to make space for the Arabs. Although the Arabs
penetrated neither the littoral regions nor the mountain massifs which
became the refuge of the sedentary Berbers, the plains of the eastern half of
the Maghrib fell gradually under their influence. Most of the present-day
rural dialects of Arabic in North Africa go back to the nomadic vernacular
brought by the Banū Hilāl and Banū Sulaym. In terms of Islamization, by
contrast, their contribution was minimal or even nil since the Islam of the
nomads was rather superficial and the entire population of the areas
invaded by them had already been Muslim for centuries.

As for the harm done by their arrival, it is generally agreed to have been
extensive, even if the term 'catastrophe' seems to be rather an exaggeration.
There is no doubt that the presence of thousands of nomads with their
herds must have had major consequences for the economic life of the
country and that the area of pastures must have increased to the detriment
of cultivated fields. The former equilibrium between the nomadic and
sedentary elements in North Africa was thus – for some centuries to come
– disturbed, with the result that many parts of the fertile land were aban­
donned by agriculturalists and left to the Beduins.

The anarchy, a natural consequence of the collapse of the Zīrīd and later
Ḥammādīd states, might have been not so general as described by Ibn
Khalīdūn, since many Arab chiefs, starting to found their own statelets,
established some order, but it must be borne in mind that general security
suffered from the presence of too many independent and unruly Arab
groups.

Although the harm suffered by Kayrawān and by other towns through
the Arab conquest was serious, more fatal proved to be the impact on ex­
ternal relations, which became dependent on the changing moods of roam­
ing nomads. The decline of towns in the interior was comparatively rapid

32. Cf. the recent study by R. Dağfūṣ, 1981.
The emergence of the Fātimids

and while Kayrawān was destined to lose much of its former importance, the Ḫal'a of Banī Ḥammād ceased gradually to exist. The anarchy also spilled back towards Egypt where the Lawāta from Cyrenaica ravaged the west and north and overran the Delta.

The principal casualties of the unrest exacerbated by the nomads were the Zīrīd and Ḥammādid emirates which eventually survived only in the coastal strips around al-Mahdiyya and Bidjāya (Bougie). The progress of the Arab nomads in the interior did contribute to the orientation of the Ṣanhājdja Berbers towards the sea and it even accentuated the dichotomy between the inland regions and the littoral. On the ruins of the Zīrīd and Ḥammādid states piracy prospered. Bidjāya, better situated than al-Mahdiyya (which lacked timber for ship-building) became an important maritime centre and entered into a brisk trade with other parts of Mediterranean, mainly with the Italian towns. The Ḥammādids were able, at the beginning of the sixth/twelfth century, to conquer and dominate the Djerba Island.

The economy of North Africa as it existed formerly had been seriously undermined. Even if we now prefer to speak of an Hilāli infiltration rather than of an invasion, the results were the same. The pre-eminently sedentary and agricultural economy of the eastern Maghrib gradually gave way to an economy with a preponderance of nomadic and pastoralist elements, a real revolution about which al-Bakrī and al-Idrīsī have left sufficient evidence. These profound changes in the eastern part, moreover, took place at the same time that the western regions of the Maghrib were coming under the impact of another group of nomads, the Almoravids. Both events inaugurated a new chapter in the history of the Maghrib.
The Almoravids

I. HRBEK and J. DEVISSE

At much the same time as the Banû Hiläl and the Banû Sulaym began to penetrate North Africa from the east¹ there started at the opposite end of the Maghrib a movement of the desert Berbers who in a short time were to invade the western and central part of the region. Both these simultaneous movements, the Almoravids from the west and the Hilâli from the east, were expressions of nomadic dynamism and both led to a temporary control by the nomads over sedentary societies and established state organizations. It seems that it was precisely the case of the Almoravids and the Hilâli that inspired the great Maghribi historian Ibn Khaldûn with the idea of the military preponderance of nomads over sedentaries, which forms one of the cornerstones of his socio-historical theory.

The political, economic and religious background of the Almoravid movement

The generally accepted account of the beginnings of the Almoravid movement relates how Yahyä ibn Ibrâhîm, one of the leaders of the Djjuddâla Berbers from the Western Sahara, who was on his way back from the pilgrimage to Mecca, asked Abû 'Imrân al-Fâsî (d. 430/1039), a famous Mâlikite jurist of Kayrawân,² to send somebody with him to instruct his people in the genuine Islamic religion as they were rather ignorant of it. Since Abû 'Imrân could not find anybody in Kayrawân willing to go and live among the savage Şanhâdja in the desert, he advised Yahyä to visit one of his former students, Waggâg ibn Zallû al-Lamtî in Malküs near Sidjilmâsa, and obtain help from him. Waggâg then recommended as the most

¹. Cf. Chapter 12 above.
promising missionary his pupil 'Abdallâh ibn Yâsin al-Djazûlî, whose mother was originally from the Sahara.  

Another tradition preserved by al-Kãdi 'Iyãd (d. 544/1149) and Ibn al-Athîr (d. 630/1233) mentions neither Yahyâ ibn Ibrãhim nor Abû 'Imrãn al-Fâsi but has another Djuddâla pilgrim, Djawhar ibn Sakkam, on his way back from Mecca, directly asking Waggâg for somebody to teach his people Islam and its religious duties. Waggâg had formerly built a house in the Sûs for the purpose of study and piety called dâr al-murâbitûn. It was among the members of this dâr that Waggâg chose 'Abdallâh ibn Yâsin, ‘a man of learning and piety’.  

Despite these discrepancies in the sources the following facts remain incontestable:   

(1) The superficial state of Islam among the Şanhâdja in the Western Sahara. 
(2) The wish of some Djuddâla leaders to improve this situation.  
(3) The influence of the pilgrimage on the awareness of these men of the low standard of Islam among their compatriots.  
(4) The connection of the Almoravid movement with the militant Mâlikism represented by the link between Abû' Imrãn, Waggâg and 'Abdallâh ibn Yâsin. 

All these points indicate that the religious factor played a decisive role in the rise of the Almoravid movement; but since every religious movement is born in a concrete social setting and reflects its stresses and contradictions, it is necessary to analyse all the circumstances in order to establish, as far as possible, its true motives and causes.  

In the first half of the fifth/eleventh century the region of Morocco and the area south of it as far as the Senegal River were inhabited by the Berbers who were splintered into many hostile and warring factions. Morocco itself had been for the preceding century the object of the struggle between the two western great powers, the Spanish Umayyads and the Fâtimids. These dynasties had intervened there directly only on rare occasions leaving the actual fighting to their Berber allies; in general (there were some exceptions) the Umayyads were represented by the Zanâta group, whereas the Fâtimids, especially after the transfer of their  

5. Some modern scholars tended to minimize the religious aspects of the movement, reducing it to a mere conflict of material interest between the nomads and sedentaries or between various Berber groups, cf. A. Bel, 1903, p. vii; H. Terrasse, 1949–50, Vol. 1, pp. 217 ff; Vilã, 1936, p. 57; cf. the opposite views of P. F. de Moraes Farias, 1967, p. 798, and H. T. Norris, 1971, pp. 267–8. This chapter tries to take into account all aspects of the movement and to interpret them in a dialectical way as interdependent causes.
FIG. 13.1 The Almoravid empire: towns and monuments
capital from Ifrīkiya to Egypt, reserved this task for the Ṣanhādja Zīrīds as their lieutenants. One of the principal aims of this struggle was control over the trade routes to the Western Sudan and/or over the gold trade. The disintegration of the Umayyad caliphate in Spain did not diminish the fierceness of the struggle since various Zanāta principalities in Morocco continued it on their own account, fighting not only against the Zīrīds but often also among themselves. The Banū Ifran were established at Salé and Tadla while the Maghrāwa who had already proclaimed their independence from the Umayyads in 390/1000, gradually extended their domination from Fez to Sidjilmāsa, Aghmāt, Tāmdūlt and those parts of Wādī Darʿa until then under the control of the Saharan Ṣanhādja. The continuous fighting and general anarchy made life and normal economic activities under the Zanāta regime unbearable. It seems that Berber particularism reached just at that time its extreme point; it was felt by some responsible chiefs and leaders that a radical change was needed. Under prevailing conditions only an Islamic movement could provide a unifying factor among the Berbers.

A similar situation existed to the south of Morocco among the ‘veiled’ (mulaththamin) Saharan Ṣanhādja. These nomadic Ṣanhādja (distinct from the sedentary Ṣanhādja of Ifrīkiya) were composed of three main branches: the Massūfa in the north and east (in Wādī Darʿa, Ḥawd, Taghāza), the Lamtūna in the centre and south (in Adrār and Tāgant), and the Djuddāla (or Guddāla) to the west in the Atlantic Sahara. Until the beginning of the fourth/tenth century the Berbers of the Western Sahara were known as the Anbiya and it still remains uncertain whether that was a designation of a loose confederacy of the three main branches or another name for one of them.

That there were some attempts during the fourth/tenth century to unify the Ṣanhādja – perhaps in order to obtain a better control of the trade routes or to make conquests in the Sudan – is attested by Ibn Ḥawkal and al-Bakrī, who refer to a certain Tīn-Barūtān (or Tīn-Yarūtān) as ‘the king

7. Ibn Abī Zarʿ, 1843–6, Vol. 1, pp. 71–2 describes in detail the deterioration of the political and economic conditions during the second quarter of the fifth/eleventh century. Ibn Ḥadhārī, 1948–51, Vol. 4, p. 10 (N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, pp. 219 ff), narrates that Ibn Yāṣīn on his return from al-Andalus through Morocco observed with amazement the splintering of the country into numerous hostile kābilās. The Berbers acted in the same way, if not worse, as the Mulūk al-tawāf in al-Andalus. A Masmūda man answered his question as to whether these people did not believe in God and Muhammad with the words: ‘Yes, but no one among us tolerates that somebody from another tribe is above him.’
9. No satisfactory explanation of this name had as yet been offered.
10. This is the opinion of J. Marquardt, 1913, p. 325.
of all the Şanhâdja' or as ‘the ruler of Awdâghust’ between 340/951 and 350/961.\textsuperscript{11} Although none of the authors mentions the branch to which Tín-Barûtân belonged, it is likely that he was a Lamtüna.\textsuperscript{12} The nature and scope of this confederacy is nowhere explained and we are not informed whether all three main branches of the Şanhâdja were part of it.

According to Ibn Abï Zar', a comparatively late author (he wrote \textit{c.} 726/1326), there followed in the Western Sahara a lengthy period of disunity, confusion and anarchy among the Şanhâdja, who could not agree on a single ruler until the time of \textit{amīr} Abū 'Abdallâh Muḥammad, known as Târashna al-Lamtûnî, whom they made their leader.\textsuperscript{13} Now a Tàrasna (or Târashna) al-Lamtûnî is mentioned by al-Bakrî as the Lamtüna chief who was killed somewhere in the Sudan fighting the blacks,\textsuperscript{14} presumably shortly before the rise of the Almoravids. After his death he was succeeded as ruler of the Şanhâdja by his son-in-law, Yahyâ ibn Ibrâhîm al-Djuddâlî, the man who introduced 'Abdallah ibn Yasîn among the Şanhâdja.\textsuperscript{15}

This account, although not above suspicion of being a later attempt to streamline the pre-Almoravid history of the Şanhâdja,\textsuperscript{16} reflects in general the anarchic conditions in the area to the south of Morocco, where short periods of unity among the Şanhâdja branches were followed by disunity, rivalry and fierce fighting. No confederation was able to retain supremacy in the desert and its leadership changed frequently.\textsuperscript{17}

This state of affairs among the Şanhâdja groups was not without effects on their economic prosperity. Although nomadic pastoralism formed the way of life for the majority of the desert Şanhâdja, participation in the caravan trade between the Maghrib and the Sudan that went across their territory, represented a welcome addition to their income. Their chiefs derived many advantages from the control of the routes as well as of the trade centres by levying dues, fees and presents for their protection or services.

Until the third quarter of the fourth/tenth century the Şanhâdja confederacy under the strong leadership of Tín-Barûtân controlled the very important salt mines at Awlîl and held the monopoly of the salt trade going through Awdâghust to Ghana. Although according to archaeological evidence the town of Awdâghust had as yet not reached its zenith, it was

\textsuperscript{11} Ibn Ḥawkāl, 1938, pp. 100–1; J. M. Cuqq, 1975, pp. 73–4; al-Bakrî, 1913, p. 159; V. Monteil, 1968, p. 53 (this latter author gives faulty dates of 961 and 971).

\textsuperscript{12} The close relations with \textit{Bilâd al-Südân} as well as his being called ‘the ruler of Awdâghust’ indicate that he was based in the southern parts of the desert, as were the Lamtüna.


\textsuperscript{14} Al-Bakrî, 1913, p. 164; V. Monteil, 1968, p. 59; J. M. Cuqq, 1975, p. 86.

\textsuperscript{15} Ibn Abï Zar', 1843–6, Vol. 1, p. 76 indicates that 120 years elapsed between Tín Barûtân and Târashna, but this is too long a time period. Al-Bakrî gives no dates.


\textsuperscript{17} The Moorish tradition speaks of about sixteen such confederations in the Western Sahara during the last three centuries; F. de La Chapelle, 1930, p. 48.
nevertheless an important commercial centre, dominated by the Ṣanhādja chief and inhabited by a Ṣanhādja majority. But after 360/970 the trade of Awdâghust began to be dominated by the Zanâta and Arab traders of Ifrîkiya. How this change came about is not entirely clear but until the Almoravid conquest of Awdâghust in 446/1054 the Ṣanhādja were nearly totally excluded from the lucrative trade. Another serious blow to Ṣanhādja prosperity had been the opening of a new salt mine at Tantintal (Taghāzā) which started to supply Ghana and other parts of the Sudan with that precious commodity thus breaking the Awlîl monopoly.

The weakening of the Ṣanhādja at the end of the fourth/tenth and the beginning of the fifth/eleventh century had allowed the Maghrâwa Berbers of Sidjîlmâsa to gain control and occupy extensive pastures in the Darʿa, at Aghmāt and at Tîmdûlt which were vital for the nomadic economy of the northern Ṣanhādja groups. Thus in the first half of the fifth/eleventh century the Ṣanhādja of the Western Sahara lost much of their former preponderance both in the north and in the south where their hereditary enemies, the Zanâta Berbers, took over not only the termini of the trans-Saharan routes (Sidjîlmâsa and Awdâghust) but also their best pastures.

Turning now to the religious conditions prevailing in the westernmost part of the Islamic world just before the rise of the Almoravids, we find not only a variety of heterodox sects but also varying degrees of Islamization going from a very superficial knowledge of the main tenets of this religion among the desert and mountain Berber groups to highly developed Islamic institutions in some towns and regions.

Among the heterodox sects the most interesting was that of the Barghawāta, a Berber group living on the Atlantic plains of Morocco between Salé and Sâfi. Their religion was already founded in the second/eighth century by a 'prophet' called Sālih, who produced a Qurʾan in the Berber language and developed a set of doctrines in which old Berber beliefs were mixed with Islamic elements. Although the Idrîsids, Umayyads and Fâtîmids attempted occasionally to uproot this heterodoxy, they had never defeated the Barghawāta; the djiḥâd against them was a permanent obligation for the inhabitants of the ribât (fortified monastery) built at Salé against their incursions into the 'land of Islam' (Bîlād al-islām).

In the southern parts of Morocco, in the Sûs region, in the Atlas Mountains as well as in the Darʿa valley had lived groups of Shiʿites of various denominations. But the most important non-orthodox sect among the Berbers were the Khārijîjites, especially the 'Ibâdîtes. Although after the advent of the Fâtîmids and the unsuccessful revolt of Abū Yazîd in Ifrîkiya the political role of the Khārijîjites in the Mediterranean Maghrib had
diminished, they still retained strong positions and influence in the Sahara and the Sudan, especially as traders and missionaries. For some reason the 'Ibāḍite doctrine particularly attracted the Zanāta branch of the Berbers whereas the Ṣanhādjā were more inclined to adopt Shi'iite Islam and later Sunnite Islam in its Mālikite form.

All the early Arabic sources about the rise of the Almoravid movement are unanimous about the superficial Islamization of the Saharan people and stress their religious ignorance and negligence. There were, of course, some persons among the chiefs and leaders with a more profound knowledge of Islam, people who performed the pilgrimage to Mecca and even some fākihs who tried to improve the religious situation of their compatriots. Some small centres of militant Mālikism existed in southern Morocco, like the dār al-murābītīn of Waggāg ibn Zallū, but it seems that until the emergence of 'Abdallāh ibn Yāsin their efforts did not bring any appreciable improvement.

The role played by the Pilgrimage to Mecca and of travel through the more advanced Muslim countries in enlarging the religious and cultural horizon of pious visitors from the Islamic periphery is well known. The pilgrims became aware of the deep contrast between the superficial Islam of their own people and the Islam as practised in the central parts of the Islamic oekoumene. Throughout history a number of reformers or revivalists in the Maghrib, in the Sahara and in the Sudanese belt have been stimulated by the experience of Pilgrimage.

The first half of the fifth/eleventh century witnessed a revival of orthodox Sunnite Islam in the Muslim world from the Maghrib in the west to Iran in the east. It emerged partly as a vigorous reaction against the attempts of Shi'iite dynasties like the Fātimids and Buwayhids under whose domination a large part of Muslim countries lived, to impose their specific creed on the hitherto Sunnite population. Outstanding in the ideological struggle against the Shi'a and other heterodoxies were the Mālikite fākihs of North Africa especially those from the ancient Mālikite stronghold at Kayrawān. The Mālikite fākihs encouraged the Zirīds to leave the Fātimid orbit and to recognize the Abbasids as supreme heads of the Islamic community; the same fākihs instigated anti-Shī'ite pogroms in Ifrīqiya, their aim being to eradicate from this region any heresy or any other madhhab (school of Islamic jurisprudence) than their own. One of the leading figures of Kayrawān and the most active and militant Mālikite was precisely that Abu 'Imrān al-Fāsī whom the Djuddāla chief Yahyā ibn Ibrāhīm met in Kayrawān in 430/1038–9.

22. Cf. Chapters 3 and 11 above.
23. Cf. Chapter 8, note 94 above.
24. See Chapter 2 above.
26. 'The year 440/1048 marks the definitive victory of Mālikism in the Muslim West'. E. Lévi-Provençal, 1948, p. 251.
The beginnings of Ibn Yāsīn’s reforming activities

Not much is known about ‘Abdallāh b. Yāsīn’s life before he was sent to the desert Ṣanhādja. He came from the Dżazula, a Berber group in southern Morocco, his mother being originally from the village of Tamāmānawt on the fringe of the desert bordering with Ghana.27 Some later sources indicate that he had studied for seven years in Muslim Spain28 but al-Bakrī, who was a near contemporary, expresses grave doubts about the extent of Ibn Yāsīn’s knowledge of the Quran and Islamic law.29 Even his position in Waggāg’s Dār al-murābitūn is not quite clear; he seems to have remained obedient to Waggāg as the head of the school and spiritual leader until the latter’s death, an indication of a rather subordinate standing. On the other hand Waggāg’s choice of him as missionary to the Ṣanhādja must have been based on recognition of the quality of his religious knowledge and strength of character.30

The history of Ibn Yāsīn’s reforming activities among the Ṣanhādja is known only in a general way; the chronology is uncertain and confused and there are at least two long periods (the first between 430/1039 and 440/1048 and the second between 446/1054 and 450/1058) on which we are without any concrete information. We can discern in Ibn Yāsīn’s activity in the desert two phases: in the first he tried to improve or reform the faith among the Dżuddāla and succeeded in grouping around himself a number of followers. This phase lasted from c. 430/1039 to 445/1053 and ended with a violent clash between the reformer and the Dżuddāla leaders, with the result that Ibn Yāsīn was expelled. In the second phase, which lasted until his death in 451/1059, the Lamtūna became the mainstay of the Almoravid movement.

At first, under the protection of Yahyā ibn Ibrāhīm, all went comparatively well; in the words of Kāḏī ʿIyād:

he made [Ibrāhīm] and his people understand his code of living and his idealism . . . he demanded and imposed a severe and strict observance, in changing unlawful practice and in the severe chastening [of those] who did not accept the path of true guidance. He continued to enjoy hospitality amongst those kabīlas, until he became dominant among them, and they proclaimed the true faith there.31

From that long period only two events are recorded: an attack against the Lamṭūna, who were defeated in their mountains (Adrār) and the founda-

27. Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 165.
29. Al-Bakrī, 1913, pp. 169–70. But if should not be forgotten that this author, a sophisti­cated Andalusian scholar, was biased against the rude Saharan Berbers.
tion of the town of Arat-n-anna where in accordance with Ibn Yāsīn's egalitarian ideas all houses were to have the same height.32

After more than ten years of residence among the Djuddāla Ibn Yāsīn clashed with the fākīh Djawhar ibn Sakkum and two Djuddāla nobles, 'Ayār and In-Takkū. The cause of this split appears to have been a combination of religious differences and a struggle for power after the death of Yahyā ibn Ibrāhīm al-Djuddālī.33

Ibn Yāsīn's strict demands concerning discipline and the observation of all religious duties as well as his puritanic and egalitarian ideas probably did not find the resonance he expected; being rather a harsh master he displayed a disregard for the social values and taboos common to Ṣanhādja society. In the succession struggle after Yahyā's death he apparently took the side of an unsuccessful pretender34 and was forced to leave his abode at Arat-n-anna.35 This whole episode shows that Ibn Yāsīn's means of power were rather limited and did not allow him to enforce his will.

During and after the crisis Ibn Yāsīn had the full support of his master Waggāg who although disapproving of his pupil's extremism and excessive bloodshed, backed him and wrote a strong reprimand to all who showed disobedience. He sent Ibn Yāsīn again to the Ṣanhādja, this time to the Lamṭūna, led by Yahyā ibn 'Umar. It was among the Lamṭūna that Ibn Yāsīn found the necessary political support for the implementation of his aims. This was the turning point in the history of the Almoravid movement and the main reason for the dominance of the Lamṭūna. All this happened before 447/1055 and it seems that at that time there existed serious tensions between the Djuddāla and Lamṭūna, caused probably by diverging policy as to the future orientation of the movement.36

Ibn Yāsīn's retreat and then his return for a second mission can be considered a sort of ḥidjra and we can observe in many of his acts a re-enactment of early Islamic usages. One of the aspects of this revivalism was the reform of traditional Berber military tactics in order to re-enact the original ways of waging the djiḥād.37

32. Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 165. Although Arat-n-anna is commonly identified with the present-day Aratane, a well between Tichīt and Walāta in eastern Mauritania, there are archaeological objections to this supposition. Cf. D. Jacques-Meunier, 1961. Aratane is a widely distributed toponym, cf. H. T. Norris, 1971, p. 258.

33. It is not certain what happened to this man who brought Ibn Yāsīn to the Saharan Ṣanhādja. According to some historians he had already died before the Djuddāla expelled Ibn Yāsīn, while according to the others his death took place before the 'island retreat', cf. below.


35. Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 165. 'They [the Djuddāla] refused to listen to his advice, took away from him the treasure administration, demolished his house and pillaged its furniture and all effects it contained.'


The Almoravids

The transformation of a reform movement into a *djihād*

The dominance of the Lamtūna in the movement has been the reason that they are very often identified as the Almoravids par excellence. Before we continue the history of the movement we should discuss the problem of the origin of the name Almoravids (Arabic, *al-Murābitūn*).

Until recently it was held that it is derived from *ribāt* (*al-Murābitūn = the people of the rībāt or rābita*) — a word whose accepted sense is 'fortified frontier or coastal post' or 'a fortified centre for religious and ascetic practice and/or the propagation of the faith'. This interpretation is based only on the account of a comparatively late Arabic author Ibn Abī Zar' (d. after 726/1326) according to whom Ibn Yāsīn withdrew after the disagreement with the Djuddāla to an island where with seven companions he had built a rābita; later he indoctrinated many other disciples in this place and called them *al-Murābitūn* because of their adhesion to this rābita. Ibn Khaldūn (d. 808/1406) also speaks about Ibn Yāsīn's retreat to an island but does not make any reference to a rībāt in the sense of a fortress or hermitage. None of the more ancient sources refer to the existence of such a building and P. de Moraes Farias rightly remarks that 'one wonders why the account given by Ibn Abī Zar' has been accepted without challenge by most historians'.

The recent scholarship represented by A. M. al-‘Abbādī, A. Huici Miranda, P. de Moraes Farias, H. T. Norris, A. Noth, N. Levzcion and F. Meier, has definitely abandoned the idea of *al-Murābitūn* meaning 'people of the rībāt'. The name seems to be derived from the Qur'ānic meaning of the root *r-b-t* which is very close to that of waging *djihād* in a correct way, although the term also contains the idea of pious acts, dedication to the cause of Islam. Rībāt could also delineate the whole corpus of Islamic teaching (*da'wāt al-hakk*, 'summons to the truth') laid down for the Sanhādja by Ibn Yāsīn. It is not impossible that the name *al-Murābitūn* is in some way connected with Waggāg's dār al-murābitūn where Ibn Yāsīn lived before his mission.

The final proof that there was not a rībāt (a fortified outpost) on an island has been brought by the archaeological expedition of the Institut fondamental de l’Afrique noire on the island of Tidra near the Mauritanian

39. Ibn Khaldūn, 1925–56, Vol. 1, p. 238; the text shows that the members of the community lived amidst the natural surroundings of a thicket without building anything like a rībāt or rābita.
42. Originally rabata means to bind, to tie up; rībāt — ribbon, band, ligature; rābita — bond, tie, link, later also confederation, league, union etc. The semantic development to fortified outpost and all cognate meanings is discussed in P. de Moraes Farias, 1967, pp. 813ff, and in greater detail by F. Meier, 1981, pp. 80ff.
coast in 1966. No vestiges of any *ribâṭ* could be found on this island. Any building of the kind mentioned by Ibn Abî Zar’ is a physical impossibility there owing to the lack of clay and stones. On the other hand the reports on the retreat of Ibn Yāsîn and his early followers to an island in the sea seems not improbable in the light of the comparison of Ibn Abî Zar’’s account to the results obtained by the field work on Tidra. Therefore the report of Ibn Khaldûn about the life of the first Almoravids in a thicket cannot be entirely excluded.

Ibn Yāsîn’s retreat – a conscious imitation of Prophet Muḥammad’s *hidjra* – is difficult to date exactly; it occurred probably before 444/1052–3 since within a year after this the followers of Ibn Yāsîn had attacked the town of Sidjilmâsa. When Ibn Yāsîn emerged from his retreat and found in the Lamṭûna his most devoted followers, especially among their chiefly family, represented by Yaḥyā ibn ‘Umar and his brother Abû Bakr, the movement entered a decisive phase. From a reform movement it became a militant one whose members were ready to spread his teaching among other Ṣanḥādja and even beyond either by persuasion or by *djihād*. Although Ibn Yāsîn wanted from the start to give his movement a supra-tribal character, the *al-Murâbitûn* were and remained members of some concrete Berber groups. The leadership was in the hands of the Lamṭûna under their chief Yaḥyâ ibn ‘Umar, to whom Ibn Yāsîn delegated the military command as *amîr* and the other founding branches, the Massūfa and Djuddâla (at least at the beginning) followed this general command. The members of the different tribes were more or less left under the leadership of their traditional chiefs and remained tribal warriors as before but now under the banner of Islam.

There emerged a pattern of dual leadership since Ibn Yāsîn attended not only to the religious and judicial affairs of the community but also administered the public treasury and held the supreme authority, even over Yaḥyâ ibn ‘Umar. He even took part personally in campaigns.

The unification of the Ṣanḥādja was not an easy task; the Djuddâla who were defeated by the Lamṭûna after Ibn Yāsîn’s return to the desert and coerced to rejoin the movement, remained hostile and seceded at the earliest opportunity. When the main Almoravid army fought in southern Morocco, the Djuddâla revolted and Yaḥyâ ibn ‘Umar was sent against them but apparently without any success as he was besieged by the Djuddâla at Azukî (Azugî) in the Adrâr. The first *amîr* of the Almoravids was killed (in 448/1056) in the battle at Tabfârîlî where his army, although reinforced by the troops of Labî ibn Wâr-Dyâbî, the chief of Takrûr, was

---

44. Al-Bakrî, 1913, pp. 166–7. Ibn Yāsîn ordered the flogging of Yaḥyâ who submitted to it even before he knew the reason for it.
45. Azukî is situated about 15 km from Atâr, which, according to al-Bakrî, had been built by Yaḥyâ’s brother Yannü ibn ‘Umar. On this site, see B. Saison, 1981 (Plate 13.1).
The Almoravids

defeated. No other attempts were made by the Almoravids against the Djuddâla but relations remained strained. On the other hand members of this branch participated later in the Almoravid campaigns in the Maghrib and the Djuddâla were counted among the true Almoravids. More obscure were the relations with the Massûfa: according to Ibn Khaldûn there occurred a conflict between them and the Lamtûna but it seems that it was quickly settled and in subsequent exploits the Massûfa and Lamtûna formed a firm alliance. As for other Berbers, the Lamta were subdued at an early stage and rallied themselves to the Almoravid cause, as did even some Zanâta and Masmûda.

Despite all the internal dissensions and secessionist tendencies the new politico-religious system and common interests brought unity to the Şan-hâdja Berbers. Those of them who lived along the trade routes were interested in regaining control over these and over the trade. The associated kabîlas in the north, the Lamta and the Djazûla, as well as some of the Lamtûna wanted to regain the rich pastures between the Atlas Mountains and the Sahara. The common enemy in both cases were the Zanâta. Although not all the Zanâta professed the Khâridjite faith, many of them did and their heresy added another reason for the Mâlikite Almoravids to attack them. To a certain degree the Almoravid conquest was a vengeance of the desert Şanhâdja on the Zanâta, who in the preceding period had gained an upper hand in the western Maghrib. Of no small importance for their initial successes were the nearly anarchic conditions prevailing in Morocco under the Maghrâwa dynasties as many people greeted the conquering Almoravids as liberators from the Maghrâwa oppression. Within five years, between 446/1054 and 451/1059 the Almoravids had broken the Zanâta supremacy in north-western Africa. The first campaigns were directed against the Zanâta domains in the Dar'a valley and then against Sijilmâsa whose inhabitants complained to Ibn Yasîn about the tyranny of the Maghrâwa ruler, Mas'ûd b. Wânûdin. After the failure of peaceful settlement the Almoravids conquered the town, killed Mas'ûd and installed there their own governor. Having thus seized the northern terminus of the caravan trade the Almoravid army immediately returned to the south against Awdâghust. After its conquest they pitilessly massacred its Zanâta inhabitants. Thus the second terminus of the trans-Saharan route fell under their authority and with it also the control of the western trade.

47. Among the spiritual leaders of the movement Waggâg belonged to the Lamta, Ibn Yasin to the Djazûla.
48. The Mâlikites of North Africa played, since the Fâtimid period, a role of champions of oppressed people; the Almoravids, at least during the initial stage, remained true to this tradition and gained much sympathy by their abolition of all illegal (non-canonical) taxes.
In the meantime the population of Sidjilmāsa, apparently discontented with the harsh regime introduced by the puritanical Almoravids, revolted and massacred the small garrison. A new campaign was necessary to re-establish the situation. During the absence of the main Almoravid army there occurred the already mentioned secession of the Džuddāla in the south and also the death of Yahyā ibn ‘Umar. The northern wing commanded now by Abū Bakr, who became the new amīr after the death of his brother Yahyā, reconquered Sidjilmāsa and the pastures of the Dar’a.

In the few next years Ibn Yāsīn proved to be not only a religious reformer and a hard warrior but also an accomplished politician. By a fine diplomacy he had achieved the peaceful submission of the Maṣmüda Berbers of the Atlas Mountains and, in a similar way, after prolonged negotiations, the important town of Aghmāt with the whole Sūs region fell under his control (in 450/1058). To cement the new alliance, Abū Bakr married Zaynab, a daughter of the chief of Aghmāt and this step assured the Almoravids bloodless occupation of vast regions in southern Morocco. It goes without saying that all the various heresies and heterodoxies flourishing in this part of Morocco were extirpated and the Mālikite school in its Almoravid form was introduced everywhere.

But in the struggle against the most formidable foe of the orthodoxy, the Barghawāta, the Almoravids suffered their first serious setback; in 451/1059 they were defeated and Ibn Yāsīn was killed in obscure circumstances in the battle near Kurīfālat.⁵⁰ His successor at the head of the Almoravid community was Abū Bakr ibn ‘Umar.

Although the founder’s death led to a temporary crisis (it is reported that at that point the Massūfa revolted), it speaks for the solidity of Ibn Yāsīn’s achievement that the whole movement did not crumble but did find, after a short time, a new and even greater vigour that enabled it to continue victoriously both the spread of the new doctrine and the conquests.

With the passing away of Ibn Yāsīn the religious community transformed itself into a kingdom. As the spiritual leadership began to lose its former importance,⁵¹ the office of amīr achieved the primacy and the holder of it had founded a dynasty. At the same time a hierarchy developed: the first in the realm were the Lamṭūna, the branch of the rulers, so that the Almoravids were often designated as al-Lamtūniyyūn al-murābitūn or more simply Lamṭūna. The title al-murābit was restricted to the members of the three founding branches whereas the members of other kabīlas such as the Džazūla, Lamṭa, Maṣmüda and others who served in the army

⁵⁰. Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 168. The place is situated about 40 km south of Rabat.
⁵¹. Ibn Yāsīn was succeeded as religious commander by Ṣulaymān b. ‘Addū, another companion of Waggāg b. Zallū. There were then some other jurists like ‘Imām al-Ḥaḍramī, the kādi of Aṣuṭṭ, or Līmṭād al-Lamtūnī, but none of them achieved the influence and status of the movement’s founder. Cf. H. T. Norris, 1971, pp. 267–8.
were not considered *al-murābitūn* but were called ‘followers’ (*al-hasham*). The restriction of the name to the founding branches indicates the rise of an aristocracy.

The ‘veiled ones’ (*al-mulaththamūn*) is another name given to the Almoravids; it is derived from the traditional custom of the desert Ṣanḥāḍja of wearing a mouth veil. In Muslim Spain the veil was considered a privilege of the true Almoravids and its wearing was forbidden to all but the Ṣanḥāḍja. It was something like a uniform or distinctive dress of the ruling class.

The history of the first ten years of Abū Bakr’s rule (until 462/1069) is obscure and no details are known about Almoravid activities. A long time was perhaps needed for consolidation of the new leadership and to overcome crises natural in a recently formed confederation of groups with strong traditions of independence.

With the foundation of Marrakesh as the new capital to the north of the

---


53. That even the contemporaries did not know much about the events is confirmed by al-Bakrī’s statement (1913, p. 170) that ‘at present [i.e., in 1067–8] . . . their power is dispersed and incoherent and their dwelling-place is the Sahara.’
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Atlas Mountains in 463/1070 a new chapter in Almoravid history began. This date is significant, too, in the sense that at that time the split of the Almoravid movement into two wings had occurred, the southern led by Abū Bakr and the northern with Abū Bakr’s cousin Yūsuf ibn Tāshfin at its head. This split came about gradually and unintentionally; even before the construction of Marrakesh was finished Abū Bakr was recalled to the desert where serious conflicts between the Lamṭūna and the Massūfa threatened the unity of the movement. Yūsuf ibn Tāshfin became his deputy in the north with the task of continuing the campaign against the Zanāta. After settling the dispute in the Sahara, Abū Bakr returned to the north to assume again the leadership of the whole movement. But in the meantime Yūsuf ibn Tāshfin had consolidated his position, having strengthened his army by buying black slaves from the Sudan and Christian captives from Spain so as not to be solely dependent on the Ṣanḥāḍja warriors. Naturally enough he was not prepared to yield his powerful position to his cousin although he still acknowledged him as his superior. For various reasons Abū Bakr did not want to press his claim and gracefully handed over the authority to Yūsuf. According to the revised chronology this happened in 465/1072; Abū Bakr then returned definitively to the Sahara and never returned to the north. Nevertheless, he was recognized as the head of the whole Almoravid empire until his death in 480/1087. The gold Almoravid dinars were struck up to this date in the name of Abū Bakr ibn ‘Umar and even Yūsuf ibn Tāshfin continued to pay him nominal allegiance.

54. As many Arabic sources indicated that Marrakesh was founded in 454/1062, this date was long accepted without comment. E. Lévi-Provençal, 1957; A. Huici Miranda, 1959b and G. Deverdun, 1959-66 have critically examined all the literary and archaeological evidence and established the new date.

55. The relationship of the first Almoravid amirs is shown in the following simplified genealogy:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Ibrāhīm} \\
\text{Umar} \\
1. Yāḥyā \\
2. Abū Bakr \\
3. Yūsuf
\end{array}
\]

dynasty of the Almoravids

56. At the same time Abū Bakr divorced Zaynab who next married Yūsuf ibn Tāshfin bringing him a large fortune.

57. He himself proclaimed that he could not live out of the desert, cf. Al-Hulal al-Mawshiyya, 1936, p. 15. Although this attachment to the nomadic way of life certainly played a role in Abū Bakr’s decision, it should not be forgotten that his armed forces were much weaker than those of his cousin.

58. Ibn Tāshfin’s name appeared on the coins only after 480/1087, when he became in name as well as in practice the sole ruler of the Almoravids.
The Almoravids

The conquests in the north

In the years between 468/1075 and 476/1083 the Almoravid army led by Yusuf ibn Tashfin had gradually conquered Morocco and the western regions of Algeria. Fez had fallen to them in 468/1075 followed by other towns on the Atlantic plain. Seven years later Tlemcen and Oran were conquered and in 476/1083 the Almoravid army secured control of the Gibraltar Strait by the conquest of Ceuta. This had brought Muslim Spain into the horizon of the desert warriors.

There the once flourishing Umayyad caliphate had crumbled in the first decades of the fifth/eleventh century. From its ruins emerged a conglomeration of petty states that spent themselves in fratricidal quarrels and were unable to resist the vigorous attempts of the northern Christian states to subdue them. No less than twenty such petty states had arisen in various provinces or towns under emirs and kinglets known collectively as mulāk al-ṭawā‘if (‘party kings’, Spanish, reyes de taifas).

The Christian offensive culminated in the conquest of Toledo (Arabic, Tulaytula) in 478/1085 and it soon became apparent that the Christians were aiming at the total absorption of the mulāk al-ṭawā‘if and not only on imposing vassalage and tribute on them. Muslim jurists had become alarmed by this state of affairs which threatened to uproot Islam and its civilization in al-Andalus. As the Muslim kinglets were totally unable to offer any serious resistance to the advance of the Christians, only the invitation of help from abroad remained as an alternative. Under the circumstances the sole power that would be able to accomplish this task were the Almoravids who were now in full vigour and renowned as a religious body dedicated to djihād. At the invitation of the Abbadid ruler of Seville, al-Mu'tamid, the Almoravid army under Yusuf ibn Tashfin crossed the Strait of Gibraltar in 479/1086. After an unopposed march through southern Spain the Almoravid army inflicted a spectacular defeat on the Castilian army under King Alfonso VI at al-Zallāka (Sagrajas) near Badajoz. A wave of enthusiasm spread over al-Andalus and Yusuf returned to Morocco in accordance with his previous promise. A year later the death of Abū Bakr made him nominal as well as de facto sovereign of the empire. But the grave problems of Muslim Spain were far from being definitively settled. Shortly after Ibn Tashfin's retreat new discord among the petty rulers permitted the Christians to resume their attacks. The Almoravids were called again to intervene and in 481/1088 they scored another victory in the battle of Aledo. In spite of this the mulāk al-ṭawā‘if showed an open hostility to their deliverers whom they feared no less than their Christian foes, and Ibn Tāshfin left al-Andalus for the second time.


60. Cf. on this battle E. Lévi-Provençal, E. Garcia Gomez and J. Oliver Asín, 1950.
PLATE 13.2(a) Almoravid decoration: detail of a bronze door (Fez)
PLATE 13.2(b) Almoravid decoration: a bronze door-knocker (Fez)
His patience was now exhausted and in 483/1090 he came back, but this time as conqueror rather than ally. Armed with *fatwās* (legal opinions), signed by numerous Moroccan and Andalusian *fuḥāḥā*, 61 he led the campaign against the *mulūk al-tawāfīf*, who were accused of various anti-Islamic sins such as collaboration with the Christians, corruption and illegal taxation. In a systematic campaign the Almoravid army conquered or occupied all the main towns and by 487/1094 the whole of Muslim Spain was annexed, with the exception of Toledo which remained in Christian hands, and Saragossa where the dynasty of Banū Hūd was allowed to subsist and to form a buffer state. All the old Muslim rulers were deposed and the unity of Muslim Spain – now under the rule of the Almoravids – was re-established. 63

In the east the Almoravid conquests only reached the town of Algiers and its immediate region. Why they stopped there without accomplishing the unification of the whole Maghrib by penetrating farther eastwards into Ifriqiya remains obscure. They certainly did not come up against the Hilālī Arabs who at that time were roaming in the more southerly regions of Ifriqiya and eastern Algeria. Although the Ḥammāḍid state of central Algeria offered some resistance to the Almoravid advance and there was even some fighting around Tlemcen in which the Ḥammāḍids were victorious, it seems that the Almoravids were rather reluctant to attack vigorously a people belonging to the same branch of the Ṣanḥāj. But the most likely reason seems to be the worsening situation in Muslim Spain which absorbed more and more of the attention of Yūsuf ibn Tāshfin; since his limited manpower was not sufficient for fighting on two fronts he had decided to concentrate on the campaign against the Christians, conscious of the Almoravid fame as fighters for Islam.

What had originally been no more than a local reform movement among the desert Berbers had become an empire extending from the Ebro to the Senegal; its sweep of nearly thirty degrees of latitude covered a great diversity of landscapes, zones of economic activity, and cultural traditions, from the most fertile plains of Spain and Morocco to the deserts of Mauritania.

The new situation south of the Sahara

Unfortunately much less is known about the situation in the southern part

61. Even the great Iraqi scholar al-Ghazālī (d. 505/1111) supported Ibn Tāshfin’s war against the Andalusian kinglets. This did not save his books from being later burned by the Almoravid *fuḥāḥā*.

62. Al-Mu’tamid of Seville was sent to Morocco where he lived in chains and in utter destitution until his death in Aghmat in 488/1095; he lamented his fate in elegies that belong to masterpieces of Arabic poetry.

63. Valencia, where Rodrigo Díaz de Vivar, known as Cid and hero of the great Spanish epic, established an independent principality, fell into the Almoravid hands only in 495/1102.
of the Almoravid empire than about that in the north. The big difficulty is the scarcity of source material: the written sources come from Arabic historical literature written far away from the scene of events in space and sometimes in time and the oral ones have undergone many changes, which (although they are beginning to be subjected to critical study) still make them difficult to use. The former come from Muslims in the north, the latter from black Africans in the Sahel, who although they may already have been Muslims did not necessarily adopt the same viewpoints as the men from the north of the continent.

We do not know with any certainty the situation that existed in the Senegal Valley. It now seems beyond doubt that the key points where settlements and markets developed were not on the coast but a good way inland. We now know from excavations that Sintiu-Bara was an important site as early as the fifth to sixth centuries of the Christian era, that Ogo was a big settlement, and that iron was smelted there in the ninth century. Both al-Bakri and al-Idrisi mention the name Silla in various forms, and there are several places with this name in the Kaedi area. A recent article suggests that the site of one of them, Silla Rindaw, goes back to the period we are dealing with: the traces of iron-working found there— not yet accurately dated but probably ancient— certainly show the importance of the investigations that need to be carried out in this area. All the prospecting and research carried out in the last few years on both the Mauritanian and the Senegalese side of the river suggests that valuable information will be gained from archaeological research in the coming decades.

Though the texts are unclear and difficult to interpret, we gather from al-Bakri and al-Idrisi that Silla and Takrür, neither of them yet adequately pinpointed, jointly dominated the middle Senegal River in economic terms.

64. The spelling of the name of this site is something of a problem. G. Thilmans and A. Ravisé (1980) spell it Sintiou, in accordance with French phonetics; Y. Fall (1982) and most Senegalese authors now spell it Sincu.


67. Y. Fall, 1982.


69. B. Tandia, 1982–3, among many other studies. The main results of prospecting in Mauritania in June 1982 from Selibaby to Boghé are as follows. A large number of fluted pots were found comparable to the Sintiu-Bara ones regarded as dating from the fifth to sixth centuries: such pots have been found on the Senegalese side at Cascas, Sintiu-Bara Matam, Ogo and Bakel, and on the Mauritanian side in twenty places exactly opposite the above-mentioned sites. This could be a cultural indicator of great importance. A large quantity of rope-twisting discs were found (see R. Mauny, 1955b; G. Thilmans, 1979, p. 29) at thirty-seven sites on the Mauritanian side (and in many cases on the Senegalese side). Thousands of bases of iron-smelting furnaces were found (see D. Robert-Chaleix and M. Sognane, 1983).
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

in the fifth/eleventh and sixth/twelth centuries. Thus all the evidence combines to show conclusively that this middle region of the river was busy — particularly in the realm of fishing — and powerful, between the sixth and twelfth centuries. Only faint echoes of this come through in the written sources and oral traditions and much more work will be needed to obtain results, though they will certainly prove to be spectacular.

A little further south, it is thanks to T. Lewicki that we have a somewhat better knowledge of a kingdom that long remained in the shadows, namely Diafunu (Zâfun-u). We learn that this kingdom became Muslim in the fifth/eleventh century, and that it was situated roughly around the confluence of the Kolombine and the Senegal.71

Azuke, which according to preliminary investigations72 was active between the end of the fourth/tenth century and the middle of the sixth/twelfth century, was probably a very important staging-post in this 'Senegalese system'.73

All this information, mostly obtained within the last fifteen years, still does not enable us to reconstruct the exact history of this area, which was so important for its contacts with the Almoravids. Abdurahmane Ba’s recent thesis74 puts forward attractive hypotheses about the very early existence of dynasties allied to the iron producers, who with their allies warred with black pre-Almoravid Islamizing forces from Takrûr (and probably also from Diafunu). Sillâ was not yet Muslim in the eleventh century.

The political life of this area is beginning to emerge from the shadows, at least in terms of hypotheses. It is still hard to be sure whether Sillâ, Takrûr or Diafunu exercised most control over the traffic in gold, which is known to have come from more southerly areas, the most northerly being between Falâmé and Bafing. It will be seen below75 that the establishment of the Almoravids in the south of what is now Mauritania had an undeniable effect on the geography of the gold trade and on the competition between rival towns on the Senegal.

The question is whether the Almoravids found Muslim princes on the Senegal with whom the Berbers had been in contact since the beginning of Islamization in this area, or whether they started and accelerated the conversion of the towns on the middle Senegal. The answer to this question is

70. A. R. Ba, 1984.
71. T. Lewicki, 1971a; Lewicki gives the Arabic transliteration as Zâfun(u).
72. B. Saison, 1981.
73. The spelling of the name of this place by Arab authors poses major problems. The various manuscript readings and possible vowel patterns yield a number of different spellings.
75. See Chapter 14 below on the subject of the routes described by al-Idrîsî, which gave considerable importance to the Senegal Valley as against the routes taken in the previous two centuries.
The Almoravids are very interesting. The most recent studies tend to suggest that Islamization predated the Almoravid period, and may have brought about the downfall of an earlier Takrûr dynasty which was too closely bound up with the 'pagan' iron-smelters and magicians. Much work remains to be done on these questions, but research is moving quickly. In any event, it is now clear that Islam played a very important role in the Senegal Valley in the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries, and that the understanding between the Almoravids and the black Muslim rulers probably played a great part in the success of the veiled warriors from the north; in the Senegal Valley they found fighting men, slaves and gold.

Further east the situation was certainly less favourable for the Almoravids. The Inland Niger Delta was of course a trading area and was urbanized before the advent of Islam. The bulk of the gold produced, as far away as the forest lands, was probably brought together in this area, and the black gold merchants who collected it were in touch with Ghana to the north, and probably sometimes also with Gao, by the fourth/tenth century at the latest. The princes who governed these two towns regulated the sale of gold to the north. The ruler of Ghana was not a Muslim at the time of the Almoravid expansion, though he maintained excellent relations with the Muslims. Many of the latter, as research at Kumbi Saleh has shown, lived in this market town, where the ruler of Ghana was glad to welcome them and where they could pray in a monumental mosque, certainly from the fourth/tenth century on. The whole Ghana – Inland Niger Delta system, organized long before the Almoravids and certainly hostile to the Šanhâdža, was accustomed to trading with the Ifnkiyan merchants. There was thus likely to have been a clash between the Almoravids and the

76. See A. Ba, 1984. See also the doctoral thesis presented in Dakar by Mr Oumar Kane in December 1986 which indicates – by reference to Soninke traditions – that some Soninke (or Jula) merchants introduced Islam south of the Senegal River, possibly as early as the ninth century, but at the latest by the tenth century. Eleven maraboutic Soninke families of the Futa Toro maintain that their origins may be traced back to this period. Mr Kane points out that the verbs jîlde (to pray) and jîlaade (to trade) are derived from the word jula. Even if those Soninke merchants were no more than guides for Muslim tradesmen from the north, they were nevertheless responsible for introducing Islam to Africa some time well before the Almoravid period. In a different way, this point is also clearly made by al-Bakrî.

77. There is a well-known reference in al-Bakrî (J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 90) to the fact that Labi (?), son of Wâr Dyâbi, chief of Takrûr, was with Abû Bakr in 1056. This certainly seems to suggest that Takrûr had at that time been Muslim for at least two generations.

78. See below Chapter 14, in particular on the idea of rival systems based on the towns on the Senegal and Ghana at this time.


80. S. Berthier, 1983. See also Annales de l'Institut Mauritanien de Recherches Scientifiques, 2nd year.

81. This is the view nowadays suggested by carbon-14 datings for the earliest periods of the organization of the town and its mosque.

82. See J. Devisse, 1970.
Ghana system; and this is all the more probable because the latter, merely by virtue of the facts of geography (which it made the most of) had a sort of side-door to gold through the towns on the Senegal. At present, however, it is very difficult to judge what form this confrontation could have taken.

In order to answer this question we should first need to gauge exactly the forms and degree of Islamization attained in the Sahel when the Almoravid movement developed. All research nowadays combines to suggest that the first rational, concerted major effort at conversion (djihād) was the work of Saharans – the Almoravids – and dates from the fifth/eleventh century.83 In the preceding two or three centuries the progress of Islam was probably

The Almoravids

more sporadic, and linked to the presence of the merchants from the north and urbanization.\textsuperscript{84}

We are probably entitled to think that an initial phase of Islamization, sometimes very ‘individual’, and in the case of the Fāṭimids\textsuperscript{85} perhaps ‘statal’ and hence very ideological, had an occasional effect on the termini of the Saharan trade without greatly affecting the rural areas and without making much effort at education or religious training. The first communities at Awdâghust, in Ghana, and perhaps at Tâdmekka, Gao and no doubt some other towns on the Senegal or the Inland Niger Delta belong to this period; the famous anecdote about the conversion of the King of Mallal should perhaps also be assigned to this time.

The Almoravids took their role as reformers and teachers of Sunnism very seriously. They did not start from scratch,\textsuperscript{86} but they gave the Muslim community of West Africa a geographical dimension, probably for the first time: after them it had more distinct boundaries than before. The upheaval south of the Sahara brought about by the Almoravid conquest was certainly considerable; and moreover it was combined with the general counter-offensive of Sunnism that marked the fifth/eleventh century, after the Shiʿite triumphs of the preceding century. It is against this background that it should be possible to assess relations with Ghana.

Ghana officially went over to Islam at the end of the fifth/eleventh century, having been conquered or converted to Mālikī Sunnism; it may also have helped to bring about Tâdmekka’s transition to Sunnism.\textsuperscript{87} Archaeological evidence is still vague. Admittedly traces of probable destruction have been found deep down, nearly 5 m below the present surface; admittedly the dimensions of the mosque changed after the end of the fifth/eleventh century; and admittedly the great market town on the spot called Kumbi Saleh developed most conspicuously in the seventh/thirteenth and eighth/fourteenth centuries.\textsuperscript{88} These clues go some way to suggest destruction by the Almoravids, who had no more reason to spare their Zanjā enemies here than at Awdâghust.\textsuperscript{89} But conclusive proof is still lacking: and in any case, as with Awdâghust, any raid that there may have been would not have led to the disappearance of the market town; quite the con-

\textsuperscript{84} See Chapter 3 above.
\textsuperscript{85} Refers to the case of Awdâghust, now under investigation. See also Chapter 12 above.
\textsuperscript{86} See Chapter 3 above.
\textsuperscript{87} J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 120 (al-Zuhri’s text): ‘In the vicinity of Ghana, fifteen days’ journey away, there are two towns: the first is Silla, the second Tâdmekka. These two towns are nine days apart. The people of these two towns became Muslim after those of Ghana, seven years later, after wars between them and many rebellions. The people of Ghana sought help from the Murâbitûn in order to defeat them’. T. Lewicki, 1979, p. 166 quotes this text, and introduces another transliteration of the first place name, namely N-s-la. See also D. C. Conrad and H. J. Fisher, 1982, 1983.
\textsuperscript{88} S. Berthier, 1983.
\textsuperscript{89} J. Dévisse, 1970.
trary. Archaeology still has some basic questions to answer: for the moment they do not seem to interest many people.

The question is, if there was a clash, what happened to the royal capital? Did it withdraw further south, or did it also adopt Islam? What were the subsequent relations with the neighbouring Soso to the south, whose eighth/fourteenth-century and ninth/fifteenth-century texts tell us that they defeated an enfeebled Ghana? Thus at present the whole fate of the ‘Ghanaian system’ linked with the Inland Delta mainly escapes us and this is a great pity.

R. M. A. Bedaux has no hesitation in regarding the warlike movements that possibly then affected the Sahel as the cause of the occupation or reoccupation of important sites in the Inland Niger Delta, and also of the settlement of the Tellem in the old Tolloy sites on the Bandiagara cliff. Some authors even think that the upheaval gradually reached the Chad area.

The princes of Gao were Muslims as far back as the fourth/tenth century. Traces of relations with Almoravid Spain, likewise difficult to interpret, appear at the end of the fifth/eleventh century. Royal funerary steles have been found in the Gao-Sane necropolis to the north of Gao. The two earliest of these steles may have been carved from Spanish marble; they relate to monarchs who were undoubtedly Muslim and probably Sunnite. At present little more is known about them.

We do not even know the precise outcome of Abü Bakr’s efforts to con-

91. J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 343 (Ibn Khaldûn, p. 388) (al-Maqrîzî): the translations need to be carefully revised. The texts, being difficult, are open to readings very different from those of the author.
92. See Chapter 14 below.
95. H. T. Norris, 1972. This interpretation is not accepted by all research workers. On this point also much work remains to be done.
96. Al-Muhallabî (d. 990) in J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 77: ‘The king of the country proclaimed himself Muslim in the presence of his subjects, and many of them proclaimed themselves Muslim likewise’. On the role Tâhert may have played in this field, see T. Lewicki, 1962.
98. J. Sauvaget, 1949. See also M. M. Viré, 1958, pp. 368–76.
99. Mr Paulo de Moraes Farias, of Birmingham University, who has already made signal contributions to the history of the Almoravids, is working with Malian, Mauritanian and French research workers on a comprehensive study of the inscribed steles of the Sahel area. We should thank him know much more about them in a few years’ time. See also J. O. Hunwick, 1980.
vert the Sahel. The date and place of his death vary considerably according to the sources.\textsuperscript{100} The oral sources in Mauritania are also vague.\textsuperscript{101}

Obviously the last word has yet to be said, and the history of the Almoravids\textsuperscript{102} still has big surprises in store, even as regards religion: for the first time a coherent Sunnite realm presented a comprehensive front and a border for \textit{Dār al-islām} as against a black world with different religious systems. In the face of these societies that Islam regarded as 'pagan', tolerance and indifference were no longer appropriate. This novelty was pregnant with important developments for the succeeding centuries.

The organization of a space stretching from the Ebro to the Senegal: the failure of the Almoravids

The economies of the northern part of the Almoravid bloc were already highly organized before the Şanhadja conquest. From now on they benefited from the flow of gold from West Africa. For too long people have written that the Almoravid conquests devastated the western seaboard of Africa. The progress of research in recent years has shown that on the contrary the Sahel areas were at that time very highly integrated with the northern economies. The setting up or strengthening of new staging-posts on the connecting routes between Senegal and Morocco shows that the tracks carried considerable traffic.\textsuperscript{103} Some historians sometimes take the view that the Almoravid bloc was amicably shared, in the full meaning of the word, between Abū Bakr and Yūsuf ibn Tāshfin. This view is disproved, first, by the fact that coinage continued to be struck in Abū Bakr’s name at the Sijilmāsa mint until his death, and secondly by the discovery in Mauritania of dinars struck in Andalusia in the sixth/twelfth century;\textsuperscript{104} the flow in this vast empire was from north to south. Moreover it could not have been otherwise, given the great need for southern gold in the north.\textsuperscript{105} The long Atlantic seaboard linking countries with complementary

\textsuperscript{100} The first (undated) reference to Abū Bakr’s death is in a late seventh/thirteenth century text (J. M. Cuqo, 1975, p. 176). In the seventh/thirteenth century Ibn al-Athīr (Cuqo, p. 194) placed it in 462/1069-70. In the eighth/fourteenth century authors hesitated between 469/1076-7 and 480/1087-8. Similar uncertainty exists about the date of death of ‘Abd Allāh ibn Yāsīn, viz. between 450/1058 and 452/1060.

\textsuperscript{101} A. Ould el-Bah, 1982.

\textsuperscript{102} Two important theses are awaited from French historians, V. Lagardère and A. Nègre, who have already published interesting preliminary studies.

\textsuperscript{103} See Chapter 14 below. Azukī, in what is now Mauritania, Tabalbala, in eastern Morocco, and Zagöra and Tāmdült, in southern Morocco, are among the relatively important towns probably built by the Almoravids. On Azukī see B. Saison, 1981; on Tabalbala see F. D. Champault, 1969; on Zagöra see J. Meunié and C. Allain, 1956. On Tāmdült see B. Rosenberger, 1970b.

\textsuperscript{104} G. S. Colin, A. O. Babacar, N. Ghali, and J. Devisse, 1983.

\textsuperscript{105} See Chapter 14 below: in particular, Fig. 14.6 of the Almoravid mints.
PLATE 13.3(a) *Almoravid coins and stamping tools found in Algeria*

PLATE 13.3(b) *Almoravid gold coins*
The Almoravids

economies must, therefore, be regarded from an economic point of view as a whole. Hence the demand for products ‘from the south’ in all probability increased until the middle of the sixth/twelfth century. The maintenance of this economic unity did not of course prevent the existence of two administrations, one in Marrakesh and the other in the Sahel; two armies, one in the south, faithful to camels, and the other entirely on horseback from the end of the fifth/eleventh century.106 and perhaps two different political climates.107 But economic unity is firmly attested by the sources. Southern Morocco benefited greatly from this boom. Al-Idrisi eloquently describes this increase in wealth in the case of Aghmát-Warîka, quite close to the Tinmâl area, birthplace of the Almohad movement. ‘The people of Aghmát,’ he says:

are Hawaiara, Arabs who have become Berbers by close contact. They are rich merchants, and live well. They go into the countries of the blacks with caravans of camels carrying quintals and quintals of goods: copper, brass, blankets, woollen garments, turbans, cloaks, glass beads, mother of pearl, precious stones, spices of all kinds, perfumes and wrought ironwork . . . Under the rule of the Mulaththa-mün [Almoravids] no one was richer or more well-to-do than the people of Aghmát. They put markers at the doors of their houses to show the extent of their wealth.

Aghmát was not alone in benefiting from the economic boom. The whole of the mountainous part of Morocco supplied increased quantities of copper, iron and silver for export: and in the sixth/twelfth century there were real battles for control of the mines between the supporters of the Almohads and those of the Almoravids.108 Excavations in the Chichâwa area109 west of Marrakesh have revealed the lavishness of living conditions in the Almoravid period: the stucco work110 and painted decorations111 are worthy of comparison with others found in the north and south.

Naturally economic prosperity, which obviously only reached certain urban circles and people close to those in high places, made for the development of sometimes ostentatious luxury, which the Almohads were to condemn forcefully. Many sumptuously decorated mosques date from this

106. Details taken from V. Lagardère, 1983.
107. See above, p. 350.
108. There is an excellent and very accurate translation of al-Idrisi’s text in M. Hadj Sadok, 1983, pp. 73–4.
110. P. Berthier, 1962, for comparison with others in Spain from the same period. See C. Ewert, 1971 (reviewed by B. Rosenberger in HT, 12, 1972, pp. 219–21).
111. The geometrical decorations in red on a white background at Chichâwa are obviously related to the ones of the same period found at Marrakesh. We may well wonder whether they are not also related to the decorations at Walâta, in Mauritania.
time (see Fig. 13.1) but so do fine secular monuments, some of which, such as the fountain at Marrakesh, have survived to this day. No town has yielded more important remains than Marrakesh, the Almoravid’s most original piece of town planning. Al-Idrïsï gives us an interesting picture of the town at the time when it was built. ‘[It] is on level ground, and adjoining it there is but one small hill called Idjalliz, from which the stone was taken for the building of the palace of the “Emir of the Muslims”, ’Ali ibn Yusuf ibn Tashfin, known as Dâr al-Ḥadjar [the stone house]. There is no stone at all there apart from this hill: so the town has been built of clay, baked brick and rammed earth’. Archaeology has made it possible to find this palace, a ‘marvel of architecture’ in this area for the period in question; and it has also made it possible to reconstruct part of the plan of the Almoravid mosque and completely extricate a superbly decorated fountain given to the inhabitants for their ablutions. The northernmost tip of the Almoravids’ lavish decoration was in Spain, on the Ebro, in the Aljaferia at Saragossa: nothing now remains of it but parts of arches.

According to G. Wiet and E. Lévi-Provençal, Marrakesh also became a brilliant literary centre. Here court poets from Spain continued careers begun under the reyes de taifas but ruined by the Almoravid conquest of al-Andalus and the initial severity that accompanied it. This initial severity, which aroused, for example, al-Bakrï’s profound reservations about the Almoravids, died down in time both in actions and in behaviour. The Islamic culture of the day had been, for the first time on such a scale, transplanted to Morocco. With it came luxury and a taste for a sumptuous life style: the Almoravids were to be reproached for this by their enemies. But the legal severity of the fukahä, the allies of the ruling house, which often contrasted with the permissiveness of the glittering life in Marrakesh, had not disappeared. It imposed a sometimes paranoid Mâliki Sunnism, a fact of great importance for the history of Western Islam, including Islam in Africa but one which by its excesses also aroused many hostile reactions.

V. Lagardère’s work has brought out quite recently the depth of animosity aroused in Spain and Morocco, and perhaps even further afield, by the hostile policy imposed on the ruling house by the Mâlikite fukahä. The latter attacked in particular the works of al-Ghazâlî, which had then been

introduced into the West and whose mystical tone perplexed the fikahā' who supported the Almoravids. A letter dated November 1143 from the Almoravid monarch Abū Marwān 'Abd al-Malik b. 'Abd al-Azīz to a future kādī of Valencia clearly shows the feelings and anxieties of the ruling power at that time: 'When you come across a heretical book or the fomenter of some heresy, be wary of them, and especially of the works of Abū Ḥāmid al-Ghazālī. Track them down, so that their memory may be totally destroyed, by an unceasing auto-da-fé [sic]; carry out searches and require oaths of those you suspect of hiding some'. The atmosphere in the last decades of Almoravid power was poisoned by the repressive measures of the Mālikite jurists, who had the support of the princes; this repression lent colour to the reproaches addressed to the ruling dynasty, in particular by the infant Almohad movement. According to V. Lagardère, even the legitimacy of the ruling house seemed to be called into question by the interpretation of a very popular text by Al-Ghazālī:

The period before Islam was nothing but error and blindness. Then, thanks to the Prophethood, it was the turn of Truth and the right path. The Prophethood was followed by the Caliphate, and the Caliphate by the monarchy; the latter then turned to tyranny, pride and vanity. Now since we find that there is a divine tendency to bring things back to their point of departure, it follows that truth and the Prophethood will inevitably be brought back to life by holiness...

This was saying fairly clearly that the ruling power, tyrannical, proud and vain as it was, had, despite the formal support of the Mālikite jurists, neither dynastic justification nor underlying religious worth. The 'legitimist'-vis-à-vis the Abbasids—opposition, which was unitaristic and close to Ibn Tūmart’s Ghazalian aspirations, stands out much more clearly in this context.

In a succession of articles, V. Lagardère is studying the weakness of the Almoravid administration. This was almost non-existent at local level: power was exercised through relatives and clients. In more than one case the misdeeds condemned in the rulers of al-Andalus in the early years of rectitude soon reappeared, particularly in the realm of taxation. The rigidity flaunted in the legal field and in inquisitorial procedures cannot conceal a certain doctrinal ambivalence, and revolts were not infrequent.

118. The texts quoted are taken from V. Lagardère, 1983.
119. V. Lagardère, 1981, p. 53, emphasizes that Ibn Tūmart was a disciple of Abū Mūsā 'Isā b. Sulaymān ar-Rafrāghī, who came from the province of Tādirā and had been nurtured on contemplative oriental teachings; even if the Almohads did not invoke his texts, the similarity is interesting.
121. The sentence passed on the works of al-Ghazālī, which were destroyed by fire on the orders of the Almoravids, casts a disagreeable shadow over their ruler (V. Lagardère, 1983).
The one that was to sweep away the dynasty developed in the Atlas, and the Almoravid government could do nothing but contain it as long as possible. The weapon Yusuf ibn Tashfin had used against the reyes de taifas at the end of the fifth/eleventh century was to be turned against the Almoravids, who were accused in their turn of oppression, injustice, corruption, debauchery and lack of rigour in religion. The undeniable wealth of the Almoravid state apparatus was to fail to withstand the onslaught of the Almohads, fiery as it was and well organized in their mountain bases.

History has for far too long been very hard on the Almoravids, who have been charged with every possible mistake and suspected of intervening like 'barbarians' in a Spain in which compromises between Muslims and Christians were arrived at on the basis of capitulations. They upset too many established interests for their irruption to be easily forgiven; and they introduced too many new faces, including some blacks, to escape arousing mistrust and hostility. It will be very interesting in the years to come to observe the process (already begun) of rehabilitation of this dynasty and the quest for a better, more balanced appraisal of its historical role. It is already fascinating to try to gauge what impression the Almoravids have left on collective memories. The experiment already carried out in this field by a young Mauritanian research worker shows how valuable such investigations would be if they were performed systematically.122
Over the past twenty years research has considerably changed the information base available for the study of this subject. There have been many archaeological discoveries, especially south of the Sahara, and numismatics has taken a great leap forward as a result of laboratory research on the Islamic coinages, particularly for our period. Progress has also come from a critical re-reading of the written sources and the application of the methods of economic history to these remote periods. Nearly all recent work has cast great doubt on findings that were taken for granted two decades ago; and has also radically changed the spirit of research itself and opened up new and far-reaching avenues of enquiry.

From the outset two precautions must be taken. The first is one of method: the mere reporting of archaeological discoveries is not sufficient to link up the various sets of indications that are revealed. Micro-analysis and small-scale certainty must henceforth give way to the requirements of economic history, with its statistical or at any rate serial methods, its anxiety for an overall view and its keenness to work on a broad canvas.

The second preliminary precaution, failing which much of the reasoning to follow would remain obscure, is an elementary one of vocabulary. It is generally accepted that a local trade economy based on the barter of consumer goods or locally made products existed very early on, and certainly for our period, both in Africa and elsewhere. It does not directly affect the subject of this chapter. A long-distance trade economy involving merchants rested on the existence of a demand for certain rare and costly products (such as salt, kola, gold, wheat, fabrics and copper) which had to come from ‘elsewhere’. These and many other commodities formed the basis of a trade that only became trans-Saharan when demand in the north irreplaceably complemented that in the south. This should never be forgotten. New needs for new products could be created among distant trading partners on the basis of existing routes; dangerous very long-distance trade could only be established if it reflected imperious needs.

Above all, however, our study of the development of the trans-Saharan gold trade will be meaningless unless we remember two key ideas, the de-
mand for and the supply of coinage.\textsuperscript{1} Demand for trading tokens arises when there is a desire for a medium that temporarily preserves the freedom of choice of the party who has just sold a product by means of a token which is not necessarily the product supplied by the buyer. Archaeology and written sources have demonstrated sufficiently clearly the existence of such tokens (for example little copper crosses, iron objects and fabrics) throughout Africa in the period under consideration for there to be no need to re-open the discussion. Africa was familiar with the need for tokens as currency. It also knew the value of gold, and how to build up gold reserves as tangible nest-eggs for hard times.

Thus trans-Saharan trade was not a timeless phenomenon. In the form of an annual crossing by camel caravans in search of gold in the south, it arose and developed in ways that we need to recognize and study. It also underwent major changes, which we need to follow as best we may.

The Sahara, a gulf that has widened since the Neolithic period

Possible ways of crossing the desert

From the point of view of trans-Saharan links the period between the seventh and eleventh centuries of the Christian era was of crucial importance. This was when the lines of regular links, along routes which changed over the years, grew up between the Mediterranean economies, with, in particular, their demand for gold, and those of the southern Saharan Sahel and the savannas which in turn linked it to the forest region, which used salt but produced little of it. But the origins of these crossings has for long been a moot point.

The cultural unity of the Sahara of the hunters and its southern fringes has quite recently been authoritatively established for very early periods\textsuperscript{2} but this applies to the Nile area, the central Sahara from the Hoggar to Tibesti, and the Saharan Atlas. It leaves entirely out of the discussion what are now south-western Algeria and Mauritania and Mali.\textsuperscript{3} For the latter areas Hugot has clearly shown that before the third millennium before the Christian era, when the intensified spread of the desert wrecked earlier efforts, there was no active Neolithic life in the Sahara. The large quantity

\textsuperscript{1} On the idea of the need for and supply of coinage see C. Cipolla, 1961; G. P. Hennequin, 1972, 1974. ‘Demand’ may be appraised by means of various descriptive sources, coin finds, and gold and silver remains unearthed by archaeologists. ‘Supply’ is directly related to the various kinds of evidence of coinage struck. It is studied nowadays by a revival of traditional numismatics and by an entirely new approach to numismatics based on statistical series. The results of investigation have for some years now been radically affected by laboratory work.

\textsuperscript{2} J. Leclant and P. Huard, 1980, especially the conclusions, pp. 517–28.

\textsuperscript{3} ibid., map p. 80.
of potsherds found are evidence of this.\textsuperscript{4} The Sahara became difficult to cross as the isohyets moved further and further apart to north and south.

Looking at the present-day isohyet map (Fig. 14.1), we see the wide area of totally inadequate or very poor grazing which over nearly a thousand kilometres separates the areas of better grasslands to north and south. This situation is probably not fundamentally very different, by and large, from that of 1500 or 1600 years ago,\textsuperscript{5} although countless local deteriorations have aggravated the situation in places\textsuperscript{6} and very recent crises have again revived the question of further desertification in the southern Sahel region of the Sahara.

Except at a few rare points where the northern and southern 50 mm isohyets are close together, crossing the Sahara necessitates either finding reliable wells and oases or else travelling with mounts that are economical water users\textsuperscript{7} and carrying much of the water needed for human survival.\textsuperscript{8} This crossing is dangerous, and is certainly not attempted without good reason.

This observation, on which all researchers are nowadays in agreement, makes the old discussions about major Saharan crossings in more remote periods\textsuperscript{9} somewhat academic. Even if it is one day established that they took place, the inexorable drawing apart of the two edges of the desert\textsuperscript{10} would have made it difficult or impossible for travellers to cross in one continuous journey by the end of what is usually called Antiquity.\textsuperscript{11} An important role in cross-desert links was to be played by peoples, probably Berber-speakers, who settled in the Sahara in circumstances and at dates

\begin{enumerate}
\item The literature on the climatic evolution of the Sahara has today reached a high degree of consensus. See for example on the human consequences: R. Kuper (ed.), 1978; H. J. Hugot, 1979; J. Leclant and P. Huard, 1980; and on changes in living conditions the gripping pages in T. Monod, 1958, about the Madjabat al-Kubrâ. See also: S. E. Nicholson, 1979, pp. 31–50; the abstract of S. E. Nicholson, 1976, an important thesis. Generally speaking, the progress of research on the history of environmental evolution in West Africa may be followed in the Bulletin de l'Aequa (Dakar).
\item J. Devisse, D. Robert-Chaleix et al., 1983, contains a detailed study on the historical evolution of the water table at Awdâghust and the probable causes of this collapse.
\item On the camel and its place in history see R. Mauny, 1961, pp. 287 et seq.; C. de Lespinay, 1981.
\item T. Monod, 1973a, p. 31, shows that the Sahara is the most inhospitable of all deserts, 60 per cent of its area being arid and 15 per cent of that completely devoid of vegetation.
\item For instance O. du Puygaudeau, 1966, pp. 37 et seq.
\item On the consequences of this drawing-apart in the south see the very stimulating studies by S. Daveau and C. Toupet, 1963; C. Toupet, 1977. These have illustrations for the period under consideration.
\item The most recent work comes down against regular trans-Saharan trade relations after the end of the Neolithic period; see Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. II, ch. 20; J. Desanges, 1976, pp. 213, 374; G. Camps, 1980, p. 65 et seq.
\end{enumerate}
FIG. 14.1 The desert area to be crossed: map showing present-day isohyets (after Hugot, 1979; Godinho, 1956)
about which we know little, but between the fourth and seventh centuries of the Christian era. \(^{12}\) Little is known about the economic role of these Saharan groups before the eighth century. This is no reason to deny that partial links existed, through them, between North Africa and points quite deep in the desert, \(^{13}\) or even with the south of the desert and the Sahel area.

The 'Berber' confederations of the fifth and sixth centuries \(^{14}\) were the first to be in a position to attempt the crossing, thanks to the rapid spread of the camel for some centuries. \(^{15}\) The point is that this was the only animal that could have made possible the long expeditions of between one and two thousand kilometres between the two edges of the Sahara. Neither chariots (no longer widely believed to have been used for commercial purposes), \(^{16}\) horses (then recently introduced into the Sahara), \(^{17}\) donkeys (old and frugal habitués of these parts) nor the slow-moving draught oxen attested by rock art \(^{18}\) met the needs of difficult, heavy, long-distance trade. The characteristic feature of caravans, at least from the tenth century onwards, was to be the number of beasts of burden carrying impressive loads to be exchanged for the main product sought to the south of the Sahara, gold.

An important consideration was the choice of a route that limited risks. The pains taken by Arab authors of the tenth, eleventh and twelfth centuries to describe the minutiae of trans-Saharan trade routes shows clearly that any improvisation was likely to be disastrous. There were special transit areas, suggested by the physical conditions and later to be consecrated by custom. There is sometimes mention of a coastal route (al-Bakrî refers to it in the eleventh century without regarding it as of real importance \(^{19}\)); recent research has brought out its difficulties and hence its dangers: between latitudes 26°N and 24°N, the completely inhospitable coast is devoid of any trace of human existence, even for the Neolithic period. \(^{20}\)

Further east, in what is now Mauritania, travel was favoured by the fact


\(^{14}\) Unesco, General History of Africa, vol. II, p. 508 and G. Camps, 1980. The possible presence of Berber-speaking Jews in these areas has also been discussed.

\(^{15}\) Recent accounts (C. de Lespinay, 1981; H. J. Hugot, 1979, p. 145) point out that no trace of dromedary bones has been found in properly dated Neolithic sites in the Sahara, and that their representation in painting and carving came later.


\(^{17}\) H. J. Hugot, 1979, pp. 111 et seg.

\(^{18}\) H. J. Hugot, 1979, p. 675, pp. 574-5; Hugot believes in the historical importance of ox-carts; but they seem to be unsuitable for real trans-Saharan trade, although (as H. J. Hugot, 1979, shows clearly on p. 573) they may have played a role in the transport over short distances of materials such as timber, clay and reeds, particularly in the southern savannas of the Sahel.

\(^{19}\) J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 95.

that the northern and southern 50 mm isohyets come closer together: this was to be the site of Azukî. Still further east were the Saura valley, Gurâra and Tawât in the north, and these soon attracted the attention of caravan travellers.\textsuperscript{21} The exceptional importance of this route was to make it one of the transit points most frequented by caravans from the tenth century onwards. Still further east, it was necessary to go to Wargla, in the Mzâb, and to slip southwards to Adrâr des Ifoghas and the valley of Tilemsi\textsuperscript{22} to find a route as easy as the foregoing. But Wargla does not appear in history until the eighth century:\textsuperscript{23} perhaps it was then a staging-post on the route from Tähert to Gâo.\textsuperscript{24} Near it grew up Isedraten (Sadrâta), the town of refuge for the Ibâdites driven out of Tähert by the Fâtimid victory at the beginning of the tenth century. Isedraten did not survive for long in a hostile environment.\textsuperscript{25} But the Mzâb, where towns developed in the eleventh century,\textsuperscript{26} and Wargla, which was prosperous from the tenth, were a focus for the development of trans-Saharan relations comparable to Tawât.

In the last quarter of the eighth century people at Tähert reckoned that 'the routes leading to the Sudan are open to business and trade'.\textsuperscript{27} The first move towards links with the Bilâd al-Südân can thus be dated from the second half of the eighth century; but these links were not firmly established or attested until the tenth century. While the Berber-speakers were the first to experiment with trans-Saharan routes, to open them to regular trade needed economic incentives and human determination of which Tähert had only glimpsed the first stirrings. 'Natural conditions' were not enough to create routes; for that economic needs were required.

Further east the existence of early links becomes more apparent as we get nearer to the Nile. But the work so far published does not allow the drawing of a very definite route. The role of the Garamantes remains a subject of controversy.\textsuperscript{28} It is now thought that trade took place between the Fezzân and the Lake Chad area, and also that Kawâr supplied salt to the south.\textsuperscript{29} But we cannot yet sketch out a pattern for any trade there may have been with the peoples living south of Lake Chad.\textsuperscript{30} A route from

\textsuperscript{21} See J. L. Echallier, 1970, who dates the earliest settlements in Tawât and Gurâra to the tenth century.
\textsuperscript{22} J.-P. Blanck, 1968, shows that the valley of the Tilemsi was probably still dry 5500 years before the Christian era, and certainly was 10 000 years ago.
\textsuperscript{23} T. Lewicki, 1976.
\textsuperscript{24} ibid., p. 12.
\textsuperscript{25} The town was abandoned during the eleventh century.
\textsuperscript{27} T. Lewicki, 1962.
\textsuperscript{29} D. Lange, 1978, pp. 497–9.
\textsuperscript{30} J.-P. Lebeuf, A. M. D. Lebeuf, F. Treinen-Claustre and J. Courtin, 1980; J.-P. Lebeuf, 1981. In the latter summary work the author envisages the southward movement from north of Lake Chad in the ninth century of hunters using spears.
Chad to Tripolitania may perhaps have served for the export of slaves from a date impossible to specify; this is the inference from reading al-Ya'kūbī, who described the situation in the middle of the ninth century.\(^{31}\)

As we get nearer the Nile the networks are much longer-standing on the river and on a route parallel to it on the west along the chain of oases. There were also east-west links between these oases and the river\(^ {32} \) and caravan links with the Red Sea from at least the Hellenistic era.\(^ {33} \) Nothing changed from the early days of Pharaonic Egypt until the period under consideration, with the probable exception of one parameter: relations with Nubia. These had been frozen by a pact (\textit{bakt}) between the Muslim masters of Egypt and the Makurra dynasty: concluded for the benefit of both parties.\(^ {34} \) This provided for the annual delivery of several hundred black slaves to the north, and was implemented fairly correctly until the time of the Mamluks. The Nubian buffer probably blocked direct access by the Muslims of Egypt via Dārful to the Chad Basin. This remained the case until the fourteenth century, a fact of great economic significance. This never stopped the Muslim masters of Egypt getting at the gold reserves of Wādī al-'Allākī and Nubia but it complicated their links with the \textit{Bilād al-Sūdān}. The only way open lay along an old route, the first section of which was well known to Antiquity, from the Nile to the oasis of Siwa. In the fifth and sixth centuries shrewd monks set up on this route a trade in relics of St Menas, whose monastery is on the outskirts of Alexandria.\(^ {35} \) Various studies suggest that, further on, the route went through the oasis of Kufra.\(^ {36} \) It then probably crossed Kawār from east to west, passing through al-Ḵaṣāba (Gezabi),\(^ {37} \) and reached Marandet (Maranda) and Gao.

Al-Ya'kūbī speaks of this route, vaguely but in the present tense, in the ninth century.\(^ {38} \) A century later Ibn Ḥawkal regarded it as abandoned because it was too dangerous.\(^ {39} \) Ibn Ḥawkal's descriptions mark a significant departure. If we draw an overall plan (Fig. 14.2) of the routes he described, we find that he considered the 'Egyptian' route to be in decline, but also that he 'disregarded' links between the areas where the Ibāḍites

---

33. On the development of these links with the Red Sea in the Fāṭimid period see J.-C. Garcin, 1976, pp. 71 et seq.
34. On the \textit{bakt} see L. Török, 1978. For the Fāṭimid period, see I. B. Beshir, 1975. See also Chapter 8 above.
35. J. Dévisse, 1979a, pp. 38 et seq.
lived and the Sudan and devoted his attention only to the ‘Fāṭimid’ route from Sīdījīlmaṣa to Ghana. Moreover, he says explicitly that this was the busiest route ‘in his day’. Once this route passes to the south of Ghana, the information on it given by Ibn Ḥawḥal is glaringly inaccurate, with fanciful localizations and completely vague distances. Moreover, on the map he appended to his own text Ibn Ḥawḥal was careful not to mark the names he quoted (Sāma, Kūgha, Ghiyārū and Kuzam), which were repeated by his successors: he contented himself with saying that this area comprised ‘districts in the domain of the Blacks’.

This should be a warning to us: everything to do with the description of the routes is political and stems from choices made by the writer. This is particularly flagrant in the case of the old Egyptian route, of which an Iranian source, the Ḥudūd al-ʿĀlām, said in 982–3 that it took eighty days to traverse, with only one place where there was water and fodder and that the Egyptian merchants used it to take ‘salt, glass and lead’ to the Bilād al-Sūdān.

Ibn Ḥawḥal’s neglect of the Egyptian route was probably not the result merely of ideological and political factors, but probably reflected radical economic changes between the ninth and the tenth centuries. Neither al-Bakrī nor al-Idrīsī, the two great chroniclers of trans-Saharan routes, were to mention the Egypt route again: something had certainly happened between the ninth and tenth centuries that led to its abandonment.

In fact the key events were to take place in the ninth, tenth and eleventh centuries between Tripolitania, Chad and the Atlantic; the other area, around the Nile, had quite a different destiny reserved for it.

Life in the Sahel zone as revealed by recent archaeological research

Recent research on iron and copper in West Africa is alone enough to cast doubt on most of the received ideas about pre-Christian periods. In the period before the great commercial crossings of the Sahara these two essential commodities were marketable at long range south of the desert without intervention from the north. If we look at the map of the

40. ibid., p. 68: he calls the Ibāḍites and Nukkārites ‘impious hypocrites’ and ‘schismatics’.
41. ibid., p. 58.
42. ibid., p. 61.
44. See J. Devisse, 1982, who gives the recent bibliography and a map of the sites, and S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1981.
46. See in particular R. J. McIntosh and S. K. McIntosh, 1981; S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b. I adopt most of their conclusions.
FIG. 14.2 Trade routes described by Ibn Hawkal
sites recently reported on by archaeologists, which are dated, we learn some surprising things about the importance of the Middle Niger Valley and the Senegal area in these recent discoveries.

Before the fifth century, sites in the Bandiagara-Tolloy area (fifth to second century before the Christian era), the Jenne-Jeno area (Phase I from −200 to +50 and Phase II from +50 to +400) and the Begho area have produced evidence of the intensity of activity in these three areas.

For the fifth, sixth and seventh centuries of the Christian era, without taking note of influences from across the Sahara, excavations have shown that there was activity both in the Senegal Valley and in the southern half of that country. It was also present, remarkably, from Niani to Tondidaru, along the valleys of the Niger as far as the outskirts of present-day Niamey. Marandet, Ife and sites in Ivory Coast also show great activity. Community life, with metal-working, division of labour, and trade, was organized in the Sahel before any signs of the appearance of a powerful Saharan trade. We can now say, without fear of being proved wrong by future research, that all the infrastructure of settlement and economic life in the valleys of the Senegal and Niger, and no doubt further south, was in existence during these "obscure centuries".

Going on to the eighth and ninth centuries, we see that apart from development (which incidentally still continued in the tenth and eleventh centuries) the only novelty was the emergence of the market towns of the north (Tegdaoust and Kumbi Saleh). The tenth and eleventh centuries were characterized by the same tendencies, with the rise of Azuñi and then Walata and the further growth of activity in the Senegal and Niger areas.

Detailed examination of the site findings strengthens the conviction that important Sahelian cultures are being resurrected by research; cultures with which the traders from the north were to come into contact. For the periods before the seventh century, Tondidaru, Jenne-Jeno and Bandiagara have yielded a rich harvest. The comments of S. K.

48. Very recent research, still unpublished, on the Mauritanian bank of the Senegal River yields a surprising crop of new facts. Forthcoming publications of the Institut Mauritanien de la Recherche Scientifique are worth following closely.
49. Of course this leap backwards in our knowledge is not proof that between the fifth and seventh centuries we are at the beginning of organized life, trade and cultural development in Sahelian Africa. Recent discoveries relating to iron and copper would alone suffice as a warning against any such new error of judgment. These discoveries cast doubt on the indications given by J. Anquandah, 1976, in his description of the economic development of the Sahel.
51. S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b. According to these authors there was town life on the site from the second century of the Christian era; they estimate the area of the town at 40 ha in about 900–1000.
McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh are particularly important as regards the trade in copper and iron in the Inland Niger Delta.\textsuperscript{53} For the various regions of Senegal the information is less detailed\textsuperscript{54} but even the size of the areas prospected has given rise to some debatable but not negligible estimates of the density of settlement between the river and the Gambia during the first millennium.\textsuperscript{55} The site of Sintiu-Bara, not yet completely published, has yielded bronze equipment of great interest.\textsuperscript{56} The discovery at sites on the river of many discs used in ropemaking for this period is still too recent to be interpreted with certainty; it also implies quite a high degree of technological development.\textsuperscript{57} For the eighth and ninth centuries and perhaps even for an earlier date Tegdaoust has yielded abundant consistent traces of copper-alloy metallurgy, one of the raw materials for which probably came from Akdjudjt.\textsuperscript{58} The earliest archaeological evidence of the use of cire perdue moulds has been found there for the same early periods:\textsuperscript{59} this local metallurgy, apparently continuous with that studied by N. Lambert,\textsuperscript{60} certainly played an inter-regional economic role very early on.

Lastly, bringing together the still meagre data about adaptation to the environment, stockbreeding, agriculture and food, we find that even for this period before the eighth to ninth centuries archaeological research has given some important recent results. At Jenne-Jeno fish and two kinds of bovids were eaten from the earliest period; and rice (Oryza glaberrima) was perhaps also eaten,\textsuperscript{61} being attested after +400 and before +900 (Phase III) alongside a variety of millet.\textsuperscript{62} But life expectancy seems to have still been short, to judge by the age of the skeletons found: six probably did not live beyond twenty-five years, one beyond thirty years, three between thirty and thirty-five years and one between forty-five and fifty-five years.\textsuperscript{63} At Tegdaoust beef was plentiful from the earliest times (eighth century or earlier); fowls – guinea fowl – and domestic animals or livestock

\textsuperscript{53} In particular there were some rare imports of copper in Periods II and III (50–400 and 400–900) which obviously could not have come from the trans-Saharan trade; S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, p. 76. On pp. 444–5 the authors use the same argument with regard to iron, which was not produced locally and was probably traded with iron-producing areas upstream.

\textsuperscript{54} See G. Thilmans, C. Descamps and B. Khayat, 1980.


\textsuperscript{56} A. Ravisé and G. Thilmans, 1978; G. Thilmans and A. Ravisé, 1980.

\textsuperscript{57} G. Thilmans, 1979 records discoveries on forty-two sites, ten of which have yielded more than ten examples. A ropemaking disc has apparently also been found at Tegdaoust, see D. Robert, 1980.


\textsuperscript{59} D. Robert-Chaleix, forthcoming.

\textsuperscript{60} See N. Lambert, 1971.

\textsuperscript{61} S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, p. 188.

\textsuperscript{62} ibid., p. 190.

\textsuperscript{63} ibid., pp. 177 \textit{et seq.}.
made up an important part of the diet. At Niani sorghum is attested in the eighth–ninth centuries, lentils probably in the ninth–tenth centuries.

Thus nowadays everything points to the fact that the societies with which the men from the north were to come into contact via the Sahara were cohesive and well organized, had towns and were capable of trading, sometimes over a long distance. Moreover, from the latter point of view it is noteworthy that salt-trading networks probably existed from this period. Here we must remember the testimony of the Hudūd al-'Alām, quoted above, and also that of al-Muhallabī, which shows that in the tenth century the main wealth of the princes of Gao lay in their salt reserves.

The situation north of the Sahara

It will suffice for our purpose to pick out those features of the situation north of the Sahara that may be important for economic history and the history of trans-Saharan links.

In what is now Morocco, five areas concern us. One, in the Atlantic plains and much of the Rif, was inhabited by peoples that were long to remain independent. The most representative, the Barghawātī, resisted all domination, at least until the Almoravid period: nevertheless they played a certain role, as yet not well understood, through their trading links with Muslim Spain in particular; they seem to have had no links with the Sahel. The Idrīsids who were divided into many ruling branches, dominated not only the north, around Fez, their capital and their creation, and Meknes, but also the Middle Atlas. To judge by the work so far published, they had no links with black Africa. In the north a string of ports, from Ceuta to Honayn, provided a continual link through coasting trade with neighbouring Spain: these ports were always fairly directly dependent on the economy of Andalusia. The Sūs, between the Atlas and the Anti-Atlas, from very early on enjoyed the reputation with Arab authors of a land of

64. J. Dévisse, D. Robert-Chaleix et al., 1983.
66. J. Dévisse, 1970: between the Atlantic coast and the Niger: Tāgant in Mauritania and Awdāghust were important staging-posts; similar trade probably took place between Kawkār and Chad (D. Lange and S. Berthoud, 1977), between Air and the neighbouring areas, and so on. This is also the view of S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, p. 446, who believe, without studying the record further, that the salt trade was very lively south of the Sahara from the fifth century onwards.
68. On trade links between regions in the north of the continent, see C. Vanacker, 1973.
69. D. Eustache, 1970–1. According to the catalogue painstakingly compiled by this author, there is no trace of the minting of gold by the Idrīsids; the argument is strong, but not conclusive as regards links with the south.
70. If Ibn Ḥawkāl is to be believed, in the tenth century Spanish influence extended as far as Sebū on the Atlantic coast; see Ibn Ḥawkāl, 1964, p. 77.
plenty.\textsuperscript{71} It is here that Tämdült\textsuperscript{72} emerged as an early terminus for the southward routes. Others multiplied on both sides of the Atlas and in the Dar'a Valley until the tenth century. Lastly, on the Sahara side of the Middle Atlas, Sijilmāsa (about whose foundation al-Bakrî reports several contradictory versions) began, certainly by the second half of the eighth century, to act as a caravan port for links with the south.\textsuperscript{73}

The south, as all the authors tell us, was the realm of the great cameleers, lords of the desert, who knew neither bread nor agriculture and lived in close symbiosis with their camels. They included the Banū Masūfa, mentioned by Ibn Ḥawḳal as early as the tenth century; they had an excellent knowledge of the routes, went veiled, and crossed the desert in winter.\textsuperscript{74} A little earlier Ibn al-Fakīh mentioned the Lamṭa, who already made famous shields 'which they temper for a whole year in sour milk. Swords bounce off these shields'.\textsuperscript{75} These are thought to be the 'adargues' of which R. Mauny has written at length.\textsuperscript{76} T. Lewicki has recently discussed the Islamization of these groups;\textsuperscript{77} a good deal of discovery no doubt remains to be done on this difficult topic.

Once the Berbers had been pacified, and especially in the Aghlabid period, Ifrīkiya took on greater importance. Of most interest to us here, in the context of trans-Saharan links, is the existence of a dinar coinage which deserves attention.\textsuperscript{78} For this purpose we have a survey by A. S. Ehrenkreutz\textsuperscript{79} covering Aghlabid dinars, all of an excellent degree of fineness (on average 98.99 per cent pure).\textsuperscript{80} Chronological classification shows that the coinage with the lowest degree of fineness dates from the beginning of the ninth century, and that after 817 the degree of fineness was very high; the coins which were 100 per cent gold were struck between 841 and 863.\textsuperscript{81} Hence the Aghlabids obtained gold for their coinage. It remains an open question whether a large part of this gold came from the conquest of Sicily\textsuperscript{82} or whether it was brought from the Bilād al-Sūdān in the ninth

\textsuperscript{71} Ibn Ḥawḳal, 1964, p. 89.
\textsuperscript{72} B. Rosenberger, 1970b, p. 106 the town existed in the tenth century; al-Ya'ḳūbī mentions it.
\textsuperscript{73} Al-Ya'ḳūbī (see J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 48) said that this town in the country of the Blacks could be reached in about fifty days. For Ibn Ḥawḳal, 1964, p. 97, as early as the tenth century, Sijilmāsa's trade with the south was 'uninterrupted'.
\textsuperscript{74} Ibn Ḥawḳal, 1964, p. 100.
\textsuperscript{75} J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 54; the text dates from 903.
\textsuperscript{76} R. Mauny, 1961.
\textsuperscript{77} T. Lewicki, 1970.
\textsuperscript{78} This is dealt with too superficially in J. Devissé, 1970, p. 140.
\textsuperscript{79} A. S. Ehrenkreutz, 1963.
\textsuperscript{80} ibid., p. 251: only one contains only 83 per cent of gold; of the others six contain between 95 and 97 per cent, twenty-two contain 99 per cent, and three contain 100 per cent of gold.
\textsuperscript{81} ibid., p. 252.
\textsuperscript{82} This hypothesis is advanced by M. Talbi, 1966, p. 250–1.
century. Historians are still debating this question. For one thing, we do not have for the Aghlabid period results of the kind emerging from the important laboratory research carried out by R. Messier for the dinars of the following periods. For another the documentation is meagre and difficult to interpret. In his very many studies of the Ibadi̇tes, T. Lewicki has stressed that they were a political and ideological barrier to the southwards penetration of the Aghlabids; he has never said or shown, however, that even though they monopolized traffic on the Saharan routes they did not sell gold to the governors of Kayrawān. Al-Bakrī, in the ninth century, attributes the digging of wells on the Tamdūḷt–Awdāghust road to 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī 'Ubayda al-Fihrī. The latter seized control of the government of Ifrīḳiya in 749; he was assassinated in 755. A recently published source states that in 752–3 he sacked Tlemcen and subjugated the whole of the Maghrib. An expedition to the lands of gold a good deal earlier – around 734 – supposedly at the behest of the governor of Ifrīḳiya is attributed to the same man. Even if the raid is historical, and even if it led to the digging of the wells (the southernmost of which was on the 23rd parallel of latitude at the most), this is far from saying that a route was organized to Awdāghust (on the 17th parallel) and the land of gold. It seems odd that an Ifrīḳiyān should have wanted to have such a western route explored rather than the more obviously accessible one through the Mzāb. It is not now possible to know in detail what economic links there may have been between Ifrīḳiya and West Africa in the eighth and ninth centuries, or even whether the Aghlabids had a consistent policy on this matter. At the very most it may be more or less assumed that the Ibā́daṭītes, rulers of the area extending from southern Tripolitania – Djabal Naṣūs – to what is now western Algeria, themselves tried at that time to organize a regular trans-Saharan link. The presence of gold in Ifrīḳiya suggests this; and the certainty that links existed between Tāhert and Gao gives this hy-

83. ibid., p. 458 points out the high proportion of blacks in the Emir’s guard; it is true that they could have come from the Chad area via the slave export route referred to above. Be that as it may, the fact that blacks came to Ifrīḳiya is indirectly confirmed by a recent study of the temporalities of Monreale Abbey after the Norman conquest in the eleventh century: blacks from Ifrīḳiya formed part of the abbey’s Muslim labour force; see H. Bercher, A. Courteaux and J. Mouton, 1979.
84. H. Djaït, M. Talbi, F. Dachraoui, A. Bouib and M. A. M’Rabet (n.d.), p. 57 think that links with black Africa are still in the realm of hypothesis. M. Talbi, 1966, p. 173, considers that the high level of activity in Ifrīḳiya in the tenth and eleventh centuries referred to in letters from Jewish merchants studied by S. D. Goitein suggests that the same level of activity already existed in the ninth century. This postulates the importation of African gold.
85. See p. 386 below.
86. The bibliography is mainly in J. Devissse, 1970, p. 124.
Trade and trade routes in West Africa

hypothesis still greater credibility. Thus Tâher became one of the main keys to the first regular trans-Saharan links known to us. These links were with Gao, not with Ghana, and it would be reasonable to wonder whether the traders of Tâhert did not try to supply Gao with the salt that its princes stockpiled and resold. Lastly, we must remember that the imām of Tâhert entered into a matrimonial alliance with the Midrārites of Sidjilmaṣa in the hope of securing a share in the growing trade of the western route.

Thus for the eighth and ninth centuries, until or unless better documentation becomes available to research workers, in particular by excavating at Sidjilmaṣa and Tâhert, we are for the present reduced to hypotheses about the establishment of what were to be the great northern termini of the trans-Saharan trade (Tamdūlt, Sidjilmaṣa, Tâhert, Wargla and the towns of the Djārīd) and the early organization of the trans-Saharan caravans.

Hence again, as in the case of the Egypt route, it must be pointed out at once that all the parameters of the problem change with the descriptions of Ibn Ḥawḳal, who refers to a situation in the middle of the tenth century, and also with that of al-Bakrī, who through his many borrowings from the tenth-century author al-Warrāḳ also sometimes speaks of the situation in that century. Everything leads us to assume that the crucial events that led to a regular trans-Saharan trade took place in this century, or during the period from 850 to 950.

What trade, in search of what goods?

Seen from the eighth century, the preceding 2000 years had increased the geographical difficulties of communication between the two areas just considered: but, as a counter to this, an invaluable means of crossing the desert, the camel, had been available in this area for some centuries.

But an essential link was missing: what was there to be obtained on the other side of the desert? For the south, the answer is probably very little! The needs of a very different diet from that of the Mediterranean, both in products consumed and in their balance, were certainly better met by the adjacent south than from the trans-Saharan north. Salt, while not plentiful, was no doubt in relatively good supply thanks to the number of production techniques and of collection and manufacturing points. We must probably not let ourselves be misled by the Arabic sources after Ibn Ḥawḳal; these give the impression that Sahelian Africa was completely without salt and at the mercy of the merchants from the north to supply this product.

In fact, while not denying the huge disparity between the price of salt imported from the north91 and that current on the Mediterranean, there are some nuances to be made. Ibn Ḥawḳal, al-Bakrī and al-Idrīsī all report that Awlīl continued to produce and export salt. According to Ibn Ḥawḳal

91. J. Devisse, 1970, pp. 111 et seq., with the nuances introduced here.
it was the main mine south of the Sahara. Al-Bakrī described life in the salt-producing area, where turtles were eaten on a part of the coast that also supplied ambergris. Al-Idrīsī shows that the mine still played an important regional role and that its output, carried by boat on 'the Nile', reached the whole of the Bilād al-Sūdān. Everything in the accounts of Ibn Ḥawkāl and subsequent authors goes to show that the traders from the north, initially customers of Awliīl, and obliged, on leaving this mine, to go through Awdāghust (remarkably situated at a good water-supply point between the coast and the Niger Valley), gradually discovered a way of shortening such a route by using reserves of salt placed on the north–south route in the middle of the Sahara. They thus found a way to put increased pressure on the salt market in the south, and through the examples of Ghana and Awdāghust intensified the impression of an unsatisfied demand; whereas in fact increasing pressure was put on the sale of a product whose extraction and transportation were a monopoly. But the history of the production and consumption of salt in the savanna and the forest has still to be written, and this output probably escaped the pressure from the north. The south did not need more copper (contrary to the opinion held twenty years ago) or iron, which was already produced in a scattered but adequate way. What demand there was thus came more from the north than from the south.

As regards West Africa and our period, the demand for slaves has probably been greatly exaggerated. Claude Cahen has pointed out that the value of long-distance trade, according to Arabic sources of the ninth and tenth centuries, could be very clearly assessed in terms of real profit margins, taking account of the seriousness of the risks run. He also pointed out that the slave trade does not in general seem to have been a source of big profits. But the importation of slaves, says Cahen, was indispensable, for 'the general economic boom ... demanded and allowed the employment of a growing labour force, which was most easily obtained through the slave trade.' The traffic in slaves thus represented a definite flow, but probably not the main economic driving force; and hence it does not explain trans-Saharan trade. The annual demand was probably limited and better

92. Ibn Ḥawkāl, 1964, p. 91; he seems in fact to know no other.
94. ibid., p. 155.
95. ibid., p. 407.
97. ibid., p. 341: very high prices were the exception; in general selling prices were between 30 and 60 dinars.
98. ibid.
99. The example of the bakt between Nubia and Egypt gives food for thought: five hundred slaves at the most were handed over at Aswān each year in exchange for goods which the Nubian court needed.
organized in the north-east quadrant of the continent than in the north-west.

According to the evidence, the north was not in need of food: the distance, and the disparity in staple foods, suggest that people did not cross the Sahara for millet, kola (which only appeared in the north after the thirteenth century) or pepper which the Arab merchants were to fetch from Asia; African 'peppers' being marketed on a small scale only much later. Similarly there is nothing to suggest that people came south for indigo-dyed fabrics: besides, there is no evidence that they were produced on a large scale before the eleventh century.\(^{100}\)

We are thus irresistibly thrown back on the product of which all the Arab authors speak and to which all the historians have paid attention: gold. An enormous amount—both good and bad—has been written on this subject. Our concern here is not archaeological or ethnological but above all economic: namely to determine when, under what conditions and for what purposes the demand for gold in the north led to the organization of regular trade with the Sahel.

The Muslim world, a major consumer of gold, especially after the reforms at the end of the seventh century, behaved in relation to its fringes as an enormous zone of demand. In this period gold was much more likely to have come from Asia, Nubia or from the recycling of Pharaonic treasures than from West Africa or from what is now Zimbabwe.\(^{101}\) The Muslim west, except (as we have seen) for Ifrikiya under the Aghlabids, did not mint gold before the tenth century.\(^{102}\) But, from then on, it became a major consumer of gold for coinage. It is also from then on (and this is of course no coincidence) that information about African gold production—coming, moreover, from Western authors for the first time—became (at least relatively) less mythological and more geographically accurate.

A lengthy digression is in order at this point. All the Muslim theorists of coinage drew a fundamental distinction between crude, unrefined gold and silver and these metals once they were struck into coins. At Mecca, just before the *hidjra*, crude gold was called *tibr* and minted gold *'ayn*.\(^{103}\) In a

---

\(^{100}\) All the foregoing is very likely as regards the links between North Africa and the *Bilād al-Sūdān*. A distinction should probably already be made for Tripolitania: the fact that Ibn Ḥawkal speaks of the production and export of woollen fabrics at Adjadābiya (Ibn Ḥawkal, 1964, p. 63) raises the question of the possible rôle of Kawār alum, in terms similar to those appositely used by D. Lange and S. Berthoud, 1977.

\(^{101}\) There is a vast and tedious bibliography on these questions. Among recent work it is worth consulting: C. Cahen, 1979, 1980. It should be pointed out here that R. Summers, 1969 considers that the mining of southern gold started in the sixth century, that it was already developed by the eighth century, and that it supported a large annual export trade from the tenth century on. Nobody has so far built up from these data an overall economic study of the marketing of southern gold, like the one that many of us have carried out for West African gold.

\(^{102}\) Most recently; C. Cahen, 1979.

\(^{103}\) G. P. Hennequin, 1972, pp. 7–8, note 5.
fairly recent article R. Brunschwig draws the same distinction between tibr or sābika (ingot) and dinars. This simple fact dictates caution about translating the word tibr as 'gold dust'. The summary of the occurrence of tibr and dhahab in the sources translated by Cuoq seems worthy of comment.

For the earliest authors, al-Fazārī and Ibn al-Fakīh, dhahab denotes gold, including that 'which grows like carrots'. In view of the great importance generally attached to al-Bakrī's text on this point, we asked a young Tunisian research worker, an Arabist and a very good linguist, for as exact a translation as possible. Here it is:

If a lump of gold is found in any of the mines of his country, the king picks out the best, but he leaves the scraps of crude gold for the people. Otherwise pure gold in the hands of the people would become too plentiful, so that its value would drop. The lump weighs anything from one ākīya to one rāṭl. It is reported that he has one at home like an enormous pebble.

This translation brings a new solution to the interpretation of the pair tibr–dhahab. In all the books he consulted Ghali found the meaning of tibr as given above: native gold, not minted, not worked, perhaps as specks or dust; in every case, gold in the rough state as opposed to worked gold (dhahab). Conversely dhahab in every case implies a refining process, designed to obtain the purest metal, whether gold or silver. Therefore the

106. ibid., pp. 42, 54.
107. Later, in the fourteenth century, al-'Umarī says that the roots of the nadjīl are tibr (J. M. Cuoq, p. 273), even though a little further on he speaks of the extraction of dhahab (J. M. Cuoq, p. 280).
108. This was Mr Nouredine Ghali, who is studying for a doctorate in history.
109. The Arabic word nadra suggests rarity: Ghali stresses that it refers to a lump of pure gold mixed with the ore.
110. The Arabic word astasfa suggests the idea of 'creaming off' or 'taking the best'.
111. Arabic, al-tibra dākīka. For tibr, see al-Mundjid fi'l-lughat wa'l-adab wa'l-ulūm (Beirut, 1975), p. 58c which gives: 'gold not minted or worked, in its matrix'.
112. In this case the Arabic word used is al-dhahab, which is thus clearly distinguished from the preceding term.
113. Elsewhere this passage is translated as follows: V. Monteil, 1968, p. 73: 'If native gold is found in any mine in the kingdom, the king appropriates it: he leaves only the gold dust for his subjects ...' J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 101: 'If gold nuggets are found in the mines of the country, the king keeps them for himself; the gold dust he then leaves for his subjects ...'
115. Mr Ghali provided me with a quotation – without indication of author – from al-Mundjid fi'l-lughat wa'l-adab wa'l-ulūm pp. 239c, 240a: 'he found the dhahab in his ore; he was amazed, as though he were going mad'.
distinction between unworked gold and the 'core of pure metal' cleared of its matrix seems to us quite adequate for an understanding of al-Bakri's text. A little further on in his text, al-Bakri writes that the Naghmârata trade in tibr. There is only one possible explanation for this contradiction: namely that tibr, left for private individuals, may have been marketed by specialist merchants, the Naghmârata (ancestors of the Wangara?), operating outside the sovereign's control. But then what is to be made of al-Bakri's own explanation to the effect that the sovereign regulated the circulation of gold by keeping the nuggets, so that the metal did not depreciate through overabundance? Are we to suppose that inconsistency in economic matters was normal in Ghana? We do not believe it. The traditional distinction between nuggets and dust does not hold water. The real distinction is a different one: 'pure' gold, which by definition the ruler set aside for himself and which was intended for coinage, was dhahab. How else could an eleventh-century Andalusian, brought up in Arab culture, express himself? Tibr was 'native' gold, also of very high quality, marketed outside the channels controlled by the ruler.

A century later, al-Idrîsî, who was extremely well informed (contrary to what has often been written about him), provided fresh details. According to his account, merchants from the north took gold (tibr) from Takrûr and the Wangara supplied gold (tibr) which was then minted at Wargla. His text leaves no doubt: the Wangara could not operate without being controlled by the sovereign of Ghana.

It seems to us that to draw a diametrical opposition between 'nuggets' as the translation of dhahab and 'gold dust' as the translation of tibr has greatly impoverished the discussion; the distinction between untreated gold and minted gold leaves it more open. The debate can no doubt only be definitely resolved by card-indexing and systematically translating all the usages of both words. Meanwhile, we should like to suggest that other hypotheses might help to solve this problem.

Lastly, the word dhahab is little used in the Arabic sources about West Africa. Though found in the eighth and tenth centuries, it hardly occurs at all after al-Bakri except in two fourteenth-century sources. By contrast the continuity in the use of the word tibr is remarkable. Ibn Khal-

---

117. ibid., p. 101.
118. See T. Lewicki, 1966, a well-documented study.
119. J. M. Cuoq, p. 129.
120. ibid., p. 164.
121. Al-'Umârî (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, pp. 264, 265) is in the last resort not much clearer than al-Bakrî: the sultan, he says, has under him the country of the refuge of gold (tibr), but if he conquered one of the towns of gold (dhahab) (p. 265), production would stop. The distinction becomes clear if we accept that dhahab really refers to 'the government's gold'.
122. Al-Mas'ûdî (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 62); Ibn Hawkal (J. M. Cuoq, p. 75); al-Bakrî (J. M. Cuoq, p. 84, p. 101, p. 102); al-Idrîsî (J. M. Cuoq, pp. 129–64); Abû Ḥamîd al-Gharnâtî (J. M. Cuoq, p. 169) and so on, until the end of the fifteenth century.
dün\textsuperscript{123} and then Ibn Ḥadjar al-ʿAskalānī\textsuperscript{124} perhaps provide a partial answer, especially the latter who states that \textit{tibr} meant untreated gold.

From now on we for our part have no hesitation in replacing the pair ‘dust–nugget’ with the pair ‘untreated gold–refined or worked gold’, which is a much more important distinction for economic history.

If we go a step further we may be able to understand why in the context of the \textit{Bilād al-Șūdān} the word \textit{dhahab} was gradually given up in favour of \textit{tibr}. \textit{Tibr} has in the long term probably denoted West African gold, in whatever form it was received (specks, dust, nuggets or ingots) and regardless of its socio-economic origins, as a specific quality of gold pure enough even without refining to be used directly for coinage. It did not need ‘purification’ because it contained few impurities and was unalloyed. In fact laboratory research\textsuperscript{125} has shown that this gold contains silver and a small percentage of copper.\textsuperscript{126} Indeed, R. A. K. Messier aims to use this small percentage of copper to identify, among the dinars he has studied, those which were struck from West African gold.\textsuperscript{127} The laboratory analyses we are now carrying out on gold from Falémé and certain Almoravid dinars\textsuperscript{128} confirm Messier’s findings and add slightly to their precision: we find percentages of silver comparable to those he has published, but also small but characteristic traces of platinum which he does not mention.\textsuperscript{129}

This semantic problem with a bearing on economics is obviously complicated; one day it will have to be definitively cleared up.

If (as we think) \textit{tibr} indeed denotes (at least from the eleventh century onwards) the quality of West African gold that could be used without refining or alloying for minting coinage, this would explain both why al-Bakrī says this gold is the best in the world and also people’s keenness to obtain it. A recent survey in the archives of Genoa confirms that after the fourteenth century the Genoese also tended to use \textit{tibr} to denote a quality of gold.\textsuperscript{130}

The Arab sources attest that gold existed in wrought form in West Africa; but apparently those in power south of the Sahara, whether Muslim

\textsuperscript{123} J. M. Cuoq, pp. 347 et seq.
\textsuperscript{124} ibid., p. 394.
\textsuperscript{125} R. A. K. Messier, 1974.
\textsuperscript{126} During the excavations at Tegdaoust we found in a ninth-century stratum a fragment of crucible enclosing a little lump of gold. This lump was encased in copper oxide.
\textsuperscript{127} R. A. K. Messier, 1974, p. 37: there is less than 1.5 per cent of copper in this gold, which for the author rules out the possibility that it was added through alloying.
\textsuperscript{128} These studies will be published shortly by the Institut Mauritanien de la Recherche Scientifique.
\textsuperscript{129} I am indebted for this information to Mr S. Robert, Research Attaché at the Institut Mauritanien de la Recherche Scientifique.
\textsuperscript{130} J. A. Cancellieri, 1982. The author writes (p. 14) that neither the older term \textit{paliola} nor, after 1400, \textit{tibar} specifically denote gold dust; on p. 16 he concludes that this is unrefined 21-carat gold, and on p. 20 says of \textit{tibr} that it is crude gold, that has not had its fineness improved.
or not, never, even after 1050, turned this gold into coins. To this day no trace of a die or mint has been found south of the desert. The fact leads us to ask some essential questions in the field of economic history. Given the way this gold was produced from thousands of widely separated shafts, would the direct use of gold for coinage have been feasible in the south? Would not this gold, even struck into coins weighing 4 gm, have had far too much purchasing power for the type of local trade (as was also the case at the same period for the transactions of Mediterranean societies)? 131

According to Muslim jurists, however, the use of wrought gold or ingots was legal for all types of transactions in both the south and the north. The Muslim theorists laid it down that there should be no difference in exchange between dinars from different mints - except for obviously debased coinage - or between dinars and gold ingots. 132 Wrought gold, if of good quality, was of course covered by this system of exchange control.

In the north, especially from the tenth century onwards, the minting of coinage by the authorities became the rule. 133 This was the result partly of growing aspirations to territorial hegemony by the Western Muslim powers, and the progress of their administration, and partly of the general economic situation of the West as a whole. Trade appeared in response to the annual currency requirement at the behest of the gold-minting dynasties in North Africa and then in Spain (the Aghlabid governors of Ifrikiya in the ninth century; the Fāṭīmids of Ifrikiya in the tenth century; the Umayyads of Spain in the tenth century; the Fāṭīmids of Egypt after 970; the Zirids of Ifrikiya, and then the Almoravids. But of course it was especially when the Fāṭīmids, the Umayyads and then the Almoravids undertook coinage on a scale unprecedented in the Muslim West that the vitality of the trans-Saharan trade became apparent.

Who were the intermediaries between the scattered production of tibr in the south and its increasingly well-organized consumers in the north? The Arabic sources present things as a matter of course: Ghana took on the task. But we are told nothing about the historical steps that led to this; nothing about any middlemen - merchants are probably not mentioned until the tenth century - between the miners and other merchants.

Attempts have recently been made to assess the annual minting capacity

132. G. P. Hennequin, 1972, p. 9, note 4: 'precious metals have almost always preserved their 'paramonetary' rôle as universally acceptable goods, in competition with minted coinage'. Hennequin goes on to write (p. 10) that: 'the minting of the metal makes it a monetary token, by giving it a sort of added value. This added value always exists, at least in qualitative terms'.
133. ibid., p. 9, does not hesitate to write: 'What brings money into being, in the sense in which we understand it, is action by the authorities', and in note 2 on p. 9: 'the fact that any monetary token is accepted without restriction for payments to the authorities is enough to guarantee its acceptance in private transactions, even if it does not necessarily lead to the immediate elimination of competing instruments and hence to a monopoly by the favoured token'.

387
in Umayyad Spain. Such estimates should of course be treated with caution. The fact remains that in 1009–10, a year of heavy minting,\(^134\) 40 000 dinars were struck, using about 160 kg of gold. Such a figure bears little relation to the derisory number of specimens now preserved in museum collections.\(^135\) The same author believes that the annual minting in Tulunid Egypt between 879–80 and 904–5 was not more than 100 000 dinars,\(^136\) or about 400 kg of gold. The annual minting requirement in the north cannot be accurately estimated on the basis of these two orders of magnitude. It may be supposed to have fluctuated around one tonne at the most, even allowing for rivalry and competition (by eliminating rivals, always operated to the advantage of a single beneficiary, the Aghlabids, the Fātimids, then the Umayyads, then the Zanāta and then the Almoravids; the case of the Zîrïds is far harder to analyse).

In any event, and even allowing for the needs of jewellery, the building-up of savings and annual losses of coinage, it is difficult to imagine that the tonnage imported annually could have been much over two tonnes, three at the most. These figures, perhaps make those put forward by Mauny in 1961\(^137\) seem a little high. Having set the average gold needs of the north from the tenth century onwards at three tonnes a year (an arbitrary figure, and certainly too high), we see that this is not an impossible task: it represents thirty to forty camel-loads. The obvious proliferation of travellers, and information from the Arabic sources, leave the impression that these figures are much too modest and that the caravans contained more camels, at least on the outward journey, and grew in number every day. Here we see the full difficulty of quantitative history for these early periods.\(^138\) In any case, we now have the serious problem of the obvious physical imbalance between the weight of the material to be brought across the desert from the north (and hence the number of camels on the outward journey) and the much smaller weight on the return journey. What became of the redundant camels? Were they eaten, or sold in the Sahel, in which case their numbers must have rapidly increased? Another piece of research still to be carried out.

Whether we adopt our suggested 'floor' figure of about three tonnes or R. Mauny's figures, these weights (derisory in present-day economic

\(^{134}\) A. S. Ehrenkreutz, 1977, p. 270.

\(^{135}\) There are innumerable reasons why coins disappear; see P. Grierson, 1975.

\(^{136}\) See J. Devisse, 1970.

\(^{137}\) Estimated annual exportable production at: Buré: 4 tonnes; Galam: 500 kg; Poura Lobi: 200 kg; Gold Coast and Ivory Coast: 4 tonnes; Kpelle, Sierra Leone: 300 kg (R. Mauny, 1961, pp. 310–22). It is true that these estimates rested on present-day production figures. A recent study by Mr Kiethega takes the view that production in the Poura area of Burkina Faso between the sixteenth and the nineteenth century probably never exceeded 50 kg a year on average (J. B. Kiethega, 1983).

\(^{138}\) Be it noted also that even if we keep a figure close to R. Mauny's, i.e. about 6–7 tonnes a year, this would still give only a small number of mounts going back to the north.
Trade and trade routes in West Africa

terms) require comment. The fact that they are so low explains not only the bitter rivalry for control of the routes and the extent to which their surveillance or the plundering of the caravans was necessary or profitable, but also the extent to which each of the northern termini for the circulation of this gold needed regular annual journeys by the Saharan caravans to maintain the credibility of its coinage (given that the Muslim West had no other major source of gold). Similarly we can now see why, when Mansa Kankū Mūsā much later brought about a ton of gold to Cairo, the gold price was upset. It would be childish to suppose that a flood of gold came out of West Africa every year.

We can also make very rough estimates of the work represented by this annual exportable output, plus perhaps the same amount of gold again consumed locally, if we remember that one shaft yielded between 2.5 gm and 5 gm of gold. Between 240,000 and 480,000 shafts thus had to be dug each year, which represents a considerable mobilization of labour. Even if we add on the output from gold-washing, the fact remains that this activity, which after all was seasonal, must have mobilized hundreds of thousands of people in West Africa each year once the demand was strong and regular.

When did the regular annual caravan trade supplying gold for the Muslim mints begin?

We can rule out the first half of the eighth century, which saw disturbances in the north, hesitant attempts to cross the desert, and raids that may have been spectacular but were quite ineffectual. On the other hand the possibility of regular trade arises seriously for the second half of the eighth century and the ninth century, when Sidjilmāsa was founded or developed, Tāhert was booming and Ibādite trade was developing. We cannot yet really answer the question, but it seems to us that this period could well have been that of the still hazardous and timid trading suggested by the texts of al- Ya'kūbī or even Ibn Ḥawkal. It may be worth mentioning here what the latter wrote, probably of a considerably more recent period, when he reported what a witness had told him: 'I have heard', he said, 'Tanbarūtān ibn Isfishār, who was then the prince of all the Šanhādjā, say that he had been governing this people for twenty years and every year was visited by groups he did not know . . . .'. The excavations at Ṭegdaoust, almost certainly the site of the ancient Awdāghust, have yielded valuable information on the very period, eighth to ninth centuries, about which so little is still known.139 Copper metallurgy has already been reported above: there are abundant remains: crucibles, cire perdue moulds, slag and small ingots. This does not imply trans-Saharan links, but it does imply trade140

140. The plethora of shells imported from the Atlantic coast (D. Robert, 1980, p. 209 and B. Saison, 1979) imply regular links with the coast. The possible use of copper from Akdjedjīt has been mentioned above.
and the sale of products. Gold was certainly produced: it necessarily came from the south. The presence of spindle whorls implies spinning and probably cotton, though we cannot say more for the moment, these objects being rare for this period. A type of local pottery with white-painted decoration, very characteristic of the eighth to ninth centuries, also raises interesting problems: it is somewhat reminiscent of similar ware from the Christian period in Nubia (Plate 14.1).

The objects imported from the north are of still greater interest: there are not yet many of them, but they are evidence of desert crossings. Precious and semi-precious stones (to be discussed more fully further on) and glazed pottery have already been found. Very careful examination as to


143. See B. Saison, 1979, e.g. pp. 348-9. It occurs in excavation reports, and was still being made in the tenth century. These pottery types are unlike those found at Jenne-Jeno (S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, p. 453) or at Kügha (quoted by ibid.).

provenance has not yet yielded absolutely positive conclusions, except in one case: some postsherds from the lower levels of the site come from Ifnikiya. Glassware, we also now know, crossed the Sahara.

Not finally identified as to provenance but definitely from the north, these precious ‘goods’ found at Tegdaoust are the result of a purchase, or more probably a barter transaction. The date of the levels at which they were found is undoubtedly earlier than 900. They are no doubt the first definite evidence of the existence of trans-Saharan links in the eighth and ninth centuries.

All the trends of the argument having been brought together, it is now time to show how matters probably developed between 900 and 1100 or thereabouts.

The development of trans-Saharan trade from 900 to 1100

The growth of currency needs: the Fāṭimids in Ifnikiya; Umayyad competition; the Almoravids

At the end of the seventh century, the Umayyad sovereigns in the east wished to give to the community whose caliphs they were a coinage both appropriate to the new religion and also economically strong. The Muslim world had for two centuries lived on the theoretical idea of an ideological unity of the coinage, struck in the name of the only acknowledged Caliph ruling in Damascus and then in Baghdad. Thus for a Muslim (as witnesses a sixteenth-century text by al-Maqrizi) the coinage, obviously an economic fact of life, was also the mark of a certain image of authority.

In the Muslim world, as in the Roman tradition, the minting of coins was a regal prerogative which the rulers enforced more or less strictly. This monopoly of minting coinage had nothing to do with the legal cur-


147. Muslim authors, especially from the tenth century onwards, constructed theories of the use of coinage. According to R. Brunschwig (1967, p. 114), who has made a close study of this question, one of the earliest, Ibn Miskawayh, writing in about 980, showed that communal life and the division of labour gave rise to the need for objects of reward, which were then used to pay for other work and objects and were accepted without question. It was essential for these objects to be fairly rare: gold was chosen for its permanence and ease of melting. Later, according to Brunschwig, 1967, Ibn Khaldūn stated that the function of coinage was to preserve wealth, and that it should circulate as a standard of value and not be kept as personal property. The Qur'an points in the same direction when it says (Sūra 9:34): ‘Those who treasure up gold and silver and do not expend them in the way of Allah will meet painful punishments’.

148. Some historians (G. P. Hennequin, 1972, p. 9) tend to consider that coinage only exists as the result of action by the authorities.

149. On these points, see P. Grierson, 1975, pp. 130 et seq.
rency of the coins minted, the tokens accepted in transactions still being a matter for agreement between the parties. It was obviously more convenient to use coins that inspired confidence by virtue of the integrity of their minting. The latter, a regal prerogative and purveyor of tokens for fiscal relationships between the ruler and his subjects, could thus also be accepted in an ideal case as a good referee for economic transactions. In such a case the coinage proclaimed the glory and integrity of him who ordered it and proclaimed on the faces of the coins the glory of God, his Prophet and the ruling dynasty.

A map (Fig. 14.3) of the gold mints just before the Fāṭimids seized power tells us much. There was one at Kayrawān in the hands of the Aḥlabids and one at Mīṣr-Fustāṭ controlled by the Ikhshīdids. Most of the gold was minted either by Syria/Palestine under the control of the Ikhshīdids or in the realms of the Abbasids. Neither Spain nor the north of the continent of Africa struck much gold during this period. Indeed, the Umayyads of Spain and the Idrīsids in what is now Morocco used local resources to strike silver dirhams. For the coinage of silver, another mint took on some importance (Fig. 14.4), namely Sidjilmāsa, the growth in whose economic rôle we have also seen: this mint certainly received southern gold, but did not mint it. The Fāṭimids' gold policy radically altered this state of affairs; the tenth century saw the opening of gold mints in parts of the Muslim world where there had not been any, under the strict supervision of the two rival dynasties, the Fāṭimids of Ifrīkiya and the Umayyads of Spain (Fig. 14.5). Rivals to the Abbasids in the East and proclaiming the decadence of that caliphate and their own intention of reunifying the Muslim world which the Abbasids had allowed to fall into decline, the Fāṭimids owed it to themselves ideologically to mint

150. There is much discussion among historians as to whether minting gave the metal used an actual added value or merely a psychological one (because of the confidence the coins inspired). In any case, every government whether in the West, Byzantium or the Muslim world sought to enforce its right to mint the metal of its choice. In this sense there was rivalry or even conflict between governments which had little direct connection with the real value of their coinage. See G. P. Hennequin, 1972, p. 10.

151. On the conditions, rules and forms of minting, see the very detailed study in P. Grierson, 1975.

152. M. Barcelo, 1979, p. 313. There was no minting of gold in Spain between 127/744–5 and 316/928, i.e. for 189 years. The minting of dinars was resumed in 928 (see J. Devisse, 1970, p. 148). An even more significant fact is that the few coins struck in Spain between 93/711–12 and 127/744–5 were struck on the Ifrīkiyan model; hence they gave al-Andalus no political or economic independence.


154. J. Devisse, 1970, 1979b. See Fig. 14.5. See also C. Vanacker, 1973, map No. 7.

FIG. 14.3 Gold mints on the eve of the Fāṭimid conquest
FIG. 14.4 Minting of dirhams in the Western Maghrib during the Idrīṣid period
FIG. 14.5 Minting of gold in the West Muslim world after 910
gold. They were the first in Islam to be so bold as to strike caliphal gold coins in competition with the hitherto acknowledged authority: and their coins were intended to demonstrate the power and glory of the new authority.\textsuperscript{156} This was no easy task. Though the Abbasid coinage was much weakened and its standard of fineness had become rather poor, the coinage of those who governed Egypt in the name of the Abbasids remained of a high standard of fineness.\textsuperscript{157} If a Fāṭimid gold coinage was to be imposed it would therefore need to inspire confidence at least equal to that of the Egyptians.\textsuperscript{158} The Fāṭimids' need for gold was obviously motivated by three factors, ideology, political realism and economic realism.\textsuperscript{159} Their coinage is thus unprecedentedly important for the history of African economic relations. It started an ideological war of currency in the Muslim West that was not to end with them.\textsuperscript{160}

Study of the Fāṭimid coinage shows that once the caliphs had overcome the grave difficulties of the mid-tenth century, they were at pains to mint coins with a high standard of fineness, and thus to build up both a reserve of precious metal and an international capital of credibility. This was an overall policy which merits closer study than it has so far received.\textsuperscript{161} After 953 and in particular after 975, dinars struck in the name of the Fāṭimids, whether at Sīdījīmāṣa or Mahdiyya were in demand by traders as far away as the East because of their exceptional quality.\textsuperscript{162}

Today, when so many data point in the same direction, we should not be surprised that the Fāṭimids sought to provide a plentiful supply of gold coinage, given a demand which they had themselves largely helped to

\textsuperscript{156} M. Canard, 1942-7.

\textsuperscript{157} On these points, recently the subject of very serious studies, see C. Cahen, 1965; A. S. Ehrenkreutz, 1963 (value of Aghlabid dinars, p. 250; value of Ikhshīdīd dinars, p. 257-8; and an important overall comparison of the standards of fineness of Eastern and Western coins, p. 264); A. S. Ehrenkreutz, 1959, had already shown (pp. 139 et seq.) the relative weakness of the Abbasid coinage: after the middle of the ninth century the standard of fineness sometimes dropped to 76 per cent, and few coins between 95 per cent and 99 per cent purity exist. On the other hand the Ikhshīdīd dinars examined (p. 153) are excellent: two contain 96 per cent gold; four, 97 per cent; twelve, 98 per cent; and ten, 99 per cent.

\textsuperscript{158} It must not be forgotten that until 969 Egypt was the Fāṭimids' continual political and strategic target.

\textsuperscript{159} As an importer of Sicilian grain (M. Brett, 1969, p. 348) and of costly Eastern produce from Egypt, Ifrīkiya, despite its exports, had a deficit on its balance of trade which necessitated the export of coinage (see S. D. Goitein, 1973).

\textsuperscript{160} See A. Launois, 1964, for the period up to the Almoravids inclusive, then K. Ben Romdhane, 1978, for the Almohad period.

\textsuperscript{161} A. S. Ehrenkreutz, 1963, shows the value of the dinars struck, especially after 953 (pp. 256-7). The table this author gives for dinars struck in Egypt after 969 is also very illuminating: many coins contain between 97 and 100 per cent gold (p. 259). Comparison with the Aghlabid coinage (p. 257) reveals concern to do at least as well as their predecessors. See also J. Dévisse, 1970. A few pages have been devoted to coinage by F. Dachraoui, 1981.

create and which was probably not primarily economic.¹⁶³ Nor should we be surprised at the pains taken by the Fātimids to organize the annual trans-Saharan gold trade on a quite unprecedented basis. I was already convinced that this was so in 1970¹⁶⁴ and the results of research at Tegdaoust have more than confirmed my conclusions at that time. Glass weights, all Fātimid (Plate 14.2) have been found, some of them in a stratigraphic position such that they have helped to date the site.¹⁶⁵ Their arrival coincides with the peak in the town’s importing activity and its most spectacular urban development. It is no surprise for us today to read what al-Muhallabi wrote in the last quarter of the tenth century, that is to say at a time when Fātimid supremacy was not yet manifestly challenged: the people of Awdāghust became Muslims in the time of the Mahdí ‘Ubayd Allāh.¹⁶⁶ We have no hesitation in saying today that though the Fātimids always had difficulty in making their way via Wargla and Tādmeida, the Ibadite route to black Africa, they made the Sidjilmāsa–Ghana route the main avenue to black African gold for at least two centuries and the supply line for their gold coinage and the building up of their war treasure.¹⁶⁷ Moreover, as long as they stayed in Ifnkiya, after the defeat of Abu Yazīd, they struck coins that inspired confidence in merchants.¹⁶⁸

But the bitter struggle waged by the third caliphate from Cordoba against Fātimid hegemony, the successes achieved by the Cordoban agents after the Fātimids’ departure for Egypt, the diversion of gold to Spain or at least to the western Maghrib and the transfer of the Sidjilmāsa mint to the Umayyads show that by the last decade of the tenth century at the latest, without any change in the annual demand for gold, the beneficiaries of this influx were no longer the Fātimids. Here again we must be on the look-out for information from excavations¹⁶⁹ or laboratory research. The

¹⁶³. It is as important to take account of the Fātimids’ ‘gold diplomacy’ as to consider the natural flow of the economy. This ‘gold diplomacy’ was directly ostentatious like the Egyptian ‘journey’ of 969 or channelled through their agents and customers. It was intended to proclaim of the glory of the dynasty, to which the Fātimids were so sensitive that they had their accredited propagandists. But their monetary policy in turn probably greatly intensified economic activity in Ifnkiya in the second half of the tenth century and at the beginning of the eleventh. See above, S. D. Goitein, 1967, 1973; M. Brett, 1969.


¹⁶⁵. On these glass tokens, see chapter by Launois and Devissé, in J. Devissé, D. Robert–Chaleix et al., 1983. There is much controversy about these glass weights, not those of our period but those that were made by the Fātimids of Egypt: see P. Balog, 1981 and M. L. Bates, 1981.

¹⁶⁶. J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 76.

¹⁶⁷. Because of them the road from Sidjilmāsa or Tamdūlī by various routes to the land of the blacks became far the best described by Ibn Ḥawḵal and al-Bakrī. We shall revert to this point later.


¹⁶⁹. Be it noted here that less than one-fifth of the uniformly built-up area (12 ha) has been excavated, and certainly less than two-thirds of the very historically significant complex of ruins around Noudacke.
last Fatimid weights so far found at Tegdaoust date at the latest to a little later than 1000; they may be earlier. R. Messier reports that the Fatimid dinars struck in Ifrikiya certainly seem to him to contain 'Sudanese gold', but that the same is no longer true of Fatimid dinars struck in Egypt.\textsuperscript{170} The author puts the date of the change at 1047, at the time of the break between the Zirids and the Fatimids. In his opinion 47 per cent of the dinars struck before then contained western gold, against only 24 per cent for the following period.\textsuperscript{171} We believe that the findings would probably be still more significant, even for the Zirids, if the chronological bar were put at about 1000. The point is that everything suggests that supplies of western gold to Ifrikiya stopped after 990, and that this radical change in

\textsuperscript{170} R. A. Messier, 1974, pp. 38–9; in Egypt they contain more copper than they should if it were 'Sudanese gold'.

\textsuperscript{171} ibid., 1974, p. 39.
the gold routes had consequences for Ifrīkiya indications of which reverberate through all S. D. Goitein's publications.\footnote{172}

The last ten years of the tenth century saw a radical change in western Muslim gold coinage, with the boom in Spanish coinage\footnote{173} and the beginning of an unprecedented awakening to international trade of the parts of West Africa closest to the Atlantic.

When, having taken over the title of Caliphate, Umayyad Spain also decided to mint gold, after 929, the coinage was none too good: it only really became of good quality after 987–8. In 988–9 dinars struck at Sidjilmâsa for the Umayyads appeared.\footnote{174} But the minting remained predominantly concentrated in the Cordobán mints, under the eye of the authorities.

To appreciate the 'world' importance of these phenomena, a brief detour into Christian Europe is called for. Although not very many gold coins from the Muslim world have so far been found in the West, research now enables us to have a somewhat clearer idea of the West's relationship to the gold coinage of Islam. C. Cahen has shown the importance throughout the West of the engraved coin without an effigy to which the Westerners gave the name of mancus (from the Arabic root nakasha, passive participle manküsh, 'engraved').\footnote{175}

It used to be thought that Christian Spain interested itself in dinars fairly late, in the eleventh and twelfth centuries,\footnote{176} but even then it was noted that Galicia wanted to have gold coins as early as the beginning of the ninth century, and the Asturians in the last quarter of that century. The Christians' aim was to lay hands on coins that would enable them to buy luxury goods from the Muslim south, the only possible supplier. P. Bonnassié's very fine recent work\footnote{177} takes us a good deal further. Gold coins from the south were known in Catalonia in 972: after 996 the references increase in number, and between 1010 and 1020 there was a veritable flood of gold. Between 1011 and 1020 53 per cent of property transactions were settled in gold coinage, as against 1 per cent between 971 and 980.\footnote{178} The references to mancus recorded by Bonnassié divide up as follows: 981–90: 78; 991–1000: 1071; 1001–10: 1220; 1011–20: 3153. The author notes that

\footnotetext[172]{S. D. Goitein, 1962, p. 570: much gold and silver was exported to Egypt; letters from Jewish merchants living in Tunisia speak of the decline of trade between 1030 and 1040, whereas letters at the beginning of the century were still speaking of prosperity. About 1040 a letter says that 'the whole of the West is henceforth worthless'; S. D. Goitein, 1966, pp. 308–28. On these points we cannot agree with M. Brett who continues to ascribe to the Hilālian invasion a 'catastrophic' importance for the economic life of Tunisia (M. Brett, 1969, p. 348). R. Messier also is against this view: 1974, p. 35.}

\footnotetext[173]{J. Dévisse, 1970, pp. 146 et seq.}

\footnotetext[174]{ibid., p. 148.}

\footnotetext[175]{C. Cahen, 1965, pp. 417–19; 1980.}

\footnotetext[176]{J. Gautier-Dalché, 1962.}

\footnotetext[177]{P. Bonnassié, 1975, pp. 372 et seq.}

\footnotetext[178]{ibid., p. 373.}
the abruptness of the phenomenon surprised people at the time. Bonnassié concludes that real gold coins were in circulation in Christian Catalonia in the final period of the Umayyads, and he, too, thinks that a lot of gold came from West Africa to provide for this coinage. In 1018, thanks to this influx of gold, the Catalans were in a position to strike their first gold coins since the ninth century. After 1020 the decline was rapid.

We only need to compare these results with those we put forward in 1970 to see a very clear chronological agreement. This leads the economic historian to two important conclusions. The first is that small though the quantities of gold imported were, it was immediately absorbed as coinage, and that this coinage circulated very quickly. There are reasons therefore for thinking that part of the African gold could, at least by the twelfth century, have passed into Western gold coins. The second conclusion is that the need for gold was so great that the 'frontiers' were then disturbingly permeable. All this throws even more light on the reasons for the bitter competition between western Muslim countries to obtain African gold.

The Umayyad episode was even shorter than the Fātimid, but it obviously kept up the pressure of heavy demand on African gold production and on the trans-Saharan traffic. The redes de taifas also struck a little gold, inefficiently and with difficulty. But the real relief came later with the Almoravids. We of course only need to deal here with the Almoravid coinage and economy to show that this last phase of our period was probably the most brilliant and the most important for the history of trans-Saharan links, though in many respects still the least known.

A look at a map of the places where the Almoravids struck gold (Fig. 14.6) at once shows major innovations. The eastern half of the Maghrib was quite without mints, and Tlemcen itself was only a marginal mint. On the other hand the territory of what is now Morocco, except for the Atlantic plains south of the Sābu, was well supplied. The termini of the trans-Saharan trade (Sijilmāsa, Aghmat and Nūl Lamta) struck gold, so did Fez and Marrakesh, the capitals, and Salā, a strategic town (Fig. 14.6). There were seven mints in the western Maghrib and fourteen in Spain, we are a long way from the concentration and supervision of the earlier periods.

179. ibid., p. 374. He gives a great wealth of detail. There are references to gold mancuses: in 1010 a Spanish counterweight (pensum) was obtained to weigh them (p. 376). The successive coinages of the masters of Cordoba can be identified (p. 378) and their respective values distinguished.
180. ibid., pp. 378 et seq.
181. ibid., p. 388.
182. P. Bonnassié, 1975, shows how the Catalans acquired this gold, and does not rule out the possibility that some of it went back to the south to pay for their purchases.
183. R. Messier, 1980: out of 1503 dinars studied, 663 came from Magribi mints, 214 from Sijilmāsa, 173 from Aghmat, 118 from Fez, 78 from Nūl, 67 from Marrakesh and 13 from Tlemcen; 840 came from the Spanish mints. These figures of course refer to specimens so far discovered and preserved, not to the total of examples struck in the period.
Fig. 14.6 Almoravid gold coinage: mints

*Mint
214 = Number of examples of dinars currently known which came from this mint.
unless we have to accept that the government was more in control and so could afford to let the mints be more scattered.

All the authors who have studied it conclude that the minting was certainly prolific. The most recent, R. Messier, notes that between 451/1058 and 488/1088 the minting took place in Africa before the conquest of al-Andalus, the earliest dinars being struck at Sidjilmāsā in 448/1056–7. To the series published by this author we must add six dinars found in Mauritania. Overall, mintage was especially prolific after 1100.

Going from the quantitative to the qualitative, still with R. Messier, we see, first, that the standard of fineness was lower than in the Fāṭimid period, the coins containing a certain amount of silver (sometimes over 10 per cent) and copper. There was considerable variation between one mintage and another, but the presence of gold, silver and copper leads Messier to think that this was Sudanese gold, particularly for the minting done at Sidjilmāsā and in the other Maghribi mints, Spanish dinars being in 51 per cent of cases of a different composition.

The abundance and regularity of the mintage, which was virtually unrivalled as far as Fāṭimid Egypt (then certainly deprived of Sudanese gold), made the Almoravid dinars (for the first time in Western Islam) an economically powerful currency even though it no longer attained the prestigious standards of fineness of the Fāṭimid coins. The West had insistently called for 'marabotins'; after 1070 the Fāṭimid world itself was keen to have Almoravid dinars.

To finish with these coinage problems it remains to ask ourselves some very difficult questions, to which there are at the moment no definite answers.

Was West African gold treated before being exported to the north? Al-Bakrī speaks of the refining of gold, but links this feature to the export of wire for filigree. As we have seen above, we are inclined to think that tibr underwent no refining — which would throw light on R. Messier’s analyses — and that it was used as it was in the mints. At the very most it was perhaps melted down in the south to make it easier to transport. At

184. ibid.
188. Egyptian dinars, subject to provisos that we cannot go into here, remained of excellent quality until the end of the eleventh century (A. S. Ehrenkreutz, 1963, p. 259). From then on they lost some of their value, which probably helped to revalue the Almoravid coinages.
190. S. D. Goitein, 1967, p. 235: a letter written from Mahdiyya in 1100 mentions great difficulty in obtaining gold, and speaks of the dispatch of 100 dinars struck at Aghmat in 1088; p. 236: the Jewish bankers of Fustat were more at home calculating in Almoravid dinars than in Fāṭimid dinars. See also other interesting accounts in S. D. Goitein, 1973.
Tegdaoust we found gold wire, drawn out on drawing stones which have also been discovered (Plate 14.3). It was obviously prepared for filigree work\textsuperscript{192} which seems to confirm al-Bakri’s statement. If the gold was melted down south of the Sahara, in what form was it finally exported? As small ingots, which were divided up on arrival to be made into coin blanks?\textsuperscript{193} Or could these blanks have been cut out before being exported to the north? The idea that ingots, or indeed blanks ready for minting, were exported is all the more appealing because there was no refining problem to speak of, and the gold could be used unrefined and unalloyed without too much concern about its standard of fineness. At Tegdaoust we found five half-ingots of gold, with other gold and silver pieces (Plates 14.4 and 14.5).\textsuperscript{194} The five half-ingots, sheared more or less down the middle, had been cast either in a sow channel in the sand or in an ingot mould. One of them has a small copper inclusion. Were these objects intended for goldsmithing locally,\textsuperscript{195} or to be divided into blanks for minting?\textsuperscript{196} Lastly, in addition to these finds there is the odd case of a gold disc weighing 1.75 gm with an irregular hammered surface.\textsuperscript{197}

These questions are still unanswered today. Other finds, laboratory work and future historical thought will no doubt settle them, along with many others.

Trade routes, gold routes and commercial contacts south of the desert

Apart from archaeological evidence, work on Saharan crossings is also assisted by Arabic written sources from the north, particularly from the tenth to the twelfth century. We have already shown how perfunctory Ibn Ḥawkāl’s geography of the \textit{Bilād al-Ṣūdān} still was. We now have to consider the major contributions of al-Bakri and al-Idrīsī. Let us not choose \textit{a priori} between them, but rather try to understand the concerns and the information that influenced them while they were writing.

\textsuperscript{192} Unpublished. To be published later. Reference TEG 66 MIV 43 and 44. One of these wires is 15.5 cm long.

\textsuperscript{193} On minting techniques see P. Grierson, 1975, pp. 139 \textit{et seq.}; indeed, this suggests these questions. G. P. Hennequin, 1972, p. 13, describes the minting operation thus: ‘only a given number of coins were cut out from a given weight of metal’.

\textsuperscript{194} TEG 66 MIV 26-27-28-47 and 48.

\textsuperscript{195} This treasure includes two rings, an earring and a necklace of gold beads.

\textsuperscript{196} Various kinds of measurement (in relation to the mītqal, to late tenth-century Fātimid dinars and to glass weights found at Tegdaoust) show that these ingots could on average yield between a minimum of 21 dinars and a maximum of 36 dinars. This is of course a purely hypothetical figure. In all, these five half-ingots would have produced between 100 and 150 dinars according to circumstances.

\textsuperscript{197} The weight does not correspond to any known subdivision of the dinar. Could it be the tray of a balance used in goldsmithing?
PLATE 14.3 (above) Tegdaoust/Awdaghust: gold wire drawn out on a drawing stone
PLATE 14.4 (below) Tegdaoust/Awdaghust: half-ingots of gold found on the site
Plate 14.5 Tegdaoust/Awdaghust: silver chain (probable date tenth–twelfth century) found during excavation. This object was unfortunately lost in a laboratory.
Al-Bakri has given a list of his informants, which has a logic of its own. In Fig. 14.7 we have set out seven main routes between the Bilād al-Sūdān and the world of the north nearly all derived from different informants. For route No. 1 two sources are quoted: one of al-Bakri’s masters, Ahmad ibn ‘Umar al-‘Udhri, who died at Almería in 1085, and the writer Muḥammad ibn Yūsuf al-Warrāk (904/5–973/4), a native of Spain, who knew Africa from Ifnkiya and was associated with Ibaḍite circles. Al-Bakri admits to borrowing from the latter his first report on Awdāghust. He was also supplied with information on Awdāghust, through al-Warrāk, by Abū Bakr Ahmad ibn Khallūf al-Fāsī and Abū Rustam, the latter being a native of Djabal Nafusa. Thus it is clear that al-Bakri’s contribution on Awdāghust was very well documented.

In fact, when we compare the information about route No. 1 with what al-Bakri says about route No. 2, we judge that the big differences are probably due to major discrepancies in his information. For route No. 7 the information about Tīrakkâ, six days’ journey from Rās al-Ma’, was supplied by ‘Abd al-Malik ibn Nakhkhās al-Gharfa, who also provided the material for the report on Bughrāt, on the Niger near Tīrakkâ, on the Ghana–Tādmecka route. Someone else, ‘Alī ‘Abd Allāh al-Makkī, gave the information on Sāma, four days from Ghana. Lastly, Mu‘min ibn Yūmar al-Hawwārī gave information about the route that ran from an uncertain point on the Mauritanian coast (where the boats wintered) to Nūl; he also spoke of the stretch from Aghmāt to Nūl.

Al-Bakri’s method of working is clear. He had no means of directly checking the information that he relied on: so he set it out one piece after another, with no way of cross-checking it as it came from his informants.

We ignore here the more easterly routes described by al-Bakri. One went from Djaddû or Adjadäbiya to Kānem via Zawīla (a major hub of the Saharan links) in fifty-four days; al-Bakri did not regard it as very important, which does not mean that it was not. This route was not ‘connected’ with the others, not even with the one that went from Ghadāmes to Tripoli via Djabal Nafusa in ten days, which itself was linked to Tādmecka, Gao and Ghana. Another one led in twenty days from Awdāghust to the oases of the Nile via Siwa, thus joining a Nilotic system that has been fully described.

201. T. Lewicki, 1965b, p. 11. On travelling conditions on this route see above, Chapter 11: peace was probably only established on it by force in 919.
203. ibid., p. 12.
204. ibid.
205. Al-Bakri, 1913, pp. 26 et seq.
206. ibid., pp. 27 et seq. At Zawīla, says al-Bakri, the country of the blacks begins.
207. ibid., pp. 340 et seq.
This sketch does not pretend to be a map.
It is faithful to the information given by the author, but does not attempt to represent it to scale or to show actual locations.
The numbers against the lines representing the links given by the author show the number of days' journey (unless otherwise stated).
The itineraries are graphically represented and numbered on the basis of al-Bakrī's descriptions.

Places where there were wells said to have been sunk by 'Abd al-Rahmān ibn Ḥabīb.

FIG. 14.7 Al-Bakrī's itineraries: western part
Reverting to the west, we find with the aid of a chart that al-Bakri's descriptions throw light on each other. Route No. 1 was the 'royal' route, on which details abound, from Tamdült to Awdâghust. There were not many links with Awdâghust: it was 15 days journey to Ghana and 110 days to Kayrawân, this latter detail being probably modelled on the more realistic estimate of 110 days for the stretch from Gao to Wargla via Tâdmecka. In a southward direction Awdâghust seems to have been a cul de sac. As for the routes from Sidjîlmâsa, on which al-Bakri was much less accurately informed – routes No. 2 on our chart – which passed further east in quest of salt from Tatintäl in particular, they ended not at Awdâghust but at Ghana. Oddly enough, according to al-Bakri, Awdâghust was linked neither to the towns on the Senegal River nor to Awîl: in both cases this seems unlikely, since it had special importance for the former, given that al-Bakri himself, elsewhere, already names Sîlî as Ghana's competitor in the gold trade. As for the stretch from Awîl to Nûl, its independence is due to that of the informant (route No. 6).

The Ghana system was much more complex and complete. It indicates that links with this town were very important, and that al-Bakri had plenty of information. But once again the edifice is modelled on the informants. In the south one route led to Ghiyärû. Historians are divided as to the location of the place-names quoted on our route No. 4. The fifth likewise feeds the flames of controversy: some say Kûgha was to the west, others much further east.

The Senegal area is described in route No. 3, but here again localizations and distances are vague. From Kalanbu, the last town mentioned, the route led to the 'south'. This was the home of the Zafku, in whom T. Lewicki proposes to recognize those whom Yakut later called the Zäfün and whom

208. ibid., pp. 296 et seq. On this route, see the complete geographical interpretation by S. Daveau, 1970, with map. To reach Sidjîlmâsa from Awdâghust it was necessary to pass through Tamdült; al-Bakri, 1913, p. 302. S. D. Goitein, 1967, p. 212, stresses that looking at the situation from Cairo, in the eleventh century caravans from West Africa passed through Sidjîlmâsa and Kayrawân; likewise S. D. Goitein, 1973, pp. 30, 50, 151, gives three eleventh- and twelfth-century texts which show that the route from the west went through Sidjîlmâsa.

209. Al-Bakri, 1913, p. 317: an important point is that he gives this information in a passage which indisputably dates from the eleventh century and was not supplied by al-Wârrak.

210. ibid., p. 303.

211. ibid., pp. 338 et seq.

212. Only al-Bakri gives this name.

213. Al-Bakri, 1913, p. 322.


215. On Samakanda (ibid., p. 334; the people, the Bakam who go naked), see R. Mauny, 1961, p. 126. The country of Gharantal on this itinerary remains unknown (al-Bakri, 1913, p. 332: a non-Muslim town where Muslims were well received).

216. Al-Bakri, 1913, pp. 324 et seq.; al-Bakri shows that Kûgha imported cowries, salt and copper.
he localized on the Kolombine, west of present-day Diara, and hence east of the towns mentioned by al-Bakrī. Lewicki even thinks that in the eleventh century this people played an important role in the gold trade to the north. Further ‘south’ were other ‘pagan’ peoples. In the case of routes Nos 3, 4 and 5 our knowledge suffers from the almost insurmountable drawback for critical work represented by the heterogeneity of the basic information that al-Bakrī used. Alas, he was neither the first nor the last to do so and in fact it is a miracle that without ever leaving Spain he has left us so much detail to evaluate and criticize. For all that, we must adopt the critical attitude to these sources that their very arrangement makes indispensable.

If we leave Ghana by the bundle of routes No. 7, we repeatedly run into further major difficulties of interpretation: it is noteworthy, for example, that the towns to the north, the east and the south are always said to be four days away from Ghana. What is interesting here is that the piecemeal stretch from Ghana to Gao (seventeen days) is too short, as though the author had been given only a small amount of rather poor information: also noteworthy is the indication ‘back to the north’ given to the description of the stretches to Wargla and the Djarīd, Ifrīkiya, Ghadāmes and Tripoli. Here there is no name of a direct informant but the accounts reproduced show that these routes were used at least until the Almoravid domination of the western stretch, and not only from south to north. This eastern network ‘from Ghana’ forms a coherent whole from its southern terminus to Kal’a of the Banū Ḥammād — hence the information dates from the eleventh century — and to its eastern terminus at Tripoli. There is a good chance that this account represents reliable information for the eleventh century, before the Almoravids. Al-Bakrī mentions a parallel route between Tāḍmekka and Ghadāmes to look for semi-precious stones; we shall see later that it is highly likely that this route can be completely identified.

Now according to al-Bakrī something was happening at Tāḍmekka that deserves our attention. The dinars used by the inhabitants, says al-Bakrī, were ‘of pure gold’ and they had the particular feature of being ‘bald’ (this is de Slane’s literal translation of the Arabic word sulā'). From the way al-Bakrī writes we may reasonably suppose that they were blanks prepared for export to the north that had not yet been imprinted: sulā’ in this

217. T. Lewicki, 1971a. Lewicki’s arguments are sound.
218. ibid., p. 506.
221. A wholly consistent delimitation of the area of Ifrīkiya by Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 49.
222. It is not surprising that the bundle of data about the links to the north from Gao should fall into a separate account: see al-Bakrī, 1913, pp. 324 et seg. Al-Bakrī names the specialist traders at Gao, the Buzurghāniyyūn.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

case is presumably the opposite of mankush, which we met earlier. Hence this was not minting but a preparatory stage; the mints were in the north.

Thus without detracting from the value of the texts in question we are inclined to adopt an attitude of discriminating and selective criticism, and to look more closely at the semiological quality of the information - in short to take the view that these sources, like all others, need to be checked against the findings of oral and archaeological investigations. Al-Idrīsī’s methods and aims and the information he gives are quite different from his predecessor’s. Al-Idrīsī is not content to give a rather empirical description from his ‘files’ of a set of routes that do not make up a coherent whole. He set out to describe Africa by reference to a rigid framework of climes (iklim) and their subdivisions. While he gives the lengths of stretches in days like his predecessor (sometimes taking them from him, sometimes from shared sources), he treats the information quite differently (Fig. 14.8).

As before, the eastern routes can be dealt with very quickly. First, with much exaggeration of the distances, al-Idrīsī studies, in the third section of the first clime, a set of land links from the Niger to the Nile across Kawār. This contains new information that calls for careful critical study. The third section of the second clime is similarly devoted to the description (still with highly overstated distances) of tracks in the central Sahara that emerge in the north via Ghadāmes: this system seems far more independent in relation to the Tādmekkā–Wargla route than in al-Bakrī’s descriptions. The description of the fourth section of the second clime, devoted to the Nilotic desert and the Nile, seems of little interest. What is striking, therefore, is the attention paid, in the twelfth century, to Niger–Nile and Niger–Chad links and the return to greater independence for the ‘Libyan’ route that ends up at Ghadāmes and Tripolitania. This would really be something new, if future research confirmed these observations.

Reverting to the first and second sections - and, exceptionally, to the third - of the first, second and third climes, comparisons with al-Bakrī become very interesting. The great meridian route singled out by al-Bakrī has disappeared. In the north, Sidjilmāsa has replaced Tamdułt; this is perhaps because of the continued obstacle to movement represented by the Barghawāṭa. Going southward, we now avoid Awdāghust and even Ghana. The big novelty is that we come directly to the towns on the Senegal River, despite considerable difficulties due to the crossing of Kamnūriyya or the Desert of Nīsar. These towns on the Senegal, where gold is found, are reached in about forty days. From Sillā or Takrūr to Sidjilmāsa took forty days; likewise from Awīl to Sidjilmāsa; and likewise from the Senegal to Sidjilmāsa via Kamnūriyya and Azūkī. It is true that in one case - a

224. On his methods, see the important study by T. Lewicki, 1966.
225. See Fig. 14.8.
This sketch does not pretend to be a map. It is faithful to the information given by the author, but does not attempt to represent it to scale or to show actual locations. The numbers against the lines representing the links given by the author show the number of days' journey (unless otherwise stated).

1 day = approx. 30 km in humid areas

FIG. 14.8 Al-Idrisi's itineraries: western part
copyist's mistake, or just a mistake – the way via Azuķi is longer, and that it takes fifty-two days in all from the Senegal to the north: here we are coming closer to Ibn Hawkal's earlier estimates. So from now it is taken for granted that there was a route from Sidjilmāsa to the Senegal River via Azuķi.

Al-Idrīsī pushes Awdāghust far to the east: one month's journey from Awīlīl. Links with it are much less important than a century or two earlier. Though obviously less important economically than the market towns on the Senegal, the town maintained some links which must not be lost sight of. Al-Idrīsī says that Awdāghust was twelve days away from Ghana, and also from Barīsā, which also gave access to trade with the south.

Let us consider for a moment the transliteration of this last name. Barīsā is a reconstruction, but others may be suggested, e.g. Bur. y. sī. It is interesting to note that in Arabic script this other transliteration is not all that different from the Y. r. s. nī found in al-Bakrī. Moreover exactly the same thing applies to Gh. r. n. t. l (al-Bakrī) and Gh. rbīl (al-Idrīsī). The problem may be partly simplified for us insofar as it is legitimate in both cases to equate the places mentioned by both authors, two by two, give or take some nuances of handwriting.

Al-Idrīsī's Barīsā – or Bur. y. sī – like al-Bakrī's Y. r. s. nī – was an important southern location; it was the advance-post for contact with the 'Lamlam' and the Malal. But al-Idrīsī is more precise in his description than his predecessor. Barīsā is also linked, still in twelve days (there must be something odd about this),227 to the Senegal River system via Takrūr. Barīsā thus becomes a link in both the more northerly systems, via the towns on the Senegal and via Awdāghust and Ghana. Al-Bakrī, by contrast, was less precise about the rôle played by Y. r. s. nī.228 But also, looking at things from south to north, from Barīsā, Takrūr's domination of the middle Senegal Valley and its hold over the gold trade take on a new aspect, and bring out the changes in equilibrium that had come about over the course of a century in the organization of gold exports.

The Ghana system, which is shifted in its entirety to the second section of the first clime, is both more confused in detail (as though quite contradictory information had come to swell the 'files' of material) and also more realistic as regards distances. But there is inaccuracy in the data for links with the east, to Gao and even to the Niger Bend; from Ghana to the north-east or vice versa, it was thirty days to Wargla (without bothering with the staging post at Tādmekkā) and thirty-eight days to Ghadāmes.

227. Arab cartographers are known to have been fond of such constructions. This should arouse critical scepticism or rejection. There are other examples: Ghana-Ghiyārū–Gharbīl are all eleven days apart, and Tīrakkā, Samakanda–Ghana all six days apart. Other examples may certainly be found; they have probably been a source of major error.

228. Nevertheless he says (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 103), 'From the country of Y.r.s.nī, 'adjam Südān called Banū Naghmārāta get tibr and trade in it'.

412
Trade and trade routes in West Africa

According to al-Idrîsî, the whole of this second section of the first clime, including the Wankàra and the towns of the Niger Bend as far as Tîrîkâ, was under the domination of Ghana.²²⁹

We may therefore venture the hypothesis that there were now two major systems competing in the search for gold. One was centred on the towns on the Senegal, and emerged, via Azukî,²³⁰ at Sidjîlmàsà. It does not need much effort to see in this the direct reflection of Almoravid ascendancy, and even of the policy of the Almoravids, who were allied with Takrûr. The other system, commanding the countries of the Niger, was dominated by Ghana and more closely linked to Wargla than in the past.²³¹

Is this an authentic, lasting picture of what had happened since the tenth century or a fleeting glimpse of a brief moment? Have we not here a geography that in the last resort is more ideological than economic, which it would be unwise to trust blindly?²³²

Al-Idrîsî's itineraries, which differ from his predecessor's for the whole of the Sahara area, and quite significantly so, do not constitute the new and decisive material that might have been expected, after two centuries of links, for the areas south of the Senegal and Niger. There are plenty of possible explanations for this, the most probable being that the blacks did not let the merchants from the north travel about much²³³ and that conversion to Islam, which was genuine and widespread in the bend of the Senegal and at Gao at the end of the eleventh century, was still hesitant further south. In any case al-Idrîsî should not be relied on any more than one should rely on his predecessors for a detailed account of the life of the blacks south of the rivers.²³⁴ Once again semiology is important and the

²²⁹. Al-Idrîsî reports on the opulence of the Muslim town, where wealthy traders live (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 133).

²³⁰. It may be thought surprising that Azuki is mentioned (rightly, given the importance this town took on after the Almoravid conquest) and that nothing is said about e.g. Tabelbalet, an oasis at this time probably had facilities for trade with the north (D. Champault, 1969, pp. 23 et seq.). It is also true that Azuki is described by al-Idrîsî as a prosperous but small town (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 164).


²³². One example, anyway, suggests caution. There is no assessment of the Sidjîlmàsà-Ghana stretch, but al-Idrîsî (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, pp. 129, 149) gives a long description of the Madjaba of Nîsar which took fourteen days to cross without finding water: it is a country where the wind blows the sand about. Similarly when describing Azuki, al-Idrîsî (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 164) says that it is a stage on the way to Silà, Takrûr or Ghana.

²³³. The pains taken by al-Idrîsî, as indeed by al-Bakri before him, to report which are the towns where the merchants from the north were well received, suggests that this information was crucially important.

²³⁴. But as we shall see, some new information on the states of the Takrûr, for example, crossed the desert: and some new notes are appearing on towns that were still 'pagan' such as Mallal.
same credence should not be given to repeated information (even if expanded) about the more southerly regions as is given to fresh information about the Sahara crossings.

The siting of trading centres, as we have seen from the start, was closely linked with rainfall; there had to be enough water for the beasts of burden and all the activities of several thousand men. Unfortunately, our knowledge of the development of the environment in the Sahel zone is still very rudimentary. But archaeology raises a whole host of questions (Fig. 14.9). We should like to know all about Sidjilmasa; unfortunately as things are at present we must be content with written sources, which contribute next to nothing about trans-Saharan trade. The same is true of Aghmāt. We have a little more information about Tamdült, thanks to B. Rosenberger.235 T. Lewicki has given us a highly scientific account of Wargla’s links with all parts of West and Central Africa;236 this shows that we know little about the town’s activity before the eleventh century, when it had links with Sidjilmasa,237 Tādmecka, Ghana and the gold country.238 To the north it had trading contacts with the Djarīd and with the Kal’a of the Banū Hammād; Wargla probably also had caravan links with the Lake Chad area. For the present, we know no more about Ghdāmēs than the texts tell us, which is very little.239 Where trans-Saharan links are concerned, archaeological research in the northern part of Africa has unfortunately yielded as little for the tenth and eleventh centuries as for the preceding two centuries.

Happily, things are better on the other side of the desert. For Azukī we now know that the site saw two major occupations: one between the tenth and twelfth centuries and the other between the fifteenth and seventeenth centuries.240 Work in progress suggests that the Almoravid capital mentioned in the texts is going to yield interesting information.

For Awdāghust the results obtained bring out the fact that in the tenth and eleventh centuries the site was a big town. Industrial activity started there in a non-urban setting as early as the eighth to ninth centuries. In the ninth and tenth centuries, fairly quickly but, as the continuity of the local output of pottery shows, without fundamental cultural change the place began to look like a town, with streets, squares, a mosque, private-enterprise building and the growth of luxury, at any rate in the districts where the merchants from the Maghrib lived. All the excavators have noticed a break in the life of the town in the middle of the eleventh century but it

235. B. Rosenberger, 1970a, p. 79.
237. ibid., p. 16.
238. ibid., pp. 42–3: in the tenth century an Ibadite from the Djarīd went to Ghana and from there to Ghyārā (identifiable as Ghiyārū); he found the inhabitants of this place going naked, and died in this town (pp. 51–2: discussion about the location of Ghiyārū).
239. Work on this subject is being done by N. Ghali at Université de Paris I.
240. B. Saison, 1981.
FIG. 14.9 Sites of trans-Saharan trade, ninth to eleventh centuries
resumed a different but distinctive way of life after that date.\textsuperscript{241} The above datings are confirmed by carbon-14 datings, the glass weights found and the analysis of imported objects. Awdâghust was a town of several thousand inhabitants, very busy in the tenth and eleventh centuries and undoubtedly struck by a disaster in the middle of the latter century. The main reasons for its decline lie outside our chronological framework and present scope.\textsuperscript{242}

The excavations at Ghana (Kumbi Saleh) have made it possible there also to measure the long occupancy of the site. Occupations from the eighth to the fifteenth centuries\textsuperscript{243} are in layers one above the other to a thickness of more than seven metres and a very important mosque has gradually been uncovered and preserved. The royal capital of which al-Bakrî speaks has not yet been found. Only a very few objects imported from the north have so far been found; but signs of links with Awdâghust are indisputable.

Sintiu-Bara is situated in a historical area of considerable interest,\textsuperscript{244} where a great many traces of early urban life have been found.\textsuperscript{245} The work done so far does not enable us to connect this site with those mentioned by al-Bakrî and al-Idrîsî. Traces of local metal-working going back to the fifth and sixth centuries have been found there, and also many traces of high-quality pottery.\textsuperscript{246} Hence we should bear in mind what al-Idrîsî said about Takrûr and Barîsâ, where contacts were made with the merchants from the north: we know what that means from our experience at Tegdaoust, and the discovery of glazed sherds at Sintiu-Bara shows that waiting will not be in vain.\textsuperscript{247}

Niani had a more brilliant life in the following period; for the period which concerns us there are no definite traces of links with the trans-Saharan circuits.\textsuperscript{248} Nevertheless, the fact that the town certainly existed and probably traded produce with the neighbouring areas makes one wonder about its possible identification with the Mallal of which al-Bakrî speaks.

\textsuperscript{241} The information is collected together and developed in C. Vanacker, 1979; J. Devissé, D. Robert-Chaleix \textit{et al.}, 1983; J. Polet, forthcoming; D. Robert-Chaleix, forthcoming; B. Saison, forthcoming.

\textsuperscript{242} See, in particular, J. Devissé, D. Robert-Chaleix \textit{et al.}, 1983.


\textsuperscript{244} See, above, the description of the routes and the map of the sites.

\textsuperscript{245} B. Chavane, 1980.

\textsuperscript{246} A. Ravisé and G. Thilmans, 1978, p. 57. Carbon-14 dates: \(587 \pm 120, 1050 \pm 120\).

G. Thilmans and A. Ravisé, 1980.


\textsuperscript{248} This is not the opinion of W. Filipowiak, 1979, p. 189, who believes that the Arab traders arrived in the tenth century and introduced mud-brick buildings and the cultivation of certain vegetables to Niani. We have some reservations about these interpretations, particularly about the link between mud-brick architecture and the arrival of Arab traders.
Trade and trade routes in West Africa

Investigations at Jenne-Jeno, based on meticulous stratigraphy and positive datings, are leading to very original findings. Between 400 and 900 a town already existed on this site, near present-day Djenné, and it developed greatly during the following period, from 900 to 1400. Unfortunately up until now the results, which are of crucial importance for regional trade, have had hardly any bearing on trans-Saharan links.

Begho has not yet yielded as much evidence or permitted as many hypotheses. But the mere fact that the earliest traces of activity there go back to the second century of the Christian era shows that it will not be possible much longer to avoid the question of whether goods were not moved about in the savanna area near the forest fringes earlier than has so far been supposed.

Similar speculation stems from the highly controversial results of the fruitful and spectacular research carried out at Igbo-Ukwu. Thurstan Shaw, against the opposition of many colleagues, has wondered whether links did not exist between this area, so close to the Niger Delta, and the north as early as the ninth century.

All recent research radically readjusts the history of technological and commercial exchanges: thanks to it, West Africa is no longer seen as a dependency of the north through the medium of trans-Saharan links. Even when reduced in this way to its proper chronological and quantitative proportions, trans-Saharan trade nevertheless still remains of considerable interest. The changes it introduced in all spheres of activity south and north of the desert will henceforth be able to be gauged more sensibly than before.

The results obtained here and there by archaeology affect economic history and the history of trans-Saharan trade, and it is a great pity that there is still so little information about Gao, Tâdmekka, Bilma or even Air, to say no more about the towns north of the Sahara. In any case, the historical value of excavation on the sites of towns connected,

249. S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, p. 190: this was Phase III of the occupation of the site.
250. The fourth and last phase of urban life on this site; ibid; pp. 191–2.
251. M. Posnansky, 1976. In the Dwinfuor district iron-working is attested from the second century.
253. Despite the remarkable research carried out by C. Flight (Birmingham University).
254. T. Lewicki, 1979: little or no information before the tenth century. At that time an Ibâdite merchant sent sixteen purses each containing 500 dinars, i.e. 8,000 dinars, from Tâdmekka to the Djairid. In Lewicki's view (pp. 165–6) the town was probably in the hands of the Zanātā at that time.
255. The often-quoted article by D. Lange and S. Berthoud, 1977 shows how valuable archaeological research at Kawâr would be.
256. S. Bernus and P. Gouletquer, 1974. Whereas for ancient copper metallurgy the results are spectacular.
even indirectly, with trans-Saharan trade seems to have been demonstrated: everyone will draw from it the lessons of his choice.

Our current image of trans-Saharan trade in the eleventh century is unrealistic and probably over-diagrammatic, given the number of questions, particularly concerning the economy, that still remain unanswered; given also that the first results of archaeological research show that in the realm of the exchange of produce, technologies and even fashions and influences everything is more complex and varied than was thought before.

However written sources and archaeology do enable us to draw up a provisional account of the products that crossed the Sahara. Unfortunately, the information given by the Arabic sources (which reflect the preoccupations of northern exporters) and by archaeology (which takes account of purchases by consumers in the south) do not always, or even often, agree. Al-Bakri explains that at Awdaghust wheat, dates and raisins were imported at a very high price for a clientele of expatriates from the north;\(^\text{257}\) archaeology has so far provided no confirmation of this. Nevertheless, al-Bakri opens the way for an important piece of research on the trade in dates, which seem to have crossed the Sahara very early, perhaps even with information about their cultivation. No text says anything concerning Awdaghust about other luxury imports for a demanding clientele – those who ate the wheat and the dates – but the excavations reveal a great deal. All the excavation sites\(^\text{258}\) show a great increase in the import of semi-luxury objects (glazed oil lamps: see Plate 14.6) or luxury objects.

\(^{257}\) J. M. Cuq, 1975, pp. 83–4. The profit on this trade was certainly very high, even though the consumers and customers were Muslims, like those who sold these rare products.

\(^{258}\) C. Vanacker, 1979, p. 155; B. Saison, 1979; J. Polet, 1980; D. Robert, 1981, p. 209; an increase of 17 per cent in the tenth century; J. Devisse, 1982; 55 per cent of the imports were for the period from the ninth to the eleventh centuries.
Trade and trade routes in West Africa

(cups, vases, glazed perfume-burners and decorated glasses) for this same period: thousands of pieces of evidence of a trade in high-priced goods have been found. For the moment nothing comparable has been found for the same period at the more southerly sites: neither Gao,259 Sintiu-Bara,260 Niani261 or Jenne-Jeno262 offer finds like the riches of Tegdaoust just described. The same is true for glass, which for the same period was imported to Tegdaoust in very varied forms (phials, vases, cups and goblets, see Plate 14.7)263 but is very rare on the other sites worked so far. B. Saison has very plausibly argued that even scrap glass was systematically imported, to be melted down locally to make the beads which like other articles of adornment were so much in demand by smart women.264

To have a complete picture of this trans-Saharan luxury trade catering

259. R. Mauny, 1952.
262. S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b.
263. C. Vanacker, 1979: finds of complete or reconstructible objects; see chapter by Vanacker in J. Devisse, D. Robert-Chaleix et al., 1983; J. Devisse, 1982: 42 per cent of the glass finds are from the period between the ninth and eleventh centuries.
264. B. Saison, 1979, pp. 659 et seq. Many bead moulds were found during the excavations (e.g. Saison, p. 510).
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

for a North African clientele settled in the Sahel, silver must certainly be added to the wheat, dates, raisins, pottery and glass. It was also worked at Tegdaoust, as were probably the precious and semi-precious stones that circulated beyond Awdâghust. The circulation of precious and semi-precious stones began before 900. It subsequently expanded in step with the needs of a major consumer market, and the provenance of these stones tells us a great deal.

Real agate, which came from Upper Egypt, was rare. Amazonite is more important: Lewicki does not include it in his catalogue of the stones mentioned by the Arab authors but for the centuries that concern us archaeology has yielded many fragments of great interest. The only mines so far identified are a very long way from Great Britain: north-east of Tibesti and in the Fezzân. The discovery of large numbers of fragments of this beautiful green mineral in West Africa therefore presupposes some way of moving it all the way from the north-east to the west. Admittedly a very recent study has shown that there are small deposits of amazonite in the Tidjikja area of Mauritania. Garnet came from the Maghrib; Lewicki shows that some was imported into Egypt during the Fatimid period and a beautiful cut garnet has been found at Tegdaoust.

As regards the stone that al-Bakrî calls tasi-n-samt, Lewicki is correct to reject the translation ‘agate’ suggested by R. Mauny, but his own translation, ‘cornelian’ also poses problems. First it must be stressed, to dispose of the legendary imports of Indian cornelian, that there is plenty of corne-

265. B. Saison, 1979: silver jewellery: Plate VI, p. 595; D. Robert, 1980, p. 209: a silver bead, and in the treasure mentioned above, a silver bracelet and three earrings. Be it noted here that according to al-Bakrî, 1913, p. 329, the dogs at the court of Ghana wore gold and silver collars with little bells on them made out of the same metals.

266. T. Lewicki, 1967a, pp. 59 et seq. Some has been found, without dating or stratigraphy, in the tumuli at Killi and al-Waladji in Mali excavated by Desplagnes (see A. M. D. Lebeuf and V. Paques, 1970, p. 14).


269. P. Huard, 1966, p. 381.

270. T. Monod, 1948, pp. 151 et seq.


272. T. Lewicki, 1967a, pp. 56–7; kidjâdi in Arabic.

273. TEG 1963, MIV 409. Besides, in the last resort we may wonder whether this is not a different stone. T. Lewicki (1967a: Yakût) reports a kind of zircon, one variety of which is red (a corundum or crystallized alumina) which is very hard and sometimes confused with ruby. Al-Bakrî, says Lewicki, reports a mine where this stone was plentiful, on the Sidjilmâsa–Aghmât road.

274. J. Devisse, 1970, p. 119, note 2: ‘a kind of stone like agate, which is sometimes a mixture of red, yellow and white’.

lian in Africa, in particular in the middle Nile valley;\textsuperscript{276} so it is not surprising, leaving aside the distance involved, that we should find traces of it for our period in West Africa.\textsuperscript{277} But the definition al-Bakrï gives fits chalcedony much better than cornelian; and many samples of chalcedony for the period in question have been found at Tegdaoust.\textsuperscript{278} If we remember that Lewicki's proposed location in the Ahaggar\textsuperscript{279} for the source of this mineral mentioned by al-Bakrï certainly corresponds to a chalcedony quarry, this is probably the conclusion. As regards the purpose of these stones, for which there was a great taste in West Africa in the tenth and eleventh centuries,\textsuperscript{280} B. Saison was the first, as far as findings at Tegdaoust are concerned, to demonstrate the importance of jewellery combining metals, stones and shells.\textsuperscript{281} Lastly, perhaps we should mention the import of cowries, about whose trans-Saharan history we still know so little. They appear at Awdâghust in about the ninth to tenth centuries,\textsuperscript{282} and we begin to have traces of trading in them in the north in the eleventh century.\textsuperscript{283}

Of course in the case of Awdâghust these imported products were brought in it is worth repeating, for a rich clientele from the north; when it disappeared, after 1100 at the latest, the luxury goods quickly vanished. In this sense Awdâghust seems not to have been (or only very exceptionally so) a redistribution centre for these products imported into the south, but rather a centre for high-value trade between wrought gold,\textsuperscript{284} and tanned

\textsuperscript{276} S. D. Goitein, 1973, p. 283: in 1046 two parcels of cornelian were sent from Alexandria to Tunis.

\textsuperscript{277} A. M. D. Lebeuf and V. Paques, 1970, p. 14: plentiful at Killi and Waladjji, undated; for the period that concerns us here; for Tegdaoust, finds are not unusual: B. Saison, 1979; J. Polet, 1980; D. Robert, 1980; J. Devisse, 1982. At Jenne-Jeno a cornelian bead has been reported; S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, p. 190, for the period +400–900.


\textsuperscript{279} T. Lewicki, 1967a, p. 54: between In Ouzzal and Timmisao, on a secondary road between Ghadames and Tadmekka.

\textsuperscript{280} J. Devisse, 1970, p. 119, note 1, fully confirmed by archaeological research.

\textsuperscript{281} B. Saison, 1979, pp. 385 et seq., remarkably cut chalcedony and cornelian beads, cylindrical amazonite jewels; chippings, etc.


\textsuperscript{283} S. D. Goitein, 1967, p. 154: they were among the goods that usually arrived at ports in Ifriqiya; p. 275: some cowries arrived at the port of Tripoli in winter and the consignee complained that these goods sold badly at that time of the year, p. 373: in 1055–6 half a bale of cowries was sold from Kayrawân for a sum equivalent to 55 dinars.

\textsuperscript{284} The texts suggest, and excavation has proved, that Awdâghust certainly took part in oryx-hunting and in the export of hides, perhaps even of the famous Lamţa shields of which Ibn Hawkal, 1964, p. 91 speaks. See al-Bakrï, 1913, p. 301.
decorated hides, amber from the Atlantic coast,\textsuperscript{285} perhaps gum,\textsuperscript{286} and
the products from the north, of which salt was the only item that could be
widely re-exported.

The picture of this trade obviously becomes far more complex as our
knowledge gets more detailed. We may now ask a question that research
workers will have to bear in mind, namely whether or not there existed in
the towns of the Sahel in general a sufficiently rich ‘middle class’, with
tastes more or less like those of the Maghribis, for there to be a demand for
the luxury goods in question. At the moment our answer is guarded, and if
anything negative for this period; Awdâghust was an exception. Awdâghust
was probably also an important centre of copper metallurgy. It imported
raw materials, and seems to have made them into quite elaborate alloys and
produced luxury goods for local consumption – jewellery and medals\textsuperscript{287} –
or for re-export. D. Robert thinks that Awdâghust may have been the
source of the copper wire used as ‘currency’ in Ghana.\textsuperscript{288}

The results yielded by Awdâghust will certainly be paralleled for all the
sites on which similar work is done in the future. This shows how pro­
visional present conclusions on trans-Saharan trade must necessarily be: it
was more changeable, more complex and more contradictory than was
thought in the past. On the eastern side of the desert, D. Lange and S.
Berthoud have shown that the trade of Kawär, which consisted of exports
of dates and salt to the south and also alum to the north as far as Wargla,
was similarly complex for the same period.\textsuperscript{289}

We may therefore wonder whether this trade, under cover of the ‘pre­
tige’ salt-gold trade, may not have been changeable and drifting, subject to
fashion and the balance of power, and less stable than the texts and the
fixed nature of the routes suggest: and also whether it really changed life­
styles and tastes on both sides of the Sahara.

The time has come to revert to the gold trade itself. Al-Bakrī makes
three explicit references to it: one concerns Awdâghust, and the other two
form part of the description of two itineraries quite separate from the
others (Nos 4 and 5 on Fig. 4.7). The first itinerary went from Ghana to
Ghiyâru;\textsuperscript{290} first it was four days to Samakanda, then two days to Tâka,
then one day to an arm of the ‘Nile’ which the camels forded. From there
the route led to the land of Gharntîl,\textsuperscript{291} where Muslims did not live,
whereas according to al-Bakrī they had settled a little further west at

\textsuperscript{285} Trade with the coast never stopped, as attested by the large number of shells such as \textit{Anadara semilis} and \textit{cymbium}.
\textsuperscript{286} Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 209.
\textsuperscript{287} C. Vanacker, 1979, pp. 110 et seq.; B. Saison, 1979.
\textsuperscript{288} D. Robert, 1980, pp. 209, 259, 284.
\textsuperscript{289} D. Lange and S. Berthoud, 1977, pp. 32-5.
\textsuperscript{290} In Ibn Hawkal this name is spelt Gh.r.yû (or Gh.r.y.wâ); in al-Bakrī: Gh.yûrû; and
\textsuperscript{291} In al-Bakrī this name is spelt Gh.r.n.t.l.; and in al-Idrîsî Gh.rbil or Gh.rbil.
Yarasnä, where the route ended. The second route, still vaguer, went from Ghana to Kūgha in the south-west, where the best gold mines (ma‘ādin) were. What are we to make of the ‘gold drives’ by Muslim merchants that al-Bakrī’s text suggests, which would have taken these merchants far to the south, into almost direct contact with the mining areas? This impetus was apparently much stronger than that described by al-Idrīsī a century later (Fig. 14.10). For the latter the two major gold trade routes were more clearly organized.

The first acted as a link, in towns fairly far to the north such as Takrūr and its dependencies, Barīsā and Sillā, between traders from the north and black merchants who came under Takrūr and travelled around between the towns under its control. Thus there was a system of trade under black control – Takrūr – in an area where a century earlier there had been no such thing, even though al-Bakrī already suggested that Sillā was then trying to compete with Ghana. Barīsā, the southerly point of this system, twelve days from Ghana, Awdāghust and Takrūr, can clearly be located on the Upper Senegal, but outside the gold-mining areas.

If we compare the locations, according to both authors’ accounts, of Ghiyārū–Irasna and Ghiyārā–Barīsā, we find that al-Idrīsī’s account puts the gold trading centres a long way to the north, and at the same time reduces the area open to prospecting of the Muslim traders who had come to black Africa from the north. There may be many interpretations of such a change. We can now bear in mind that the organization of Takrūr (after 1050, of course) radically altered the geography of gold movements. To fully appreciate the change that had occurred, we must remember that according to al-Idrīsī the route northward from Takrūr led direct to Azuḳī and Sidjilmāsa.

Al-Idrīsī next describes a second gold marketing system dominated by Ghana. The most southerly points of this system were Gharbīl and Ghiyārā. The latter, eleven days march from Ghana, lay (on the strength of this information) on an arc running through the Baule, a tribute of the Senegal, and the Inland Niger Delta. Of the two, it would seem reasonable to prefer the Baule, noting, moreover (a further problem), that this would bring Ghiyārā and Barīsā, and consequently the competing systems of Takrūr and Ghana, dangerously close to each other. It should also be noted that Barīsā and Ghiyārā would have been the advance posts of the

293. ibid., p. 130.
294. ibid., p. 96: ‘[the king of Sillā] has a vast kingdom, thickly populated: it can almost rival that of Ghana’.
295. Not eleven days, as J. M. Cuoq, 1975, says erroneously in this case, p. 130.
296. ibid., p. 137, ‘All the countries we have just mentioned come under the sovereign of Ghana: they supply all his needs and he in turn gives them his protection.’
297. The first of these places al-Bakrī calls Gh-r.n.t.l. and the second Gh.yaru.
FIG. 14.10 Gold production areas in West Africa
Trade and trade routes in West Africa

two systems in the direction of the mining areas of Galam and Bambuk. Further east the Wangara occupied a vast territory in which gold was plentiful. The very dimensions that al-Idrisi gives for it (480 km x 240 km), the distance he gives (eight days) between Ghana and Wangara country, his location for Tiraḳka, the Wangara town that came under Ghana, and the fact that the Wangara exported their gold to the Maghrib and Wargla — everything suggests that this area corresponds exactly to the Inland Niger Delta between its southernmost point near Bure and the outskirts of Tiraḳka. This is a very loose definition of the Inland Delta, but it fits the text well. But once again we are not in the goldmining area.

It should be stressed that much more work than in the past needs to be done on the black merchants mentioned by the sources, beginning with al-Bakri. Cuoq’s translation of the passage in which al-Bakri speaks of the ‘adjam (non-Arab) traders may be questioned: the main thing is that these traders, called the Banū Ng.ḥ.m.ran or Namghmaräna, were once equated by a copyist with the Wangh.m.räta, and that this gave rise to an important debate: especially since, as all the translators agree, these traders sold gold. The whole question of the Wangara, their location and their economic role will of course one day need to be taken up again. Lastly we must not forget that, although not named, black traders are reported by al-Bakri and al-Idrisi at Gharbil, Ghiyärä and Barisä, in Takrür and at Ghana and Gao.

It would be presumptuous to claim to have final solutions for these very difficult questions. At most we need to draw attention again to certain facts. In Ibn Ḥawkal’s time the very vague and remote areas where the blacks lived and found gold were given as one month’s journey from Ghana. Later, with al-Bakri, we see this distance shortened, and with al-Idrisi we reach a solution that looks reasonable. At the same time the closer we get to this the more we have the impression that the merchants from the north, the informants of the authors we use, did not have direct access to the goldmining areas but had contact with black traders whom we are just begin-

298. It is not without interest that interpreting al-Bakri’s data J. O. Triaud reaches conclusions for Ghiyärä similar to those we put forward here as our interpretation of al-Idrisi (see J. O. Hunwick, C. Meillassoux and J.-L. Triaud, 1981; see also R. Mauny, 1961, p. 124).

299. In this respect also we feel wholly in agreement with the conclusions of S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1981.


301. I am indebted for these two readings to Mr Ghali who derived them from the known manuscripts.

302. Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, Ms 2218, p. 240; information supplied by Mr Ghali.

303. Mr Ghali suggests the following translation: ‘the Nunghamaräta [or W.n.gh.m.är or W.n.gh.m.rän] who are traders [variant: they are traders] bring the gold to the country and the neighbouring one’.

304. This name appears for the first time with al-Idrisi. N. Ghali proposes to transliterate it Wan.ḳära.
ning to get to know. For all that, we need to take account of the hypothesis, suggested by the differences between al-Bakrî's and al-Idrîsî's estimates of distances, that these merchants withdrew northwards between the eleventh and the twelfth century as the reactions of the Sudan, Muslim or not, to the pressure exerted on the Sahel area since the tenth century by the merchants from the north became more organized. Alternatively, the opposite hypothesis may be more accurate: Ibn Ḥaẉkal had only an extremely vague knowledge of the land of the blacks on the other side of the Sahel area; al-Bakrî, better informed, still exaggerated the merchants' distances in the south; al-Idrîsî is nearer to the facts, which had not changed since the beginning and marked the firm determination of the black rulers not to allow free access to the gold mines or even a free market for the sale of gold. Much work still remains to be done to discover which of these two hypotheses is nearer to what actually happened.

Cultural effects of the growth of trans-Saharan trade

As regards tastes in food, and their sources, hardly anything changed. The north, with only limited scope to export to the south the knowledge of cultivation of its food plants, wheat and dates, or its fashions in food, exported at high prices to the 'expatriate' merchants settled south of the desert the northern products they wanted. As a transportable commodity dates had a more lasting success than wheat.\(^{305}\)

The Sahara zone lived without agriculture, except for oasis gardening. According to al-Idrîsî the Sahara got bigger, because the desert advanced, particularly towards the south.\(^{306}\) In this zone strips of dried camel meat, camel milk and wild grasses\(^{307}\) made up the staple diet of peoples unacquainted with bread and sparing in their use of water. Snake-meat was an adjunct in the parts where they were common and water was still scarcer, such as the Madjâbat of Nisâr\(^{308}\) and the area north of Gao.\(^{309}\) The sources say hardly anything about hunting, though it must have been another major source of food.\(^{310}\)

---

305. J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 131; according to al-Idrîsî, Sidjilmâsa, Tawât and Wargla were most commonly supposed to be the exporting areas.
307. On the place of food-gathering see R. Mauny, 1961, pp. 228 et seq.
309. Al-Idrîsî, J. M. Cuoq, 1975, pp. 151–2. This was the home of the Saghâwa (Zaghâwa?), who used the milk, butter and meat they got from dromedaries, had few vegetables and no wheat and grew a little durra (millet).
310. Al-Bakrî, 1913, p. 321 only mentions hunting in connection with the exportable products it yielded, the hide of the lamâ (oryx) and the fur of the fennec (desert fox). At Jenne-Jeno for the earliest period S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh have found the remains of crocodiles, tortoises and birds used for food (1980b, p. 188). See R. Mauny, 1961, pp. 257–8.
Awdâghust formed part of this desert or very arid region, but was an exceptional locality because of its water table. In the tenth century, two 'class' diets existed side by side: that of the rich,311 mainly from the north, who ate wheat, dried and locally grown fruit (figs and grapes) and beef and mutton (which were plentiful and not very expensive), and that of the poorer people, in this case mainly blacks, who used locally grown durra312 made into a dough or into girdle cakes flavoured with honey imported from the south.313 Here again archaeology supplements the texts; we have found honeycomb dishes some ten centimetres across which are still used in the south for cooking millet girdle cakes. In the twelfth century, the merchants from the north having left, probably after the Almoravid raid, the town lived mainly, according to al-Idrisî314 on dried camel meat, occasionally supplemented by truffles to be found in the area for a few weeks in each year. Insofar as the town survived, it seems to have conformed to the food habits of the surrounding countries.

Westwards across the Senegal and Niger and eastwards in Kawâr everything to do with food was completely different. Durra, which was widely grown;315 rice;316 fresh, salted317 or smoked318 fish; the meat and milk of cattle and more rarely of sheep and goats319 made up the staple diet. Nothing really changed in three or four centuries except perhaps the

311. We have already had occasion above to draw attention to their love of luxury, which is evident in the quantity and quality of many imported objects and in household luxury. One detail never reported from other archaeological sites in the Sahel may carry final conviction: several kohl sticks for eye make-up were found at Tegdaoust, hewn and carved out of a rot-proof wood.

312. J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 149. The durra in question is millet (Pennisetum, not sorghum — see R. Mauny, 1961, pp. 238 et seq.). Sorghum was rarer; its only archaeological occurrence so far is from Niani (W. Filipowiak, 1979, p. 107) for the eighth and ninth centuries. In the case of Awdâghust a relatively large number of granaries were found during excavations; unfortunately they were always empty for the centuries that concern us here. The profusion of grinding equipment (millstones and grinding mills) for these same periods leaves no doubt about the eating of cereals.

313. On honey, see R. Mauny, 1961, p. 292.


316. S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, p. 188; R. M. A. Bedaux et al., 1978.

317. Al-Idrisî (J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 131): fish, which were plentiful, 'are the food of most of the Sudan, who catch them and salt them'.

318. On the possibility that smokehouses existed in the fourth or fifth century see S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b.

319. Oddly, al-Bakri notes the absence of goats and sheep at Silla, on the Senegal, whereas cattle were plentiful (al-Bakri, 1913, pp. 324–5). Between 50 and 400, beef and fish were important in the diet of the people of Jenne-Jeno (S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, p. 189); sheep and goats only appeared after 900 (p. 191). R. Mauny, 1961, p. 280, already pointed out that the introduction of the long-haired sheep (Ovis longipes) into the Sahel seems quite recent.

427
addition of dates and dried camel meat to the usual foods. In this millet-growing area the nutritional heritage was too long-standing, too well-balanced by practice and too well-adapted to the environment to change. The use of millet beer is also often reported in this third food area; we think we have found traces of it at Tegdaoust, but this will have to be confirmed in the laboratory.

The three food areas were very distinct and hence quite separate and they remained so at least until the twelfth century despite the contacts. Thus it is hardly surprising that none of the very important developments in agricultural techniques that occurred in the north reached the south, where agricultural methods, well adapted to the environment, had remained unaltered for centuries.

Similarly the introduction of certain techniques and objects did not lead to their adoption by the southern cultures. Kilns have been found at Tegdaoust capable of reaching and probably exceeding 1000°C; in morphology they are similar to kilns found at Šabra Mašūriyya, in Tunisia, apparently from the Fātimid period, which were connected with glassmaking. They may have been something to do with the making of beads or the smelting of copper alloys: they were no doubt used for oft-repeated attempts to produce coloured glazes on pottery. The kilns did not survive the Almoravid whirlwind. They were not rebuilt after the event; and no similar kilns seem to have been made elsewhere. It was obviously not a question of lack of technical ability, any more than it was so for the production of pottery; these kilns were not something completely and utterly indispensable in the lives of the Sahel people or their neighbours to the south.

The importation of quantities of high-quality oil lamps was followed only by a feeble local imitation. It is uncertain what form of lighting was used in the south.

The arrival of thrown and glazed pottery had an influence that is often apparent on the forms produced locally; though clearly identifiable technical limitations prevented the mere imitation of thrown forms by modelled forms and vice-versa. But these imported objects did not substantially change the output from local potteries, whose techniques, decorations and shapes went back thousands of years. At the most, the con-

322. The insistence of al-Bakrī, still more al-Idrīsī, and much later Ibn Baṭṭūta on the features of the Sūdān's food is in itself evidence that the Sahel marked a frontier between types of diet.
324. C. Vanacker, 1979, pp. 124 et seq.
326. B. Saison, 1979, p. 505.
siderable demand from a people with a high purchasing power over-stimulated output in places where there were colonies of merchants from the north. For the moment, given the tons of pottery fragments found at Tegdaoust, we tend to think that local production did in fact receive such a fillip. This certainly created major problems for the environment: but the continuity of shapes, decorations and techniques demonstrates the cultural stability of the blacks who produced this pottery, even when their customers were Muslims from the north. Apart from the imitation of a few imported shapes and decorations, the pottery-producing area of black Africa remained independent of the one in the north. Nor was it the latter that gave the south its keen taste (responsible nowadays for increasingly surprising finds) for making anthropomorphic (Plate 14.8) and zoomorphic terracotta figurines. In this respect some ancient sites have yielded a fine harvest which gives even more food for thought than the splendid pieces produced in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.

The growth of trans-Saharan links, the strong demand for gold and leather in the north, and the more modest demand for northern products (except salt) in the south probably did not bring about great changes in the culture or way of life of the peoples of the north or the south until the twelfth century.

We may think nowadays that these factors were not responsible either for major transfers of basic technology, for example where metals were concerned, either because these transfers took place much earlier or because the south had long since found its own methods of metal production. For copper, which had been worked for at least a thousand years south of the Sahara when the links now in question expanded, we now also know as a result of excavations that manufacturing techniques — *cire perdue* moulds, leaded bronzes and soldering — were developed south of the

327. Much work still remains to be done on the two areas in question. Research workers are often too quick to settle their line of argument in areas in which laboratory techniques give us much help. It remains almost indisputable that the shapes in black Africa are local; that the painted decorations so remarkable at Jenne-Jeno (S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, pp. 230, 261, 453) are not imitations of objects from the north, and that the tripod and four-legged cups from Niani and the Tellems probably have a common origin on which work needs to be done. Everything or nearly everything remains to be done in this field.

328. Many discoveries at Tegdaoust, to be published in the journals. See already: D. Robert, 1966, and the photograph accompanying this article. See also S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b; Plate IX and p. 189. Recent finds in Niger suggest that there are still surprises in store for us.

329. A. Ravisé and G. Thilmans, 1978. Leaded bronzes are a field for research on their own: indications already exist for Sintiu Bara, Tegdaoust and Igbo-Ukwu, but the direction (if any) in which this technique circulated is at present unknown. Leaded bronzes were also made in Spain and Morocco during the Neolithic period, but no definite diffusionist argument can be deduced from this.
In three fields, however, transfers — and not only from north to south — were probably genuinely far-reaching and ‘lasting’.
The famous article by J. Schacht long ago showed for architecture what T. Lewicki’s work revealed for human and economic exchanges: the impact of Ibādite models and their crossing of the desert. These are facts which obviously do not apply only to architecture. It would be dangerous, however, to infer the whole from the part, e.g. that the introduction of plans of mosques meant that all building skills were introduced from the north.

But people still often cling to the idea (born of a naive reading of the sources) that architecture as a science was introduced into the Sudan by Mansa Kanku Mūsā after his pilgrimage. This is to confuse the building of certain monuments, mosques and palaces and specifically Muslim town planning, with the art of organizing living space, which is the beginning of

330. J. Schacht, 1954. This study could of course do with revision, but it gave considerable food for thought.
all architecture. Long hidden by pretentious stone architecture,\textsuperscript{331} and then by that of cement blocks and corrugated iron, mud architecture is once again becoming the object of attention and serious study.\textsuperscript{332} The oldest building at Tegdaoust made considerable use of moulded brick, and walls built of it were to be found on all sides. The art of building with mud\textsuperscript{333} and probably with bricks\textsuperscript{334} antedates busy trans-Saharan links. This is not surprising given the importance of moulded brick architecture in the culture of Nagada and in ancient and medieval Nubia:\textsuperscript{335} it is a safe bet that the African continent very early mastered this way of making use of an adaptable and convenient material.

With Islamization the Muslim merchants probably brought south of the desert their own designs for houses, and in any case the town planning peculiar to the Islamic city. The change is clearly visible at Tegdaoust: streets and enclosed houses very soon appear in place of much simpler layouts at the end of the ninth century and in the tenth century. Moreover we may wonder whether some technologies did not cross the Sahara from south to north. When the Almoravid palace at Marrakesh was excavated a wall consisting of two stone-built sections separated by mud rubble was found.\textsuperscript{336} At Tegdaoust we have found walls that bear some kinship to this and we may wonder whether the Almoravids did not use a Saharan or Sahelian technique at Marrakesh.\textsuperscript{337} The question is only worth raising because another one immediately arises from it, namely that of the painted decorations on the walls. At Tegdaoust for the tenth and eleventh centuries a red-and-white painted decoration, so far unpatterned, was common: it was applied on top of a very thin layer of mud. We may be right to link this with the red-and-white patterned decorations found at Marrakesh and Chichâwa, which date from the Almoravid period, and to wonder about the source of the still famous decorations at Walâta\textsuperscript{338} and Ghadâmes.\textsuperscript{339}

\textsuperscript{331} Even on this account alone the received ideas about Kankû Müsä's role need complete revision. The architecture of Tegdaoust and Kumbi Saleh used stone, and dates from the tenth to eleventh centuries. The pre-fourteenth-century mosques found on these two sites were built of stone.

\textsuperscript{332} L. Prussin, 1981; an exemplary piece of work in this field: R. McIntosh, 1976.

\textsuperscript{333} S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b, pp. 189 \textit{et seq.:} between 50 and 900 traces of mud buildings were found. R. M. A. Bedaux \textit{et al.,} 1978: the Tolloy built their granaries out of cylindrical clay bricks. L. Prussin, 1981, thinks that the round house built of cylindrical bricks modelled by techniques similar to those of pottery is the type best suited to African needs.


\textsuperscript{335} \textit{Dictionnaire archéologique des techniques, Vol. 1}, p. 167.


\textsuperscript{337} From this point of view the Azukî excavations are of great importance.

\textsuperscript{338} G. J. Duchemin, 1950.

\textsuperscript{339} A. M. Ramadan, 1975, pp. 135, 137.
Discussion has likewise long been underway about the penetration of weaving and cotton south of the Sahara. Let us limit ourselves to that which relates to our period. The nakedness of the people in the Sudan is continually reported by the texts; but this is the result more of the mentality and social background of the editors than of an objective knowledge of the blacks' clothing. Not surprisingly, nakedness and the absence of monotheist religions were to some extent regarded as 'uncivilized'. For the time being archaeology gives no definite answers. Spindle whorls existed at Tegdaoust from the earliest times, but they were only plentiful for periods after the twelfth century. Cotton clothes were probably worn at Tegdaoust in the second half of the eleventh century; cotton plant pollen found at Ogo in Senegal seems to date from about the same period. When describing the area of the towns on the Senegal, al-Bakrī says that at Sillā small cotton loincloths made at Tirinka, where cotton was not plentiful, were used as currency.

If we now put together the information supplied by the texts, the idea is inescapable that in the eleventh and twelfth centuries cotton clothing was still a luxury and a mark of class. According to R. Bedaux, on the other hand, the Niger Bend was already a hub of activity from the eleventh century on. This difficult and important topic is very significant for the history of trans-Saharan links: it may mean, for the period in question here, that imports of fabrics from the north continued on a large scale until the twelfth century: but the question is still very open.

As things are at present, the third topic is still more difficult and tenuous than the previous two. The question is whether the sudden appearance of a demand for gold did not in the tenth century bring about the transfer south of the Sahara of a Muslim system of weighing. The presence at Tegdaoust from the earliest times of scales capable of weighing small quan-

340. An investigation of 155 decorated spindle whorls found at Tegdaoust forms part of J. Dévisse, D. Robert-Chaleix et al., 1983; it was conducted by D. Robert-Chaleix.
342. B. Chavane, 1980, p. 139.
343. al-Bakrī, 1913, pp. 325-6.
344. Al-Idrīsī (J. M. Cuoq, p. 129): at Sillā and Takrūr ordinary people wore wool and richer people cotton; at Gao (al-Idrīsī in Cuoq, p. 139) ordinary people dressed in animal skins, traders wore woven clothes and the nobles (?) special clothes (izār); at Azuṅī (al-Idrīsī in Cuoq, p. 164) woolen clothes were worn (the clothes of the Gao traders were called kadāwir). R. M. A. Bedaux and R. Bolland, 1980, reach basic conclusions very different from the foregoing.
345. R. M. A. Bedaux and R. Bolland, 1980, p. 15. It is true that their argument concerns the eleventh to twelfth centuries, and that in two centuries many changes probably took place.
346. At Jenne-Jeno there are no traces of cotton; the spindle whorls found belong to the last stages of development of the site.
347. An essay on this subject by J. Dévisse, based on a study by Mme A. Launois, will be found in J. Dévisse, D. Robert-Chaleix et al., 1983. Garrard's very efficient work deserves particular attention: see T. F. Garrard, 1975, 1980.
Trade and trade routes in West Africa

tities.348 (Plate 14.9), the arrival of glass weights at Tegdaoust, Gao and Kumbi Saleh349 and probably other forms of weights at other places,350 lead us to suggest a cautious but fairly positive reply, namely that the basis of a system of weighing probably did follow the demand for gold in the north in the tenth century. But what system was it? Fāṭimid influence is strikingly obvious in the glass weights found at Tegdaoust. Were there not other systems from Spain in the Almoravid world later?351

Finally, let us consider what consequences the improvement of trans-Saharan trade had for the states concerned.

In the south either because of conversion to Islam or because of the economic need for a state structure, clearly something took shape (more strongly in Takrūr and Ghana, probably in Gao and perhaps elsewhere) which strengthened the position of the rulers and gave them prestige, power and a new legitimacy.

In the north gold undoubtedly made possible the construction of much stronger state apparatuses than before. The Fāṭimids, the Umayyads and especially the Almoravids derived strength from it which underpinned their independence and influence. Again, the flowering of an exceptionally brilliant and original art may be attributed to the wealth that gold brought to these dynasties, especially the latter and particularly in Morocco. In two centuries the Muslim West acquired an image of considerable importance, even for the internal history of the Muslim world.

The history of trans-Saharan links is one good index among many of the

348. B. Saison, 1979, p. 688.
349. R. Mauny, 1961, p. 415. Initial comments: the weights at Kumbi Saleh were found in the part of the archaeological tell which we know dates probably from the fourteenth to fifteenth centuries, at the earliest from the thirteenth. Hence these are more recent weights than the Tegdaoust ones. The two complete specimens weigh 0.65 gm and 2.43 gm, the three others probably 4.10 gm, 6.54 gm and 7.8 gm. None of them bears any inscription. The weights have now disappeared. For Gao, there are two specimens weighing approximately 5.77 gm and 10.12 gm. These weights are very difficult to classify in any known systems.
350. R. Mauny, 1961, p. 416: Kumbi Saleh, still in the same stratigraphic conditions: weights of 14.85 gm (stone), 14.4 gm (copper), 20.42 gm (iron) and 20.24 gm (iron). For Gao: weights of 14.9 gm (copper) and 9.37 gm (copper), which R. Mauny attributes to the twelfth century. A weight (?) found at Jenne-Jeno (S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b) and weighing about 7 gm poses many problems, and for the moment I would be rather hesitant about its connection with the Muslim system.
351. The diversity of the Muslim systems is well known, both weak systems connected with coins and stronger systems. For example (S. D. Goitein, 1967), the reference system for the Cairo Geniza is as follows: dirham = 3.125 gm; rotl = 450 gm; ükiyya = 37.5 gm; and kintār = 45 kg. The Spanish caliphal system (E. Lévi-Provençal, 1950–3, Vol. 3, pp. 143 et seq.): ükiyya = 31.49 gm; and rotl = 504 gm, these measures themselves varying according to the goods to be weighed. In Spain the kintār in the main was 50 kg, and a quarter of it was one arroba, a very important weight; the dirham weight was here 3.148 gm. Thus whenever possible we must reconstruct the system to which the weights found belong, which is what we have tried to do for Tegdaoust on the basis of the weights found.
PLATE 14.9 Tegdaoust/Awdaghust: one of the pairs of scales discovered and restored by the Musée du Fer at Nancy. Hammer-wrought iron, of local manufacture (probable date: eleventh to twelfth centuries).
continual renewal of research on Africa. Every discovery means rearranging the layout of the picture. Copper in Mauritania and Air has in two decades just upset a whole series of long-standing patterns. What will happen when serious attention is given to the scope for exporting Bauchi tin in antiquity, or when serious investigation of the landmarks between the Chad basin and the Nile shows that east-west links have been greatly neglected in favour of north-south links?

So we have tried to open up avenues, to take stock, and to suggest lines of research and topics for consideration rather than to paint a satisfactory 'final' picture of this question. For decades to come the record of this history will have to be regularly taken to bits and put together again in the light of research that is only the threshold of the revelations it is destined to produce. Nothing can better demonstrate the importance of archaeology than this subject; nothing can make people more cautious or more modest about stating the results they have achieved.
The Chad region as a crossroads

D. LANGE
in collaboration with
B. W. BARKINDO

The Lake Chad region, which is a savanna zone, has been inhabited by pastoral and agricultural peoples since before the beginning of the Christian era. To the north, where the savanna gradually merges into desert, nomad peoples predominate, though there are also oases with settled communities. To the south, especially along the banks of the rivers that flow into Lake Chad, mainly sedentary cultures are found. The desiccation of the Sahara and the shrinkage of Lake Chad drew peoples from various directions towards the diminishing lake. The coming together of peoples from various no longer viable areas and their attempts to adjust to the changing environment and circumstances form the background of the history of the area.

For a clearer insight into the significance of the historical facts, a precise account of the climatic changes which occurred during the period under review would have been desirable. In fact very little is known about the climate of the Sahel during the first millennium of the Christian era. However, there are several indications that climatic conditions during that period were, on the whole, better than those now prevailing. Particularly noteworthy is the fact that, between the third century and the beginning of the thirteenth century of the Christian era, the waters of Lake Chad flowed almost continuously into the Bahr al-Ghazāl, which presupposes that the lake level exceeded 286 m. Moreover, J. Maley considers, in the light of various data, that a wet period occurred in the middle of the first millennium, and that the Sahelian region underwent an arid phase in the eleventh century. The area of contact between sedentary and nomadic peoples must therefore have extended further to the north than at present.

Moreover, it cannot be taken for granted that the Lake Chad region was always a crossroads for trade and fruitful interactions. Currently available dates for the spread of iron-working techniques suggest that some populations in the region long remained cut off from the major innovatory trends. The main divide in this regard would seem to be between west and east

1. J. Maley, 1981, pp. 65, 101. Lake Chad’s present level is situated at 282 m.
2. ibid., pp. 65, 278.
The Chad region as a crossroads

rather than between north and south. Indeed, it is now known that, to the
south of Air, at Ekne Wan Aparan, iron-smelting techniques were known
as early as $-540 \pm 90$, a date closely concordant with that of $-440 \pm 140$
obtained at Taruga (Nok culture) in central Nigeria. In the region of
Termit, between Air and Lake Chad, iron-working would seem to have
been practised in the seventh century before the Christian era. Elsewhere,
iron-working techniques were adopted much later. At Koro Toro, between
Lake Chad and Tibesti, the vestiges of a culture based on iron metallurgy
have been discovered. Known as haddâd after the Arabic term for 'black-
smith', this culture flourished only between the fourth and eighth centuries
of the Christian era. The painted pottery found on the same sites points to
affinities with two major civilizations of the Nile Valley: Meroe and Nubia
during its Christian period. Other data are available for the region around
the southern shores of Lake Chad. According to relatively unreliable
datings, iron was not to be found on the major site of Daima until the fifth
or sixth century of the Christian era, and it was later still before iron-
smelting techniques were adopted. These few indications concerning the
archaeology of iron show that, prior to the foundation of Kânem, the Lake
Chad region was remarkable more for its divisions and unequal levels of
development than for any unifying factor.

A process of more rapid and spectacular changes appears to have begun
around the middle of the first millennium of the Christian era. It was trig-
gered off probably indirectly by the introduction of the camel into the area
either from North Africa or – as seems more probable – from the Nile
Valley, and its adoption by the Zaghâwa and the Tubu. Being far better
adapted to the natural conditions prevailing in the Sahara than was the
horse, the camel made long desert crossings perfectly feasible, and could
transport relatively heavy loads into the bargain. Between the Fezzân and
the Lake Chad region, the natural conditions were particularly propitious
for crossing the Sahara: a whole series of small oases and natural waterholes
and, mid-way, the vast oasis of Kawâr, provided an ideal caravan route.

Another opportunity for commerce was with the Nile Valley through
Dârfûr and Kordofân. In the absence of any precise archaeological data
cerning these routes one can only conjecture; it would seem that in the
earlier period trade with the Nile Valley was more important. On the other
hand the existence of the ancient kingdom of the Garamantes in the Fezzân
was undoubtedly a major factor in the organization of long-distance trade;

7. G. Connah, 1971, p. 57. Having reassessed previous datings, the same author now
proposes +50 as the date of the introduction of iron to Daima (G. Connah, 1981, pp.
146–7).
but again the absence of evidence concerning the southern oases of the Fezzān and Kawār, where remains of fortifications of uncertain date are visible to the naked eye, makes any positive conclusion uncertain.  

It would seem, however, that as early as the seventh century of the Christian era the central Saharan route was plied by small caravans from the Fezzān, since the celebrated Arab conqueror ‘Ukba b. Nāfi’ would have found it difficult to penetrate as far as Kawār – which third/ninth century sources assert he did – had the trail not been blazed before him by either Berber or Zagḥāwa traders. The Kawār oasis was certainly not the final destination of these caravans and the traders had undoubtedly already passed beyond it, to reach the Lake Chad region. In later times the central Saharan route became more important following the establishment of regular trade between the Lake Chad area and the Mediterranean coast which followed the Islamic conquests and the rise of Muslim states in North Africa and later in the Sahara.

In the south, around Lake Chad, a whole series of factors, including not only trade expansion but also the development of better weapons and tools and the evolution of new ways of life to deal with changing circumstances, were to lead to the foundation and expansion of a vast political entity, Kānem-Bornu, whose unifying power and capacity for innovation helped to shape the destiny of the entire region up to the beginning of the colonial era. However, before describing the foundation and early development of that political entity in greater detail, it is proper to give a concise, chronologically balanced account of the principal peoples or, where precise knowledge of them is lacking, of the linguistic groups dwelling between the middle Niger and the Dārfūr mountains.

Peoples and languages of the Chad region

The Arab geographers provide information that throws a revealing light on the early history of Africa. Concerned as they were to recreate as accurate as possible a ‘word picture’ (ṣūrat al-ard), these authors gathered geographical data on the Muslim countries and on the lands situated beyond Islam’s boundaries. Their information should, however, be treated with caution since most of them had never visited black Africa but gathered their information from traders who were not unbiased and from black African pilgrims many of whom had left home a long time before and may

10. Two authors write of the expedition of ‘Ukba b. Nāfi’ to the Kawār: Ibn ‘Abd al-Hākam, 1922, p. 195, and al-Bakrī, 1911, pp. 13–14. The former was writing before 257/871, while the latter wrote his work in 460/1068, albeit basing his account in part on earlier sources. Cf. Chapters 9 and 11 above.
11. The name Kawār is probably of Berber origin, and denotes the ‘Blacks’ or Negroes. This meaning survived in ḥasaniyya (Mauritania) where the term küri (pl. kowār) was applied to black Africans whose status was that of freemen.
The Chad region as a crossroads

did therefore not have been in a position to know the current situation at home. When describing foreign peoples the Arab geographers often used literary clichés and the names given by them are in many cases generic terms. Thus we invariably encounter references to the Zandji in East Africa, the Habash in Ethiopia and the Sudan in West Africa, without the defining characteristics of these ‘peoples’ ever being properly established. In addition to general terms, a few authors also mention ethnonyms passed on by travellers; however, their identification often poses problems. Moreover, the geographical placing of these ethnic entities varies considerably from one author to another. It was not until Ibn Sa’id produced his Geography in the seventh/thirteenth century that highly precise information on the Lake Chad region became available. Only in modern times do we find its equivalent.

Before Ibn Sa’id, most Arab geographers mention the Zagha’wa people when referring to the Central Sudan (an expression used here synonymously with the ‘Chad region’). Until the fourth/tenth century, well-informed Arab authors suggest that the Zagha’wa held sway over Kânem; however, al-Idriśi, writing in the sixth/twelfth century, gives particulars that bring out their purely nomadic nature. Disregarding the lessons to be learned from earlier sources, modern authors have frequently played down the role of the Zagha’wa, either regarding them as a marginal group or, on the contrary, supposing them to be an extremely extensive group, identical to the present-day Tubu. As will be seen below, the Zagha’wa did in fact undergo radical transformations as a result of a dynastic change which occurred in Kânem in the middle of the second half of the fifth/eleventh century. The ethnic balance and the ratio of sedentary to nomadic peoples ceased to be the same after the advent of the new dynasty in Kânem.

The main internal source, the Dīwān salāṭīn Barnū, contains an ethnic nomenclature that cannot be checked against that of external sources. For until the end of the seventh/thirteenth century, the chroniclers of the royal court took pains to indicate the names of the ethnic groups from which the successive queen mothers had originated. We know, for example, that in the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries the kings of Kânem married women of the Tomaghra, the Kay and the Tubu. Today, the name Tomaghra is applied to a clan dwelling among the Teda, the Kânembu and the Kanuri. The name Kay denotes a Kanuri clan, while Tubu is the generic name used by the Kânembu speakers to refer to the Teda-Daza.

12. Concerning the merits of the Arab sources of this period, see Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. I, ch. 5.
15. See, for example, Y. Urvoy, 1949, p. 16; A. Smith, 1971, pp. 168–9.
According to the most likely hypothesis, the traditions recorded in the *Dīwān* refer to the successive matrimonial alliances between the kings of Kānem and the various nomadic groups whose martial prowess the earlier kings found useful in sustaining their power.

Further to the east, between the Zaghāwa and the Nūba, al-Idrīsī situates the Tādjū, whose existence, probably already dating back to the remote past, seems to have been overlooked by earlier authors. According to oral traditions collected by the German traveller Gustav Nachtigal, the Dādjo - probably identical to the Tādjū - gave rise to the first development of Dārfūr as a state structure. The nomadic influence was less perceptible in this region than around Lake Chad. The present distribution of the small Dādjo communities between the Wadai plateau and the Nūba hills, as well as their traditions concerning their origins and their sedentary way of life, indicate rather that they are of Nilotic origin. Nevertheless, in the seventh/thirteenth century, they appear to have been under pressure from the Zaghāwa who, having been excluded from power in Kānem, apparently sought to re-establish a coherent political entity at the southern extremity of the great trans-Saharan route linking the Dārfūr region to Egypt. In fact, the Dādjo surrendered power not to the Zaghāwa but to the Tundjur, resisting assimilation only by withdrawing into areas of refuge. The Zaghāwa, by contrast, were able to preserve their ethnic cohesion, despite the fact that their grazing area had been considerably reduced by the expansion of the Teda-Daza (Tubu). Even today, the Arabs of Chad and the Sudan recognize the specific identity of the Zaghāwa (who call themselves Beri) and the Gorhan (Daza), despite the fact that they survive only in the form of small residual communities, which no longer seem united to anyone but an outside observer.

Taking as his basis a source dating back to the first half of the seventh/thirteenth century, Ibn Saʿīd provides some extremely valuable particulars concerning the Lake Chad region. It is indeed clear from his *Geography* that, in the time of Dūnām Dībalāmī (c. 607/1210–646/1248), the Kānem people had not yet driven the ancestors of the Buduma back to the Lake Chad islands, and it is reasonable to suppose that the area inhabited by the Kotoko extended beyond the clay lands (*firki*) of the alluvial plain of the lower Chari. Situating several ethnic groups with great precision, Ibn Saʿīd gives the impression that the Komadugu Yobe valley was still settled by Bede communities (later assimilated by the Kanuri or driven back on to the territory of the Ngizim) and that, on the other side of Lake Chad, the Kūrī

---

18. Al-Idrīsī, 1866, pp. 13, 40; translation, pp. 15, 47.
20. The route is known by the Arabic expression *darb al-arbaʿīn* ('forty-day route'). It is described by R. S. O'Fahey, 1980, pp. 139–44, who points out its importance for more recent periods.
The Chad region as a crossroads

(today assimilated to the Buduma) still inhabited the terra firma to the north of the entrance to the Baḥr al-Ghazāl. South of the lake lived the Kotoko, under a name that appears to belong to Känembu nomenclature. In all these regions, the Känembu were therefore already a people of consequence in the seventh/thirteenth century, and it can readily be accepted that in earlier times the area inhabited by Chadic-speaking peoples extended over a large part of Känem and Bornu. It would, however, be rash to claim that the region’s earliest farmers all spoke Chadic languages only, and it would be a mistake to suppose that the sole occupation of all speakers of Saharan languages, including proto-Kanuri languages, was animal husbandry.

South of Lake Chad, in the region of the clay plains of the lower Chari, the Känembu came into contact with an ancient civilization outstanding for its remarkable figurative art. We know from the archaeological excavations conducted by G. Connah on the Daima site that the inhabitants of the firki plains engaged in a mixed economy for an initial period, before the Christian era, when agriculture was practised alongside stock-breeding and fishing. According to the same author, the second period, commencing at the beginning of the Christian era, was marked by the introduction of iron-working techniques. This major innovation had a direct impact upon productivity and upon the process of sedentarization: the intensification of agricultural activities, particularly the practice of flood-retreat cultivation, was to relegate other activities – animal husbandry and fishing – to the background. The emergence during the second period of mud-brick architecture reveals that the inhabitants of Daima had adopted a sedentary way of life quite incompatible with transhumance. During the third period, extending from c. +700 to c. +1050, the inhabitants of the firki plains began to enjoy a life of less austerity: various artefacts deriving from long-distance trade make their appearance for the first time, and the vestiges of a weaving industry are to be found (long before Islam). The production of anthropomorphic and zoomorphic objects appears to have gained new momentum during this period, and, for the first time, Daima potters began to make extremely large earthenware jars, which are today regarded by the inhabitants of the region as the distinctive sign of the ‘Sao’. Another major innovation concerned fortifications. In Daima, Connah discovered the remains of a ditch surrounding the dwelling-mound, and it may well be that a defensive wall was erected on other mounds to protect the inhabitants. It would surely not be venturing too far to see the advent of fortifications as the first sign of an external threat that was later to affect the lives of the

PLATE 15.1 Bronze objects from excavations at Houlouf (North Cameroon)

PLATE 15.2 Primitive anthropomorphic earthenware jar from Houlouf (North Cameroon)
farmers of the Chari plain to a marked degree. This threat may be fairly readily identified as the expansion of the Kānem peoples.

After many centuries under the political and cultural sway of Kānem-Bornu, the present-day inhabitants of the firki plains, the Kokoto, use the term Sao or Soo to refer to their ancestors. Since the same term recurs in every region in which the Kānem peoples have superseded earlier populations, it is reasonable to suppose that it belonged originally to Kānembu nomenclature, and was used everywhere to denote the indigenous populations which were unable to resist assimilation.\(^{24}\) In its precise sense, the expression ‘Sao civilization’ must therefore be applied both to the relatively well-known culture of the ancestors of the Kotoko – corresponding to its established present-day use\(^{25}\) – and to the earlier cultures of the Komadugu Yobe and the southern part of the Bahr al-Ghazāl. In architectural terms, however, these three entities seem to have no affinities. Linguistic kinship alone can confer some semblance of unity upon these disparate groups.

Nevertheless, in the case of earlier periods, comparative linguistics provides a number of pointers of considerable interest. It is acknowledged

\(^{24}\) In the Daima region, the Kotoko adopted the Kanuri language only a few generations ago.

\(^{25}\) It is worth noting that Connah, drawing a clear distinction between the cultures of the firki plains and those of the Komadugu Yobe, no longer uses the term Sao to refer to a specific archaeologically identified culture.
today that Chadic languages constitute a branch of the great Afro-Asian (or Hamito-Semitic) family. The coherence of the Chadic group is doubtless to be explained by a lengthy evolution of the proto-languages in a geographical environment conducive to linguistic contacts and exchanges. It may be supposed that conditions in various southern regions of the central Sahara became optimal when these received sufficient rainfall during the wet periods. At the beginning of the third millennium before the Christian era, living conditions began to deteriorate rapidly, and it is possible that the proto-Chadic-speaking peoples were already obliged at that time to withdraw into more southerly regions. However, it is not impossible that their withdrawal from Ténéré and the neighbouring regions occurred during a more recent period. As they entered into contact with black African groups they must gradually have lost their Sudano-Mediterranean characteristics. Today, various groups of Chadic-speakers are to be found settled in refuge areas between the Niger and the Wadai Plateau. Of these groups, only the Hausa developed a new dynamism, resulting in a renewed expansion of their language. However, the history of the ‘economic take-off’ of the Hausa city-states pertains to a later period.26

The second major language family of the Chad region is the Nilo-Saharan family. In contrast to Afro-Asian languages, the languages of this family do not extend beyond the black African sphere. The most westerly language of this group is Songhay, which is spoken all along the Niger River, from Jenne to Gaya. Further to the north, however, there are also small groups of farmers (Sudanese) cultivating oases and a few groups of nomadic camel-drivers (of Berber origin) who speak different dialectal forms of Songhay.27 The second sub-group of the Nilo-Saharan family consists of Saharan languages (Zaghawa, Teda-Daza and Kanembu-Kanuri).28 Today, all contact between Songhay and Saharan languages has ceased; however, the many lexical forms common to the two language groups suggest that Sudanese herdsmen (and probably also farmers) speaking Nilo-Saharan languages occupied a large part of the region between the great bend of the Niger and the Ennedi mountains. The geographical continuity of this process of settlement must have been broken by the combined effect of the desertification of the Sahara and the advance of the Libyco-Berbers during the last centuries before the Christian era.29 To

28. The linguistic classification followed here is that of J. H. Greenberg, 1963b. Although the inclusion of Songhay in the Nilo-Saharan family has been disputed by P.-F. Lacroix, 1969, R. Nicolai has shown (in a forthcoming study) that the relationship between the Songhay and Saharan languages is even closer than Greenberg had thought.
29. According to P. Munson, 1980, p. 462, the Dhâr Tichitt region (Mauritania) was invaded by Libyco-Berber warriors in the seventh century before the Christian era. The arrival of the Libyco-Berber in the Air by $-370 \pm 40$ has been attested (Iwalen site to the south of Mount Grebun: J.-P. Roset, personal communication).
the west, the proto-Songhay-speaking peoples were to initiate the founding of the Käw-Käw (Gao), while in the Lake Chad region the proto-Saharan speaking peoples imposed their sway over Känem. The relatively slight linguistic variation within the Saharan group can be fairly easily explained by the subsequent history of Känem and, in particular, by the evolution of relations between the central power and the various groups of ‘black Saharan nomads’. 30

The kingdom of Zaghâwa

The first mention of Känem in written sources is to be found in a text by al-Ya’kûbî dated 258/872: This author tells us that in his time Känem was under the rule of a people called the Zaghâwa. 31 The same people are also mentioned by Ibn Kutayba (d. 276/889) on the basis of a report going back to the beginning of the second/eighth century. 32 At the end of the fourth/tenth century, another Arab author, al-Muhallabî, gives a great deal of information about the king of the Zaghâwa from which it is clear that the boundaries of his realm were the same as those of the kingdom of Känem. 33 Zaghâwa rule over Känem only came to an end around 468/1075, when a new dynasty, the Sëfuwa, came to power in the same state and drove the Zaghâwa eastward, into a region where they are still to be found today. 34

But what role exactly did the Zaghâwa play in the founding of Känem? Al-Ya’kûbî states that the various West African peoples he knew of ‘took possession of their realms’ after a long east–west migration:

The first of their realms is that of the Zaghâwa. They established themselves at a place called Känem. Their dwellings are reed huts, and they have no towns. Their king is called Käkura. Among the Zaghâwa there is a clan called Hawdîn: they have a Zaghâwa king. 35

From the explicit wording of the text it might be deduced that the Zaghâwa were among the earliest inhabitants of Känem, but without further evidence this is thought to be quite unlikely. The reference to the Hawdîn 36

30. The expression is used by J. Chapelle, 1957. Concerning the evolution of relations between Känem and the nomadic groups, more precise information will be found in Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 10. The following articles containing some more recent interpretations may also usefully be consulted: D. Lange, 1978, 1982a.
36. It is possible, as suggested also by other modern writers, that this name refers to the Hausa.
as a particular clan among the Zaghāwa seems to indicate, in fact, that the Zaghāwa were far from being a homogeneous people.

It seems probable that a dominant aristocracy, which produced both the king of Kānem and the king of the Ḥawḍīn gave its name to the whole group of peoples settled in both countries.

Al-Muhallabî, a century later, supplies the important detail that the Zaghāwa (using the term in a broad sense) comprised many peoples. While he does not refer to a dominant aristocracy (the ‘true’ Zaghāwa) he lays great stress on their king’s omnipotence:

[The Zaghāwa] venerate their king and worship him in place of Allāh the Most High. They imagine that he eats no food. His servants take it to him secretly in his houses: no one knows whence it comes. If any one of his subjects happens to meet the camel carrying the victuals, he is immediately killed on the spot [...] As he has absolute power over his subjects, he reduces to slavery whom he wishes [...] The religion [of the Zaghāwa] is the worship of their kings: they believe it is they who bring life and death and sickness and health.37

The great power of the king of the Zaghāwa, already apparent from al-Ya‘kübî’s much more concise account, and the very elaborate royal ritual described by al-Muhallabî, must be the result of a considerable number of factors, as has already been mentioned above. It is also unlikely that Kānem was founded as the result of a massive invasion by diverse migrants, as some writers have suggested. The most plausible hypothesis is that a small group of people triggered off state-building development in a region where iron-working techniques had been known since the fourth century of the Christian era (ḥaddād culture) and where the possession of horses was not only the mark of very considerable prestige but also a guarantee of superior fighting power. Equipped with weapons made of iron, and having the advantage of contacts, however rudimentary, with the outside world, this group – doubtless the Zaghāwa – gradually brought under its sway the agricultural and pastoral peoples living in the region south-east of Kawār, between Lake Chad and the Bahr al-Ghazāl38 the region later to be known as Kānem. The dominant Zaghāwa aristocracy is not likely to have come into being until later, although according to this hypothesis, the Zaghāwa as a whole may not have been ethnically different from the major groups of cultivators and pastoralists over whom they ruled at first. It seems to have been only at a very much later stage, in the time of al-Muhallabî, that diverse ethnic groups were integrated into one and the same state structure.

Al-Idrīsî, in the middle of the sixth/twelfth century, distinguished

38. The outfall of Lake Chad, not to be confused with the White Nile tributary of the same name.
between the kingdom of the Zaghāwa and that of Kānem and his evidence has misled many historians about the role of the Zaghāwa in the Lake Chad region. In reality, if al-Idrīsī's reports about the Central Sudan are taken together, it becomes clear that he juxtaposes items of information relating to two different periods in the history of Kānem: the period of Zaghāwa domination and the Sefuwa period. Instead of putting these items of information into chronological perspective, the author projects them on to the geographical plane.\(^{39}\)

Ibn Sa'id, writing in the seventh/thirteenth century, puts the Zaghāwa to the east of Kānem, near the Dādjo — where they still live today — and states that the majority of them were at that time under the rule of the king of Kānem.\(^{40}\) In the light of this body of evidence, we find, in the end, that it is more natural to explain the emergence of the Zaghāwa by the birth and growth of the state of Kānem than to postulate that an earlier ethnic group of Zaghāwa, homogeneous and distinct from the other groups in the region, conquered all the indigenous communities and thereby brought into being the first and largest state to be founded between the Nile and the Niger.

We can go a step further. If it is true that the history of Kānem and that of the Zaghāwa form an inseparable whole up to the fifth/eleventh century, we may deduce that the earliest mention of the Zaghāwa, which we owe to Wahb b. Munabbih, indicates that a state of Kānem was already in existence in his time. Wahb b. Munabbih (d. c. 112/730) was one of the famous traditionists of the Yemen in the Umayyad period. His evidence was reported by Ibn Kutayba (213/828–276/889). In addition to the Zaghāwa, the text mentions the Nūba, the Zandj, the Fezzān, the Ḥabasha, the Copts and the Berbers.\(^{41}\) The main point to note is that, according to this early piece of evidence, the Zaghāwa were differentiated both from the Fezzān (the successors of the Garamantes) and from the Berbers.\(^ {42}\) Half a century later, as we have seen, al-Ya'kūbi places the Zaghāwa kingdom in Kānem. Had al-Muhallabī not subsequently described the Zaghāwa kingdom in great detail without mentioning Kānem, we might have been tempted to interpret al-Ya'kūbi's reference to Kānem as meaning that the inhabitants of that region had completed an important stage in the general process of becoming settled. All the evidence goes to show that under the concept of Zaghāwa and that of Kānem there lies, in reality, one and the same historical fact: the first mention of the Zaghāwa, dating from the beginning of the second/eighth century, certainly seems to


\(^{40}\) Ibn Sa'id, 1970, p. 96; J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 211.


\(^{42}\) Al-Khuwārizmī, 1926, p. 6; J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 44.
indicate that the large state at the southern end of the central Saharan route was already in existence then. Moreover, if it is true that in the seventh/thirteenth century the indigenous Kānem traditionists had extensive knowledge of the royal genealogies and that traces of their knowledge are to be found in the Diwān and in information transmitted by al-Maqrīzī at the beginning of the ninth/fifteenth century, we can even date the beginning of the state of Kānem to slightly before the hijra. The expedition to Kawār undertaken by 'Ukba b. Nafi' in the early days of the Arab conquest shows the importance of north–south exchanges in this region. The control of these exchanges was no doubt in the hands of a Sudanic state beyond the Arabs' range.

Largely on the strength of oral tradition, some authors have taken the view that the Sao were the indigenous inhabitants of Kānem, and that from an early date they were under pressure from the nomad peoples further to the north. According to this theory, the Sao, being a sedentary people, lived in village communities – or even small fortified towns – and had been organized into chiefdoms since time immemorial. After their subjugation by the Zaghāwa nomads, the latter were believed to have learned from them the forms of political organization which made it possible to establish a large-scale state.

In point of fact, however, none of the assumptions underlying this theory of the foundation of Kānem rest on solid ground. Neither the sharp division between nomads and sedentary peoples, nor the distinction between indigenous and alien peoples, and least of all the postulated existence from an early date of a Sao people (or culture) is a tenable proposition. The Sao appear in written sources for the first time in the middle of the eighteenth century (Diwān) and they are mentioned by various tenth/sixteenth-century authors: at that time the term 'Sao' was used for a group of peoples established to the east and south-east of Lake Chad and probably speaking Chadic languages. It was only during their long resistance to the expansion of Kānem-Bornu that these peoples developed the forms of political and social organization that gave them their distinctive character. To attribute to the indigenous inhabitants of ancient Kānem the characteristics that were developed in relatively recent times by the indigenous inhabitants of Bornu (situated to the west of Lake Chad) is therefore a gross anachronism.

Moreover, there is no reason to assume that a sharp division existed,

45. In connection with the matrimonial alliances of the kings of Kānem, the Diwān records for the sixth/twelfth century the names of some sedentary Kānem clans, but they seem to reappear among the population of present-day Kānem (cf. Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 10).
The Chad region as a crossroads

particularly as regards ethnic characteristics, between nomads and sedentary peoples, or between indigenous and alien peoples, at the time of ancient Kânem. It would, for instance, be an entirely arbitrary statement to say that the indigenous inhabitants of Kânem, like the Sao, spoke a Chadic language. On the contrary, there may be a certain degree of cultural affinity between the sedentary and nomad groups – such as still exists to this day between the sedentary Kânembu and the nomadic Tubu and Daza (speaking closely related Saharan languages) – and if we accept this, it will be easier to understand how an aristocracy like that of the Zaghâwa (who today also speak a Saharan language) could have come to dominate the rest of the population without the division between two groups of peoples becoming particularly apparent to later foreign observers. Al-Muhallabî’s account – the only one to include information about the way of life – suggests peaceful coexistence between cultivators and herdsmen, the power to take coercive action being apparently confined to the king:

[The kingdom of the Zaghâwa] is under cultivation from one end to the other. Their houses are all reed huts, and likewise the palace of their king . . . As he has absolute power over his subjects, he reduces to slavery whom he wishes. His wealth consists of livestock: sheep, cattle, camels and horses. The principal crops of their country are millet, beans and also wheat. The majority of the King’s subjects go naked, wearing nothing but leather loin-cloths. They live by tillage and herding livestock.46

The kingdom of the Zaghâwa is not portrayed in this text as an entirely homogeneous whole. On the contrary, the author states at the outset that it comprises ‘many nations (umam)’, which clearly suggests the coexistence of different ethnic groups within a single state structure. At the end of the fourth/tenth century, the kingdom of Zaghâwa evidently expanded considerably, and was no longer confined to the region inhabited by kindred peoples speaking Saharan languages: Kânem proper, lying between Lake Chad and the Bahr al-Ghazâl, was still the centre of the kingdom, but other peoples on the periphery had been brought under its sway. According to al-Muhallabî, its length was fifteen days’ journey and its width the same. In connection with Kâw-Kâw the same author states that the kingdom of the Zaghâwa was larger but the kingdom of Kâw-Kâw more prosperous.47

It is undeniable that from that time on the largest state in the Central Sudan contributed greatly to the expansion of the Saharan languages and the cultural assimilation of neighbouring peoples. It was only later that the city-states of the Hausa came into being on its western border and the kingdom of Bagirmi was formed to the south-east of Lake Chad, in the

47. ibid., Vol. 4, p. 329; J. M. Cuoq, 1975, pp. 77–8.
land inhabited by Sara-Bongo-Bagirmian-speaking peoples, contributing in their turn to the expansion of other Sudanic cultures.  

In Kānem, another important development that took place at this time was an increase in the number of sedentary communities, together with the founding of small towns. Al-Ya'kūbī, at the end of the third/ninth century, wrote in so many words that the Zaghāwa had no towns. But al-Muhallabī, writing more than a century later, gives the names of two towns, Mānān and Tarāzākī. The town of Mānān is also known to us from the Dīwān, and Ibn Sa'id, in the seventh/thirteenth century, stated that it was the capital of the 'pagan ancestors' of the Sefuwa. There is evidence to show, however, that in the fifth/eleventh century and the first half of the sixth/twelfth century the kings of Kānem still took their principal wives from two nomad groups, the Tomaghrā and the Tubu. It was not until the first half of the thirteenth century, in the reign of Dünama Dībalāmī (f. 607/1210-646/1248), that sedentary elements finally gained the upper hand. This development went hand in hand with the progress of Islamization.

The progress of Islamization

Written sources yield very little material bearing directly on the growth of Islam in Kānem or in the neighbouring regions, and we are reduced to making use of odd scraps of information to build up a very imperfect picture of the process which led first to the conversion of the kings of the old dynasty, and then to the decline of the Zaghāwa and the advent of the Sefuwa. As regards the beginning of Kānem, it is well established that Islam played no part in the founding of this Sudanic state, nor in the early stages of its development. In Kawār, at the northern extremity of the central Sudan, Islam made a fleeting appearance with the expedition led by 'Ukbā b. Nafi' shortly after the middle of the first/seventh century, but it probably did not leave a deep impression. It was only in the second/eighth century when the Berbers of the Fezzān and Kawār were converted in large numbers, that Islam began to reach more southerly regions.

48. On the formation of the Hausa city-states, cf. A. Smith, 1970, and Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol IV, ch. 11. As regards the origins of Bagirmi, we must probably accept a much earlier date than that suggested by oral tradition. Indeed, the Dīwān states that 'Abd Allāh b. Kaday (c. 1315-35) waged war against the Lord of Bagirmi (§21). Moreover, it would certainly seem that the name Bakārmi given by Ibn Sa'id (mid-seventh/thirteenth century) also refers to Bagirmi (Ibn Sa'id, 1958, p. 49); J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 217.


50. Al-Muhallabī, apud Yākūt, 1866-73, Vol. 2, p. 932. In Kawār, al-Muhallabī mentions the towns of Bilma and al-Ḵaṣaba (ibid.). Dījādī, situated further to the north and at some distance from the great trans-Saharan route, may already have been a staging-post on the Wargla route.

Like many Berber peoples, the inhabitants of the Fezzān initially adopted a heterodox form of Islam, the Ibādiyya, thus allying themselves with the Khāridjite faction. The Fezzān, situated at the northern end of the central Saharan caravan route, controlled the bulk of the trade between the Lake Chad area — and a fortiori the Kawār oases — and the Muslim world of the Mediterranean. Hence it is quite likely that the earliest form of Islam propagated south of the Sahara by Berber traders was in fact the Ibādiyya. Indirect evidence of Ibādite influence in Kānem is afforded by an item of bibliographical information concerning Abū ‘Ubayda ‘Abd al-Ḥamīd al-Djināwunī, a governor of Djabal Nafūsa, a region where the Ibādite sect well survives to this day. It is to the effect that this governor, who lived in the first half of the third/ninth century, knew the language of Kānem in addition to Berber and Arabic.\textsuperscript{52} He no doubt learnt the language during a visit to the Central Sudan.

In the Fezzān the situation changed at the beginning of the fourth/tenth century when the new dynasty of the Banū Khattāb came to power: after that event Arab geographers ceased to mention the heterodox beliefs of the Berbers of the Fezzān, and it is very probable that the political change brought with it a change in the religious trend. This does not necessarily mean that the transition from Ibādiyya to Sunna took place with the same speed further south, though Khāridjite resistance eventually petered out there as well.

In fact, nothing very definite can be said on this point, and it is noticeable that al-Ya‘kūbī — though attesting to the existence of the Ibādite sect at Zawīla (the capital of the Fezzān)\textsuperscript{53} — is content, in his remarks about the inhabitants of Kawār, to state that they were Muslims:

Fifteen days journey beyond Zawīla, you come to the town \textit{madīna} called Kuwwār inhabited by a Muslim community composed of various peoples. The majority are Berbers. They bring Südān \textit{slaves}.

It is clear from this text that in the second half of the third/ninth century Kawār was inhabited by Berbers; their main occupation seems to have been slave-trading. The other peoples mentioned were probably Sudanic; even at that early date they may have been the Tubu who nowadays live there alongside the Kanuri. Most of the slaves whom the Berber traders of Kawār brought to the Fezzān no doubt came from Kānem, where the king of the Zaghāwa 'reduced to slavery those among his subjects whom he wished'.\textsuperscript{55} Al-Ya‘kūbī himself says that 'the kings of the Südān sell the Südān [their subjects?] for no reason, and quite apart from any wars'.\textsuperscript{56}


\textsuperscript{53} Al-Ya‘kūbī, 1892, p. 345; J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 49.

\textsuperscript{54} ibid.


\textsuperscript{56} Al-Ya‘kūbī, 1892, p. 345.
But this could not be true if we accept the fact that for the purpose of his trade with the outside world, the king of Kanem needed a considerable number of slaves. He must have been capturing most of these from the neighbouring peoples. It was not in his interests that Islam should spread among them, for Islamic law strictly forbids the enslaving of a free Muslim.

At that time, however, the kings of Kanem already seem to have established diplomatic relations with the Muslim states of North Africa. The available sources yield the following information: in 382/992 Ibn Kaṭṭāb, Governor of Zawila, received a present from one of the countries of the Bilad al-Sūdān whose name is not specified, but which, in view of the geographical position of Zawila, it is reasonable to suppose was Kanem; in the same year, the Zirid Sultan of Ifrīqiya, al-Manṣūr (373/984–386/996), likewise received a gift dispatched by a country of the Bilad al-Sūdān, the name of which is not stated. In 442/1031, one of his successors, al-Mu'izz (406/1016–454/1062) received a present of slaves sent by a malik al-Sūdān. We cannot be certain that it really was the king of Kanem who initiated these diplomatic missions, but we know that he was at least indirectly in contact with Ifrīqiya (Tunisia) for according to al-Muhallābī, he wore clothes made of Sousse (Sus) silk. As regards a later period, Ibn Khaldūn tells us that the kings of Kanem were in touch with the Hāfṣid dynasty (625/1228–748/1347) from the time of its foundation, and he reports in particular that in 1257 the king of Kanem and the Lord of Bornu sent the Hāfṣid Sultan al-Mustansir (647/1249–675/1277) a giraffe, which caused a great stir in Tunis. There is nothing surprising about the fact that the king, who was one of the major suppliers of slaves and had some sort of monopoly over their acquisition in his own country, should have courted the goodwill of his principal customers. In the eyes of the Muslim rulers, his economic importance no doubt outweighed any objections to his religious position.

Trade relations with the countries of North Africa and frequent contacts with Muslim merchants could not have gone on for long without enabling Islam to make considerable progress in court circles and certain sections of the population. It would probably be a mistake to visualize the progressive...

57. The number of slaves exported northward by Kanem must have been substantial. Zawila, on the route between Kanem and Tripoli, was according to several sources the biggest slave centre in the Sahara (al-Ya'kūbī, 1892, p. 345, al-Iṣṭakhrī, 1870, p. 40; al-Bakrī, 1911, p. 11; J. M. Coqu, 1975, pp. 49, 65, 81).
60. See above.
61. We have very detailed information about diplomatic relations between Bornu and Tripoli in the seventeenth century: the King of Bornu’s envoys brought written messages and presents to the Governors of Tripoli (cf. D. Girard, 1686).
Islamization of Kânem as an uninterrupted growth process: it would be strange if the king and the Zaghâwa aristocracy had not tried to curb a movement that threatened to undermine the economic order on which their power was at least partially founded. It is interesting to note in this connection that, according to the Dîwân, Arkû b. Bülû (c. 414/1023–459/1067), one of the last Zaghâwa kings,\(^ {64}\) established colonies of slaves in several of the Kawâr oases and even at Zaylä in the southern Fezzân, a region which today forms part of Libya. This information is of course difficult to check\(^ {65}\) but it is quite understandable that Arkû b. Bülû should have felt impelled by an instinct of self-preservation to extend his sway over the Berber communities of Kawâr in order the better to control both their trading activities and their religious proselytizing. The authors of the Dîwân do not, of course, state the motives that led to the occupation of Kawâr by Kânem, but they abruptly mention the ‘mosque’ at Sakadam (Seggedine), which may at least be taken as a sign of the importance of the ‘religious question’. Moreover, we know that at the same period the king of Ghana was extending his authority over the important trading centre of Awdâghust,\(^ {66}\) and the conjunction of these developments may not be fortuitous.

Arkû’s successor was the first Muslim king of Kânem. His name is given in the Dîwân in three different forms: Ladsû, Sû (or Sawâ) and Ḥû (or Ḥâwwâ’) – the correct form, overlaid by a recent interpolation, no doubt being Ḥû (or Ḥâwwâ’). The authors of the Dîwân, reporting the crucial event in the history of the Chad region, which was the accession to power of a Muslim sovereign in the kingdom of Kânem, were content with an extremely brief note: ‘he was invested by the Caliph’ (Dîwân, §10). Neither this manner of investiture nor the unorthodox form of the first Muslim king’s name admit of the hypothesis of a conversion. On the contrary, it is very likely that after Arkû’s death (at Zaylä’) the pro-Muslim faction within the old dynasty put forward the strongest candidate it could find having regard to the rules of succession then in force. In the absence of other evidence, we cannot dismiss the possibility that Ḥû (or Ḥâwwâ’) was in reality – as certain pointers suggest – a woman bearing the very Muslim name of Ḥâwwâ’.\(^ {67}\) He (or she) reigned for only four years, and was succeeded by ‘Abd al-Djalîl, whose reign likewise lasted four years. The next

---

64. It has been established that the Banû Dûkû of the Dîwân correspond to the Zaghâwa mentioned in external sources. See D. Lange, 1977, pp. 113–29.

65. Traces of an early Sudanic presence can easily be recognized in certain archaeological vestiges in the Fezzân: Ganderma, in the vicinity of Trâghen, and Mbîle, to the north of Gatrûn, are fortifications which were undoubtedly erected on the orders of the kings of Kânem (D. Lange and S. Berthoud, 1977, pp. 30–2, 37–8); however, the dates remain uncertain.


67. If the first Muslim ruler of Kânem was in fact a woman, then the chroniclers’ efforts to conceal her real name becomes quite understandable (D. Lange, 1977, pp. 29–30, 67–8).
The very short reigns of Hü or Hawwä', (c. 459/1067–478/1071) and 'Abd al-Djalîl (c. 478/1071–483/1075) stand in contrast with the long reigns of their predecessors: Ayūma, according to the Diwān, reigned for twenty years (c. 376/987–397/1007) Būlū for sixteen years (c. 397/1007–414/1023) and Arkū for forty-four years (c. 414/1023–459/1067). The shortness of the reigns of the last Zagḥâwa rulers may be interpreted as a sign of a serious crisis: after a long period of incubation, when the crucial stage was reached in the growing power of Islam, the Muslims first undermined the stability of the old regime and then brought about a drastic political change.

The advent of the Sēfuwa

By an extraordinary coincidence, the dynastic change that occurred in Kānem around the year 467/1075 is not reported clearly in any of the available sources. Consequently there is absolutely no way of establishing for certain the sequence of events that led up to the dynastic change, nor its precise economic and social effects. Since there is a dearth of information about this period despite its great importance, we must make do with what little evidence there is. The first step will be to establish that there really was a change of dynasty at that time, we shall then have to answer the question: ‘Who were the Sēfuwa?’ We may then be in a position to shed some light on the overall significance of the events that took place.

At the end of the paragraph which the Diwān devotes to 'Abd al-Djalîl, there is a curious passage whose real meaning has escaped most historians:

That is what we have written about the history of the Banū Dükû; we shall now proceed to set down the history of the Banū Ḥummay, who professed Islam.

Even since the days of Heinrich Barth this remark has been taken to refer solely to the adoption of Islam — and not to a dynastic change — since the authors of the Diwān indicate in a later passage that the next king, king, Ḥummay, was the first of a new dynasty, the Sēfuwa. The very short reigns of Hü or Hawwä', (c. 459/1067–478/1071) and 'Abd al-Djalîl (c. 478/1071–483/1075) stand in contrast with the long reigns of their predecessors: Ayūma, according to the Diwān, reigned for twenty years (c. 376/987–397/1007) Būlū for sixteen years (c. 397/1007–414/1023) and Arkū for forty-four years (c. 414/1023–459/1067). The shortness of the reigns of the last Zagḥâwa rulers may be interpreted as a sign of a serious crisis: after a long period of incubation, when the crucial stage was reached in the growing power of Islam, the Muslims first undermined the stability of the old regime and then brought about a drastic political change.

68. All previous writers, misled by an ambiguous passage in Diwān (§ 11), have confused the introduction of Islam with the change of dynasty.
69. It seems that more weight should be given to the chronological data supplied by the Diwān than to the report concerning the occupation of Kawār.
70. We cannot completely rule out the possibility that the first two Muslim rulers of Kānem were Ibādītes.
71. This date is arrived at by adding up the lengths of the reigns given in the Diwān (D. Lange, 1977, pp. 83–94).
72. Diwān, § 11.
73. The German traveller Heinrich Barth visited Bornu — and part of Kānem — in the middle of the thirteenth/nineteenth century, and brought back with him the only two extant copies of the Diwān. We also owe to Barth the first critical history of Kānem-Bornu, which is based on a knowledge both of the country and of the original texts.
Hummay, was the son of 'Abd al-Djalîl. We have seen above, however, that Hü (or Hawwä') was already a Muslim, as was his (or her) successor, 'Abd al-Djafil and this could not have escaped the notice of the chroniclers. Hence the passage just quoted must relate to something other than the introduction of Islam.

It is an eighth/fourteenth century author, Ibn Faḍl Allâh al-'Umarî, who establishes the succession of events. Basing his account indirectly on the evidence of Shaykh 'Uthmân al-Kânemî, ‘one of their king’s close relatives’, he writes:

The first to establish Islam [in Känem] was al-Hädî al-'Uthmânî who claimed to be one of the descendants of 'Uthmân b. ‘Affân. After him [Känem] fell to the Yazaniyyûn of the Bani Dhi Yazan.

The Yazaniyyûn to whom al-'Umarî refers are in fact none other that the Sëfuwa, whose name is derived from that of Sayf b. Dhî Yazan. The author says in so many words that the accession to power of the Sëfuwa was preceded by the introduction of Islam.

Much later, at the beginning of the thirteenth/nineteenth century, Muḥammad Bello offers more information about the advent of the Sëfuwa dynasty at a certain stage in the history of Känem. He refers to a group of Berbers who, having left the Yemen, travelled all the way to Känem:

The Berbers found in this country different ['adâm] people under the domination of their Tawârik brothers [called] Amâküa. They took their country away from them. During their occupation of the country, their state prospered so much that they dominated the most remote countries of this region.

The first point to note is that the author distinguishes between two ethnic groups of foreign origin which reigned over Känem one after the other. This remark in itself leads us to think that the author is referring to the change of dynasty in the fifth/eleventh century. The decisive point is that he makes the second group – and not the first one – come from the Yemen, the homeland of Sayf b. Dhî Yazan, the eponymous ancestor of the Sëfuwa. He must have known that the dynasty that still reigned over Bornu in his days claimed to have come from the Yemen and that it was not they who had founded the state of Känem, as the Dīwân and popular tradition implied, but an earlier group that, according to him, was also of foreign origin.

As to the alleged Berber origins of the successive rulers of Känem, it

75. M. Bello, 1951, p. 8.
76. In Muhammad Bello’s time the Sëfuwa had left Känem three and a half centuries earlier to settle in Bornu, west of Lake Chad. Bello, who himself reigned over the ‘Caliphate’ of Sokoto, west of Bornu, knows this, for he says that the group of Berbers from the Yemen (the Sëfuwa) reached Känem and not Bornu.
must be borne in mind that Bello's work was written some 800 years after the events under discussion and that in the meantime the role of the Berbers in the Central Sudan had increased enormously, both politically and religiously. The Sëfuwa legend of origin appears to have been primarily the work of Muslim scholars many of whom came to early Känem from the areas where the Himyarite traditions were still alive. In working out the legend, the clerics were no doubt influenced by the local folk tales and traditions, especially those referring to north-south migrations.  

The antiquity of the tradition that tends to conceal the dynastic change by putting the emphasis on the adoption of Islam is attested by Ibn Sa'îd in the thirteenth century. Drawing on sources going back to the reign of Dünama Dîbalâmi (c. 607/1210–646/1248) he provides the earliest evidence of the existence in Känem of a dynasty claiming descent from Sayf b. Dhi Yazan:  

The Sultan of Känem . . . is Muḥammad b. Djîl of the line of Sayf b. Dhi Yazan. The capital of his infidel ancestors, before they were converted to Islam, was Mänân; then one of them, his great-great-great-great-grandfather, became a Muslim under the influence of a jurist, after which Islam spread throughout the land of Känem.  

The great-great-great-great-grandfather of Muḥammad b. Dîl (= Dūhama/Aḥmad b. Salmama/'Abd al-Djalîl = Dūhama Dībalâmi) was in fact Ūmmayy (c. 467/1075–478/1086) and he, as we have seen, was by no means the first Muslim king of Känem, still less a new convert. The only point in this passage that directly relates to the dynastic change is the change of capital: first Mänân, then Ndjîmî.  

Another Arab geographer, al-Bakrî, writing in 460/1067–8 gives us a terminus a quo both for the introduction of Islam into Känem and for the change of dynasty:  

Beyond the Zawîla desert and forty days' journey from that town there lies the land of Känem, which is very difficult to get to. [The inhabitants of Känem] are idolatrous Sudán. It is said that there exists in those parts a clan descended from the Umayyads, who took refuge there when they were persecuted by the Abbāsids. They dress in the fashion of the Arabs and follow their customs.

We do not know for certain to what period this information relates, but it

79. Al-Bakrî, 1911, p. 11. The fact that this text does not mention Kawâr (situatet south of Zawîla) could perhaps be used as an argument in support of the report contained in the Dîmân (§ 9) to the effect that Arkû (c. 1022–67) had incorporated Kawâr into Känem. But it should be noted that the text does not mention the name of Zaghâwa either. Co-editor's Note: N. Levtzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 64 translate the end of the passage on the descendants of the Umayyads erroneously as 'they still preserve the dress and customs of the Arabs'. The author's translation is more correct.
cannot be later than 460/1067–8. According to the chronology which emerges from the *Dīwān*, that was in fact the very year in which the first Muslim king, who was still a member of the old Zaghāwa dynasty, came to power in the kingdom of Kānem. Al-Bakrī, living in far-off Andalusia, could not yet have known of the event even under the most favourable circumstances; and still less could he have known about the change of dynasty, which only happened around 468/1075. So his reference to the ‘idolatrous’ inhabitants of Kānem squares very well with the information in the *Dīwān*. As for the ‘descendants of the Umayyads’ who ‘dressed in the fashion of the Arabs’ – and who therefore were not Arabs – they must presumably have been a group of Berbers who had adopted certain Arab customs (at all events, they were not black Africans). This group had perhaps drawn attention to itself by its insubordination to authority and it may quite possibly have been one of the forces that were later to contribute to the success of the pro-Muslim faction within the old dynasty before they brought about the downfall of that dynasty.

Of all the Arab authors, al-Idrīsī (who wrote in 549/1154) should have given us the most accurate account of the changes that took place in Kānem – and the surrounding area – in the second half of the fifth/eleventh century. Writing only three-quarters of a century after the fall of the Zaghāwa, he had access to a wealth of information, most of it transmitted to him orally but also some derived from written sources. But in fact al-Idrīsī muddled all his material together, and also threw in some details that were pure inventions. Hence his description of the *Bilād al-Sūdān* must only be used with the greatest caution.

Nevertheless, it emerges from the mass of information provided by al-Idrīsī that in his day ‘Kānem’ and ‘Zaghāwa’ were two separate entities. All the evidence goes to show that the Zaghāwa no longer ruled over Kānem: having lost their ancient privileges, they were apparently living in quite wretched conditions. Most of them seem to have been nomads. Nothing specific is said about the new rulers of Kānem, but some of the author’s remarks suggest that the Zaghāwa were their subjects. There is the same vagueness about the capital: Mānān and Ndjīmi are both mentioned, and Mānān seems to have been the more important town, but it is not clear from the text whether it was the capital of Kānem. No information is given about the religious situation.

It will be deduced from what has gone before that the dynastic change
referred to by Muhammad Bello and the coming to power of the Yaza-niyün reported by al-'Umarī must have taken place between al-Bakrī's time (460/1067–8) and al-Idrisī's (549/1154). The dynastic change is then seen to coincide with the expulsion of the Zagha wa from Kāneh. This is as far as we can go on the strength of outside sources, but from analysis of the Diwān, the range of dates for this event which is of crucial importance for the history of the Central Sudan, can be narrowed down to the beginning of Ḥummay's reign (c. 467/1075–478/1086) for his predecessor, 'Abd al-Dжалîl, was the last king of the Banū Dūkû line and Ḥummay was to be the first of the Banū Ḥummay line. The distinction drawn between these two royal houses thus signifies that there was a sharp break in dynastic continuity; it does not coincide with the introduction of Islam.

Who were the new rulers of Kāneh? The Diwān provides no answer to this question: while linking Ḥummay genealogically with his predecessor, its authors are silent about his true paternal ancestry. However, the traditions of Kāneh and Borno which have been committed to writing in recent times say generally that the new dynasty was descendent from Sayf b. Dhī Yazan.

Several authors have commented on the origin of this new dynasty. Abdullahi Smith suggested that they were a product of the nomad/semi-nomad world, probably Tubu who allied with the other groups through marriage relations in order to come to power. This appears also to be the view of John Lavers. Nur Alkali as well as Bawuro Barkindo believe that they were of local origin but attempted to assume foreign origins in order to gain prestige.

We know that it was during the rule of Ḥummay or of his successors that the Sayfīd nisba was introduced. Sayf b. Dhī Yazan was a Yemenite hero who, according to legend, helped drive the Ethiopians out of the Yemen in the second half of the sixth century of the Christian era. And it is known that the Berbers of North Africa liked to claim Yemenite descent in order to differentiate themselves from the Adnanite Arabs of the Nadjd and the Hidjāz. This attitude was the equivalent in the genealogical field of the adoption of the Khāridjite heterodoxy in religious matters.

It should be noted, however, that Sayf b. Dhī Yazan distinguished himself in battle against an African people. The theme of war between white Muslim Arabs (at a time before the Prophet!) and black Africans who prac-

83. His mother was a Kay [Koyam] - a people of unknown origin - by the name of Takrama, the prefix ta- possibly indicating Berber influence. The analysis of the name Ḥummay itself shows the possibility of being derived from the name Muḥammad [loss of the prefix Mu- and the ending -d, acquisition of a new suffix] as a hypocoristicon, which is still common today among the Tawārik, and other people who were Islamized through Berber influence.


tised a traditional religion (though the Ethiopians were in fact Christians!) came to appeal strongly to the imagination of certain classes of Arabs. In Egypt this theme eventually took the form of a true folk tale or novel which exalts the powers of Sayf b. Dhī Yazan in his innumerable battles with the 'impious blacks'.

Whether those who introduced this strange genealogical concept into the black African environment of the Central Sudan were aware of its racialist overtones remains uncertain. That they were Berbers cannot be doubted; in North Africa the Himyarite legend was still current. H. T. Norris has found out that the Himyarite saga has been ancient and widespread among the Berbers of North Africa and the Sahara. Those who flaunted the name of Sayf b. Dhī Yazan could not have been either Sudanese or Arabs, both of whom had highly respectable genealogies, whereas on the other hand the Berbers were proud of their Himyarite Yemeni origin. The Berber Muslim clerics who elaborated the Sayfīd niṣba were doubtless attracted also by the similarity in meaning or usage between 'Kānem' meaning South of Teda-Daza, and 'Yemen' often used colloquially to mean south.

All that can be said here is that the Sēfuwa appear to have been of a different genealogy from their Zaghāwa predecessors and that their coming to power was not connected with the introduction of Islam since Ḥummay was not the first Muslim ruler of Kānem. Although there is no concrete evidence to show that the Sēfuwa were not of local origins, there is equally none to say convincingly that they were.

It has been shown that the Islamization of the Central Sudan started with the conversion of the inhabitants of Kawār, who later became the main agents of the expansion of Islam into the kingdom of the Zaghāwa. In Ḥummay's time (467/1075–478/1086) the gradual infiltration of Islam into the various sections of the population had been going on for at least two centuries. The political authorities eventually found that they could not remain indifferent to this process for it was bound to undermine the king's absolute power over his subjects and at the same time help to weaken the position of the Zaghāwa aristocracy. We have seen that the king probably enjoyed a monopoly of the acquisition of slaves and it was clearly in the Berber traders' interests to break the royal monopoly so as to have more direct access to the sources of supply. As for the Zaghāwa aristocracy, it can probably be regarded as the means whereby the king exercised his power over the common people. On the other hand, it was in the interests of the various peoples integrated into the kingdom to embrace Islam as a protection against the king's arbitrary power.

87. R. Paret, 1924, p. 88, has shown that the written form of this tale dates from the beginning of the ninth/fifteenth century. Oral versions certainly existed from a much earlier date.
But at the end of the eleventh century, Islam was still restricted to the narrow circles of the royal court and the aristocracy, and it was only much later, at the time of Dūnama Dībalāmi (c. 607/1210–646/1248) when it became the instrument of an expansionist policy, that it was able to bridge the gap separating the ruling aristocracy from the ruled peoples and thereby to become a truly popular religion.90

Hummay came to power in Kānem around the year 468/1075. At the same period, the Berber movement of the Almoravids in the western Sahara was driving southwards to conquer the kingdom of Ghana, where it set up a Muslim dynasty.91 Further to the east, the Almoravid movement resulted a little later in the establishment of a new Muslim dynasty in the kingdom of Kāw-Kāw (Gao) on the east bank of the Niger.92 It would not be unreasonable to suppose that the movement led by Hummay in the Central Sudan was one of the consequences of the religious ferment that had been stirred up, in a different economic context, among the western Berbers. But unlike the new dynasties of the Western Sudan, the Sēfuwa of Kānem were integrated into an African context, thus ensuring the continuity of the state tradition they had inherited. A century and a half after their seizure of power, the Sēfuwa kings were doing their utmost to eradicate the memory of their real origins and so they linked themselves directly with their Zaghāwa predecessors. In the end, the state institutions had proved to be stronger than all particularist tendencies.

90. The theory of a decline of Islam at the beginning of the Sēfuwa period is presented in greater detail in D. Lange, 1978.
Introduction

I once characterized the thousand years before + 1000 in West Africa as 'the silent millennium'.¹ I pointed out how serious for our knowledge of history this silence is, since it must have contained the formative periods essential for the subsequent emergence of those kingdoms and religious centres whose existence we can perceive at the end of the millennium or at the beginning of the next. The time depths of this silent millennium are for the most part too great to be reached by oral traditions;² from archaeological evidence more is known about the last few millennia before the Christian era than about the first millennium of the Christian era. This is partly an accident or due to the nature of the sites that have been archaeologically investigated, but in part it may truly represent a change in the way people lived and which has happened hitherto to have brought their remains less prominently to the notice of archaeologists (see below p. 466). In the succeeding centuries, on the other hand, not only do we begin to get historical records but the association of works of art with centralized social and political institutions, which has attracted the attention of both archaeologists and art historians. However, we must try to put together as much of the picture as we can; sometimes this may involve merely recording data we have without being able to interpret it clearly or synthesize it into any more general scheme of things.

The expansion of agriculture

Early developments

The change in the way of life of fundamental importance for our period is from one whose subsistence base was in hunting, gathering and fishing to one in which it depended upon agriculture and stock-raising — or at least depended most upon these activities — because even with fully fledged

farming systems, hunting, gathering and fishing continued to contribute to the food supply, even if not in a major degree. In considering this change as it affected the Guinea zone we should not think of it as a sharp break with the past, as a totally new practice suddenly imported into the area, as happened in many parts of eastern and southern Africa. There are likely to have been many 'stages' through which agriculture and food-production passed; initially the earliest planned seed-sowing of indigenous African cereals south of the Sahara, or in the southern part of what is nowadays the Sahara Desert itself, may simply have been a rather desperate resort of sedentary or semi-sedentary fisherfolk during a period of increasing aridity. Such people would have been accustomed to gaining their livelihood by combining in their diet food drawn from the aquatic resources of their habitat together with grain collected from the wild stands of suitable grasses growing in the neighbourhood. It is probable that with a reduction of fishable areas of water available to them, a greater proportion than before of the food supply would have been derived from this grain. With continuing desiccation the stands of wild grasses would have become thinner and thinner and it would have been necessary to go further afield to harvest them. People always tend to cling to the way of life that they know, and to be able to do this in such a situation, the logical adaptation was to make the wild grass grow more abundantly and nearer the home base, by planting seeds near the dwindling lakes and rivers. It was no discovery that grasses and many other plants grew out of the seeds of the previous year's crop after they have fallen into the ground; folk who gather food from the wild are well aware of this, only before there was no point in making it happen, since Nature did it for you! At first this artificial planting was regarded as a temporary expedient, but as time went on more and more reliance had to be placed on it. In this way there was no sudden switch from hunting, gathering and fishing to agriculture, but a progressive change in the proportions of different types of food. Once man had consistently taken a hand in propagating the cereal grasses, genetic changes began to take place in them. This resulted in the process of 'domestication' and in improving them for purposes of human cultivation, harvesting and human consumption.

The exploitation of the oil palm – the most important tree crop of the Guinea zone – offers another example that demonstrates that the change from gathering to agriculture was not a sudden one. There are only small steps between gathering wild nuts fallen from a tree; taking measures to prevent wild animals consuming all the fallen nuts; climbing the tree to obtain the complete cluster of nuts; giving some protection to natural palm seedlings against wild animals, bush-fires or weeds; the assigning of proprietary rights for individuals or families in certain trees or areas of trees;

FIG. 16.1 The Guinea zone: places mentioned in the text
and finally the intentional planting of palm nuts. Thus the change need not be a sudden one, yet somewhere along the line a change has occurred from gathering the fruits of the wild to planned food production.

Survival of Stone Age hunters

There is no doubt that over most of our area by the beginning of the seventh century, it was food production that provided the basic means of subsistence, rather than hunting and gathering, but there may well have been scattered groups of people, both in the savanna and in the forest, among whom hunting and gathering survived. Perhaps a folk-memory of such groups in the Asante (Ashanti) forests of modern Ghana is enshrined in the stories of the mmoatia (‘little folk’). In the archaeological record now known to us, there are a number of instances where people maintained a Late Stone Age type of technology long after other peoples had adopted metal for their tools and weapons. The people of the earlier millennia of the Late Stone Age were without pottery and ground-stone axes and were undoubtedly hunters, gatherers and fishers; in the later part of the Late Stone Age (sometimes called ‘Neolithic’) it seems that people were food producers, but just because they had pottery and ground-stone axes we cannot assume this. It may well be, for example, that the people who in the eleventh century left their stone tools behind in the Yagala rock shelter, in Sierra Leone, were predominantly hunters and gatherers.

It is always difficult to obtain direct evidence of agriculture and is largely a matter of chance. The indirect evidence is open to different interpretations: grinding hollows on rock surfaces are almost impossible to date, movable querns and grinding stones can be used for purposes other than food preparation, and wooden objects such as pestles and mortars rarely survive. Nevertheless, a stout and well-carved stick about 1.25 m long and 7.5 cm in diameter was turned up in alluvial deposits worked for tin in central Nigeria. It has been taken to be a pestle or pounding stick, and a sample of wood from it yielded a carbon-14 date in the ninth century.

Crops

The most important cereals in the savanna were bulrush millet (*Pennisetum americanum*), Guinea corn (*Sorghum bicolor*), and two kinds of ‘fonio’ or ‘hungry rice’ (*Digitaria exilis* and *D. iburua*). In the Futa Jallon a wild grass (*Brachiaria deflexa*) had been domesticated, and African rice (*Oryza glaberrima*) was dominant in the western part of the Guinea zone. In the

southern savannas and the eastern forests, domesticated African yams formed the staple, especially *Dioscorea cayanensis* and *D. rotundata*. It is possible that the combination of food derived from yams and oil palms, supplemented by proteins from fish, goats, dwarf cattle and bush-meat (including snails) helps to explain the build-up of population in southern Nigeria.\(^8\)

**Diseases**

By the seventh century also, the incidence of the sickle-cell gene would have built up to levels sufficient to provide the population with considerable protection against malaria; initially the introduction of agricultural methods and ways of life would have increased the incidence of malaria.\(^9\) Mobile hunting bands of about twenty-five people make a much less fertile breeding ground for the establishment of any endemic disease than larger aggregates of settled agricultural populations. In addition, in the case of *falciparum* malaria, the conditions produced by clearing areas in the forest for agriculture favoured the disease. This is because the mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*, the principal vector of *falciparum* malaria, has few suitable natural breeding grounds in the primeval forest, since pools tend not to form on the leaf-covered humus of the forest floor, and where they do are too dark for the habits of *Anopheles gambiae*, which likes to lay its eggs in sunny or well-lit pools. On the other hand open waterholes and domestic rubbish (such as discarded calabashes) of an agricultural village provide ideal breeding grounds for mosquitoes; and the roofs and eaves of thatched huts furnish dark lurking grounds for them during the daytime. We do not know precisely when or how the sickle-cell gene mutation took place. If a child receives it from both parents he will die of sickle-cell anaemia before reaching reproductive age; if he receives it from neither parent he runs a high risk of dying of malaria before reaching maturity; if, however, he receives it from only one parent, he will not die of sickle-cell anaemia and he is provided with a large measure of protection against malaria. Where the incidence of sickle-cell is high in the population, this is always in areas of endemic malaria; it has been able to grow to these high levels in spite of its lethal effect when received from both parents because of the protection it affords against malaria. It has been calculated that it must have taken at least 1500 years to build up to the levels recorded in north-eastern Nigeria; the build-up is probably slower in less humid areas. There tends to be a gradient from south to north in West Africa, with the highest incidence near the coast and a northward diminution.

\(^8\) T. Shaw, 1972, p. 159.

Types of farming and of settlement

We can thus envisage at the beginning of our period a widespread population of village farmers. In some cases (see below) the population density and the ecology of the area was such that permanent settlements were possible, persisting over many generations; in other areas, the food requirements of a community reached a point where it was more economical in terms of labour input for a village to move into an unfarmed area, or one not recently farmed, rather than for farmers to seek land with the necessary fertility further and further away from their village; thus the common long-fallowing system was developed. Where villages remained on one spot for generations and mud houses were rebuilt on the remains of their predecessors every ten to twenty years, the level of the village rose above the surrounding ground and created a mound. Archaeologists have begun to understand how to locate such mounds and a few have been excavated, but it requires much more work than has hitherto been carried out before it will be possible to give a coherent picture of the village farmers who built them, even in a single restricted area. There is a limit to the amount of information that can be obtained by the excavation of a single site.

The other type of village site much more easily escapes notice; it can only be recognized by a surface scatter of potsherds where the ground has been turned over by recent farming; under vegetation it is undetectable, except in some cases by actual vegetation differences. Even where the sites of such villages are spotted, excavation is likely to be less profitable since there is little depth of stratigraphy. This is why we know less about early transient farming villages than we do about sites occupied by the hunters and gatherers of the Late Stone Age, who had a habit of frequently returning to rock shelters and rock overhangs, which can easily be recognized and investigated. Such caves and rock shelters were often utilized temporarily by the later, iron-using agriculturists, for refuges or convenient lodging places during farming activities, but were seldom developed as permanent occupation sites. An exception to this is provided by the Tellem caves of the Bandiagara scarp in present-day Mali, where archaeological and skeletal material from the caves has been intensively studied. The present Dogon people of the area attribute the remains in the caves to the ‘Tellem’, but say that the caves were unoccupied at the time of their arrival from the west. Carbon-14 dates indicate that the ‘Tellem’ occupation of the caves only began at the very end of our period and lasted two or three centuries. The ‘Tellem’ were formerly supposed to have migrated to the east into what is now Burkina Faso and to have been ancestral to the present Kurumba there. However, studies of the physical anthropology of the Kurumba and of the Tellem skeletons indicates that they are genetically different.

The Guinea zone

The diffusion of metallurgy

The making of iron

The farmers used iron, which was widely smelted throughout the Guinea zone by this time. In some parts of the area, the reduction of iron ore had already been practised for a thousand years. Carbon-14 dates for the 'Nok Culture' site of Taruga in present-day Nigeria indicate that iron-ore reduction was being practised there from at least the fourth century before the Christian era. An iron-ore reduction site has been excavated at Hani, in Ghana, and charcoal associated with slag and fragments of tuyères and furnaces provided a carbon-14 date in the second century of the Christian era. Carbon-14 dates in the seventh century are associated with iron-ore reduction furnaces in Nigeria from the foot of the Dala hill in Kano, and in the Kubanni Valley near Zaria; two more recently obtained dates from further excavation among this group of furnaces are from the eighth and tenth centuries, suggesting that this area, near a good source of hard lateritic ore, remained a traditional iron-ore reduction centre over some centuries. South of the River Niger and west of its confluence with the Benue, a group of iron-ore reduction furnaces excavated at Ufe Ijumo has dates in the ninth and twelfth centuries and the level marking the abandonment of the sites yields a fourteenth-century date.

Occupation sites

Apart from actual furnaces for the reduction of iron-ore, a number of occupation sites are now known that offer evidence of the use of iron from the beginning of the Christian era, and many more by the middle of the first millennium. Although the dates are not as early as those of the Taruga iron-smelting furnaces, occupation mounds in the section of the Niger Valley flooded by the Kainji lake and in the nearby Kaduna Valley have in one case produced an initial date of −130, in another dates of +100 and +200, and in another of +200. The earliest occupation dates for the supposed capital of Mali at Niani and for Ife fall in the sixth century.

17. M. Posnansky and R. McIntosh, 1976, pp. 172, 190.
20. Author's information, unpublished.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

century. So also does the earliest date yet obtained for the use of iron in the area of the Benue–Mayo–Kebbi confluence in Cameroon;\(^{23}\) at the site of Daima in north-eastern Nigeria south of Lake Chad the estimated date is only a little earlier.\(^{24}\) It is a little more difficult to interpret the carbon-14 dates published for the neighbouring ‘Sao’ sites in northern Cameroon and the Republic of Chad.\(^{25}\) Some of the shell middens of the River Casamance in modern Senegal were accumulating from the beginning of our period as a result of the food-gathering habits of iron-using people; research has suggested that it was the ancestors of the present inhabitants, the Dyula, who were in occupation of the area.\(^{26}\) In addition to the shellfish exploited, ocean fishing was practised, domestic goats and cattle were kept, and it seems likely that rice had become a staple diet and that its cultivation had made permanent occupation of settlement sites possible. The shell middens of Dioron Boumak in the delta of the Saloum in Senegal seem to have their beginnings towards the end of the eighth century, with an intensification of the exploitation of the shellfish resources from the beginning of the eleventh. The end of this exploitation comes after our period, probably at the time when the Manding were replaced as the coastal population by the Sereer Niominka in the fifteenth century.\(^{27}\)

Just as it is likely that a hunting and gathering way of life continued in many places for a long time after agriculture first began to be practised, so it is likely that the spread of iron technology was uneven. While our earliest knowledge of it at Taruga dates from several centuries before the Christian era, there are other places in the Guinea area where it was not adopted until a thousand or more years later. During this period there must have been many instances of people with a Late Stone Age technology living not far away from people using iron. As yet we know little about the relationship between such groups practising differing levels of technology — whether there was a peaceful exchange relationship between them, whether there was any kind of confrontation, or whether they occupied different areas and different ecological niches and had little to do with each other. An example of this kind of situation can be seen in northern Sierra Leone, where at Kamabai the uppermost level, with iron tools, slag and pottery, produced carbon-14 dates in the seventh and eighth centuries, whereas at Yagala a Late Stone Age technology apparently persisted into the eleventh century.\(^{28}\) According to the twelfth-century geographer al-Zuhri, the people of ancient Ghana raided people who possessed no iron but fought with ebony staves, a poor match for the swords and spears of the people of

\(^{27}\) C. Descamps, G. Thilmans and Y. Thommeret, 1974; C. A. Diop, 1972; M. Posnansky and R. McIntosh, 1976, pp. 184, 193.
The Guinea zone

Ghana.29 We shall not obtain a historically correct picture of the spread of iron-using in West Africa until many more sites of the relevant period distributed in representative localities have been excavated and dated. Before the discovery of the smelting site at Hani dated to the second century of the Christian era (see above p. 467), the earliest known iron in modern Ghana was from the site of New Buipe30 dated towards the end of the eighth century. It is only recently that archaeological investigation has begun in the highly specialized environment of the Niger Delta. So far no Stone Age site has been discovered there, and the earliest occupation date comes from the end of the ninth century.31

In spite of the uneven spread of a knowledge of iron-working, we can take it that by the beginning of our period it was widespread; by the end of the period there must have been very few pockets of Stone Age technology remaining, although it is possible that certain stone tools remained in use.32 Over most of the area, however, even a folk memory of the use of ground stone axes was lost. When encountered accidentally in the ground, a ceraunic origin was ascribed to them; they were regarded as thunderbolts which descended from the sky with lightning flashes and were held responsible for damage to trees and buildings. As such they came to be revered as vehicles and symbols of divine power and found their way onto the altars of Nyame, Sango and the ancestral obas of Benin. In southern Ivory Coast they developed specialized outsize forms which must surely have had a ritual rather than a functional significance.33

Local trade

Undoubtedly one of the most important effects of the spread of iron was an increase in the efficiency of agricultural production. Iron hoes and tools for bush-clearing would have facilitated the creation of those agricultural surpluses that permit a greater division of labour, craft specialization, and ultimately the development of urbanization and support for a royal or priestly court. The process may have been a slow one, and it must not be assumed that it was necessarily 'population pressure' resulting from the agricultural way of life that was the cause, or even one of the causes, of progress towards state formation. On the other hand, there would have grown up local systems of exchange based on specific surpluses and craft specialization. Differences of environment would have fostered the development of such exchange systems, since the products of one environment could be

33. B. Holas, 1951.
exchanged for those of another. A riverine area might exchange dried fish for grain grown further away from the river; bush-meat hunted and caught in the savanna might be exchanged for foods only found in the forest. An area smelting iron by exploiting its own rich sources of ore might trade iron products for pottery made in an area better endowed with suitable clay. Gradually such networks would grow, and products of one region would travel, perhaps through several intermediaries, for greater and greater distances. For example, kola nuts, which grow in the forest regions of the south, may have been exchanged for the shea butter produced in the north. This exchange is still important, and may well follow a pattern that is more than a thousand years old. Such local exchange systems may have been important in the development of centralized authority, for once the additional wealth derived from long-distance trade was injected into them, it gave power out of all proportion to what he had previously possessed to the chief who controlled the bartered resources.34 Undoubtedly this process was one of the most important developments during our period in Guinea, as the tentacles of the more developed trans-Saharan trade began to articulate with the already existing exchange systems. Such expansions of the trading network would not have caused the abandonment of the existing local exchange systems; as has been shown for another region, the development of trade mechanisms tends to be additive rather than sequential.35

Just as the development of agricultural systems and of iron-smelting was uneven, so undoubtedly was the development of exchange networks. Where exchange systems were poorly developed, there would be a lack of one of the stimuli towards centralization of authority and state formation, helping to preserve the many stateless societies of West Africa. In the tropical forest culture of South America, the way the lack of homogeneity in the tropical forest (contrary to the picture gained from superficial impressions) led to long-distance trading has been closely studied, together with the way intercommunal warfare failed to disrupt it.36 Studies of trade in West Africa have tended to concentrate on external trade37 but the exchange of natural products between the different ecological zones of West Africa is likely to be ancient.

External trade

One of the most interesting pieces of evidence for a concentration of some form of wealth, and, in all probability, a concomitant centralization of social and political authority, is provided by the Senegambian megaliths. An approximately oval region 350 km long from east to west and 175 km

from north to south (roughly $13^\circ-16^\circ$ W, $13^\circ-14^\circ30'$ N) is remarkable for the number of megalithic monuments within it. Their distribution corresponds closely to the basins of the middle and upper Gambia and Saloum rivers and their tributaries. In this area over 28,000 large dressed stones have been counted.\textsuperscript{38} At one site alone (Sine-Saloum) there are some 900 stones arranged in 54 circles. The circles are composed of standing stones, between ten and twenty-four in number, their height above ground varying between half a metre and nearly three metres (see Figs. 16.2; 16.3; 16.4). The commonest shape is cylindrical, others are square or D-shaped in section, others taper towards the top, but all the stones of a particular circle are of the same type. Most stones are flat on top, but some have a hollow or a protruding boss. The internal diameter of the circles varies between four and seven metres. Most circles have a line of similar stones on the eastern side, running north and south. The most remarkable are the rare so-called 'lyre-stones', cut in the shape of a V from a single block of lateritic stone.

Excavation of some of the circles in recent years has demonstrated clearly that they are funerary in character, a number of single and multiple inhumations having been unearthed. Excavation has also provided three carbon-$14$ dates in the seventh/eighth centuries. Careful examination has shown that there are four types of associated monuments: megalithic circles, stone tumuli (usually having a frontal line of stones to the east like the megalithic circles), stone circles (not marked by megalithic standing stones but by lateritic blocks only just showing above the soil), and earth tumuli.\textsuperscript{39}

It is interesting to speculate on what made possible the diversion of so much human effort into the cutting, transporting and erecting of these thousands of stone pillars. Because they are carved out of a surface capping of lateritic stone rich in iron, it has been suggested that the monuments were created by people who gained wealth by smelting iron and supplying it to the surrounding communities. This may have been the case, but if so, the smelting furnaces have not yet been found — any more than the living sites of the megalith builders. This one-sided nature of the archaeological evidence makes it difficult in the present state of knowledge to attempt historical reconstructions. Another suggestion to account for the Senegambian megaliths sees their location as strategically placed to give the occupants of the area control of trade in gold from the goldfields of Bure and Bambuk.\textsuperscript{40} If the eighth-century dating is correct, this seems a little early as far west as this for the pull of Arab trade to the north to have been a responsible factor. Although the Arabs conquered the Maghrib early in the eighth century, thereafter their immediate preoccupation was more with the conquest of Visigothic Spain than with the establishment in Morocco

\textsuperscript{38} V. Martin and C. Becker, 1974a.

\textsuperscript{39} P. Ozanne, 1966; P. O. Beale, 1966; D. Evans, 1975; G. Thilmans and C. Descamps, 1974, 1975.

\textsuperscript{40} M. Posnansky, 1973, p. 151.
FIG. 16.2 Plan of the Wassu site
FIG. 16.3 *Two circles at Wassu, with their outlying stones more or less complete in the East*
FIG. 16.4 The lyre stone at Kerbatch

474
of settled centres of commerce. If the Senegambian megaliths do in fact predate Arab trade and owe their existence nevertheless to a northward export of gold, perhaps we should envisage the Berber people of the desert as the intermediaries in a trade with Byzantine North Africa. If such a trade existed it would help to explain the comparative rapidity with which the Arabs established commercial relations with the Western Sudan once their occupation of North Africa had become more settled.

To the north of the megalithic area and in the valley of the Senegal is an area of large mounds, some of which have produced pottery comparable with that from the megaliths. Over 4000 have been counted and where excavated contain, like the megaliths, multiple burials. There is a rich profusion of grave goods including gold and carnelian beads, gold and copper ornaments and iron weapons; copper vessels of Moroccan workmanship point to a northward exchange connection. Although there is now an eighth-century carbon-14 date for one of the more southerly mounds, the majority are regarded as belonging to the tenth century. Similarly other mounds with rich finds have been excavated in the upper Niger Valley below Segu; at Kūgha, at the beginning of the great bend of the Niger, one associated with standing stones has been dated to around +1000. In this same middle Niger bend area, the megaliths of Tondidarou, although now plundered and ravaged by modern antiquity collectors and never scientifically excavated, probably date to the same general period and attest to a trade in gold coming down the Niger from the Bure goldfields. It is significant that the development of Kumbi Saleh (ancient Ghana), as the collecting point for gold from this source for the trans-Saharan trade, begins not later than the eighth century. Towards the end of that century Ghana was already famous as 'the land of gold' as far afield as Baghdad, as evidenced by the well-known reference of al-Fāzārī.

Both Kumbi Saleh and Awdāghust were probably collecting points for gold coming from the Bambuk goldfields, and perhaps it was the greater organization of their trade routes that caused a decline in the social and political importance of communities that had hitherto exploited gold sources further to the west.

There is some indication that before the routes through Taghāza and Sidjilmāsa were developed, the earliest route by which West African gold reached the Arab world was more directly into Egypt, via the Dākhla and Khārja oases. Perhaps we can see a confirmation of this early route in

42. M. Posnansky and R. McIntosh, 1976, pp. 184-5.
47. N. Levtzion, 1968a, pp. 231–2.
three carbon-14 dates in the sixth, seventh and tenth centuries from the site of Marandet, in Air, on the route between Gao and Egypt. Here there are refuse heaps from which some 42,500 crucibles have been excavated, representing the activities of a settlement of artisans. Authorities have disagreed on the metal that was worked, there being rival claims for gold and copper, but the only hard evidence we have as yet is in the form of an analysis of the residues of a crucible, which showed it to be copper and not gold. It is obviously important to learn a lot more about Marandet, to confirm and narrow the dating, and above all to have some idea of the source of the raw materials being used, the destination of the finished products, the identity of the artisans, and the political and commercial control of the organization of the trade. If gold was being used by artisans at Marandet, the raw material would already have travelled a long way from Bambuk and Bure (because it is doubtful whether the Asante goldfields of modern Ghana were yet contributing to this trade) and would be half-way to Egypt. Furthermore, if the crucibles without traces of copper were used for gold, why have none been found in comparable quantities at Kumbi Saleh, Awdâghust, Walâta, Es-Sûk and other places known to have been collecting points for gold in the trans-Saharan trade? What was the source of the copper? For a long time research workers have tried to identify the 'Takedda' described by Ibn Baṭṭûta in the fourteenth century as a source of copper in the southern Sahara. It was thought that a satisfactory identification had been made with Azelik, 150 km to the north-west of Marandet, where ruins and an abundant scatter of slag and moulds give evidence of Azelik’s former importance as a copper-working site. In spite of the earlier claim that the source of copper had been found 13 km east-north-east of Azelik and of more recent work identifying copper deposits in the area, it has been stated that there was insufficient copper ore for exploitation and that it must have been imported copper that was being worked at Azelik, whose carbon-14 dates (twelfth and sixteenth centuries) are later than those for Marandet.

There is plenty of evidence from Arab writers, from al-Bakrî onwards, that copper was an important export into the Guinea zone. It was used as currency in Takedda and Kânem in the fourteenth century. A southbound caravan that apparently got into difficulties in the Madjâbat al-Kubrâ in Mauritania early in the twelfth century was carrying 2000 brass...
rods and jettisoned them. Gold was the prime commodity desired from West Africa by the trans-Saharan merchants, but there were other valuable products to be obtained that yielded high profits, especially ivory and slaves, in areas where no gold was to be obtained, such as the eastern part of the Guinea area. Does the combination of this fact, and the earliness of the copper-working activities at Marandet, taken together with the existence thence of the early trade route direct to Egypt, help to explain the earliness of the carbon-14 dates obtained for the finds at Igbo-Ukwu, far away to the south in the eastern part of the Guinea zone?

The beginnings of centralization

Igbo-Ukwu

Igbo-Ukwu lies some 35 km south-west of Onitsha, the large market town on the east bank of the River Niger, whose political structure has been influenced by Benin. Here, not long before the outbreak of the Second World War, a man digging a water cistern in his compound was surprised to encounter, at no great depth, a number of bronze objects. These later found their way into the Nigerian Museum in Lagos and the Antiquities Department marked the spot down for future excavations, which took place after the war. Three sites adjacent to each other were uncovered. The first was a storehouse or shrine where regalia and ritual objects had been kept and for some reason abandoned intact. The second was the wooden-lined burial chamber of an important personage, and the third was a disposal pit into which ceremonial objects had been cast. The storehouse yielded over seventy large copper and bronze objects and nearly five hundred small items, the burial chamber nineteen large pieces and thirty-two small ones, the disposal pit thirteen large and eighty-seven small items. In the storehouse were over 60,000 beads, and there were over 100,000 in the burial chamber. Highly decorated pottery of a characteristic style occurred at all three sites, with a particular richness in the disposal pit. Such finds were clearly not articles of everyday use by common people, and the treatment accorded the personage in the burial chamber indicates a considerable measure of distinction above others in the community. This distinction may be that accorded to a senior title-holder (ozo) of the Igbo title-taking system, perhaps to the eze nri himself, the ‘priest-king’ who until the early years of the present century held powerful ritual and religious sway, though not political power, over large parts of Igboland. The most important part of his function was in connection with the yam crop and the fertility of the land, and was concerned with removing ritual pollutions after taboos had been broken and in settling disputes. In a pre-

PLATE 16.1 Igbo-Ukwu excavation finds:
16.1(a) (above) miniature bronze pendant head - side view (height: 7.5 cm)
16.1(b) (above, right) bronze pendant representing a decorated ram's head (height: 8.5 cm)
16.1(c) (right) bronze skull of a leopard mounted on a copper rod (length: 24 cm)
16.1(d) (below, right) Bronze pendant ornament in the form of a bird and two eggs, with crotals and beads attached by copper wire chains (height: 21.5 cm)
PLATE 16.1 Igho-Ukwu excavation finds:
16.1(e) (above, left) Bronze cylindrical bowl (height: 20 cm)
16.1(f) (above, right) Bronze bowl on stand (height: 27.5 cm)
16.1(g) (left) Bronze shell surmounted by an animal (length: 20 cm)
16.1(h) (below, left) Bronze crescent-shaped bowl (length: 14 cm)
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

scientific age, when the causation of such things as fertility and the weather are little understood, it is to be expected that men should have attempted to control such things, vitally affecting their livelihood, in a pre-scientific, religious way. This had happened at the hunter-gatherer stage of existence, but the emphasis had then tended to be upon the plenitude of game and upon successful hunting. When the change to agriculture was effected, the emphasis shifted to the productivity of the land itself and those factors affecting it; it was therefore worthwhile for farming communities to set aside special resources and, often, special persons whose function it was to ensure the fertility of the land. The centralization of social wealth and political power is usually intimately connected with this process and although the manifestations may have been different, it is likely to have been an integral part of the development of other Guinea kingdoms and centralized institutions.

At Igbo-Ukwu there were no recognizable imports other than the metal used for making the bronzes, and the glass beads. Not enough is known about the latter to provide any sure indication of date. The bronzes are in a style utterly unlike those of Benin or Ife and stand in isolation, so that it is difficult to use stylistic features to date them. One is thus thrown back on the carbon-14 dates: wood from a copper-studded stool in the burial chamber fell in the time range from the eighth century to the early eleventh century, and three determinations from charcoal in the disposal pit belonged to the same period; another from the same source, however, fell into the late fourteenth/early fifteenth century; it is similar to the date for the only other excavated bronzes comparable to those from Igbo-Ukwu. The reliability of the earliest carbon-14 dates for Igbo-Ukwu has been disputed but often on erroneous grounds.

Since there is very little copper in Nigeria and no sites of ancient exploitation of this mineral are known, a date in the eleventh century or earlier implies that copper was imported overland from the north, and doubtless there were other imports, such as glass beads, and perishable goods such as salt that have not survived. Eastern Nigeria had no gold to export in exchange, so these luxury goods were probably paid for in ivory and slaves. Some have objected that nowhere else as far south in West Africa do we have evidence for long-distance trade in the period indicated by the carbon-14 dates. This is an argument to be respected, but it must be remembered that the earliest route by which the Arab world obtained gold from the Western Sudan linked ancient Ghana with Egypt via al-Wâhât, the oases of Khârja and Dakhla (see above p. 475). It was only when this route became too dangerous after the middle of the ninth century that the western route from the Maghrib was developed. There was an 'ivory route'

60. T. Shaw, 1975a.
in late Roman and Byzantine times from Tripoli to the Lake Chad area along the shortest crossing of the Sahara and it is likely that the Arabs would have also used this route. In the eleventh century al-Bakri reported that copper was exported southwards from Sûs towards the land of the blacks.\(^{62}\) The remains of the caravan carrying some two thousand brass rods which came to grief in the Madjâbat al-Kubrä were dated to around +1100 (see above p. 476). Thus there is plenty of evidence, not merely for trade in general across the Sahara in the period to which the Igbo-Ukwu finds are assigned by carbon-14 dating, but also for a trade in copper. The only question that remains is whether this trade reached as far south as Igbo-Ukwu. It will only be possible to ascertain this by the excavation of other sites of similar age in the area. A possibility also to be borne in mind and to be checked by future investigation, is that copper could have come from the metalliferous region in the basin of the River Niari, just north of the lower Zaire River.\(^{63}\)

Perhaps there is some support for the idea that trans-Saharan trade reached well to the south by the eleventh century in two carbon-14 dates obtained from the Nyarko quarter of Begho, in modern Ghana, which became the great collecting point for gold from Asante traded north to Jenne.\(^{64}\)

### Ife

The high point of the Ife culture lies outside our period, since a collation of twenty-five carbon-14 dates from seven different sites excavated there suggest that it is possible to identify the mid-twelfth to the mid-fifteenth centuries as the period *par excellence* of the building of edge-set potsherd pavements, which may themselves be a useful ‘marker’ of the social, political and economic circumstances that made Ife pre-eminent in its area.\(^{65}\) If thermoluminescent dating can be trusted, the production of the famous brass heads and other copper-alloy castings belongs to the last century-and-a-half of this three-hundred year period.\(^{66}\) However, the development of centralized political and religious institutions, with sufficient wealth to patronize outstanding artistic production, does not take place overnight. It is therefore important to take account of the circumstances

---

64. M. Posnansky and R. McIntosh, 1976, p. 166. Investigations since the text of this chapter was written indicate that the ‘tell’ site of Jenne-Jeno, 3 km south-east of the present city, was occupied from -200 to +1400; the findings throw much light on the origin and development of Jenne. See R. J. McIntosh, 1979; R. J. McIntosh and S. K. McIntosh, 1981; S. K. McIntosh, 1979; S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980a, 1980b.
that gave rise to these developments, and because this formative stage lies within our period it is proper to give it some consideration. This question of 'the rise' of Ife is related to a wider one, that of the origin of Yoruba urbanism in general, which has puzzled a number of writers.⁶⁷

We can take it that during the first millennium of the Christian era the forest lands of Nigeria became progressively settled by a population practising an agriculture based on yams and oil palms; in the savanna lands immediately to the north of the forest the staples are likely to have been yams, Guinea corn and, in some areas, African rice; in the northern savanna lands yams would have been replaced by bulrush millet. For some thirty generations, bush clearance and agricultural production had been made more efficient by means of metal tools made from locally produced iron. Although fieldwork and excavation have not been sufficiently widespread in Yoruba-land to provide archaeological confirmation of this picture, six carbon-14 dates, lying in the sixth to the tenth centuries of the Christian era, from two sites in Ife, are confirmatory evidence of human occupation.⁶⁸

This population is likely to have had three characteristics. First, all settled agricultural populations in pre-scientific times feel that as part of their agricultural practices they have to do something, in the face of the vagaries of the weather and the variability of crop yields, the causes of which are not fully understood, to ensure the fertility of the land and the productiveness of their crops. These things are believed to depend upon the goodwill of supernatural powers. Ordinary folk may not feel confident to handle such potentially dangerous forces, or may be afraid to do so; accordingly they are happy to delegate the task, for a consideration, to specialists who do not have the same hesitancy and who claim to have the necessary expert knowledge. Thus cults and their priests are important in the life of the community.

Secondly, there is commonly a build-up of population. This is not automatic and it is usually slow, but it does take place; there may be setbacks because of famine years and diseases engendered by permanent settlement to which hunters and gatherers are not liable in the same way, but births tend to be more frequent and women to produce and rear more children than among hunters and gatherers. This population increase itself affects agricultural practices and modifies them in the direction of the more efficient exploitation of different ecozones.

Thirdly, this more efficient exploitation of resources is likely to have led to specialization in different ecological areas, with an exchange of products between them (as already described above, pp. 438-9); this would favour the establishment of a recognized system of internal exchange.⁶⁹ The complementarity of the resources exploited in the different ecological areas favours occupational specialization and economic interdependence; geo-

Graphically adjacent segments of the society become symbiotic. Such a situation fosters the institution of redistributive arrangements. That Ife may have occupied a special position in such an exchange network will be suggested later.

Different conditions seem to have prevailed west of the Niger from those in the east, where farmers felt safe enough to live in dispersed homesteads in the middle of their farming land. Whereas defensive earthworks are very rare in Igboland, they are common in Edo and Yoruba country, indicating that, for some reason we can at present only guess at, west of the Niger the needs of defence made the farmers live together in villages within walking distance of their farms. Accordingly the social system which developed among the Yoruba-speaking and Edo-speaking peoples was quite different from that of the Igbo. Because people of different lineages were living close together, the claims of a neighbour began to rival, and then outstrip, those of a kinsman. The demands of kinship tended to threaten the solidarity of the village where its defence needs were concerned, and the disruptive effect of these obligations was damped down by giving certain lineages specified functions in the life of the community, such as providing the chief, the war leader, the historian, the spokesman and the priest. In this way leadership tended to develop into permanent authority. Permanent authority, in its turn, when developed on any large scale, itself requires assistants and an administrative class to help carry out its functions. Or have we put the cart before the horse? Was it the fact that the Yorubas had already developed a hierarchical social system (compared with the segmentary system of the Igbo), with a greater and greater proportion of the fruits of production concentrated at the pinnacle and in the upper layers of the social pyramid, which tended to exacerbate and increase the inter-community rivalry for control of the fruits of production and, perhaps, in the form of land, of the means of production too?

If it is the case that it was the needs of defence that nucleated a scattered agricultural population into villages, what was the nature of the threat? Had the density of population reached the point where there was real competition for the available agricultural land so that one community threatened another? Or did the threat come from outside, as a result of the commercial and military dominance of the trading states to the north, Mali and Songhay? One of our difficulties here is that we do not know enough about the dates at which these various earthworks in Yorubaland were built. It should not be difficult to devise an archaeological research programme to find out. Apart from the fourteenth/fifteenth century inner wall at Benin, the majority of the earthwork systems in the Edo-speaking area appear to have been built as a response to internal imperatives and to be more in the nature of boundaries. Perhaps in fact defensive earthwork...

building did not begin in Yorubaland until external pressures were felt, as they certainly were after 1100: at its greatest extent the domination of Mali extended down the River Niger to within 100 km of the most northerly Yoruba settlements. We can only guess at how these pressures first exerted themselves, but the most likely demand was for slaves. Slave-raiding southwards from the kingdom of Mali certainly took place, but how early it extended as far east as northern Yorubaland remains uncertain. Slave-raiding was more important in the Central Sudan than in the Western Sudan, because the former produced no gold. As already observed, a system of exchange, in which such things as shea butter from the northern savannas were traded into the forest areas in return for products such as kola, may be older than any long-distance trade. Once this exchange system had been established, and once, as a result of their own contacts, the northern areas found themselves in a position to offer other goods obtained from further afield, these would join the shea butter and other goods and would stimulate the offering in return of additional products from the south.

Given on the one hand the need for cults to ensure the fertility of the land and the success of the crops and for priests to serve them as specialists in supernatural farm management and, on the other hand, the need for the institutionalization of redistributive arrangements, the situation is well on the way to one in which there is the emergence of some form of ceremonial centre. Granted that the priestly function could be performed at the village level, and often still is, nevertheless where there is a build-up towards exchange systems, such specialists may tend more and more to become located at the nodes of such systems. Similarly, the redistributive need could be met by a system of market exchange only, but where there is a priestly functionary mediating supernatural goodwill, to secure the fertility of the land and the welfare of the people, he will expect remuneration for his services, sometimes directly, sometimes in the form of sacrificial offerings to the divine powers, most commonly through a mixture of the two, in which the distinction is blurred. In this situation grew up the ceremonial centre, in which the co-ordinated institutions of temple and palace, of shrines and an alafin or oba, emerged as the effective redistributive institutions. There is less evidence for the oni of Ife having been involved in trade than for the oba of Benin: this may be on account of the collapse of Ife's commercial hegemony in the fifteenth/sixteenth century, the disruptions of the Yoruba wars of the nineteenth century, and the lack of continuity in traditions. The oba of Benin controlled all trading by individuals outside Benin and alone owned the most valuable articles of trade, slaves, leopard skins, pepper, palm kernels, coral and most ivory. However, one of the Yoruba ifa oriki, or divination songs, gives us a hint: it refers to Oduduwa,

the founding hero and first oni of Ife, as a trader grown wealthy from the export of locally produced kola nuts who imported horses from the north.\footnote{R. Horton, 1979, p. 101, quoting W. Abimbola, 1975.}

Ife was situated at the centre of a northerly bulge in the forest\footnote{The possible significance of which was first pointed out in T. Shaw, 1973, subsequently amplified by R. Horton, 1979.} and was in the heart of a region of ecological diversity. Situated on fertile land in the forest, it was within reach both of the savannas to the north and of the coast to the south, as well as of a major river valley (the Niger) and of a number of lesser riverain environments in the valleys draining south to the Atlantic. Thus we can see how Ife could develop into a ceremonial centre with the oni regarded as a sacred figure, supported by tribute and toll on local trade, and in a commanding position by virtue of his pre-eminence in the religious system. Such a centralization of ritual and supernatural authority carried with it a potential for exploitative economic supremacy and for genuine political power. When, therefore, the commercial demands from the north began to make themselves felt, Ife was in a good position to take advantage of them. It is likely that the northern slave-raiders found their task less easy in the forest; they were more easily ambushed, and villages were better able to protect themselves. Therefore, those wanting slaves found it more prudent to buy them from the locally established authorities of these areas than to capture them. The later Atlantic slave-traders found the same thing at the coastal margin of the forest. Commercial slavery became added to domestic bondage and the trade enhanced the wealth and power of the oni and his entourage, which itself grew and developed with the system. Where external trade impinged upon African societies not endowed with desirable natural products to export such as gold, but where a process of political centralization had begun, slaves were the most obvious exportable commodity.\footnote{J. D. Fage, 1974.} The most conservative estimate of the number of slaves exported across the Sahara to North Africa in the first half of the nineteenth century is $10,000$ a year,\footnote{A. G. B. Fisher & H. J. Fisher, 1970, p. 60 and Unesco, \textit{General History of Africa}, Volume IV, chs 6 to 10. See also R. A. Austen, 1979.} and there is plenty of evidence that this trade had been going on for very many centuries. Even if the numbers involved were smaller at the time of Ife’s pre-eminence, the trade could well have been the principal source of Ife’s wealth. We cannot assume that the many instances in Ife bronzes and terracottas of bound and gagged individuals, of decapitated corpses, and of heads and limbs severed from the body, all represented slaves, but it is likely that this was often so. If slavery was an integral part of the social and commercial system, as well as providing the labour that serviced the court and wealthy traders and officials, it could also have furnished the ritual sacrifices required to preserve the health and prosperity of the king and his free-born subjects. The
slaves sold to northern traders were probably paid for in salt, but as the trading relationship became established and this in turn helped to develop the wealth and power of the oni, so luxury goods would become added to the imports from the north, and other indigenous products would be offered in exchange. Copper and brass, textiles, beads, bracelets, swords and horses were added to the expensive imports. In the mid-twelfth century al-Idrîsî also mentions spices, perfumes and manufactured iron tools among items exported from southern Morocco to the land of the blacks. 78 How the crafts of brass-casting and glass bead-making became established we cannot tell; perhaps an oni demanded of a resident northern merchant that he should import a teacher to instruct his own household slaves; perhaps another merchant decided he could make more profit by establishing a local bead-making industry rather than by importing beads and bangles ready-made. However 'slavery' is defined, 79 seeing it as the essential basis of the economic and social system that gave rise to the art of Ife in no way detracts from that art; the institution of slavery underlay the artistic productions of classical Greece, and we do not think worse of them for that. The copper and brass had to be paid for in some way, since there is virtually no copper in Nigeria and there are many Arab records of its export to West Africa along the costly caravan routes from the north, as already pointed out in connection with Igbo-Ukwu. 80 The other exotic luxuries would also have been expensive but, being mostly perishable, they less obviously demand an explanation of how they were paid for. Perhaps the kola nut trade has a very ancient history 81 and kola and ivory helped to pay the bills; 82 but it is difficult to think of anything other than slaves as the major exportable commodity. 83 The suggestion that trade was important in the formation of the Ife state does not imply that the kingship was dependent on the personnel engaged in this trade. 84 Nevertheless, once external trade injects surplus wealth into the local exchange system, it enormously adds to the power of the chiefs who control its distribution.

There are a number of hints of the influence from the north; the tradition that Obatala, the creator of mankind, was 'white', 85 the technique of brass-casting employed 86 and the location along the Niger of the 'Tsoede' group of bronzes. A majority of these may have originated in Owo 87 and one at least in Ife, but their position along the northern frontier of Yoruba-
land can be interpreted as indicating the importance of movements coming from this direction.\(^8\)  

Other hints of a northerly connection have been claimed in some of the art and architecture of ancient Ife, pointing back ultimately to the late Roman-Byzantine/Arab world of North Africa. This ‘influence’ has been seen in the employment of the guilloche and rosette patterns;\(^8\) in the impluvium type of house\(^9\) which follows the same plan as the Roman ‘atrium’ house; and in the stone and potsherd pavements resembling mosaic and tesselated pavements.\(^91\)

These resemblances may be fortuitous, and such things as the guilloche and rosette patterns could easily have arisen independently; similarly the impluvium house and the potsherd pavement could have been locally devised solutions to the problems of architectural design in a climate of hot sunshine and bright light combined with heavy seasonal rainfall. Taken together, these various hints do suggest the likelihood of cultural influence from the north, but it is not a resurrection of the old, discredited ‘Hamitic hypothesis’, and it is not necessary to invoke wave after wave of large-scale invasions.\(^92\) It may be correct to see these things, along with the traditions of origin, as demonstrating the political imposition of a foreign ruling dynasty, but even this is not necessary,\(^93\) nor do these hints of connections into a world far away from Yorubaland vindicate the idea that the arts of Ife were not really indigenous. Brass-casting and bead-making are likely to have remained a royal prerogative, the latter perhaps connected with the provision of beaded crowns for the sixteen rulers in Yorubaland entitled to wear them by virtue of authority from Ife.\(^94\)

A beginning for the apogee of ancient Ife in the twelfth century would fit in with the likely date of the penetration into Yorubaland of those commercial demands from the northern world of which Ife was able to take advantage. Perhaps the empire of Mali was too far away to provide this stimulus, and we should look rather to the early Hausa states, in the rise of which economic factors played a particularly important role.\(^95\) We know that at a later date Zazzau specialized in slave-raiding southwards, and perhaps the now abandoned urban site of Turunku fulfilled this role at an earlier period; it lies only 300 km from the Niger at Tada. Unfortunately we still know little archaeologically about the early Hausa states, and the site of Turunku has not yet been excavated.

---

\(^91\) G. Connah, 1969, p. 50.  
\(^92\) S. O. Biobaku, 1955, pp. 21–3.  
Viewed from the narrow historiographical standpoint, the seventh to eleventh centuries of the Christian era constitute a silent period in the history of the coast and inland regions of Lower Guinea. For one thing the documentary sources, European or Arab, have little or nothing to offer. They begin to touch on this area only from the thirteenth/fourteenth and sixteenth centuries respectively. Oral tradition on the other hand, more reliable for more recent centuries, become suspect with greater time depth.

Used in conjunction with information from art, archaeological and related anthropological (especially linguistic) sources, it can shed new light on this early period of Lower Guinea history. The art of some Lower Guinea peoples has valuably depicted how people looked and dressed, what their weapons and buildings looked like at different periods, as well as providing us with an independent time scale for the history of such peoples.

In what follows, the above-mentioned sources are examined closely for what they have to tell about the types of terrains that existed in the Lower Guinea region between the seventh and eleventh centuries; who their inhabitants were at the time as distinct linguistic and societal groups; and the manner of their life styles. The forms of relationships that existed between them and outside groups, as well as who these outsiders were, are also investigated.

The ecological setting

The Lower Guinea Coast refers normally to the stretch from Cape Palmas – the border between northern Liberia and Ivory Coast – to Cameroon, and is divided into two natural zones. The western half extending from Cape Palmas to the Benin River is smooth and almost featureless, whereas a zone of submergence stretches from the Benin River to Mount Cameroon (640 km). The featureless stretch is characterized by wide and almost flat coastal plains as well as river outlets often deflected by long-shore drift which moves from south-east to north-west. Between Cape Three Points
FIG. 17.1 Towns and sites mentioned in the text
FIG. 17.2 Language groups, peoples and kingdoms mentioned in the text
and the Volta River, low plateaux approach the coast; and dunes are present across estuaries and valley mouths. The zone of submergence, by contrast, comprises the submerging Niger delta which has several openings into the sea; wide, shallow, continually changing bars formed by an eastward coastal drift; and finally estuaries like the Cross River and Rio del Rey which are lined with continuous swamps.

In parts of the coastal zone to the west of the Niger delta, there are some cliffs, and lagoons separated from the ocean by sand ridges. In Ghana and Nigeria outer sand bars of varying width provide effective shelters for the lagoon waterways.

The shore of the mainland north of the lagoons is rocky and cliffed in many places, and modern settlements tend to use the higher sites while the older villages are more frequently at lagoon level.

Behind the coastal strip, there are the southern Asante (Ashanti) plains and upland in Ghana, and the low plateaux in Togo and the Republic of Benin. The Asante uplands have for long been one of the most densely populated parts of West Africa, principally because they are adequately watered, have fertile soils and are marginally situated relative to the northern savanna forest which is restricted to the west of the sandstone escarpment of the Volta basin and the southern end of the Togo mountains. Forest savanna reappears along the coast eastward from Takoradi, changing to true savanna on the Accra plains and extending to the north-east along the dry corridor of the mountains. Mangrove and swamp vegetation occur in the outer edge of the relatively small Volta delta. The open vegetation of the plains is due primarily to the lack of rainfall. Marked differences of soil exist as between the Accra plains and the Volta delta and within the plains themselves.

The Niger delta as a whole is an enormous mass of mixed sediments whereas the Volta has a disproportionately small delta in relation to river length. The Niger delta is large by any standard. East of the Niger there is a broad belt of sedimentary rocks, within which lie the Anambra basin in the north, and the Cross River basin in the south.

The Lower Guinea plains show much greater diversity of climate and vegetation than of landform. The eastern 'dry corridor' crosses the plains from north-east to south-west with mean annual totals of less than 1140 mm extending from the north to the sea and also occurring in the Niger Valley. Immediately to the east of the Atacora Mountains of Togo, annual rainfall averages over 1270 mm along the watershed to Nikki, but totals diminish rapidly northward. To the south-east of the corridor annual totals increase to over 1525 mm. These rainfall totals are reflected in the vegetation pattern. High forest is present in the districts east of Ibadan and south of the watershed, and the greater part of the plains is under open savanna woodland. This open vegetation probably contributed to the development of the relatively large states in this region (e.g. in Yorubaland and the modern Republic of Benin).
Linguistics and early history

Archaeological evidence, especially from surface finds and from shrines (e.g. Ife and Benin in Nigeria), as well as from excavations (e.g. Asokro-chona, Kintampo and Ntereso in Ghana; Ugwuelle-Uturu, Iwo Eleru, Afikpo rock shelters in Nigeria) indicate that the Lower Guinea coast and forest now occupied by Kwa-speaking and Benue-Congo-speaking peoples have experienced a long occupation by farmers, and before this by hunters several thousand years ago. Although archaeological and linguistic (glotto-chronological) evidence suggests a general physical and cultural relationship between the earlier and present inhabitants, such a relationship is yet to be precisely determined. Such delimitation is necessary especially as some of these present inhabitants have myths of origin that tend to show that they have come into their areas of present abode relatively recently.

Linguistic studies suggest that the greater part of the forest belt of West Africa, an area stretching over 1600 km from central Liberia to beyond the Lower Niger in Nigeria is occupied by peoples speaking a series of related languages, with underlying similarities in vocabulary and structure. These are the Kwa and Benue-Congo sub-families of the Niger-Congo language family.

In the central region, the most important (i.e. populous) of these language groupings are Akan (Twi, Fanti, etc.), and Guang dominant in Ghana and Ivory Coast; Gà and Adangbe (Dangme) in southern Ghana; Ewe dominant in Togo and the Republic of Benin and also spoken in south-eastern Ghana. Following Greenberg,¹ the members of the eastern Kwa sub-family in Lower Guinea are Yoruba-Igala; the Nupe group (including Nupe, Gbari, Igbirra and Gade); Edo; the Idoma group (including Idoma, Agatu and Iyala); Igbo; and Ijo. Benue-Congo-speakers are present directly north of and along parts of the Cross River and include the Ibibio, Efik and Eko groupings as well as the Tiv.

If underlying similarities in vocabulary and structure characterizing each of these language groups reflect a common proto-language for each, then it means that linguistic evidence points to early cultural continua over the areas they are found in: – Kwa over much of the Guinea forest, Benue-Cross over eastern parts of the Guinea forest and the adjoining savanna – and subsequent diversification from early but unknown dates.

Comparative linguistics suggest that Akan, together with Anyi, Baule, Chakosi, Nzema and Ahanta belongs to a Tano sub-group to which the Guang languages, Abure and Belibe do not belong. Such studies also indicate that the Volta-Comoe languages (Akan group) constitute a true ancestral group to many other Kwa subgroupings; that the Togo remnant languages are distinct from the Ewe and Gà-Adangme groups respectively and that the Akan, Ewe, Guang and Gà-Adangme groups constitute a group less closely related to the Kwa language groups of southern Nigeria.

The Niger–Benue confluence is generally regarded as a likely centre of origin or dispersal for the eastern Kwa-speaking peoples, while the Benue-Congo speakers are believed to be more recent arrivals in this area from the east. That the divisions between the major Kwa groups must be very old has been inferred from exploratory studies in glottochronology. Although specific time inferences may be considered to be purely speculative, the presence of similarities in important cultural features of the present speakers of these languages, and evidence of having occasionally been influenced similarly does suggest a considerable period of stable divergence of communities in the area. So also is the fact that generally the Kwa languages are very distinctive and divergent from the more widespread linguistic groups that surround them. Indeed they could be survivors of once more widely spread linguistic stocks.

It seems also that there is no clear boundary between some of Greenberg’s Kwa (e.g. Igbo) languages and Benue-Cross languages such as Ibibio, Efik and Kele. As noted by Williamson, there are some Benue-Congo languages (like Jukun) without noun-class systems, while some Kwa languages (e.g. Dogama and Edo) have noun-class systems. On the other hand it seems that the Igbo and Efik languages, having been in intimate contact for a long period, could have experienced a certain amount of undetected borrowing, even in basic vocabulary.

Historical geographic evidence furthermore suggests that the already inhabited forest was an obstacle to penetration by later peoples. When such penetration occurred, it was not in the form of mass migrations, but was rather confined to small groups who, even if they exerted great cultural influence, were probably absorbed linguistically and sometimes physically by the local populations.

Apart from principal ethnic groups such as the Akan-Baule of Ghana and the Ivory Coast, the Bini (Edo-speakers), Yoruba, Igbo and Ijo of Nigeria, the Lower Guinea region has also been inhabited by other groups neighbouring the mentioned ones. Many times, the histories of the larger and smaller ethnic groups were inextricably intertwined. Some groups actually intruded into the midst of the others, and there was much cross-cultural influence.

The Gold Coast between 600 and 1100

The period from the seventh to the eleventh century in the Gold Coast (present-day southern and central Ghana) was clearly a formative one, transitional between the prehistoric village complexes antedating the seventh century on the one hand, and the urban, commercial, high-level

technology complexes of 1200 and after, on the other. The apparent ob­
scenity of the period 600–1100 is due not to the uneventfulness of the period per se (since the earlier prehistoric era —1500—+500 has been heavily documented from several parts of the country), but rather to the relatively small amount of attention given to the period by scholars and the incidence of research.

The prehistoric background
During the first and second millennia before the Christian era various parts of the Gold Coast forest and savanna were settled by village folk who built houses of mud, wood, stone or laterite blocks and practised a subsistence economy combining fishing, hunting, gathering or ‘cultivation’ of yam, oil palm, fruits, cow pea, hackberry, and Canarium fruit and the herding of shorthorn cattle and goats. While the evidence for pastoralism is strong and clear, that for arable or crop farming is rather tenuous, mainly because archaeo-botanical evidence has been hard to find in the tropical soils. Nevertheless, there is such an abundance of technological evidence in the form of polished stone axes and stone hoes for wood-felling, bush-clearing and soil preparation that one cannot but assume that some tubers such as indigenous yam and some grains, such as Guinea corn or millet were cultivated from an early date.

Of the known village sites referred to as the ‘Kintampo complex’ after the type-site located in the Brong region, 80 per cent have been excavated. The villages so far excavated vary in territorial size from 2000 sq.m (Mumute-Brong), to 115 300 sq.m (Boyase, near Kumasi), and to 21 000 sq.m (Kintampo KI site). Some of the village sites may indeed be comparable to modern villages of Ghana in terms of size and population. The technology and subsistence economies of the prehistoric villages indicate strong adaptations to the environment and specialization among the village folk. There are hints that special areas were reserved for use as potters’ workshops, stone-tool knappers’ workshops, or grain-milling quarters etc. The Kintampo complex also provides the earliest evidence of ceramic sculpture in the Gold Coast. The populations whose material cul­
tural remains are represented in the Kintampo complex need not have spoken one language in all the regions, as Colin Painter avers, in associating Guan with the Kintampo complex. Indeed, it is possible that any or all of the proto-Akan, proto-Guan and proto-Gà/Dangme languages were in use by the first millennium before the Christian era. From the correlation of linguistic studies on Baule, Agni, Bia and Akan with archaeology, there is emerging the possibility (still yet to be tested) that proto-Akan evolved in the forest and savanna environment straddling the middle and southern

The Guiñean belt

parts of the Ivory Coast and the Gold Coast and that the Kintampo complex, whose sites have now been identified in both countries, may well be the archaeological equivalent of an ecologically adapted proto-Akan speaking populace which knew no territorial boundary such as now exists between the Ivory Coast and Ghana.\footnote{F. Dolphyne, 1974.}

The archaeology of the Accra Plains suggests that Late Stone Age hunter-gatherers and fisherfolk who had a shellfish economy and potting technology were already active in the area of Gao lagoon (Tema) between the fourth and second millennia before the Christian era\footnote{J. C. Dombrowski, 1980.} and that they subsequently took to the establishment of village farming settlements such as are attested at the Kintampo complex site of Christian’s Village located near the University of Ghana at Legon. At the site of Ladoku, a Late Stone Age flake industry associated with decorated pottery has been found stratified directly below an Iron Age level with Dangme-type Cherekecherete pottery and a bauxite-bead industry dated by carbon-14 to 1325–1475.\footnote{J. Anquandah, 1982.}

While small-scale movement of peoples and trade and cultural contacts are regular features in the evolution of most societies and must be recognized as such, the old idea of mass exodus of people from place to place is, except for rare cases, an unconvincing approach to explaining ethnic and cultural origins. In this respect, the old views of migration origins of the Akan from Egypt or ancient Ghana, and the view of Gâ-Dangme origin from what is now the Republic of Benin/Nigeria must, on archaeological and linguistic grounds, be regarded as far fetched.\footnote{Cf. M. E. Kropp-Dakubu, 1976; A. A. Boahen, 1977.}

One of the major landmarks in the cultural evolution of the Gold Coast peoples is the inception and development of iron technology. Its adoption was crucial in the rise of society from a stage of peasant village economy and isolationism to one characterized by high-level technological competence, large-scale agriculture, diverse industries and crafts, complex trade systems and socio-political systems. The earliest evidence for iron technology is from Begho (+105–255) and Abam, Bono Manso (+290–350). Excavations at these sites have produced ruins of furnaces, slag and pottery as well as charcoal usable for dating purposes.

Evidence for the period 600–1100

The period between 600 and 1300 has been described as the ‘dark age’ in the history of the Gold Coast, in the sense that relatively much less is known of the period than for other periods during the last four millennia. The available evidence, however, leads one to hypothesize that this was essentially a formative period during which a start was made in the laying
of the infrastructure of society. Because of the relative paucity of evidence for reconstructing the history of this period, one must make allowance for a certain amount of extrapolation of evidence from earlier or later periods and also for the use of circumstantial evidence.

**Akanland**

The rockshelter site of Amuowi near Bono Manso has a date (+370–510) which is slightly antecedent to the period under discussion. But this date ties in with the date for iron-smelting at Abam, Bono Manso. The Brong of Bono Manso and Takyiman have ethnohistorical traditions which suggest a local origin from the Amuowi sacred hole or rock shelter. Every year, at their *Apoo* festival, the Takyiman Brong recall their traditions of origin in song:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We came from Amuowi, Creator of old; We are children of Red Mother Earth We came from Amuowi.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The evidence of pottery and dating from the Amuowi excavations suggest that from around the sixth century the Brong of the Bono Manso area were establishing permanent settlements that would lead later to the proto-urban and urban settlement at Bono Manso.\(^1\)

The site of Bonoso has an early date that falls exactly within this period. Excavations conducted there\(^2\) brought to light an iron-smelting industry with slag, iron implements and pottery ornamented with comb impressions. The site is dated by carbon-14 to 660–1085. Oral traditions of the Wenchi Brong assert that their ancestral clans emerged from a hole in the ground at Bonoso near Wenchi after being unearthed by a pig-like quadruped called *wankyie*. The traditions point to Bonoso as the place where the ancestors established their nuclear settlements before moving to their first capital site at Ahwene Koko (Old Wenchi).

A third Brong site belonging to this period is the proto-urban settlement at Begho which oral traditions name after the legendary founder Efua Nyarko. The Nyarko suburb which is dated by carbon-14 to 965–1125,\(^3\) extends over an area of about one square kilometre. The excavations there revealed evidence of iron implements, copper objects, ivory and pottery with slip and painted decorations, akin to ninth-century pottery from New Buipe (Figs. 17.3–17.5). Altogether the data from Nyarko reflects the general tendencies of the period 600–1100, namely, craft and technological specialization with proto-urbanism and possibly the beginnings of the

---

FIG. 17.3  Tenth- to eleventh-century painted pottery from the Nyarko quarter of the Begho trading metropolis, Republic of Ghana
FIG. 17.4 Seventh- to ninth-century pottery with slip and roulette-impressed decoration from New Buipe, Republic of Ghana

FIG. 17.5 Seventh- to ninth-century pottery with stamp-impressed decoration from New Buipe, Republic of Ghana (after R. N. York, 1973)
ivory industry and export trade which was to become important in subsequent centuries. Indeed the ethno-archaeological record points to the Brong region as a pioneering Akan area for the evolution of Iron Age farming, metallurgy, urbanism, state formation and long-distance commerce and the period 600–1100 in Brong, however dimly presented to us by the paucity of evidence, was clearly one of active preparation for the era that was to be the high-water mark of Brong civilization.

The Asante and Wassa areas are well known for their prominent hill-top sites which were the favourite locations of Iron Age settlements of the period between the beginning of the Christian era and 1500. The most notable of these sites are Nkukoa Buoho (near Kumasi), Bekwai, Kwapong, Obuasi Monkey Hill, Nsuta, Tarkwa, Ntirikurom and Odumpara Bepo. The sites appear to have been village settlements with palisades. They are characterized by concentrations of pottery with overhanging lips and profuse ornamentation on bodies and rims. The pottery is sometimes found in association with iron slag, furnace fragments and anachronistic Stone Age carry-overs such as polished stone axes, quartz beads, microliths, grinding stones and occasionally, as at Odumpara Bepo, bauxite beads. Although none of the sites has as yet been properly excavated and dated by carbon-14, their characteristic archaic pottery type places them well before the period 1600–1900 when the fashion among potters of Akanland was the complex architectural pot-form with ‘smoke-glazing’ as ornamentation instead of the earlier picturesque body ornamentation. Oliver Davies described the Asante and Wassa hill-top sites as ‘medieval’ in date, a term which is manifestly unsatisfactory in the African traditional cultural context. At Nkukoa Buoho near Kumasi, the hill-top complex pottery seems to follow chronologically the Kintampo complex period which suggests that the hill-top profusely decorated pottery of this area belongs to the period 600–1100 or thereabouts. If nothing else does, at least the evidence of iron technology of this complex does point to the foundation-laying character of this period preparatory to the major epoch of urbanization, state formation and long-distance trade evidenced in Adanse, Denkyira and Asante (Figs. 17.6 and 17.7).

The area of Akyem Manso and Akwatia is noted for its production of valuable exportable minerals. Its importance for archaeology, however, lies in its earthen fortifications. These are characterized by high mud embankments constructed as a defensive structure surrounding each village settlement. On the inner side of the embankment was a deep trench or ditch. These earthworks are a common feature at Akwatia, Manso, Oda, Abodum, Kokobin, Domabra, etc. A number of the fortified sites have been excavated in an attempt to test the two hypotheses advanced to explain their function. The first hypothesis is that they were constructed

16. ibid.
FIG. 17.6 Pottery with overhanging lip and profuse body ornamentation from period II (c. 500–1200) at Nkukoa Buoho, near Kumasi, Republic of Ghana

FIG. 17.7 Kintampo ‘neolithic’ Complex Culture materials from period I (c. −1500 to −500) at Nkukoa Buoho, near Kumasi, Republic of Ghana. Left: pot-shaping tool; centre and right: stamped pottery
The Guinean belt

for defence. The second is that they were to wall in labour camps built for
the exploitation of alluvial gold deposits of the Birim Valley.\textsuperscript{17} It appears
that the 'defence' school of thought has tended to carry more weight than
the 'labour camp' school of thought. The most recent ethno-archaeological
studies undertaken at the Akym Manso earthworks revealed profusely
ornamented pottery with overhanging rims (akin to that of the Asante/
Wassa hill-top complex), associated with evidence of iron smelting,
polished stone axes, beads and grinding stones.\textsuperscript{18}

The Guan

Oral traditions state that Kwahuland was among the areas occupied by
Guan-speaking people prior to the arrival of Adanse people in the area and
that these pre-Akan Guan were called Kodiabe on account of their pre­
dilection for a subsistence economy based on oil palm. The traditions name
a number of pioneering leaders who led the Guan in establishing settle­
ments in the area, namely, Adamu Yanko, Bransem Diawuo, Odiaboa,
Kosa Brempong and Yaw Awere. It is said that around 1200 the Guan
settlers who were in occupation of the Afram Plains established their capi­
tal at Ganeboafo whence the Atara dynasty ruled the Afram Plains Guan.
A commercial centre was set up at Juafu Abotan where brisk commerce
was pursued with the Sudanic belt in ivory, kola, cattle, salt and slaves.\textsuperscript{19}
Archaeology is yet to investigate the substance of these traditions. How­
ever, a number of excavations have been undertaken at Bosumpra Cave
(the name is thought to be connected with the Guan deity, Bosumpra), and
rock shelters at Aprekua, Tetewabuo and Akyekyemabuo.\textsuperscript{20} The excava­
tions supported by carbon-14 dating indicate that \textit{c}. 1000–1300 the Kwahu
scarp was occupied by versatile hunters, fisherfolk, pastoralists and oil
palm exploiters who produced 'smoke-glazed' pottery.\textsuperscript{21}

Another area where archaeology has been focusing attention on the
Guan is Kyerepong Dawu. The indigenous populace of Dawu Akuapem is
Guan-speaking, though its language and culture have been considerably
overshadowed in recent times by the Akwamu and Akuapem Akan peoples.
The area of Dawu and Awukugua is marked by numerous large mounds
representing litter deposited by the local people over long periods, which
carbon-14 dating fixes at \textit{c}. 1400–1600. Excavations of the mounds have
revealed debris including pottery imported from Shai, ivory ornaments,
bone combs, copper and iron products, and \textit{akuaba} flat-headed clay sculp­
tures.\textsuperscript{22} Although the dating of the middens is a little later than the period

\textsuperscript{17} P. Ozanne, 1971.
\textsuperscript{18} D. Kiyaga-Mutindwa, 1976.
\textsuperscript{19} J. R. Wallis, 1955.
\textsuperscript{20} F. B. Musonda, 1976.
\textsuperscript{21} A. B. Smith, 1975; C. T. Shaw, 1944.
\textsuperscript{22} T. Shaw, 1961.
we are concerned with here, the cultural context associated with the ubiquitous mounds of Akuapem suggests foundation-laying processes which heralded the modern states of the Akuapem Hill-Guan.

The Gä and Dangme

The archaeology and ethnolinguistics of the Accra Plains, examined dispassionately and free from the prejudices of adulterated oral traditions, indicate that the Gä and Dangme peoples have probably been occupying settlements in the Accra Plains for some one to two millennia. Indeed one would go as far as hypothesizing autochthonous Gä and Dangme evolution in the Accra Plains. A number of sites such as Gbegbe, Little Accra, Prampram and Lọlọvọ, though as yet undated, contain ruins of settlements with concentrations of pottery not associated with European imports, thus suggestive of a period before 1400. True, there are settlement sites at Ayawaso, capital of Great Accra, Ladoku and Shai which date to the period 1550–1900, the major period of urbanization, state formation and complex trade systems (Fig. 17.8). On the other hand, Ladoku and Shai were the focus of numerous village settlements belonging to the period 600–1400, among them Cherekecherete, Adwuku, Tetedwa, Pianoyo and Hioweyo. The latest research in Accra Plains Dangmeland indicates that between 1000 and 1300 local Dangme settlers around Prampram, Dawhenya and Shai were evolving a life style of subsistence (pastoralism, fishing, salt-making and terraced agriculture based on Guinea corn cultivation), and a socio-theocratic system that was to lead to the rise of a conurbation or twin-township in 1300–1900 at Shai and Ladoku and a civilization characterised by elaborate herbal science, Klama proverbial and philosophical music and a combined theocratic and monarchical system.

Eweland

Research work in Eweland has been confined largely to surface reconnaissance in places like Vume Dugame, Bator, Amedzofe-Avatime, Wusuta and Akpafu. Some of these sites provide quite common evidence of settlements with iron-working. The sites of Akpafu, Wusuta and Kanieme have

23. The question of the origin of the Gä and Dangme is controversial. The view of a migration origin from Dahomey/Nigeria area has been propagated by traditional Elders of Dangmeland including Carl Reindorf, Noa Akunor Aguae Azu, D. A. Puplampu, Nene Lomo II of Ada, Rev. S. S. Odonkor of Krobo and La Nimo Opta III of Doryumu, Shai. This view is supported by scholars like M. E. Kropp-Dakubu, E. O. Apronti, Irene Odotei and Louis Wilson.

traditions of iron-working spread over centuries and the archaeological evidence, though undated, does give support to the traditions. However, there are many sites in the Volta Region which, as indicated above, produce microliths, polished stone axes and stone hoes, suggesting a long continual occupation into modern times. There is really no reason not to associate the present-day Ewe occupants with the Iron Age and Late Stone Age cultural materials distributed widely throughout Ewe country.

Early urban settlement

The available evidence points to the existence of at least two principal types of urban settlements in what is now Ghana prior to European advent; commercial centres like Begho, and state capitals like Bono Manso. Settlements that were mostly trading centres grew up in the Tain–Volta confluence of present-day Ghana. Migrant elements and long-distance trade were important to their growth. Limited archaeological exploration indicated the existence of such settlements in Kitare, Begho, Bicu, Old Bima and Buipe among others.
The evolution of both local and immigrant groups at these sites, and their interrelationships, are yet to be explored in detail through systematic excavation. But present evidence from sites like Jakpawuase seems to suggest that prior to the advent of the Mande this region was reasonably well populated and contained large settlements, as well as clusters of a number of interrelated communities which had previously developed an interwoven network of local trade and exchange probably based on the bartering of food and agricultural produce.

Work at Begho revealed that the culture of this town was predominantly Brong, with evidence for significant outside influences. The quarters of the ancient town are described by Posnansky as consisting of areas of mounds often 'L'-shaped or in the form of hollow squares between one and two metres high and up to twenty metres across. The largest quarter, that of the Brong, consists of several hundred mounds in an area more than a kilometre across. The quarters are one to two kilometres apart, with an exposed outcrop of laterite between them, where the market was said to have been located.25

Other important market centres which probably grew up in the same general area at the time of Begho’s existence and prospered largely due to the Middle Niger trade in the area include Bima and Bofe. The urban phase of Begho (Bew) was preceded directly by an agricultural-pastoral phase dating as far back as 3500 years ago. The societies involved lived in sizeable settlements and used Kintampo Neolithic-type tools. Evidence, especially pottery, suggests that before the mid-second millennium of the Christian era (especially the eleventh to twelfth centuries) settlements in the Begho vicinity (and pre-urban Begho phase) were mostly those of the indigenous Bono group.

According to Posnansky, Begho also developed as a larger nucleated centre before the advent of long-distance trade, its inhabitants exploiting fertile lands for agriculture, from as far back as the second century of the Christian era. Crops farmed included yams and oil palms with sorghums and millets being added later. In the course of time the town graduated from a Brong (Akan) foundation to incorporate Voltaic-speaking and Mande-speaking people engaged in different occupations.26

Begho existed as a trading centre from the eleventh century but did not attain its peak until the fourteenth century. Then it appears to have contained up to five hundred compounds and five thousand people. It comprised five territorially distinct quarters with the largest, that of the Brong, being well over half a kilometre across. Their farmlands stretched much further afield.

Although heterogeneous, the bulk of the population of Begho was probably of local origin (Brong and Pantera). Very little is known of the nature


504
of the society other than what can be inferred from a study of later traditional Akan life. The traditions nevertheless indicate the existence of domestic slaves and an active clan system. The grave goods and the variations in the inhumations indicate a variety of religious attitudes to burials.

Like many other ancient settlements, it is not clear how Bono Manso (16 km north of Takyiman) was founded. Oral information suggests that the site of Bono was founded by a group of people who were once inhabitants of a rock shelter referred to as Amuowi perhaps around the fifth century of the Christian era. According to Effah-Gyamfi the growth and importance of Bono owed much to the integration into one state of various pre-existing chiefdoms in the area around the end of the first millennium.27 Bono Manso was not the earliest of the large villages and towns in this area; it was simply the first to acquire supremacy over all the settlements in the area through its primary role as the seat of the Bono kings.

Bono had rich deposits of atwet weboo (laterite nodules suitable for iron smelting) available to it. Archaeological survey has actually revealed at least five iron-working industrial sites all roughly equidistant from the streams and rivers. One of these sites dates to the fourth century of the Christian era, but some probably belong to the urban phase. Like Amuowi, however, the few pottery remains associated with the site which produced this early date are identical with those found at Bono Manso in the earliest deposits, suggesting the utilization of what became the site of Bono Manso by a society ancestral to the founders of the capital.

Bono Manso was also located at the savanna–forest contact zone where at the regional level savanna items could be exchanged for forest items. At the international level, this was the southernmost point to which pack animals could travel without any health hazards, and therefore the effective area for the exchange of foreign items for those from areas further south. Not only was the area where Bono Manso was located the source of alluvial gold which the Mande traders eagerly sought, it was also the source of kola nuts.

Unlike Begho there is no evidence for the existence of any alien quarter. This means that Bono's population was more ethnically homogeneous than Begho's. Bono's central organization also effectively controlled commercial activities, whereas in Begho commerce seems to have overrider political organization.

Effah-Gyamfi infers from pottery studies that Bono Manso may be an early Akan settlement. According to him the Bono Manso area may have been on the boundary between the early pure Akan cultural group to the south and the early non-Akan and the mixed Akan to the north and northwest respectively.28 This and linguistic evidence suggest a continuity of many ethnic/cultural groups since the last five hundred years or so.

28. ibid.
Yorubaland between 600 and 1100

In Yorubaland, archaeological research has so far been restricted to Ife and Oyo and of these two, only the urban phase of Ife dates back to our period. Archaeological evidence supported by oral traditions indicates that there have been three distinct and major periods in the growth of Ife; these are outlined in some detail by Ozanne.29

A traditional Yoruba town apparently comprised several compounds and each compound consisted of houses built around a series of open courtyards of differing sizes and usually containing water pots to catch rain from the roof-tops. There were however important differences between the various towns, reflecting differences in history and ecology. Indeed, if Johnson is right, some of these differences may reflect different kinds of growth. According to him, Ife typifies towns which grew gradually. Such towns started off with one wall only, their surrounding farmland being protected by an Igbo-Ile, a dense belt of forest untouched except for certain burials. Later when it became sufficiently important to be threatened by a protracted siege, an outer defensive wall would be built to protect farmlands.30

Several historians have suggested that one of the most important agents in the growth of urban and state societies was probably the institution of divine kingship. Wheatley further maintains that divine kingship was introduced through the agency of external contacts rather than by an internally generated redistribution of power in Yoruba society.31 And even though the precise mode of its diffusion is not known, it is seen as probably providing a powerful impetus towards the development of urban forms. The same scholar, however, admits that Yoruba cities must have been generated rather than imposed, that they were the result of an organic process of internally induced social stratification rather than of the extension of symbolic and organizational patterns already developed elsewhere. Whether or not such an assertion is correct can only be demonstrated by a systematic archaeological study of pertinent towns and village sites in the area. But state systems where the idea of divine kingship played an important role in their development were those of Benin and Nri.

Allison suggests a connection between the stone sculptures of Yorubaland and the classical age of Ife, although these differ stylistically from those of Ife brasses and terracottas. All occur within 100 km of Ife in the central Yoruba forest; with Esie (some 90 km north of Ife) at the edge of the forest region. Several of the sculptures from Esie are found at two villages now in savanna terrain within nine or more sites.32

30. S. Johnson, 1921.
At sacred groves of Ife between the outer and inner walls stand naturalistic figures depicting negroids in a local granite/gneiss. The most outstanding of these are the two figures known as Idena and Ore. A third figure in steatite in a separate grove nearby depicts a kneeling woman. The general treatment of this last figure is described as similar to certain styles of recent Yoruba wood-carving. A variety of other stone objects are grouped around the two granite figures and at other clearings in the Ore grove.

Elsewhere in Ife there are a number of worked standing stones, the most impressive of these being a slim carved granite column known as Opa Oranmiyan – the staff of Oranmiyan – Oranmiyan having been one of the children of Oduduwa and the founder of Oyo. It has since been restored (5.5 m high) and ornamented with lines of iron pegs in the form of an elongated trident. In the main marketplace stands the 1.8 m high Opa Ogun – staff of Ogun, the god of war and iron – shaped like a cylindrical club.

The Idena and Ore are the only examples of figure sculpture in hard stone at Ife, but at Eshure in the Ekiti country – some 80 km away to the north-east – is a group of carvings with obvious affinities such as the stone figures of Aba Ipetu (eight in all) which are similar in posture, the necklace and arm rings and the arrangements of the cloth, but with more stylized treatment.

In addition to those at Eshure, stone sculptures which show connections with Ife tradition are found at other sites within c. 50 km of Ife, like Kuta to the west, Ikirun to the north and Effon to the north-west.

Several terracotta heads of conical form have been found in Ife itself. All of these show some connection with the stone sculpture tradition of Ife. Evidence of a more widespread influence is gradually being revealed, and fragments of the typical Ife potsherd pavements have been found at Benin, to the east and as far away as the Republic of Benin and Togo to the west. Allison suggests though that the origins of the stone sculptures can only be sought in Ife itself.

The largest group of stone sculptures in Yoruba country is at the Igbo-mina town of Esie, which is still within the forest fringe, though the encroaching front of the savanna is generally only a few miles distant to the north, and has already invaded the forest in many localized patches. The recent history of Esie is connected with Oyo rather than with Ife.

But the stone figures are almost certainly the relics of a former occupation. These representations called Ere by Esie people, number more than 800, although one cannot be sure because so many have had their heads and limbs broken off. They all appear to be sculpted in steatite which outcrops at no great distance from the town, and the complete figures are generally about 60 cm high, although they range in size from about 20 cm to nearly 130 cm.

Although today the Igbo-mina of the savannas claim historic associations with Oyo, the first Orangun (head chief) of Ila, a large Igbo-mina town of
the forest, was traditionally one of the seven grandsons of Oduduwa mentioned in the account of the original dispersion from Ife; and in the final confrontation with the Oyo of Ibadan, Ila sided with the Ekiti, Ilesha and the other forest Yoruba.

Tradition associates the objects with previous occupants of the area who were conquered or colonized by Oyo. They were a forest people within the cultural sphere of Ife, whose influence can be detected in several recurrent features of the sculptures.

The naturalistic terracotta and brass sculptures of Ife, which have been dated with some confidence to the eleventh century were certainly created as adornments to the royal ancestor cult of the Oni (king) of Ife, so also were the remarkable quartz stools and granite monoliths. The naturalism of the granite/gneiss Idena figure suggests a similar period and inspiration. The fact that the over eight-hundred Esie figures have elaborate head-dresses and other ornaments and are mostly seated on stools suggests that they also depict royalty. The style is less realistic than the Ife sculptures and their date may be later.

It is crucial to find out what links if any, chronological and otherwise, exist between the stone sculptures and the terracotta and bronze traditions; and what relationships exist between this stone sculpture tradition and those found in other parts of West Africa. Part of this exercise will require archaeological reconnaissance for pre-Oyo settlements in the Esie and Ijara areas and excavation of these; and a geo-archaeological study of the sources of raw material. Finally ethnographic studies especially of wood and terracotta sculpture will help indicate what technical relationships exist between the stone traditions and others.

In his work on Ife art Willett has noted the many general characteristics which Ife sculptures share with those of Nok, whilst shifting the major emphasis onto naturalistic representation. He also suggests that the naturalistic ears of Ife could have provided a basis for the freely stylized interpretations of Benin. This and other similar evidence is considered by him as indicating connections across time and space and of continuity in artistic tradition in West Africa through more than two millennia. Whether Willett is right or not, the Yoruba appear to constitute a logical point of departure for the study of coastal and inland peoples of Lower Guinea. Remarkable features of their culture were a highly developed urban settlement pattern, a common language with dialectal variations, the peoples' claim to a common history of origin, the worshipping of a common pantheon of gods, again with local variation and emphasis, and finally a very

33. Certain Nok features seem to foreshadow the 'Ife complex' in respect of at least both pottery and figurine traditions. It is even possible that iron tools, and/or knowledge of ironworking were introduced there from Nok while it is not impossible that such knowledge ultimately derived from either Meroe or the north-west, although the evidence presently known does not support such a view.

34. F. Willett, 1967.
PLATE 17.1 Terracotta head from a figure of an Oni (King), excavated at Ita Yemoo, Ife. Height: 26.3 cm
PLATE 17.2 Terracotta head from a figure, possibly of a Queen, excavated at Ita Yemoo, Ife. Height: 23.1 cm
PLATE 17.3 Terracotta head found beside the Ifewara Road, Ife. Height: 22.5 cm
sophisticated art tradition. Furthermore the Yoruba appear to be related to and played an important part in the subsequent founding of some neighbouring kingdoms like those of Benin and Nupe.

The key role of the Yoruba people becomes more clear by looking at the early population movements in southern Nigeria. There was evidently first an early and long-term spread of the Yoruba-Igala group west and southward from an origin point somewhere in the north-eastern part of their current range. Second, Igala traditions relate their early expansion on the east bank of the Niger, with movement eastward against the Idoma and southward against the Igbo-speaking peoples. Third the position of the Itsekiri in the south-western part of the Niger Delta indicates that this Yoruba group expansion may have occurred prior to the expansion of Edo-speakers towards the coast.

An early southward invasion of the Niger Delta by the Ijo-speaking peoples is also inferred. This movement appears to have been followed at a later time first by a southward and east-curving movement of Edo-speaking peoples; second by a general southward Igbo expansion into the uplands west of the Niger, and third by another Igbo push toward the eastern delta coast which was still under way during the development of the slave trade. Eastward expansion by the Igbo against Benue-Congo-speaking peoples north of the Cross River and probably post-dating the slave trade has been documented for very recent times. Such late Igbo expansion is partly associated with rising population pressures on the eastern uplands. These movements may have occurred at the same time as a series of other movements recounted in oral traditions and implied in the intermingling of language groups in the delta. Oral traditions also suggest late expansion of Edo peoples into the central delta, and also of Ijo peoples dispersing from an early centre in the western delta toward the east, where they ultimately came up against the Benue-Congo-speaking Ibibio.

Both Yoruba traditions of origin and archaeological evidence suggest at least that it was in the area of Ife that Yoruba peoples began to show undoubted evidence of having achieved ethnic identity. These and other historical sources indicate that Ife is the earliest so far known ancient Yoruba settlement, ruled by onis who exerted a spiritual power over a wider area for a very long time. In addition Ife settlements served as dispersal points for the subsequent founding of Oyo and five other major Yoruba towns, as well as for the replacement of a former native dynasty at Benin around the fourteenth to fifteenth century. Traditions suggest that Ife was founded as a result of the fact that an invading group with the advantage of iron weapons successfully made their entry into the midst of an indigenous group who were called Igbo.

Whatever the ultimate explanation of the origins or beginnings of Ife, it

is clear that between the seventh and eleventh century Ife was in the ascendency culturally as well as politically among the Yoruba and the neighbouring Bini. Some of the bronzes have definitely been dated to the mid eleventh century, and it is possible, although it has not been proved that some of the art in terracotta was of much greater antiquity than the bronzes. More recently archaeology has been supplying some of the missing links to our knowledge of Yoruba history during this crucial period.

Leo Frobenius drew attention to the outstanding historical and archaeological importance of Ife and to the important naturalistic sculpture found there, although his follow-up archaeological work was inadequate by modern standards, and his interpretation of Ife's origin is no longer acceptable. Frobenius worked mostly at Olokun Grove, a site characterized by the working of blue glass segi beads. Examples of this bead found at Kumbi Saleh, Tegdaoust and Gao have been shown by X-ray fluorescence analysis to be identical with those found in Ife; this at least suggests some sort of link in the past between Ife and these Sudanic towns. Archaeological evidence supported to a large extent by oral tradition, indicates also that there have been three distinct major periods in the growth of Ife. During the earliest phase dated to —350, Ife was simply a scattered cluster of hamlets, numbering thirteen, according to traditions, located in very well-drained terrain, within the valley of Ife, and occupied by villagers who farmed. The next major phase was the founding of medieval Ife, at which time the communities packed into this area must have had a more elaborate social structure than that of the autonomous hamlets of early Ife.

It is not clear whether this urbanization and the social changes it indicates resulted from independent agreement amongst the communities, or from the imposition of a new order from outside, nor do we really know when exactly these changes were occurring. However, charcoal from medieval layers at Ite Yemoo have been dated to 960, 1060 and 1160. As these may have been relics from an early stage in Ife's development, one has the strong suspicion that at least some of these early but crucial developments of Ife town itself and of its inhabitants occurred somewhere between the seventh and eleventh centuries. Apparently it was also sometime during this period that the road pattern, as retained to this day, to Ede, Old Oyo, and through Ilesha to Benin was first established.

Naturalistic sculpture tradition at Ife also dates back to at least 960 ± 130. Elaborate glass bead work was also present at Ife and Benin. Domestic pottery at Ife appears to be more elaborate than that at Nok especially in the sense that decoration was more varied and included incision (straight lines, zig-zags, stabs and curvilinear designs), burnishing, painting, rouletting (with both carved wood and twisted strings). Cobs or ears of maize and strips of clay were also used or applied for decoration.

Benin

The excavations by Connah have shown the walls of Benin to be a honeycomb of linear earthworks delimiting territory, and not defensive fortifications. These also suggest that Benin City, like Ife, may originally have been an aggregate of small groups living in proximity to one another in forest clearings. Each of the Benin settlements owed allegiance to the Oba but has its own farmlands surrounded by its own bank and ditch. The city was surrounded by a more recent inner wall and an older outer wall. Excavations suggest that the inner wall was not built before the fourteenth century and was most likely erected by the mid-fifteenth century. Sections cut through the wall revealed that it obliterated earlier building sites and cut across an earlier earthwork.

The outer wall on the other hand is attributed by tradition to Oba Oguola in the late thirteenth century and archaeological evidence certainly confirms that it is older than the inner wall. Examination of the remains visible on the surface not only indicate that they are earlier than the innermost wall, but also that they could date to anywhere between the eleventh and fifteenth centuries. The extent of these defensive works, especially the inner one, implies the existence at these times of a strong centralized government.

Evidence from art survivals combined with oral tradition also throws some light on this period of Benin history, as for instance can be seen in the useful summary of previous efforts to study Benin art and technology made by Dark. Apparently whether one proceeds from the known to the unknown (with the very stylized type of bronze heads which were still being made after 1897 and which were considered as the most recent), or one starts by accepting the hypothesis that the earliest Benin bronze heads are those which are closest in appearance to the bronze heads of Ife, the resultant ordering has usually turned out to be much the same provided one also accepts certain oral traditions as true markers.

According to Dark’s scheme the domestic arts, which included woodcarving, started in the time of Ere, who was the second of the Ogisos, the dynasty before the present one. If, as is suggested by most students of Benin history, the present dynasty, which was founded by Oranmiyan, a prince of Ife, and probably a mythical personage, goes back to +1300, or a bit earlier, and the tradition of there being seventeen Ogisos before that time is accepted, then Ere, the second of them (assuming each king

41. ibid., p. 244.
44. J. Egharevba, 1960, p. 75.
ruled for an average reign of twenty to twenty-five years), would have begun to rule between 900 and 980.  

Dark records that Ere introduced the wooden memorial heads, which are placed on ancestral shrines, and also the royal throne (ekete), the rectangular chief's stool (agba), the round feather fan (ezuzu), the round box (ekpokin) made of bark and leather, the swords of authority (ada and eben), beaded anklets (eguen), and collars (odigba) and a simple undecorated form of crown. The foundation of the guilds of carvers (igbesanmwan) and carpentry (onwina) is also credited to Ere's time. The former were recognized as artists working in wood and ivory and the latter as craftsmen, producing undecorated utensils for everyday use, such as wooden plates, bowls, mortars and pestles.

If correct it would mean that the Benin society had reached at the time of Ere the point when the formal organization of artists and craftsmen had become necessary. Further, recognition of an ancestral role in influencing the affairs of the living appears to have been part of Benin beliefs, and was symbolized in the making of the wooden heads, which are used in a memorial context. The practice of making memorial heads, then, could be said to have existed for some 350 or 450 years before brass-casting – which is credited to Ogula's reign – was introduced to Benin and hence before the beginning of the corpus of bronze memorial heads which survive to the present. Although one cannot be certain as to when the sequence of Benin bronze heads began, Dark suggests that this event should be placed sometime around the first quarter of the fourteenth century, that is if 950 is accepted for the beginning of the Ogiso period. If the Ogiso period started earlier then the bronze heads may date earlier (perhaps to the thirteenth century).

In any case, even if the traditional record of the Ogisos presently available is not accurate, it still seems reasonable to assume that the art of carving had been established well before the present dynasty came into existence and that the carvers included in their repertoire the making of wooden heads for ancestor shrines. The stage had thus been long set for the introduction of the manufacture of bronze heads in memory of past kings. Further, though the technology of bronze-working was introduced in

45. Egharevba, the court historian of Benin, assigns the beginning of the Ogiso period to the former date but he would have the present dynasty starting 130 years before the date of 1300 suggested by Dark. If Egharevba calculated in units of twenty or twenty-five years when determining the length of the Ogiso period he would have to place Ere as beginning to reign in 850 or 720. If Egharevba's dates for the reigns of the kings from Ozolu, who was reigning at the time of the Portuguese advent, to Ovonramwen are roughly correct – and most would agree they probably are – then twenty-one kings would have covered a period of 433 years. This means that each reigned on average just over twenty years. The same average is obtained if the first thirty-six kings of the present dynasty are considered as reigning between 1170 and 1914, which is what Egharevba records. Cf. J. Egharevba, 1960, idem.


47. J. Egharevba, 1960.
Benin in Oguola's time, tradition has it that bronze works of art were sent to Benin from Ife before his reign. For how long before, one cannot tell. However, no bronze head in the Benin corpus found in Benin bears the stamp of an Ife artist's head, but there are a few other forms which are said to be strongly Ife in character and which may represent all that survives to this day of the objects sent from Ife to Benin.\(^\text{48}\) Dark notes that no comparable piece exists in the Ife record but its lack of existence does not mean that such pieces were not made.\(^\text{49}\)

Thus Benin City's emergence apparently resulted basically from a highly successful exploitation of their environment by an iron-using people. Although the origins of Benin City are still difficult to place exactly, they may date from around the beginning of the present millennium. The complex network of linear earthworks and walls that are presently known also suggest that, as at Ife, the city may have come into being through a process of slow fusion of scattered villages having allegiance to a central authority, till Oba Ewuare constructed a true urban unit with a formal defence in the fifteenth century.

Although some traditions claim that the Edo people came to their present abode not too long ago from Egypt, and that here they met people from the Sudan, linguistic evidence suggests that the Edo have occupied their present location for a period of almost four thousand years. For most of this period the village settlement constituted the political unit, in which the fundamental pattern of authority is made up of male age-grade associations. These were autonomous politically, culturally, and economically.

This simple pattern of social organization appears to have been subsequently overlaid by the development of kingship and more complex political units. What led to the development of a new system of political organization in the former village structure is not yet clear. Some authorities have suggested diffusion from the older but nearby Yorubaland, where for many years there was a centralized political unit or kingdom. Others have suggested independent development of relatively large political units in the area. It is also clear that development of large settlements in the Edo region went hand in hand with changes in the level of political organization. Between about the tenth and thirteenth centuries, towns such as Udo, Uromi and Benin are known to have advanced towards urban development.

This initial phase was superseded by a period of 'sorting out' among the early towns which involved some strong political competition. At this


\(^{49}\) P. J. C. Dark, 1973, pp. 8–9. Until the Portuguese arrived on the Guinea Coast, the supplies of brass available to the caster must have been very small indeed and this may have made necessary the practice of melting down objects already made in order to obtain materials for casting new ones. While it may therefore be possible that the earliest of the surviving bronze memorial heads were cast after Oguola's time, it would certainly not be right to assign these to a period before Oguola.
The Guiñean belt

period of competition among the chiefdoms (c. 1170) and apparently resulting from it, an alien dynasty from Yorubaland was introduced into Benin. This new dynasty apparently began a process by which Benin emerged as the major urban settlement of the area.50

The rise of Benin City – its socio-cultural development – can be rightly called the beginnings of Bini civilization. The indices of this civilization included a centralized political organization, an effective defence system, foreign trade, religion and, most important, sophisticated arts and crafts.

Igbo-Ukwu and the Nri ‘kingdom’

The earliest corpus of Nigerian bronzes has been unearthed in Igbo country to the east of the Niger. In the course of controlled excavation approximately one-hundred bronzes of distinctive visual aspect were brought to light at Igbo-Ukwu, a small settlement in northern Igboland, in south-eastern Nigeria, and at Ezira 24 km to the east of Igbo-Ukwu.51

Among the Igbo-Ukwu and Ezira finds there were bronze objects with parallel marks, various objects described as staff heads, human figurines with anklets and parallel marks, elephant tusks and bronze objects which depict flies, beetles, grasshoppers’ (locust?) eggs and heads of animals such as leopards, elephants, rams, monkeys, snails and pythons. There were thousands of pottery fragments, some whole pieces, and a burial chamber in which the occupant was buried in a sitting position in the midst of rich grave-goods which included beads.

Most of the Igbo-Ukwu bronzes are small, except for some vessels about 40 cm in diameter, and human imagery is limited to a few specimens, including a Janus head, a face pendant, an equestrian figure and frontal figures on two ‘altar stands’. Igbo-Ukwu’s uniqueness extends beyond surface motifs; several object types appear to reflect trends in material culture peculiar to south-eastern Nigeria.

Numerous iconographical elements – floral roundels, crescentic and double spiral patterns, spread-eagled birds – resonate in south-western art. Their presence at Igbo-Ukwu may prefigure these traditions in the south-west, since the site has been dated to the ninth century, making it older than Ife, which had been presumed to mark the inception of Nigeria’s great traditions in metal.

Moreover the metallurgical content of the Igbo bronzes is distinctive, recording a consistent leaded bronze composition in contrast to readings characteristic of south-western schools. The entire Igbo-Ukwu find – including clay, glass, iron and copper artefacts – may have constituted the burial goods of an ancient Igbo ruler who exerted control over northern Igbo country and beyond.

PLATE 17.4 Igbo-Ukwu excavation finds:
17.4(a) (top, left) bronze pendant ornaments in the form of elephant heads, presumed from Igbo Isaiah. Height: 7.4 cm
17.4(b) (top, right) ornate bronze staff-head, presumed from Igbo Isaiah. Height: 14.5 cm
17.4(c) bronze pendant ornament in the form of a ram's head. Height: 8.9 cm
17.4(d) Igbo-Ukwu excavation: the bronze roped pot, with bronze altar stand (behind, and to the left) in the store-house of regalia (scale: 1 foot long)

17.4(e) (left) globular pot from the store-house of regalia (height: 29 cm)

17.4(f) (right) highly decorated pottery vessel from the disposal pit at Igbo-Ukwu (height: 40.6 cm)
A close study of the archaeological finds in conjunction with the extant cultures by Onwuejeogwu demonstrates some very close parallels between the prehistoric and the extant.\textsuperscript{52} Indeed with the help of both lines of evidence, together with fragmentary evidence from Nri oral tradition and the known dispersal of Nri lineages in Igboland, Onwuejeogwu attempted a reconstruction of the socio-political organization of the Nri people from the earliest known times to the eighteenth century. His major conclusion was that the Nri of the Igbo-Ukwu and neighbouring areas had developed a state system sustained and institutionalized by the ritual manipulations of symbols.\textsuperscript{53}

All the evidence, archaeological and non-archaeological, suggests the establishment of Nri hegemony and ascendancy in Igboland from as far back as the ninth century and based on the effective manipulation of religious ideologies, doctrines and symbolisms. Spears, clubs, bows and arrows, cutlasses and hoes were transformed into ritual objects, while taboos and abominations were also associated with bloodshed, thereby inhibiting militarism. Colonization and expansion by the Nri kingdom was achieved by sending Nri people to other settlements, the allegiance of such new areas to the \textit{Eze Nri} being obtained through ritual oath. The \textit{Eze Nri}'s will was enforced not through military might but through ritual and mystical sanctions.

Oral tradition specifically ascribes to Nri the origin of local political institutions, in particular the \textit{Ozo} society, a men's title association, and homage is still paid to the town in ritual and title taking ceremonies. Authority was vested in a ruler (\textit{Eze Nri}) and ties with its sphere of influence were maintained by travelling priests who cleansed abominations and conferred rights of leadership. The centralized structure of the Nri polity is unique within Igbo experience and its relationship with its mechanisms such as the \textit{Ozo} lodges is not fully understood. Although nothing survives of the \textit{Eze Nri}'s power, title societies continue to be instrumental in local decision-making, despite colonial and national governmental machinery.

Nri influence extended beyond a nuclear northern Igbo region to Igbo settlements on the west bank of the Niger River, and to communities affected by Benin's historic domination of the lower Niger. Onitsha typifies the encounter of Nri-inspired and Bini political styles, the resulting synthesis being a structured ambiguity.\textsuperscript{54}

A primary symbol of rank and power, bells were found in burials of important individuals. The finds at Igbo-Ukwu and Ezira exemplify this practice, and it evidently persisted into the early part of this century. The fact that Ezira was a powerful oracle centre that was believed to be the resting place of departed souls underlines the multiple power associations integral to the bronze bell concept.

\textsuperscript{52} M. A. Onwuejeogwu, 1974.
\textsuperscript{53} ibid.
\textsuperscript{54} R. N. Henderson, 1972, p. 297.
A constellation of parallels exists for neighbouring areas in south-eastern Nigeria. To the north, some royal bells were included as grave goods in the burial of Igala kings. In eastern Igbo regions under the hegemony of the Aro, messengers with bell racks signalled the arrival of important personages; chiefs living on the Igbo-Igala frontier employed special bells, and in these areas bells were also ubiquitous elements of shrine furniture.

Inspired by the discoveries at Igbo-Ukwu, recent research based on stylistic analysis and ethnohistorical inquiry suggests that there may indeed exist a south-eastern corpus of bronzes distinguishable from south-western visual concepts. Some of the south-eastern bronze objects housed in museums in Nigeria, the United States, Britain and Europe recall Igbo-Ukwu precedents and conform to categories of material culture valued in traditional Igbo political and religious institutions. The bell is a preponderant element in these bronzes of unknown derivation collected in Nigeria.  

There are a few similarities between Igbo-Ukwu, Ife and Benin bronze-casting such as the employment of ram and elephant head motifs, but these may not be significant in art-historical terms. Rather the details of decoration and construction may be more important. For example the ladder-like rows of elongated dots between continuous lines are common to Igbo-Ukwu and the 'Huntsman' style of the Lower Niger bronzes. Significantly, Werner's analyses have also shown that the majority of the Lower Niger figures in the Berlin Museum are, like those of the Igbo-Ukwu, true bronze, whereas the Benin pieces are almost exclusively brass in which the proportion of zinc tended to increase with time.

All these would appear to support William Fagg's assertion that there existed two main style groups in West African metal work, the Ife/Benin/modern Yoruba in central Nigeria, flanked by traditions which employed fine threads of wax or latex in making their models. Until Igbo-Ukwu was dated it was not clear which of these traditions was established first. It would seem now that the Ife/Benin tradition intruded into the area of an older and distinct tradition. Just as has been shown to be true of the later metal-working tradition, it is also very possible that the iron-working tradition at Igbo-Ukwu was distinct from the iron-working tradition of Ife/Benin and Nok.

Igbo-Ukwu excavations clearly indicate that iron-working in south-

55. N. G. Neaher, 1979. The possibility that south-eastern bronzes resulted from a programme of latex modelling deserves serious consideration since documented evidence identifies several groups who utilized tree gums for modelling. The Igbira, the Tiv and the Igala exploited rubbers derived from local varieties of Ficus. Bronzes attributed to the first two groups clearly reflect the imprint of a fine medium and it is interesting that the earliest published observer of the Igbo bronzes speculated that a rubber latex was used for modelling. The latex technique centres in areas abundant in rubber-yielding plants and trees, namely the savanna. More than twenty types of such Ficus have been identified in Nigeria alone.

eastern Nigeria is at least as old as the ninth century, and there is every reason to suggest that it was older. Iron-smithing was and was a highly skilled occupation, and often remains exclusive to certain communities and lineages. The most famous of the Igbo smiths in recent times are those from Akwa (east of Onitsha) who apparently first obtained iron (ore) – from the Igbo smelters of Udi – east of Akwa, and only much later received supplies of European iron. Other foci of metallurgical working among the Igbo were the Abiriba – among the Cross River (Eastern) Igbo – iron-smelters as well as iron-smiths and brass-smiths, located near the Okigwe-Arochuku ridge; and the Nkwerre smiths in the southern part of this region.57

An excavation in Akwa area yielded fifteen iron gongs and an iron sword similar to those still made by the Akwa smiths as well as a large number of cast bronze bells and other objects which cannot be so readily attributed to Akwa smiths, and which date to $1495 \pm 95$.58

It is not clear what the time/cultural relationship is between Ife and Igbo-Ukwu although Willett thinks it possible that Ife may date much earlier than is presently known, and may even be much nearer Nok than present evidence (tenth to twelfth century) suggests.59 Indeed, if the Ife beads are the same as the 'akori' beads of the Guinea Coast, as both ethnographic evidence in southern Nigeria and Frobenius suggest,60 it is then conceivable that the Igbo-Ukwu glass beads were manufactured at Ife. If so it would mean that the Ife culture dates at least as far back as do Igbo-Ukwu finds (nineth century). If some burial goods at Daima in the Chad basin reflect trade contacts between Ife and Daima, then it is quite likely that the cultural parallel may have a time significance. Thus there is a possibility that Ife dates back to at least the sixth century.61

The bronzes and beads that have been uncovered reflect the wealth of the economy, and the great artistic skill of the makers of the bronzes, and show the extent to which the area was part of the network of international trade. Shaw has suggested that some of the beads were imported from Venice, but mostly from India via North Africa, and such imports formed part of a major complex of international trade that also involved imports of copper. According to the same author the raw materials for the bronzes namely copper and leaded bronze, were imported from copper mines at Takedda and further afield in the Sahara.62 While such an international

60. L. Frobenius, 1912, pp. 318–9.
61. G. Connah, 1981, pp. 173 et seq. In this regard it seems well worth noting that there is a discontinuity of tradition at Ife in the stone sculpture, glass industry and some architectural features (potsherd pavements) that is largely similar to a cultural discontinuity at Daima (clay figurines and potsherd pavements) dating between the sixth and ninth centuries.
The Guiñean belt trade may well have existed, it is of interest that Onwuejeogwu has indicated that such material was available at Abakaliki and Calabar and may well have come from there. If this was the case, an interesting problem to be resolved would be which of these sources was first exploited by the Igbo-Ukwu craftsmen, the local or the foreign sources, and when?

In the absence of evidence to the contrary, Shaw considers it reasonable to assume that the Igbo-Ukwu bronzes were made by Igbos either in Igbo-Ukwu itself or elsewhere in Igboland. He argues, however, that both raw materials and techniques used were imported from elsewhere. In his view the cire-perdue technique of bronze casting is a complicated process which probably spread into West Africa from ancient Egypt and Mesopotamia. If this was the case, adherents of the thesis have yet to demonstrate its validity and the onus lies on them to do this. The argument that the process is very complicated and therefore could not have been discovered independently by the Igbo-Ukwu or any of their West African bronze-casting neighbours (the Sao, south of Lake Chad and gold-casting in Ghana) is not proof.

The material cultures of ancient Igbo-Ukwu, Ife and Benin are often seen as representing high points of Iron Age development in the area. Excavations reveal peoples possessing iron tools and weapons capable of making the forest yield great wealth, utilizing ideas of urbanization and social and religious organization to good effect. Furthermore they were in trading contact with the Arab world and may or may not have obtained knowledge of the art of lost-wax metal casting by this means. Yet despite all these the fact remains that these high points may as much reflect our present ignorance of historical reality since to some extent sheer accident is responsible for our knowledge of them. In other words our high points cannot as yet be studied in the general context of the overall development of Iron Age material culture in southern Nigeria. As rightly noted by Connah, until that can be done we should remember that they may perhaps not be the highest points of attainment and it is very likely that they are not the only points.

Another bronze-casting complex requiring exploration is that of the Cameroon grasslands to the east of Nigeria. Bells are associated traditionally with chieftaincy throughout the region and may have been integral to a system of gift exchange between local rulers. A number of specimens resemble Nigerian types, especially those with segmented banding designs like those of the tulip-shaped bell found along the Cross River corridor; Cameroon bells tend to be larger and much thicker, with distinctive decorative motifs. If any parallel with Nigerian styles exists, it is more likely to consist of provocative affinities with bronzes of the Adamawa region in north-eastern Nigeria along the Cameroon border. In the end, intriguing

64. T. Shaw, 1975a.
visual and thematic correspondences do exist for select Cameroon bronzes, Sao specimens and the Igbo-Ukwu corpus. These deserve fuller scrutiny before a south-eastern Nigerian contribution can be comprehended.\footnote{Neaher, 1979.}

The \textit{Akwanshi}

In the northern part of the Cross River Valley - some 500 km east of Ife - there is evidence of a unique art heritage of hard-stone sculptures. These sculptures known as \textit{Akwanshi} appear to have been the work of ancestors of a restricted group of Ekoid Bantu living in the north, specifically the Nta, Nselle, Nnam, Abanyom and Akagu.

While it is true that where suitable rocks occur in West Africa natural boulders and rocksplinters have often been set up as cult objects, the fact remains that except for half a dozen cases in Yorubaland the sculpturing of hard-stone to represent the human form is confined to a small area of less than a thousand square kilometres on the right bank of the middle Cross River. The area lies in a wide angle formed by the Cross River and one of its confluents, the Ewayon. Here during 1961 and 1962 Allison recorded 295 stones which were shaped with varying degrees of elaboration to represent the human form. Collections of small shaped stones, usually of cylindrical or ellipsoid form, were also found at certain present and former occupation sites in the area.\footnote{Cf. Allison, 1968; 1976.}

Allison identified the sculptured stones at twenty-six main sites on land occupied by six formerly independent Ekoi ethnic subgroups and nine other sites at which some sixteen stones were found in ones and twos. The most numerous groups and also the most skilful and original are found on the lands of the Nta (fifty stones) Nselle (ninety stones) and Nnam (ninety-four stones). There are also twenty-two stones at three sites in Abanyom-land and ninety stones at three sites in Akaguland, but here the workmanship is inferior and the style is derivative. The Nta, Nnam and the best of the Nselle stones are carved in basalt. The Abanyom and Akaju stones are carved from a shelly limestone, some limestone carvings were also found at villages formerly occupied by Nselle. The limestone is probably easier to work but shows a rough finish and weathers badly.

The Nta and Nselle refer to their stones as \textit{Akwanshi} meaning 'the buried dead'; the Nnam and others merely call them \textit{atar}, meaning 'stones', or \textit{ataptal} meaning 'long stones'. Three main styles have so far been distinguished: (1) the Nta style with a cylindrical figure and a definite groove separating the head from the body; (2) the Nnam selected massive boulders and covered them with profuse and well-executed surface decora-
tion; (3) the Nselle tend towards the Nta style but occasionally produce carvings of individual originality. These styles may also be chronologically significant.

The people of the Akwanshi culture (including the Nde) speak distinct but related forms of an Ekoid-Bantu language. In immediate pre-colonial days they were divided into two warring factions who still regard each other with hostility. In recent times the affairs of each community were directed by the elders under whom the young men were organized in age-grade companies. There were also Ntoon or priest chiefs whose function in recent times has mainly been religious and ceremonial. The extent of the Ntoon’s authority varied from a single village to the whole of the subgroup.

Allison tried to reconstruct the genealogy of the Ntoon priests for the Nta peoples. Convinced that seniority was a traditional qualification for the selection of the Ntoon, Allison contends that each Ntoon may not have occupied the post for more than an average of about ten years. Allison believes with justifiable reasons that the Akwanshi were memorials of the founders of the dynasty. However, his interpretation of the lifespan of the dynasty as lasting for four to five centuries is based on a rather static functionalist view of the social system of the Eko, that is that they were always organized in small rather egalitarian groups. There is an alternative and more reasonable interpretation of the historical data as presently available, namely that the people were organized as a large kingdom not unlike those of Bini and Yorubaland. Indeed the construction of the large and early Akwanshi burial memorials predicates such strong, centralized and large-scale socio-political set-ups having sufficient labour forces at their command. If this was so the average rule of the kings would be anything between twenty and thirty years which would mean that the origins of the Akwanshi may fall anywhere between the last two or three centuries of the first millennium of the Christian era and the first two to three centuries of the second millennium, that is about the same time as Igbo-Ukwu. The onset of the trans-Atlantic slave trade would appear to have affected this state adversely, leading to social fragmentation and degeneration in the art. The stone sculpture continued in a degenerate form until recent times, mostly today in cylindrical logs of wood.

It is not unlikely that Nsibidi writing, which was used by the Eko, was one of the achievements of this early civilization in this region. An Nsibidi symbol in the form of a hoop, which represented the former manilla currency and indicated wealth is recognized on certain stones. Such a state must have had a reliable agricultural/technological base, with iron being in use. It also seems reasonable to assume that long-distance trade was a major feature of life connecting such a state to peoples of the north (Tiv, Jukun etc.) west (Igbo-Ukwu, Niger Delta peoples; Bini and Ife) and Bantu-speaking peoples to the east. These are merely intelligent guesses.

Quite clearly archaeological work is urgently required in this area, if the substantial gaps in the history of Akwanshi state and society are to be filled.

Early trade

This section considers the level of development attained by people in this region especially with respect to the famous sculptures in stone earthenware and in copper alloy, which are generally believed to be medieval, and the towns and rural areas as well as the socio-political systems which sustained the art. If the questions are relatively precise, the answers forthcoming from the various sources available are unfortunately not so. As noted already, most of the Akan, Ewe and Ga-Adangme, and the Yoruba, Edo, Igbo and related groups as presently known were already occupying roughly the same parts of Lower Guinea they live in today in the eleventh to twelfth century and probably much earlier. The Yoruba in particular were by that time already urban dwellers, witness the excavated evidence of towns like Ife, Old Oyo and Ilesha. So also were the Edo as reflected by excavations at Benin. Others like the Igbo-Ukwu in Nigeria and Bono Manso in Ghana had established sophisticated state systems.

These towns were distinguishable from other settlements in terms of their relative size, composition, social organization, structuring and functions. They were more highly nucleated and more populous. In time these towns grew to possess a variety of craft specialists producing goods which were manufactured for more than local consumption, and which came to entail full-time or near full-time participation in the craft. The practice of a variety of technically complex crafts such as metal-working, bead-making and dyeing was soon to be the hallmark of many West African towns. Many of these towns grew to possess strategically located and large-sized markets, placed at frequent intervals in relation to the resources on which they thrived.

Many West African towns in the forest, Sudanic and Sahel belts (e.g. Ife, Benin, Ushongo, Idah, Ugurugu in Nigeria; Notse in Togo) had walls or defensive ditches which provided a tangible demarcation between town and country. Because of the size and more complex social, economic and political system of some towns, inhabitants soon came to have divided or multiple loyalties, whereas the villages were more homogeneous with their single chief, council and shared agrarian experience.

Indeed the attainment of a critical level of technological and subsistence knowledge able to sustain a dense population, and such levels of functional specialization in economic organization as have been described here must have encouraged long-distance trade of various kinds. If this development is viewed archaeologically, what is probably most useful to recognize is not

direct contact trade, or exchange lacking a definite organization, or standardized value of specific materials, but location (i.e. locational analysis), of production, and the character of such locations.

Among many early farming communities in West Africa, polished stone axes (locally known in Ghana as *nyame akume*) were traded over distances of hundreds of kilometres. Greenstone axes from the Bibiani range are found over a large part of southern Ghana. The stone rasps of the Kintampo culture which has produced the earliest evidence of agricultural practices in Ghana around —1500, were made from a dolomitic marl which was evidently traded over substantial distances as it has been found both on the Accra plains and in northern Ghana. At Kumasi, Nunoo excavated a ground-stone axe ‘factory’ by the banks of the Buruboro and Wiwi streams. The principal evidence here consisted of the roughouts for stone axes and the grooves in the rock outcrop where grinding and polishing of such axes took place; the distribution of these axes has still to be determined. At Rim near Ouahigouya in Burkina Faso, the Late Neolithic/Iron Age levels are associated with axe factory localities, and the site appears to have been a major centre, trading axes to areas lacking the raw material. In any case the substantial distance covered by the dispersal of greenstone axes and rasps, points more to long-distance trade than to a local exchange network.

Also during the Iron Age, there is further evidence of a local trade in pottery in Ghana detected by the recognition of clays in the fabric of pots which are foreign to the areas in which the pots were found. York has indicated that several of the distinctive wares at New Buipe were made from clay sources anything up to 100 km distant from the site. One example is a ware with micaceous paste which has been found at Begho. Priddy has reported even wider distributions, with pots from the Upper Region of Ghana being traded into the Northern Region where little pottery is locally made. The importance of such pottery trade may go beyond indicating culture contacts on a regional basis and demonstrates that very few agricultural societies were entirely self-contained. In this author’s view the beginnings of long-distance trade in West Africa are inextricably bound up with the exploitation of the above stone and clay resources as well as metals. In fact it seems reasonable to postulate the existence, from Early Iron Age times, of a complicated and widespread network of long-distance trade radiating from a few central points located in the distinct ecological zones,
and connecting coastal peoples and inland farming peoples on the one hand, as well as people to the south and pastoralists in the north.

Conclusion

The presence of the variety of crafts attested at sites like Igbo-Ukwu suggests the expenditure of a substantial amount of social capital. It also indicates the existence of a sophisticated technology, an accumulation of wealth, the institution of (probably) a ritual leadership and participation in certain trade. According to Shaw the large amount of copper unearthed may have served as currency, and the copper used in the bronzes was necessarily of trans-Saharan origin, while a considerable quantity of the 165,000 beads recovered may have been of Indian manufacture with some perhaps from Venice, although +900 seems too early for postulated contact with Venice.75 The nearest sources of copper envisaged are in the Azelik area (Takedda) of Air in Niger and Nioro in Mali. There is however no way of identifying the exact source of copper used in the Igbo-Ukwu bronzes or of knowing whether their constituents involved long-distance trade from North Africa or whether copper could have come from one of the Sudanic sources. In fact, copper and lead occur at Abakaliki and tin at Afikpo and Calabar.76 Moreover, Onwuejeogwu claims evidence for ancient mining in these areas.77 And if he is correct, these more nearby areas would have been much more likely sources of copper. Whatever the source, the quantity of copper items in southern Nigeria before +1300 indicated that trade was on a large scale and had been in existence for probably 500 years prior to that date. Both the excellence of the craftsmanship and the long-distance trade the materials appear to indicate, suggest the existence of a developed agricultural economy probably supplemented by hunting and fishing, and producing a considerable social surplus. Both the Igbo-Ukwu finds and Onwuejeogwu’s in-depth study of Nri society have provided much information to support this.

Furthermore, a long-distance trade in luxury goods dependent upon social distinctions could have existed even outside local markets. It could for instance have involved the itinerant trader travelling between royal courts and houses of important peoples as well as attending markets when these were held. In some places as has been shown, regular regional trade developed in special items such as salt, cloth, metal, beads, pottery and stone tools from Late Neolithic/Early Iron Age times. And even such regional trade may not at all times have created entirely new markets, but may rather sometimes have established more regular lines of communication between hitherto existing but periodic local markets. Regional trade in

77. ibid.
salt for instance dates back to at least the Late Iron Age (1300–1600) and was both from the Sahara to the Sudan and from the coast to the forest. Several historians have correctly pointed out that the nature of such a trade must have reflected a geographical necessity in south-eastern Nigeria.\textsuperscript{78} Large portions of the Niger delta are too swampy and saline to support much agriculture or livestock; on the other hand, the hinterland lacks salt deposits; so both regions find it beneficial to exchange salt and dried fish for agricultural and animal surpluses. According to Jones ‘Andoni and Bonny legends suggest a salt boiling industry in the Bonny area before the arrival of the European traders ...'\textsuperscript{79} Such trade between the coast and hinterland could conceivably be as old as the very occupation of the coastal regions especially as these peoples probably moved in from the hinterland.

At least one of the regional networks developed to handle exchange of goods between the delta and the hinterland led to the creation of linear marketing networks along the creeks and rivers leading from the delta.\textsuperscript{80}

The regional trade in beads has shown more of an east–west than a north–south orientation. One bead type which has never been adequately identified, but which was traded over very long distances round the Gulf of Guinea, was called ‘akori’.

Regional trading networks also developed around centres of the textile industry. These had attained considerable sophistication in the ‘Igbo-Ukwu cultural era’ and persisted to recent times. For instance, in the sixteenth century, Benin people used types of cloth similar in description to that found at Igbo-Ukwu and in the next century they were weaving, importing and exporting large quantities of cloth, some of which may have been of Igbo manufacture, (e.g. the Akwetes of southern Igbo, long famous for their fancy cotton cloth).\textsuperscript{81} But the most important of the regional networks in the Igbo hinterland from Igbo-Ukwu times were apparently those including iron and other metals and may have involved itinerant smiths.

\textsuperscript{79} G. I. Jones, 1963, p. 35.
\textsuperscript{80} ibid., p. 13; U. Ukwu, 1967, p. 650.
\textsuperscript{81} D. Forde and G. I. Jones, 1950, p. 43.
Although the view is prevalent among many scholars that there has been an intimate and fundamental connection between Upper Guinea and the Western Sudan at various times in the prehistoric and historic past, no one has clearly identified the nature and course of these relationships through time and for different parts of the Guinea coast. Consequently, as with other similar historical phenomena in African history, this subject of relationship has given rise to hypotheses which often differ either with the type of data relied on, and/or with the manner in which the researcher interprets such data.

It is held by some, for instance, that the peopling of the Upper Guinea coast resulted from the continuous dislocation of population from the interior to the coast. Even within this school of thought opinion differs as to when this drift commenced. McCall, for instance, dates this process back to −5000 when the Sahara began experiencing increasing desiccation, and when in his view the ancestors of the Mande drifted down into the Sahel to introduce agricultural knowledge.¹ A. A. M. Corrêa considers that Western Sudanese states exerted the crucial pressure, and places the beginning of the population drift towards the coast in the third century of the Christian era.² At the other end of the spectrum W. Rodney regards the process as having been largely precipitated by political events in the Sudanese states,³ which do not even date to as far back as the tenth century.

These views, which regard the vast majority of the peoples of Upper Guinea coast as ‘refoulés’ driven from their original positions inland are no doubt very popular. Yet it is still to be clearly demonstrated how the peoples inhabiting these two vast regions were related physically, linguistically and culturally at various significant points in historic time and who exerted the crucial influence on whom, when and for what reasons.

In this appraisal of the cultural history of the Upper Guinea coast for the period roughly between the seventh and eleventh centuries relevant in-

². A. A. M. Corrêa, 1943.
formation from archaeology, written and oral sources, linguistic and other anthropological data are sifted in an effort to identify the following: the character of the terrain, especially its resource potentials; the human populations of the region; then the languages they spoke, and how they were organized economically, socially and politically. Following from this, an attempt is made to delineate what manner of ties existed between the peoples of the Upper Guinea coast and peoples living to their north at this time. This is done by critically assessing the various hypotheses aimed at accounting particularly for the introduction of iron-working and the establishment of state-organized societies with sophisticated and complex socio-economic systems able to build megalithic monuments.

The ecological setting

Upper Guinea refers here to the western half of the coastlands of West Africa from the Senegal River to Cape Palmas. The stretch from Cape Palmas to the Cameroon is known as Lower Guinea. The coast of Upper Guinea is therefore the southern part of the north-west African coastal region, which stretches from the Strait of Gibraltar to Liberia. Whereas the northern part of this coastal region is characterized by mountains, plateaux and associated troughs, the Upper Guinea stretch contains filled coastal basins and arches. Moderate amounts of rainfall occur in the Senegal and Gambia area, increasing to over 200 cm a year towards Sierra Leone and Liberia. The pattern of rainfall is reflected in the drainage system. In southern Senegal the streams are perennial and the number increases toward the south. Most of these streams are short yet active.

Coastal surface currents (principally Canary) flow southward along the north-western African coast towards Cape Verde to meet the westward-flowing North Equatorial current. Further south the warm Guinea current flows to the east along the Liberian coast.

Geographical units recognizable in this region are Senegambia; the Sierra Leone—Guinea region between the Casamance and Cape Mount (Rodney’s Upper Guinea) and the Liberian region between Cape Mount and Cape Palmas.

Inland a major physiographic feature of the Senegambia region is the Senegal Valley. This is flanked on the north and south by low coastal plains and in the north-west by sandstone plateaux with Hödh (Hawd). In the Sierra Leone—Liberian regions the major landmark is the Guinea Highlands. To the south of this are low coastal plains which stretch uninterrupted to Ghana; while to the north and west there are high plains. Present at the eastern end of the high plains outside of the Upper Guinea region are the Middle Volta basin and the Asante (Ashanti) uplands whereas off the north central part there is the sandstone plateau which occurs immediately south of the Segu and Timbuktu basins.

Most of Senegambia falls within the savanna region which has a
FIG. 18.1 West Africa: major physical regions
The peoples of Upper Guinea

Sudanian type of climate and vegetation. This covers much of the middle Gambia and the middle Casamance Valley which have highly fertile soils. The southern parts of this zone are high-population density areas. The Lower Casamance region is the wettest and consequently the most densely forested region of Senegambia. Although generally less hot than inland districts it is also humid. This fact notwithstanding, it offers to its heterogeneous peoples, mostly Manden (or Mandenka, Mande, ‘Mandingo’), Dyula, Flup, Bainuk and Balante, the most fertile lands as well as the most impressive landscape in the whole of Senegambia.

An uneven line of scarps marks the edge of the sandstone plateaux in the western sector of Upper Guinea. The northern part of Mauritania is true desert while the Senegal Valley with its alluvial deposits is the only major feature that has been attractive to human settlement. Other points settled have been the spring line at the scarp foot and the deep valleys trenched into the scarp edge. The rivers Senegal and Gambia are fed by wādis (mari-gots) flowing from the sandstone scarps.

The Western Sudan forms the deep hinterland of the Sierra Leone-Guinea zone of the Upper Guinea Coast. Vegetation ranges from forest savanna through true savanna woodland inland to rain-forest in the south, and mangrove swamps in some parts of the coastal fringes.

This zone is further divisible into four natural zones. These are the Guinea (or Coastal) plain characterized by a mountainous region, the uplands and hill country bordering the plain, Futa Jallon and the Upper Niger river basin. Among the distinguishing features of the coastal plain are: an altitude below 150 m, an average annual rainfall of over 250 cm, and a forest or mixed forest savanna-farm vegetation. Its primary crops – palm products, peanuts, rice, kola and others – differed from the main output of adjoining regions which possessed contrasting physical features.

The Futa Jallon (over 1250 m high) represents the south-western continuation of the Manden (Manding) sandstone plateau which occurs between the Hödh to the north and the Upper Niger basin to the south, and lies almost entirely within the catchment area. Man utilized the valleys of this dissected plateau initially for agricultural settlements and later as routeways for Fulani cattle-rearers and empire-builders.

To the north of the highlands is the Upper Niger basin which is drained by both the Niger and Senegal rivers. Gold is widely dispersed in the pre-Cambrian basement rocks within and these have been long worked by the local people. From Sherbo Island southwards the coast consists mainly of low sandy beaches with river outlets frequently deflected by longshore drift from south-east to north-west.

The Liberian section has a coastline stretching 560 km along the Atlantic Ocean between the Mano and Cavalla rivers. Liberia has a tropical and humid climate; rainfall is heaviest along the coast where it reaches up to 500 cm. Topographically, there are three main zones stretching in an east-west direction parallel to the shoreline:
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

(1) a coastal or littoral belt between 64 and 80 km wide which is generally low and marked by shallow lagoons, white sand beaches and mangrove marshland;
(2) a very dense rain forest belt rising gently to 330 m above sea level and;
(3) a vast undulating plateau at an elevation of about 660 m. The highest points of the country—the Nimba and Walo Mountains—are located in the north near the Guinea border.

The soil is generally very fertile but subject to leaching. The flora is typical of tropical Africa, with the evergreen forests among the greatest on the continent, containing some 235 different species. Among these are a long list of natural or wild food crops which includes coffee, citrus fruits, cacao, pineapple, avocado, cassava and rice.

The coastal region south of Dakar from southern Senegal, through Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, and the greater part of Sierra Leone is distinguished mainly by drowned muddy estuaries of rivers (e.g. Saloum, Gambia and Casamance) flowing westwards. The main valleys are reasonably well populated, with their broad expanse of alluvium and adequate water for crops like groundnuts and oil palms. But their interfluves suffer increasingly from lateritic crusts towards the interior.

The landscape between the Guinea Highlands and the coastal districts comprises dissected plain—inclined surfaces which slope in a north-north-east—south-south-west direction seaward from the watershed. Freetown is located on a peninsula (with peaks of up to 600 m) which shelters the harbour from south-west winds. Perhaps the geographical features that have exercised the dominant historical influences in the Guinea, Sierra Leone and Liberian regions are the complex of numerous rivers, low plains, marshy land, powerful tides and an extensive continental shelf. There are more than two-dozen principal rivers in the coastal stretch between the Gambia and Cape Mount. These rivers, which flow in a generally westerly or south-westerly direction, constituted, together with their tributaries, important waterways for the inhabitants of this region. None of Liberia's rivers (big and small) are navigable for more than a few kilometres, and they cannot be entered from the sea because of sand bars and perilous rock formations.

The linguistic and ethnic configuration

The peoples of Upper Guinea belong to three main language subgroupings of the Niger-Congo family: Mande, West Atlantic and Kwa (Fig. 18.2).

Mande
By far the most secure and best known of these subgroupings is that of the
FIG. 18.2 Language families of West Africa (simplified and with some major individual languages marked)
Mande, a set of about twenty-five languages which stretches from Busa in Nigeria to The Gambia in the west, and from Soninke in the north to Vai-Kono in the south. Within the Mande subgrouping the position of Bobo-Fing (Sya) in the Burkina Faso remains somewhat enigmatic, while all other Mande languages are generally divided into two groups, the northern or north-western and the southern (or south-eastern). The relative degrees of relationship are clear for many individual languages. The south-west subgroup of the north-western division includes languages such as Mende, Kpelle and Loma, spoken in Sierra Leone, Liberia and Guinea, whereas the northern subgroup of the same division embraces Soninke, Mandenka (Bambara, Malinka, Dyula, etc.), Soso-Yalunke, Vai-Kono, and some others. The southern division was until recently considered to consist of two separate subgroupings, the southern one comprising Mano and a few other smaller languages in Liberia and Ivory Coast, and the eastern one which included a number of small isolated languages (Busa, Bisa, Samo) scattered in Burkina Faso, northern Benin and western Nigeria, but it is now established that both these subgroups are closely related and form therefore only one group.

Mandenka, a subgroup of a subgroup of Mande, has three exceptional features. These are its large numbers of speakers, its extensive geographical spread and its relative cohesion. The Mande-speaking area was the core of the early Western Sudanese states, of which the earliest, the Ghana empire, dates back to over a thousand years. According to oral tradition, Mande expansion into what is now The Gambia took place during the reign of Sundiata in the thirteenth century and the trade settlements to the south date from the fourteenth century, if not before.

The geographical distribution of the Mande-speakers is open to various historical explanations. As the great bulk of the Mande is represented just by the Mandenka it was for a long time held that the original home of all Mande was situated in the Upper Senegal-Niger region in present-day Mali. It was further reasoned that all the other Mande-speakers were offshoots of successive migratory waves from this original centre. This seems to be true of later population movements (known also as the second Mande dispersal) which were directed mostly southwards and westwards.

On the other hand it can be hypothetically presumed that the Mande (or proto-Mande) started their migratory movements from a prehistoric home somewhere in the vicinity of Lake Chad, and after crossing the Niger continued in a general westward or south-westward direction. These migrations must have taken place before those of the Gur (Voltaic)-speaking and Kwa-speaking peoples. Oral traditions of both Bisa (Busanse) and Mosi-Dagomba suggest that the Bisa were in their present locations long before

---

FIG. 18.3 The ‘Manding’ peoples and their languages
the foundation of the Mosi-Dagomba states.⁷ The traditions of Busa (in Nigeria) speak of their coming from the east.⁸

All this indicates that the Mande-speaking peoples now living scattered in Burkina Faso, Benin and Nigeria are not the easternmost offshoots of a Mande expansion starting in the west, but rather residues of southern Mande migrations going from east to south-west, as indicated by their close linguistic relationship.⁹

As for the chronological framework, Welmers suggested that the Mande languages represent the earliest break-off from the Niger-Congo family, placing this divergence at c. −3300; the split between southern and northern-western Mande would have occurred c. −1600.¹⁰ But as these dates are based on glottochronology, the methods of which are coming increasingly under criticism from many linguists, they must be accepted with the utmost caution.

There is no doubt, however, that parts of Liberia and Ivory Coast were during the period covered by this Volume already inhabited by speakers of Mande languages belonging to the southern division. Other Mande peoples – Vai, Kono, Mende, Soso, Kpelle/Guerze, Loma/Toma, etc. – have migrated coastwards in several waves only during the last five or six centuries and their movements are described in the next Volume.¹¹

West Atlantic

As against the relative internal homogeneity of the Mande subgrouping, Greenberg’s ‘West Atlantic’ grouping, present also in the savanna zone, is seen by others¹² as relatively more disparate, submerging historically significant subgroupings and stages like that of the Mel languages. On the other hand, its classificational break with Kwa appears to be arbitrary, at least in so far as it tends to obscure striking non-contiguous relationships, like the close lexical correspondence between Mel and Akan. However, Dalby’s implication that these language groupings of the West Atlantic may not be related at all is open to discussion.

As Welmers quite rightly observes, if West Atlantic represents a very old divergence in Niger-Congo, one would expect some inter-relationship within the branch to be distant, and as such the inclusion of some languages within the group may seem dubious.¹³

---

⁷ According to tradition the Dagomba and Mosi states were founded by a son of a Mande hunter and a Voltaic woman, indicating that the Mande were there earlier. Cf. A. Prost, 1945, pp. 50–1; 1981, p. 357; J. Goody, 1964, pp. 211–12.
⁸ This tradition is linked with the legend of Kisra, cf. P. Mercier, 1970, p. 317.
¹². E.g., D. Dalby, 1965.
West Atlantic is seen by Sapir to be a group of diverse languages spoken in the coastal area extending from the Senegal–Mauritanian border in the north-west to the Sierra Leone–Liberian border in the south-east. The one exception is Pular (or Fulfulde), a language spoken by a savanna people extending from northern Senegal to northern Cameroon and the Chad region. Sapir further noted that in marked contrast to Pular (and to a lesser extent Wolof in Senegal and Temne in Sierra Leone) the majority of the West Atlantic languages are spoken by relatively small and often isolated populations that range in numbers from upwards of 200,000 speakers (e.g. Dyula and Kisi) to as few as several hundred (e.g. Kobiana). Apart from certain common typological features such as noun-class systems and verbal extension suffixes, Sapir finds little that distinguishes the entire group in any obvious way. The diversity of the entire group apparently explains why some scholars (e.g. Dalby) question the relationship of the languages within this group. It does seem however, that Westermann adduced correspondences to link Mel with other West Atlantic languages. Although small in number, these are clear enough to permit the postulation of a unified even if very broad genetic group. Sapir reports that a lexical count based on look-alikes (a pejorative term for putative cognates) clearly and accurately defined the unity of Mel as well as separating out the major sub-groupings and some levels of relationships between these.

Kwa

Greenberg classifies the Kwa as occupying a belt of about 320 km average width which extends about 2240 km along the West African coast from Monrovia in Liberia in the west, through Ivory Coast, Ghana, Togo and an area between Benin and the eastern Niger delta. While this grouping may well submerge independent language groupings like Nupe and obscure close lexical correspondences between non-contiguous groups like Mel and the Akan languages, Greenberg’s middle-range groupings are essentially valid. For instance the four most important of the Kwa languages presently in terms of number of speakers – (1) Akan (Twi, Fanti) dominant in Ghana, (2) Ewe dominant in Togo and the Republic of Benin, and spoken also in south-eastern Ghana; (3) Yoruba dominant in western Nigeria; (4) Igbo dominant in eastern Nigeria – are syllabic, and have musical tones. It is true enough that Greenberg’s assignment of languages like Kru and Ijo to Kwa are tentative, yet Ijo for example seems

15. ibid.
17. J. D. Sapir, 1971, p. 49.
to be about as closely related to Yoruba and to Akan as the latter are to each other. Indeed detailed studies, admittedly still in their infancy, indicate that the greater part of the forest belt of West Africa, over a thousand miles from central Liberia to beyond the lower Niger in Nigeria, is occupied by peoples speaking a series of related languages, with underlying similarities in vocabulary and structure. If these reflect a common proto-language, then linguistic evidence points here to an early cultural continuum over much of this forest belt, and subsequent diversification from an early but unknown date. The above-mentioned and several other relationships within Kwa appear to be at least as distant as between some of the easternmost languages assigned to Kwa and languages that clearly belong in Benue-Congo.

Historical-geographic evidence furthermore suggests that the forest was not easily penetrated by later peoples; and when such penetration occurred, it was not in the form of mass migrations. Rather such penetration was confined to small groups, who even if they exerted great cultural influence, were absorbed linguistically by the local populations. It was apparently only in the far west that northerners penetrated in large numbers, establishing warrior chiefdoms like those of the Mende of Sierra Leone, which carried the Mande language family down to the coast.

Hypotheses

For many, the major theme in the historical review of this region is that of an epochal confrontation between two great cultural traditions represented by the precursors of the Mel-speaking peoples of the coast and the expanding Mande-speaking peoples from the highland interior.20

It is true that during the period of early European contact, and over the centuries to follow, this region constituted a teeming frontier of immigration, population increase and inter-group competition, as interior peoples moved into the lowland forests of the littoral in search of land and trade. There is also little doubt that the infiltration of Mande-speaking groups from the east was a major contributing factor in this process.

Nevertheless, fundamental problems remain in any efforts to relate these to the broader regional socio-cultural history of the pre-fifteenth century and in particular the late first millennium and the early part of the second millennium. It is not clear for example whether the Mane invasion took place in the fourteenth century as posited by Livingstone, the fifteenth century as suggested by Lamp or the sixteenth century as suggested by Hair.21 Moreover, related to this are disagreements as to the form it took and its impact on the local people. Whereas for Hair it was a brief war

resulting in the intruders being assimilated by the local people, for others it was a mass migration with decisive and sometimes disastrous consequences for the indigenous groups.

For instance Rodney and Lamp attribute the destruction of the skills of the Sapes (which include the Bullom, Temne, Limba and Baga and Nalu known today as speakers of Mel languages), who had great reputations as artists and craftsmen, to this intrusion. But the ‘Manes’ are also regarded as having contributed many new skills such as techniques of iron-working, cotton-weaving and warfare, and gave a great impetus to institutions that were already established like the Poro, Ragbenle and Simo secret societies.

Livingstone, relying on blood studies, especially the parallel distribution of the sickle-cell trait among certain ethnic groups of West Africa with intensive agriculture, suggested that the earliest Mande-speakers to move west (placed by him in the fourteenth century) were primarily hunters and warriors and that subsequent waves of Mande migrants introduced rice cultivation together with iron implements for intensive farming of forest areas by slash-and-burn methods. According to him this process probably began on the fringe forest of the Guinea Highlands and then spread slowly among the peoples of the lowland forest.

Livingstone connected the spread of this trait with the later movements of Mande-speakers from the Western Sudan. According to his thesis the new mode of agriculture introduced into the forest created the environmental conditions favourable to the malaria mosquito and thus enhanced the selective advantage of the sickle-cell gene.

The still prevalent view is that these coastal peoples did not have much cultivation or iron-smelting until Mande-speaking peoples arrived among them, this occurring as recently as the sixteenth century, and that all this resulted in substantial population increase.

A variant of this thesis traces the Mande advent much further back in time and suggests that it constitutes even more of a civilizing force, attributing to the Mande the introduction of agriculture, iron-working, sophisticated socio-political systems, long-distance trade and, with these, more complex economic systems and craft organizations. In this connection, it is variously claimed that the Western Sudanic states, menaced by nomadic Berbers, began to exert pressure which led to population drifts to the coast as early as the third century of the Christian era, that this trend continues today and that there are, as it were, a series of population layers. Spreading outward from the coast are found, first, the remnants of the indigenous peoples. In Sierra Leone, these are the Bullom closely associated with the Kisi and the Krim, the languages of all three being related. Place names seem to indicate that many parts, now occupied by Mende, Kono and Vai, were once Kisi. Along the present Liberian frontier live the

FIG. 18.4 Population movements in the Upper Guinea Region
The peoples of Upper Guinea

Gola, speaking like the others one of the southern Mel languages, with a system of noun classes similar to that of the Bantu. The Limba, too, have a system of noun classes and are often grouped with the other Mel language speakers in the 'West Atlantic' family.

Somewhat later came the closely related Baga and Temne, speaking a northern Mel language, settling a little inland. These Temne, along with the Nalu, Landuma and Cocoli further north, seem to represent a second, later layer, and have been called the 'Pre-Mandingas'. The Temne, Kisi, Limba, Baga and Landuma were thus all early inhabitants of Futa Jallon. Finally displaced about the thirteenth century by the Mande-speaking Soso, they tended to move west and south to occupy more fertile land towards the coast. The Soso, taking their place, in turn began a move coastwards as they multiplied.

The Sapi and the Landuma remained in the hinterland immediately behind the Nalu and the Baga, but the Temne eventually pushed down to the mouth of the River Sierra Leone, cutting the Bullom in two by the sixteenth century, and becoming one of the most powerful groups of the Sierra Leone coast.

The Baga, Landuma and Temne may have been one people until the Soso drove between them. The former, now occupying Guinea are being gradually absorbed by the Soso. Their counterparts in Sierra Leone, the Temne, have kept their identity and have themselves absorbed members of the coastal Bullom, as well as Loko, Koranko, Fulbe and even Soso further inland.

By focusing attention on aspects of economy, ecology and social structure, Murdock separated the area into two sections: (1) Senegambia represents a solid block of West Atlantic-speakers, distinguished by matrilineality, intensive distribution of Sudanic crops at an early date and a savanna setting, favourable cultural contact and actual intrusion from the Sudan. (2) The zone stretching from coastal Guinea to about the Sassandra River inhabited by a cluster of people referred to as 'the Kru and Peripheral Mande', who are historically and socially closely interrelated with one another, though speaking numerous dialects of the Mande, Kwa (Kru) and West Atlantic (Mel) languages.25

D'Azevedo subsequently suggested that a small section (in southern Sierra Leone and north-western Liberia) of this latter area revealed some distinctiveness by its intensive multilingualism, its history of heterogeneous population influx and the existence of inter-tribal confederacies across fluid linguistic boundaries. This sub-area is referred to as 'the Central West Atlantic Region' in order to focus attention on distinctive historical and ethnographic features that seem to set this coastal cluster of ethnic cultures somewhat apart from an area of peoples beyond.26

An alternative and apparently more reasonable view argues that iron-working and agriculture were firmly established in parts of Upper Guinea before the advent of the 'Mandingo'; the 'Mandingo' advent merely heralded the addition of Sudanic elements to the agricultural system and the socio-political system of the indigenous populations. It is clear from the foregoing that there is still a need to find definitive answers to certain basic questions regarding the cultural history of this region. Some of these concern the times at which peoples came south from the Western Sudan; who they were, from what parts and to what parts they went; the character of these movements and what changes and modifications, if any, occurred as a result. Specifically we would like to know when crops native to Upper Guinea started to be cultivated and when Sudanic elements were introduced, what was their relative importance and how iron-working and long-distance trade became known and with what results.

The process of culture contact was going on in this region for several centuries, long before the famous Mane invasion, and such contact involved the movement of peoples of diverse languages and cultures into a sparsely inhabited coastal forest area and their intermingling. The fact that there is some evidence that most of the ethnolinguistic units that were reported on the coast in the European records between 1440 and 1700 exist today in much the same sequence, though their placement and territorial size may have altered to some degree is noted by adherents of this view as being in its favour. It is also quite rightly pointed out that this does not mean that modern groups, because of similarity of names, languages or placement, are direct genetic or cultural descendants of the ethnic cultures of the past, for this area has undergone vigorous change for centuries.

Senegambia

In the Senegambian region archaeological evidence indicates that the Loudia and Wolof sites in Lower Casamance were occupied from as far back as the first millennium before the Christian era. Up until +200 settlement was sparse and comprised people living in small encampments on low sandy ridges.

Linares de Sapir thinks the people came in from the east since their pottery shares decorative techniques like wavy-line incision 'with Neolithic pottery of wide distribution from Cape Verde to Southern Algeria and even beyond to Central Africa'.\(^{27}\) These coastal dwellers subsequently adapted to coastal life, which fact is testified to by the presence of mollusc remains. De Sapir conjectures that the people had commenced to cultivate wet rice at this time (i.e. between \(-200\) and \(+200\)).\(^{28}\) Such new and radi-

\(^{28}\) According to A. Portères, 1950, Senegambia was a secondary centre of *Oryza glaberrima* (West African rice) propagation.
The peoples of Upper Guinea

cal adaptation was introduced by new settlers, possibly ancestors of the Dyula, who came from the south and displaced the previous few occupants, who were relatively few in number.

During the third major phase of occupation sheep and/or goat domesticates were kept; cattle continued to be present while fish was a most common element in the diet.

In the fourth and final phase identified, two new animal domesticates, pig and dog, appear. Pottery is generally similar to that of the preceding period although the small lidded bowl was no longer being made by the inhabitants then, as is true now also of the Dyula. De Sapir interprets the archaeological evidence, especially pottery, as indicating that the Dyula came to occupy all of the alluvial valleys between the Casamance River delta and the Sondrougou River in the course of the three latter phases.

Apart from Casamance, the mouth of the Senegal River near St Louis and the Sine-Saloum delta (Joal, Gandoul and Bandiala) were similarly inhabited from about as early if not earlier. De Sapir notes that even though some middens found in these other estuaries may be 'terminal Neolithic', most date from the Early Iron Age, while some were occupied when the Europeans arrived. One such complex of shell-midden settlement at Dionevar contains well over forty burials. Recent excavations revealed Iron Age materials (hoe blade, beads and bracelets, and pottery). There are general ceramic parallels between the Casamance and Saint-Louis areas. In both Casamance and Cape Verde, decorative techniques assigned to the Neolithic also continue into the Early Iron Age. Both areas also share vague similarities in the shapes of vessels (spheroids and ovoids of various sizes and middle-sized jars with flared necks).

Linguistic evidence does not appear to support the idea that the Dyula group came from the east. Rather it places the centre of ancient Dyula dispersion to the south, in the coastal section of Guinea-Bissau, where the Mandyak and the Balante, both linguistically related to the Dyula are found. Like the Dyula these people are also wet-rice cultivators and employ the unique hand spade, the kayando. Archaeologically it is also questionable since the practice of shellfish gathering, the shell-tempered pottery and the presence of fish remains during the second major phase of occupation, indicate a coastal rather than an inland eastern origin.

About +300, the Dyula were exploiting the rich fauna of mangrove channels and marigots, and were probably also practising agriculture, perhaps an advanced stage of rice cultivation. Many recognizable features of Dyula culture were already present from the second distinctive occupation period onwards. Groups lived on sandy ridges in or near alluvial valleys, just as they do today, discarding their rubbish in particular places. Middens formed contain pottery fragments and other refuse which com-

pare with present Dyula material culture. It is not known whether or not the Dyula buried pots with their dead, since no graves were found in or near these sites.

Over the past eighty or so years several great complexes of stone circles (megaliths) have been discovered in the Senegambian region, to the north of the River Gambia, in an area of more than 30,000 sq km, stretching from Fara-fenni, some 360 km from the river mouth, to as far east as Tamba-counda in the Senegal (see Figs 16.2–16.4). The stones were usually quarried from the low laterite hills which dot this savanna region. The earliest-known ones consist of standing stones and lines of lateritic blocks between eight and twenty-four in number and up to 4 m high. One group at Dallolmberere, perhaps the largest concentration yet known, consists of at least fifty-four circles, each circle up to 8 m across. But the size of the interior of the circle varies according to the size and number of stones; and circles are usually in twos and threes. Some of the interiors of the circles are flat, while some are hollowed, but more often they are slightly raised. The stones in any particular circle are all of the same size — usually anywhere from 1–2 m tall. In shape the stones are generally rounded pillars. Most circles have a pair of stones oriented due east from them, and occasionally there are huge stones cut in the shape of a letter Y.\(^3\)

Archaeological work has shown that these monuments are burial grounds. It seems that these circles of stones were originally much higher and covered with sand and laterite and that the rows of adjoining circles were the cemeteries of dynasties of kings or priests, while the smaller groups are those of local chiefs or priests. There is also the suggestion that the eastward orientation of the Y-shaped stone and pairs of outliers may reflect sun worship.

Pottery from these megaliths appears to parallel material found in the tumuli of the Rao and Sine, and Sahelian regions of Senegal.\(^3\) Although previously dated to the fourteenth century,\(^3\) excavations by Dakar University in the Sine-Salum area indicate dates around +1000.\(^3\)

So far, more than 4000 mounds have been discovered, some as high as 5 m and up to 40 m across. Those excavated reveal multiple burials; at Dioron Boumak there were forty-one.\(^3\) The profusion of grave goods includes gold and carnelian beads, iron weapons, ornaments of gold and copper and, in one grave, a gold pectoral. It is possible to date the emergence of metals — ornaments and other burial objects — in this region to a period from the fourth to the sixth century of the Christian era. The carnelian beads, however, come from sites that date to before the eleventh century and point to a circulation of this material, probably from the Nile Valley.

33. G. Thilmans and C. Descamps, 1974; 1975.
34. ibid.
Other mounds with similar rich finds have been excavated in the upper Niger Valley, mainly below Segu. At Kūgha one mound associated with standing stones has been dated to around + 1000.35 This affluence was almost certainly due to the control of the mineral resources and to the agricultural potential of the Inland Delta of the Niger.

It is clear from the above that there were important contacts and connections between the Western Sudan and Senegambia during this period of megalith builders. The Arab geographer al-Bakrī described an eleventh-century burial of a king of Ghana which is similar in some respects to the Senegambian burials.36 To some modern historians such evidence and earlier dating estimates of burials indicate derivation (not precluding movement of the Soninke) from the seat of the state of Ghana in the Western Sudan. The weight of evidence available suggests that the megaliths and related socio-cultural achievements were the work of the ancestors of people living in the area today, mainly ‘Mandingo’, Wolof and Fulbe. As far as is known only the Dyula were known to have lived there at the time of the circle building. However, the fact that pottery found in some complexes (e.g. Wassu) differs considerably from that found in others (e.g. Fara-fenni) may indicate that many ethnic groups – but with identical cultures – conducted these burials. Moreover the variety of styles in the stone-carving argues for a development over a long period.

Guinea–Sierra Leone–Liberia

In Sierra Leone, man appears to have had easy access to caves and rock-shelters located in the wooded savanna regions, especially in the highland zone in the north-east. He occupied caves and shelters like Kamabai, Yagala, Kabala, Kakoya, Yengema and Bunumbu from early times, sometimes well before the Late Stone Age. Excavations at Kamabai and Yagala (rock shelters less than 320 km north of Cape Mount) by Atherton, and at Yengema by Coon revealed iron-using phases in their later levels, dating from as early as the seventh or eighth century; stone tools continued in use until at least the fourteenth century.37 Important food items for peoples here from Neolithic times must have included oil palm, locust beans, wild yams, game, fish, honey and small fruits. Huge smelting sites are present in north-eastern Sierra Leone in Koranko country; unfortunately there are no dates.

The most recent two levels (3 and 4) of Kamabai were dated to between the sixth and ninth centuries and the sixth and tenth centuries. Pottery from these levels, especially those with chevron triangular impressions were markedly different from pottery recovered from smaller sites around

The 'Iron Age' level was succeeded, at least in north-eastern Bo, by a tradition called 'Sefadu-Tankoro' by Hill, characterized by iron-working (slag and tuyère fragments). At one site a partially vitrified crucible and a mould, apparently used for lost-wax casting of brass, were found. Iron artefacts were retrieved together with chipped-stone tools from one such site in what Hill thinks may be a ritual deposit accumulated over a very short period of time. A few non-ceramic sites and stray finds of stone tools are also interpreted as suggesting that industries analogous or even homologous to the Lower and Middle Yengeman of Yengema cave were widespread in the Eastern and Southern provinces.

The fact cannot be gainsaid that there were contacts between the forest and savanna peoples of this part of the Upper Guinea region, from very early times. Trade was particularly important as a means of contact and interaction. Silk, cotton, and a little gold were traded for oysters round the northern rivers (i.e. Scarcies, Mellacourie, etc). However, contrary to what some think, there is evidence for the flourishing of civilizations in the forest areas from early times. Among this are the steatite ancestor figures in Sierra Leone and Liberia, known as nomoli and pomdo, and the megaliths already alluded to above, but also from Guinea through Sierra Leone to Liberia. Some scholars have suggested that both traditions were approximately contemporaneous with the introduction of iron, implying that iron and these traditions were introduced into the forest areas.

Some of the contemporary pottery features (e.g. the globular pottery with constricted neck and flared rim, made today in the north of Sierra Leone) appear to continue traditions begun in the Neolithic era and resembling those from Futa Jallon in Guinea. Whether pottery and iron-working were introduced into the forest region or not, the region between Senegal and the Ivory Coast manifested features of complex state organization long before recorded history. And these manifestations were in character largely independent of the civilization of the Middle Niger region.

Liberian rain-forest 'early Iron Age' pottery appears to share similarities with the Iron Age of Zimbabwe in the earlier half of the first millennium of the Christian era. This complex included channelled, stamped and corded ware in jar and carinated bowl forms, pole and daub huts and slightly raised platforms, slag from iron-smelting, fertility worship symbols of women and cattle clay figurines, ostrich-shell beads and copper and bronze objects. The last three groups of artefacts have not so far been

40. ibid.
42. A. P. Kup, 1975.
found in Liberian complexes. Liberian pottery also shows striking similarities with Early Iron Age pottery from other parts of West Africa. For example the stamped ware found in Mali, Senegal and Ghana sites show specific similarities in rocker and dentate stamps as well as other design elements on comparable vessel forms and ware types.

The Liberian pottery finds fall into distinguishable groups which appear to have validity in cultural analysis. In regard to the ethnographic materials the ‘Mandingo’-Lomo-Kpelle-Mano wares are sufficiently alike to form a genetically related sub-tradition. This is in effect a continuum of traits with the most varied and complex in the ‘Mandingo’ ware and the simplest in the Mano wares. In regard to designs and vessel forms the ‘Mandingo’ are the most varied and complex and the Mano the least so. Actually, the Lomo-Kpelle-Mano potteries are considerably less complex. According to Orr this agrees with the culturally more sophisticated position of the ‘Mandingo’ of the nuclear Mande and the others, the so-called peripheral Mande. The Bofota, Samquelle I and Gbanshay ceramics appear to be most closely related to the peripheral Mande pottery family and according to Orr are undoubtedly earlier although he has no seriation in the styles to indicate how much earlier.

The known examples of pomtan and nomoli, the names usually applied to a variety of stone sculptures, number in thousands and have been found over an area stretching from Sherbro Island to the Kisi country of Guinea, some 350 km to the north; and from western Liberia westwards to the Temne country, a distance of about 220 km. Occurrence of the carvings appears to be more or less continuous throughout the area, although there are wide stylistic differences between the pomtan (sing., pomda) of Kisi and the nomoli found in Sierra Leone. The terrain has a high-forest vegetation and is populated by agricultural peoples who cultivate rice as their main crop, but belong to two different language groups. The Kisi people to the north, and the Bullom-Sherbro on the coast speak languages of the same group, but which differ basically from the language of the Mande and Kono who occupy the country which divides them. Besides being numerous and widely distributed, the nomoli and pomtan are small enough to be readily portable and became early available for study in European collections.

Although the tendency has been to discount the Mande as having been the makers of these stone figures, since they are thought to have arrived late, Atherton and Kalous hold a contrary view. They are convinced that the Mende are made up of an earlier aboriginal population group and a more recent ‘Mandingo’ element. In their view the aboriginal group known as ‘Sapes’ to early visitors (and excluding related coastal peoples such as the Sherbro) were responsible for making the nomoli. Their supporting evidence includes representation by the nomoli of such physical features as

44. ibid.
large heads wearing the characteristic long drooping moustache of the northern Mande.\textsuperscript{45}

As against this view Person inferred – from studies of local tradition, place names and early European chronicles – that the area in which the \textit{nomoli} occur was once entirely occupied by peoples of the West Atlantic language group.\textsuperscript{46} However all relevant evidence indicates that his placement of the time when the Mande moved south to their present point as four centuries ago is much too recent. It seems for instance that in the more remote forested highlands of the Niger watershed, the Kisi, although a people of very mixed ethnic origins, preserved not only their language, but much of their cultural traditions, including that of stone-carving, which continues in a less sophisticated form to the present. Recent archaeological evidence from Sierra Leone which indicates that a metal-using culture with a distinctive pottery tradition was widespread in this region from the sixth to the seventh century also points to some relationship between this iron culture and the \textit{nomoli} tradition.

On the basis of stylistic similarities, Atherton and Kalous have claimed that the first \textit{nomoli} must have been made in imitation of clay figurines of the Western Sudan. According to them the tradition of making \textit{nomoli} must have been introduced from the Western Sudan at the same time as the first appearance of some rather distinctive pottery (as well as iron) at Kamabai, namely sometime in the sixth or seventh century.\textsuperscript{47} While it is quite possible that the stone sculptures were being made during the Early Iron Age, these scholars adduce no evidence to show that the knowledge of stone-carving was brought in from the Western Sudan to the north. Indeed they prefer to ignore the fact that wooden sculptures very similar to the stone objects (and not clay ones) are present in this region, and that the knowledge for the stone sculptures may have been acquired through first working in wood. The suggestion of outside introduction also does not take into account the fact, among others, that this tradition is uniquely a stone not a clay one and the sculptures represent a wide variety of styles. In any case if the tradition was presaged by working in clay it seems very odd that no clay figurines (terracottas) have been found in association even though clay was being used by the local people for making pots.

Allison points out that a majority of the sculptures were of talc or steatite, with smaller numbers in chlorite schist and amphibolite, and a few in hard rocks such as granite, dolerite and sandstone.\textsuperscript{48} Given the large number of sculptures, it would seem reasonable to expect that they were usually made either by or as near as possible to rich sources of raw material. Its great abundance, its very wide distribution, the fact that stone and wood rather than clay were used, and the variety of styles, all point to a

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{45} J. H. Atherton and M. Kalous, 1970, p. 307.
  \item \textsuperscript{46} Y. Person, 1972.
  \item \textsuperscript{47} J. H. Atherton and M. Kalous, 1970, p. 312.
  \item \textsuperscript{48} P. Allison, 1968, p. 37.
\end{itemize}
The peoples of Upper Guinea

home-grown, rather than an imported tradition, which blossomed in these diverse forms in response mainly to local cultural and ecological pressures and differences. If indeed the first nomoli were made in imitation of clay figurines of the Western Sudan as Atherton and Kalous claim, it is very strange that the forest-dwellers never attempted to fashion such clay objects – since such an exercise would by all accounts have been easier as well as possible – as clay was available and being used for making pots. It is also equally strange that these folks, so good at imitating others, not only learnt so fast but quickly translated this new lesson into several local idioms and materials, yet were not able to discover the potentials of these heavily abundant raw materials on their own, but had to wait to see the one or two odd clay figurines, before Pandora’s box could be unlocked for them. Not only is it more logical in the face of presently available evidence to accept that the nomoli were largely the independent achievement of people who had been living in the terrain for a very long time, but it is necessary to examine seriously the possibility that this art/scientific tradition was exported northwards from the southern source. Indeed it may well not be an accident that a stone-sculpturing tradition is found in various other parts of the Guinea region, such as at Esie in Yorubaland, and in the Akwanshi culture among the Ekoi of the Cross River region.

Nor does dating evidence support the idea that knowledge of nomoli-making came from the Sudanic area through the indirect route of terracotta art. In the course of archaeological work in Jenne-Jeno in the Inland Niger Delta a terracotta statuette was recovered from a secure archaeological context dated sometime between 1000 and 1300.49 If this date heralds the beginnings of this art tradition in this region it means that it is much later than the beginnings of the nomoli stone-working tradition of Sierra Leone which has been dated by association to the sixth to seventh century.

The great majority of sculptures of all types represent the male human figure although the genitals are seldom portrayed. The typical nomoli is usually between about 15 cm and 20 cm high and the ponodo between about 7.5 cm and 15 cm, although a few specimens over 30 cm high have been collected in all parts of the area. The poneto are typically cylindrical in form and consist basically of a cylinder surrounded by a featureless globular head which has inevitably led to their being described as phalli.

From this simplified formal expression, the carvings develop to a fully realized representation of the human figure. As in the case of the much larger Akwanshi of the Cross River, the head is given human features and engraved, or low-relief arms are added to the body.50 A few bulbous stylizations of the female form also occur. Finally, well-sculptured human figures of both sexes are found, though the males are more numerous. These show considerable elaboration in the form of headgear or dressed

50. Cf. Chapter 17 above.
hair, beads and ornamental body-scars. The male figures are often beaded and some have curved noses and bared teeth and carry a staff or weapon in their hands. Still retaining the typical cylindrical form of the pomtan are a few groups in which a large central figure is surrounded by a number of smaller ones. These more elaborate figures and groups occur rarely in the collections made in the Kisi country of Guinea and probably derive mainly from the southern Kisi of Sierra Leone and from the Kono country which borders both Kisi and Mande.

The popular belief throughout the area is that the carvings are of divine origin, although the Kisi elders agree that the pomtan were made by their forefathers at some very remote period, and are always the manifestation of some particular ancestor. Among the Mande on the other hand, the nomoli are significantly connected with the old landowners, and not with their own ancestors. When found, they are set up on a shrine in the farmland where it is believed that their presence will ensure a good rice crop.

Indeed linguistic evidence seems to suggest that as from about 2500 years ago the southern Sierra Leone, northern Liberia region and part of adjacent Guinea were occupied by Mel-speakers, who were probably expanding at the expense of Kwa-speakers. At about the same time, Mande languages were spreading from a hearth in the Mali-Guinea border area and differentiating. One branch of Mande ancestral to Kono-Vai, Koranko, Malinke and others spread north, eventually expanding widely in the Sudan. Later on, the Kono-Vai branch spread south-westwards separating Kisi and Gola from the other Mel language. Subsequently and quite recently another Mande group, already internally distinct, expanded north-westwards, splitting Kisi from Gola if they were not already physically separated and cutting across the Kono-Vai salient. This north-westward thrust of Mande (known as Mande Loko) was subsequently divided by the eastward expansion of Temne-speaking people north of the area. Hill has raised the possibility that the appearance of the Sefadu Tankoro archaeological tradition is associated with the south-westward expansion of Kono-Vai. But this suggestion leaves an important question unanswered: why one linguistic expansion – Kono-Vai – is visible while another precisely similar one – Mande-Loko – is not.

There is little evidence of a direct connection between the movement of the Vai of north-western Liberia (who speak a northern Mande language) towards the coast and that of the Ligbi towards eastern Ivory Coast, despite linguistic similarities. More probably the Vai entered present-day Sierra Leone in company with the Kono. Traditions that the Kono were ‘left behind’ sound misleading: it is more likely that the Kono, Vai and speakers of the now extinct ‘Dama’ language formed a continuous band from eastern Sierra Leone to the sea, cutting off the Gola and Kisi from

other Mel-speakers. Later (perhaps before the mid-seventeenth century) this band must have been split by the westward movement of southwestern Mande-speakers.

The 'migration' of the Vai need not have involved a mass exodus or conquest. What was probably involved was the gradual creation of trade corridors, with a few northern Mande-speakers resident on the coast and a large number carrying salt, dried fish and other wares from the coast towards the head of the Niger. Although the corridors were eventually to some extent disrupted, the Vai language survived near the coast, because of its importance in trade and because links with the Manden were never entirely severed.

Convinced also that both salt and fish must have been prominent in long-distance trade long before European trade began, Hill came to the conclusion that (1) the extension of Manden speakers into the forest zone and ultimately to the coast was tied to the establishment of trade routes; (2) that these trade routes, in turn, were linked (reciprocally?) to the increase of population in the area affected; (3) that increasing population provided the basis for the development of more complex political systems, appropriate to a people essentially dependent on foreign trade and probably modelled on those of the Western Sudan; (4) that prestige of the Manden language of traders and/or rulers contributed to the replacement of a probable Mel antecedent tongue or tongues by ancestral Kono/Dama/Vai. 53

According to recent research the northern Mande-speaking groups did not arrive suddenly in the forest regions, but came gradually and in small groups; there is also growing awareness that this must have happened much earlier than was originally thought. The role of long-distance trade in stimulating major socio-political development as well as the influence that may have been exercised in this respect by the main purveyors of the trade, i.e. the Vai, seems to be significant. It is now recognized as a real possibility that the Vai came into Liberia many centuries before the 1455 date suggested by Person. 54

Linguistic evidence offers some interesting indications on these questions: Jones reports that Kono and Vai have apparently borrowed some words from south-western Mande languages (for instance their terms for 'fish', 'fowl', 'canoe', 'camwood', 'cotton' and 'iron'), some of which they share with Mel and south-western Mande languages but not with Manden (e.g. 'short', 'smallpox') and at least one which they seem to share only with Kisi (i.e. 'elephant'). These borrowings may be culturally significant; if so it means that the development of Kono-Vai civilization was a very gradual process receiving cross-fertilization from various directions and at various times. 55

In this regard, Person's picture of the movement which put the Vai and

53. ibid.
55. A. Jones, 1981.
Kono in place as simply a quick incursion dated to the fifteenth or sixteenth century is not fully convincing; historical processes which last decades or centuries can hardly be explained in terms of a single battle or the action of one leader. Equally, new trade routes are mostly created by a gradual evolution, not a sudden military conquest.

What we are concerned with rather is the movement of parties for political or economic reasons which dragged on over the centuries. The result was the modification of populations through intermarriage, the transformation of social structures and the expansion or regression of languages. Many of the events Person describes, including the arrival of the Vai, probably took place centuries earlier and at a much slower pace.

According to Jones, the number of Vai-speakers was increased by intermarriage with the indigenous population; not just Mel-speakers but also the Die who, according to the nineteenth-century sources, used to occupy a larger area on the coast. Thus the Vai ceased to be regarded as complete strangers.\textsuperscript{56} Traditions which talk of migrations, conquests and territorial spread make more sense if we think in terms of trade paths (sometimes extended and safeguarded, perhaps, by military actions). In addition to a small core of Vai on the coast, there was probably a large number of people speaking Vai or a related language and moving up and down the corridors which connected the Mandenka country with the coast. Perhaps settlements were formed as 'nodes' along these corridors; but it is unlikely that such settlements controlled large pieces of territory.

With respect to fields of research which might yield further clues about Vai origins, Jones aptly notes that if additional written sources from the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries are discovered, they are unlikely to tell us much that is new on this subject. He thinks that oral traditions could be of some help, regarding for example traditions of eastern Sierra Leone and north-western Liberia. The Kamara factor is singled out as deserving further investigation; and in general it is correctly noted that it would be helpful to know how widespread the use of Manden names by non-Manden-speaking people is in particular areas. Linked with this is the need for socio-anthropological research, which might indicate to what extent the Vai have retained Manden characteristics in the social and cultural spheres.

Hardly any archaeological research has yet been conducted in the Vai

\textsuperscript{56} ibid., p. 162. Jones also points out that it has never been satisfactorily explained just why Northern Mande languages are so often used for trade, though it may have something to do with their grammatical simplicity. But the point that needs stressing is that Vai was adopted as a trade language and that this has important historical implications. Jones observes that the adoption of Vai as a trade language seems to imply that there existed a market for the goods in which Vai-speakers dealt. Possibly non-Vai were willing to accept Vai as a lingua franca because they somehow saw it as representing a 'superior' civilization. Perhaps Vai did not carry as strong ethnic connotations as some languages. It is even conceivable that the spread of Vai was assisted by the spread of disease introduced by Vai-speakers, as has been suggested with regard to Bantu expansion. But there is as yet hardly any evidence for testing such an idea.
The peoples of Upper Guinea

area. If Hill’s evidence for the influx of distinctive pottery and a new settlement pattern north of the Vai area is confirmed, this may well have implications for theories about the emergence of the Vai, although it would be dangerous to draw borders simply on the basis of pottery style. The sites of some coastal settlements are indicated on early seventeenth-century maps, and these would be worth investigating, if only to find out roughly how large they were. More work needs to be done on the nomoli; and it is crucial to have information on the early use of iron in this area.

A major contribution, however, must come from linguists. During the last fifteen years much progress has been made in classifying the languages of this area into ‘groups’ or ‘branches’. It is to be hoped that some attention will now be paid to bridging the gaps between these groups and discovering what individual languages in different groups have in common. Until this is done it will never be possible to express for example how ‘different’ Vai is from Mande or from Krim. Loan-words are a particularly important field for further research. A comparison of dialects within the Mande, Vai, Krim and Gola languages would also be revealing. Finally a linguistic explanation could perhaps be offered for the apparent discrepancy between the present distribution of Mel-speakers and of river names beginning with Ma.

It appears then that there was contact from very early on between the Sudanic and Guinea-forest peoples leading to some drift southward and eastward of Sudanic peoples like the Soninke and Mande into parts of the lowland forest regions. It is very doubtful, however, that these came in such superior numbers as to replace indigenous peoples. Indeed, more often than not the indigenous peoples were not simple Kwa hunter-gatherers or fishers as has often been postulated. Nor is it true that both indigenous folks and the immigrants usually remained culturally stagnant or even retrogressed due to isolation and unfavourable ecology, as Murdock has suggested. The historical facts rather reveal a continuous dynamic interaction of groups inhabiting the region, resulting in distinctive regional modifications.

Some relationship existed between ethnic stock, language affiliation and cultural type, but it was not necessarily as close, or as regular as has been posited by some. Widely spaced coastal peoples such as the Wolof, Sereer, Dyula, Nalu, Temne, Kisi and Gola, speaking languages of the West Atlantic subfamily may represent remnants of ancient inhabitants of the region, but these did not constitute an ‘ancient primitive’ forest culture of an original Negro stock that presumably inhabited all of western Africa in prehistoric times. Nor were the Kwa-speaking peoples of south-eastern Liberia and the western Ivory Coast the most primitive of these groups. Indeed the bulk of archaeological and related evidence available so far

shows conclusively that intensive agriculture, large centralized monarchies, occupational guilds and hereditary classes, military organizations, and trade and market systems were features of life among many of these peoples well before the earliest Sudanic intrusions and influences were experienced, and certainly between the seventh and eleventh centuries.

Both archaeological and ethnological evidence also appears to lend support to the thesis of a dynamic interaction between various peoples coming in contact at various times rather than to the view that important features such as iron-working, and state life were achieved through cultural imposition from the Sudan. These lines of evidence indicate that rice has been a more important and intensively cultivated crop along the West Atlantic coast than either cotton, millet or sorghum, to which proponents of the primacy of the Sudanic region seem to attach undue importance, and which may have been introduced by northern immigrants or through contact with the north.

Southern Liberia and the western Ivory Coast appear to be the locus of a sharp division of these agricultural traditions. The Bandama River, which separates the Baule and the Kru peoples, is also the northern boundary of intensive yam cultivation. Where yams appear in agriculture north of this boundary, it is reported that their harvest is not associated with the elaborate ritual that is found among the Agni and other Kwa-speaking peoples further to the south.

Whereas north of the Saint Paul River and eastward along the fringes of the forest area, rice continues as a basic crop in intensive agriculture for all the peoples of the Central West Atlantic region, important Sudanic cultigens such as millet, cotton and sorghum have scarcely intruded further west than the Guinea–Liberian border, or further south than to the Temne, Mande, Koranko, and Kono of Sierra Leone. In the northwestern province of Liberia, these crops are not planted by the De, Gola, and western Kpelle, except where ‘Mandingo’ peoples have settled in relatively recent times or where this influence is known to have obtained over long periods in the past. The latter condition did exist in a narrow corridor along the Saint Paul River as far west as the present town of Boporo, and also among those sections of the Kisi, Loma, and Gio peoples whose territories reach well into the highland plains of Guinea.

Conclusion

The current state of knowledge on the history of the Upper Guinea region in the period covered by this Volume may be considered as unsatisfactory. What we have presented here is no more than a provisional attempt to collect and discuss the available results of archaeological and linguistic research so far done in the region. But there are still more gaps than hard facts in our knowledge and we are dealing mostly with hypotheses that need further corroboration. This situation calls for a more systematic
The peoples of Upper Guinea

research strategy based on collaboration of specialists in various fields. No less important, however, is a new and unbiased approach enabling us to see the history of the Upper Guinea peoples in a perspective which will present them not merely as subjects of outside influence, be it from the north, or later from the south, but as active participants in the historical process.
The Horn of Africa

A map of seventh-century Ethiopia would not have a definite outline. On it would be marked the small number of towns and regions mentioned by Cosmas Indicopleustes in his Christian Topography, written in about the middle of the sixth century. This gives first-hand information about regions bordering on the Nile, the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean. It tells us, for example, that 'from Axum . . . to the lands of incense called Berbera which, lying on the ocean coast, are to be found not close to but far from Sasou, the furthest region of Ethiopia, it is a journey of some forty days'.

Cosmas also wrote about merchants in their hundreds who travelled all over these regions, trading cattle, salt and iron and also, no doubt, the products of Byzantine craftsmanship, in exchange for 'gold nuggets'. There was also trade in spices, incense and cassia. The Axumite king exercised control over a large part of this trade 'through the agency of the governor of Agaw', states the writer from Alexandria, who was himself a merchant. The two big cities of the time were Axum and its port Adulis. We have no reason to think that the general situation was fundamentally different in the seventh century. Having reached its zenith in the preceding century, the kingdom of Axum had no doubt lost none of its power, although there is no direct information on this period. To be sure, the dangers facing it were to increase, and the decline was soon to set in. Still, at the beginning of the eighth century, a caliph of the Umayyad dynasty had the four kings of the world drawn on the walls of his palace in Kuşayr 'Amra, in Jordan. These were the sovereigns of Visigothic Spain, Byzantium, Persia and Axum. This testifies to their importance, even if the caliph in question claimed to have conquered them.

The decline of the kingdom of Axum

The first historical reference to the kingdom of Axum was made at the beginning of the second century of the Christian era, or perhaps at the end of

the first century, in the *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea*. It enjoyed a period of exceptional prestige during the reign of Ezana in the fourth century. His wealth was derived from cattle-breeding, agriculture and, above all, from trading, especially in ivory. The kingdom maintained trade relations with the Mediterranean world and several places around the Indian Ocean through its port of Adulis and the Red Sea. This trade contributed greatly to the economic development of the country and, through the various activities that resulted from it, led to the growth of towns. As F. Anfray observes, these were essentially market towns.\(^3\) He suggests considering as such several ancient sites whose buried remains are to be found throughout the high plateau of Tigre and Eritrea, such as Axum, Henzat, Haghero-Deragoueh, Degoum, Etch-Maré, Tokonda, Aratou and others still. These towns, which archaeologists are gradually bringing to light, were vast and crowded urban centres with tightly packed dwellings.

As early as the third century, the necessities of trade encouraged the creation of coinage, and these coins have given us the name of some twenty kings for the whole of the Axumite period, most of whom, from Endybis to Hataza, would otherwise have remained unknown.

The inscriptions inform us of events of historic importance such as the destruction of Meroe and the armed interventions in South Arabia during the reign of King Ezana — called Abraha, which means 'Illumina', in the traditional text — whose titles carved on the monuments indicate that he was 'King of Axum, Himyar, Kasu, Saba, Habashat, Raydan and Salhin, Tsiamo and Bêdja.'\(^4\)

From this period, Christianity became the dominant religion. The work of evangelization, begun by Bishop Frumentius — the Abba Salama, Kessate Berhan of Ethiopia tradition — was carried on in the fifth century by monks from the Byzantine empire.

Trade did not slacken in the sixth century. Quite the reverse was true and there are many sites dating from this period, especially on the edge of the Eritrean plateau. A large quantity of pottery has been found at Matara and includes many amphorae imported from the Mediterranean. This is something borne out by Cosmas Indicopleustes who describes the activities of the port of Adulis, 'the town of the Ethiopians ... where we merchants from Alexandria and Ela trade'. He states that there were countless elephants in Ethiopia. 'They are elephants with large tusks. From Ethiopia, these tusks are sent by boat to India, Persia, the country of the Himyarites and Romania [i.e. the Roman Empire (Byzantium)].'

During his stay in Adulis, Cosmas noted the preparation being made for the expedition that Caleb was to undertake in South Arabia which, for many years, was to remain under Ethiopian control.\(^5\) The end of the cen-

\(^4\) E. Littman, 1913, pp. 4–35.
\(^5\) Cosmas Indicopleustes, 1968, pp. 368–70.
tury witnessed the collapse of Himyarite culture. The Sassanids of Persia took control of the Arabian Peninsula and clashed with Byzantines for control of the Red Sea trade. This deprived Axum of some of its outlets.

The situation also changed in the north-west of the kingdom, which the local text calls 'Soba-Noba'. Alodia, Muṣura and Nobadia formed Christianized states with which it can be assumed that Axum still had links.

The beginning of the seventh century marked a turning point for the kingdom of Axum. A page in the history of Axumite power was turned. Another age was to begin, that of its decline, for which documentary evidence is rarer, although this does not mean that it is non-existent. The Axumite towns continued for an as yet undetermined period. This we know from archaeology. The coins found on the sites at Axum, Matara and Adulis tell us the names of the kings who reigned during the seventh century and certainly part of the eighth: Ella-Gabaz, Anaeb, Armah, Yathlia, Za Ya-Abiyo, La Madhen, Wazena, Ghersem and Hataza. Their heads on the coins are surrounded by inscriptions in Ge‘ez, still the liturgical language today. The reverse sides of the coins bear the Christian cross.

Ella-Gabaz and Armah are mentioned in Byzantine and Arab chronicles. According to al-Ṭabarī, Ella-Gabaz was the grandfather of Armah. Coins from the reign of Armah are numerous at the archaeological sites (Plate 19.1). He is shown sitting on a ceremonial seat.

In about 615, during the reign of King Armah, or more probably that of his father, Ella-Tsaham, a significant event took place. Some followers of Muḥammad whose lives were threatened found refuge at the court of Axum where they were favourably received. As the Prophet had told him, 'if you are in Abyssinia, you will find a king under whom no one is persecuted. It is a land of justice where God will grant you relief from your troubles'. When the chiefs of Mecca, enemies of the Prophet, asked that the fugitives should be handed back to them, the king refused to satisfy their demands, considering that the religion of his guests was not without resemblance to the Christian faith which he practised. In addition, the law of hospitality had to be observed.

The seventh century marked the birth and growth of Islam. Arab unity was to be shaped around Muḥammad. Islam gradually spread along the edge of the Red Sea. The favourable attitude of the first Muslims towards the Axumite kingdom lasted only a relatively short time. There were increasing clashes. The Axumites made incursions on to the Arab coast, provoking retaliatory action from the Muslims. In the eighth century, the Muslims occupied the Dahlak Islands which were part of the empire of Axum. Tombs have been discovered there with epitaphs carved in Kufic script. One of these is the epitaph of Mubarak, the founder of the dynasty,
FIG. 19.1 The Horn of Africa
which established its domination over the archipelago in the eleventh century.  

Archaeological evidence gives ground for thinking that Adulis, the Axumite port, was destroyed in about the eighth century, and that the trading activities which until then had been under the control of the Axumite king were brought to a complete halt. As regards the events taking place in the interior of the country, however, history remains silent, or almost so. It merely records a weakening of the royal power which,

strangely, was to show renewed vigour for a while, if one considers the accounts of two Arab historians.

In the third/ninth century, al-Ya’kūbī talks about a Christian sovereign governing a vast country whose capital is Ka’bar or Ku’bar. In the fourth/tenth century, al-Mas’ūdī improved on the description given by his predecessor: ‘The capital of Abyssinia is called Ku’bar. It is a large city and the seat of the Kingdom of Nadjāshī. The country has many towns and extensive territories reaching as far as the sea of Abyssinia. It encompasses the coastal plain facing the Yemen where one finds many cities such as Zaylā’, Dahlak and Nasi’, in which the Muslim subjects of the Abyssinians live’. The exact location of Ku’bar, the royal capital, is still a mystery.

The Bēdja

One of the factors that contributed to the waning of the kingdom of Axum from the seventh century onwards and its disappearance in the eighth, was without doubt the invasion of the northern regions of Ethiopia by the Bēdja whose ‘force of expansion’, as the historian C. Conti Rossini calls it, was at the time considerable. One of the most powerful of the Bēdja groups, the Zanāfīdj, invaded the Eritrean plateau through the Barka Valley.

During preceding periods, the Bēdja people had organized themselves into several ‘kingdoms’, occupying a vast area from Axum to Upper Egypt. These Bēdja formed a single ethnic group with the Blemmyes mentioned by authors writing in Latin. The Blemmyes were well known from the third century onwards, and the first mention of the Bēdja (or Bega) also appears in an inscription from the same century made by an Axumite king and copied in the sixth century by Cosmas.

Their warlike spirit was particularly evident during the reign of Ezana in the fourth century, and several inscriptions from this reign in Ge’ez, imitation South Arabian and Greek, read like bulletins from the campaign against these unruly peoples. In addition, one of the titles the Axumite sovereign gives himself is king of the Bēdja.

This occupation of the north of Ethiopia by the Bēdja – hence the present name of Begemder, Bēdja country – no doubt resulted from the fact that the power of Axum had weakened somewhat, but the pressure that the Bēdja were to exercise from then on was to hasten the decline of Axumite power.

10. Al-Ya’kūbī, 1883, p. 219.
11. Al-Mas’ūdī, 1861-77, Vol. 3, p. 34.
12. C. Conti Rossini, 1928, Vol. 1, p. 51 identified Ku’bar with Axum, seeing the Arabic name as a graphic corruption. However, it is probable that at that time Axum no longer existed as a capital.
From the third/ninth to the fifth/eleventh centuries, the only sources concerning the Bëdja are Arab authors, first among them being al-Ya'kūbī (d. 897), and, second, Ibn Ḥawkāl and al-Uswānī. These authors provide a great deal of information on the ethnic situation in the north of Ethiopia and between the Nile and the Red Sea. Because of the difficulties of Arabic script, which allows a large number of different readings, most of the ethnonyms and toponyms still remain a mystery. In spite of the efforts of several scholars, only a limited number of these names have been identified.¹³

Starting from the area near the Nile, al-Ya'kūbī lists and gives the position of five Bëdja 'kingdoms', going from the Nile towards the sea, and then southwards. The first kingdom, the nearest to the Muslim country of Aswān, was Nakīs which was inhabited by several small peoples whose names are listed but have not yet been deciphered. These peoples lived near the second kingdom, Baklīn or Taflīn, in the Eritrean Sahel, the Rora plateau and the middle valley of the River Barakat. To the east of the Baklīn lived the Bāzīn whose descendants are probably the present-day Kunama who are called Bazen by their neighbours. The kingdom of the Djarīn stretched from Bādī (Massawa) as far as the country of the Baklīn towards the Barakat. The last group consisted of the Kata’a, whose territory extended from Bādī to Faykun or Fankun. These Kata’a were Christians and found themselves under the influence of the Nadjāshī. Arab merchants traded with these people and gradually brought about their conversion to Islam.¹⁴

It is surprising to find that the Arab accounts make no mention of the Tigre who lived in this area of Eritrea at this time. It is quite possible, however, that the people called the Zanāfīdī, mentioned by al-Ya'kūbī and Ibn Sulaym al-Uswānī in their lists of the Bëdja groups, were in reality the Tigre, as has been shown by A. Zaborski.¹⁵

In Eritrea and northern Tigre, there are still traditions recalling these ancient peoples under the legendary names of Rom and Balaw (and sometimes Belew Kelew, mostly in the Chimezana). Place names also record their existence, especially that of the Belew who five or six centuries ago extended their supremacy as far as the coastal area. The Beni ‘Amer, who today lead a nomadic existence in northern Eritrea and Sudan, are the descendants of the former Bëdja.¹⁶

Under the pressure of these warlike Bëdja groups, Axum’s kings and leading citizens left Axum for more southerly areas which were free from the perils of the invaders. In addition, life in the former area of Axumite rule was becoming uncertain.

¹⁵. A. Zaborski, 1971, pp. 118 et seq. The al-Zanāfīdī called their God akzabhir, a Semitic word, whereas the Bëdja spoke a Cushitic language.
As has been said, at the start of the seventh century the political situation around the Red Sea changed almost completely. The Byzantine empire, itself threatened by Persian conquests, shrank back. The Persians were more and more in evidence and established bases on the African coast. Although archaeologists have not yet paid much attention to them, there are remains to be found in various places where the memory of the Furs is preserved. Ethiopia was the ally of Byzantium whose power was being weakened. Little by little, the Arabs pushed the Byzantines back. In Egypt they won complete victories. In Ethiopia the successors of Armah were isolated. The country was then enveloped by a kind of darkness lit only by faint historical glimmers. No inscription has been discovered for this period of the seventh and eighth centuries except one rather clumsily carved inscription on the base of a throne in Axum. It is in Ge'ez and seems to be of a later period. It mentions a certain Ḥadānī Dan'el (a pretender to the throne?) who rebelled against his sovereign and forbade the king access to his city. This inscription contains little information on the events of the period other than that a person of high standing rebelled, which can mean that traditional power had weakened somewhat.¹⁷

On the threshold of the second millennium

During the second half of the tenth century something serious happened which affected the life of the country. This event is related by two Arab sources, the History of the Patriarchs of Alexandria and the account given by the well-known geographer, Ibn Ḥawkal.

The History of the Patriarchs mentions a certain queen of the Banū al-Hamwiya, from the south, who sacked the Axumite area and destroyed its churches. She drove out the king, who appealed to the Coptic patriarch, Cosmas, through the Nubian king Djirdīs/George, asking him to send a metropolitan.¹⁸ As we know, the See of Axum had been held since the fourth century by a Coptic ecclesiastic from Alexandria. In the fifth century, Ethiopia embraced the Monophysite doctrine, adopting the Egyptian liturgy.¹⁹

About the same time, Ibn Ḥawkal wrote concerning the events taking place in Ethiopia:

Regarding the land of the Abyssinians, it has been governed for many years now by a woman. She killed the king of the Abyssinians who was known by the title of Ḥadānī. She has hitherto ruled in complete independence over her own country and the areas surrounding the land of the Ḥadānī in the south of Abyssinia. It is an immense

country, without definite borders, which deserts and lonely places render difficult of access.

In another place, Ibn Hawkal, who wrote his book in about 367/977, states that this queen had come to power thirty years before.20

Driven from power, the unfortunate king took refuge in remote Shoa, feeling his overthrow to be the result of divine rage provoked by the dismissal of a bishop, as is shown in a passage of the letter that he sent to the Nubian king Djirdjis II, at the time when Abba Philotheos (Filatewos, 979–1003) was patriarch of Alexandria. The king wrote among other things:

... by dismissing the duly elected Abba Petros [Peter] and accepting Minas the usurper, the kings who preceded us transgressed the law... Because of this, God became angry with us... Our enemies rose against us and led many of us into captivity. They put the country to the torch and destroyed our churches... we have become wanderers... The heavens no longer send rain and the earth no longer gives us its fruits... We are now like abandoned sheep, without a shepherd.21

After the probable intervention of the Nubian king, Djirdjis, the patriarch appointed a certain Abba Daniel as bishop of Axum. Before he could take up his duties, however, the king who in about 970 to 980 was still fighting the implacable queen, died.22

The documents are contradictory in what they say about this queen. Some say that she was the queen of the Falashas (Ethiopian Jews) and a daughter of chief Gideon. Others state that she was the granddaughter of king Wedem-Asfere, and others still claim that she was the daughter known as Mesobe-Work of the last Axumite king, Delnaad.23

The Ethiopian Church still remembers this queen whom it calls Goudite (the monster) or Esato (the fiery one), without however telling us what her real name was. Likewise, the name of the royal writer of the letter is, unfortunately, not made known to us, although it could well have been Delnaad, the last Axumite king.

Conti Rossini suggested that the word Al-Hamwiya in the title of the queen be read as Al-Damüta, which might indicate the region of Damot – to the south and south-east of the Blue Nile – as her land of origin.24

These events could then be interpreted as a reaction by the small peoples in

22. According to E. Cerulli, 1971, pp. 258–69, the sending of the letter by the Ethiopian king to the Nubian king Djirdjis seems to have taken place before 978.
23. Mesobe-Work means ‘gilded basket’ – a basket that is richly worked, round, with a base, made of compressed straw, on which are put flat loaves of bread (ingera), which comprise the national dish.
the interior of Ethiopia against the expansion by the Axumite Christian kings into the south of the country.

Ethiopian histories for this dark period contain royal genealogies. Most of these are found in the *Chronicle of the Reign of Emperor Menelik*, written at the start of the twentieth century by a church dignitary, Neboure-Id Guèbrè Sellassié:

... Kaleb ... was a good king. He begat Gabra Meskal, under whose reign Yared composed the *Degoua*.\(^{25}\) It was he who founded Debre-Damo, the domain of our father Abuna Aregawi. Gabra Meskal begat Kostentinos who begat Wesen-Segued, who begat Fere-Senay, who begat Aderaz, who begat Akale-Wedem, who begat Guerma-Asfere, who begat Zergaz, who begat Degna Mikael ... who begat Bahr-Ikla, who begat Gum, who begat Asguamgum, who begat Letem, who begat Telatem, who begat Ode-Gosh, who begat Aizour. This last king reigned for only half a day and died. And if anyone asks about the manner of his dying, it was on this wise. The day on which he began to reign, he said: 'Do not stop my people from coming to me. Let them come, let them look at my face, let them greet me!' Thus he was besieged by so many people that, trampled underfoot, he died ... Aizour begat Dedem who begat Wedem-Asfere who reigned until he was seven score and ten years old, and begat Armah who begat Denaguej, who begat Delnaad.\(^{26}\)

This table of royal successions starting from the sixth century is obviously apocryphal. It was composed at a later date, but might still contain a few grains of truth.\(^{27}\)

Other traditions relate that the last king, Delnaad, could have taken refuge in a country in the south. In about the ninth century, he supposedly founded the Saint Stephen (Stifanos) monastery at Lake Hayk, near which he is also said to have built his residence. A no doubt legendary account but one which might have stemmed from important events, has it that his daughter married a prince from Bugena, the region near the Lasta in which a new dynasty was to take root in the twelfth century.\(^{28}\)

This people from the Lasta, who were to play a role in the history of Ethiopia, belonged to the Agaw, who for centuries had been living in the south-west of the country. In his *Christian Topography*, Cosmas Indicopleustes mentions a governor of the Agaw in the sixth century.\(^{29}\)

It is possible that the flight of the last Axumite king and the legend of his daughter, Mesobe-Work, who married Mera Tekle Haymanot, the first

---

25. Antiphon for all the feast days of the year.
27. C. Conti Rossini, 1909.
28. According to one tradition, this new dynasty is said to have been established in the tenth or eleventh century.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

king of the new Zague dynasty, according to the traditional genealogy is a romanticized version of an episode that really occurred. Be that as it may, after the glories of the Axumite period, this new dynasty supplanted the old and legitimate dynasty of the Ezanian family and established itself in the centre of Ethiopia.

After so much destruction, the new dynasty set up its own political system once it had settled in the central provinces, yet it retained many of Axum’s traditions and cultural traits. This new reign reached its zenith in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, as witnessed by the great kings of the Zague dynasty of whom the most famous is Lalibela.

Literature

Ethiopian literature is biblical and Christian in origin. From the outset, ecclesiastical circles gave it its essential stamp. From the fourth century, the Ge’ez language predominated at court as well as in church. The translations which occupy a large place in this literature are written in this language.

The first books were translations of the Bible, done in the monasteries established from the end of the fifth century onwards. Translation continued during the succeeding centuries, principally from Greek. The New Testament was translated from the version approved by the Patriarch of Antioch by Syrian Monophysite ecclesiastics who in the fifth and sixth centuries took refuge in Ethiopia, where they did much to spread Christianity.

With regard to the Old Testament, apart from the canonical books recognized by the Council of Trent, the Ethiopians translated several biblical books considered by other churches to be apocryphal. These include the Book of Enoch, the Book of Jubilees, the Ascension of Isaiah, the Shepherd by Hermas and the Apocalypse of Esdras. It is noteworthy that these apocryphal books have come down to us in full in the Ge’ez language alone, while only fragments survive in other languages. In those dark ages Ethiopia thus made one of its major contributions to Christian literature.

The list of translations also includes theological treatises among which was the Qerillos, according to a compilation made by Saint Cyril of Alexandria. Another work that greatly contributed to the development of the religious spirit of the Ethiopian clergy was the translation of The Rule of Pachomius, Saint Pachomius being the founder of eastern monasticism. The same period also saw the translation from Greek of the Physiologos, a collection of semi-legendary accounts of animals, plants and minerals with moral conclusions.

These texts were all apparently translated before the seventh century. However, there is reason to believe that some versions of them were recopied during the period under study, because during this time — from the seventh to the eleventh century — Christianity continued to extend its influence primarily, if not exclusively, through monasticism, which is per-
haps the most important phenomenon in the history of that obscure period.\textsuperscript{30}

The fact that no original works have come down to us from that period does not in itself mean that those centuries were totally lacking in original intellectual activity. On the contrary, it seems to have been at this time that the foundations were laid for the flowering of literature in the fourteenth century. Of this flowering, E. Cerulli has rightly observed: ‘The artistic maturity of these writings in no way represents a literature in its infancy: and the standard of writing presupposes a discipline which cannot be rapidly acquired without a long tradition’.\textsuperscript{31}

Architecture

According to several traditions, the first monasteries in the north of the country were established in the fifth and sixth centuries. The violent sackings that took place in this area over the centuries led to the complete destruction of most of the buildings. None the less, substantial remains can still be found in some areas.\textsuperscript{32}

\textsuperscript{30} I. Guidi, 1932, pp. 11–21.
\textsuperscript{31} E. Cerulli, 1956, p. 35.
\textsuperscript{32} C. Conti Rossini, 1928, pp. 219–25.
The 'Nine Saints' (Teseatu Kidusan) who are traditionally said to have come from the Byzantine world, are seen as being the originators of monastic life proper. They settled in remote parts of the Axum region. One of their oldest foundations is to be found east of Adwa on a high rocky platform in the Tigré Mountains. It is called Debre-Damo.

A church, recently restored, was established there in very remote times. It is one of the very small number of churches that were preserved from destruction. Specialists date them to about the tenth century, but tradition holds that the first church was built in the sixth century at Debre-Damo, on the initiative of king Gebra-Masqal, son of Kaleb, at the spot chosen by Abba Za-Mikael Aragawi, one of the Nine Saints.

The church that one sees today is rectangular in shape and measures 20 m x 9.70 m. The method of construction remains faithful to Axumite architectural tradition in which stone and wood are used together. The doors and windows have the same frames as one sees, for example, on the giant stelae of Axum, with the projecting butt-ends of beams as well as the alternately projecting and recessed parts that are one of the features of Axumite architecture. The church has a single storey with galleries above the naves. It also has a most important decorative feature consisting of a wooden panelled ceiling decorated with different designs representing animals and geometric patterns of oriental inspiration and dating back to the end of the first millennium. Various objects discovered at Debre-Damo are evidence of the antiquity of this building.33

Although this church was the first to show what the buildings put up around the tenth century were like, it is not now the only example of the architecture of this period. Excavations undertaken in the 1970s have brought to light other churches in northern Ethiopia which various pieces of archaeological evidence link to that distant age of the Axumite decline and the advent of a new period when the seat of government moved south, monastic life developed, and a new culture came into being. The churches in question, which we will mention here as evidence of this particular aspect of history, are those of Zarema, Agowo and Berakit.34

The church in the village of Zarema, east of Atsbi on the eastern Tigré plateau is shaped like a cross. This church is dedicated to St George (Kedus Ghiorghis) and is probably a latter-day survival of the square-shaped, colonnaded buildings of the Axumite period. The carvings on the wooden ceilings, above the aisles, are of exceptional interest both because of the composition and because of the technique. Attention should be drawn here to the rare preservation in this church of beautiful wooden capitals finely carved with crosses and palmettes. According to C. Lepage, 'this carving derives directly from the decorative Mediterranean art of the seventh and eighth centuries, especially that of Coptic Egypt. It bears no

34. In writing these paragraphs on architectural remains, I have drawn substantially on the studies by C. Lepage.
trace of Islamic decorative art'. While still a matter of doubt, the original date of the church of Zarema-Ghiorgis seems, in the opinion of the author whose work is being used as a reference here, to go 'very far back'. 'The ninth or tenth century would be well within the realms of possibility'.

The church of Agowo, like that of Zarema, is to be found in the Atsbi area. It is a small basilica of stone and wood built against a cliff, under a rocky overhang. As in Axumite buildings, the walls show the butt-ends of beams, and the ceiling of the central nave has wooden panels which are not,

Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

however, decorated as they are at Debre-Damo. The rooms on the eastern side also have ceilings with slanted beams and small wooden panels constructed in an original way. The framework of the openings in the walls is typical of Axumite architecture. This church bears the name of Tcherqos (Cyriac). Its oldest parts probably date back to the eleventh century, but it was restored at a later date (Plate 19.3).

Rock churches

The churches of Debre-Damo, Zarema-Ghiorghis and Agowo-Tcherqos, which we dealt with above, are churches that have been built in the conventional way. A large number of churches carved out of the living rock are to be found in northern Ethiopia where the roots of Christianity go very deep. They are of considerable interest in more ways than one. They originated in the period under review; they have close links with Axumite architecture; and some of them are remarkably well executed.36

A large group of churches are to be found in the Guerealta area, to the north of Mekele. Other churches are to be found all over the neighbouring districts of Tembien, Amba Senayt and Atsbi. These churches reproduce, in the rock, the interior of a normally built church with pillars, capitals and a framework. A total of about one hundred and twenty rock churches have been listed in these areas. Among the oldest are the hypogea of Degum-Sellassie in Guerealta, which have been dated to as far back as the tenth century. Certain archaeological considerations could lead to their being attributed a date about two centuries earlier. These three hypogea are very skilfully cut into the rock and are parallel to each other. There is a deep crypt with a staircase leading into it, as in the large Axumite tombs at Axum, Matara and elsewhere. Nearby, also cut into the rock, is a baptismal font that is strikingly similar to the one discovered by F. Anfray at the Matara site and dated to the sixth or seventh century.37 These rock hypogea are thought to have been used for burials. It is interesting to note that the ruins of a building of the Axumite period lie nearby.

Some twenty kilometres from the Degum-Sellassie site is the church of Maryam of Berakit, which is situated about a hundred kilometres south-east of Axum to the north-west of Guerealta. It is a remarkable example of Ethiopian rock art. It has been hewn out of a rocky eminence in the middle of the valley. C. Lepage, who has written a detailed study on it, says that it is the ‘rock equivalent of a kind of very distinctively Axumite basilica’. He also observes that its shape can be compared with the constructed church at Debre-Damo.38

There is no doubt that the first thing that strikes one on seeing a church

of this kind is its relationship with Axumite architecture. To start with, they are geographically close, there are extant Axumite remains, and then in the architectural order there are several features that are shared with Axumite tradition, such as the smallness of the proportions, the characteristic basilica plan of the small churches of the sixth and seventh centuries at Enda-Tcherqos near Axum, at Matara, Tokonda and Kohayto, the flat ceilings, the pillars and the capitals. These features lead us to attribute to a church like the one at Berakit a date close to the Axumite period.

Ornamentation

In several old buildings, including those dealt with in this chapter, carving is to be found, chiefly on the ceilings, capitals and arches.

In the church of Debre-Damo, carved decorations are still to be seen on the panels of the wooden ceilings of the porch. They mostly represent animals such as lions, antelopes, zebu cattle, snakes, camels, elephants, buffaloes, goats, donkeys, giraffes, leopards, as well as imaginary animals, plant motifs and geometrical shapes. The capitals also display this liking for decoration. The cross is often the central motif, surrounded by interlaced designs and palmettes. The artists of remote antiquity knew all the different types of ornamentation used in Mediterranean countries, especially Coptic Egypt. In the churches of Zarema, Debre-Damo and Agowo, there are friezes in a square frame, identical to the framework of the windows, carved into the rock as a decoration. The church of Zarema-Ghiorgis is among the most decorated of the ancient buildings in northern Ethiopia.

There are no wall paintings in these churches at the present time. One may wonder whether such paintings decorated their walls in ancient times, as is the case with the later churches like Beta-Maryam in Lalibela for example, but the walls of the oldest known churches today bear no trace of them. The small size of the walls seems to have left very little space for painted decoration. Still it is possible that such decorations did exist at one time. We have the eyewitness account, recorded by al-Ṭabarī, of a woman in Muḥammad’s entourage who went to Axum in the seventh century and who, on her return to Medina, remembered with admiration the ‘marvellous paintings on the walls’ of the cathedral. However, no painting, not even a trace, has survived from these ancient times.

With regard to the manuscripts, we know that several ancient books were translated from Greek and Syriac from the fifth or sixth century onward, but it is difficult to know whether these manuscripts were decorated with paintings as none of them seems to have withstood the destructive action of time and, sometimes, of men, with the exception of two beautiful gospel-books preserved in the old monastery of Abba-Guerima, near Adwa in Tigré. The paintings decorating some pages of these manuscripts bear a degree of resemblance to the Byzantine art of Syria. A study
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

has been made of them by J. Leroy, who dates them to the eleventh century (Plate 19.2). There is no doubt that these ancient manuscripts carried on a tradition of which real evidence may perhaps one day be discovered in a church lost in the mountains of northern Ethiopia.39

The relations which since earliest times have linked the populations of the two shores of the Red Sea, Arabs and Ethiopians, began to change with the rise of Islam, as from then on they were expressed as relations between Christians and Muslims.

The traditions collected in the biographies of the Prophet Muḥammad record various episodes involving early contacts of nascent Islam with Ethiopia:

1. The letter of Muḥammad to the negus (Arabic nadjāshi) inviting him to join the new religion, starting with the Qur’anic passage (4:169) which invites ‘the People of the Book’ (ahl al-Kitāb) to reconsider the person of Jesus in the light of Islamic teachings.1

2. The mission to Ethiopia of 'Amr ibn al-'Āṣ, the future Muslim conqueror of Egypt, who was sent, when still a ‘pagan’, by the Meccan oligarchy to the negus to oppose the progress of Islam, but instead was converted to the Islamic religion.

3. The emigration to Ethiopia of Dja'far ibn Abī Ṭālib, cousin of Muḥammad and brother of the future Caliph 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib, who went to the court of the negus with other Muslims in order to escape the hostilities of the Kurayshites. According to some traditions he succeeded in converting the negus; the latter, in his turn, to avoid the hostility of his Christian subjects, resorted to the stratagem of concealing in his breast the text of the passage of the Qur’an mentioned above and thus pretended to swear in a way conformable to the Christian faith.

This action of Dja'far perhaps later inspired the claims of various princes and leaders of Ethiopia and Somalia to be descended from members of Abī Ṭālib’s family, as we shall see later on.

4. Another group of traditions of early Islam concerns Bilāl, the faithful slave of Ethiopian origin. Bilāl became a freed slave of Abū Bakr (the future first Caliph), and was, according to the legend, the second male convert to Islam, the first being Abū

---

1. V. Vacca, 1923-5.
Bakr himself. In fact, the first person converted to Islam was a woman: Khadidja, the wife of the Prophet Muhammad. A trusty follower of the Prophet, Bilal, was appointed by him mu'adhdhin with the task of calling the faithful to prayer in the mosque; and he remained in this office until the Caliphate of 'Umar, when he went with the Muslim army to Syria, where he died and was buried.

Many other traditions generally refer to the Ethiopian Bilal and the Prophet's predilection for him and people of the same origin, like the saying 'Who brings an Ethiopian man or an Ethiopian woman into his house, brings the blessing of God there'.

This affection for the Ethiopians also gave rise to some opuscula of Arabic literature. There is the work of Ibn al-Djawzi (d. 596/1200) with the pompous title 'The Lightening of the darkness on the merits of the Blacks and Ethiopians' (Tanwiir al-ghabash fi sa'dl al-Sudan wa l-Habash). The Egyptian polyhistor al-Suyuti (d. 911/1505) wrote a special treatise entitled 'The Raising of the status of the Ethiopians' (Raf' sha'n al-Hubshan), which he later summarized in his other work 'Flowers of the thrones on the history of the Ethiopians' (Azhär al-urüs fî akhbar al-Hubush). Another work of this kind is 'The Coloured brocade on the good qualities of the Ethiopians' (Al-Tiraz al-mankûû ß mahâsin al-Hubush) written in 991/ 1583 by Muhammad ibn 'Abd al-Bâkî al-Bukhârî al-Makkî.

It became fashionable to insert in these works one or more chapters on Ethiopian words which are supposed to occur in the Revelation, i.e. in the Qur'an and also in the hadiths, i.e. traditional accounts of the Prophet's deeds and sayings. Some of the words listed as such are not Ethiopian but of an origin that remained unknown to Arabic authors. But many others are clearly of Ethiopian (Ge'ez) origin; at the beginning of the seventh century they were in common usage in Arabia. In some cases a genuine Arab word was given a specific religious meaning under the influence of the cognate Ethiopian. The linguistic observations of Arabic authors are of interest also for the linguistic history of Ethiopian languages, because the saying 'The sin of Bilal is shin with God' gives the terminus ante quem for the transition from sh to s in the pronunciation of Ethiopian, since it is already reported by Ibn Sa'd, who wrote in 230/844–5.

4. Cf. A. Jeffery, 1938. In the Qur'an we find the following Ethiopian words: mishkat, from Eth. maskot, window; kiflain, dual of Eth. kefl, portion, part; burhân, an evident proof, Eth. light, illumination; tàbût, Eth. Ark of Covenant, chest; hawâriyyûn, Eth. disciples, apostles; mashaf, Eth. a copy, book; mà'da, table, Lord's table; malak, angel, etc. Ethiopian too is the word sana, attributed to Bilal (Eth. sannay, beautiful), and also minbar, pulpit, Eth. manbar.
The Muslim settlement on the Dahlak Islands

Relations between the nascent Muslim state and Ethiopia did not have a friendly character. Already during Muhammad's life an Ethiopian fleet attacked the Arabian port of Shu'ayba and some years later the Caliph 'Umar was forced to send four ships and two hundred men against 'the Ethiopians who committed many evil deeds to Muslims in Arabia', but this expedition against the Axumites seems to have achieved little.

Throughout the seventh century the Red Sea remained firmly in Ethiopian hands and only gradually did the Muslims gain the upper hand. In 702 the Ethiopians attacked Ḥiḍjāz for the last time and their fleet occupied Djidda for a while, thus creating panic in Mecca. Whether these attacks were undertaken by regular Axumite forces or by Ethiopian pirates remains obscure. In any case as a retaliation for the last attack the Arabs occupied and destroyed Adulis and established themselves on the Dahlak Islands in the Gulf of Masāwa, opposite Adulis. These islands afforded the possibility of controlling the sea traffic of Ethiopia, because Adulis was a stopping place on the route to the Indies, and this traffic was one of the main resources of the Axum state, together with the caravan route to the Nile Valley which also made Adulis the outlet for goods coming from Nubia. From the second half of the eighth century on, no more Ethiopian naval raids are mentioned and the same is true about Ethiopian seafaring in general. It seems that the Arabs had destroyed the Ethiopian navy which appears again on the scene only in the fourteenth century. During these centuries the Muslims exercised full control of the seaborne trade of the Red Sea, thus increasing the isolation of Ethiopia.

The occupation of Dahlak took place early in the Umayyad period and the islands were also used as a place of political exile. We have evidence of this already during the reign of Caliph Sulaymān (96/715-99/717) when the Arab poet al-Ahqāṣ was exiled to the Dahlak Islands for some of his satirical verses.

Subsequently, under the Abbasids, the islands served as a base for ensuring a safe sea voyage for the pilgrims to the Holy Places, at a time when the Red Sea was infested by pirates.

At the beginning of the fourth/tenth century an independent Muslim principality was established on the Dahlak Islands. This state played a highly important role in the economic history of Ethiopia as well as in the spread of Islam in this region. It took over the ancient trade of Adulis and maintained brisk trade relations with Christian Ethiopia.

7. R. Paribeni, 1908.
8. Cf. K. Petráček, 1960. It is noteworthy that in modern times, too, the Nokra Island was used as a penal station for politicians regarded as undesirable by the Italian Fascist government.
Evidence of the mercantile activity of the Dahlak sultanate exists in an Arabo-Jewish document of the Fātimid epoch, found in the Cairo Geniza. The document states that a merchant originating from Tripolitania (he is called al-Lebdī, i.e. native of Leptis Magna) on his passage from Egypt to India stopped at Dahlak for business purposes sometime before the year 490/1097.

We have a rich documentation on the duration of the Sultanate on the Dahlak Islands and also on the degree of Islamic culture of its inhabitants in more than two hundred Arabic inscriptions found on the main island, Dahlak Kabīr, which are now in various museums (Modena, Treviso, Bar-le-Duc, Cairo and Asmara).

The oldest of these inscriptions is dated 298/911 and the most recent bears the date of 946/1539. They are written in a grammatically correct Arabic and, with many quotations from the Qoran, follow the formulae in use at that time in neighbouring Islamic countries. These inscriptions also allow us to reconstruct partially the genealogy and succession of the sultans of Dahlak, mainly from the fifth/eleventh century on.

Alongside these documents indicating the continuous presence of the Arabs, the tradition which is widespread along the African coast from the Gulf of Masāwa to that of Djibuti must not be neglected. This tradition attributes to the ‘Furs’ (Persians) the construction of monuments, in general large cisterns for the collection of water, the remains of which can still be seen in Dahlak Kabīr and in Adal. This may be evidence of the presence of Persian traders or commercial agencies on the African coast, or it may document the fact that the sovereigns of both coasts of the Red Sea employed Persian engineers for these constructions, given the renown acquired by the Persians in the Muslim world for their water storage and distribution works. Three Dahlak inscriptions mention personages who died on these islands and whose nisba (indicative of the place of origin) was al-Ḵaysī, derived from the name of the Arab ‘tribe’ of Ḳays, which succeeded Sīrāf, the famous trade emporium, in the hegemony of the Arab/Persian Gulf traffic in the fourth/tenth century.

The Muslim states of southern Ethiopia

The African coast of the Red Sea thus kept its old function in the traffic to the Indies, although within the new economic system of the Islamic world. But of course the Muslim merchants very soon pushed forward from the coast into the neighbouring regions of Ethiopia in search of merchandise for their commerce. In the north we thus have documentation of a Muslim

11. On these inscriptions see B. Malmusi, 1895; G. Oman, 1974b (with a full up-to-date bibliography).
trading centre even in the territory of the kingdom of Axum, namely, in Enderta, at the edge of the Tigrai near the River Mareb. The presence of these Muslims is documented by a group of Arabic inscriptions which are dated from 391/987 to 549/1154, dates which, as can be seen, correspond to the period of greatness of the sultanate of the Dahlak Islands, with which this trading centre must have been connected.14

But while in the north the Christian state of Axum prevented a greater extension of Islam, its development in the south of Ethiopia was very different. Here, too, it set out from the sea along the natural route which leads from the Gulf of Djibuti through the depression of the valley of the River Hawash to the richest regions of the south and west of the Ethiopian plateau. Once again, therefore, the spread of Islam follows the trade routes; indeed, even today naggadie, which in Amharic means ‘merchant’, typically means ‘Muslim’ in the language of the Oromo (Galla) of southern Ethiopia.15

Various southern Ethiopian populations, from the coast of the Red Sea and the Gulf of Aden up to the Blue Nile, were thus converted to Islam. And in this way various Muslim sultanates were formed; what had been local state organizations probably being transformed into Islamic states. In these sultanates a hereditary aristocracy was dominant which was, or pretended to be, of Arab origin, while the mass of the population were Ethiopian and probably belonged to the Cushite family of the Sidamas. During the historical period in which the documents enable us to follow these sultanates, although they were often at war with each other they were under the hegemony of one of them which imposed its authority on the others; and on the other hand they had relations, generally not very friendly, with the state of Christian Ethiopia which, as we shall see, was to come ever closer to them in its movement of expansion.

The first of these sultanates was that of Damut which, as the great Arab historian Ibn Khaldun records, exercised its hegemonic sway as far as Ifat (i.e. as far as the region between the present Shoa and the lowland plain of Dancalia). It is difficult to locate this sultanate precisely, because today ‘Damut’ is a region north of the Blue Nile and south of Godjam, but in East Africa other cases have already been noted where populations forced to move have taken the name of the old country with them into the new territories and given it to their new home. In any case Damut must have been a territory in the south-west of Ethiopia in the sector nearest to the Blue Nile.

Ibn Khaldun relates how Damut was attacked and conquered by the Negus of Christian Ethiopia and how a race called Walasma lived in it, which then emigrated further east and settled in Ifat where it formed another sultanate.16

---

15. Cf. Chapter 3 above.
We are better documented on the sultanate of Shoa which was in its turn to exercise sway over Muslim southern Ethiopia. The sultanate comprised at least the eastern zone of present Shoa. It was governed by a dynasty of sultans who declared themselves to be Makhzūmī, because they said they were descended from the famous Banū Makhzūm, a Meccan kabīla to which Khalid ibn al-Walīd, the first Muslim conqueror of Syria, belonged. The names of the sultans preserved in the document mentioned above prove the use of an Ethiopian language of the Semitic family, although it is different from those known hitherto. But the hypothesis should also be considered that the Chronological Repertory preserves only the official 'reign names', while the sultans could have had a Muslim personal name, as was still the case recently with the Muslim populations of the Ethiopian West (the Sultan of Genina, known in 1928 by the Oromo (Galla) name of Abba Djifar meaning 'Lord of the dappled steed', had his Muslim name of Muhammad ibn Da'ūd).

The Makhzūmī dynasty, according to the document mentioned above, ruled over Shoa at least from the year 283/896–7 and its sovereigns succeeded each other for four centuries until 684/1285, when the last Sultan and his family were deposed and murdered by the Sultan of Ifāt.\(^17\) Among the names of the Makhzūmī sultans preserved to us it is worth noting some that appear characteristic: Girāmgazī (i.e. 'terrific lord') who reigned from 660/1262 to 662/1263, when he abdicated in favour of his brother Dil-gāmis. The name of this successor Dil-gāmis can be interpreted as 'victorious buffalo' or 'buffalo in Victory', according to a type of regal name that is attested in Christian Ethiopia also.\(^18\) Thus the name of Sultan Ḥarb-ar'ād means 'terror of the spears' and this too is a type of regal name common in Christian Ethiopia. It suffices to mention Negus Sayfa Ar'ād, 'terror of the swords'. Ḥarb-ar'ād was reigning in Muslim Shoa in 502/1108.

It should also be pointed out that, according to the document already referred to, it appears that women had a certain importance in political power in the sultanate of Shoa, which corresponds rather to the Ethiopian tradition than to the official situation of the other Muslim countries. Thus the Chronological Repertory of Shoa begins by recording the dating from a queen; then the marriages of two sultans are recorded. And the second of these marriages, that of Sultan Dil-mārrah with the daughter of the Sultan of Ifāt in 669/1271 is an attempt at a marriage alliance, when Ifāt was becoming more threatening in its attitude to Shoa.

The history of Shoa as it emerges from the Chronological Repertory consists of a series of internal struggles between the various leaders, and externally a series of raids and wars against the neighbouring Muslim states, especially against Ifāt. But it is also recorded in this document that in 677/1278 Sultan Dil-mārrah, defeated and deposed by his internal enemies,

\(^{17}\) Cf. E. Cerulli, 1941.

\(^{18}\) Dil-gāmis reigned from 1263 to 1269.
 Ethiopia's relations with the Muslim world

took refuge with the Negus of Christian Ethiopia. This is an important piece of historical evidence proving that the consolidation of Christian Ethiopia under the rule of the first Solomonids began to exert an influence on the weakening of the Sultanate of Shoa caused by its fratricidal struggles. Moreover, it should be noted, in this connection, that the Chronological Repertory also lists among the dates of the Shoan sultans the date of the death of Negus Yekuno Amlâk, the first Solomonid sovereign of Christian Ethiopia. Similarly and for opposite reasons this document lists the date of the fall of the Abbasid caliphate at the hands of the Mongols in 656/1258.

The sultanate of Shoa finally lost its independence as a result of the action of the neighbouring Sultanate of Ifât. At the end of the civil strife which had troubled Muslim Shoa from 675/1276 to 678/1280 the Sultanate of Ifât intervened directly in the weakened Shoan state, and on 26 April 1280 (19 Dhû l-ḥijja 678) occupied the centre of Shoa and put an end to that sultanate.

Since the commercial route through the Nile Valley had been definitely closed to Christian Ethiopia and the sea route to the Indies had been reduced to a minimum, because of the consolidated and extended Muslim expansion, what had been the Christian kingdom of Axum was compelled to seek its expansion southwards, that is towards the centre of the Ethiopian plateau. Accordingly there was first a transfer of the capital from Axum to the central region of Lasta and then, after the Solomonid dynasty had become established on the throne, its further transfer to the frontier of Shoa which was then Muslim. Moreover the monastery of St Stephen on Lake Ḥayq was recognized as the Christian religious centre, before it too was transferred to Abso (Babra Barkān) right in Shoan conquered territory. These events naturally caused Christian Ethiopia to exert strong pressure on the Muslim states of southern Ethiopia, which were thus directly threatened; and while, as we shall see, the individual sultans set about their defence, there also arose independent movements of reaction headed by Muslim religious leaders. The first of which we have knowledge was the one led by the Shaykh Muḥammad Abū ʿAbdallāh in 693/1298–9, during the reign of Negus Wedem Raʿad in Christian Ethiopia. This is recorded by the Egyptian chronicler al-Mufaḍḍal, although with the addition of popular legendary details. The Negus succeeded by a skilful political manoeuvre in separating the Shaykh Muḥammad from some of his followers; in the end he offered the Muslim agitator and those who had remained loyal to him a settlement in territory controlled by Christian Ethiopia, and in this way the movement of Muḥammad Abū ʿAbdallāh failed.¹⁹

Meanwhile in the Muslim areas of southern Ethiopia, as we have seen, the hegemony of Muslim Shoa was succeeded by the hegemony of Ifât.

The Sultanate of Ifât

The Sultanate of Ifât, which thus succeeded that of Shoa in the hegemony over the Islam of southern Ethiopia, was ruled by a dynasty which had the name (of local origin) of Walasma'. They came firstly into Ifât as refugees from the ancient Muslim state of Dâmût, as Ibn Khaldûn testifies. However, the Walasma' dynasty also boasted a distant Arab origin and, according to the oral tradition preserved to our times, considered its progenitor to be 'Aḵīl ibn Abī Ṭālib, brother of Caliph 'Alî and of Dja'far ibn Abī Ṭālib who, as we have seen, had been one of the first Muslims to take refuge in Ethiopia. According to the apologetic writing, the History of the Walasma', on the contrary, the founder of the dynasty 'Umar ibn Dunyā-ḥawz was descended from al-Hâṣan, one of the two sons of Caliph 'Alî.

The first part of the History of the Walasma' seems however to be legendary; for example, the duration of 120 years for the life of 'Umar Walasma', who reigned for 80 of them; and the tradition regarding the holy Sultan Djamâl al-dîn ibn Baziyû who had the genii at his command, one of whom brought him a letter from the Nile in an hour and another brought him water from the River Ḥawâsh (these may be assimilations of the ideas of Ethiopian 'paganism' on the minor divinities living in running waters).

The first date mentioned in the History of the Walasma' is that of 778/1376-7; but the synchronisms with the Ethiopian Chronicles and with the Arab historians permit earlier datings. For example, Sultan Šabr al-dîn fought for a long time against Negus 'Amda Seyon (who reigned from 1314 to 1344). Therefore, however that may be, since the legendary tradition reckons a total of ninety-six years for the duration of the reigns from Sultan Šabr al-dîn to 'Umar Walasmas', if as a vague assumption we adhered to this date, we should have to put the foundation of the Walasma' dynasty of Ifât at the end of the twelfth century, with all the necessary reserves and doubts due to the imperfection of the documentation we have quoted.

Šabr al-dîn, made war on Christian Ethiopia and he is represented, also in the Ethiopian Chronicles, as the most important of the Muslim sovereigns of the South: he is in fact designated as 'King of the Infidels' (Negusa 'elwan). This confirms the position of hegemony which Ifât meanwhile held in the first half of the fourteenth century of the Christian era after the fall of the Sultanate of Shoa. 21 But two more useful items of historical in-

---

20. For this name it might be possible to think of a Semitic-Ethiopian word which would correspond to the Ethiopian (Ge'ez): ḥawz and interpret the name: Dunyā-ḥawz as Mundi suavitias (almost 'deliciae generis humani'). It would then be a relic of ancient Ethiopian tradition in the names of the Walasma' princes. In any case the name Walasma' is not Arabic, but I have not been able to reconstitute it with Ethiopian words, at least to date. It is perhaps composed of the ancient Semitic 'WA' which means 'of', 'related to' and 'AL'ASMA' which means 'the gills'.

Ethiopia’s relations with the Muslim world

formation are furnished by the Ethiopian Chronicle on the war of Sultan Šabr al-din. The first is the first documentation of the use of kät by Ethiopian Muslims. The kät (this is the Arabic word; in Amharic it is chät) is a shrub (Catha edulis), whose leaves have a slight stimulating effect. The use of kät (‘which keeps the family awake at night’, as a popular song says) is the characteristic feature of the Muslims in Ethiopia. Here we see it already so much used that Šabr al-din in his warlike boasting proclaims that he will take possession of the capital of Christian Ethiopia and ‘will plant kät there, because the Muslims like this plant very much’.

A second important point for Ethiopian history in the Chronicle cited is a reference by the chronicler to the fact that after the victory of the negus over the Muslims, when the Christian sovereign wished to take advantage of his success in order to advance into the Muslim country and establish his armed forces there, he came up against the opposition of his soldiers. Having obtained the victory and the booty, they wanted to return home and enjoy the fruits of it, and did not understand the need for a permanent occupation of the enemy country. This psychological fact is interesting because we shall find a similar happening two centuries later (in the sixteenth century) this time with the Muslim soldiers of the Imām Aḥmed ibn Ibrāhīm, who likewise showed their repugnance for a permanent conquest of the territory of the defeated peoples. Thus, according to the Ethiopian chronicler, the soldiers say to the Christian sovereign: ‘O Negus, you have fought and have saved us from the hands of the infidel; and now by your counsel let us go back to our villages’. And the Negus replies: ‘Animals return to their pasture’. No differently two centuries later will the Arab chronicler represent the Muslim soldiers, who after the victory say to their leader Aḥmed ibn Ibrāhīm: ‘O Imām of the Muslims, you see what has happened. Many of our soldiers have been slain. Many of us are covered with wounds. We have only scanty provisions. Lead the army to our country. There they will reorganize us and we will reorganize our ranks’. But in the end in both cases the soldiers accept the order of their leader, although only after showing their discontent.22

The advance southwards of the new Solomonid dynasty of Christian Ethiopia and the expansion in Shoa of Muslim Ifat were bound to lead to a struggle between the two states. The first encounter of which we have record is in the chronicle of Negus ‘Amda Seyon I, when the Ethiopian sovereign states that, at the beginning of his reign, he had defeated Sultan Ḥakk al-din of Ifat and slain the Muslim prince Darāder, brother of Ḥakk al-din.23 It should be pointed out here that the Arabic History of the Walasma’ makes no mention of Ḥakk al-din or of this war but since the Muslim chronicler attributes the beginning of the struggles of the Christians to Sultan Ḥakk al-din II, who reigned from 1376 to 1386 (many

decades after Haḳḳ al-ḳin I), it may be a mistake on the part of the chronicler or of his source.

But the first war between Ethiopia and Ifät that is amply documented for us is the one waged during the reign of Negus 'Amdu Śeyon I (1314–44) and of Sultan Šabr al-ḳin I in 1332. Šabr al-ḳin attacks the troops of the Negus who have entered Shoa, but is defeated after a fierce struggle and is forced to make an act of submission. The Negus appoints prince Djamāl al-ḳin, brother of Šabr al-ḳin, to be Sultan of Ifät, but because of the spurious origin of his power he fails to acquire authority; and shortly after he is ousted by a vast movement of Muslim reaction stirred up by a religious agitator, the Kādī Śaḳeh. The latter manages to form a league of Muslim princes, among whom the Sultan of Adal (to the east of Ifät) distinguishes himself, this time in the first place. However, the Negus manages to win once again, and this time his victory is the start of a new era among the petty Muslim states of the south, because from now on the hegemony passes from Ifät to the Sultanate of Adal, although the power remains with the prince of the Walasma’ dynasty. So we may say that in two centuries (the thirteenth and fourteenth) the political centre of Ethiopian Islam was shifted three times, and always in a west–east direction towards the edge of the plateau: from Dămūṭ to Shoa, from Shoa to Ifät, and from Ifät to Adal.

The victory won by Negus 'Amdu Śeyon over the Muslims impelled his successors to undertake a series of military operations in the south. Thus Negus Dāwit I (1382–1411) defeated and killed in battle Sultan Haḳḳ al-ḳin II in 776/1376–7; and his successor, Negus Yeḥaḳ, defeated Sultan Sa’ad al-ḳin, the successor of Haḳḳ al-ḳin II, and pushed on towards the sea as far as Zāyla’. Of the victories of Negus Yeḥaḳ there survives a long victory song sung by his soldiers, which is valuable for us because it preserves the names of the various Muslim countries which that Negus, in his war against Sa’ad al-ḳin, had conquered and laid waste. The poetic document thus completes and specifies the list of the Muslim countries which about a century before had joined the Islamic league formed as a result of the preaching of the Kādī Śaḳeh, as we have seen, against Negus 'Amdu Śeyon. On the Muslim side, Sultan Sa’ad al-ḳin, who fell in battle against the Christians in 1415, became the eponymous hero of the Muslim resistance against the invading Neguses and from that time the Muslim south that had remained independent took the name of ‘land of Sa’ad al-ḳin’ (barr Sa’ad al-ḳin).

But the Sultanate of Adal, now at the head of Ethiopian Islam, recovered after a few decades; and there followed a strong and complex attempt to invade Shoa, now not only Christian but also the seat of the Neguses. The Muslim army was led by Sultan Shīḥāb al-ḳin Aḥmed Badlāy (who in the Ethiopian Chronicles is called: Arwē Badlāy, ‘the wild beast Badlāy’). After

some initial successes Badlây was defeated by Negus Zare'a Ṭaʾqob in a
great battle at Egubbā on 29 December 1445, and the Sultan fell in the
fighting. The Negus pursued the Muslim army as far as the River Ḥawāš
and gained a booty which seemed really wonderful to the Christian Ethi­
opians. This was because the commercial relations which the Sultanate of
Adal had with the potentates of the Arabian Peninsula enabled the
Muslims to obtain luxury articles which the Christian Ethiopians, still
blocked in their relations with the outside world, could not yet procure.
Thus a Christian document, for example, records:

And the robes [of the Sultan] and the robes of his chief men were
adorned with silver and shone on every side. And the dagger that he
[the Sultan] had at his side was richly ornamented with gold and
precious stones; and his amulet was adorned with drops of gold; and
the lettering of the amulet had been made with gold paint. And his
umbrella was from the country of Syria of a workmanship that caused
those who looked at it to marvel, and on it were painted winged
serpents.

After the battle of Egubbā the Sultans of Adal, where the dynasty of the
Walasma', formerly sultans of Ifāt, had continued, established their capital
dakar at the edge of the eastern lowland plain. But a few years later
Negus Eskender took the offensive, entered Adal, and conquered and
destroyed Dakar. However, on its way back to its territory in Shoa, the Christ­
an army was surprised in 1475 by that of the Sultan of Adal, Shams al-dīn
ibn Muḥammad, and Negus Eskender was defeated and died in the battle.
But the Muslims did not follow up this victory, because Adal was paralysed
and impoverished by the struggles of the various emirs for the supremacy
of the country.

Then the capital was transferred again eastward to Aussa down in the
lowland until finally Sultan Abū Bakr ibn Muḥammad ibn Aẓhar al-dīn
transferred the capital from Adal to Harar in 926/1520. He thus founded
the dynasty of the Emirs of Harar, which for three centuries held power in
the Muslim state which from that time on was called the emirate of Harar.
This was because Muḥammad ibn Abū Bakr ibn Aẓhar al-dīn, who had
shifted the capital to the south for reasons of safety, held supreme power in
name only, since he maintained on the throne the princes of the Walasma'
dynasty for whom he kept the title of Sultan. In this way he avoided
charges of illegitimacy and secured for his effective power the nominal one
of the old dynasty. His successors did the same, until the Walasma' dynasty
became extinct in obscure circumstances.

The new Sultanate of Harar was also soon torn by civil strife; and this
lasted until a strong personality arose, namely, the future Imām Aḥmed ibn
Ibrāhīm who gained the ascendancy and concentrated all power in his
hands.
This chapter attempts to re-evaluate the history of the east African coast and the Comoro Islands, hereafter conveniently referred to as the East African coast and its environs, between the seventh and eleventh centuries of the Christian era. It aims to correct the false picture that has been painted by historians and/or archaeologists of the colonial school of thought, who relied on external sources, incomplete data or mere rumours to present a synthesis which in most cases has been a history of foreign traders and colonizers who are credited with the civilization of the coast. The role of outsiders in the early history of the East African coast cannot be denied but it is one thing to be part of a process of change and completely another to claim responsibility for the process. Recent research findings based on new scientific methods and techniques in archaeology, history, ethnography, etc., which continue to come to light have not only broadened our data base but are also slowly but surely making it very clear that the history of the East African coast and its environs is the history of autochthonous African populations and their interaction with the environment.

The geographical background

The East African coast and its environs in this context refers to that stretch of land lying approximately between longitude 38°E and 50°E and latitude 11°N and 25°S, and stretching between the coasts of Somalia in the north and Mozambique in the south. It is an area which is under the influence of the monsoon winds system, a factor which in one way or another has influenced the historical development of the coast communities. Most of the area, except northern Kenya and Somalia, has good rainfall and fertile soils which can support agricultural activities. This region can conveniently be divided into three major eco-geographical zones: the Islands (e.g. Lamu,

1. The authors have in mind, for example, the works of J. de V. Allen, 1982; M. Horton, 1981; H. W. Mutoro, 1979, 1982b.
The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

Pate, Manda, Aldabra, the Comoros, etc.), the Peninsula and the hinterland. These zones are characterized by remains of settlements whose cultural uniqueness makes it very probable that they are the products of an autochthonous African population. Although abandoned today, the remains of these settlements still physically stand above the general surface as ruins and can be detected on aerial photographs and on topographic maps. For those that were not permanent, their presence has been shown in the archaeological record either by post holes or by high mounds that are surrounded by a vegetation cover which is either rich and tall or very poor and stunted.

Although the ecozones in which these settlements were located are today characterized by a poor vegetation cover and a small animal population, there is sufficient evidence from fossil pollen and bone remains to show that this was not the case during the formative years when these areas were being settled. The estuarine systems on which island settlements, like Lamu, Manda, Pate, Shanga, etc., are situated were for instance flanked by dense mangrove forests, which not only provided security and shelter to the inhabitants of these settlements but also a source of income (i.e. from sales of mangrove poles); today they are almost completely dilapidated. Also what is left of the Peninsula along the coastal mainland, on which settlements like Gedi, Mwana, Ntwapa, etc., were situated is a low thorn-bush belt which builds up into moist wooded grassland patches that are no doubt derived from former dense forests or woodlands which today are exemplified by Kaya forests in the hinterland. The hinterland ecozone, which is characterized by the Kaya settlements, is perhaps the only living example of what the ecosystem was like during the early settlement period of the region under review. Beyond the Kaya forest ridge, vegetation consists of a poor savanna which degenerates into the Tary desert vegetation that today supports Waata hunter-gatherers and Kwavi pastoralists.

It is in these ecological zones that East African coastal settlements and the civilization associated with them emerged and were in time to integrate the whole region with the wider world beyond. These settlements – Midzi or Miji (towns) – covered as much as fifty hectares at the height of their power and splendour. In time, however, they slowly but steadily declined and were subsequently abandoned to nature by their owners. Their ruins and monuments today litter the entire region under review and a closer look at their distribution and geographical location coupled with recent archaeological findings leaves no doubt that the occupants of these settlements were in constant mutual societal interaction and with their neighbours further afield. A reconstruction of the history of these societies therefore demands a frame of reference that is regional, multidisciplinary and symbiotic in perspective.

2. Kaya Mudzi Mwiru covered an area of 32 ha, Kaya Singwaya 20 ha, and Kaya Bomu 24 ha.

587
The problems

The majority of works dealing with the pre-colonial history of the East African coast have however, failed us in this respect. This failure is due mainly to two factors: the traditional methodology on which the research was based, and the colonialisit approach of those who undertook it. The methodology is traditional because it did not explicitly specify what research problems the archaeologist was out to solve and how he was going to solve them. The aim apparently was to cover as many areas as possible just because such areas had not been investigated before. It is thus not surprising to find that as a result of the apparent hurry involved, a number of settlements were either superficially investigated or were ignored altogether.

On many occasions only one or two holes were dug on a settlement of considerable dimensions, as is attested by site reports or published works. In such cases, the data recovered from such a hole was then used to describe the behaviour patterns of the settlement as a whole. This approach is improper because human behaviour is patterned, and data from one or two excavated holes cannot be representative of all the behaviour patterns of a settlement as a whole. The colonialisit attitude in the historiography is reflected in the perception as well as interpretation of the data recovered. Firstly, coastal culture was perceived in terms of trait lists which represented ideas, beliefs, mental templates or norms of people that made them. This means that the interpretation that followed, particularly with regard to variability and change in the culture, was given in terms of diffusion from some superior cultural centres in the Middle East and beyond, rather than as resulting from the people's adaptation to their changing environment. This traditional explanation of the settlement history of the East African coast and its environs is to be found in works of many scholars, as will be seen presently.

According to F. B. Pearce the settlements in this region were founded by Persians and Arabs as is evidenced by what he called the Shiraz and Arab style of architecture.\(^3\) W. H. Ingrams went further to suggest that if the founders of these settlements were Persians, then they were of a Shi'a faith of Islam.\(^4\) L. W. Hollingsworth even went a step further arguing that, in addition to these immigrants being Shiraz and therefore Persian in origin, they also introduced stone buildings as well as ideas of manufacturing lime and cement, and the arts of wood-carving and cotton-weaving.\(^5\) Similar sentiments were expressed by James Kirkman who, after visiting several of these settlements, concluded that the 'historical monuments of East Africa belong not to the Africans but to the Arabs and Arabized Persians mixed in

---

blood with Africans, but in culture utterly apart from the Africans who surrounded them. The difference between Pearce and Kirkman is that while the former sees the Shirâzî or Persian architecture as preceding the Arab style, the latter sees it the other way round. Neville Chittick is no exception to these views. He not only sees these immigrants from Shirâz (Sirâf)—who he claims founded settlements in this region—as consisting mostly of men, but also argues that even the economy on which these settlements were based was alien: “Though the origins of these civilizations were in those lands on which they economically depended, it was always seawards that the cities of the coast faced, looking out over the great maritime region constituted by the Indian Ocean and its Coasts.”

Protagonists of foreign origins of settlements in this region under review have used epigraphy, documentary evidence as well as place names to support their thesis but their evidence has been found to be inadequate and unconvincing. For instance, while it is true that two epigraphic remains of the thirteenth century found in Mogadishu bear Persian names, these are too few to form a basis for any solid conclusions. In addition to this, settlements in this region were already flourishing by this time. Names resembling those in Arabia or Persia, e.g. al-Καḥṭānī, al-Ḥaḍramī, etc., have also been cited as evidence for Arabo-Persian origins of the East African coastal settlements. Such names have been reported from Mogadishu and Tongoni in northern Tanzania. It should be noted here that the thirteen names or inscriptions recovered from Mogadishu were subjected to a thorough scrutiny and only two of them mention people of demonstrably Persian origin. Although the single tile from Tongoni reported by Burton is still at large, it is very unlikely that such a tile was Persian in origin. Even if it were, it alone does not provide us with enough evidence to show that Tongoni was a Persian settlement. Finally, documentary evidence has also been cited to support the theory that the settlements of the East African coast and its environs had Persian origins. In the long list compiled by B. G. Martin, for instance, it has been found that none of these is convincing and none shows the existence of these settlements before +1750.

In an attempt to fix a date for the foundation by aliens of these coastal cities, imported pottery was taken and used as the best evidence for dating. Toward this end, we are told, Manda was founded in the third/ninth century, Takwa in the tenth/sixteenth–eleventh/seventeenth century, and Kilwa in the fourth/tenth to fifth/eleventh or sixth/twelfth century. In

7. H. N. Chittick, in all his works.
this connection, carbon-14 dates (which are scientifically derived and are as such more objective) were ignored because the dates obtained were regarded as too early. The local ceramics, which can either be cross-dated with the well-known ones in the neighbourhood or can be dated by thermoluminescence, were treated in isolation, as if to imply that they were not the product of these settlements and even if they were, their dates would contradict conclusions that had already been reached, i.e. that prior to the arrival of foreigners from Shïrâz, etc., no settlements existed in this region. Had this been the case, one would expect to find a number of sites in the region with an assemblage that is dominantly different and foreign to the area, particularly when compared with the stratigraphy. But this type of evidence has not come to light yet. Excavations at Takwa, for instance, yielded well over five million potsherds of locally made ceramics compared to five hundred potsherds of imported ceramics.\(^{13}\) Excavations at other sites like Manda, Kaya Singwaya, Kaya Mudzi Mwiru, Gedi, Kilwa, Shanga, Mudzi Mwiru and Fungo, to name a few, have also revealed an enormous preponderance of locally made ceramic materials over imported materials.\(^{14}\) Against this background one wonders how a settlement can belong to foreigners when, first, there is no evidence and, secondly, its material cultural remains are predominantly those of an indigenous population.

Another methodological shortcoming that needs to be tested is the way in which these sites have been dated to fit with the coming of these Arabs and Persians. All coastal towns have in this respect been dated on the basis of imported pottery. Often this was done on the basis of a single potsherd recovered from a single test pit. Consistent archaeological excavations in these settlements have continued to unearth potsherds belonging to even earlier time periods than the ones quoted above. This is exemplified by the site of Takwa which on the basis of imported pottery was dated to the tenth or eleventh/sixteenth or seventeenth centuries.

This site has also provided Chinese celadons and Islamic monochromes of the fifth/eleventh to seventh/thirteenth century.\(^{15}\) The questions to ask are: What criteria were used in determining the dating? Why were the fifth/eleventh to seventh/thirteenth century potsherds not considered? Should we ignore the carbon-14 dates just because they do not fit into the expected scheme of diffusion?

On this note we wish to point out that the imported pottery dates for East African coastal settlements, suggested by earlier researchers, were based on incomplete data. Our own comparison of all the dates provided by imported pottery vis-à-vis those provided by carbon-14 (e.g. Stratum 3

\(^{13}\) H. W. Mutoro, 1979, pp. 68–110.


\(^{15}\) H. W. Mutoro, 1979, pp. 111–21.
The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

data of $1195 \pm 135$ for Takwa) leads to the conclusion that all the imported pottery dates for the coast must be treated with greater caution than has previously been done. We wish to stress that imported pottery like other imported luxury exchange items such as drinking glasses, beads, wine cups, cloth, etc., may tell us a lot about the life style and economy of the society as well as the degree of interaction with its neighbours. We have to consider them when working out the site’s chronology but this must not be done to the exclusion of other more objective and scientific methods of dating like carbon-14. The dates established on the basis of imported pottery must not be seen as marking the time when the settlements were founded, as has been often maintained.

Secondly, in any field research, one needs to clarify the sampling procedure being used in the selection of the data that is to be analysed or dated. A single potsherd from one or two test pits on a settlement cannot be considered to be representative of all the potsherds on the site. We also have to take note of the fact that human settlement systems are often capable of growing from very humble beginnings to complex dimensions. On attaining this stage, such settlements generally span greater ecological ranges, thus becoming more complex and more widespread. To understand the process of cultural evolution and change within these settlements, we have first of all to note the behaviour patterns of the extinct societies and to see that a wide section of the settlement is sampled and excavated to get the representative data that can help us in our analysis and explanation. While it is true that we cannot excavate the whole settlement, it is necessary that the procedure we are using to determine which areas of the settlement to be excavated is made explicit. All points on the settlement should at least be given an equal chance of being selected for excavation.

Another aspect of colonial prejudice is reflected in the types of settlements that were selected for investigation. It goes without saying that virtually all past efforts were concentrated on and confined to stone-built settlements, e.g., Manda, Kilwa, Takwa, Mwana, Gedi, etc., which, as we have already stated, were attributed to and seen as belonging to the aliens. Those settlements that were not built in stone were ignored not just because they were uninteresting but also because they were not ‘architectural’ in the fullest sense of the word. The point being emphasized here is that settlements are cultural systems and as such are neither univariate phenomena nor can their functioning be understood in terms of a single variable, i.e., the spatial-temporal transmission of ideas from higher culture centres to lower centres. They rather should be seen in a multivariate spectrum of events whose operation can only be understood in terms of many causally relevant variables which either function interdependently or in varying combinations. It is up to us researchers, therefore, to isolate these causative variables in an effort to establish the relations that existed between them. To achieve such a goal we certainly have to go beyond the traditional paradigm that glorifies the racial superiority of the colonizing
people by employing a new paradigm that can solve the problems in an objectively conceived frame of reference.

In the absence of any adequate and convincing data to support the view that settlements on the East African coast were founded by aliens, it thus becomes probable that the original progenitors of the coastal culture were the indigenous African populations. The evidence for their presence and possible involvement in the establishment of these settlements is attested by the archaeological as well as documentary evidence to which we now turn.

The sources

Archaeology

Although archaeological work in this region is still in its infancy, already considerable evidence has come to light to show that the region was at different time periods populated by the so-called Early, Middle and Later Stone Age societies. These were subsequently succeeded by the Early and Later Iron Age populations. Evidence for Early, Middle and Later Stone Age settlements in this region has been found at several sites. Mtongwe, just off the road to Kwale in southern Kenya, is one of those sites that is

being properly excavated by a Japanese research team from Nagoya University. Located on Changamwe terrace, the settlement measures 800 m by 300 m and comprises thirty localities.\(^{17}\) A detailed discussion of the artefactual remains and the behaviour patterns of the populations that produced them is not only well known but also falls outside the scope of this chapter. It will, however, suffice to say that a large assemblage of cultural remains was recovered all attesting to the existence, in this region, not only of human activities, but also of human settlements going back beyond the frequently quoted ninth century of the Christian era.

Evidence for Early and Later Iron Age settlement in the region is also abundant. First and foremost is the site of Kwale located on the Kinango road some 6 km from present-day Kwale town. This site was excavated in the mid-1960s by Robert Soper and a wide variety of items of pottery, iron slag, implements, etc. were retrieved, attesting to the existence here of an Iron Age population by the first quarter of the first millenium of the Christian era.\(^{18}\) Related, contemporary cultural material remains have also been reported from excavations as well as surface sites in a number of areas in central and coastal Tanzania and Kenya. Such areas include the Usambara Mountains, the South Pare Hills, the Mijikenda Kaya settlements (e.g. Kaya Mudzi Mwiru, Kaya Fungo, Kaya Singway, etc.), to name but a few.

At Gedi for instance, a special kind of sixth/twelfth-century ornamented ware has been excavated from a stratum below the city foundations. This particular ware has been described as ribbed ornamented ware and compared with sherds of ribbed black ware found in upper levels at Great Zimbabwe. The ornamentation and style are undisputedly African, but the sherds have been ascribed on the basis of negative evidence to Oromo (Galla) rather than Bantu or Swahili.\(^{19}\) Both at Unguja Ukuu and Manda, sites dating to the third/ninth century have been found. However, it is reported by Chittick that the blue-glazed Islamic ware is by far the commonest import but unfortunately no statistics are given to enable comparison with the local ware.\(^{20}\)

At Nzwani in the Comoro Islands, a range of sherds datable probably to \(430 \pm 70\) have been found, showing that the islands were settled before the coming of the Arabs, probably by Afro-Indonesians, though whether these were from Madagascar or from a South-East African coastal settlement is unclear. However as has rightly been pointed out by Shepherd, since Comorians are Bantu-speaking, the later hypothesis is the more likely.\(^{21}\) In addition, Wa-Ngazija (the islander) tradition is one of arrival from the mainland.

\(^{17}\) G. Omi, 1982.
\(^{19}\) J. Kirkman, 1954, p. 73.
In Kilwa, both periods ia and ib (ninth to twelfth century) which pre­
date the Shirāzī dynasty, are marked by homogeneous cultural material
including slag as evidence of iron smelting and evidence of the manufac­
ture of beads, pottery and fish debris.22 Chittick, however, on the basis of
the pottery – which to him displays 'a considerable degree of technical
skill' – is of the opinion that the settlement of Kilwa was not autochtho­
nous. This bias cannot be entertained too seriously because not only do the
chronicles leave no doubt that Kilwa's population at this time was local,
but similar red-finished ware occurs at other coastal sites such as Unguja
Ukuu and Manda.23 The fact that no such pottery has been reported from
the hinterland does not mean that this innovative technique could not have
developed independently in the coastal towns. Besides, the hinterland has
yet to be thoroughly investigated and until this is done it would be pre­
sumptuous to think that pottery is restricted to the coast.

The two diagnostic local wares of this period are bag-shaped cooking
pots with incised decoration on rim or shoulder and red burnished ware.
Shallow bowls with inturned rims also occur. Imported wares were sgraf­
fito and white tin-glazed Persian sherds.24 It is of interest to note that
there is some resemblance between the incised decoration on the necks of
pots of Type I and pottery from the Usambara Mountains designated as
Group C which, though undated, is obviously later than the Early Iron
Age wares.25 Other archaeological finds from this period include knives,
arrowheads, fish hooks, hollow tubes, iron points and nails and carnelian
beads. As at Manda, glass beads do not occur before the fourth/tenth
century.26

At Unguja Ukuu on Zanzibar Island, the earliest local pottery is dated to
around the fourth/tenth century, or equivalent to Manda period ia.27
Although Gedi is said to have been founded in the sixth/twelfth century
and is therefore outside the chronological confines of this chapter, it is of
interest to note that the quantity of sherds of local earthenware greatly
exceeded the imported sherds, although a greater portion were body sherds
and therefore of no diagnostic importance. In short, the local ware was
unglazed and sparingly incised, indented, applied or rarely colour orna­
tmented. Linear incised ornamentation is locally regarded as characteristic
of the Swahili, Wasanya and Oromo, fingernail indented ornamentation as
of Wanyika origin and applied ornamentation as typical of the Oromo
peoples' pottery.28 The African element, i.e. the ribbed ornamented ware
and the hemispherical bowls from the earliest levels, is undisputed, and as

23. ibid., p. 237.
has been seen earlier, this type of pottery is of at least a tenth-century date and resembles pottery from the Central Africa sites of Great Zimbabwe and Mapungubwe.

The scarcity of ribbed ornamented ware after the foundation of the city indicates that there must have been local people there before the arrival of the Arabs and the supplanting of the local earthenware technique by the foreign technique. Consequently, imported wares including blue and green glazed earthenwares (Islamic), 'yellow and black' glazed earthenware and celadon and blue and white celadon (China) became more abundant than local earthenware after the foundation of the city. The finger-nail ornamented cooking pots may be of historical importance as evidence of the migration of peoples. These cooking pots, which are still made today by the Giriama, were found at Gedi. This particular ornamentation is now regarded as characteristic of the Wanyika as opposed to the incised decoration practised by the Swahili.

Archaeological evidence throughout the east coast leaves no doubt that in all cases there were local inhabitants with their own civilizations before the coming of the Arabs. Available evidence supports the contention that at least for the central and southern parts of the coast, the inhabitants were Bantu.

Written sources

The above archaeological evidence for the autochthonous origins of the settlements in this region during the period under review is further corroborated by written sources. The majority of these were produced by Arab authors, but there are also some fragmentary accounts in Chinese; however, the interpretation of the few place-names they mention and thus their localization is rather uncertain. It was merely the preponderance of the Arabic written materials that constituted one of the chief reasons why the East African coast has been for such a long time considered to be an Arabo-Persian colony, or a cultural appendix of the larger Islamic world in which the local people played only an insignificant role. But a careful reading of the most important Arabic works and their unbiased interpretation will show a quite different picture to that painted by the former school of historiography.

The Arabs called the inhabitants of eastern Africa south of the Juba River, al-Zandj (or al-Zindj), a term whose etymology continues to be obscure. There is no doubt that the Arabs and other Muslims understood

29. J. Kirkman, 1954, p. 94.
30. The Wanyika is a general term used to refer to the Mijikenda group of people.
FIG. 21.1 Pottery excavated at Mro Deoua, Comoro Islands: top, Middle Eastern and Yüeh pottery; bottom Dembeni red pottery.
The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

FIG. 21.2 Old Shīrāzī mosque of Domoni Anjouan, Comoro Islands (eleventh century)

NOTE TO FIGS 21.1 AND 21.2

Since this chapter by F. T. Masao and H. W. Mutoro was written, important archaeological excavations have been carried out in the Comoro Archipelago, in particular by H. T. Wright, 1984; C. Allibert, A. Argan and J. Argan, 1983; and C. Chanudet and P. Vérin, 1983.

It is now clear that the archipelago was already occupied in the ninth century. The people of the four islands made a red and black pottery, known as 'Dembeni', which resembles the pottery found by N. Chittick in the lower levels of the same period at Kilwa and Manda. Another tradition of local pottery called Majikavo used an Arca shell-pattern decoration and shows some resemblance to the discoveries made at sites in the north of Madagascar.

The first inhabitants of the Comoros traded with the outside world, particularly with the towns of Sīrāf and Sohar, through which oriental Yūeh pottery, Middle Eastern (opaque tin-glazed) pottery and also glassware and other luxury objects arrived.

The Comorians of the Dembeni culture knew how to work metal, fished and grew rice.

In the eleventh century, significant cultural changes took place. Stone buildings made their appearance. One of the oldest mosques is undoubtedly the one at Domoni, which has frequently been rebuilt.

A new kind of Middle Eastern pottery – the sgraffito – appears at this stage and the Majikavo pottery takes on a simpler form of decoration and is called Hanyundro. Steatite cooking pots imported from Madagascar appear to be common at this time. Weights used in spinning are evidence of the making of clothes.
this term to mean the negroid and Bantu-speaking peoples living on the coast and in the interior of East Africa. Some Zandj words quoted by Arab authors point quite distinctly to their Bantu origins: the geographer Ibn al-Fațih (writing c. 280/902–3) was the first to mention that the name of God in the Zandj language is l-makludjulu;\(^{33}\) a similar word is furnished also by al-Mas'üdî (d. 345/956) in the form malkandjulu, and by Muṭahhar al-Makdīsî (fl. 355/966) as malakui and djalui.\(^{34}\) All these forms are derived from the Bantu mkulu (great person) and the reduplication – mkulunkulu – indicates someone very great. The nearest to this ancient form is the Zulu unkulunkulu. The Bantu character of the Zandj is further supported by such words as wafalimĩ, meaning kings or chiefs, corresponding exactly to the Bantu/Kiswahili mfalme (pl. wafalme),\(^{35}\) or inbila (rhinoceros) from Bantu mpela (Kiswahili pera or pea), and makwandju (the tree, *Tamarindus indica*) from Kiswahili mkwanju, both these words being cited by the famous scientist al-Bīrūnî (d. 442/1050–1).\(^{36}\)

Nowhere in Arabic sources from this period – and among these are the copious reports by Ibn al-Faṭih, Buzurg ibn Shahriyâr, al-Mas'üdî, al-Bīrūnî and, a bit later, al-Idrīsî – do we find any mention of large settlements or colonies of expatriates from Muslim countries. The coast is described as inhabited and, what is more important, ruled by the local Zandj population. Especially in the account of al-Mas'üdî, who visited the coast for the last time in 304/916–17, there is a stress on the non-Muslim character of the Zandj state. The famous tale of Buzurg ibn Shahriyâr about the kidnaping of the Zandj king by Arab slavers offers further evidence of the independent development of the coastal Bantu peoples.\(^{37}\) Even from the comparatively late al-Idrīsî (d. 560/1165) who incorporated into his work information from earlier sources, we gain the impression that political power in all coastal settlements had been in the hands of indigenous Africans.

On the other hand all Arabic sources speak about a constantly expanding trade between the East African coast and the lands surrounding the Indian Ocean, and about regular visits of Arab, Persian and Indian merchants. This intercourse was nothing new, as in the preceding period the Graeco-Roman authors had already described the commercial links between this region and other parts of the Indian Ocean area.\(^{38}\) The importance of the international trade for the history of the East African coast and its economic and cultural impact on the African peoples there will be discussed presently.

---

33. Ibn al-Faṭih, 1885, p. 78.
36. Al-Bīrūnî, 1887, p. 100; al-Bīrūnî, 1941, p. 126.
The fallacy of the former school of historiography consisted in the mixing up of commercial relations with permanent settlement by the visitors and/or their political supremacy. Since the colonizing process in modern times proceeded along the line of trade-political supremacy-cultural change, it was erroneously concluded that the same must have happened in earlier times along the East African coast although there was not a trace of evidence to support such a view.

As for the permanent presence of Arabo-Persian elements in large numbers in the coastal settlements and their alleged founding of them, there is for this period only one indication and even this one is highly ambiguous. Al-Mas'ūdī tells us that the island of Kanbalū (Pemba) is inhabited by a Muslim people, although their language is the Zandj one, and he adds that the Muslims conquered the island, making the local people prisoners. In another place the same source mentions that Kanbalū has a mixed population of Muslims and non-Muslim Zandj, the king being from among the Muslims. Nowhere does the author maintain that these Muslims were Arabs or Persians; their Zandj language points rather to a group of Islamized Bantu-speakers. In any case the island was inhabited by the Zandj prior to the Muslim conquest.

Oral traditions

The third main source for the history of the East African coast is the oral tradition preserved in the local chronicles of Pate, Lamu, Kilwa and some other cities, the majority of these chronicles were written down either in Kiswahili or in Arabic only in the nineteenth century. An earlier version of the Kilwa Chronicle is contained in the sixteenth-century Decadas da Asia of João de Barros, being thus much closer in time to the earlier period. In many of these traditions an attempt is made to forge links between the ruling dynasty or class and some of the famous persons and/or cities of Middle Eastern history. This is a common trend in traditions of nearly all African Islamized societies and the result is the unnecessary prolonging of the authentic traditions into past centuries and their embroidering with great names of early Islamic ages.

While oral tradition can be useful in researching the history of a preliterate people, this source has not been fully utilized by historians because of their reliance on written sources. Although most oral tradition would have low reliability due to the antiquity of the period covered here, it is nevertheless a source for Mombasa’s three groups (Taifa tatu) — Wa-Changamwe, Wa-Kilindini and Wa-Tangana — whose tradition claims that they were the original inhabitants until their sovereignty was overthrown by the Shirāzí rulers in the second half of the thirteenth century.  

Until now, most historians have used these sources only to produce histories of diffusion and migrations of peoples and ideas to the African coast, the resultant synthesis being that the history and civilization of the coast is alien. It is thus necessary to review the history in a new approach which will identify the local components in the genesis of East African coast civilization and show that it is basically autochthonous and adapted to the region. This does not deny occasional foreign inputs for we are not dealing with a closed culture.

The coastal peoples

The Arab geographers divided the eastern African coast into three parts: the land of the Barbar (bilād al-Barbar) in the north, the land of the Zandj (bilād al-Zandj) between the Webi Shebele River and some point on the coast opposite to Zanzibar, and the Sofala country (ard or bilād Sufāla) to the south. Whether the mysterious country of Wāk-Wāk is to be placed even farther southwards on the African continent or whether it meant Madagascar, is difficult to decide owing to the confused accounts. The land of the Barbar covered approximately the coast of present-day Somalia, both the northern part facing the Gulf of Aden, where the town of Berbera still exists, and the part to the south of Cape Guardafui. There is little doubt that the name Barbar has been applied by the Arabs to the Somali and other Cushitic-speaking peoples of the Horn of Africa. These people were sometimes referred to as 'black Berbers' to distinguish them from the North African Berbers. The term Berber had been already employed by the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea, Ptolemy and Cosmas Indicopleustes in the same sense. Although some scholars argue that the boundaries between the Barbar country and the land of the Zandj lay on the Juba River, there is enough evidence to show that the Bantu population lived as far north as the Webi Shebele. Bantu-speaking groups, like the Shidla, Shabeli, Dube and Elay still exist along the lower Webi Shebele, and the group known as the Gosha lives to the north of the Juba. At Brava the people still speak Chimbalazi, one of the northern dialects of Kiswahili. Nevertheless it seems that some Somali elements had already penetrated in the fourth/tenth or fifth/eleventh century to the coastal region between Mogadishu and Brava; in the mid-sixth/twelfth century al-Idrīsī already located fifty villages of the Hawiya — a Somali group — along the bank of an unnamed river, probably the Webi Shebele. The same author mentions also Merka as one of the last towns in the land of the Barbar.

The land of the Zandj seems to have attracted more attention than all the other parts of the coast, mainly because of the brisk trade of the Zandj with

42. V. V. Matveyev, 1960.
The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

The descriptions furnished by Arab authors leave no doubt that the coastal people were of Negro stock even if al-Iṣṭakhri (fl. 340/951) mentions that in the cooler parts of East Africa lived 'white Zandj'.\textsuperscript{44} Whether his informants (he himself never visited Africa) had in mind some Cushitic-speaking peoples inhabiting the hilly regions in the interior who differed from their Negro neighbours by their colour, remains unsolved.

The authors before the sixth/twelfth century do not mention any coastal place by its name, only the settlements on the offshore islands. Apart from Kanbalū (most probably Pemba Island), visited by al-Masʿūdī, only one other name is mentioned by an early author; al-Djāhīz (d. 255/869) divides the Zandj into two branches, the Kanbalū, and the Lundjüya, which is clearly a corruption from the Bantu word for Zanzibar, Ungudja.\textsuperscript{45} The same author also relates a highly interesting account, found nowhere else, about a sea expedition led by a prince of Oman which — probably at the end of the seventh century — reached the land of the Zandj and was there destroyed by local peoples.

Al-Īdārī is the first among the authors writing in Arabic to furnish the names of several coastal settlements of the land of the Zandj and Sofala. After al-Nadjā, the last town of the Barbars, he speaks about Badhūna and Karḵūna as the two settlements bordering with the Zandj. From his text it is not entirely clear whether these two were inhabited by the Zandj or by Barbars, but he states that the Badhūna people are under the rule of the Zandj king. Then follow — going from north to south — Malindi, Manbasa (Mombasa) where the king of the Zandj resides, and al-Banās (or al-Bayās) the last place of the Zandj, touching already the Sofala country. The identification of al-Banās is not yet established definitively but it seems that it is to be located somewhere between Tanga and Sadani.\textsuperscript{46}

To the south of the land of Zandj began the Sofala country, called by the Arabs Sufālā al-Zandj (Sofala of the Zandj) to distinguish it from Indian Sofala, near Bombay.\textsuperscript{47} Because the African Sofala was famous for its gold, it was also known as Sufālā al-dhahab (Golden Sofala) or Sufālā al-tibr (Sofala of gold sand). Although some later authors mention the town of Sofala, the earlier geographers rather understood under this name (whose meaning is either ‘low-lying land’ or ‘shoal water’) a whole stretch of the coast between Pangani and southern Mozambique. According to their accounts the Sofala peoples were akin to the Zandj and were in commercial

\textsuperscript{44} al-Iṣṭakhri, 1870, p. 36.
\textsuperscript{45} Cf. al-Djāhīz, 1903, p. 36; it could be read also as Lundjüya, the la- being an archaic Bantu prefix.
\textsuperscript{46} Al-Īdārī, 1870, p. 59, gives the distance between Mombasa and al-Banās as one day and a half on the sea. Taking into account the average speed of Arabic sailing vessels at this period as being 3 knots (cf. G. F. Hourani, 1951, pp. 110–11), this will correspond to c. 108 nautical miles (200 kms).
\textsuperscript{47} The Indian Sofala corresponded to the ancient port of Surparaka.
intercourse with traders coming from Arab countries and India. The
general tone of al-Bīrūnī’s narrative gives the impression that Sofala was a
well-known and frequently visited country, not an exotic and faraway land.
It represented the terminal of voyages, as no ship ventured to sail further
owing to sea dangers. Highly interesting is al-Bīrūnī’s remark that beyond
Sofala the Indian Sea joins the Western (Atlantic) Ocean.48
Settlements must have been scattered all along the coast and although
the *Periplus* mentions only Rhapta and Menouthias, it is reasonable to
expect that there were several small villages built of mud and wattle which
later on developed into prominent metropolises such as Mogadishu, Gedi,
Manda, Kilwa, and Kanbalū.
By the third/ninth century most of the towns on the East African coast
were inhabited by the Swahili. The degree of affluence differed from one
town to another depending on social organization and economic activities.
Very few would have been built of stone in the initial stages, but as the
settlements prospered, more and more stone architecture would result.
Kilwa and Mafia as shown by archaeological excavations were character­
ized by mud-and-wattle houses, a fishing economy, local pottery and iron
products, and limited local trade.49

Social organization

The *Periplus* mentions savage people remarkable for their stature, and
organized under separate chiefs for each place.50 As the reference does
not indicate anything about the language, these people could have been as
well Bantu-speakers as speakers of any other language group.
The coastal settlements were always self-governing and generally in­
dependent, their links with each other following varying patterns of
alliance and hostility. Now and again, Kilwa, Pate and Mombasa attained a
precarious hegemony when powerful enough to exact tribute.51
Islamic influence was nowhere responsible for the type of government
which developed. It arose out of the nature of the situation. Maritime city­
states had long existed on the Ethiopian coast and the maritime economic
basis of settlement which came into existence on the East African coast
required a wide outlook and centralized power capable of exacting taxes
and tribute.
In the Benadir states authority seems to have been originally exercised
by a council of lineage heads as in Mogadishu, Brava and Siyu throughout
their independent history; one of these heads came to be recognized as a
*primus inter pares*. But most coastal towns acquired chiefs, often an immi-

grant Arab or Persian accepted voluntarily as in Pate, presumably because he was outside the sphere of clan rivalries.\textsuperscript{52}

The mixture of indigenous people and immigrants resulted in an ethnically mixed and economically specialized society. This led to the characteristic pattern of socio-economic differentiation and social stratification, with individual groups living together in their own ward and quarter (\textit{mtaa}) of the town and different groups in wards ranked hierarchically against one another.\textsuperscript{53} The early Arabic writers, Al-Djähiz and al-Mas'ūdī indicate that the settlements were ruled by local kings who were apparently elected and had their own armies.

T. Spear has rightly pointed out that a Swahili history which emphasizes Arab roots and Arab culture is based only on that layer which developed in the nineteenth century. It is necessary to go beyond this to uncover deeper layers, such as the ones relating to the Sanye and Batawi in Pate, which have been almost but not quite obliterated by subsequent developments in the societies and traditions. We must seek to uncover the meanings these have for Swahili historians if we are to be able to use them to construct our own histories.\textsuperscript{54}

The Kiswahili language

The coastal settlements or small towns, it must be assumed, brought together different people, the majority of whom were of Bantu stock, a condition which must have favoured the development of Kiswahili.

The term Swahili is derived from the Arabic \textit{sāhīl} (pl. \textit{satvāhil})—'coast', and was employed first for the region stretching from Mogadishu to Lamu. The Kiswahili language (literally, 'the language of the coast') developed, of course, only later with the introduction of many Arab and Persian loan-words, that accompanied the progressive Islamization of the coastal people. It would be therefore more proper to speak — at least before the sixth/twelfth century — about proto-Kiswahili as the Bantu language that formed the basis on which later Kiswahili developed. Many authorities argue that Kiswahili was first concentrated in the area north of the Tana Delta and along the Somali coast and then spread from there southward.\textsuperscript{55}

Al-Mas'ūdī's quotation of some Zandj words\textsuperscript{56} leaves no doubt about the Bantu character of their language. It is therefore likely that some form of proto-Kiswahili was spoken on the coast; in no case was it a pidgin language since the same author mentioned the rich eloquence of the people and the existence of accomplished orators among them.

\textsuperscript{52} ibid., p. 14.
\textsuperscript{53} T. Spear, 1982, p. 6.
\textsuperscript{54} ibid., p. 19.
\textsuperscript{56} Cf. p. 598 above.
It has been reported that between 800 and 1300 about nineteen settlements were situated north of the Tana, but that there were others such as Mombasa, Malindi, Zanzibar, Pemba, Kilwa and Kanbalü in the south. These towns nurtured the development of Kiswahili while subsequent migration from the core area spread the language.

Linguistic evidence gathered by Derek Nurse has pointed more clearly to a Kiswahili synthesis along the northern coast. Further studies have left no doubt that Kiswahili is a Bantu language closely related to the Pokomo and Mijikenda languages previously spoken along the Somali and northern Kenyan coast. Kiswahili seems to have developed in this area as people speaking the language that was ancestral to Mijikenda, Pokomo and Kiswahili became divided, their language consequently diverging into separate dialects and eventually separate languages.

As the society of coastal townspeople who were the speakers of Kiswahili became more complex and as commerce became important, interaction with Arab traders increased. As a result, a number of Arabic words and the Arabic script were adopted into Kiswahili. Subsequently, the language spread down the coast as it was carried by traders from Somalia and northern Kenya around the ninth century. As the traders expanded their activity down the coast, they established new settlements and interacted with the societies in which they settled. This gradually facilitated the adoption of Islam as the religion of the rulers.

This view is contrary to the thesis propounded by some historians who view the Kiswahili-speaking peoples of the East African coast as members of an Arab diaspora which due to trade spread all over the coast during the last two thousand years. They argue that the Swahili culture has very strong Arab elements, that the language uses Arabic script, that the stone buildings and mosques are constructed in the Arabic manner and that the religion of Islam which is predominant along the coast and the genteel social behaviour of the Swahili are all Arab, especially when contrasted with the African cultures of the interior.

This perspective is essentially diffusionist as it assumes that cultural innovation and historical development in East Africa could only come from outside. It is also racist to assume that race and culture are so inextricably linked that a separate ‘race’ of immigrants had to carry these new ideas. These historians failed to investigate the possible African roots of the Swahili culture as reflected in the language, in religious beliefs and values and in the economy or social structure.

Recent studies of Swahili culture and society reveal that African components are far more prominent than is allowed for by the diffusionists’ arguments:

The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

(1) The Kiswahili grammatical structure as well as the greater part of the vocabulary are closely related to the Mijikenda and Pokomo languages, while its literature reflects the African oral code.

(2) The material culture of the Swahili has no analogues in Arabia or Persia. The Swahili stone architecture has no detailed parallels to justify the conclusion that it originated in the Near East, Arabia or Persia. Instead it developed locally out of the mud and wattle architecture prominent along the coast as a result of increasing economic wealth and socio-economic differentiation. The coastal architecture which has been so much used as a proof that the coastal urban centres were founded by Arabs uses no materials which are not locally obtainable. Coral and coralline limestone which dominated the buildings were locally quarried. The mortar and plaster were also made from the available coral and gypsum.

(3) Even the Islam of the coast bears strong traces of historical traditional African religions in the prominence in it of beliefs in spirits and spirit possession, ancestor worship, witchcraft and divination which can be found in local traditions of Islam, co-existing with the more orthodox legal tradition.

Islam

It would seem that the role of Muslims and their very number has been exaggerated by many historians, a bias perhaps inherent in the fact that most of the pre-tenth/sixteenth century written sources are Arabic. Although Islam had reached the northern part of the East African coast by the second/eighth century and the southern part well before the fifth/eleventh century, it was not until the eighth/fourteenth century that a distinctive Islamic coast civilization which can be called Shirazi differentiated itself.

For a long time Islam was professed only by the immigrants from Arabia or Persia who were settled in the coastal towns. It seems that these expatriate merchants had not developed any large-scale proselytizing activity, so that the number of native Muslims remained rather restricted. Gradually some people in the immediate entourage of the immigrants as well as those Africans who were interested in commercial intercourse with the foreigners accepted Islam as their religion. The evidence of al-Mas'ūdī already quoted points to the island of Kanbalû as inhabited by Muslims speaking the Zandj language, and it is generally accepted that Islam was implanted on the East African islands before it spread to the mainland.

63. J. S. Trimingham, 1964, p. 11.
64. Cf. p. 598 above.
The overall picture of the expansion of Islam is rather blurred but it seems that until the sixth/twelfth century or even later, Islam was not a factor which would play a major part in shaping and influencing the societies of the coast to any noteworthy extent. The majority of local people were still adhering to their traditional beliefs, as witnessed by many Arabic authors.

The spread of Islam is connected closely with the problem of the Shirāzi. The oral tradition and the Swahili written chronicles of late origin maintain that some merchants from the Persian Gulf, especially from Sirāf, the port for the famous city of Shirāz (in the Persian province of Fārs) came to East Africa during the ninth and tenth centuries. This is supported by ceramics from Manda and Unguja Ukuu. Some of the imported ware is known to have been produced in Iraq, a part of which had been conquered in 290/902-3 by the Karmatians, an extreme Shi‘ite sect whose centre of power was located in al-Ahsa region of Arabia, bordering the Persian Gulf. Although there is no direct evidence, it seems that the Karmatians participated in the trade with East Africa. Various accounts from Kilwa indicate a probable Karmatian colonization of the northern portion of the coast (the Benadir coast) in the tenth century. Archaeological evidence seems to support the traditional dating associated with the Seven Brothers story, which is a part of the ‘number seven’ legend supposedly connected with the Karmatians and designates the period between 274/887 and 312/924 as that in which the colonization of the coast occurred. The tradition claims connection between the Karmatian state of al-Ahsa and the founding of the states of Mogadishu, Brava, Marka, and possibly those of the Lamu archipelago and Zanzibar, too. It also claims that Kilwa was founded in the same period (tenth century) as the Benadir towns. However, this hypothesis cannot be entertained too seriously because Kilwa did not emerge as a primary power until the emergence of what Chittick has postulated as a dynasty of South Arabian origin at the end of the thirteenth century. The Benadir coastal towns date from at least two hundred years earlier than the towns of Kilwa, Sofala and those on the Comoro Islands.

The importance of the Shirāzi as a socio-political force is questionable because the Shirāzi immigrant traders who settled on the coast came as individuals and not as families. Naturally they were captured by a Bantu language while at the same time retaining their distinction from Africans. The language (Kiswahili), as already pointed out, developed on the Benadir coast and the system of inter-settlement communication ensured a general uniformity in all the settlements, though each developed its own

65. But the same ware could have reached the East African coast not only through Sirāf merchants but through others working out of other major commercial centres, cf. R. C. Pouwels, 1974, p. 67.
66. ibid., pp. 68–9.
dialect. The result of the interaction was a Bantu-Islamic civilization moulded by Arabo-Persian elements but preserving Bantu features.

The Shīrāzī have been credited with the introduction of a highly developed stone architecture, the use of lime and cement, many fruits, carpentry, cotton-weaving, and various sciences including the use of the Persian solar calendar. However, it is now contended that the Shīrāzī as such did not introduce all these, but rather that their development was accelerated by the prosperity brought by the trade. Undeniably some fruit trees must have been introduced by the Arabo-Persians, but the arts of stonemasonry and carpentry were known along the coast before the coming of the Shīrāzī.

Oral tradition relating to the Persian influence on the Benadir coast is supported by the fact that the mosque of Arba’ Rukun in Mogadishu contains an inscription dated 667/1268-9 in the name of a Khusraw ibn Muḥammad al-Shīrāzī;\(^69\) an earlier tomb inscription from 614/1217 bears the name of a person whose nisba al-Nisābūrī al-Khurasānī points also to a Persian origin.\(^70\) However, there is little evidence of much direct Persian activity to the south of the Somali coast. Nevertheless, there are indications that from the twelfth century on, groups of merchants – the majority of whom were descendants of intermarriage between Arabo-Persians and local populations on the Benadir coast – started to migrate south and carried the Arabo-Islamic culture to the islands of Zanzibar, Pemba, Kilwa and Mafia. These, together with the Ozi, Malindi and Mombasa town states, remained Shīrāzī, although increasingly Bantuized, until after the Portuguese conquest.\(^71\)

Architecture

Stone buildings among coastal settlements seem to have first been concentrated in the area north of the Tana Delta, an area which has been referred to as Swahilini. However, before the third/ninth century, the majority of the buildings in many of the settlements were, as already pointed out, mud and wattle houses. The roofs were of thatch, as are those found today, either of the fronds of the mwaa palm or of the makuti (bound leaves of the coconut tree). Even in subsequent periods such houses were still built, as they still are in present-day coastal towns. Short lengths of stone-built walls have been found but it is not certain whether they were part of larger structures.\(^72\)

As far as the origin of the coastal stone architecture is concerned, many historians have attributed it to Persia and Arabia. However, this diffusionist view is eschewed here in favour of more acceptable explanations. It has

\(^69\) E. Cerulli, 1957, Vol. 1, p. 9; local pronunciation of the name is Khisarwa.
\(^70\) ibid., pp. 2–3.
already been pointed out that in no one region in the Near East are there sufficiently numerous or detailed parallels to enable clear conclusions on Persian or Arabic origin to be made. All the raw materials (coralline, limestone, coral, mortar, plaster) have always been found locally in plenty and there is nothing to prevent an innovative architectural element developing locally. However, some influence from traders and other immigrants cannot be ruled out.  

Economic activities

Agriculture

In economic terms, the coastal society was an urban–rural continuum with many earning their living from agriculture. No doubt there were also pastoralists, especially in the north, on the Benadir coast. As Chinese sources of as early as the ninth century tell us, the inhabitants of the Barbar coast lived on meat and milk and on blood which they drew from cattle. The practice of drinking fresh blood drawn from cattle is practised even today by the Maasai.

The majority of Swahili, especially those living in the smaller and medium-sized settlements, but some of those in the larger ones too, were primarily agriculturalists. The custom of townsmen going into the country for three or four months every year to cultivate crops, as reported by M. Ylvisaker, was probably much more widespread throughout the Swahili world in earlier centuries.

In Arabic sources we do find fragmentary accounts about crops and cultures. The chief crops seem to have been sorghum (dhurra) as well as yams whose local name al-kilârî is attested by al-Mas'ûdî. Another edible plant cultivated by the Zandj was al-râsan, identified as Coleus. The diet of the coastal people was supplemented by bananas, coconuts, rice, tamarind and in some places even by grapes; sugar-cane is also mentioned. Whether honey was a product of apiculture or of wild-bee honey gathering remains unclear.

The Chinese traveller-writer Tuan Ch'eng Shin (d. 863) noted that the five grains were not eaten in Barbar while Wang Ta-yüan remarked that yams replaced grain in Zanzibar; Fei Hsin seems to have thought it strange that the inhabitants of Brava should have grown onions and garlic instead of gourds.

Archaeological investigations in Kilwa have shown that the only grain to

75. ibid., p. 329.
77. P. A. Wheatley, 1975, p. 93.
The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

have been grown was sorghum, as evidenced by carbonized seeds. No imple­
ments for grinding grain have been found from earlier times but in later
periods rotary querns were also used as they are now, but such would have
vanished from the archaeological record.\(^7^8\)

Fishing and seafaring

The coastal communities obviously engaged in a fair amount of maritime
activities (fishing, canoe-building, sailing). Many Arabic authors insist on
the Zanj being fisheaters and add that for this purpose they sharpen their
teeth. All along the coast the people were active in fishing but some places
are mentioned where this was the main occupation, as for example in
Malindi, where the inhabitants exported their catch. It seems that the
people on the more southern parts of the coast were to a high degree de­
pendent on sea food, not only fish but turtles and molluscs as well. On
some islands the Zanj gathered shells for making ornaments but not for
food. In Sofala they dived for pearls.

Although boatbuilding and navigation are inseparable from fishing,
Arabic authors are silent about this side of the Zanj way of life. Only
Buzurg ibn Shahriyar mentions numerous boats (zawâricht) that surrounded
Arab ships near the Sofala coast. The same author wrote that among the
ship captains on the Indian ocean were some Zanj; this indicates that the
eastern Bantu were acquainted not only with coastal navigation but also
with that of the high seas as well.\(^7^9\) The use of the boat known as dau la
mtepe\(^8^0\) in the first century of the Christian era on the Benadir coast and on
what is now the Tanzania coast is clearly referred to in the Periplus.\(^8^1\) In
addition to the mtepe there was also another type of boat known as ngalawa.
The latter is a rather narrow dugout boat which by itself would be unstable
and dangerous in open sea. However, the lack of stability is overcome by an
outrigger balancing device.\(^8^2\) Besides East Africa, this feature is also found
in Indonesia, western New Guinea and Madagascar. Both the single and
the double outrigger are found in the Comoros, otherwise only the double
outrigger occurs in East Africa in rather sporadic distribution, being most
common in Zanzibar and central coastal Tanzania.

The origin of the ngalawa is disputable. However, on linguistic and
structural details, the ngalawa seems to have been developed on the East

\(^{79}\) Buzurg ibn Shahriyar, 1883-6, p. 54; on the other hand al-Idrisi, 1970, pp. 60-1,
categorically denies the existence of Zanj ships capable of long distance sea voyages.
\(^{80}\) *Mtepe* (a sewn boat) is distributed all over the coast but it is commoner in the central
and southern parts of the East African coast.
\(^{81}\) J. T. Miller, 1969, p. 168.
\(^{82}\) A. H. J. Prins, 1959, p. 205.
African coast, probably in the Comoros in post-Portuguese times and thereafter spread to other East African areas.\textsuperscript{83}

The sewn boat \textit{mtepe} and the smaller variant \textit{dau la mtepe} are however much older. They have been plying along the coast for a long time and are now both extinct except for a few specimens in museums. Their origin is also debatable. Linguistically, it would appear as if the \textit{mtepe} is indigenous to East Africa, but structural details would suggest an Indian prototype, the \textit{mtepe} being a Perso-Arabization of this prototype.\textsuperscript{84} Graffiti on the walls of a house in the Gedi ruins depicts what is unmistakably a \textit{mtepe} and has been provisionally dated to the fifteenth or sixteenth century. Other engravings occur at Kilwa, Songo Mnara and Ungwana which date from between the thirteenth and eighteenth centuries.\textsuperscript{85} Perhaps these depictions are meant to underscore the role of shipping and therefore of trade on which the prosperity of the settlements so much depended. Both \textit{mtepe} and \textit{dau la mtepe} are represented in the engravings. Other engravings occur at Farkwa and Fort Jesus.\textsuperscript{86}

\section*{Animal husbandry}

While there are no doubts about the existence, since ancient times, of animal husbandry to the north of the Juba River, the situation obtaining to the south is unclear. On one hand, al-Mas'ūdī reports that cattle were employed by the Zandj as riding oxen (with saddles and reins) in war – the \textit{mfalîmî} having 300,000 cavalry – and Buzurg mentions sheep and other domestic animals.\textsuperscript{87} Al-Idrīsī on the other hand categorically insists on the absence of any beasts of burden or cattle among the people on the eastern coast, and other Arabic authors, too, are totally silent about animal husbandry.\textsuperscript{88} As is well known, the coastal parts of East Africa are at present infested by tsetse and thus quite unsuited for cattle-keeping; but it is not impossible that in earlier times some stretches were tsetse free, thus making animal husbandry practicable.\textsuperscript{89}

\section*{Hunting}

Although hunting must have formed a part of the basic economy, there is

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{83} ibid., pp. 205-10.
  \item \textsuperscript{84} ibid., pp. 210-13.
  \item \textsuperscript{85} ibid., p. 211; P. S. Garlake, 1964, p. 197.
  \item \textsuperscript{86} P. S. Garlake, 1966, pp. 197, 206; J. Hornell, 1942.
  \item \textsuperscript{87} Al-Mas'ūdī, 1861–77, Vol. 3, pp. 67; Buzurg ibn Shahriyar, 1882–6, p. 151.
  \item \textsuperscript{88} Al-Idrīsī, 1970, p. 60.
  \item \textsuperscript{89} H. N. Chittick, 1977, p. 188, erroneously maintains that al-Mas'ūdī's cattle-keeping (and cattle-riding) people were of Ethiopian (Cushitic) stock. The whole context, however, of all fragments dealing with cattle points unmistakably to the black Zandj in the southern part of the coast.
\end{itemize}
rather scanty direct evidence about it. Arab authors were fascinated chiefly by elephant hunting, and even gave some details about its techniques, especially those that used poison, either for poisoning the water from which these animals drank (al-Mas’ūdî) or to tip the points of weapons (al-Bīrūnî). Other hunted animals were leopards (al-numûr), lions, ‘wolves’ (apparently jackals) and monkeys. Most of the game was hunted for export purposes (ivory, skins) and although we do not find any mention of hunting for food, it seems more than likely that the meat of animals killed (elephants) would have been consumed.

Mining

Among minerals it was gold that attracted the main attention of the Arab authors, and Sofala was considered to be one of the most famous gold lands of the known world. Although al-Idrīsī wrote about the coastal towns of Djaṣṭa and Daghūṭa (not yet identified but surely somewhere on the Mozambique coast) as the places where gold was found, it is evident from all other written sources that the main gold mines were located in the interior of the Sofala country and that the coastal settlements served only as export ports. Al-Bīrūnî mentions that gold in Sofala was found in the form of grains; the same kind has been discovered in the Great Zimbabwe archaeological complex.

Gold did not serve as a universal means of exchange among the eastern coast inhabitants but they were well aware of its value as a currency and an export commodity. On the other hand iron and copper were more valued by the local people and al-Mas‘ūdî wrote that they used iron for ornaments instead of gold and silver.

The main evidence for iron-mining is offered by al-Idrīsī who pointed out that the main centres of iron production were Malindi and Mombasa in the north and Djantāma and Dandāma in the south.90 Iron became one of the major export commodities of these places, forming the main source of revenue. Although there is no reason to doubt al-Idrīsī’s veracity, his account poses some problems. No large smelting ovens have yet been found in the vicinity of Mombasa and Malindi;91 moreover all Arab authors are silent about iron-working or production of iron tools and weapons, activities which would have been natural for a region allegedly rich in iron. This does not mean, of course, that these activities did not exist on the coast but it seems that they were on a rather localized and small scale. Al-Idrīsī alluded to this when he noted that although the population of the Zandj country is numerous, they have few weapons.92 Further archaeological research is needed to elucidate this important problem.

91. It is, of course, possible that al-Idrīsī’s Malindi refers rather to the region of Manda where slag from iron smelting has been discovered archaeologically.
Commercial activities

The East African coast is one of the few regions in sub-Saharan Africa that entered early into continuous trade relations with the outside world. The emergence, from the seventh century on, of a powerful Islamic empire in the Middle East contributed vastly to the growth of trade in the Indian Ocean including the East African coast. The establishment of an increasingly expanding market in Islamic countries during the period under discussion offered new possibilities for the coastal settlements to develop an export trade. Not only was the volume of trade increased but to the traditional commodities new ones were added, thus contributing to the diversification and specialization of various coastal towns. It was trade too that favoured the differential development of towns which depended on relative success as trading centres. The tempo of migrations and trade seems to have increased in the ninth and tenth centuries and it was during this time that coastal trading centres such as Mogadishu, Marka, Brava, Mombasa, Manda and Unguja Ukuu were founded and expanded. Towns rose and fell individually according to the vagaries of trade, one generation building elegantly in stone while the next reverted to mud and wattle. But during the period under consideration perhaps the only prominent towns were Manda in the Lamu archipelago and Ōkanbalū. The others seem to have attained their prominence only after the eleventh century.

The commerce and trade of the coastal towns may be looked at from three different angles: trade with foreigners, trade within the coastal settlements and trade with the interior.

Trade with foreigners

The items of trade which attracted Arabs, Persians, Indians and Indonesians to the coastal towns were many and varied, but the most important were ivory, tortoiseshell, ambergris, incense, spices, slaves, gold and iron. Although there is no evidence of direct contact, some African products were known and in demand in China during the Tang period (618–906). The East African coast was known as a prolific source of ambergris which was introduced to China by the end of this dynasty. By the seventh century, sweet oil of storax, tortoiseshell from Barbara, ‘dragon’s blood’ (resins of Dracaena schizantha, and D. cinnabari) and aloes (plant juice) were among the exports to China. The ninth-century Chinese records also mention that the inhabitants of Barbara were in the habit of selling

The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

their womenfolk to foreign traders. Later Chao Ju-kua told how savages with lacquer-black bodies from Kumr Zangi (Zanzibar) were enticed by food and then captured. According to al-Idrīsī, the Arabs of Oman also enticed children by offering dates and then abducted them into slavery. The well-known story told by Buzurg ibn Shahriyār about the kidnapping of the king of the Zandj offers an insight into another manner of obtaining slaves.

The slave trade poses a problem of interpretation. For the period between the seventh and twelfth centuries there is practically no direct evidence in written sources about slave trading along the East African coast. The above-mentioned incidents show that slaves were procured by capturing or abducting local peoples rather than by purchasing them. Now, this method is hardly effective in the long run and can be employed only occasionally, thus producing a restricted number of slaves; its regular or prolonged use is out of question as it leads to the hostility of the coastal people and affects adversely the development of normal commercial intercourse.

On the other hand the mass employment of the so-called Zandj slaves in irrigation works in lower Iraq – those who, in the ninth century led the famous slave revolt – seems to indicate that there must have been a continuous flow of enslaved peoples from East Africa to Islamic countries.

A solution to this apparent contradiction is offered by the possibility that although the black slaves in southern Iraq were of different origins – from Ethiopia, from the Horn or from other parts of Africa, with a proportion of East Africans – they were for some reason collectively known as the ‘Zandj’. This does not mean that no slave trade at all existed on the East African coast; it surely did but its volume could not have been very great since otherwise it would have not escaped the notice of Arab authors. Although they brought very detailed accounts of all export and import commodities, slaves do not figure among these.

From the early days the East African ports were known for their exports, most of them being the time-honoured natural products: ivory, which was sent as far as China, ambergris, leopard skins and tortoiseshell. The export of gold from the southern parts began in fourth/tenth century, whereas in the sixth/twelfth century al-Idrīsī considered iron to be the main commodity exported by many coastal towns. The Benadir coast was famous for its exports of incense, perfumes and aromatic oils, such as balsam and myrrh.

As far as imports are concerned, the main items recorded by the Arab and Chinese sources are ceramics (Islamic and Chinese), cloth, beads and glass. By the beginning of the twelfth century, South Asian immigrants who had arrived in northern Madagascar and the Comoro Islands some
centuries earlier, were exporting soapstone vessels to Kilwa, Manda and further afield.¹⁰¹

At Kilwa, excavations of the predynastic period (probably at the end of the sixth/twelfth century) have shown that among the imported objects (Islamic pottery and glass beads) the proportion of glass to foreign pottery was greater than in the subsequent period. In addition to glass beads, cornelian beads from Cambay in India were found. As for imported pottery to East Africa, the earliest is the Islamic sgraffito, a ware with a mottled glaze applied over a slight slip. It is a characteristic Islamic ware known from third/ninth-century Samarra (in Iraq) to the early tenth/sixteenth century. In East Africa, sgraffito is probably most characteristic for the seventh/thirteenth century.¹⁰² However, sgraffito was also the least common type found. The largest imports, especially in the case of Gedi, were blue and green glazed earthenware, and yellow and black, celadon and blue, and white porcelain from China.¹⁰³ In the fifth/eleventh century, Duyvendak records that Chinese exports consisted largely of gold, silver, copper, cash, silk and porcelain. Chinese coins have been found all over the coast and they continued to reach East Africa until the seventh/thirteenth century.¹⁰⁴

Trade within the coastal settlements

The larger towns tended to be oriented more towards international maritime trade than the smaller ones, which depended largely on agriculture and fishery. But at the same time there must have been frequent interaction between one settlement and another regardless of their size. Although we have no record of much of the inter-coastal trade during the period under review, it is known from published reports that Kilwa was trading with other important cities such as Manda.¹⁰⁵

At Manda, recent excavations have shown that at levels datable to the ninth to tenth centuries, there is a lack of glass beads just as there is at Kilwa. Neither Manda nor Kilwa seem to have had any significant trade with the interior. Consequently, glass beads of an early date are extremely rare in the interior.¹⁰⁶

Trade with the interior

The question of early contacts between the coastal settlements and the

¹⁰¹ G. Shepherd, 1982, p. 15.
¹⁰³ J. Kirkman, 1954, p. 94; 1966, pp. 18–19.
The East African coast and the Comoro Islands

interior still remains a crucial problem. It is inconceivable that there was no intercourse at all, but no evidence – in this case only archaeology is called for to find it – of any importance has been as yet produced. The only region where there was a significant trade with the interior seems to have been the Sofala coast; the gold that was exported from this country came mainly from what is now Zimbabwe. But it would be premature to conclude that the coastal people ventured, in this early period, far into the interior.

There was probably no long-distance trade in the usual sense of the word; what we can imagine at most is that goods which came from a long distance were bartered from one people to another, not carried by caravans as in the nineteenth century. The coastal towns must have relied for agricultural products on their immediate hinterland neighbours. In exchange for these, as well as for ivory and skins, the peasants received dried fish or shell beads. It is also likely that the hinterland peoples came with their products to the towns or to periodic markets just behind the coast. These contacts left no durable traces; the local pottery of the coast is unrelated to that of the interior.

Conclusion

During the period under discussion the East African coast witnessed the beginnings of various historical processes that came to full fruition only after the twelfth century. But it was probably during this period that the foundation of an African culture was laid, upon which was later built the rich Swahili culture. The political and social development of the coastal Bantu-speaking peoples started to be influenced by the rise of international trade on the Indian Ocean. At first the impact was felt mostly in the economic field as some of the coastal settlements oriented themselves more to foreign trade; gradually politics, culture and religion were permeated by the norms brought by immigrants from Islamic countries. The first region to come under these external influences was that to the north of the Juba River; from there, in later centuries, new waves of migrants carried the elements of the mixed culture to the south. At the same time all immigrants – never very numerous – underwent a process of Bantuization. The most outstanding result of this process of interchange and intermarriage has been the Swahili language and culture, in which features of African and Oriental origin were welded together.
The seventh to the eleventh centuries of the Christian era appear on the whole to have been a period of consolidation of previous trends in the East African interior. The notable ethnic and economic transformations of the earliest Iron Age lay several centuries in the past, at the turn of the eras and during the two or three centuries thereafter when Bantu communities spread into widely scattered areas and iron technology began widely to be practised. The next era of equivalent transformation would not be for centuries still to come. that is not at all to say that the period of the seventh to eleventh centuries was without interest. New ethnic expansions took place, changing the linguistic map and creating new challenges to be dealt with by established communities. and sometimes the accumulation of small changes grew into something new and significantly different from just the sum of its parts.

Population movements

The two most widely encountered groupings of peoples at the beginning of the seventh century were the southern Cushites and the Bantu. Nilotic and Khoisan-speaking peoples were significant, though less numerous actors in the events of the mid-first millennium.

The Cushites

The first Southern Cushites had settled in northern Kenya during the third millennium before the Christian era, and some of their linguistic descendants had spread still farther south, as far as central northern Tanzania by the late second millennium. Peoples speaking the early Southern Cushitic languages can be identified as the makers of the various archaeological cultures which belong to the Savanna Pastoral Neolithic tradition of East Africa. As the archaeological name suggests, from the beginning of

their settlement the Southern Cushites kept cattle and small livestock as well, apparently, as donkeys. What is not yet adequately recognized in the archaeology but clearly indicated in the linguistic record is that many of the Southern Cushites were grain cultivators,² some of them from fairly early times using both irrigation and animal manure to increase their yields.

The Southern Cushites of the early first millennium of the Christian era were a varied lot. Along the Tana River and in parts of the near interior of the Kenya coast lived the Dahaloans. Those along the Tana were apparently cultivators like the Bantu-speaking Pakomo and Elwana who were later to absorb and replace them in the present millennium.³ At least one hunter-gatherer community in the modern Witu area had taken up the Dahalo language as its own, ceasing to speak its formerly Khoisan language but bringing a number of Khoisan words containing click sounds into its new language.⁴

In the deeper interior the Rift Southern Cushites predominated. One such society, remembered in oral tradition by the name Mbisha, lived in the Taita Hills.⁵ Around Mount Kilimanjaro and southward onto the Maasai steppe can be placed the Old Asa-speaking communities, while in parts of central Tanzania lived the closely related Old Kw’adza and Iringa Southern Cushites (see Fig. 22.1). The latter three societies spoke what were probably still at that time little more than dialects of a single diverse language. Both the Old Asa and Old Kw’adza societies apparently co-existed, like the later food-producers of those regions, with hunter-gatherer bands, some of whom took up the languages of the dominant farmers and herders.⁶ West of the Rift Valley in Tanzania lay the lands of the aptly named West Rift peoples, at one time probably extending through all the areas south of the Mau forest of Kenya and as far west as the south-western Lake Victoria region, but by +600 probably centred on the Serengeti and Ngorongoro regions. Many of the Rift Southern Cushites of the seventh century may have been pre-eminently pastoral in economy. Still, it seems probable that others, especially around Kilimanjaro, the Taita Hills, and the edges of the Rift Valley, lent primary attention to their crops.

The other significant Southern Cushitic communities of the era spoke Mbuguan languages. Two sets of communities can be discerned in the linguistic record. One, the Kirinyaga Cushites, apparently preceded the Bantu settlers of Mount Kenya; they are probably the people remembered as the Gumba in the modern-day traditions of the region, and they prob-

². C. Ehret, 1980a.
³. The evidence includes cultivation terms apparently borrowed from Dahalo into Pokomo.
⁶. C. Ehret, 1974a, p. 15.
FIG. 22.1 Major eastern African societies from about the seventh to the ninth century

**IRINGA**

- Probable directions of ethnic expansions during or following the period of the seventh to ninth centuries
- Khoisan hunter-gatherers
- Plateau Southern Cushites
- Nyanza Southern Cushites
- Proto-West Rift Southern Cushites

**Note:** Despite the close similarity in self-names, the Ma'a are a Southern Cushitic people quite distinct from the Maa, who spoke an Eastern Nilotic language.
ably included hunter-gatherers as well as farmers among their numbers. The second Mbuguan group, the Old Ma’a, were apparently centred by this time in north-eastern Tanzania, probably to the east of the Old Asa and south of the Pangani River, in parts of the upper Wami watershed where the ecological conditions allowed extensive cattle-raising. The oral traditions of the present-day Ma’a remember their movement into this region from the direction of Kenya, at a time preceding the seventeenth century. Apparently the Ma’a have attached an authentic, but very ancient tradition at the beginning of the more circumstantial accounts of their recent history, for the linguistic evidence concurs with tradition but places the movement from the north much earlier than the seventeenth century.

The Khoisan

The Southern Cushitic expansions of the last three millennia before the Christian era had wholly incorporated many Khoisan communities. Other such societies had continued to coexist as hunter-gatherers living alongside food-producing Cushites, but had taken up the language of those dominant neighbours. As we have already seen, most of the Southern Cushite speech communities seem to have included this kind of associated but economically distinct people during the later first millennium. But around the fringes of the Southern Cushitic areas of central Tanzania, at least two Khoisan groups have been able to maintain their languages down to the present. The Hadza survived as a unit by Lake Eyasi, in lands marginal to farming and inimical by reason of tsetse fly to cattle. But even they probably had been significantly influenced in material culture by nearby West Rift people by the seventh century of the Christian era, obtaining pottery of a Savanna Pastoral Neolithic style, for instance, from Southern Cushites. The other community, the Sandawe, survived by adopting agriculture and so gaining the economic basis for successfully competing with other food-producers. The sources of their knowledge were apparently Old Kw’adza-speakers living in or near Kondoa and the modern Sandawe areas. Unfortunately the era of the Sandawe shift to agricultural pursuits cannot yet be decided. It is unlikely to be as late as the eighteenth century as some observers have thought. The beginning of the

7. ibid., pp. 27–8; additional evidence allows attribution now of the language to the Mbuguan branch of Southern Cushitic.
11. This relation is abundantly evident in Sandawe food-producing vocabulary, which has many old Kw’adza loanwords; separate publication of this evidence has not yet been made, however. See also Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 19.
Sandawe shift to food production could have begun as early as the period of the seventh to eleventh centuries since the Old Kw’adza were probably already in place by then. But it could also date to the centuries between 1100 and 1700.

The Central Sudanic speakers

Far to the west, in the Great Lakes region, Central Sudanic-speaking communities seem to have held the same kind of historical position as the Southern Cushites had in central and eastern East Africa. Herders of cattle and small livestock, cultivators of sorghum and finger millet, and avid fishers, the Central Sudanians first rose to prominence in the areas near the Nile River in far southern Sudan and far northern Uganda, probably in about the third millennium before the Christian era. Sometime later, a new front of Central Sudanic settlement opened up to the south in the Lake Victoria basin. The evidence of this expansion, little investigated so far, takes two forms. Pollen studies, which reveal changes in vegetation attributable to agricultural activities in the basin, place the inception of the agricultural era at no later than about three thousand years ago in areas to the west and just north of Lake Victoria.13 In archaeology the probable reflection of this cultural and economic expansion of Central Sudanians is Kansyore pottery.

Like their contemporaries, the southern Cushites to the east of the Great Lakes region, the Central Sudanic farmers and herders of the last three millennia before the Christian era entered into close relations with neighbouring food-collecting communities. A notable reflection of such relations can be seen in the wide adoption of Kansyore pottery by hunter-gatherers, for instance along the west and to the south of Lake Victoria.14 As part-time fisherfolk the Central Sudanians would have competed directly for one of the principal food resources of their predecessors in the basin and so may have assimilated the hunter-gatherers to their ways and absorbed them into their societies more rapidly and thoroughly than did the Southern Cushites.

The Nilotes

East of Lake Victoria the initial challenge to the predominant position of the first farmers came from the Southern Nilotes, who began to move southward out of the Uganda–Sudan border regions sometime around the middle of the first millennium before the Christian era and are to be identi-

13. E.g. R. L. Kendall, 1969; M. E. S. Morrison, 1968; M. E. S. Morrison and A. C. Hamilton, 1974. For historical interpretation of these data, see D. Schoenbrun, 1984, note 47.


620
fied as the makers of the Elmenteita archaeological tradition. The Southern Nilotes took up residence in the higher areas along and to the west of the central Rift Valley in Kenya, incorporating a considerable body of Southern Cushites into their society and apparently entering into close economic relations with hunter-gatherer communities of the forested fringes of the Rift Valley and with the more purely pastoral Southern Cushitic people who continued to occupy the valley floor. From the hunters they would have obtained products such as honey, beeswax and skins, while with herders of the Rift Valley they would probably have exchanged grain for livestock. By the seventh century of the Christian era, two distinct descendant societies of the early Southern Nilotes had emerged, the pre-Kalenjin north of the Mau, and the Tato, from whom the modern Dadoga derive, to the south of that range. The Tato were centred at first, it would seem, in the Loita highlands and spread at some later period, but before 1100, south-eastward from there into the Old Asa country of the Maasai steppe.

Bantu expansion

But the more serious challenge to the earlier ways of agricultural life was posed by the Early Iron Age Bantu expansion into East Africa. It was a challenge that was not always immediately evident, for the Bantu immigrants were initially rather selective in their areas of settlement.

The first appearance of the new agricultural communities on the East African scene was at the far west of the Great Lakes region. Speaking a number of different dialects of a language known to modern scholars as proto-Eastern Bantu, they appear to have established themselves in parts of the western, central and southern Lakes region earlier than the middle of the last millennium before the Christian era. By this point in time two major kinds of economic change were underway in the north-western part of East Africa. One was the spread of iron-working with its attendant effects on the technology of tool-making: the age of stone tools was thus beginning to draw to an end rather earlier there than elsewhere in eastern Africa. The second, of probably greater long-range importance, was the emergence of a more complex agriculture, principally among the communities speaking the proto-Eastern Bantu language. Coming with a livelihood based on yam cultivation, they had begun to adopt in addition the crops of the farming societies who had preceded them in the eastern side of the continent, gaining thereby a new potential flexibility in adapting to the great variety of East African environments. By the close of the era a few
Eastern Bantu communities, under the influence of their Central Sudanian neighbours and, to the south of Lake Victoria, of Southern Cushites as well, had also begun to take an increasing interest in cattle-raising. Moreover, the population of people speaking Eastern Bantu dialects apparently grew considerably during the last several centuries before the Christian era, by absorbing many of the erstwhile Sudanians and probably by natural increase as well. At the turn of the era the Eastern Bantu of the Lakes region and adjoining parts of eastern Zaire had grown into a sufficiently large population to support a vast new scattering out of Bantu emigrants to new and distant regions of settlement all across eastern and southeastern Africa.

In East Africa some of the new settlers went far to the east, to the coastal areas of southern Kenya and to parts of the mountainous areas of northeastern Tanzania, in particular to the Pare and Ngulu ranges. These were the makers of Kwale pottery. A slightly later offshoot of this settlement had arrived at Mount Kenya by the fifth century of the Christian era. That latter group of settlers probably brought the dialect of Eastern Bantu which was ancestral to the Thagicu languages, spoken across the eastern highlands of Kenya today. Archaeological continuity between Kwale ware, Gatung’ang’a pottery of the twelfth century on Mount Kenya, and more recent wares, though not yet fully demonstrable, seems a plausible hypothesis and fits the linguistic indications as well. The people of the Pare Mountains settlement can be suggested to have spoken the closely related dialect from which the later Chaga, Dawida and Saghala languages derive. Although Kwale ware is known from sites on nearby Kilimanjaro, it was most probably traded to there from the early Bantu inhabitants in Pare, from which pottery has long been imported because of the paucity of suitable clay on Kilimanjaro.

A second early movement of early Eastern Bantu into coastal East Africa was that of the north-east-coastal people, probably by or before the middle of the first millennium of the Christian era. The inception of this settlement has yet to be archaeologically identified. By the seventh century an array of north-east-coastal communities stretched probably from north of the mouth of the Tana River to the hinterland of modern Dar es Salaam in Tanzania and were to coalesce into four societies: the Sabaki in Kenya, the Scuta to their south, the Ruvu in the regions inland from the central Tanzania coast, and the pre-Asu perhaps already in the South Pare Mountains. In a number of areas, especially north of the Pangani River, this

---

23. See the arguments in Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 19. Sabaki and Ruvu are geographical names given by scholars to peoples whose self-names have been lost to history; other such names used in this chapter include Takama, Njombe, Kirinyaga, Iringa, and the like.
expansion can be suggested to have incorporated the previously established Kwale people of the coastal hinterland.\footnote{The evidence for this conclusion consists of early loanwords from a Thagicu – or Taita-Chaga-related language, which are found in Sabaki languages and are not clearly attributable to contacts of the last few centuries. A few such loans may also occur rarely in some southern Somali languages.}

Several Early Iron Age Bantu settlements ended up in far southern East Africa. The Kilombero people had settled in or around the valley of that name, while people ancestral in language to others of the modern peoples of southern Tanzania settled farther south, in the Songea highlands and south of the Ruvuma. Still other areas of settlement arose at the northern end of Lake Malawi among those of the peoples from whose dialects the Nyakyusa, Corridor (Fipa, Nyamwanga, Nyiha, Mambwe), and Mjombe (Hehe, Bena, Kinga) languages variously stem. These last three areas of settlement are known so far only through the testimony of linguistics.\footnote{D. Nurse, 1982. See also Unesco, \textit{General History of Africa}, Vol. IV, ch. 19.}

The final notable early Eastern Bantu settlements which need mention were along the western shore of Lake Victoria, especially north of the Wami Gulf, and in western parts of north-central Tanzania. The Wami Gulf settlers, makers of a variety of Urewe pottery, were the probable base out of which the Luyia-Gisu societies of later times were to emerge. The second-mentioned settlement, by makers of Lelesu pottery, may have been ephemeral. Alternatively, Lelesu ware may have been made by the community from which derive the Irangi, who live today in the Kondoa area of central Tanzania.

Other Eastern Bantu societies took shape, of course, among those communities that continued to reside in the Great Lakes region. The proto-Lacustrine people, both from linguistic argument and from the combined indications of oral tradition and archaeology as to population continuities,\footnote{P. R. Schmidt, 1978.} are best placed as inhabitants of the Bukoba area at the turn of the eras. The proto-Takama people may have lived to the south of the proto-Lacustrine society, while still other communities, incorporated into expanding Lacustrine societies at various later times, had found a place for themselves in Rwanda and Burundi and other areas on the western side of the region.

Hence, by the seventh century Eastern Bantu farming communities could be found in a scattered and very uneven distribution – widely through the central and southern Great Lakes region; probably continuously through the immediate hinterland of the central and northern Tanzanian and the Kenyan coasts; in the Pare mountains; in a patch on the slopes of Mount Kenya; along the western side of Lake Victoria; in several adjoining clumps in central southern Tanzania; and possibly in one area in north-central Tanzania. The common factor in this distribution was the...
usual correlation of Bantu settlement with areas of more than 900–1000 mm of rain a year, occasionally somewhat lower in highland areas where lower evaporation rates made up the difference. Eastern Bantu settlement in the Early Iron Age seems, in other words, to have gone to areas most like those from which it came: wooded or forested lands with sufficient rainfall for the yam-based planting agriculture that had propelled the earliest Bantu movements out of West Africa. To be sure, all the East African Bantu of this era had African grain crops, but the pattern of settlement suggests that yam cultivation remained very important.

What made the wetter areas doubly attractive is that they must frequently have been areas little or not at all utilized by the established Southern Cushitic and Nilotic food-producers, places where the dangers of direct competition for land could be avoided. Along the East African coast many areas would have been tsetse-infested and thus unattractive to the cattle-herding Cushites and Nilotes. In southern Tanzania, Bantu settlement went into areas often similarly unsuited to livestock-raising and, in any case, not yet reached by Southern Cushitic expansion, while in the Pare Mountains and on Mount Kenya we can imagine that Bantu immigrants moved into forested zones above the plains and forest fringes already exploited by neighbouring Cushites. In many of these areas hunter-gatherer bands must have operated but, as food-collectors, were at a distinct disadvantage in the competition for resources with incoming food-producers. Except in the colder highland forests, hunter-gatherers were probably assimilated into the intrusive Bantu communities before very many centuries had passed.

The one notable exception to the pattern of Bantu settlement was the movement of the Lelesu-ware makers into quite dry parts of central Tanzania. If this community survived as a separate society into later eras, it would have to have made rapid and major subsistence adaptations not required of other Bantu settlements, shifting wholly to grain cultivation in its farming and perhaps greatly expanding the proportion of food obtained through hunting. The evidence for connecting the Lelesu people to any later Bantu-speaking society is as yet lacking, so this intriguing possible history cannot presently be followed up.

Several areas of the interior of East Africa remained unsettled by food-producing communities in the seventh century. The most notable such region covered a large part of western Tanzania. A second large area lay in the heart of south-western Tanzania. Presumably Khoisan hunter-gatherer bands continued to pursue an independent food-collecting existence in these areas and continued to do so often into much later eras. But the necessary archaeological study to demonstrate this proposition remains to be done.

27. C. Ehret, 1982a.
A few Eastern Cushitic societies were also prominent, principally located in what is today northern Kenya. On the north side of Mount Kenya lived people speaking an early form of Yaaku. The Yaakuian Eastern Cushites had spread into the region as early, possibly, as the first or second millennium before the Christian era. Apparently mainly pastoralists, though with knowledge of grain cultivation, they had incorporated the Mbuguan Southern Cushites who preceded them in north-central Kenya, and their language was also taken up by at least one previously Khoisan-speaking hunter-gatherer community of the north slopes of Mount Kenya.

In the Lake Turkana basin other Eastern Cushites resided, the offspring of societies, related to the modern Danenech and Arbore of the north end of the lake, which had spread widely across the basin in the last millennium before the Christian era. Present-day scholars have given the name Baz to these otherwise unnamed groups, makers probably of the archaeoastronomic monuments of the Lake Turkana region.

Early Somali and Rendille

Further east, the vast lowland running from the Tana River to the Shebelle basin in Somalia was already the home for several centuries of the early Somali and Rendille peoples. There are indications that their expansion into these regions, beginning probably around the turn of the era, proceeded at the expense not only of fairly numerous hunter-gatherers of uncertain language affiliations, but of Dahaloan herding communities. But by the seventh century of the Christian era the regions of the Juba and Shebelle rivers had become largely if not entirely Somali-speaking.

The north-eastern regions of the East African interior stood off economically from the rest. Containing the driest areas of East Africa, they had become by the seventh century the centre of emergence of a new form of pastoralism in which camels, better adapted to such climes, often replaced cattle as the chief subsistence animals. What went along with the most specialized versions of camel-herding was a new social development, of a nomadic pattern of life, unknown then or later in any more southerly part of East Africa. The extent to which this shift in livelihood and residence patterns had proceeded by the seventh century is unclear. The linguistic

29. C. Ehret, 1974a, p. 33; but linguistic affiliations of the particular Southern Cushites are not identified there.
30. ibid., pp. 33, 88.
32. S. H. Ambrose, 1982. These people are perhaps early Nilotes.
34. Preliminary indications of research project into Somali history presently being undertaken by M. N. Cali and C. Ehret.
evidence suggests that it was rather far advanced among the pre-Rendille, who lived in the driest areas, and among some of the Somali-speakers.\textsuperscript{36} On the other hand, many of the Somali communities lived in somewhat better-watered areas where cattle could have held their own with camels, and the Somali speech area even in those centuries included the sedentary agricultural societies along the Juba and Shebelle for whom cattle would have been much more useful animals.\textsuperscript{37} We can expect that the Baz people of the Turkana basin also kept camels, though perhaps not so prominently as peoples living eastward from the lake.

The supposed Indonesian element

One last ethnic element, not directly present in the interior, nevertheless had a major economic impact in the longer run, and that was the Indonesian element. Arriving at the coast via the Indian Ocean sea lanes sometime around the third to the sixth centuries of the Christian era, the pre-Malgache found a more permanent place for themselves elsewhere, through their subsequent settlement of Madagascar. But they may have brought with them part of the South-east Asian crop complex, eminently suited to several of the local climates of East Africa. The most important of the new crops was the banana, which in time proved especially adaptable to warmer highland climes. Other crops, all of which like the banana needed substantial rainfall (or else irrigation), included Asian yams, taro and sugar-cane. Rice was presumably introduced also by the pre-Malgache but, unlike the other crops, did not apparently spread much beyond the coastal belt until the nineteenth century.\textsuperscript{38}

Ethnic processes

The persistence in the seventh to eleventh centuries of trends already established in the first six centuries of the Christian era can be depicted from a variety of standpoints.

From the geographical point of view, the various Bantu-speaking societies remained mostly within the relatively restricted ecological bounds of their Early Iron Age settlement areas, although they must have continued to expand their numbers within those zones and to extend their effective use of the potentialities of those spheres, probably clearing more forest, for instance, in the highland zones and spreading to the limits of the suitable environments outside the highlands. The linguistic evidence also indicates growth by a continuing process of assimilation of non-Bantu-speaking groups in a number of areas. In north-eastern Tanzania, for example, a

\textsuperscript{36} B. Heine, 1981.
\textsuperscript{37} M. N. Cali, 1980.
\textsuperscript{38} C. Ehret, forthcoming.
considerable component of Old Ma’a-speakers was apparently incorporated into proto-Seuta society as part of the expansion of Seuta territories in the Ngulu Mountains and Uzigula.\(^{39}\)

Differences and distinctions among Bantu societies continued to grow, too. All the Bantu of East Africa at the beginning of the Christian era spoke dialects of a single Eastern Bantu language. In the seventh century the mutual intelligibility of the various Bantu dialects must have widely been coming to an end, and by the eleventh century the process of differentiation had proceeded to such an extent that a goodly number of separate languages could be distinguished — the North-east-Coastal language, itself consisting of four distinct dialects or dialect groups: Seuta, Sabaki, Ruva and Asu; Lacustrine of the central Great Lakes region, with at least three dialects so distinct already as to be close to separate languages; the Takama language, again with several dialects spoken by communities living somewhere to the south of Lake Victoria; the proto-Gusii-Kuria language along the south-eastern side of the lake; proto-Luyia-Gisu of the north-eastern shores; Thagicu, probably the language of the makers of Gatung’ang’a ware of Mount Kenya; proto-Taita-Chaga, spoken by the fashioners of Maore ware in North Pare, Kilimanjaro and the Taita Hills, with three dialects, two of them spoken in the Taita area; and the several languages of far southern Tanzania.\(^{40}\) The Sabaki and Ruvu divisions of North-east-Coastal Bantu were themselves already diverging into groups of dialects before the eleventh century. The original Sabaki society had broken up into proto-Swahili, proto-Pokomo, proto-Mijikenda, and Elwana societies, while the spread of some Ruvu-speakers inland toward present-day Ukagulu had led to the emergence of separate East and West Ruvu peoples.

The split-up of the Taita-Chaga into three societies can also be laid to population movement in these centuries. The proto-Taita-Chaga people are believed to have been among the early makers of Maore pottery, which appears in the North Pare Mountains in the latter part of the first millennium of the Christian era.\(^{41}\) The first split of the Taita-Chaga group involved a movement of a small set of people into the Taita Hills at some point late in the millennium; their dialect of Taita-Chaga developed into the present Saghala language. A subsequent period of movement from North Pare to Taita brought a second Taita-Chaga dialect, the ancestor of modern Dawida, into the region. Both sets of Bantu immigrants entered into a long period of cultural interchange with the Mbisha, the Rift Cushitic people already resident in and around the hills.\(^{42}\) The remaining Taita-Chaga inhabitants of North Pare developed directly into the proto-Chaga of the beginning of the present millennium, the descendants of whom

42. ibid.
would become the focal point of social and economic reorganization of the Kilimanjaro region in later centuries.\textsuperscript{43}

Significant movements of Bantu-speaking people appear to have taken place in the Great Lakes region also in the second half of the first millennium of the Christian era and brought about a considerable expansion of the territories inhabited by Lacustrine societies. The original Lacustrine society probably took shape among the Early Iron Age Bantu settlers in the then heavily forested areas along the western and south-western shore of Lake Victoria. They were presumably the makers of the kind of Urewe pottery known from Bukoba and prominently associated there with impressive early iron-working sites. Their ethnic neighbourhood at the turn of the era had included Southern Cushites, probably the Rift peoples who had spread as far as the southern side of Lake Victoria, and Central Sudanians, from whose language the Lacustrine word for ‘cow’, among others, came. Some outward movement of Lacustrine people had already taken place by the first centuries of the Christian era, implanting the Lacustrine dialects from which the Rwanda-Ha and Konjo languages would in time evolve in areas to the west, near the great Western Rift Valley that marks the divide between the Congo and Victoria basins. A second period of outward movement, which linguistic evidence places a bit before the middle of the first millennium, spread people of Lacustrine background to the north of Lake Victoria. The causes of these outward movements may be connected to over-use of the environment, through growth of population and so of agricultural demands on the soils and perhaps most importantly through over-clearing of forest to make charcoal for iron-smelting, an early specialization of the region amply attested in the archaeology.\textsuperscript{44} It is with this second period of expansion that the divergence of the remaining Great Lakes society into separate Rutara and Ganda-Soga sets of communities began, apparently by movement away of considerable numbers of people who spread north around the north-western and northern side of the lake, incorporating pre-existing Central Sudanic communities and in the process developing into the distant forebears of the present-day Ganda and Soga populations. The Rutara society evolved among those who stayed on, probably in reduced numbers, in the areas in and about the Bukoba region.\textsuperscript{45}

A final period of outward movement from the areas along the west of Lake Victoria began probably toward the very end of the period covered in this volume. It involved the expansion of Rutara language and culture north-westward into the regions that would one day become Nkore, Mpororo, and Bunyoro. That movement of ideas and practices is likely to have marked the inception of the era of the ‘Bachwezi’, a period only dimly and fabulously remembered in the later oral traditions, but one in which

\textsuperscript{44} D. Schoenbrun, 1984; M. C. van Grunderbeck \textit{et al.}, 1983a, 1983b.
\textsuperscript{45} ibid.
The East African interior

the key political ideas and economic structures of the later kingdoms first began to be put into effect.

The grasslands and high plains of the central interior of East Africa continued throughout the period to be predominantly inhabited by speakers of Nilotic and Cushitic languages, but apparently with the territories of Southern Nilotes increasing and those of Southern Cushites greatly declining. The Dadoga took shape probably during those centuries, as a society of especially but not entirely, pastoral economy in the areas extending from the west side of the Rift Valley of far southern Kenya to the northern and central Maasai plains of Tanzania.\(^{46}\) They expanded, it appears, at the expense of peoples closely related in language to the Old Asa and Old Kw’adza.\(^{47}\) In central Maasailand they coexisted with specialized hunter-gatherer communities who were to maintain the East Rift language called Asa (not to be confused with the Bantu language Asu) down to recent decades.\(^{48}\) Other Tato Southern Nilotes inhabited the fine grazing lands immediately south of the Mau forest. One Bantu society, ancestral to the Sonjo, appears to have found a niche for itself in the midst of the Tato speech area, since the modern Sonjo language contains loanwords attributable to early Dagoga contacts. Presumably they persisted as a separate factor in the history of the region by pursuing irrigation agriculture along the Rift escarpment like their more recent descendants.\(^{49}\)

The proto-Kalenjin society came into being among the Southern Nilotes who lived north of the Mau. The evolution of the society in the centuries before 1000 involved a long-term incorporation of Southern Cushitic peoples.\(^{50}\) A notable Bantu element was also incorporated, principally, it would appear, through the practice of Kalenjin men marrying wives from a society speaking an early version of the Luyia-Gisu language.\(^{51}\) From the end of the first millennium the Kalenjin began to expand over considerable new territory, from Mount Elgon in the north-west as far as the southern Nyandarua range and the Rift Valley areas of central and southern Kenya. One notable development of this era of expansion was the adoption of Kalenjin speech by the remaining hunter-gatherer bands of the forested areas adjoining the Rift and also within the Mau forests. Other Kalenjin expansions carried westward into the modern-day Luyia-speaking land south of Mount Elgon where both Bantu and Southern Cushitic communities had apparently previously been established.\(^{52}\)

Another region of significant ethnic realignment in the period before


\(^{47}\) A large set of East Rift loanwords occurs in Dadog. East Rift is the sub-group of Southern Cushitic to which Asa and Kw’adza belong.


\(^{49}\) ibid., p. 48.

\(^{50}\) ibid., p. 13.

\(^{51}\) C. Ehret, 1971, pp. 50-1.
1100 can be discerned, and that was northern Uganda. To the west of the region the Madi, a Central Sudanic people, expanded across the areas on the east and north-east of Lake Edward, becoming a not insignificant element among the peoples of western Uganda who were absorbed into the expanding Northern Rutara society during the first half of the second millennium.53 Other Madi were to remain the major people of central northern Uganda down to the era of Luo expansion at mid-millennium.54

On the eastern side of northern Uganda the major society in the seventh century was that of the Western Kuliak, who occupied the lands from mounts Moroto and Napak in the south to the modern Sudan border on the north. By 1000 or thereabouts Western Kuliak unity had broken down in the face of the intrusion of the Ateker, an Eastern Sudanic-speaking people, into the heart of the region. The frequency of Western Kuliak loanwords in Ateker vocabulary indicates that this expansion was accomplished by a very extensive incorporation of erstwhile Kuliak people into the early Ateker society.55 How far this process had proceeded by the eleventh and twelfth centuries is unclear. The remaining Kuliak were probably at that time, however, still a numerically significant element of the population and not yet entirely restricted to mountainous redoubts as they are today.

The Ateker settlers whose arrival in eastern Uganda set off the process of ethnic shift there apparently came out of the block of Eastern Nilotic peoples living in those centuries in the far southern Sudan, just northward of the present-day Uganda boundary. In the early first millennium of the Christian era this population was composed of the cultural and linguistic forebears of the Bari and Lotuko clusters of peoples, who still reside in some of those areas today, and of the proto-Maa-Ongamo as well as the Ateker. At the same period the ancestors of the Didinga-Murle peoples lived apparently to the immediate north-east of the Eastern Nilotes, also on the plains of the far southern Sudan. They had an early influence on the Ateker before the Ateker expansion southward into eastern Uganda,56 but did not directly intrude into events in northern Uganda till later eras, after 1100. Another set of peoples of importance in much later eras of East African history, the Luo, resided just north of the Eastern Nilotes in the seventh to eleventh centuries, but to the west apparently of the pre-Didinga-Murle, in parts of the Sudd regions near and to the east of the Nile River in the southern Sudan.

The most notable departure from these trends of gradual ethnic shift and progressive expansion of communities was the appearance of a wholly new ethnic element on the central East African scene, the Maa-Ongamo. (The Maa, who include the modern Maasai, are not to be confused with

53. This is suggested by the presence of Madi loanwords in the northern Rutara dialects.
55. C. Ehret, 1982b, p. 25.
The East African interior

the *Ma'ɑ*, a Southern Cushitic people discussed above!). From an origin point near the Lotuko area of far southern Sudan, the proto-Maa-Ongamo society spread south toward the Baringo and Laikipia regions, north and north-west of Mount Kenya, by about the eighth century of the Christian era. Their initial southward expansion appears to have incorporated many of the Baz, the Lowland Eastern Cushites who previously inhabited the Turkana basin.\(^{57}\) South of Baringo and in Laikipia the formerly dominant communities were probably Southern Nilotic and Southern Cushitic in language.\(^{58}\) A significant Southern Nilotic impact is apparent on proto-Maa-Ongamo culture, notably in the Maa-Ongamo adoption of circumcision and the long, oval Southern Nilotic style of shield.\(^{59}\) Once in the Mount Kenya region, the proto-Maa-Ongamo then split in relatively short order into two societies. The Maa proper came to dominate the Baringo basin and Laikipia and continued to be strongly influenced by their Kalenjin neighbours on the south and west.\(^{60}\) The Old Ongamo spread south, through the Rift and perhaps the gap between Mount Kenya and the Nyandarua range, to concentrate in the plains of the Kilimanjaro and Pare Mountain region,\(^{61}\) where they influenced the livestock-raising side of life among the Taita-Chaga peoples who lived there in the late first millennium. In the early part of the present millennium the Ongamo began to be absorbed in significant numbers into the proto-Chaga society.

**Economic activities**

In the economy, too, the patterns of activity established in the early centuries of the first millennium of the Christian era still greatly constrained the directions of change in the period of the seventh to eleventh centuries.

One notable effect was the strong correlation which continued to obtain between ethnicity and the type of food production practised. Southern Nilotes had immigrated into western Kenya a thousand years before as mostly pastoral people with some cultivation of grains. From the kinds of locations the Tato and Kalenjin peoples favoured and from the kinds of word-borrowing between them and their neighbours,\(^{62}\) it appears that in general their subsistence strategies had not yet greatly changed even as late as 1000. The spread of the Maa-Ongamo, who were Eastern Nilotes, into

\(^{57}\) C. Ehret, 1974a, pp. 40–1; B. Heine, F. Rottland and R. Vossen, 1979.

\(^{58}\) C. Ehret, 1971, pp. 52–4, places this settlement further south than now seems probable. The Southern Cushitic loanword set in Maa has not yet been given the careful study it deserves, and its extinct source language is therefore of uncertain placement in the Southern Cushitic group.

\(^{59}\) C. Ehret, 1971, p. 53.


central parts of East Africa only reinforced the tendency for Nilotic speech to be associated with cattle-raising and the cultivation of grains as staples. With such an economy the Nilotes understandably came into direct conflict for land with the more pastoral of the Southern Cushites, and successful Southern Nilotic expansion often meant the incorporation of formerly dominant Cushite communities. For the same reason, the Maa-Ongamo spread in its turn incorporated Southern Nilotes.

Bantu-speaking societies remained largely the practitioners of a different type of farming, planting agriculture, so called because its major crops are not reproduced from seed but from parts of the cultigen itself which are planted in the earth. The Bantu societies also knew of and sowed a variety of seed crops, including sorghum and, in highland areas, finger millet, and often kept cattle.63 But until very late in the first millennium, African varieties of yam, the ancient staple of West African planting agriculture, probably continued to be a pre-eminent food source nearly everywhere among the Bantu of interior East Africa. The early successful crops of the South-east Asian complex were also planted cultigens needful of considerable rainfall. Including Asian yams, taro, and bananas among others, the crops must have been taken up with particular ease by Bantu-speaking societies, by reason both of their climatic situations and their prior acquaintance with planting agriculture. The addition of the crops could only have added to the success of the Bantu economies and helped put off significant change in agricultural strategies.

There were some exceptions to these broad tendencies. The Sonjo have been mentioned as a Bantu community that used extensive irrigation and manuring to cultivate a variety of crops on otherwise marginal land. The pattern they followed was one of probable Southern Cushitic inspiration, and their adoption of that pattern of life may well date back before 1100. On the escarpment of the Kerio Valley of central Kenya several small communities, by 1100 speaking the particular varieties of early Kalenjin that have developed into the present-day Marakwet dialects, may similarly have been irrigating as well as manuring their lands and living primarily by intensive cultivation rather than by livestock-raising. And in parts of Tanzania in the period 600–1100 could be found Bantu societies that must have placed a proportionately much greater reliance on grains and other seed crops than on yams. One of these was the West Ruvu community, which by splitting off to the west late in the period moved into higher and drier lands, probably in the Kagulu area of east-central Tanzania, suited to cattle-raising as well as grain crops. A possibly older Bantu adaptation to drier conditions was that of the proto-Takama, from whose language Kimbu, Nyamwezi-Sukuma, Rimi (Nyaturu), and Iramba derive. Their earliest settlement areas may have been near or to the west or north-west of the Wembere River of west-central Tanzania. In that case yams would

63. C. Ehret, 1974b.

632
have been a successful crop only in areas of wet soils, such as along the Wembere itself, and the development of greater reliance on grain crops would therefore have been essential to the early Takama expansions—a development already beginning, it appears, by the eleventh century.\(^{64}\)

In one case the unfolding of previous trends in subsistence led to the emergence of a truly new approach, highland planting agriculture, which combined existing crops and practices into the most productive system yet devised in East Africa. The new staple was the banana. Knowledge of the banana had clearly diffused well inland by the later second half of the first millennium of the Christian era, apparently via the Pare region as far as Mount Kenya, for the same root word for the plant turns up in Taita-Chaga and in Thagicu and was borrowed from the proto-Thagicu language by the proto-Maa-Ongamo of the Mount Kenya region, by or before the tenth century.\(^{65}\) But it was in the Pare Mountains that the transition to a mature form of the highland planting agriculture apparently took place, close to the turn of the millennium. The Dawida, who had split from the proto-Chaga and left North Pare to settle the Taita Hills around perhaps the tenth or eleventh century, continued into recent times to give priority to the yam. In contrast, the proto-Chaga of the same centuries developed a very complex system of terms for bananas and banana cultivation, attesting to the contemporaneous supplanting of the yam by the banana as their primary item of diet. What made highland planting agriculture of north-eastern Tanzania so especially productive was the systematic use of irrigation and animal manure. Procedures of cultivation of Southern Cushitic source were applied to a crop of South-east Asian origin by peoples of an already planting-agricultural tradition. It can hardly be a coincidence that the spreading out of the Chaga speech community all around the east and south sides of Kilimanjaro can be placed in the immediately succeeding centuries.

Knowledge of bananas did not enter the East African interior only from the Kenya or northern Tanzania coast, however, and in fact that direction would have to be considered a relatively minor source. The linguistic evidence also depicts a separate spread of bananas into the Great Lakes region directly from the south, ultimately from Malawi and the Zambezi basin, as part and parcel of a much wider spread of the new crop from the lower Zambezi region, through the Congo basin, and all across West Africa. It is this wider spread of the banana that has been given recognition so far in the studies of the botanists.\(^{66}\) The southerly introduction of the plant, via the wetter far western fringes of East Africa, probably brought knowledge of the crop to the Great Lakes Bantu and to peoples of Mount Elgon well...

\(^{64}\) See also Unesco, *General History of Africa*, Vol. IV, ch. 19.

\(^{65}\) Proto-Chaga-Dawida *maruu*, Proto-Thagicu *marigo*, and proto-Maa-Ongamo *mariko*.

\(^{66}\) Note especially N. W. Simmonds, 1962; also J. Barrau, 1962. (Note by co-editor: J. Barrau now has a somewhat different opinion).
before 1000. Similar developments of something approaching the highland planting agriculture of north-eastern Tanzania eventually emerged in several regions where bananas could be fruitfully cultivated, among them the Mount Elgon region, from whence it probably spread later to Busoga and Buganda,67 the Bukoba area, and the region far to the south, at the north end of Lake Malawi. But the innovation of intensive banana cultivation seems in each such case a solution independently arrived at, encouraged by similar needs to expand food production capacities in comparable environmental conditions, and arising, except possibly in the instance of Mount Elgon, later in time than the Chaga case, usually in the eras since 1100.

The trend toward the supplanting of stone tool technology by ironworking continued throughout the period of the seventh to eleventh centuries. Metals seem to have entered the interior of East Africa from two directions at the turn of the era, from the west or north-west via the Great Lakes region and from the east coast. The Bantu communities of settlement of the beginning of the first millennium of the Christian era apparently frequently included iron-workers among them, and knowledge of iron-making seems also to have diffused around the north of Mount Elgon as far as the Southern Nilotic peoples west of the Rift Valley, perhaps almost as early.68 In northern Tanzania, some of the Southern Cushites appear to have known of iron as early as the period of Bantu settlement.69 Their acquaintance with metals is likely to have come from the Indian Ocean seaboard where traders from the Near East were bartering iron by no later than the first or second century.70 But iron-working was slow to establish itself in the central interior. In many areas it may have long remained a rare commodity, used in ornamentation but too valuable to waste on tools. Only in the period of the eighth to tenth centuries did the Elmenteitan tool tradition, presumed to be the work of central Kenyans of Southern Nilotic speech, finally collapse and disappear, at a time when new iron-using immigrants, the Maa-Ongamo, were making their presence felt. Among West Rift people of northern Tanzania, iron-working may possibly be similarly late in fully supplanting stone tool technology. But by 1100 stone tools must have been relative rarities almost everywhere in the East African interior, except possibly in drier portions of the Ruaha basin of south-eastern Tanzania and in parts of western Tanzania where hunter-gatherers may have remained in possession for some centuries longer.

For most times and places between 600 and 1100 trade was an enterprise irregularly engaged in and serving to fill special limited needs, such as for food in a famine year, or to dispose of occasional surpluses, as of ostrich

67. See also Unesco, General History of Africa, Vol. IV, ch. 19.
68. C. Ehret, 1971, p. 44, suggests this dating.
69. This is indicated by the fact that some key words for iron and iron-working in Taita-Chaga, Sonjo, and Thagicu are Southern Cushitic loanwords; see C. Ehret, unpublished (b).
70. The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea describes this trade.
The East African interior

eggshells collected by hunter-gatherers and used by many peoples for making beads. Certain recurring patterns of exchange existed: for instance, the export of obsidian from producing areas in central Kenya, where it was still being used for Elmenteitan stone blades as late as the eighth or ninth centuries, and the trading of cowry shells inland from the east coast. But such exchanges passed progressively from community to neighbouring community without significant long-distance carriage of goods and without regular markets or merchants.

Only one occupational specialization, blacksmithing, existed in the seventh century. It would not have been an occupation universally found in interior East African societies, and many communities would have traded for their iron and so might only distantly have been acquainted with smelting or even forging until later centuries.

An additional specialized occupation may have arisen in about the eighth and ninth centuries when ethnic pottery distinctions partially broke down in the central Kenyan areas inhabited by Southern Nilotes and the intruding Maa-Ongamo communities. Thereafter a single kind of pottery, Lanet ware, began to be used by a number of Nilotic-speaking groups. It seems probable that it was at this point in time that potting began to be, as it has remained, a specialized occupation followed principally by hunter-gatherers of the Rift and Mau. The resulting increase in hunter-gatherer dependence on exchange relations with Nilotes may help to explain why the subsequent proto-Kalenjin expansion after 1000 was accompanied by a general adoption of Kalenjin speech by food collectors all around the Rift.

As noted previously, a trade in pottery also probably existed between North Pare and Kilimanjaro, the sellers being Bantu communities and the buyers most probably the Old Asa who lived about Kilimanjaro in those eras. Potting in Pare and among the Rift Valley hunters would have been, however, a part-time occupation of people who for the most part were engaged in supplying their own household needs. The existence of specialization did not thus lead immediately to the appearance of institutionalized and regular markets, but it may have led to the establishment in several areas of central East Africa of particular locations where people habitually went to seek out needed goods. Between Kilimanjaro and the North Pare region, which was a major area of manufacture of both iron and pots, the process may have gone even further, toward the setting up of actual regular markets by the early second millennium.

Social organization

A universal characteristic of the societies of the East African interior from

the seventh to the eleventh centuries was the smallness of scale of both resi­dential and political units, despite a notable variety in the principles of social organization followed by different peoples. The commercial con­ditions that were conducive on the coast to the development of towns were lacking in the interior; the economic base capable of supporting large polities apparently was also missing.

The most common residential unit of the northern interior was a neighbour­hood of dispersed homesteads. It was an old pattern going back to the eras of early Southern Cushitic settlement and also characteristic of the Southern Nilotic settlers of the last millennium before the Christian era. The Bantu immigrants at the turn of the era had come out of a background where village life had been the rule, but the spread of Bantu speech did not necessarily lead to the establishment of villages. Where Bantu settlement had encountered and absorbed significant Cushitic or Nilotic communities, the older pattern of habitation tended to persevere, as for instance in the Kenya highlands and parts of northern Tanzania. Farther south, however, villages were the common residential theme among Bantu-speakers.

Southern Cushitic societies seem usually to have been composed of autonomous clans, each with a recognized clan headman. Among early Bantu settlers a similar pattern, of a clan headed by a hereditary clan chief, can be reconstructed as typical. But it seems probable that Bantu clan chiefship was an actively political position, with responsibilities in most areas of community life, whereas the Cushitic clan headman may principally have been concerned with presiding over the allotment of land, a commodity easily supplied in those days of much lesser population densities. The frequent dropping out of use of the old root word for chief (*-kumu) in Bantu languages of the East African interior suggests that the chiefly role must often have been greatly modified over the course of cultural assimilation between Bantu and non-Bantu even though an Eastern Bantu language might become the language of the new society. The dating of this kind of development is generally unclear, but some instances of it probably fit in the period between 600 and 1100. The Thagicu clan head (Gikuyu muramati), for example, looks rather more like a variation of the Southern Cushitic pattern than a derivation from the Bantu prototype. Since the institution goes back to the period before 1100 among the Thagicu, it may well be an element of continuity deriving from the Gumba side of the Thagicu background and reflecting the social interactions between Southern Cushites and Bantu-speakers on Mount Kenya in those centuries.

In two cases there arose among the Eastern Bantu communities a new kind of chiefly position in which the chief was not tied to a single clan but ruled over a territory inhabited by people of different clan affiliations. The

75. J. Vansina, 1971, p. 263, thinks the kin tie was looser than that postulated here.
76. It becomes -fumu and refers to 'diviners' rather than to 'chiefs'; see below.
77. G. Muriuki, 1974, p. 75.
The earliest example of such a development, among the Great Lakes people, probably took place before the times this chapter is directly concerned with. Already in the proto-Great Lakes language, spoken no later than the very start of our era, the original Bantu root word for 'chief' had come to apply instead to the doctor-diviner (the so-called 'witch-doctor'), and a different word was applied to the political head of the society. A plausible explanation is that a new stratum of chiefship had emerged in the proto-Great Lakes society and that the older petty chiefs had been relegated for the most part to religious-cum-medical roles, a pattern of political change not unknown in the later history of the Great Lakes region. The economic basis for a larger-scale chiefship existed at and before the turn of the era in the form of control over primary access to the newly important material, iron. It was in just those areas along the west of Lake Victoria, where the proto-Great Lakes people are believed to have resided, that a particularly highly developed iron-smelting industry had arisen in the second half of the last millennium before the Christian era. In the multi-ethnic contact situation in which the proto-Great Lakes people lived, the new class of chiefs could have further enhanced their positions by acting as adjudicators between kin groups of different ethnicity and hence becoming the foci for the integration of peoples of Central Sudanic, Southern Cushitic and Great Lakes background into one society. The possession of such an institution may go far to explain the continuing success of Great Lakes expansion at several points in the first millennium.

It is possible, however, that by the time of the Rutara expansion early in the second millennium a new basis for chiefly (and even kingly) power, capable potentially of supporting a considerably larger-scale political unit, was taking hold in the western Great Lakes region. That basis was chiefly or royal power over the access to and redistribution of surpluses in cattle. The first emergence of really large polities based on such a political economy apparently lies in the succeeding eras after 1100.

The second development of territorial chiefship in the period before the twelfth century took place on a very small scale among the proto-Chaga of the start of the second millennium of the Christian era, apparently coincident with the emergence of the mature highland planting agriculture. The characteristic social development of this era in North Pare and parts of Kilimanjaro, strongly apparent from the linguistic sources, was the incorporation of sizeable groups of Old Asa and Old Ongamo into the proto-

78. I. Berger, 1981, sees something of this nature as occurring in the rise of the Lakes region states of recent centuries.
80. As A. Southall, 1954 has shown to be the case in the more recent example of the Alur of the northwestern Lakes region.
81. This hypothesis was suggested already by C. Ehret et al., in an unpublished paper of 1972 and independently proposed on different evidence by I. Berger, 1981.
Chaga society. It can be suggested that the highland planting system gave a decisive productive advantage to the earliest Chaga and so set off Chaga expansion, and that chiefship took on its new form because the chiefly role provided an integrative focus for the assimilation of people of different ethnic and hence different kin affiliations. The new sort of chiefdom thus produced must have been significantly larger in population than the typical clan unit of the previous times, but still quite tiny in comparison with East African kingdoms of recent centuries and probably smaller than the typical lacustrine chiefdom of the same era.

The largest scale of potential social and political co-operation was probably not reached, however, by the societies of the East African interior which had hereditary leaders during those centuries, but rather by Southern Nilotes and Maa-Ongamo peoples. The age-set institutions of these communities, different in their particular structures but alike in their social effects, drew together all the young men from all the neighbourhoods of homesteads over a wide area. The limits of recruitment into a particular named age set tended to be defined by the limits of the society. By belonging to a common age set, men from distant areas gained a basis for cooperating in raiding other peoples when young and for keeping peace with one another in their maturity. Possession of such institutions probably helps to explain why Nilotic language and Nilotic ethnic identity tended to supplant Southern Cushitic over the long run. When conflict arose, or when other troubles such as famine struck, the Nilotes had, at least potentially, a wider group of people from whom support might be sought.

In this connection the disappearance of age organization among many of the Bantu of eastern Africa, and of circumcision also, becomes an interesting problem. In the interior regions the Early Iron Age settlers, as linguistic reconstruction clearly shows, circumcised their boys and formed them into age sets, although these were probably locally recruited and lacked the formality of structure and range of social roles possessed by the comparable institutions among the Nilotic-speakers. Yet the several Bantu societies of the first millennium in southern Tanzania — which often preserved older features of culture lost farther north, such as matrilineal descent and clan chiefship — nevertheless dropped circumcision and age grouping at undetermined but probably quite early times in their histories. Circumcision tended rather to be preserved only where there were neighbouring Southern Cushitic and Southern Nilotic societies, who also had this practice; and age institutions tended to persist among Bantu-speakers in northern areas of the interior where reinforcement by Nilotic example can be detected.

83. Proto-Eastern Bantu had the roots *-al- (*-aluk-, *-alik-, *-alam-) and *-tiin-(retained in Chaga, Seuta, and known also in Mongo of Zaire) for ‘to circumcise’; the old Bantu root *-kula for age set has lasted down to today only in Gusii-Kuria and Luyia-Gisu in East Africa, but is also known from some north-western Bantu languages (it was wrongly explained by C. Ehret, 1976, p. 19, n. 33).
In some cases this kind of influence could be quite strong and had its most significant impact during the period from the seventh to the eleventh centuries. One set of examples are the generation-set systems of the Thagicu peoples of Mount Kenya, for which a partially Southern Nilotic inspiration, dating at the latest to proto-Thagicu times, must be presumed. A second notable case is that of the Chaga, whose age-set ideas show a major Maa-Ongamo contribution, probably specifically from the Old Ongamo during the proto-Chaga period at the turn of the millennium. In Chaga society the control of the transformed age institutions passed into the hand of the new kind of local, non-clan chief, who used it for defence and as a source of labour, whereas on Mount Kenya generation sets became the focus of political activity and the basis for wider area cooperation in a group of societies lacking hereditary political roles. What can be suggested is that age sets served no compelling need in more southerly areas where only sparse hunter-gatherer populations greeted Bantu settlement. Farther north, however, the age-grouping practices of neighbouring food producers reinforced or led to modification of the ideas of Bantu-speakers; and, in particular, the adoption of Nilotic models sometimes provided effective new means of incorporating non-Bantu into Bantu societies and of coping with the pressures, in the later first and very early second millennia, of new Nilotic expansions.

Religious systems

Most peoples of the period of the seventh to eleventh centuries followed one or the other of two major religious systems.

Across much of the Kenya interior and south through central Tanzania there prevailed the belief in a single Divinity, usually identified metaphorically with the sky. The existence of evil was understood in this religion to derive usually from divine retribution or judgment. Ancestor spirits were not significant objects of religious concern. Versions of the religion among Cushitic-speaking peoples sometimes added a belief in lesser spirits capable of harm, and some of the rift Southern Cushites had developed a different celestial metaphor, linking Divinity to the sun rather than to the sky in general. This latter variety of the religion had been adopted some centuries before the turn of the era by the Southern Nilotic ancestors of the Tato and the Kalenjin.

84. C. Ehret, 1971, p. 43.
85. The age set system closely resembles that of the Maa, but cannot specifically be derived from the Maasai; hence we are left with the earlier Maa-Ongamo contact, that between Old Ongamo and early Chaga, as an alternative source of the influence; or else the Chaga system retains the older Bantu system modified by Ongamo example.
86. For a detailed description of one variety of this religion, see E. E. Evans-Pritchard, 1956.
In much of the southern half of the East African interior and through much of the Great Lakes region, a different religion prevailed. Brought in by Bantu settlers at the start of the Early Iron Age, this set of beliefs recognized the existence of a creator God, but its primary religious observances were directed toward the ancestors. Evil was attributed most often to human malice and envy: to the work of persons called, in European translations of the African names for them, ‘witches’ or ‘sorcerers’. In the Lakes region there eventually arose an additional stratum of spirit belief. Spirits of higher status and farther-reaching influence than one’s ancestors are now widely turned to by supplicants in that region. This level of religious practice may go back to proto-Lacustrine times at the turn of the era, but it seems probable that it began to take on pre-eminent importance only during the second millennium, as the religious counterpart of, and often reaction to, the growth of political scale in later eras.

In the central East African interior where both religions were practised, the trend of the past two thousand years has been toward blending the elements of the two philosophies. A couple of significant manifestations of this trend belong to the period from the seventh to the eleventh centuries. In western Kenya the idea of the ancestors as an important focus of religious observance diffused, presumably from the pre-Luyia-Gisu, eastward to the pre-Kalenjin during that era, and the concept of witchcraft had apparently become part of the Kalenjin explanation of evil by the end of the first millennium also. In North Pare and adjoining areas of Kilimanjaro, the God-sun metaphor took hold in proto-Chaga religious thought at around the beginning of the second millennium. The proto-Chaga incorporation of Old Asa people apparently added Southern Cushitic concepts of Divinity onto a still active concern for the ancestors, derived from the Bantu portion of the Chaga heritage, just as the contemporaneous assimilation of Old Ongamo people brought about a major modification of age organization in the society. But elsewhere the era does not seem to have been marked by great change in values or beliefs.

Conclusion

If in the East African interior, then, the half a millennium between 600 and 1100 was not an era of sweeping change, still it was a period marked by varied kinds of lesser change in different parts of the wider region. Variations in religious practice were significant, and changes in political scale were notable. But the overall picture is one of relative continuity in values and beliefs, with some notable exceptions.

88. Cf. C. Ehret, 1971, p. 157. A systematic distinguishing of ‘witchcraft’ from other, more benign uses of medicine had developed in proto-Kalenjin vocabulary but cannot be reconstructed for the earlier proto-Southern Nilotic stage.
89. The use of the older Bantu word for ‘sun’ to name God is found throughout Chaga, whereas both Dawida and Saghala retain the older Eastern Bantu root word for God, *Mulungu. Hence the shift of metaphor arose only in proto-Chaga after the latest split, that of Dawida, had occurred.
tion in domestic economy continued largely to follow the ethnic and geographical distributions laid down in the first few centuries of our era; planting agriculture with some grain cultivation tended to be pursued by Bantu-speakers in better-watered and well-wooded lands, while different combinations of grain cultivation with livestock-raising were engaged in by Nilotes and Cushites in the drier northern and central zones. Hunter-gatherers of Khoisan language may still have had parts of western and south-eastern Tanzania almost entirely to themselves. But at the same time considerable transfer of non-material and even material culture between societies is evident; the beginning of economic specialization takes hold in some areas; and in a number of instances notable new amalgamations of peoples arose. The most striking instance, the melting of Nilotes, Southern Cushites, and Bantu into the proto-Chaga, created a truly new society that incorporated basic ideas and practices from each of the three cultural backgrounds. Chaga became the language of the new society, probably because it was the pre-Chaga-speakers who had pioneered the highland planting agriculture on which the Chaga economy rested.

A characteristic of the period was the marked insulation of the East African interior from the currents of change so prominent in the Indian Ocean. A few crops of Indonesian source, such as the banana, had begun spreading inland in the period preceding the seventh century, but no further significant additions to culture and livelihood seem to have come from that direction between the seventh and eleventh centuries. The highland planting agriculture that arose at about the tenth or eleventh century, surely in response to local conditions, indeed used the banana as its staple; but the agriculture itself was built up of ideas and practices of a much more ancient African provenance and owed nothing to contemporary Indian Ocean influences.

At the coast a major growth in commercial activities took place during approximately the ninth and tenth centuries. The direct East African participants in the expanding trade relations of the western Indian Ocean, we have every reason to presume, were the proto-Swahili, whom we can visualize as inhabitants of seaside settlements, most probably located along the northern Kenya and far southern Somali coasts. Merchants of the time extended their activities far south along the coast itself, as far apparently as the Limpopo River region, where already by the eleventh and twelfth centuries a kingdom, centred on the site of Mapungubwe, had begun to profit from the trade in Zimbabwe gold.90 But commerce appears not at all to have penetrated the East African interior. A few shells reached far inland, passing by way of small-scale local exchanges from community to community; but apparently the East African hinterland offered nothing of interest to Indian Ocean commerce which was not also available within a few kilometres of the shore. Interior peoples on the whole were able to

90. T. N. Huffman, personal communication, July 1981.
supply their own perceived material needs throughout the period and for centuries still to come.

One other major development, of considerable long-range importance but less overtly visible in the East African interior, may have been underway during the second half of the first millennium. The more intensive exploitation of the land that is implied in the farming practices of most Bantu societies of that period suggests, namely, that Bantu-speaking areas had already begun to be areas of build-up of population. In the second millennium those areas increasingly became population reservoirs out of which many of the more significant population movements and most of the major currents of change were to flow.
The start of the Iron Age

By the beginning of the period with which this chapter is primarily concerned, almost all the region under consideration was occupied by Early Iron Age peoples, many of whom may have been speakers of Bantu languages. In many areas, remnants of technologically distinct earlier populations continued to live alongside the Early Iron Age folk, from whom they may also have been differentiated linguistically.\(^1\) The earlier phases of the Iron Age in this region have been described in an earlier volume of this History.\(^2\) Here, it may be recalled that archaeologists now have reasonable confidence in grouping the Early Iron Age industries south of the equatorial forest into a single Industrial Complex. Archaeologists differ in their classification of the Early Iron Age industries: here it will be convenient to summarize the hierarchy of terms preferred by the present writer. The cultural entity as a whole is referred to as the *Early Iron Age Industrial Complex;* it is subdivided into an *eastern stream* and a *western stream.* On the basis of the typology of the various pottery wares, several geographically restricted *groups* are recognized within each stream (see Fig. 23.1). Each group is named, following the accepted practice of Africanist archaeologists, after the site at which its associated pottery was first recognized and described. The Early Iron Age within the territory of individual groups may, in certain cases, be further subdivided — this time chronologically — into sequential *phases.* It is necessary to reiterate that two streams may provisionally be recognized in the archaeological record of this complex, and that a certain correspondence may be observed between the expansion processes and the relative chronology of these streams on the one hand, and the linguistically reconstructed course of the spread of the Bantu languages on the other.\(^3\) Both streams appear to be derived, at least in part, from the Urewe settlements of the interlacustrine

---

1. For a consideration of the processes of interaction between the two groups see S. F. Miller, 1969; also D. W. Phillipson, 1977a, ch. 10.
region during the closing centuries of the last millennium before the Christian era. The eastern stream's expansion may be shown to have begun around the second century of the Christian era with the inception of the Kwale-ware tradition in the coastal regions of Kenya and Tanzania; however, its main southward extension was not achieved until the fourth century, when Early Iron Age culture was brought to most parts of eastern sub-equatorial Africa as far to the south as the Transvaal and southern Mozambique. It was at this stage that Early Iron Age settlement of the eastern stream took place in the more easterly parts of the region which forms the subject of this chapter, i.e. in Malawi and in those parts of Zambia which lie to the east of the Luangwa River. A later expansion of the eastern stream, from a centre south of the Zambezi in what is now The Republic of Zimbabwe, took place in about the sixth century but affected only a very small part of our present region, the Victoria Falls area in the extreme south of Zambia.

The Early Iron Age of Natal and much of the southern Transvaal is best attributed, in the present writer's view, to the western stream. Indeed, it is to the western stream that the Early Iron Age of most of the region here discussed belongs. The archaeology of the western stream is for the most part far less well known than that of its counterpart further to the east. It has been suggested that the western stream arose, around the beginning of the Christian era, in the country south of the lower Congo, through the fusion or interaction of two distinct Bantu-speaking populations. One of these appears to have penetrated through the equatorial forests directly southward from the original centre of Bantu speech in what is now Cameroon. It is probably represented in the archaeological record by the so-called 'Leopoldian neolithic' of Lower Zaire, which has recently been re-investigated by Pierre de Maret. The second Bantu-speaking element appears, like the later eastern stream, to have been an offshoot of the Urewe settlements of the interlacustrine region. It may be demonstrated archaeologically by Urewe-type pottery once reported to have been found near Tshikapa in southern Kasai (unfortunately in a poorly documented and undated context), as well as by the general Urewe affinities of the western-stream pottery tradition as a whole. Most probably it was by means of this southwards and westwards expansion around the forest fringes that domestic cattle and sheep, as well as cereal agriculture and, perhaps, knowledge of metallurgical techniques, were brought to the south-western savanna. These developments may have given rise to a southward expansion of Iron Age culture from Kongo country, through Angola into northern Namibia, accompanied by Bantu languages ancestral to such modern tongues as Moundu and Herero which Bernd Heine has classified as the

5. J. Nenquin, 1959. It has, however, recently been shown that there is considerable doubt as to where this material was actually found.
FIG. 23.1 Archaeological cultures in eastern and southern Africa
West Highland group. The only dated archaeological site that may be attributed to an early phase of this expansion is at Benfica, on the Atlantic coast near Luanda, where pottery showing strong affinity to that of the Early Iron Age of other western-stream areas occurs in a second century of the Christian context. Moreover, certain elements of Early Iron Age culture, i.e. knowledge of pottery manufacture and the herding of sheep and cattle, appear to have been transmitted to the Khoisan-speakers of southern Namibia and the western Cape – far beyond the southernmost limit of Bantu penetration – by about the second or third century of the Christian era. Since it is hard to envisage a source for these innovations other than the western stream of the Early Iron Age, their date may be interpreted as providing a terminus ante quem for the latter’s expansion into southern Angola. Further details concerning the early expansion of the western stream are not yet available: such archaeological data as we have are attributed to the second half of the first millennium of the Christian era, and for the most part come from the eastern part of the western stream area – Shaba and western Zambia – where its advent appears to have been delayed until about the fifth or sixth century.

The outline presented above is not contradicted by such conclusions of comparative Bantu linguists as can be used to form the basis of a historical reconstruction of Bantu language development. Indeed, it has been argued by the present writer that the western stream’s original dispersal from Kongo country to the south of the lower reaches of the Congo River may be correlated with a secondary centre of Bantu language dispersal which has been placed in just this area as a result of recent linguistic studies both by Bernd Heine and by David Dalby. Their contention is that Bantu speech spread directly southwards from its Cameroonian homeland by either a coastal or a river route to the area that is now Lower Zaire. This would have been a movement quite independent from the one that brought another Bantu language along the northern fringes of the forest to the interlacustrine region. Those Bantu languages that have been spoken in recent times to the south of the equatorial forest all appear to be derived, directly or indirectly, from a centre of dispersal near Lower Zaire. The first stage of dispersal from this centre appears to have given rise to languages ancestral to those that Heine has named the Western Highland group, spoken today through highland Angola and southwards into northern Namibia. Further stages involved basically eastward dispersal, as will be described below.

To amplify this general outline it is necessary to present a summary of the archaeological evidence from these regions that appears to belong to this period of expansion by Bantu-speakers. It will be convenient to com-

8. This argument is developed in D. W. Phillipson, 1977a, chs 6 and 10.
FIG. 23.2 Archaeological sites in central Africa
mence this overview in Lower Zaire and Angola and then to proceed eastwards.

The western stream of the Early Iron Age

Chronologically the earliest of the relevant prehistoric industries is that from Lower Zaire which has conventionally been known as the ‘Leopoldian neolithic’. It is characterized by necked pottery vessels with elaborate grooved decoration which is reminiscent of that seen on some Early Iron Age ceramics from other regions. No metal artefacts are associated with this pottery; instead there are abundant ground stone ‘axes’. Several sites of this industry have recently been investigated by Pierre de Maret who has obtained carbon-14 dates that indicate an age in the last four centuries before the Christian era. Material attributed to this industry is known from the Kinshasa area on the southern side of the Malebo (Stanley) Pool, and from there westwards to near the Atlantic seaboard, occurring mainly in the caves and rock-shelters of the province of Lower Zaire, although a few open-air occurrences have also been reported. Significantly, no trace of this industry has yet been discerned in the more open savanna country of northern Angola. This observation, coupled both with the apparently sudden appearance of ground stone artefacts in this one restricted part of a region where they are otherwise extremely rare, and also with the occurrence of comparable industries to the north of the forest, in West Africa and on the island of Fernando Poo, lends support to the hypothesis that the ‘Leopoldian neolithic’ was introduced to the Lower Zaire region from an essentially northerly direction.

In other occurrences in Lower Zaire, for which absolute age determinations are not yet available, but which may be assumed to post-date the ‘neolithic’ material noted above, more varied pottery has been recovered which shows rather stronger similarities to that known in Early Iron Age contexts further to the east. In particular, affinities with the Urewe ware of the interlacustrine region seem to be much closer in this material, notably that from Dimba cave near Mbanza Ngungu, than they are in the ‘Leopoldian neolithic’. Further to the south, as noted above, pottery from Benfica also shows strong Early Iron Age affinities: it is dated to about the second century of the Christian era, and this would be a plausible date for the Lower Zaire material also.

Our knowledge of the Early Iron Age in regions of Angola further inland, and in the neighbouring Kasai Province of Zaire, is even more scanty. Near Tshikapa, close to Kasai’s southern border, it has been claimed that mining operations in the Lupembe valley yielded four nearly complete pot-

tery vessels that would not be out of place typologically in an assemblage of Urewe ware from the interlacustrine region. It is unfortunate that the circumstances of this discovery are poorly recorded, and that there is no basis for estimating the absolute age of the context in which the pottery was preserved. Not far to the south, across the Angola border, two small collections of pottery from the Dundo area are dated to the last quarter of the first millennium of the Christian era. The sherds differ markedly from the (presumably earlier) Tshikapa specimens, but nevertheless show several Early Iron Age typological features alongside characteristics that have continued into the modern pottery of northern Angola. Broadly contemporary sites are known, albeit poorly, from southern Angola and northern Namibia. By the seventh or eighth century, a substantial Iron Age settlement had been established at Feti la Choya, near the confluence of the Kunene and Kunyongauna rivers, but information about the associated artefacts that has been published is insufficiently detailed to enable us to evaluate its affinities. In the extreme north of Namibia, at Kapako close to the western end of the Caprivi Strip, a site with traces of iron-working has yielded pottery that its excavator sees as related to other wares of the Early Iron Age's western stream, notably that from Kapwirimbwe which will be discussed below. No trace of Early Iron Age settlement has yet been reported from more southerly parts of Namibia, but it must be emphasized that appropriate research has for the most part not so far been undertaken.

Our most detailed knowledge of the archaeology of the western stream of the Early Iron Age comes from the Upemba depression in the valley of the upper Lualaba in Shaba. The earliest Iron Age settlement so far discovered in this region is at Kamilamba, dated to about the sixth or seventh century of our era. The pottery shows strong affinities with material of the same age from western Zambia. In about the tenth century, or shortly before, began the use of an extensive series of cemeteries which has been investigated on several occasions during the last twenty years, the best known being that at Sanga on Lake Kisale. The Sanga cemetery appears to have remained in use until about the seventeenth or eighteenth century, but throughout this period the typology of the associated pottery seems to the present writer to have been rooted in an Early Iron Age tradition. The dead were buried in an extended or slightly flexed position, accompanied by abundant grave goods. The most frequent items were pottery vessels, those prior to c. 1300 of our era being of the style known as Kisalian, followed by those attributed to the Kabambian tradition. Metal objects were also abundant, including elaborate copper ornaments such as

13. J. Nenquin, 1959. It is doubtful whether this material was really found at Tshikapa.
14. J. D. Clark, 1968, pp. 189-205.
chains, bangles and twisted belts and necklets. Iron is represented by hoes and axes rather than by weapons: there are also a number of small flange-welded bells. Copper cross-shaped ingots of various sizes were common in Kabambian graves but rare in Kisalian ones: there is evidence that these probably served as some form of currency.

Some 140 km further upstream along the Lualaba is the site of Katoto, where there is a further cemetery in many ways comparable with those of the Upemba depression. The pottery, although typologically distinct, like-
wise belongs to an Early Iron Age tradition, although it has stronger affinities than does the Kasalian both with Urewe ware and with ceramics from western Zambia. It is probable that Katoto will prove to be of earlier date than the Sanga cemetery.

It is unfortunate that no domestic living sites have yet been discovered that may be attributed to the population responsible for the upper Lualaba cemeteries. The latter sites do, however, attest to the material wealth and technological sophistication that had been attained in this area by the beginning of the present millennium. A relatively high population density had evidently developed by this time, and there can be little doubt that a major factor contributing to this was the presence of the rich mineral deposits of the Copperbelt at no great distance to the south. As will be shown below, this mining area attracted trading contacts over an enormous area among the Early Iron Age folk, even though mining remained on a relatively small scale. This sequence is of particular importance and interest since, as de Maret points out, it occurs in an area where ‘oral traditions have placed the origin of Luba kingship to which many kingdoms of the central savanna trace their origin’.

Archaeological research on the Copperbelt itself has taken place only in Zambian territory. Numerous Early Iron Age settlement sites have been located, and these are attributed to the Chondwe group, named after a site some 45 km south of Ndola. Chondwe group villages were generally situated beside rivers and streams: one, at Roan Antelope near Luanshya, was also adjacent to a prehistoric copper working. Copper bangles have been found at Chondwe at a level dated to between the sixth and the eighth centuries of the Christian era; impressions of similar objects used to decorate pottery strongly suggest that the use of copper most probably goes back to

FIG. 23.3 Pottery and an ivory bangle from Sanga (after Nenquin, 1963; Hiernaux, de Longrée and de Buyst, 1971)
the first Early Iron Age settlement of the area, about the beginning of the sixth century.

Particular interest attaches to the presence at several sites, including Roan Antelope, of scattered Early Iron Age potsherds of types that are characteristic of the tradition of distant regions – the middle Zambezi valley and southern Malawi for example – rather than of the local Chondwe group pottery tradition. These occurrences are probably best interpreted as evidence for inter-group contact. Most probably this contact took the form of men (see p. 656 below) travelling from afar to the copper-producing area in order to obtain metal. Since there is reason to believe that potting was the work of men, during the Early Iron Age in this part of Africa, it is likely that the ‘foreign’ pottery referred to above was made by these visitors: there is thus no need to suppose either that whole families travelled to the mines in search of metal or that such fragile objects as pots were themselves traded over large distances.

To the west of the main Copperbelt, on the Zambezi/Congo watershed near Solwezi, the prehistoric mining area at Kansanshi has recently been investigated by Michael Bisson.\(^8\) Here, the earliest Iron Age occupation, of about the fifth century, is associated with evidence for copper-working. The pottery is distinct from that of the Chondwe group (although both types are attributed to the western streams of the Early Iron Age) and shares features with wares found on widely dispersed sites in the Kalahari Sand country of western Zambia. Here, the most informative sites are those at Sioma on the upper Zambezi not far to the south of the Barotse floodplain, and at Lubusi in Kaoma District.\(^9\) Early Iron Age settlement, associated with the working of iron and (to judge from bangle impressions on the pottery) copper, is attested from the sixth century if not the end of the fifth. Only along the Zambezi valley does the coverage of research enable the distribution of these sites to be plotted with any degree of comprehensiveness. Recent research by N. Katanekwe suggests that settlement by the western stream of the Early Iron Age did not penetrate far downstream of Sioma.

The only other areas of Zambia to be subject to western stream settlement are the Lusaka and Southern Province plateaux, where the Early Iron Age sites are attributed to the Kapwirimbwe and Kalundu groups respectively.\(^{20}\) The pottery of the first of these, as at the eponymous village site near Lusaka where the brief period of occupation is dated to about the fifth century, shows many affinities to that of the Chondwe group on the Copperbelt. At Kapwirimbwe, the presence of semi-permanent structures is indicated by post-holes, but plans of individual buildings could not be distinguished. Large quantities of debris from collapsed *daga* (puddled mud) structures appear to be the remains of iron-smelting furnaces: the

\(^{18}\) M. S. Bisson, 1975; and reports forthcoming.

\(^{19}\) J. O. Vogel, 1973a; D. W. Phillipson, 1971.

working of iron seems to have been conducted on a large scale within or immediately adjacent to the village, but copper was unknown. The inhabitants of Kapwirimbwe herded domestic cattle, bones of which were recovered during the excavations.

The later phases of the Kapwirimbwe group are best known from a site at Twickenham Road in suburban Lusaka. At some time between the ninth and the early twelfth centuries, fine elaborately decorated pottery was in use that clearly belongs to a development of the same tradition as was represented at Kapwirimbwe. Domestic goats were kept, and wild animals hunted. As at Kapwirimbwe, iron was worked on a substantial scale, but it was only in the final phase of the Early Iron Age at Twickenham Road that copper made its appearance. It is interesting to note that pottery more closely resembling that of the Chondwe group appears in the Lusaka sequence at the same time. At both Kapwirimbwe and Twickenham Road were recovered perforated pottery colanders which, it is suggested, may have been used for the preparation of salt.

The former extent of the Kapwirimbwe group is not easy to ascertain, but closely related pottery has been recorded from as far to the west as Mumbwa Cave and from the Chirundu region of the Zambezi valley. The Early Iron Age ‘Sinoia tradition’ of ceramics of the Lomagundi and Urungwe Districts of Zimbabwe is so similar to that from Kapwirimbwe and Twickenham Road that it also is probably best subsumed into the same group.21 These sites are quite distinct from their contemporaries in other parts of Zimbabwe and are of interest as the only representatives of the western stream of the Early Iron Age yet to be identified south of the Zambezi.

On the Southern Province or Batoka plateau south of the Kafue, the first Kalundu group settlements may have been established before the end of the fourth century. Some sites were occupied on a repeated or prolonged basis resulting in the accumulation of deep stratified archaeological deposits. The pottery and other items of material culture have much in common with those of the Kapwirimbwe group. At Kalundu Mound, near Kalowo, domestic animals (cattle and sheep/goats) accounted for less than two-fifths of the bones recovered, indicating that hunting still played an important part in the economy. With the Kalundu group we conclude this survey of the Central African manifestations of the Early Iron Age’s western stream.

The eastern stream of the Early Iron Age

In Malawi and eastern Zambia, the Early Iron Age industries, although clearly belonging to the same Industrial Complex as those described above from more westerly regions, are nevertheless markedly distinct. They are

attributed to an eastern stream and appear to be derived reasonably directly from the Urewe group settlements of the interlacustrine region.

Studies of pottery typology enable two variants to be recognized in the Early Iron Age of Malawi. These are the Mwabulambo group in the north, named after a site on the Lufilya River, and — in the south — the Nkope group which takes its name from a locality on the western shore of Lake Malawi, north of Mangochi.\(^\text{22}\) Despite the large number of Early Iron Age sites that have now been located in Malawi, the nature and location of the geographical boundary between these two groups is not well known. The distribution of Nkope ware extends westwards across the watershed into the greater part of south-eastern Zambia lying to the east of the Luangwa River, while its spread into adjacent parts of Mozambique is attested by material collected by Carl Wiese in 1907 and now housed in the Museum für Völkerkunde, Berlin.\(^\text{23}\) The carbon-14 dates for Malawi Early Iron Age sites indicate that their florescence began early in the fourth century of the Christian era; and it has been shown statistically that the Mwabulambo group may have been established at a slightly earlier date than its more southerly counterpart.\(^\text{24}\)

Only small-scale test excavations have been undertaken on the Early Iron Age sites so far investigated in Malawi; and the information that is available from them is correspondingly scant. Traces of substantial houses, built of mud applied over a wooden framework (pole and daga), were preserved at Phopo Hill near Lake Kazuni. Iron, in the form of slag and finished artefacts, has been recovered from several sites, notably Nanyangu in the Ncheu District and Zomba Range. Copper, on the other hand, has not been recovered. Shell beads occurred in association with Nkope ware in a storage pit at Phwadze Stream in the Chikwawa District that is dated to the fifth or sixth century of the Christian era. The only coastal object from an Early Iron Age context in Malawi is a broken cowry shell from a late Nkope site on the Namichimba Stream, Mwanya. Bones that have been identified from these sites are all of wild species.\(^\text{25}\)

In the Chipata District of south-eastern Zambia, a relatively sparse Early Iron Age presence seems to have been established around the beginning of the fourth century, although an indigenous stone-tool-using population also appears to have survived well into the present millennium. The only Early Iron Age village site that has so far been investigated in this area is at Kamnana on the Malawi border north of Chipata. The settlement covered an area of some five hectares, but its occupation was apparently brief, being dated between the third and the fifth centuries.\(^\text{26}\)

The eastern stream settlements south of the Zambezi being outside the

\(^{23}\) D. W. Phillipson, 1976a, p. 17.
\(^{24}\) D. W. Phillipson, 1975.
\(^{26}\) D. W. Phillipson, 1976a, pp. 38–45.
geographical range of this chapter, it is necessary now to turn our attention to the Early Iron Age in the Victoria Falls region of southern Zambia. This has been termed the Dambwa group after a site lying on the outskirts of the town of Livingstone. The distribution of the Dambwa group extends along the Zambezi valley from the vicinity of Chirundu upstream almost as far as Sioma, and also southwards at least into the Wankie area of modern Zimbabwe. It is bordered on the north by regions where the Early Iron Age industries, as described above, are attributed to the western stream. There can be little doubt that the Dambwa group owes its origin to a north-westward expansion of eastern stream Early Iron Age folk from the Zimbabwean plateau. The carbon-14 dates indicate that the main florescence of the Dambwa group in the Victoria Falls region did not begin until the sixth century of the Christian era. This was significantly later than the inception of western stream settlement in the areas only a short distance to the north.

The best-known sites of the Dambwa group are Kumadzulo, occupied between the fifth and seventh centuries, and the slightly later settlement of Dambwa. Four successive phases have been recognized on the basis of the pottery typology, but all belong to a single developing ceramic tradition that has been named the Shongwe tradition.

Sites of the Dambwa group have yielded bones of domestic cattle and small stock, in addition to those of wild animals. Traces of buildings at Kumadzulo are interpreted as the remains of remarkably small rectangular pole-and-daga houses. Contact with the east coast trade had begun by the seventh century, as is indicated by a fragment of imported glass recovered from the ruins of one of the houses at Kumadzulo, and by some cowry shells from the nearby Chundu Farm site. Glass beads, however, do not occur in Early Iron Age contexts in this area. Locally made iron tools include hoes, axes, knives, spear-points and arrowheads. A copper bar and bangles have also been recovered, indicating trade with copper-producing areas such as the Hook of the Kafue or the Wankie region of Zimbabwe.

Excavations at Chundu Farm have thrown much light on the local Early Iron Age burial customs. These may be compared with those that prevailed during somewhat later times in the upper Lualaba cemeteries described above. The dead were buried tightly contracted in individual pit-like graves, while similar pits were dug nearby for the deposition of grave goods. These usually comprised pairs of pottery vessels forming a covered container for a funerary cache of such objects as iron hoes, axes, iron or copper bangles, cowry shells or shell beads. One of these caches also contained two seeds that have been tentatively identified as those of squash and a bean. The Chundu Farm site is dated to about the eighth century of the Christian era.

Central Africa to the north of the Zambezi

The Early Iron Age/Later Iron Age transition

In many parts of Bantu-speaking Africa, the Later Iron Age societies have been less intensively studied by archaeologists than have their Early Iron Age predecessors. Consequently, at least for the period with which we are here concerned, before that at which oral tradition becomes a significant historical source, the centuries after about the beginning of the eleventh century of the Christian era represent a virtual lacuna in our knowledge of central African history. Despite the lack of abundant data, however, a picture is beginning to emerge of a sharp break in the local pottery traditions of most areas early in the eleventh century of the Christian era.30 One of the few areas where some degree of continuity over this period may be demonstrated is in southern Zambia; and this is a convenient place at which to commence the following survey.

The relevant archaeological material here is that attributed to the Kalomo industry; and there are convincing reasons for regarding the Kalomo pottery tradition as having developed from a late phase of the Dambwa group sequence of the Victoria Falls region.31 Thence, around the end of the ninth century of the Christian era, its practitioners appear to have begun to expand to the north and north-west on to the Batoka plateau where their characteristic pottery rapidly displaced that of the Early Iron Age Kalundu group. This transition was first noted at the Kalundu site near Kalomo where it is, however, obscured by the disturbed stratigraphy; it is also exposed further to the north at Gundu and Ndonde in the Choma District.32 However, the best picture of the Kalomo industry as a whole is obtained at Isamu Pati, west of Kalomo, a site where there was no previous Early Iron Age occupation.33

Some Kalomo industry villages seem to have consisted of rings of unsubstantial circular houses set around open areas that may have served as cattle kraals. These villages were continuously or repeatedly occupied over several centuries.

Iron-working seems to have been practised by the inhabitants of these Kalomo industry sites on a smaller scale than by their Early Iron Age predecessors. Although axes and hoes have been found, they are extremely rare: knives, razors and points for spears and arrows being the tools most frequently encountered. Copper was used mainly for bangles. A steady decrease in the importance of hunting is indicated by the way in which bones of wild animals are now outnumbered by those of domestic species. There is evidence for the cultivation of sorghum, but one has the impression that here – as in other areas of eastern and southern Africa – the economy of the

opening centuries of the Later Iron Age was heavily dependent upon the herding of domestic animals, principally cattle. The presence of glass beads, cowry shells and conus shells shows that contact with the east coast trade was now stronger than it had been in earlier times.

In about the second half of the eleventh century of the Christian era the Kalomo industry on the Batoka plateau was abruptly replaced by a southward spread of a further distinct industry, known as Kangila, which seems to have originated in or near the lower Kafue valley. The Kangila industry also spread to the Victoria Falls region, where its interface with the Kalomo industry is dated at Sinde about a hundred years later than the corresponding event on the plateau: this time-lag may be regarded as a function of the slow southwards dispersal of the Kangila industry.\textsuperscript{34}

Our archaeological evidence for the early development of the Kangila industry is difficult to interpret, being based on excavations at only two sites: Sebanzi near Monze and Ingombe Ilede not far from the Zambezi/Kafue confluence. At the latter site the occupation probably began in the seventh or eighth centuries; the corresponding event at Sebanzi was probably later. At both sites the stratigraphy and chronology are unclear, but the pottery may be confidently regarded as ancestral to that found at Kangila on the plateau near Mazabuka. The Kangila village itself was occupied briefly in about the fifteenth century of the Christian era, and thus represents a late phase of the industry to which it has given its name. Apart from the pottery, its inhabitants' material culture and economy appear to have been very similar to those of the Kalomo industry.\textsuperscript{35}

Outside the Southern Province, the most widespread Later Iron Age pottery type recognized in Zambia is that attributed to the Luangwa tradition. Its distribution covers the whole of Zambia to the north and east of a line extending from the lower Kafue to Lubumbushi, and extends also into the neighbouring parts of Zaire, Malawi, Mozambique and Zimbabwe. The Luangwa tradition thus occurs in areas where the Early Iron Age had belonged to the Kalambo, Nkope, Chondwe and Kapwirimbwe groups, representing both the eastern and the western streams. It first appears in the archaeological record during the eleventh century of the Christian era, and makes a sudden and complete break with the preceding Early Iron Age traditions. The nature and date of this interface are best illustrated at Twickenham Road and at Chondwe, while confirmatory evidence comes from rock-shelter sites in the north and east, as at Nakapapula and Thandwe. Throughout its area of distribution, the Luangwa pottery tradition has been continued into recent times by such peoples as the Bemba, Chewa, Nsenga and northern Lunda.\textsuperscript{36}

\textsuperscript{34} J. O. Vogel, 1973c. Vogel refers to the Kangila tradition as 'Early Tonga', but the present writer prefers to avoid attributing tribal names to prehistoric material.


\textsuperscript{36} D. W. Phillipson, 1974.
Central Africa to the north of the Zambezi

There is a very pronounced contrast between the pottery of the Luangwa tradition and that of its Early Iron Age predecessors, and no suggestion of a gradual development from one to the other. However, the Early Iron Age ware that is typologically closest to the Luangwa tradition is that of the Chondwe group. It has been suggested that the ancestor of the Luangwa tradition may prove to have been more closely related to the Chondwe group pottery than to that of any other of the Early Iron Age groups that are at present known. The most likely explanation of these archaeological observations is that the inception of the Luangwa tradition was occasioned by a relatively large-scale movement of people, in which whole families took part, from an area located to the north or north-west of the Zambia/Shaba Copperbelt. If Luangwa tradition pottery was then (as it invariably is today) the work of women, the suddenness of its appearance may be explained by postulating that Early Iron Age ceramics were made by men.

A similar picture is now emerging in Malawi, Nkope ware being replaced around the beginning of the eleventh century of the Christian era by that named after Kapeni Hill in the Ncheu District. At about the same time, Mwamasapa ware (which takes its name from a site near Karonga) took over from Mwabulambo ware as the characteristic pottery type in the northern part of the country. Both these Malawi Later Iron Age wares appear to be related in some way to those of the Luangwa tradition. As in Zambia, little is yet known concerning the archaeology of these first Later Iron Age communities. Pole-and-daga houses are indicated at some sites, as also are less permanent beehive-shaped structures. Iron and occasional copper objects were in use throughout this period. Imported glass beads, initially rare, became progressively more frequent. Seeds of sorghum have been recovered in association with Mwamasapa pottery, while cattle bones occur on several Later Iron Age sites, widely distributed through Malawi. We shall return in a later section of this chapter to a consideration of these Later Iron Age communities in Malawi and the eastern half of Zambia; meanwhile we must briefly describe the remarkably contrasting situation that prevailed at this time in the regions further to the west.

To the west of the area occupied by industries of the Luangwa tradition there is apparent a much greater degree of continuity from the ceramic industries of the Early Iron Age into those of the present millennium. For example, in the Mongu, Kabompo, Zambezi, Mwinilunga and Kaoma Districts of western Zambia the modern pottery tradition, which has been named the Lungwebungu tradition, shows many features in common with that of the local Early Iron Age, as exemplified at the Lubusi site described above. Recent research suggests that this continuity may not have been

FIG. 23.4 Luangwa tradition pottery from Makwe rock-shelter, eastern Zambia (after Phillipson, 1976)
so direct as was previously thought, nevertheless there is no evidence here for a pronounced break in the archaeological record early in the present millennium, such as heralded the advent of the Later Iron Age further to the east. Between the areas of the Lungwebungu and Luangwa pottery traditions, in the country now occupied by the Kaonde, yet another pottery style is attested at sites such as Kamusongolwa and Kansanshi, dated between the eleventh and the thirteenth centuries.

Thus the overall picture of central Africa during the eleventh century of the Christian era that emerges is one of a marked east–west dichotomy. In the east the Early Iron Age industries were abruptly terminated and replaced; in the west their counterparts continued with relatively little modification. The upper Lualaba cemeteries of Sanga and Katoto, described above, are further evidence for this continuity in the western half of our area: typologically they belong with the Early Iron Age Industrial Complex, yet chronologically they bridge the gap and extend into the period occupied elsewhere by the Later Iron Age industries — a period to which, indeed, these cemeteries’ main period of use belongs. It is now necessary to turn away from purely archaeological arguments in order to consider the meaning and significance of these observations in historical terms.

The first point to be emphasized is the much greater degree of Early Iron Age/Later Iron Age continuity in the western half of central Africa in contrast to the situation in the east. Interestingly, this east–west division does not coincide with the ‘tribal’ subdivisions of the region, as this is reflected in the extant oral tradition. For example, peoples who traditionally trace their origins to the Lunda and Luba empires are found in both the eastern and the western areas. Furthermore, there are today ‘tribes’ bearing the name of Lunda which make, in one case, Luangwa pottery (Kazembe’s Lunda of the Luapula valley) and, in the other, that of the Early Iron Age-derived Lungwebungu tradition (the western Lunda of north-western Zambia). It is thus clear that the inception of the Later Iron Age and the traditionally recalled emergence of its constituent societies were essentially disparate processes. This is confirmed by the chronological implications of the most recent interpretation of the oral traditions. These would place the political developments that gave rise to the Luba empire as early as the fourteenth or even the thirteenth century, a date still significantly more recent than that attested by archaeology for the start of the Later Iron Age.

It is when we compare the archaeological data with that of linguistics that it is possible tentatively to propose a meaningful correlation. Attention was drawn above to the Western Highland group of the Bantu languages, which Heine and Dalby derive from a dispersal centre near the lower

42. M. S. Bisson, 1975.
FIG. 23.5 Modern Lungwebungu tradition pottery (after Phillipson, 1974)
Congo. Subsequent to the establishment of these Western Highland languages they themselves gave rise to a tertiary dispersal centre in the Shaba area. It is to this centre that most linguists would now trace the last major diaspora of the Bantu languages, that which led to the introduction, throughout the eastern half of Bantu Africa, of the closely interrelated languages which Heine has called the Eastern Highland group. The present writer has shown elsewhere that there are grounds for linking the inception of the Later Iron Age industries in the eastern regions with the spread of the people who spoke these Eastern Highland languages. The continuation of the older and more diverse western languages compares with the greater degree of Early Iron Age/Later Iron Age continuity in the west. The geographical distribution of the Eastern Highland languages coincides with the area where a sharp break in the archaeological sequence took place at the start of the Later Iron Age. Likewise, the westerly origin of the Eastern Highland languages is in accord with that of several Later Iron Age industries, notably the Luangwa tradition.

This is the picture of central Africa from the seventh to the eleventh centuries of the Christian era that archaeology and linguistics combine to present. Throughout the region, Early Iron Age peoples, probably Bantu-speakers, were in occupation by the beginning of this period, although in many areas stone-tool-using hunter/gathering peoples continued to survive, often in a client relationship with their farming neighbours. These Early Iron Age communities are known almost exclusively from archaeology: they may be divided into two streams - eastern and western - of distinct but related origin. They were evidently peasant farming societies, probably lacking any large-scale systems of centralized political authority. Towards the close of the first millennium we can, however, detect a marked increase in wealth, trade activity and population density in the upper Lualaba area. It was from this general region that, in about the eleventh century, began the process of population expansion that resulted in the introduction of Later Iron Age culture to much of eastern central Africa. Thus were established the populations from which the more developed Later Iron Age societies subsequently emerged.

The most important development in the Iron Age prehistory of southern Africa occurred one thousand years ago in the Shashi/Limpopo basin. It was here that Bantu-speakers evolved the Zimbabwe Culture. To explain the history and importance of this development, I first consider ethnic movements identified by ceramic style and culture systems recognized in settlement layout. I then turn to the impact of external trade on local politics and the consequent evolution of the Zimbabwe Culture at Mapungubwe.

Ethnic movements and culture systems: 700–1000

Archaeologists in southern Africa use ceramic style to trace the movements of Iron Age people because stylistic units demarcate the distribution of ethnic entities in space and time. This is so because (1) ceramic style, as part of patterned behaviour, is created and transmitted through groups of people, (2) the transmission of a style must be partially accomplished through verbal communication, and, (3) as long as the identity of the manufacturers and users of style are the same, the distribution of that style must also represent the distribution of a group of people speaking the same language. This set of premises does not mean, however, that another stylistic group could not have spoken the same language.

On the basis of these premises, the languages spoken by Iron Age people in central and southern Africa can be confidently identified from the ceramic evidence as members of the Bantu family. Since the earliest Iron Age ceramics in this region belong to a single stylistic complex and since one of these styles can be traced directly to the ceramics of modern-day Shona-speakers, a Bantu language must have been the principal tongue of all the Early Iron Age groups. For the reasons given above, this one ceramic continuum is sufficient to establish the link between Iron Age entities and Bantu languages.

At the beginning of the eighth century of the Christian era, several ethnic groups of Bantu-speakers lived in southern Africa (see Fig. 24.1). One group, named after the present-day town of Sinoia, had only recently moved across the Zambezi, but the ancestors of the others had been in the general area since the beginning of the Iron Age. The area with which we are most concerned — modern-day south-western Matabeleland, east-central Botswana and the far northern Transvaal — was occupied largely by Zhizo people. The ceramic sequence shows that they inhabited this area for another 250 years before newcomers known as Leopard’s Kopje moved into south-western Zimbabwe. This later ethnic movement is demonstrated by a major stylistic discontinuity between Zhizo and tenth-century Leopard’s Kopje ceramics. Zhizo ceramics include jars with bands of stamp impressions and incisions on the lower rim and a textured line on the shoulder, while Leopard’s Kopje jars are decorated with incised triangles, loops and meanders on the neck. This ceramic disjunction occurs at the same time as a threefold increase in late Zhizo settlements called Toutswe in Botswana. Evidently, many Zhizo people chose to leave the area rather than be incorporated in the new Leopard’s Kopje group.

Some archaeologists believe that the spread of Leopard’s Kopje at the beginning of the eleventh century of the Christian era was part of a single expansion of Bantu-speakers from central Africa across the subcontinent. Leopard’s Kopje ceramics, however, are not closely related to contemporaneous styles in Zambia or Malawi or to the new style that appeared at sites related to Blackburn on the Natal coast in the tenth century. Instead, Leopard’s Kopje forms the third phase of a stylistic continuum that includes eighth- to ninth-century Klingbeil ceramics and fifth- to seventh-century pottery in the central Transvaal. Furthermore, the tenth-century replacement of Zhizo in south-western Zimbabwe by Leopard’s Kopje and then the eleventh-century replacement of Maxton people in northern Zimbabwe by a group related to Leopard’s Kopje known as Gumanye (formerly Zimbabwe Period II and Lower Zimbabwe) shows that these Leopard’s Kopje people moved north across the Limpopo River, not south across the Zambezi. Moreover, groups related to Leopard’s Kopje who did not move north, such as Eiland, continued in some areas.

5. T. N. Huffman, 1974b.
FIG. 24.1 Some of the ethnic groups defined by ceramic style in southern Africa between 700 and 900: names in capital letters are mentioned in the text; the star marks the Zhizo site of Schroda.
until the fourteenth century.\textsuperscript{12} Population replacements thus occurred at various times in southern Africa, and they originated from places other than central Africa (see Fig. 24.2).

Leopard's Kopje and Gumanye are part of the ceramic continuum mentioned earlier that links Bantu language with Iron Age peoples. Leopard's Kopje and Gumanye, therefore, were the ancestors of many present-day Shona-speakers.

Ceramic units such as Leopard's Kopje, however, only identify groups of people. To understand how these people lived, we must turn to economic and other data. The location and type of Iron Age sites, as well as the associated artefacts, show that these people were mixed farmers. For example, most early Iron Age settlements were located in broken country where the resources needed by mixed farmers – water, wood, cultivable soils and pasture – occurred in close proximity. In contrast, pastoralists preferred open grasslands like the Kalahari, while hunter-gatherers once occupied almost every kind of terrain. Iron Age settlements, furthermore, were relatively permanent compared with the transient camps of herders and hunter-gatherers. The remains of pole-and-daga (a mud and dung mixture) structures are common, and the amount of refuse indicates that even the smallest homesteads were usually occupied for several years. The features and artefacts in these semi-permanent settlements include storage pits, raised storage bins, grindstones and iron hoes, all of which indicate a technology adapted to grain cultivation. The ceramics in these settlements typically occur in a wide range of shapes and sizes, and this range also attests cultivation, since most hunter-gatherers did not use pottery at all and the pottery of pastoralists was usually limited to a few small portable shapes. Cultivators, on the other hand, need several shapes and sizes to prepare and to serve foods made from grain, such as porridge and beer. Some of the actual crops have also been recovered from Iron Age sites in this region: for instance, carbonized sorghum has been found in Zhizo,\textsuperscript{13} Toutswe\textsuperscript{14} and Leopard's Kopje sites\textsuperscript{15}; while Eleusine (finger millet) and Pennisetum (bullrush millet) have also been recovered from Leopard's Kopje sites;\textsuperscript{16} and various legumes are known from Sinoia,\textsuperscript{17} and Leopard's Kopje sites.\textsuperscript{18} These seeds complement the other data and together form the evidence for a cultivation component in Iron Age economy.

A herding component is also well attested in the archaeological record for

\begin{thebibliography}{99}
\bibitem{12} J. R. Denbow, 1981.
\bibitem{13} E. O. M. Hanisch, 1980, 1981.
\bibitem{14} J. R. Denbow, 1983.
\bibitem{15} T. N. Huffman, 1974b; A. Meyer, 1980.
\bibitem{16} E. O. M. Hanisch, 1980; T. N. Huffman, 1974b.
\bibitem{17} T. N. Huffman, 1979.
\bibitem{18} T. N. Huffman, 1974b.
\end{thebibliography}
FIG. 24.2 Ethnic groups and movements in southern Africa between 950 and 1000
Southern Africa to the south of the Zambezi

the seventh to eleventh centuries, for bones of domestic caprines (sheep and goat) and cattle have been found in virtually every known Iron Age group at this time. Until recently, though, it was commonly thought that the Leopard’s Kopje people were the first in southern Africa to begin cattle-keeping on a large scale. This in turn was part of a belief that two distinct economies existed during the Iron Age: an Early Iron Age one that centred on cultivation and a Later Iron Age economy based on cattle. Recent research, however, invalidates this economic distinction.

An extensive reconnaissance along the eastern fringe of the Kalahari in Botswana discovered that both eighth- to ninth-century Zhizo and tenth- to eleventh-century Toutswe sites are characterized by thick deposits of cattle dung, so thick that the deposits sometimes became vitrified through internal combustion. These Zhizo herds, therefore, were as large as those of the later Leopard’s Kopje people. Although comparable data are not available for Zimbabwe, Zhizo people along the edge of the Kalahari apparently kept more cattle than their Zhizo relatives to the east. Whatever the case, this research shows that economic variation between Iron Age communities was more likely due to conscious decisions about exploiting environmental and political opportunities, than to fixed historical or cultural traditions.

Indeed, other recent research also highlights the common culture of most Early and Late Iron Age societies in southern Africa and shows that nearly all Iron Age people shared the same attitudes to cattle, regardless of whether they kept large herds. To evaluate the importance of cattle in Iron Age society, I now analyse settlement organization.

It is possible to use the organization of space to determine the culture system of Iron Age groups because the use of space is a cultural variable: every society divides its spatial environment into distinct locations where a limited range of culturally related activities are permitted. Fortunately for Iron Age research, anthropologists have recently determined the spatial code and underlying culture system of the Southern Bantu.

This Bantu Cattle Culture is characterized by a cluster of interrelated values concerning the political role of men, the benevolence of ancestor spirits and the mediating function of cattle. Domestic cattle within this system belong to the domain of men: they are the principal form of wealth, the main avenue to wives and children, and the basis of success, status and power. These ideas generate a specific spatial pattern in which a men’s

FIG. 24.3 Spatial organization of the Bantu Cattle Culture: the senior household is usually up-slope and behind the men's court and cattle byre, which contains grain storage pits (P) and graves (G). The small circles represent raised grain bins at the back of the individual households.

court is placed in the centre of the settlement in or near the cattle byre of the headman. The headman and other important people are buried in this kraal, and communal storage pits (or special grain bins) are also dug here as a protection against famine. The huts of a man's wives are placed around this central zone according to a system of status expressed through some alternating use of left and right positions. In settlements with independent households this status system determines the location of households around the headman, and in individual houses one side is reserved for men and the other for women in accordance with the same principle. Attitudes to profane and sacred activities, on the other hand, determine what is found in front and back positions. The front of the household and settlement is allocated to public and profane activities, while the back is reserved for private and sacred activities: for example, ancestral objects are kept at the back of a hut, privately (as opposed to communally) owned grain bins are placed behind the huts of their owners, and a sacred rainmaking area is located at the back of a settlement behind the quarters of the headman. Because this sacred/profane dimension is arranged more-or-less at right
angles to that concerned primarily with status, the most important person is at the back of the settlement in the most protected position. If the front of the settlement faces downslope, then status and ritual importance are also expressed through height (see Fig. 24.3).

Despite considerable variability, this general pattern applies to many different ethnic groups in southern Africa, but it is not found among the matrilineal Bantu in central Africa, who own few if any cattle, nor among the cattle-owning non-Bantu-speakers in East Africa. The pattern instead appears to be restricted to patrilineal Bantu who exchange cattle for wives. If this correlation is correct, the presence of this pattern in the archaeological record is conclusive evidence for a distinctive Bantu system of values concerning politics and cattle.

Although this entire spatial pattern cannot be physically uncovered in a prehistoric context, it is possible to find specific constellations of features that are exclusive to the Bantu Cattle Culture. Central cattle byres containing pits and human burials in particular appear to be sufficient. Using this kind of evidence, the Bantu Cattle Culture can be traced from historic times directly back to the seventh century in southern Africa. For example diagnostic features of the spatial pattern characterize eighteenth-century stone-walled settlements attributed to Northern Transvaal Ndebele, eighteenth- to sixteenth-century stone-walled settlements associated with Sotho-Tswana speakers, sixteenth- to fourteenth-century Moloko (the archaeological name for the Sotho-Tswana ceramic complex) settlements without stone walls, fourteenth- to twelfth-century Woolandale sites, twelfth- to tenth-century Leopard's Kopje, Eiland and Toutswe sites, and tenth- to seventh-century Zhizo settlements, including those with apparently small herds. Indeed, these diagnostic features show that Zhizo people during the Early Iron Age had the same basic attitudes toward cattle as historic Nguni.

Archaeologists previously underestimated the importance of cattle to Zhizo society because most excavations were designed to retrieve ceramic samples, not economic data. As a consequence, archaeologists seldom recognized dung deposits or realized the significance of activity areas to the interpretation of economic data. Research projects specifically designed to investigate lifeways show that herding and farming were complementary

24. ibid.
aspects of one system: separate Early and Late Iron Age types of economy did not exist.

Now that the cultural background to Zhizo and Leopard's Kopje communities has been established, our understanding of the Bantu Cattle Culture can be used to interpret the important events and changes that occurred in the Shashi/Limpopo area. I first concentrate on the largest settlements.

The size of a settlement in the Bantu Cattle Culture is a direct result of political power: the larger the settlement, the more important the leader. The largest and politically most important Zhizo settlement so far discovered anywhere is Schroda, just south-east of the modern border between Zimbabwe, Botswana and South Africa. The largest known Leopard's Kopje settlement is K2, located about six kilometres southwest of the earlier Zhizo capital.

At one time K2 was thought to be a Khoisan rather than a Bantu settlement. This interpretation was greatly influenced by skeletal analyses that identified human burials from K2 as Boskop-Bush with no Negroid traits. More recent analyses, however, show that the K2 people came from an essentially Negroid breeding population, as did other Leopard's Kopje, Eiland and Zhizo communities, including Schroda. This radically different interpretation of Iron Age communities is the result of better comparative collections and better methods of analysis. Earlier analyses concentrated univariably on a few traits thought to be significant, whereas recent studies attempt to characterize the total morphological pattern of an individual through multivariate procedures. The skeletal evidence now complements that from ceramic style and settlement organization and shows that K2 and Schroda people, like most other prehistoric Southern Bantu, were Negroes.

The K2 and Schroda people were probably attracted to the Shashi/Limpopo area because of its natural resources. Given sufficient rainfall, this is a good environment for mixed agriculturalists: the broken sandstone ridges provide cultivable soils and mixed woodland; the warm temperature and relatively low rainfall generate sweet savanna grasses; and the Shashi and Limpopo rivers ensure a more-or-less permanent water supply. In addition, the Mopani woodland between the two rivers is prime elephant country, and ivory would have been easily available: even today this area is rich in elephant. Furthermore, the rivers that drain the western gold reefs of Zimbabwe flow into the Shashi and Limpopo near their confluence; and so it would have been possible to pan for alluvial gold in the vicinity of

Schroda and K2. I now show how external trade led to the evolution of the Zimbabwe Culture. I later show how this trade hypothesis is superior to other interpretations that emphasize the roles of religion and cattle.

Trade and politics: 1000–75

Archaeological evidence for contact between coastal merchants and Iron Age people in the Shashi/Limpopo area is clear. In fact, ninth-century Schroda is the earliest site in southern Africa to yield a substantial number of glass beads and ivory objects, and K2 has produced more ivory and glass beads than all other contemporaneous settlements combined. What is more, archaeologists in Mozambique have recently located eighth- to twelfth-century coastal trading stations that probably supplied the glass beads first to Schroda and then K2.

Reconnaissance of the coastal plain around Vilanculos Bay and the Bazaruto Archipelago (the bay and peninsula in Fig. 24.1 next to ‘Hola-Hola’) discovered sites with Persian pottery and Islamic glass. Preliminary excavations at one of these sites, Chibuene, uncovered an eighth- to ninth-century deposit that contained glazed and unglazed wares like those from the early periods of Kilwa and Manda further up the east coast. This Early Iron Age deposit also yielded several hundred wound and drawn, yellow, green and blue glass beads like those from Schroda and K2. Indeed, some tubular blue beads in the collection are the same type as the earliest glass beads found anywhere in Zimbabwe. The Vilanculos area thus appears to have had the earliest coastal trading stations in southeastern Africa, and the Shashi/Limpopo area appears to have been one of the first in the interior of southern Africa to be integrated in the Indian Ocean commercial network.

The recently discovered coastal stations together with Schroda and K2 were elements in the network described by al-Mas’ūdī in the tenth century:

The sailors of Oman ... go on the sea of the Zandj as far as the island of Kanbalu and the Sofāla of the Demdemah, which is on the extremity of the country of the Zandj and the low countries thereabout. The merchants of Siraf are also in the habit of sailing on this sea ... The sea of the Zandj reaches down to the country of Sofāla and of the Wāk-Wāk which produces gold in abundance and other marvels ... Although constantly employed in hunting elephants and gathering ivory, the Zandj make no use of ivory for their own domestic purposes. They

39. T. G. Trevor and E. T. Mellor, 1908; M. Watkeys, Department of Geology, Witwatersrand University, personal communication.
wear iron instead of gold and silver ... [Tusks] ... go generally to Oman, and from there are sent on to China and India.\footnote{Quoted in B. Davidson, 1964, pp. 115–16.}

We know now from other sources that glass beads, cloth and sometimes glazed ceramics were brought back to southern Africa from China and India in exchange for the gold and ivory. Significantly, these imported commodities were different from the traditional wealth in cattle in at least one way.

In traditional Zhizo and Leopard's Kopje economies cattle had to be constantly circulated to maintain the system. Wealthy men would have loaned their cattle to poor people, and rich and poor alike would have exchanged cattle for wives. Traditional wealth, therefore, could not be hoarded without destroying the system. In contrast to cattle, the distribution of gold, ivory, glass beads and cloth could be completely controlled without undermining the economy because these commodities were stor-able. Besides these storage qualities, the trade goods were imported in huge quantities. As a consequence, hereditary leaders could become exceedingly wealthy. Wealth and political power were linked in the traditional system because, among other reasons, the more marriages and loans a chief could make, the more alliance and allegiances he established. According to later Portuguese documents, some of the trade goods were used for bride wealth and once these commodities were translated into traditional economic values, the trade wealth also furthered political power.

When the Leopard's Kopje people moved into the Shashi/Limpopo area, they probably took the ivory trade away from Schroda before the trade wealth could have much impact on Zhizo society. A dramatic increase in the political power of the leaders at K2, however, is reflected in the midden associated with the chief's court. The court midden in the Bantu Cattle Culture characteristically comprises broken beer pots, the ash from the council fire, the remains of cattle slaughtered as fines or tribute, and the remains of wild animals shared among men or given as tribute to the chief. This debris is thrown into the central byre or kept next to the court, rather than mixed with other refuse elsewhere. Therefore, the magnitude of a court midden results directly from the intensity and duration of men's activity that takes place there. Originally K2 was organized like Schroda: small homesteads with their cattle byres flanked the central court of the chief. By 1020, however, the court midden at K2 became so large that it engulfed the nearby byre. At about the same time the cattle were moved out of the central area (Fig. 24.4). This removal of the central byre was the first alteration in the spatial organization of the Bantu Cattle Culture, and it was a direct consequence of increased political activity and associated changes in the relative economic value of cattle.

By 1075 the court midden had grown to a height of nearly six metres above the old byre, and the raised valley in which K2 was situated was
FIG. 24.4 Stylized reconstruction of K2 at c. 1050: the star marks the men's court; the large midden (hatched area) below the court covers an earlier cattle byre (dotted circle)
completely occupied. Recent excavations and carbon-14 dates\(^\text{44}\) show that the abrupt abandonment of K2 at this time coincided with an instantaneous increase of K2 people around Mapungubwe Hill, less than a kilometre away. Since two or three times more living space was available at Mapungubwe, it is reasonable to presume that the capital was shifted there in order to accommodate a growing population. A natural amphitheatre at the bottom of Mapungubwe Hill probably sheltered the new court because this is the only sizeable area inside the town centre free of residential debris (Fig. 24.5). The absence of cattle dung anywhere in the vicinity indicates that a byre was not erected with the court; and so, the previous alteration in the spatial pattern at K2 was perpetuated at Mapungubwe. Subsequent spatial transformations show that the origins of the Zimbabwe Culture lay here rather than at Great Zimbabwe itself.

Mapungubwe, the first Zimbabwe capital: 1075–1220

The spatial organization of the Zimbabwe Culture differs in several ways from the Bantu Cattle pattern: the king lived inside a stone enclosure on a hill above the court, not at the base of the hill; elite were buried in hills rather than in the byre; royal wives lived in their own area rather than with the king; and important men maintained prestigious residences on the outskirts of the capitals.\(^\text{45}\) I now show that these and other features occurred for the first time at Mapungubwe.

When the capital was relocated at Mapungubwe, some people moved onto the hill above the court (Fig. 24.5). It is reasonable to presume that these people included the chief and his household, since they would have lived upslope and behind the court at K2. This shift from upslope to uphill is the first time in the prehistory of southern Africa that leaders were so physically separated from their followers, and it is the first indication of an institutionalized class structure.

Shortly after the move from K2 to Mapungubwe, the K2 ceramic style began to change. Some might argue that this change signalled the appearance of a new people, but the ceramic differences are not stylistically or numerically abrupt: instead, the surface finish was refined, the earlier K2 designs merely became more complex, and the new types only gradually replaced the others. Rather than an ethnic replacement, these changes may have been due to the emergence of full-time ceramic specialists, who were a consequence of the burgeoning population and developing class structure. Further research is necessary, however, to clarify the impact of social change on ceramic style.

Other artefacts indicate continued contact with coastal traders. Spindle-

---


FIG. 24.5 Stylized reconstruction of Mapungubwe at 1075 and 1150: the star marks the men's court; $W =$ wives' area; $G =$ grave area; $RM =$ rain-making area.
whorls appear at about 1100 at Mapungubwe. These flat circular discs with central perforations were used as weights for spinning cotton thread. Since cotton-weaving was a well-established craft in Swahili towns by this time, the spindle-whorls at Mapungubwe, the earliest known in the interior, mark the introduction of weaving by coastal traders and perhaps the start of another craft speciality.

At the beginning of the trade, gold was probably more a means to wealth than wealth itself, but by about 1150 gold objects had been locally manufactured. Unique items such as a rhinoceros and a ‘sceptre’ made from thin sheets of gold tacked onto wooden cores were found in elite burials on the royal hill. This is the first time in the Iron Age of southern Africa that gold was used as a status symbol; and so it is the earliest evidence that gold had acquired a local intrinsic value.

By this time the spatial organization of Mapungubwe had been transformed into a new pattern in which stone walls demarcated important areas (Fig. 24.5). One stone-walled residence was sited next to the court at the base of the hill. This residence was most likely occupied by the principal councillor, the man in the Zimbabwe Culture who organized court cases and appointments with the king. The main staircase led from this area through a narrow cleft to the hilltop: paired sockets in the sandstone probably held wooden steps, and a short length of coursed walling marked the top of the passage. More sockets at the top may have supported a palisade fence which surrounded the hill and funnelled traffic to the right of the graveyard. On this right-hand side several huts had been erected in front of a large arc of stone walling that enclosed a special hut complex. Rare Chinese celadon from this complex, together with the stone wall, indicate that the king lived here. Stone boards for a men’s game in the foremost hut complex suggest that male retainers lived in this area, such as the soldiers, praisers and musicians described in later Portuguese documents for other Zimbabwe kings. The opposite side of the graveyard is reached by an inconspicuous passageway on the north-west end of the hill. The huts on this other side have yielded the only grindstones from the hilltop; and so they were probably occupied by royal wives. Therefore, the new pattern included a formal distinction between the wives’ residence and that of the king and his retainers.

Other features were continuities from the older Bantu Cattle pattern. For example, since the ritual rain pots behind the homestead of the chief in the older pattern were inextricably linked to the chief’s homestead, they were probably moved to the top of the hill when the royal family moved from K2. The corresponding area on Mapungubwe Hill is devoid of normal residential debris, yet it is reached by a special stone-walled pathway at the eastern end of the hill. It is likely, then, that this was a national rain-

making centre behind the king's apartment, as the Eastern Enclosure was at Great Zimbabwe. Consequently, the eastern pathway up the hill demarcates the back of the town, and the long wall on the opposite side marks the front, as at Great Zimbabwe.

The distribution of occupational debris shows that the bulk of the population resided within this western wall, but a few families lived on high spots outside the urban centre (Fig. 24.5). In the Bantu Cattle pattern men who are competitors for chieftainship, such as brothers, uncles and important affines, usually live outside the protective circle formed by the chief's immediate supporters.49 Because the same kind of competition would have existed at Mapungubwe, it is likely that the prestigious residences around the edge of the town were inhabited by such important men.

These important residences are similar to elite hilltop settlements some distance away from Mapungubwe: for example, Little Muck, 13 km away; Mmangwa, 40 km to the west;50 Mapela Hill, 85 km north-west;51 and Macena Hill, 96 km north-east. They are invariably near low-lying Mapungubwe-phase villages which were still organized around central cattle byres, for example at Mtetengwe.52 These different kinds of settlements provide the best archaeological evidence for a three-tiered political hierarchy: the low-lying sites were probably inhabited by commoners; the small hilltop sites were probably occupied by district leaders; and the capital at Mapungubwe would have been the supreme authority. The elite residences on the outskirts of the capital, then, were probably the town houses of these district leaders. Thus, the class structure of Mapungubwe society is evident in the regional distribution of settlements as well as in the spatial organization of the capital.

The sequence of changes from K2 to Mapungubwe and the similarities between Mapungubwe and Great Zimbabwe demonstrate that the Zimbabwe Culture evolved out of the Bantu Cattle Culture in the Shashi/Limpopo area. Mapungubwe, consequently, should be considered as the first Zimbabwe capital.

This sequence also clarifies the roles of religion and cattle in the evolution of the Zimbabwe Culture. Some historians believe that the Mbire moved south across the Zambezi and developed the Zimbabwe kingdom through the power of their religion before the gold trade was established with the coast.53 The archaeological evidence is clear, however, that the important ethnic movement was from the south and that the elaborate ritual that surrounded Zimbabwe kings accompanied the external trade and growth of political power rather than preceding it. Therefore, new religious forces could not have caused the rise of the Zimbabwe Culture.

Other Africanists believe that the Zimbabwe Culture arose through the ownership of cattle herds and the consequent development of grazing strategy for these large areas. As herds naturally increased, it is argued, concepts of private property developed around cattle. Since the best grazing strategy for these large herds was a transhumance cycle, according to this hypothesis, control of distant pasturages became essential, and this forced the development of a centralized political authority. The first objection to this interpretation is that cattle herds did not dramatically increase immediately before the development of the Zimbabwe Culture, for the thick dung deposits and spatial organization of the seventh-century Zhizo settlements show that cattle-oriented societies existed at least four hundred years before Mapungubwe was established. My second objection concerns the postulated transhumance cycle. The numerous commoner sites with substantial dung deposits in the Mapungubwe region negate the possibility of any regular, large-scale movement of cattle and people to distant pasturages, for the physical remains show that these settlements were just as permanent as Early Iron Age communities.

More important than these substantive errors, however, is the confusion between political centralization and cultural change. Various cattle-based societies within southern Africa have been highly centralized, such as the Bamangwato, Matabele, Zulu and Swazi, and yet these societies still had the same cultural values as the rest of the Southern Bantu, and, accordingly, their settlements were still organized according to the same principles that underlay K2 and Schroda. It follows then that private wealth in cattle may have been a necessary precursor to the evolution of Zimbabwe, but it was not a sufficient cause.

Thus, neither the cattle nor the religious hypothesis explains the present data. The complete trade hypothesis, on the other hand, accounts for the long period of cattle-keeping before the rise of Mapungubwe, the enlarged court midden at K2, the move from K2 to Mapungubwe, the subsequent spatial alterations at Mapungubwe, and the continuity of the Bantu Cattle Culture in other parts of southern Africa. As this chapter has shown, the transformations at K2 and Mapungubwe that lead to the Zimbabwe Culture were the result of increased political power made possible by the ivory and gold trade.

The history of Madagascar before +1000, sometimes even before +1500, is often seen as an area of uncertainty in which numerous and contradictory hypotheses have been put forward for decades without ever being able to secure general agreement. The written sources brought to light in the Island at best go back to the twelfth century, and the growth of archaeology has been too recent—and its means too limited—for it to provide us with reliable statistical and chronological results, which would place historical reconstructions on wholly reliable bases. Making use of non-Malagasy sources, since the old works of G. Ferrand, has been virtually limited to works in the Arabic language; in any case, use of these sources involves knowledge of many languages with which specialists on Madagascar are not normally familiar, and mastery of knowledge that is usually far beyond the capacities of the small teams currently in existence. It no doubt takes a fair amount of boldness to write a history of Madagascar from the inside between the seventh and eleventh centuries of the Christian era.

It was tempting to begin using the oral sources in all the forms in which they can be found today in Madagascar, and this is what we have done in this chapter. These sources have survived in a variety of circumstances. Sometimes, especially in the south-east, they have been attached to documents written in Arabic-Malagasy script (volan’Onjatsy or sorabe); sometimes they have been absorbed, in the form of traces that are difficult to interpret, in sources that have been much reworked; sometimes they are

3. For an interesting survey of the question, see D. Rasamuel, 1985, 1986.
4. On which much important work is being done today in Madagascar itself, under the guidance of Professor Ludwig Munthe.
5. This is the case, for example, with a source recently located in Lower Manan-jara by B. Domenichini-Ramiaramanana, among the Ravoaomena Andria-manavanana, a tiny minority group that claims to be the descendants of the local dynasty that existed before that of the Zafi(n-d)Raminia, whose arrival in the north-east of the Island has been dated to the late eleventh century. The traditions of these latter, constructed over almost a millennium of virtually continuous domination, largely obliterated those of earlier groups.
texts of a highly formal nature, used in rituals that are still performed; sometimes, finally, they are scattered sources, where the context is not very clear, that are being collected more and more throughout the country.

Nevertheless, we think it important to show how research in progress in the Island, untrammelled by the problematic of colonialism, and of any quest for legitimacy based on racism or, even worse, evolutionism, and making proper use of both oral sources and the rich contributions of multidisciplinary approaches, has begun to open up new perspectives. We shall not enter here into the still very lively discussion between the increasingly rare—supporters of a short chronology and the supporters of a long chronology, nor into highly ideological debates on the forms and stages of the peopling of the Island; we shall not try and say who the Vazimba were, about whom so much remains to be discovered, nor shall we deal with the tales of settlement by 'Arabs', which were for a long time taken literally as accounts of the origin of a good many Malagasy groups. All these are matters that require serious examination and study before debates about them are resumed. We want here, rather, to open up discussion on other matters, using other sources of information.

The problem of understanding oral sources

An enormous effort is under way in Madagascar to collect and study all possible sources in this area. Like everywhere else, they demand a precise methodology; in the case of Madagascar, linguistics plays a very important role in opening up the historical information that these sources contain.

A manuscript recently edited and transcribed by Ludwig Munthe has drawn attention especially to a whole corpus of very scattered information about a 'giant' named Darafify which requires close critical atten-
FIG. 25.1 Madagascar and the Comoros
The first thing was to know whether the names provided by this cycle, for the 'giants' in question, had any historical validity or not. The profound homogeneity of the Malagasy language, which derives from the unity of its underlying Austronesian foundation and does not, as has been claimed, date from the Merina expansion in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, makes it possible not only to identify borrowings from other languages rather easily and locate them chronologically in the cultural history of the country, but also to work at least momentarily and in the same way on any tradition transmitted in Malagasy.

We had, thanks to the Oslo A6 manuscript, a document in Malagasy which appeared, in addition, to be the most complete and coherent version of the story of Darafify and his intervention in a particular region. Analysis of it enabled us not only to uncover some of the political and social circumstances under which it was transmitted, but also to conclude that the katibo in the south-east had taken good care to respect its formal character, even if they had no hesitation about removing from it anything that might undermine the reputation as first 'civilizers' of the region usually attributed to their ancestors who had 'come from Arabia'. It was thus possible, as a first step, to proceed to the study of names. Each of these was, in accordance with Malagasy usage, formed according to precise rules, which are perfectly 'decodable'.

The first clear information provided by the names of the 'giants' in question was that these names are made up of a masterly mixture of words of Austronesian, Sanskrit or Persian origin, but they all relate to the trade in aromatics, spices, perfumes and medicinal herbs. The form adopted by these various elements made possible the acceptance of the whole range of such terms as neologisms which had arisen in the Island during a period (prior to Islam) of contacts between Madagascar and the regions considered and put forward to suggest the hypothesis according to which the regions of Madagascar concerned had participated in trade in the Indian Ocean prior to the seventh century.

Darafify, Darofipy, Darafeyy Fatrapaitan(ana) are formed from simple
words which, except dara, are still used in Malagasy and we need to look at how they are used. Fil(m)py–fify relate to food, cosmetic and pharmaceutical products; among these was no doubt what Etienne de Flacourt identified in the seventeenth century as being the Costus of Madagascar.\footnote{16} If we refer to ethnoscience, this first category of products included, first, animal products coming mainly from the operculum of the Murex genus of shellfish and especially of the Murex trunculus, which are still used in powder form in the south-west. A second group in this category are vegetable products derived essentially from certain Myristicaceae (the bark and gum of Haematodendron or Mauloutchia sp.,\footnote{17} but probably also from the root of a herbaceous plant.\footnote{18} Also in this category of fil(m)py–fify were the various varieties of wild pepper (Piper borbonese DC), presently known as ‘pink pepper’ (Piper pachyphyllum Baker and Piper pyriofolium Vahl) inherent in the term Darafely.\footnote{19} At the beginning of the nineteenth century, Barthélémy Hugon\footnote{20} identified them as being the ‘true cubeb of the Arabs’, who were first great consumers of it and later re-exported it.

Finally there was benjamin (fatra or Styrax benzoin Dryander) remembered in the name of the giant Fatrapaitaï(na), but which seems not then to have been the main export product of the Matataï(na), since it appears through this name that the measure (fatra) of benjamin (fatra) was a gift made to the purchaser when a sale was concluded (paitanana). And in the field that concerns us here, this main product must have been fimpy, which botanists have recognized as being abundant in the south-east. As for benjamin itself, which as a fixative for more volatile essences is mainly used to increase the value of these – whence no doubt its status in the trade of the Matataï(na). Miller\footnote{21} suggested identifying it with the cancanum mentioned by classical authors, which the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea included among the imports of Arabia from Malao (in present-day Somalia). And cancanum, according to Miller, reached this port along the ‘Cinnamon Route’ that he situated as passing by way of Madagascar and East Africa, ‘in the time of the Roman Empire (−29/+641)’.

There are yet other products that appear in the sources of the ‘Darafify Cycle’, but their names were not used, as the preceding ones were, to make up the names of giants. To give them their proper names, the (ha)ramy (Canarium madagascariense, C. boivini and C. multiflorum Engler) are known today as ‘Madagascar incense’ or ‘white African incense’; as regards

\footnote{16} E. de Falcourt, 1661, p. 131.\footnote{17} P. Boiteau, 1976, p. 71.\footnote{18} ibid., p. 69. See: name of ffinantsy or Bulbostylis fringalavensis Cherm.\footnote{19} The peppers are designated in Malagasy by the old names of Voamperiôferi and Tsimperiôferi, derived from borrowings from Sanskrit in the Asiatic period of the history of the language. They are also designated by the more recent name of Darafîlofi, a word used only in the north.\footnote{20} E. Heckel, 1903, p. 120.\footnote{21} J. I. Miller, 1969, p. 39.
cinnamons referred to in the placename *Ambodisiny*, a probable calque of the former *Andarasiny*, they still retain some traces of their ancient importance today: among some groups, in the solemn planting of a cinnamon root at the birth of a first son in a family. 22

Linguistics shows then that there is a link, which may yet become conscious, between the names of ‘legendary’ figures who incarnate a very abstract ancient history and the plants and precious products of Madagascar, especially in the eastern part of the Island.

For the historian, the next stage is much more difficult. On the one hand, we need to know whether the very indirect allusions that he has collected have any real historical content, and whether it might be possible to situate them in even a relative chronology; and whether this chronology in turn fits into a reliable chronology of trade in the Indian Ocean. These points will be looked at below. On the other hand — and this relates more to the internal history of the Island — we need to elicit, still within a likely chronology, the history of the power relationships among groups for ancient periods in the life of the peoples of the Island: this is certainly research of a most challenging kind but also research that is the least spectacular to report in a book such as the present one; therefore, in this *General History*, we shall omit it entirely, since the results already known and in the process of being published are available elsewhere. But we should perhaps mention some general features that are useful to the historian.

First of all, the names which have just been mentioned are, historically, difficult to use. Each of them constitutes a collective symbol and not the individual name of a ‘historic hero’; when one speaks of ‘the Darafify’, ‘the Darofipy’ and others, one is simply talking of a number of episodes in the history of the Island, which probably pre-date the eleventh century. But it also describes a given group at a given time in its history, for example when it attempted to corner the production and export of certain products; at other times, or on other occasions, the same group was perhaps known by other names.

Treating peoples as ‘giants’, like treating them as ‘dwarfs’ are also codes,

22. Today, in the Island, cinnamons include both introduced *Cinnamona* and endemic *Cinnamosma*, which include one of the famous ‘conquerors of every problem’ (*mandravasarioatra*, *Cinnamosma fragrans* Baillon) so often prescribed by both empiricists and diviners. When they are not called *kanely*kanelina ('French cannelle), from names spread during colonization with the development of the exploitation of *Cinnamomum zeylanicum* Breyn, cinnamons, in everyday language, are usually described by names of Austronesian origin, *hazomanitra* ‘perfumed wood’ and *hazomamy* ‘sweet wood’, except in the north. There, despite the extreme openness of the language to borrowings from French, people continue to call them nostalgically *darasiny* ('Persian dār čini ‘cinnamon’, literally, ‘wood/tree from China’ or ‘gate of China’) as in Persian and languages that have borrowed this word from it, either directly or through Arabic. And it is thus, as it were, indirectly, under this latter name, that they are mentioned in the Darafify cycle through the toponym of *Ambodisiny*, ‘At the foot/feet of the cinnamon(s)/Near the cinnamons’. 686
PLATE 25.1 Cinnamon-tree: Cinnamomum zeylanicum

687
the key to which we need to discover, with no thought of using these facts as actual historical realities. Just as treating people as ‘dwarfs’ was used by Malagasy tradition in the case of the Vazimba, to confirm their political consignment to oblivion in various parts of the island, so treating people as ‘giants’ was no doubt used, in the case of the Darafify — and thus too of their opponents — in order to immortalize groups which were so prestigious that many local traditions endeavoured to preserve the memory of them.

The rewriting of traditions, their contradictions and the opposing legitimacies that they attempted to secure are inextricably mixed up. It is probably impossible, without lengthy surveys in which anthropology and linguistics would have a major role to play, to conclude too rapidly, straightaway, on the basis of the few undeniably historical features that can certainly be found in the ‘Darafify cycle’ and which relate to the internal history of the Island, that a part of the history of the Island can already be written based on them. They constitute irreplaceable elements of potential. But who were these ‘Darafify’, who came from the north-east, and who are said, at a time that is difficult to specify, to have sought to escape from what the oral sources stress was their traditional condition as cattle-rearers? They are said then to have become involved, through tact, or by force, depending on places and cases, in a trade (how regular? on what scale?) which may have carried (using Austronesian (?) or Persian (?) middlemen) products in demand in the world to the north of Madagascar. It should be noted that the regions of the Island involved in these obscure events were situated in the eastern coastal part and the south.

The geographical area within which the powerful group of the Darafify — tempted to acquire a monopoly of this trade — intervened is already broadly delimited by the places where the traditions forming the cycle were collected. It is more narrowly defined not only by the places where the facts and events recorded occurred, but also by the places where the human achievements attributed to them are still to be found, almost all of which are connected with the working of chlorite-schist (quarries and manufactured goods). It then comes out quite clearly that this area, although it had an extension into the Mahafale in the south-west (given as the last region reached by a migration that had chosen to cut across country, leaving the east coast somewhere south of the Manampatrana23) stretched essentially from the extreme north of the Island to the basin of the Matataina(na). It embraced, in short, except for the extreme south, the whole eastern seaboard of the Island, which is moreover particularly rich in these aromatics, spices, perfumes and medicinal herbs, and the conditions under which they were exploited (production and commercialization) also emerge quite clearly from the deciphering of proper names, particularly all those recorded in the text of the Oslo A6 manuscript. Surveys already conducted

23. On the importance of the Maropaika gate for moving from east to west and vice versa, see E. Ralaimhoatra, 1966, p. 54.
along the lower Mananjara have shown the scale of the ideological rework-
ing suffered by the tradition of the Ravoaimena Andriamananavananaha, when
the Zafi(n–d) Raminia arrived.

The part of the history of the lower Mananjara after the arrival of the
Zafi(n–d) Raminia is probably to be dated after the end of the eleventh
century. Nevertheless, knowledge of it seems to be fundamental for anyone
seeking to understand the later evolution of political and social organiza-
tion in various regions of the Island; it is equally vital for anyone wanting
to have a better understanding of the context within which the export trade
developed, whose ups and downs probably profoundly marked the earlier
period.

By revealing both the community of origins between the old princes of
the Darafify and Zafi(n–d) Raminia and the impact of their solidarity on
the history of Madagascar, this history forces us to turn to the pre-
Malagasy history of the Zafi(n–d) Raminia. This history, over which much
ink has already been spilled, is certainly still very little known. However,
from relatively reliable data it can already be agreed that, while delimiting
the area of the activities of these great Austronesian traders, which in-
cluded most of the Indian Ocean covered by sea routes, the successive
migrations of the Zafi(n–d) Raminia, from Sumatra to the shores of the
Red Sea, and from there to India (Mangalore), and then to Madagascar,
might equally reflect the general movement of sea-borne trade among the
Austronesians which, at least partly, embraced Malagasy external trade
from the seventh to the eleventh century. But before attempting to go so
far, it is no doubt desirable to complete our survey of life in Madagascar,
through the contributions of disciplines whose main sources owe but little
to the linguistic sciences.

Ethno-botany or archaeology: is it likely that the products
mentioned were exported?

The present-day vegetation of Madagascar is generally considered to be
the direct or indirect result of human activity. The disappearance, about
the beginning of the present millennium, of some animals (large lemurs,
large ‘ostriches’ or Aepyornis, large land tortoises, giant crocodiles, dwarf
hippopotamuses, etc.) that lived in this original environment, and whose
cemeteries are to be found often around old water points, seems at least to
indicate that there had already been a considerable change in the forest
cover, even if it may also be supposed that there was also a period of rela-
tively lower rainfall in order to explain the drying up of some regions. And
it may moreover be noted that in some sites dating from our period (Lam-
boharana, + 730 ± 80; Taolambiby, + 900 ± 150; and Ambasambazimba,
+ 915 ± 50), traces of human industries (teeth pierced for ornamentation,
pottery, etc.) are found associated with the remains of these sub-fossil ani-
mals; doubt as to whether they are exactly contemporaneous arises from our ignorance as to their respective situations in the stratigraphy. 24

Whether it is a matter of the flora or the fauna, the action of men in other times was not only negative, as there is a tendency too often to portray it. In the area of the flora, the wealth of endemic species (86 per cent) and the rarity of particular types (less than 8 per cent) that are the typical features of the Malagasy flora, testify both to the length of time that Madagascar has been an island and to the fact that the island was once attached to a large continent, the present-day remnants of which are covered with a similar primitive flora. It is a situation that suggests that the immigrants to Madagascar, wherever they came from, found there plants identical to or closely resembling those in their own country or countries of origin, many of which were plants that were already traded or could be traded in due course. It is enough, to be convinced on this point, to examine, for example, the list of plants made by Flacourt, 25 who naturally paid particular attention to commercial plants, and to compare it with the lists drawn up for imports from Egypt, the Roman Empire and Persia.

Two questions are thus posed: were these plants and products of animal origin, the memory of which has been retained in the oral sources, especially in the east of the Island, collected and sold in ancient times? That is what we are now going to analyse. Were they integrated into a trading area that included, before Islam and in its early days, all or part of the Indian Ocean? That is what we shall look at below. According to the census made by Perrier de la Bathie, 26 48 per cent of non-endemic Malagasy plants were imported by man. More remarkable still, and something that could not be explained by biogeography – which would normally expect to find more non-endemic plants in the west, separated from East Africa simply by the Mozambique Channel, than in the east, separated from any other continent by the vastness of the Indian Ocean – 57.14 per cent of these plants are found in the windward region – and, exceptionally, in the Sambirano (north-west) – whereas there are only 14.28 per cent found in the leeward region, the remaining 28.75 per cent being common to both regions. Perrier de la Bathie felt that the introduction of these plants occurred indirectly through the activity of man, after the break-up of the continent to which Madagascar initially belonged. He used this to demonstrate in passing the antiquity of the human presence in the Island. 27 The planting of valuable species and the acclimatization of new plants was no doubt undertaken before the destruction of the forest by silviculturists or at least by true wandering land-clearers, who were generally careful about restoring the soil and the vegetable formations. Archaeological research is

25. E. de Flacourt, 1661, pp. 111-46.
27. ibid., pp. 143-4. For a recent survey see C. Chanudet, 1979.
less developed than research in biogeography or palaeontology, and it has so far brought to light only one site pre-dating our period (Saradrano, a fishermen’s site in the south-west, $+490 \pm 90$), but it has on the other hand revealed some that do date to our period. And, as with vegetation formations, these sites have as it were confirmed in advance some of the facts recently established by the decoding of oral tradition which, in turn, should make it possible to propose a better-based interpretation of the results of surveys and excavations.

In the northern region that tradition gives as the place of origin of the Darafify, between Bobaomby and Daraina, at the bottom of a bay protected from the swell of the open sea by Nosy Valasola (‘The island residence of the envoy’ or ‘The island reliquary’), Nosy Fiherenana (‘The island of return’), Nosy Komankory (‘The island of pigs’) and Nosy Ankomba (‘The island of lemurs’), is to be found Irodo, from the name of a present-day village and on the river that empties into this bay. Since there has been no pollen analysis, there is nothing yet to confirm or refute the exploitation there of the *dara* and other commercial plants remembered here in the name Daraina (‘From which *dara* were made’/‘Where the *dara* are plentiful’). But Battistini has pointed out that the coastal plain, where shells of the eggs of the *Aepyornis* (*vorompatra* ‘bird of the deforested zones’) have been found, ‘is almost wholly covered by a *satrana* savanna, which is certainly a degraded formation’, and the region situated south of Ampasimena bears the name of Ankibe, describing a zone that was put to fire by land-clearers and herdsmen.

The three coastal sites that have been the object of surveys have revealed a population with the same culture characterized, according to Vérin, by ‘the styles of its pottery (pots, jars, legged bowls), the use of chlorite-schist (pots, bowls) and the consumption of *Pyrazus palustris*. Archaeologists estimate that this site, which was in use at least until the middle of the fifteenth century, was already occupied in the ninth and perhaps even in the seventh century. In those early times, fishermen knew how to work iron and glass and were in contact with an Arab-Persian trading area. Among the shells (*Pyrazus palustris*, *Ostrea mytoloides*, *Turbo*, etc.), no doubt mainly destined for consumption and craftwork (spoons carved from *Turbo*), are found, but in small quantities, *Murex* which provided *fimpy*, a

29. Thinking of the frequent use of islands as cattle pens in the north, one is tempted to translate *Nosy Valasola* as ‘the island that is a substitute for an enclosure’, but that would normally be *Nosy Solovala*, since *solo* is only found as a substantive.
31. Carbon-14 datings: Kigoshi: GAK 380: 1200±140 BP; GAK 692: 1090±90 BP; GAK 350b: 980±100 BP; giving a maximum range of from +610 to +1070.
perfume still sought today by Muslim ‘Indians’ in Madagascar and whose name is to be found, as we have seen, in the name of Darafify.

Other sites dating at least partly from our period are to be found in the far south of the Island, in present-day Antandroy country, which it was until recently thought was only peopled in the eighteenth to nineteenth centuries, since no European source ever mentioned the obvious signs of its early occupation, despite the fact that its population was relatively dense and seems to have lasted until the sixteenth century. These are essentially two groups both situated on the banks of the Manambovo (‘The river with traps/water holes’), that of the site of Talaky33 (‘The well seen’), astride the mouth, and that of the site of Andranosoa34 (‘At the good water’), partly occupied by the imposing Manda(n-d)–Refilahatra (46 ha) (‘Citadel of the Great One who brings rank/order’), at the confluence of the Manambovo with the River Andranosoa. To these two groups can be added upriver that of the site of Andaro35 (‘With barks/skins/leathers’ or ‘feet of daro’), composed of Mahirane (25 ha) (‘The clear-sighted/intelligent/clever ones’), and Ambonifanane (6 ha) (‘Above the hydra/snake/grave’, ‘With the ruling hydra/snake/grave’), a group that has not been given an absolute date, but which clearly belongs to the same culture as (inter)fluvial sites and stone forts such as Manda(n-d)–Refilahatra-Andranosoa, and goes back to a period when, in inhabited places, the various species of sub-fossil fauna could still be found.

Like the written sources, the oral sources, including the Darafify cycle, are silent about these sites, whose populations, such as the ones who occupied Andranosoa, were part of a territorial organization with ritual ceremonies in which various clusters took part (cf. the nature of the zebu remains found in the rubbish heap at Andranosoa),36 but have disappeared without leaving any trace in the region, whose present-day inhabitants know nothing whatsoever about their distant predecessors. The carbon-14 datings are interesting:37 they indicate a period from +940 to +1310 as the extreme limits, with a greater likelihood for the eleventh century. It remains to be explained what riches that could have been exported by Talaky were exploited by the populations settled in the hinterland. There is nothing in observations made so far that can convey an accurate picture.

Even though the south was perhaps already at this time affected by the beginnings of drought, it certainly had different climatic conditions in the tenth and eleventh centuries, which probably meant that the Manambovo was a river whose flow was greater and did not yet have the enormous seasonal variations that it has today. Its upper reaches then crossed a wooded region that made possible an economic life that rested in part on

37. GIF 4571: 920 ± 90 BP; GIF 4570: 730 ± 90 BP; for Talaky: 840 ± 80 BP.
metal-working, a heavy consumer of fuel. This metal-working involved copper and iron, and ores of these metals have been found, but also, unlike for the copper ore around Bemarivo in the north, so have traces of ancient exploitation. However, copper, which was to enjoy great fortune in later periods, seems at first to have led there only to craft jewellery production notably of the vangovango bracelets with a broken ring that have been found as far away as Irodo and that are still called, even when they are made of silver, by the name haba. Once again, the linguistic associations are interesting. The Cham haban and the ċuru saban both mean copper in the continental Austronesian domain;38 saba in both Malagasy and in Comorian is still the usual word for copper today.39

Iron was exploited in significant quantities. Here, the metal does not seem to have been worked on the spot, since the usual practice of re-use, attested to by ethnography, is not enough to explain the striking contrast between the abundance of traces of exploitation of the ore (ashes, charcoal, slag) and the virtual absence of iron objects, the sites of the period having yielded only one bracelet (Andranosoa), a harpoon and fish-hooks (Talaky). To this might be added — in a country where the existence of stone tools has not yet been attested — marks of axes and knives on bones (Andaro, Andranosoa). No doubt the smelted products were largely exported through Talaky, whose development, if not its foundation, thus appears to be linked to its role as an outlet to the sea of export products from the interior, which moreover were apparently not limited to smelted products.

The toponym Andaro40 and the discovery made there of numerous remains of the bones of young animals suggests that young animals were consumed there in large quantities. This no doubt had less to do with the gastronomic tastes of the inhabitants than with the need to slaughter the animals before their skin (daro) was too spoiled by brambles and thorns. Sheep skins may have been a second export product. And it may well be that the large surplus of meat that was thus obtained was salted and smoked, using techniques of preservation known to have existed at the time. This preserved meat could naturally have been a third export product. But, if the maritime traffic was heavy, this meat probably served mostly to supply the boats. Nor is it impossible that some of it was destined for local consumption. It is already quite certain that these inhabitants of the interior in the south who, following the traditional Malagasy way of doing things,41 used a very refined cuisine based on boiling and sophisti-

40. The toponym may refer to the exportable plants mentioned above in the discussion of the oral sources.
cated methods of preparing meat (art of carving, etc.), were at least not deficient in animal proteins.

In addition to sheep, they also reared— but in smaller numbers, it would seem— oxen and goats, the consumption of which is attested by the leftovers from meals, which also show the consumption of products of hunting (bones of birds, hedgehogs, and other small rodents) and fishing (fish bones, crab claws, shells of sea urchins, freshwater and seawater shellfish). As for their food plants, which are not mentioned in the historical tradition and for which there is no archaeological evidence, no doubt they at least included those among the earliest plants domesticated on the Island that were present in the region, yams and taros or similar plants, which could also be gathered in the forest, as they still are today. And to them may be added, in addition to the calabash gourd with its many uses which is widely found there, the providential Madagascar periwinkle (Catharanthus roseus Linn.), which Malagasy sailors knew traditionally and probably diffused among other sailors at a very early date. This is certainly not, strictly speaking, an edible plant, but the appetite-reducing properties of its leaves relieve hunger pangs, and earned it the name of tonga (literally: 'which enables (one) to arrive') in the south. Indeed, it is not necessary to penetrate into the hinterland to procure it, for it is rather a coastal species, even managing to survive in salty areas. Thus it may be supposed that the boats that must have called in at Talaky could take it on board as canoes of today do.

The tiny part of Talaky that has been explored, on the east bank, has only revealed one fisherman's dwelling (in addition to the harpoon and the fishing hooks, and weights for fishing lines or nets); its everyday objects are rather simple utilitarian pieces and cannot bear comparison with those from sites in the interior (varied and quite richly decorated pottery, various pieces of jewellery, etc.). But, as at the site at Irodo, spoons carved from Turbo shells have been found, and, as at the sites at Andaro and Andranosoa, the local pottery bears traces of graphitizing with no apparent utilitarian purpose that has, it seems, been found outside Madagascar (on ancient as well as contemporary pottery) only on certain pieces of pottery from East Africa (Lelesu tradition) and southern Africa (Gokomere-Ziwa-Zhizo tradition) and on those in the Sa-huyng-Kalanay tradition (especially in ancient Champa), in the Austronesian area. And the presence on the sites along the upper reaches of the Manambovo of chlorite-schist weights and pottery imitating stone models, sea products and overseas products

---

42. D. Rasamuel, 1983.
Madagascar

(sgraffito from Arabia and other imported pottery not yet precisely dated, ivory pendants from Africa or Asia), is final proof that Talaky, which must have been the transit point for all of it, was not a site of fishermen of the Sarodrano type. Moreover, without even mentioning the sites on the west bank, the group of sites on the plateau overlooking the dune sites where the survey was conducted is already too far from the sea for men who were simply engaging in subsistence fishing, and the fact that it covers such a large area would itself suggest other types of activities, e.g., large-scale fishing whose produce must have been in part preserved and sold like the mutton. But all this still requires confirmation.

This inadequacy of the data, which is already perceptible at the level of a single site, is much more so when one thinks of the size of the country. But further research, systematically directed towards the study of river mouth sites and, upstream, of economically strategic zones on the sides of the basins, would no doubt make it possible soon to proceed to a reconstruction of the economic and social life of the whole of Madagascar at this key period in its ecological and political history. For, the data from archaeology, in their present state, combined with the data from ethnography and tradition, already suggest the existence of a remarkable cultural and material unity which comes through both in conceptions that are still alive in present-day Malagasy civilization and in the features of the material culture dated from this period. Some of these – notably the imported pottery – prove clearly that some Malagasy groups were part of a network of relations that reached out into areas that the study of traditions had not previously brought out: the countries on the continent bordering the South China Sea, on the one hand, and the countries bordering the Mozambique Channel on the other. And this must naturally lead to extending to these 'new' areas the search for data that might throw light on the history of Madagascar.

Madagascar in the international context

From the elaborate data of tradition to the more direct data provided by archaeology, the area of Madagascar has thus already provided, for our period, various indications of relations with a wide area overseas, some points in which are barely mentioned, while others are stressed. But given the present gaps in this documentation, nothing can be deduced from it immediately either as to the true nature of the relations between the Island and each of these points, or as to their intensity. The indications provided by the study of the oral sources and by archaeology make it possible to abandon, finally – we would like to hope – the hypothesis of a short chronology, which placed the peopling of Madagascar at the end of the first millennium,45 thus, by the same token disproving research that based its

There is no longer any doubt that man was present in Madagascar, at least in the regions on which recent surveys have thrown new light, long before +1000. If we include the study of non-Malagasy sources, which must of course be handled extremely carefully, since Madagascar is never mentioned by a name that is unambiguous, the period from the seventh to the eleventh century, despite what is still obscure about it, can no longer be accepted, in Malagasy history, as the time when peopling began. The time has even come to abandon once and for all so far as concerns Malagasy history, all debates arising from the inadequacy of knowledge about the world of Austronesia. The Island appears indeed to have been situated, without canvassing all the evidence that we have, in a broad oceanic context.

The history of navigation in the Indian Ocean remains to be written; for the present, there are only partial studies and it is difficult to build a wholly reliable synthesis out of these. The maritime expansion of the Arab-Muslim world from the eleventh century onwards at least has probably overshadowed, in the plethora of sources and studies, the part played by other peoples and other regions in the earliest navigations. Perhaps more attention needs to be paid than has been so far to the degree of perfection reached — by the first century of the Christian era — in the sailing techniques of those whom the Chinese in the first millennium embraced under the name Kun-lun, among whom the Austronesians were probably a majority or in any event very numerous. But it seems that what was being referred to were mainly seafaring peoples of continental and insular Southeast Asia. These Austronesians were the first to be recognized as being the builders of the great sewn boats intended for sailing the high seas, which the Chinese authors from the third to the ninth century described by the name of kun-lun bo, describing them as ships with woven sails averaging 50 m in length and capable of transporting between 500 and 1000 people and a cargo of between 250 and 1000 tons. Rafts and canoes with an outrigger or outriggers may perhaps have continued to transport some Austronesian immigrants at the end of the first millennium to Madagascar — poverty and courage, like the taste for adventure, are timeless. However, it is no longer possible, for periods after the third century — and perhaps even before this time — to tie the date of the peopling of the Island to the

46. Cf. for example, J. Bernard, 1983.
47. The best-known to the Chinese were certainly the founders of the future Indianized Austronesian kingdom of Champa. This kingdom was born of a victory by the Kun-lun over the Chinese province of Je-Nan in +137; later, it frequently demonstrated its unruliness and spirit of conquest, including against China, of which it had become theoretically a tributary.
49. Just as Chinese missionary monks voyaged, until the mid-eighth century (see G. Ferrand, 1919 (March–April), pp. 245–6) on the boats of the Kun-lun, so the Chinese envoys to the southern seas from the time of the emperor Wu (—140/—86) were already travelling on the trading ships of the ‘Barbarians’.
sailing capacities of those ‘frail skiffs’, that some supporters of the short chronology – overlooking both Donque’s warning and the quick journey to the east coast of Madagascar by way of Ceylon, the Maldives and the Chagos demonstrated by Paul Adam – still see happening necessarily at the end of a slow advance extending over several centuries punctuated by more or less long-lived settlements along the shores of the Indian Ocean. Such settlements did perhaps exist; but, from very early on, their creation, rather than an ineluctable need flowing from the state of technical knowledge, could have derived from the outcome of the choice and strategy of the users of an oceanic space whose routes had been recognized for many years, and whose economic and political geography was known. Thus, we feel today that for the Austronesians in antiquity, the peopling of Madagascar, if not necessarily its discovery, was probably already part of a process where the place left to chance had ceased to be dominant.

If it is agreed that the Austronesians were the first to sail towards Madagascar (whose peopling, language and culture bear their imprint – on this point no doubt has emerged during recent research), there is good reason, given the evidence looked at above, to examine closely the hypothesis that the Island was integrated into an inter-regional trade system which provided a demand for a number of valuable products. Timber, caulking gum, aromatics and spices were, from a very early date, supplied by gathering techniques in the Island; these included cinnamon which seems to have been one of the most profitable products in such trade, whose exploitation by protected gathering techniques was a speciality of ancient Champa.

There is no denying that this hypothesis clashes with many received ideas and that it contains features that are still very fragile alongside ones that are firmly established. It rests first on the likely participation of Austronesians in the transport of persons and goods in the western Indian Ocean at the beginning of the first millennium. Various pieces of evidence suggest the possible presence of the ‘vessels of black men’ – kun-lun-bo – close to Africa; the reference by the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea to sewn boats with woven sails on the northern coast of Azania; the tall ‘man-

50. See G. Donque, 1965, p. 58, giving ‘the proof that geographical determinism does not exist’.
53. Personal communication from G. Condominas based on the documentation assembled by Louis Condominas on ‘Les Mois de Haut Son-Tran’.
54. See the expression kolan dio phonta which, in the Periplus, ‘describes the boats sailing between India and south-east Asia (Chryse)’ (P.-Y. Manguin, 1979). In this expression, which some authors have already connected with kun-lun-bo, the first element is to be related to Kuladan or Koladya which, according to Xu Yun-qiao, basing himself notably on an article by Chen Ching-ho, devoted to the founding ancestors of the kingdom of Lin-yi (the ancient name of Champa), means ‘land of black men’ and is to be related to the migrations of the Kun-lun.
55. These might however derive from Egyptian boats.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

eating Ethiopians' of its southern coast mentioned by Ptolemy;\textsuperscript{56} the sewn boats with a single rudder that probably belonged to the Chams,\textsuperscript{57} present in the Red Sea in the sixth century.\textsuperscript{58} The list of facts reported by Miller can be added to the fact that the cultivation of banana trees from Southeast Asia in East Africa is very old, that coconut oil was exported through Rhapta in the time of the \textit{Periplus}, that war elephants ridden by Seres\textsuperscript{59} were present in the 'Ethiopian' army before the third century,\textsuperscript{60} that seafaring Cham traders participated in the Zandj slave trade\textsuperscript{61} both to Asia and to the Middle East\textsuperscript{62} and that an acute awareness of the unity and weight of the black world was attributed to the Zandj by al-Djâhiz.\textsuperscript{63} All

\textsuperscript{56} See H. N. Chittick, 1968b, p. 103. The \textit{Book of the Marvels of India} in the tenth century, still spoke of the 'man-eating Zandj' in the land of Sofala (see A. Miquel, 1975, p. 172). But cannibalism, according to Pierre Alexandre, concerns only a minority of African groups and is to be found rather in Central Africa.

\textsuperscript{57} P.-Y. Manguin, 1979, says 'to the continentals', but the same author (1972, p. 44) specifies that the Vietnamese 'have never been a seafaring people'.

\textsuperscript{58} See H. N. Chittick, 1979b.

\textsuperscript{59} Although this name normally describes the Chinese, and J. H. Needham, 1970, pp. 140–1, following Pelliot and including rather improperly south and south-east China, does not rule out that the possibility that in antiquity there might have been 'Chinese' ocean voyaging as far as the port of Adulis, these Seres were not Chinese. In fact, these Seres, from whom the emperor received domestic or trained elephants, on the same terms as tribute from the Barbarians in the south as silk, aromatics, spices, etc. did not have war elephants; and those of the Chams, who may moreover be suspected to be behind these Seres and who were using these 'tanks' as much as the Indians, were still sowing terror in the Chinese army until the middle of the fifth century (see G. Maspéro, 1928, p. 72).


\textsuperscript{61} G. Maspéro, 1928, p. 34, translating the \textit{Ling W(a) Tai Ta (Ling Dai Da in Pinyin)}, Vol. 2, p. 11, says that 'Most Chams carry on the business of slave traders; their junk transports men instead of goods'. The slaves whom the Chams traded, raiding for them or purchasing them at very high prices or in exchange for 'scent wood' – see the \textit{Tchou Fan Tche (Zhu Fan Zhi)} by Tchao Jou-Koua (Chau Ju-kua) quoted on the same page of Maspéro – came partly from the eastern Austronesian islands (Moluccas, etc.); but the same Ling Wai Dai Da, published in 1178 by Zhou Qu-fei, asserted that some came from Kun-lun Zengqi, or 'Zandj land of the Kun-lun', 'in the south-western sea'.

\textsuperscript{62} Many of these Zandj slaves whose presence in China is known from 724 (tribute offered to the court by the Nousantarian rulers of Srivijaya), were destined for the Arabs who, according to Zhou Qu-fei, paid a high price for them and used them particularly as porters (see translation in G. Ferrand, 1919 [March–April], p. 253).

\textsuperscript{63} \textit{Livre de la Supériorité des Noirs sur les Blancs} (Book of the Superiority of Blacks over Whites), an unpublished translation kindly made available by Jean Dévisse. The black world mentioned in this work ranges from the Zandj of Africa to the 'Chinese' of south-east China, by way of the Austronesians of Zabadj who appear in it as Nousantarians (see on this A. Miquel, 1975, p. 78, who, taking al-Zabadj as a doublet of Djâvâga, also sees in it the whole of the Sumatra-Java nexus or Sumatra alone). But Zabadj, which corresponded to the Suvarnadvipa in Sanskrit (see al-Bîrûnî, quoted by G. Coedès, 1964, p. 264), which sometimes describes parts of the continent (see Coedès, 1964, p. 160) is perhaps connected with the \textit{Zabai} of Ptolemy, in whom some writers have thought they recognized Champa (see G. Maspéro, 1928, p. 2).
these are so many factors among others that testify to the antiquity and durability of contacts.

The second series of factors whose qualitative and quantitative importance will need to be assessed in the years to come relates to the part played by Madagascar in this possible movement of Austronesian boats westward. In a work which has been much criticized, Miller puts the integration of the Island into this trade at a very early date. It seems to us, given the evidence found in the oral sources and archaeology, that Madagascar was not only, as Miller believed, a screen serving to maintain commercial secrecy about the land of cinnamon and cassia, misleadingly placed in the Horn of Africa. The east coast of Madagascar was, moreover, a country rich in a number of the main products in the international trade of Antiquity and the high Middle Ages — including notably the eaglewood that Miller identified with the tarum arriving by the ‘Cinnamon Route’ — and had in addition the advantage not only of being away from the zones criss-crossed by rival fleets, but also close to the principal outlets, and particularly to the African ports contributing to supplying Egypt, and through it the Mediterranean world. The east coast of Madagascar, no doubt, supplied its products during the period covered here. The absence on the coast of Africa of certain plants, of great cultural importance, such as Calophyllum inophyllum, even inclines us to believe that Madagascar, where this plant is present, was visited earlier by the Austronesians than was East Africa. They brought both new immigrants and goods not available in Madagascar, either for local consumption or for external trade.

All that we have said above concerns, of course, the period preceding that dealt with in this volume. Since we believe that at this remote time Madagascar was already participating heavily in the Indian Ocean trade, obviously the next step is to attempt to follow the stages in this participation between the seventh and eleventh centuries. And we do so without

64. J. I. Miller, 1969, who puts (p. 171) the peopling of Madagascar in the second millennium before the Christian era, is certainly not alone in looking to such an early date; the earliest dates are suggested by physical anthropologists, from A. Rakoto-Ratsimananga, 1939, who puts it c. — 550, to R. Fourquet et al. at the Institut Pasteur, 1974, who put forward the hypothesis of a 'pre-Dravidian proto-Australoid origin'. See also note 9. In his book, J. I. Miller does not study the period covered by this volume.

65. See E. de Flacourt, 1661, p. 131.

66. See for example, J. Leclant, 1976, p. 270, who mentions cinnamon among the products arriving from East Africa that Egypt re-exported to the Mediterranean during the 25th dynasty (— 664— 525).

67. Calophyllum inophyllum Linn. is found all round the Indian-Pacific basin except in Africa. This gap led Perrier de la Bathie to place its ocean migration in very early times (see Y. Cabanis et al., 1969—70, p. 280). But the tree, which also provides timber for boats and caulking gum, was among the plants systematically cultivated by Indianized groups for the requirements of religious ritual and royal ceremonial (see A. G. Haudricourt and L. Hédin, 1953, p. 541). On the important place it occupies in Malagasy culture, see B. Domenichini-Ramiaramanana, 1983, pp. 483—6.
concealing, from ourselves or from the reader, the fact that this chronologi-
cal framework rests on a preliminary postulate: our certainty, based on sur-
veys conducted in Madagascar, that the Island was actively involved in the
oceanic trade by the beginning of the first millennium.

The first difficulties that traders from Madagascar met with seem to
have been related to the ineffectiveness of the alliance between Axum and
Byzantium against Sassanid Persia. The Sassanids, thanks to the conquest
of South Arabia (570) which they remained in control of until the conver-
sion of the last governor to Islam in 628, succeeded no doubt in partially
taking over the legacy of the South Arabians in the sea trade in the Indian
Ocean, including the Red Sea. Then conquered — and soon converted —
Persia was to some extent integrated to the expansionist policy of the Arab-
Islamic world, whose conquest of Egypt (641–2) completed the seizure of
control of the trade routes in the west by the Arabs and Persians.

Whether active or passive, the initial adaptation of the Island to this
situation manifestly consisted in entering into relations with Persian-
speaking importers, which is what explains how their influence is percept-
ible through the data yielded by the soil of Madagascar. Some of them
were, moreover, probably present on the African coast. But the at least par-
tial change in partners and the interruption of overland routes, which lay
behind not only the decline in the incense trade but also no doubt that in
other products coming up against competition with those of the Arab-
Persian world, also perhaps impeded the trade in cinnamon, which was
already in competition with Ceylon which had been backed by the Sassa-
nids since the fourth century. And when, taking advantage of the troubles
at the end of the seventh and beginning of the eighth century in South
Arabia, it seems, the people of al-Ḳumr (Comoros and Madagascar)
embarked on the conquest of Aden in their outrigger boats, it should per-
haps be seen as a partially successful attempt to restore the situation. For
these conquerors, some of whom had settled down in Yemen, and had
made Aden into their home port from where they would set out each
season, ‘sail[ing] together in a single monsoon’, had succeeded in establish-
ing a direct sailing route between their country of origin and south Arabia,
a voyage that the Arabs and Persians in the thirteenth century, according to
the testimony of Ibn al-Mudjāwir, were still taking three monsoons to
complete. Thus, in spite of everything, they were able to compete with
their rivals, since the Arab and Persian seafarers, who seem not to have
known of the Comoros and Madagascar until the tenth century — and only
had a clear idea of them by the twelfth century — continued to receive
Malagasy products on the East African coast, which they would coast
along.

Major upheavals affected the life of the western Indian Ocean in the

68. See J. I. Miller, 1969, p. 220.
69. We follow O. C. Dahl, 1951, and H. Deschamps, 1972, in their understanding of
‘Empire of the Pharaohs’ as ‘Roman rule in Egypt’.
ninth century. At present, it is difficult to be clear about the detailed situation of trade during this century. In this and the immediately following centuries, as far as the Arabic sources lead one to suppose, the voyages of the ‘Malagasy’ seafarers probably usually ended at Aden. Their long familiarity with Muslim countries led to the conversion of some Malagasy to Islam, and it may even be wondered whether some voyages from al-Ḳumr to Aden and the entrance to the Persian Gulf did not in the end become part of the organization of Arab-Persian trade. One fact in any case seems virtually certain, and that is that it was Malagasy seafarers converted to Islam who initiated the sailors of Oman and Sīrāf into the direct sailing route to the north of the Island, where the earliest settlements can still be found at Onjatsy, and also to the island of Ḳanbalū, which al-Masʿūdī said was ‘inhabited by a mixed population of Muslims and idolatrous Zandj’ and which it can still not be ruled out may have been situated somewhere in al-Ḳumr, where it would have to be looked for in the northwest. But wherever exactly Ḳanbalū was situated, this clearly implies that it was at the latest by the beginning of the tenth century that the rivalry with the Arabs and Persians was no longer experienced so intensely by all Malagasy. And since that was happening at a time when, taking advantage of the situation created by the massacre of Muslims in Canton (878) and the growth of the power of Śrīvijāya, the world of the Kun-lun, through control of the straits, had just gained a real advantage over rival navies (Arab-Persian and Indian, on the one hand, Chinese on the other), things were not going to stay like that.

This control of the straits, perhaps reaching as far as the Sunda Strait, succeeded in making the Malacca peninsula, in the kingdom of Śrīvijāya, the terminus for all ships going to or coming from China. For China had become one of the largest markets of the time, and much of the trade of all the countries in the south-west of the Indian Ocean cut off from the Mediterranean had turned towards it. Madagascar, of which at least the eastern part continued to be part of the Kun-lun orbit, participated of course in this trade. In the episode of the attack of Ḳanbalū (945), it is sometimes accepted that the attackers called Wāk-Wāk by the Arabic sources came from Madagascar. The explanation for this raid given by Ibn Lākīs in The Marvels of India is accepted as satisfactory: the expedition was looking for Zandj to take into slavery and products suitable for their country and for China (ivory, tortoise-shell, leopard skins and ambergris). In fact, while

70. The Onjatsy, whose history is obscure and who, in times of tension, were rejected as ‘non-Arabs’ and described as ‘people from the sands of Mecca’, may however have arrived in the north before the Za finanzi(ṣ)–Raminia. The most convincing etymology at present remains the one that links this name to that of the Azd given by sailors from Oman.

71. A. Miquel, 1975, pp. 171–2 only rules out the possibility of placing Ḳanbalū in Madagascar – but we say rather al-Ḳumr by including in it the Comoro archipelago – because he could see no economic benefit in such a voyage.

there is no need to question these admitted motives, the interest of which lies in bringing out the fact that there did exist in the Island a market supplied by trade with the continent, from which came ivory and panther skins — as well as, probably, Zandj captives — such an expedition would be much less well explained in the context of the development of Malagasy trade with China than in that of a rivalry between the Muslim world and the Kun-lun world that Ibn Läkis called Wāk-Wāk.\textsuperscript{73}

However, although piracy and raiding were common throughout this period, and although Malagasy history in more recent periods also provides glaring examples of it, the expedition including a ‘thousand vessels’ that had come from the south to attack Ḳanbalū was not only led by Malagasy from the east coast. It also included Wāk-Wāk from the Far East, whose expeditions in these regions in the far south, for which there is evidence elsewhere,\textsuperscript{74} could not have been motivated by the quest for products which they could leave to their allies in Madagascar to take care of and which were plentiful in their own regions and were the objects of their centuries-old trade with China. Everything indicates to us that what was important for these Kun-lun or Wāk-Wāk was to oppose the Muslim advance southward, which was supported by the Islamized Malagasy, and to protect access to the mines of gold and other metals. Perhaps it can be accepted that the iron in southern Madagascar, which was so well protected by those who were exploiting it, might in itself constitute a resource that it was worth fighting to keep a monopoly of.\textsuperscript{75}

Expeditions such as that of 945 seem to have slowed down the advance of the Muslim navy for a long time. But the homogeneity of the Kun-lun world had already been affected by the proselytism of Islam. It may be that it was at this time that migrations such as that of the Zafi(n-d) Raminia left the shores of the Red Sea. At the same time, the Island began to develop its relations with East Africa — which may well have been different but which was also Islamized — probably exporting there chlorite-schist objects that it produced, as the imports of Kilwa from the tenth century onwards would tend to suggest.\textsuperscript{76}

This new assessment of the economic and naval relations between Madagascar and the Kun-lun world, on the one hand, and between the Island and the Arab-Persian world, on the other, raises new questions that relate, this time, to the internal life of the Island. The concordant observations, six centuries apart, of the \textit{Hudūd al-‘Ālām} and admiral Sīdī ‘Ali

\textsuperscript{73} For a detailed examination of what follows, see B. Domenichini-Ramiaramanana and J.-P. Domenichini, 1983 and 1984.

\textsuperscript{74} See A. Miquel, 1975, p. 173.

\textsuperscript{75} A tribute offered in 974 by the Chams included ‘forty pounds of iron’ (see G. Maspéro, 1928, p. 121).

\textsuperscript{76} See P. Vérin, 1975, p. 937, who is in agreement with the opinion expressed time and again by J. Devisse in discussing H. N. Chittick’s hypothesis. This latter envisages only an importation coming from South Arabia.
Čelebi seem to show that the old political and social structures in the south firmly resisted new influences. This should lead experts on Madagascar to take up again an examination of the question of ‘Arab’ influence which has been used too systematically to explain various features of ancient Malagasy culture. But such an examination relates rather to a study of periods after the eleventh century. The sole fact that should retain our attention is that the major alteration in perspective that we are called upon to make in this field should be the fruit of a synthesis of all the sources currently available to write the history of the period from the seventh to the eleventh century. In this exercise there is much to think about, when one realizes not only the many gaps that still exist in the evidence for this period, but also the extent of our ignorance of the previous period.

Just as the excessive influence hitherto attributed to Arab influence is today called into question, so too can one foresee that many points in the history of Madagascar in the Indian Ocean between the seventh and eleventh century, such as it comes through in our three aspects, will be the object of later revisions. There is then a great temptation to say – and this will be our conclusion – that the essential point, in the immediate future, lies perhaps less in recognition of an important turning-point in the past of the Island and in the facts that appear to be historically established or are virtually so, than in the fact of having ‘experimentally’ established the equal importance, rarely recognized, of the various categories of sources, and the need to exploit all of them equally systematically.
Although the presence of Africans outside their home continent has been attested since Antiquity, it was only during the period under review that their role in the various fields of human activities in the Muslim countries in the Middle East, in the Indian subcontinent, the Malay Archipelago and the Far East became increasingly important. Our sources on these activities are unfortunately still scanty and widely dispersed in many works and documents, written in various, mostly oriental, languages. Moreover, no systematic scholarly study has ever been done on the African diaspora in Asia.¹ This chapter is therefore a preliminary attempt to bring together available data on early relations between Africa and Arabia, as well as on the political, social, economic and cultural aspects of the African presence in the aforementioned areas.

Early contacts between Africa and Arabia: The pre-Islamic period

Commercial relations between South-western Arabia and the East African littoral as depicted by the unknown author of the *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea*² which probably dates to the late first or early second century of the Christian era, went back several centuries before. It appeared that the wealthy and powerful kingdom of ‘Awsān³ in the Yemen owed its status as a great trading centre to its extensive commercial links with East Africa. Its prosperity and power suffered an irrevocable decline when it passed under the suzerainty of Qataban in the latter half of the fifth century before the Christian era.

1. Since this chapter was drafted, I. Van Sertima (ed.), 1985 – a work on the African presence in Asia in Antiquity – has been published.
The African diaspora in Asia

The paucity of data makes it difficult to ascertain the first establishment of these trade contacts as well as how far down the East African seaboard they extended during the pre-Roman period. A. M. H. Sheriff\(^4\) has convincingly suggested the second century of the Christian era as a likely date. During the Roman period they appear to have exercised a virtual monopoly of the entire coastal trade of East Africa.

The economic unification and growing opulence of the Roman empire gave an added impetus to South Arabian mercantile activity. The growing need for exotic products such as ivory on the domestic market inevitably absorbed the East African region . . . into the international system of trade centred on the Mediterranean through the south-west Arabian state of Himyar.\(^5\) This was accompanied by 'political domination' and 'social penetration' bringing about the rise of various seagoing and trading peoples of mixed parentage and acting out the role of vassals and local agents of the then prevailing international system of trade.\(^6\)

The official conversion of Axum to Monophysite Christianity\(^7\) in the early part of the fourth century of the Christian era was an historical event of great significance. A vital link was forged with the foremost Christian power of the time, the Byzantine empire. Consequently, the Axumites emerged as the promoters of Byzantine foreign policy, especially in its commercial and religious aspects. This deeply involved Ethiopia in South Arabian affairs, the most important manifestation of which was the Ethiopian invasion of the south-western corner of the Arabian peninsula in 525.\(^8\)

It has been presumed by early Arabian\(^9\) and Christian\(^10\) authors that this invasion of the Yemen was chiefly occasioned by the general persecution of Yemenite Christians leading to the wholesale massacre of the important Monophysite Christian community of Nadjrân\(^11\) by the king of


\(^5\) ibid., p. 561.

\(^6\) 'From here after two courses off the mainland lies the last mart of Azania called Raphta, which has its name from the afore-mentioned sewn boats, where there is a great deal of ivory and tortoise shell. The natives of this country have large bodies and piratical habits, and each place likewise has its own chief. The Mopharitic chief rules it according to an agreement by which it falls under the kingdom which has become first in Arabia. Under the king the people of Mauza hold it by payment of tribute, and send ships with captains and agents who are mostly Arabs and are familiar through residence and intermarriage with the nature of the places and their language.' See G. W. B. Huntingford, 1980, p. 30.


\(^8\) This date is based on the inscription found at Ḥusn al-Ghurāb – the fortress and lookout guarding the ancient port and trading city of Ḥana' on the southern coast of Arabia. For details see K. Mlaker, 1927.


\(^10\) A. Moberg, 1924; F. M. E. Pereira, 1899.

the Himyarites, Dhū Nuwās, a convert to the Jewish faith and also the leader of the pro-Persian party in the country. To avenge his coreligionists, and upon the instigation of the Byzantines, the Axumite king, Ella Ašbeḥa launched a punitive expeditionary force across the Straits of Bāb al-Mandab. Dhū Nuwās was overthrown and a native Christian by the name of Sumayfa‘ Ashwa‘ was installed as ruler.

However, the real motive for the invasion as credited in South Arabian inscriptions and the account given by Procopius was economic in nature. The demand for luxuries in the Byzantine world was enormous. The trade in these rare and precious commodities, especially silk, was virtually in the hands of the Persians, who not only kept prices at a very high level but exacted payment for them in Roman gold. If this pattern of trade relations was to have continued it would have resulted in a great drain on the wealth of Rome to the profit of its rival Persia.

Consequently, one of the most important elements of Byzantine foreign policy under Justinian (reg. 527–65) was a circumvention of the Persian monopoly of the trade by the establishment of a southern sea route to the farther East through Ethiopian intermediaries and an attempt to prevent it from falling into the hands of the Persians or pro-Persian elements in South Arabia. This policy was doomed from the start.

In 535 Sumayfa‘ was deposed by the local population and replaced with one Abraha, the former slave of a Roman merchant of Adulis. For most of his reign, Abraha – to the disappointment of Justinian – adopted a neutral stance in the long-drawn-out struggle between the rival powers of the day. It was only at the close of his rule that he tilted the balance in the Byzantines’ favour by marching northwards at the head of an expeditionary force against the Ḥidjāz in 570. It was an ill-fated attempt. His army

12. He is known to Arab tradition by this epithet – ‘Lord of the Curls’. In other sources he is referred to as ‘Dunaan’ (A. Moberg, 1924, p. xlii). In the Book of the Himyarites, he is given the name of ‘Masrûk’, an appellation that is also found in two other sources. See D. S. Attema, 1949, p. 7, note 32. He is referred to in Christian sources variously as ‘Dimnus’, ‘Damian’, ‘Dimianos’, ‘Damnus’ and in Abyssinian texts as ‘Phin’has’. Djawâd ‘Alī, 1952–6, Vol. 3, p. 190. His real name upon his conversion to Judaism is Yūsuf Ash’ar. S. Smith, 1954, p. 456.

13. Procopius, 1954, p. 189. He is referred to here as ‘Esimiphaeus’.


15. A. F. L. Beeston, 1960, states that the details of Abraha’s life given by Muslim historians are largely stories of folklore origin which had been attached arbitrarily to the name of a famous personage. For more precise information one has to refer to the account given by Procopius, 1954, pp. 191–4 and fragmentary South Arabian epigraphic sources. A critical examination of the extant sources on the career of Abraha or Abraha is given in S. Smith, 1954, pp. 431–41.


17. Classical Muslim sources attribute the motive of the expedition to Abraha’s jealousy of the Meccan sanctuary and a futile attempt to substitute his Church at Ṣan‘ā as the place of pilgrimage for the whole of Arabia. A. F. L. Beeston, 1960, p. 103. See equally P. K. Hitti, 1970, p. 64.
The African diaspora in Asia

was put to rout and decimated by epidemics. This year, called the 'Year of the Elephant' in classical Arabic sources was claimed to have been the year in which the Prophet of Islam - Muhammad - was born. It was also the year in which Ethiopian domination in the Yemen was put to an end by the Sassanids under the command of Wahriz.

The pre-Islamic and early Islamic periods

Blacks in pre-Islamic Arabia

The geographical proximity of Arabia to Africa and the centuries-long links across the Red Sea led to an early presence of many Africans on the Arabian Peninsula. These Africans of both sexes, of various origin, mostly from Ethiopia, Somalia, Nubia and the east coast, came thither in various capacities, but mostly as slaves. On the other hand, a great number of Ethiopian warriors, who came with the invading army, must have remained in South Arabia and elsewhere, in due course being absorbed by the predominantly Arab population. Arabic literary sources have preserved scattered accounts of various kinds about people of African origin living in Arabia before the advent of Islam.

Several poets of the pre-Islamic era (Djähiliya) were known collectively as the 'Aghribat al-'Arab' (The Crows of the Arabs) because of the swarthy complexions they inherited from their mothers. The most famous among them were 'Antara b. Shaddâd, Khufâf ibn Nadba and Sulayk b. al-Sulaka. The latter belonged to the sa'âlik, celebrated wandering bands of 'robber-knights' famed for their chivalry and honour despite their predatory activities. However, the most illustrious of the 'Crows' was 'Antara of the kabila of 'Abs born of an Abyssinian bond-maid named Zabîba.

He flourished during the Dähis-Ghabrâ conflicts between his paternal

19. Al-Tabârî, 1329 AH, Vol. 30, p. 195. C. Conti Rossini, 1921 has contested this account of the march of the Abyssinians against the Ḥijaz accompanied by their elephants.
20. M. Rodinson, 1971, p. 38 is of the view that this is improbable. The most commonly accepted year is 571.
21. A. Christensen, 1944.
22. For detailed studies on 'Antara see the following: A. Thorbecke, 1867; H. Derenbourg, 1905, pp. 3–9; al-İşfahânî, 1868–9, Vol. 8, pp. 237–46.
23. He was descended from an Arab father of the Banû Sulaym and a black slave mother named Nadba. He accompanied the Apostle of Islam in his triumphal entry into Mecca bearing the standard of his 'tribe'; see Ibn Kutayba, 1850, p. 126; al-İşfahânî, 1868–9, Vol. 20, pp. 2–9.
24. al-İşfahânî, Vol. 18, pp. 133–9. Thâbit ibn Djâbir or more popularly known as Ta'abbata Sharran of the tribe of Fahm and of an African mother was ranked among them.
25. A detailed account is given in Y. Khalîf, 1959.
26. These fights were due to a dispute involving a race between two horses, Dâhis and Ghabrâ, on which occasion the tribe of 'Abs accused the tribe of Dhubyân of having had recourse to stratagems to assure the victory of their horse'. I. Goldziher, 1966, p. 14.
tribe and that of Abū Dhubyân and distinguished himself by his valour and strength, thereby gaining glory for his kinsmen. Eventually, he was freed and became an honoured member of his tribe. His verses on his numerous battles, vicissitudes and love for 'Abla are considered the finest creations of the ‘Djâhiliya’ poetry, assuring him an honoured rank amongst the Mu‘allâkât poets. As his fame spread far and wide, his exploits became in the later Islamic times the theme of an extremely popular cycle of romance entitled ‘Sîrat ‘Antar’ (The Story of 'Antara). He emerged as the national hero of the Arabs.

In the merchant city of Mecca the defence and protection of its caravan routes was entrusted to a troop of mercenaries, known as the Aḥābīš, a term held to be connected with the Arab name for Ethiopians, al-Ḥabash. Although it seems that the Ethiopians formed the core of this troop, it consisted also of other African slaves and Arabic nomads from the Tihāma (the coastal plain along the Red Sea shore) and Yemen. Their leading role as the main military force in the retinue and escort of the patrician families of the city is well attested in many Arabic sources, where the military skill, discipline and prowess of these African ‘soldiers of fortune’ are repeatedly stressed.

The great reliance on mercenaries resulted mainly from the fact that the Kurayshites, to whom the Meccan inhabitants belonged, were few in numbers and were thus unable to muster any considerable army from their own ranks to defend their city and to protect their far-reaching commercial interests. Many of the Aḥābīš later took an active part in the military expeditions against the nascent Muslim state of Medina and fought at the battles of Badr and Uḥud.

Blacks in Muḥammad’s entourage

Tradition asserts that among the first converts to Islam in Mecca were many slaves, some of them of African origin. In the tenets of the new religion preached by Muḥammad these socially handicapped people had found the possibility of attaining human dignity and self-respect, and the opportunity to join a new community where a man was judged primarily by his religious fervour and his pious acts, and not merely by his social or

27. ‘The term, which literally means “suspended” has not yet been satisfactorily explained. A story of later concoction asserts that they were the winning poems at poetic tournaments held at the fair of ‘Ukâz, transcribed in gold and hung up in the Ka’ba at Mecca’. H. A. R. Gibb, 1963, p. 22; J. Berque, 1979.
30. One of these Aḥābīsh, Waḥshī b. Ḥarb, an Ethiopian slave, slew the Prophet’s uncle Hamza in the battle of Uḥud.
The African diaspora in Asia

racial origins. Thus in the early difficult years of the Prophet’s activities there had already emerged a number of converts who were black or had black ancestors who played considerable roles in the life of the nascent Islamic politico-religious community.

One such early convert was ‘Ammār ibn Yāsir, whose mother Sumayyā was a former slave of the Kurayshite clan of Banū Makhzūm; he participated in the first migrations to Ethiopia and later returned to Medina, taking part in all the campaigns of the Prophet. The Caliph ‘Umar (3/634–23/643) appointed him as governor of Kūfā, one of the most important posts in the new administration of the early Islamic state. Being later a zealous adherent of the ‘Alī’s cause, he fell during the first civil war in the battle of Sīffin (37/617). He belonged also to the transmitters of the hadīths (accounts of Muḥammad’s deeds and sayings). 32

The most celebrated of the Prophet’s early circle of black companions was Bilāl b. Rabāḥ, an Ethiopian slave whose mother Ḥamāmah and brother Khālid were also slaves in Mecca. He is described in early Muslim accounts as ‘tall, thin, hollow-cheeked and having a stentorian voice’. Before Caliph Abū Bakr bought and freed him, he was persecuted and tortured by his owner because of his religious convictions. He became the first mu’ādhīn (one who calls to prayer) in Islam and took part in all the early Islamic campaigns including those in Syria, where he died of plague in Damascus (20 or 21/640–41). 33 His services to Islam as well as those of the other black mawālī can be summed up in the words of one modern biographer of the Prophet as ‘having filled the modest but indispensable role of ordinary believers. Their tireless devotion, total selflessness and absolute lack of mental doubts and soul-searchings, coupled with the invaluable service they rendered in practical matters, made them examples to be held up to caviling opponents’. 34

One other early black convert to Islam who made valuable contributions in the military field was al-Miḳdād b. ‘Amr al-Aswad. He was one of the earliest of the companions and assisted the Prophet in all his battles. Being the only Muslim who fought on horseback during the battle of Badr, he was thus given the title Fāris al-Islam (the knight of Islam). 35

Slaves who embraced Islam were manumitted and thereby became mawālī (clients) of the Prophet and other prominent Muslims. Early Islamic writings allude to several of them, namely al-Ra’ay al-Aswad al-Ḥabashi, 36 Mihdja’ who fell in the battle of Badr, 37 Abū Laḥīt of Nubian origin, who was employed by ‘Umar b. al-Ḵhattāb as an official in the

34. M. Rodinson, 1971, p. 130.
37. Ibn Kūtayba, 1850, p. 78.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

dīwān (state chancellery), 38 Rabāḥ, 39 one of the Prophet’s bearers, Abū Muwayhibah, 40 a transmitter of several hadīths, 41 and Šāliḥ b. Šuḵrān who was a close associate of Caliph ‘Umar.

In the midst of the early Muslim community were to be found several black female emancipated slaves. Umm Ayman Baraka 42 who nursed the Prophet in his childhood and was a respected member of his household. Fudda, 43 the maid in the employ of the Prophet’s daughter, and Naba’a, 44 a slave girl of Muḥammad’s uncle Abū Ṭālib, who was credited with having transmitted a hadīth on Muḥammad’s nocturnal journey (isrāʾ) to Jerusalem.

Muslim links with Ethiopia

Five years after the proclamation of Islam (615), a number of Muslims sought refuge in neighbouring Ethiopia in order to escape the persecutions of the Kurayshites in Mecca. 45 The warm reception extended to them by the negus (nadjāshī in Arabic accounts) 46 and his court ushered in a period of cordial relations between the two religious communities. This was echoed in early Islamic traditions.

According to one account, the negus, referred to as Nadjāshī al-ʾAṣḥama b. Abđar, declared his belief in the Prophet’s mission. 47 Mention is also made of the nadjāshī sending his son with a deputation of some sixty Ethiopians to the Prophet Muḥammad. 48 Their boat foundered when they were in the middle of the sea and they all perished. It is also reported that the Prophet grieved on learning of the nadjāshī’s death and offered special prayers for his soul. 49

Their sojourn in Ethiopia greatly impressed these early Muslim migrants and influenced the future development of their new faith. Muslim biographical sources (tabakāt) enumerate not a few Ethiopian converts to

40. Ibn Kutayba, 1850, p. 73.
41. ibid., p. 72.
42. ibid., pp. 70–1.
44. ibid.
45. The first migration (ḥiḍjra) comprised eleven men and four women, the prominent members were ’Uthmān and his wife Rukaya, daughter of the Prophet (Ibn Sa’d, 1904–40, Vol. 1, p. 136). This was followed several years later by a larger group of migrants — eighty-three men and some women (Ibn Hishām, 1936, Vol. 1, p. 353).
47. ibid., pp. 35, 359. Hartmann interprets his Abyssinian name as Ella ʾṢaḥam, see M. Hartmann, 1895, pp. 299–300.
The African diaspora in Asia

Islam who migrated to Medina and ranked amongst the Prophet's companions. They were referred to as the 'Ethiopian monks' (ruhbân al-habasha). Four of them had Abraha as their name. One of them was said to have been the grandson of Abraha, the invader of Mecca, yet another was the female slave of Umm Ḥabiba (one of the Prophet's spouses) during her Ethiopian exile. Another account placed the son and nephew of the nadjâshî by the Prophet's side at Medina. It is interesting to note that many of the children of these Muslim migrants were Ethiopian born.

These traditions considerably shaped Muslim attitudes towards Ethiopia, whence such eulogies as Ibn al-Djawzî's (d. 1208) 'Tanwîr al-ghabash fi faṣl al-sūdān wa'l-ḥabash' (The lightening of the darkness on the merits of blacks and Ethiopians), Al-Suyūṭî's (d. 1505) 'Raf'sha'n al-ḥubshān' (The raising of the status of the Ethiopians) and that by Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Bâkî al-Bukhrî (sixteenth century) — 'Al-tirâz al-mankūsh fi maḥāsin al-ḥubūsh' (The coloured brocade on the good qualities of the Ethiopians).

The status of Africans in Muslim society

The Qur'anic view

The Quran - the ultimate Islamic text — would naturally form the basis of any discussion on Muslim attitudes on race and colour. Yet surprisingly, as observed by Bernard Lewis, only two passages in the Quran have a direct bearing on the subject. The first of these is to be found in Sûra 30, verse 22, which reads 'Among God's signs are the creation of the heavens and of the earth and the diversity of your languages and of your colours'. This forms part of a larger section enumerating the signs and wonders of God. The diversity of 'languages and colours' is cited as only another sign of the omnipotence and versatility of the Creator.

The other passage, Sûra 49, verse 13, is more definite: 'O people! We have created you from a male and a female and we have made you into confederacies and tribes so that you may come to know one another. The noblest of you in the eyes of God is the most pious, for God is omniscient and well-informed.'

Consequently, one finds no instances of racial or colour prejudice in the Quran, nor even awareness of it. The aforementioned passages do, however, indicate a 'consciousness of difference' with the second quotation

51. ibid., Vol. 7, p. 476.
53. ibid., Vol. 4, p. 575.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

putting the stress on piety rather than birth. It is obvious that the question of race never became an issue in the Quran.\textsuperscript{56}

Various designations of blacks in Arabic

In Arabic medieval sources the inhabitants of tropical Africa are usually divided into four great categories: the Südān, the Ḥabasha, the Zandj and the Nūba.

The term \textit{as-sūdān} (plural of \textit{al-aswād}, 'black') is the most general, being applied to all people of black colour without pointing to the place of origin. Sometimes even the Indians, the Chinese and other people of Asia were included in this category. In a narrower sense the Südān became gradually to mean the black Africans living to the south of the Maghrib, i.e. the inhabitants of the \textit{Bilād al-sūdān} ('the Land of the Blacks') par excellence.

As for the Ḥabasha (the Ethiopians), their geographical proximity as well as their association with Muḥammad’s early history made them the best-known group of Africans. Some authors, however, employed this term in a larger sense, counting among the Ḥabasha even people living as far as the Niger or on the frontiers of Egypt.\textsuperscript{57}

The Zandj (or Zindj) refer mostly to the Bantu-speaking peoples from the East African coast, who since pre-Islamic times had been brought as slaves to Arabia, Persia and Mesopotamia.\textsuperscript{58} Their high numbers in these countries soon gave the name the general meaning of ‘black’ and of ‘slave’.

The Nūba (Nubians) became known to the Arabs after the conquest of Egypt; it is, however, very likely that the name covered also all Africans originating in the countries to the south of Nubia proper, i.e. the Nilotic-speaking and Eastern Sudanic-speaking groups, who came to the lands of the Caliphate via Nubia.\textsuperscript{59}

The provenance of slaves

The Arab Muslims were not the originators of the trade in black African

\textsuperscript{56} The condemnation of racial prejudice and discrimination with an insistence on the primacy of piety over ‘noble or purely Arab birth’ is specifically indicated in a number of \textit{ḥadīths}. See al-Bukhāri, 1978, p. 79, where the Prophet gave the command of an expedition to Usāmah b. Ṣayd despite the objection of some people on account of his swarthy complexion, inherited from his mother, Umm Ayman.

\textsuperscript{57} This extension of the Ḥabasha westwards and northwards is perhaps an echo from the Graeco-Roman authors who also mentioned the Ethiopians far in the west. Cf. J. Desanges, 1962, p. 16.

\textsuperscript{58} The derivation and meaning of \textit{Zandj} is still unsolved. Usually it is derived from Egyptian \textit{Zink}, the people of Punt. For other explanations cf. P. Pelliot, 1959, pp. 598–603. See also chapter 21 above.

\textsuperscript{59} Cf. Y. F. Hasan, 1967, pp. 42–6. The Arabic sources do not tell us much about the areas from which these slaves were obtained.
PLATE 26.1 The Battle of the Clans, from Khamsa of Nizâmi, a manuscript dated 866/1461, Baghdad
slaves. The enslavement of Nubians and other Africans can be traced back to Pharaonic times. This is attested by the numerous representations of slaves in Egyptian art.\textsuperscript{60} Black slaves were equally to be found in the Hellenistic and Roman worlds.\textsuperscript{61} According to Maurice Lombard,\textsuperscript{62} the black slave traffic conducted by the Muslims was of the utmost commercial importance:

no slaves were to be had inside the Muslim world, because once the phase of conquest was over, there was no room for anyone within the frontiers except Muslims or protected subjects (\textit{dhimmī}) such as Jews, Christians or Zoroastrians, none of whom could be reduced to slavery but for rare exceptions, like the occasion when the Copts of the Delta revolted and were led away into slavery. Slaves had to be sought elsewhere in countries near and far and obtained either by raids or by purchase from weaker, less tightly knit societies incapable of defending themselves.

One of the major areas where slaves might be procured were those parts of Africa inhabited by the blacks, i.e. the eastern littoral, Nubia, Ethiopia, and the Central and Western Sudan.\textsuperscript{63}

The slave trade from the eastern coast started long before the coming of Islam.\textsuperscript{64} In the eighth and ninth centuries the demand for slave labour increased, linked with agricultural development in lower Iraq and with the expansion of international trade in the Indian Ocean. The Bantu-speaking peoples – more and more known under the name of the Zanj – were procured either by capture in raids or bought in exchange for shoddy goods from the petty kings of the hinterland. They were then shipped from the counting-houses on the coast to the island of Socotra and the emporium of Aden, assembly points from which they reached their final Egyptian and Mesopotamian destinations via the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf respectively. It was in Iraq that the greatest concentration of black slaves was to be found; this eventually led to the outbreak of the Zanj revolt one of the bloodiest and most destructive revolts in Islamic history.\textsuperscript{65}

Another major source of supply of servile labour to the Muslim world was Nubia. According to Yusuf Faḍl Ḥassan, 'it was primarily for commercial reasons that the Arabs penetrated into Al-Muḳurra' and 'Alwa in the early centuries of Islam. Arab merchants brought grain, beads and combs, and took back ivory, ostrich feathers, cattle and slaves. It is prob-

\textsuperscript{60} See J. Vercouter, 1976.
\textsuperscript{61} F. M. Snowden, 1970, passim.
\textsuperscript{62} M. Lombard, 1971b.
\textsuperscript{63} Since there is no study on the slave trade in Western Africa one cannot be certain about its volume or even of its factual existence.
\textsuperscript{64} A. Popović, 1976, pp. 53 ff (on the name Zanj), pp. 62 ff (the earliest mention of their presence and their revolts).
able that the last item constituted the main activity of the Arab merchants. Some slaves were acquired as annual tribute paid by Nubia (bakt) to the rulers of Muslim Egypt. The majority of slaves thus procured were destined for the Egyptian market, largely for military use.

The Ethiopians were imported along the valleys of the Blue Nile and the Nile or passed through the transit ports of ‘Aydhāb and Zāyla’ on the African coast of the Red Sea into Egypt or Arabia. The Somalis from the Berbera area were shipped via Zāyla’ to Aden and the great distribution centre of Zabdī, thereby supplying the slave markets of the Hijāz, Syria and Iraq.

The final source of supply was the Western Sudan. Slaves from the region of the Sahel (Ghana, Gao, Kānem and Zaghāwa) were either conveyed to the major urban centres of the Maghrib and Muslim Spain via Nūl Lamta and Sidjilmāsa or through the central Saharan region to Wargla and Djarīd and then onward to Ifrikiyā, Fezzān, Tripolitania and Cyrenaica en route for Egypt and other regions of the Muslim East. This was greatly facilitated by the presence of colonies of Muslim traders in several sub-Saharan countries, especially Ghana and Gao. These merchants traded with the local princes and acted as bridgeheads for the trans-Saharan traffic in gold, salt and slaves. Other non-Islamized groups, the Zaghāwa for example, were also in contact with the Islamized Berbers of the Hoggar or of inner Cyrenaica who were the forwarding agents for this lucrative overland trade.

The slave market (Sūk al-rakīk)

Not all the details concerning the organization of the slave trade in the Muslim world of this period are known to us. Nevertheless, we are acquainted with some of its salient features.

Slave markets, referred to in some countries as ‘places of display’ (mā’rid), were found in every important town throughout the Muslim empire. Some of these in the ninth century were situated at the opening of major international commercial routes and thereby played the role of distributing centres. The markets of Bukhārā, Samarkand, Nīshāpūr, Rayy,

67. On the bakt see Chapters 7 and 8 above.
68. The demand for ‘Nubian’ slaves was not limited to Egypt even though it remained the principal mart. One finds that in 977 Ibn Ziyād, ruler of a dynasty with its centre at Zabdī in the Yemen received from the ruler of the island of Dahlak amongst other items a ‘tribute of one thousand heads of slaves whereof five hundred were Abyssinian and Nubian female slaves’. See al-Ḥakamī, 1892, p. 6.
70. Ibid., p. 201.
71. See A. Mez, 1922, p. 444, for the commercial role of these Muslim colonies.
Balkh, and Marw served as terminal stations for the columns of Slav or Turkish slaves. Zabid, Aden in the Yemen and Basra in Lower Mesopotamia were centres through which black slaves were forwarded. Yet other markets were situated in the middle of heavily populated areas where there was a maximum utilization of slave labour. These were Baghdad, Cairo, Cordova and Mecca. Al-Ya’kubi (third/ninth century) described one of the most famous of these slave marts – Samarra – as ‘consisting of a vast quadrangle intersected with internal alleys. The houses contained lower and upper rooms and stalls for slaves’.73

The buying and selling of slaves became an intricate affair. Slaves had to be carefully examined by midwives and at times by doctors before they were put up for display to prospective buyers. Details on the merits and de-merits of slaves as well as the best kind of work they were suited for were grouped in the form of manuals. One such slave buyer’s vademecum was that by the Christian physician of the fifth/eleventh century – Ibn Buṭlan – entitled ‘Risala fi shirâ al-râkîk wataklîb al-‘abîd’.74 Ibn Buṭlan collected and popularized, at least among slave-buyers, a great many prejudices borrowed mostly from Greek and Latin literature, partly medical. The literature, particularly under the influence of the physiognomists of the fifth and following centuries attempted to link physical appearance due to environmental conditions with character traits. In Ibn Buṭlan’s discussion of the relative merits of coloured slave girls we find many curious observations such as the one about the Zandj women:

Their defaults are innumerable; the darker, the uglier; they are not up to much ... Dancing and beating the rhythm are engrained in their nature. And since their manner of speech is unintelligible, they are given to blowing [musical instruments] and dancing. It is said: were the Zandj to fall from heaven, he would beat the rhythm in falling.75

Repeating many physiognomists’ stereotypes, Ibn Buṭlan wrote that ‘fat lips are the sign of stupidity’,76 or that ‘dark black eyes signalize cowardice, and if they are goat-like, it is a sign of ignorance’.77

Al-Mas’udi, a century before Ibn Buṭlan, reproduced the famous passage of Galen attributing ten not very favourable properties to blacks, in particular, the last one being ‘an excessive petulance’. And he adds that Galen interpreted the predominance of this property to an imperfect organization of the brain which in turn results in feeble intelligence.78

This text, with some variants, is to be found in many other authors; it helped to spread a pernicious idea – which has as yet not entirely dis-

73. Al-Ya’kubi, 1892, p. 259; A. Mez, 1922, p. 156.
74. Ed. by ’Abd al-Salâm Härün in Nawâdir al-Makhtufât, 4, 6, Cairo, 1373/1954. For a comprehensive study of this guide see F. Sanagustin, 1980. See also H. Müller, 1980.
76. ibid., p. 227.
77. ibid., p. 226.
78. Al-Mas’udi, 1962, p. 69.
The African diaspora in Asia

appeared – about the lightheartedness of the blacks, due to the environment and the influence of sun. These judgements are, however, based on the differences caused by climate and environment. This theory of climates had a long life among the authors writing in Arabic and later also among Europeans as well.

Slave markets were under strict state control in order to protect the buyers from unethical business practices. Transactions were not exclusively held in public. Slaves were also procured through the services of agents (dallāl) on payment of a commission. However, most of these slave merchants known as importers (djallāb) or cattle dealers (nakhhās) inspired contempt for their occupation or envy for their wealth.

Prices of slaves were determined according to their place of origin, sex, age, physical condition and abilities. As a rule, whites were dearer than blacks. Allusions to the varying prices of slaves are to be found in classical Arabic accounts. About the middle of the second/eighth century, 200 dirhams was the average price of a slave. In Oman a good black slave could be bought for between 25 and 30 dinars. A winsome girl fetched 150 dinars, c. 300/912. The Abyssinian Abu' l-Misk Kāfūr, who later became regent of Egypt (334/945–356/966), was reported to have been purchased in 312/924 for the paltry sum of 18 dinars, even though he was a eunuch. The vizier al-Ṣāhib b. ‘Abbād purchased a Nubian slave for 400 dinars, a price regarded as being too high, for a pretty swarthy Nubian female could be had for only 200 dinars. However, slaves endowed with exceptional talents fetched astronomical prices. Trained dancing girls had price tags of between 1000 and 2000 dinars. Singers in Baghdad in 918 were almost all of servile origins. A female singer was sold in an aristocratic circle in 912 for 13 000 dinars.

Islam and slavery in the Indian Ocean

Islam, given the political and social context of its birth in Arabia, could not

79. Equally negative characteristics were attributed to northern peoples (Turks, Slavs, etc.) who lived also under ‘abnormal’ – from the point of view of inhabitants of the mild zone – conditions.
80. See for example M. Bergé, 1972, pp. 165–76.
82. A. Mez, 1922, pp. 153–4. An anecdote on the estimation of the value of the celebrated black poet Nusayb by appraisers on the orders of the Umayyad Caliph 'Abd al-Azîz ibn Marwan provides us with valuable indications as to the range of prices prevailing then. A black slave was worth 100 dinars and if he was a good shepherd it rose to 200 dinars. One who shaped arrows and fledged them was worth 300 dinars and an excellent archer, 400 dinars. A reciter of poems fetched the sum of 500 dinars. A gifted poet was priced at 1000 dinars. See Ibn Khallikān, 1843–71; Vol. 3, p. 626, note 13. For a comprehensive study on prices, see the valuable study by E. Ashtor, 1969.
suppress slavery as an institution nor preach for its abolition as a doctrine. It strived, however, to moderate the system and to reduce the severity of its moral and legal aspects. In doing so, Islam accepted a modified form of slavery having as its basis a certain respect for human beings; the vanquished in war were no longer killed off, but made prisoners. This was in marked contrast with previous practices and constituted progress.

Slavery of any form shocks us today. This was not so for preceding generations living as they did in a completely different period and milieu, where even the notion of liberty was almost absent. The supremacy of the concept of the group within a lineage context went unchallenged, making a non-gregarious existence well-nigh impossible. Many an isolated individual found social existence only as a 'client' of dependent status. Moral judgements on the institution of slavery during the period under review must be passed with caution.

The Qur'an (4:36) enjoins believers to treat their slaves with kindness (iḥsān) and makes the emancipation of a slave a worthy act and work of charity (2:177; 90:13).

'Tradition delights in asserting that the slave's lot was among the latest preoccupations of the Prophet. It has quite a large store of sayings and anecdotes, attributed to the Prophet or to his Companions, enjoining real kindness towards this inferior social class.'

Slaves were to be treated as brothers. They should not be addressed in contemptuous terms. Slave and master should sit at the same table, and be provided with the same garments. The master should not let a slave do onerous tasks and if he committed an offence the punishment meted out should not be harsh or excessive. Manumission is recommended as a happy solution and a way for the master to make amends for the excessive chastisement of his slave. In return, it was the slave's duty to show unswerving loyalty. It can be noted from the foregoing that the Muslim religious ethic follows closely 'the line of Qur'anic teaching, it even lays perceptible emphasis upon the humanitarian tendencies of the latter on the question of slavery'.

The conquest and development of major trade gave rise in Muslim lands to an ever-increasing importance of servile labour, until it became a social phenomenon of the first order. Muslim jurists of the great Sunni schools were consequently inclined to study this question. Areas of concern were the provenance of slaves, their status in a new social setting, the composite quality of a slave both as a thing and a person, and lastly his manumission.

R. Brunschwig has observed that despite the strictness professed by cer-
tian doctors of law, the fikh has never evolved an adequately clear system of sanctions to suppress the kidnapping or sale of persons, Muslim or non-Muslim. Still less does one see any positive denunciation of the practice of castrating young slaves, although it was condemned in principle. Unlike the ancient laws of Babylon, which recognized several causes of slavery, Muslim law acknowledges only two sources of legitimate slavery: birth in servitude and capture in war. In the first case, a slave is identified as one who is born of slave parents. The child assumes at birth his mother’s status, free or slave. This is equally applied to children born of a free woman, even if the father is a slave. However, a major exception is made of a child born of a free man and a female slave in his employ who is regarded as free born. If this was not so, the child would have become his master’s slave. This was of wide occurrence.

However, birth in bondage could not constitute a never-ending source of supply of servile labour on account of the free status of children born under the system of legal concubinage as well as the high incidence of manoeuvres, which tended further to diminish their numbers. The persistence of the institution of slavery in the Islamic world therefore had to depend on the constantly renewed contribution of peripheral or external elements, either directly captured in war or imported commercially under the fiction of Holy War, from foreign territory (dar al-harb).

From the juridico-religious viewpoint, the slave is seen as possessing a kind of composite quality, partaking of the nature both of thing and of person. Considered as a thing, he is subject to the right of ownership ... exercised by a man or woman and [is] the object of all the legal operations proceeding from this position: sale, gift, hire, inheritance and so on.

Reducing a slave to the level of a ‘mere commodity’, Islamic canon law inevitably places him on the same footing as that of a beast of burden (dawābb). This was given frequent expression in the theoretical treatises on public law of the period, especially regarding the role of the muhtasib in ensuring the proper treatment meted out by masters to their animals and slaves.

Regarded as a person, the slave in principle had certain rights and responsibilities but these were evidently not comparable to those of a free man. However, a singular feature of slavery as practised in the Muslim

90. These were (1) birth in servitude; (2) selling oneself into slavery in cases of insolvency; (3) the sale of minors; (4) abduction of minors; and (5) prisoners of war. For details, see I. Mendelsohn, 1949, pp. 1–23.
92. ibid.
93. ibid.
94. ibid.
95. See al-Māwardī, 1922, p. 257.
world was that the slave, despite his quasi-subservience to his master, was still allowed to administer property, transact business and save money. In some cases, he might enrich himself and rise to high office. Nevertheless, the equivocal status of a slave, at once the owner of property and the possession of his master, was a constant source of difficulty.

A Muslim slave is permitted to marry with his master's consent. He may have a family of his own, but not the right of custody of his children. Equally authorized are unions of slaves with one another, and of a slave with a free woman other than his mistress, or that of a female slave with a free man. However, the wedlock of any free man or woman with their own slaves is prohibited. The Malikî school of law confers upon the slave the right to have a maximum of four wives just like his free coreligionists. The other schools of law entitle him only to a maximum of two wives. He equally retains the husband's usual right of repudiation (talak).

It was, however, the system of legal concubinage which had greater social significance, on account of its widespread application and impact on the social life of the period. 'Both pre-Islamic Arab custom and the Koran recognized the right of the master to take his female slaves as concubines, and a slave woman who had borne a child to her master was called ʻumm al-walad'. The freedom and legitimacy of children born of such cohabitations depended entirely on the acknowledgement of their father, the master. This appeared to have been regularly given.

Moreover, the master disposes of the right of chastisement (ta'dhib) of his slave. If the latter suffered maltreatment to the point of sustaining severe bodily injuries it is recommended that he be sold or enfranchised.

Finally, the slave could not in theory ascend to positions of authority (wilâyât), whether public or private. However, there was greater flexibility in the actual implementation of this ruling. It was quite customary for men in high positions to employ slaves in subordinate functions and delegate some of their authority to them and in the case of slaves of a caliph or a prince they could become as a matter of fact far more powerful than free men.

The slave has the same religious duties (ʻibâdât) as that of any other Muslim. Nevertheless, his servile condition acquits him from observing scrupulously certain religious obligations that entail liberty of movement, such as the Friday prayer, the pilgrimage and the dhâhâd. He is also not considered competent to hold religious office.

The state of bondage though perpetual in principle was, however, subject to being modified and terminated under exceptional conditions. This

97. ibid., p. 27.
99. R. Brunschwig, 1960, p. 27. On the position of the slave under Islamic penal law, see ibid., p. 29.
100. F. Sanagustin, 1980, p. 23.
101. R. Brunschwig, 1960, p. 27.
The African diaspora in Asia

was effected in various ways. First, there was enfranchisement ('itk) regarded as a work of piety and conferred unilaterally by the master. It was irrevocable.\footnote{ibid., p. 30.} Secondly, the promise of freedom of a master to his slave, to take effect on his death. This post-mortem grant is known as tadbİr and the beneficiary a mudabbar.\footnote{J. Schacht, 1950, p. 265, note 8; also R. Brunschwig, 1960, p. 30.} Thirdly, the competence given to master and slave to enter into a contractual enfranchisement (kitabäa). This meets with Qoranic approval (24:33). Under this contract, the master offered his slave the chance of buying back his liberty by using his own savings in instalments. The finalization of payment entitled him to the full legal rights of a free-born man.\footnote{See J. Schacht, 1950, pp. 111–12.} Finally, there was the legal provision already alluded to conferring liberty and legitimacy on children born of a slave woman (a concubine) and her master.

On emancipation, the slave though having the full civic rights of a freed man still remained, as did his male descendants, attached in perpetuity to his former master, now his ‘patron’ and his family by a ‘bond of clientship’ – wafä. Both ‘patron’ and ‘client’ are referred to as mawlä and in the plural form as mawäli.\footnote{R. Brunschwig, 1960.}

Employment and social conditions

As aptly pointed out by Mez, despite the lack of instances of racial or colour prejudice in the Islamic body of values and despite the provision of legal guarantees and the favours of fortune, one must not be led to paint too rosy a picture of the social status of the black Muslim slave in the first centuries of Islam.\footnote{A. Mez, 1922, pp. 161–2. For a detailed study of the status of black slaves in medieval Muslim society see G. Rotter, 1967.} In daily life and in the realities of social relationships prejudice – though not shown exclusively towards Africans – was widespread.

This marked aversion toward blackness and later on to dark-complexioned peoples characterized the views of a number of Muslim geographers, adab writers and poets as well as those of the common man as expressed in the popular lore of the period. An early interpretation of the inferior status of the black was based on the biblical story of how Häm, one of the sons of Noah, was damned black for his ‘sin’. The curse of blackness, and with it slavery, passed on to all black peoples who descended from Häm. This explanation, particularly popular among professional tellers of legends and stories (kuşşaş) but even among serious scholars like al-Ya’kubî (third/ninth century), was not generally accepted. Al-Hamdänî explicitly refuted this tradition – which according to him originated with the Jews –
on the ground of a Qranic verse (6:164) ‘Each soul will earn only on its own account and none will be laden with another burden’. And he concludes, again with reference to the environmental factors: ‘Black, white or brown skin of man has no other cause than the climate as we have mentioned it in this book’.107

Ibn Khaldün, too, rejects the hereditary curse:

‘The genealogists who do not know anything about the nature of things, have imagined that the Blacks are sons of Häm, son of Noah, and that the colour of their skin is the result of Noah’s curse, which has caused the blackness of Häm and the slavery inflicted by God on his descendants. If the Thora says that Noah has cursed his son Häm, it does not speak about the colour of the latter. The curse only made Häm’s sons slaves of his brothers’ descendants. To link the skin colour of Blacks with Häm means an ignorance of the true nature of heat and cold, and of their influence on climate and on created beings’.108

Black slaves were employed for various purposes in medieval Muslim society; mainly as menial servants, concubines and eunuchs in harems, craftsmen, business assistants, members of forced collective labour forces in state enterprises and as soldiers. Their contribution in building the economic, political and social base of medieval Islamic states was considerable.

At the bottom of the social ladder were to be found the ‘Zandjj consisting mainly of East African slaves. In the extensive salt flats of Lower Mesopotamia, these slaves toiled in gangs of 500 to 5000, at the task of digging away the nitrous top soil (sebahû) and laying bare the fertile ground beneath for cultivation, possibly of sugar, as well as to obtain the saltpetre that occurred in the upper stratum and pile it up in stacks. Their labour was supervised by agents and overseers. Life in the salt flats and marshes and the conditions under which these labourers (kassâhû) worked and lived were indeed dreadful. The great Muslim annalist al-Tabarî indicated that these miserable souls were underfed and often fell victim to recurrent malarial epidemics and other diseases. These, coupled with the harsh treatment they received at the hands of their taskmasters engendered smouldering resentment and led to frequent revolts.109

The use of collective forced labour in large-scale projects was not only confined to the area of the Shaṭṭ al-‘Arab in lower Iraq, but also occurred

109. ‘They were fed only on a “few handfuls” of flour, semolina, and dates’, quoted in B. Lewis, 1971, p. 66. Our information on these work sites of the Zandj is scanty and essentially based on the accounts given in al-Ṭabarî, 1879–1901, Vol. 3, pp. 1747–50.
in the province of al-Bahrayn. In the eleventh century a force of 30,000 blacks was obliged to do rough work under the Karmathians. Zandj slaves, according to Ibn al-Mudjāwir, were also purchased for work in the stone quarries of Aden.

However, the nature of employment of the vast majority of slaves was essentially domestic and military, with far more tolerable working and living conditions. In many modest and well-to-do households, domestic chores were taken care of by one or more slaves including manumitted ones. They were the cooks, chambermaids, wet nurses, doorkeepers, water-carriers and the like. Attractive female slaves, as concubines, gratified the sexual pleasures of their masters. In the harems of the wealthy, talented female slaves were afforded the possibilities of becoming singers, musicians, dancers and poets, and thereby beguiling the leisure moments of their lords.

The mating of Arab males with black women goes back to pre-Islamic times, the women generally being Nubians and Sudanese. However, Ethiopian girls were highly esteemed. Such relationships took the form of concubinage rather than marriage. In the Umayyad and Abbasid periods, it was a common practice at every social level. A number of Arabic poets became enamoured of their swarthy bondmaids. Amongst them was to be found 'Āshā Sulaym, who cohabited with a pitch-dark bondmaid, Danānir by name. The celebrated bard al-Farazdaš (d. 114/732) took Umm Makkīya - 'the negress' - for wife. They became inseparable. The blind Abbasid poet, Bašhār ibn Burd (d. 167/783) extolled the virtues of his dark-complexioned life companion. Abū Shīš, yet another poet of the period (d. 196/811), likened the raven-black complexion of his mate to that of 'sweet-smelling musk'.

A famous text from the third/ninth century - al-Djāhīz's defence of the blacks against their detractors - shows clearly how much the blacks

110. The province of al-Bahrayn comprised the coast (and its hinterland) between present-day Kuwait and Katart.
111. B. Lewis, 1971, p. 66.
115. As expressed by the poet al-Riyāšī in the following verse (al-Mubarrad, 1864, Vol. 1, p. 302):

Sons of concubine have become,
So numerous amongst us;
Lead me, O God, to a land,
Where I shall see no bastards.

117. ibid.
118. al-Isfahānī, 1868-9, Vol. 8, p. 46.
120. Al-Djāhīz, 1903.
and whites were used to living together, at various social levels, particularly in Basra. The same author offers, moreover, many examples of the consideration in which the people from Africa and the Indian Ocean were held, at least until the time when the Zanj revolt caused many changes in attitudes.  

The system of concubinage, favoured by Muslim institutions, resulted in the mingling of races and constituted an important element in the rural and urban populations. Although there was a continuous flow of people of African origin to Muslim countries, the facility of their being easily assimilated into the extant social framework has left a different mark on the population structure in this region as compared with other areas with a numerous African diaspora. One of the most striking results of this assimilation process is the non-existence of large homogeneous racial groups with their own separate history and culture such as are sometimes to be found in the Americas. 

In the upper layers of medieval Muslim society concubinage with slave-girls of African origin was nothing exceptional. A number of princes and caliphs, especially of the Abbasid dynasty, had slave mothers, some of whom were black Africans. The literature of this period informs us that the mothers of Prince Ibrâhim b. al-Mahdî and of the Caliph al-Muktafi (d. 555/1160) were a 'negress' and a Nubian, respectively. A Sudanese slave-girl, the concubine of al-Zâhir, gave birth to the future Fâtimid Caliph al-Mustanṣîr. She was a remarkable woman and ruled over Egypt after al-Zâhir's death and during her son's minority. This period of Fâtimid history is of particular importance. Al-Zâhir's mother favoured largely the black warriors whose influence on Egyptian policy correspondingly increased. This provoked a hostile reaction from the Turks, the second group of expatriate warriors, and from this time on skirmishes between the blacks and the Turks became very frequent. The least fortunate of the female black slaves in Muslim society were those forced into prostitution despite Qoranic prohibition. 

Male black slaves who were eunuchs filled the palaces of the great of the land, especially as guardians of the harems. Some of them managed to rise to high office and played key roles in state affairs in the medieval period. This can be illustrated by several examples. The black eunuch Kâfur al-Ikhshîdî (356/966) rose to become regent of Egypt, the favourite of Caliph al-Râdî (d. 329/940) was responsible for the palace eunuchs numbering 11,000, comprising 7,000 blacks and 4,000 whites. For details, see Al-Sâbi', 1964.

121. Al-Djâhiz's book Kitâb fakhr al-Südân 'ala' l-Bîdân will be shortly edited and translated into French by A. Miquel, G. Ducatez, J. Ducatez and J. Devisse.
124. During the reign of the Abbasid Caliph al-Muktadir (295/908–320/932), the palace eunuchs numbered 11,000, comprising 7,000 blacks and 4,000 whites. For details, see Al-Sâbi', 1964.
The African diaspora in Asia

for the formulation of state policies. The chamberlain of the Buwayhid prince Aḍud al-Dawlah (d. 372/982) was shakr (sugar), a black eunuch. He was the only one who succeeded in securing the confidence of his suspicious and tyrannical master, an honour coveted by all.

Outside the house or the palace, many black slaves served as shop assistants or transacted business themselves with a considerable measure of independence. Al-Djāḥiz alludes to a negress, Khulayda by name, who hired dwelling houses to pilgrims in Mecca. Others tilled their masters' fields or served as watchmen of their masters' orchards. One reads of a black slave being paid three loaves a day for keeping watch and ward. Al-Shāfiʿī, the founder of one of the four Islamic schools of law (d. 204/819), owned several slaves, of whom one was a Nubian employed as a baker. Al-Balādhurī mentions a quarter of Kūfah named after the black cupper 'Antara. Yet others were hired out with two-thirds of their earnings going to their masters. 'Amr b. Wabara (second/eighth century), profited from such a practice. The poet Abū l-'Atāḥiya (d. 211/826), a potter by profession, had several black slaves as his assistants.

The military role of slaves was one of the salient features of Islamic civilization and had considerable repercussions on the foreign and domestic policies of many Muslim states. Bernard Lewis notes that 'Black soldiers appear occasionally in early Abbasid times and after the slave rebellion in Iraq, in which blacks displayed terrifying military prowess, they were recruited in large numbers'. It is related that under the Abbasid Caliph al-Amīn (d. 198/813) a special corps of Ethiopian bodyguards with the designation 'Crows' was formed. In the fierce struggle for power during the reign of al-Muqtadir (d. 320/932), 7000 blacks fought on the side of the caliphal party. Ahmad ibn Ṭūlūn (d. 884), governor of Egypt and later its virtual ruler, mustered a large army of black slaves, especially Nubians. It is related that upon his death he left, among other possessions, 24,000 white mamlūks and 45,000 blacks. These were organized in separate corps and accommodated in separate quarters at the military cantonments.

According to Arabic chronicles of the period, black regiments referred to as 'abīd al-shirā (slaves obtained through purchase) became an important part of the Fāṭimid military forces. Their role became all the more promi-

132. For a detailed study, see D. Pipes, 1980.
133. B. Lewis, 1971, p. 69.
134. Al-Sabi', 1958, p. 16.
135. ibid., p. 8.
nent during the reign of al-Mustansir (1035–94) on account of the unflinching support they received from the Caliph's mother, a Sudanese slave-woman of stout character. At the height of their influence, they numbered 50,000.137

The revolts of the Zandj

The Zandj rose in arms against the Caliphate on several occasions.138 The first insurrection (70/689–90) was in Basra during the reign of Khâlid b. 'Abd Allâh. It was of minor importance, consisting as it did of small bands of slaves given to plundering and acts of vandalism in the Euphrates area. It was easily quelled by the caliphal forces, with some of its prominent members being put to the sword.139

A second rebellion in 75/694 was of greater significance. It was better organized and ably led by the chief of the Zandj, Riyâh, who was otherwise widely known as the 'Lion of the Zandj' (ShTr Zandj). He sowed terror throughout the region of the Euphrates and at al-Ubulla. Judging from the series of battles these insurgents waged against governmental forces, their numbers must have been large. This rebellion could only be suppressed with the reinforcement of the caliphal army by Basran volunteers.140

In 132/749–50, during the reign of Caliph Abû l-'Abbas al-Ṣaffâh a regular force of 4000 soldiers was launched against the rebels at Mosul in northern Mesopotamia, resulting in a massacre that was said to have cost the lives of more than 10,000 inhabitants – men, women and children.141

Another Zandj uprising followed the abortive Alid revolt against the forces of the Abbasid Caliph al-Mansûr in Medina (145/765). Members of the defeated party incited their black slaves and rawâli (clients) to attack the garrison of Abbasid troops in the city. This led to chaos. The governor was deposed and the black rebels seized military depots. Fearing a worsening situation, the patrons calmed their slaves and the authority of the Abbasids was once again restored. However, harsh punishments were meted out to the Zandj ring leaders.142

The Zandj revolt of 255/869 was undoubtedly the greatest protest movement by black African slaves in medieval Islam. It lasted more than fourteen years and passed through two distinctive periods (255/869–266/879

138. The first detailed study of the Zandj revolt was T. H. Nöldeke, 1892. This was followed by several other studies both in Arabic and European languages. A good detailed account in Arabic is that by F. al-Sâmir, 1971. However, the most complete study of the revolt to date is that of A. Popovic, 1976.
The African diaspora in Asia

and 266/879–270/883). The first period was one of expansion and great success for the insurgents. The second phase consisted of a prolonged struggle against superior forces and the eventual collapse of the Zandj state. The war theatre was the region of lower Mesopotamia and Southern Persia.143

The leader of this revolt was an Arab, ‘Alī b. Muḥammad and widely referred to as ‘Sāhib al-Zandj’ (Master of the Zandj).144 After a series of abortive endeavours at sedition in a number of cities and provinces of the region ‘including Baṣra where he narrowly escaped capture and imprisonment, he went to the saltpetre area’.145 On the 26th Ramāḍān 255/7 September 869 he aroused the Zandj serfs to rebellion.146

In the beginning, in order to legitimize and seek support for his cause, he claimed Alid ancestry. He did not, however, adhere to Shi‘īte doctrine but instead to that of the Khāridjites, whose egalitarian principles allowed even an Ethiopian to be caliph.147

The revolt began as a class conflict between the exploited Zandj slaves and their masters. It rapidly turned, however, into an open and violent war against the Caliphate. It was, therefore, a political and social struggle rather than a racial one.148 The dearth of sources provides us with only meagre accounts of the movement’s size, composition, organization and the like, and even these are often unreliable and must be approached with caution. A further difficulty resides in the fact that contemporary and later historians largely confined their attention to the military campaigns and were openly hostile to the insurgents, depicting them as ‘enemies of God’ living in a state of irreligion and lawlessness.149

As correctly observed by Nöldeke, ‘the number of 300,000 fighting men claimed for the negro leader was greatly exaggerated. The Zandj may very well have outnumbered their assailants, whose strength was given at 50,000, at least at the beginning of the struggle; but the latter were, on the whole, certainly much better equipped, fed and continually reinforced by newly arriving troops’.150

The black slaves involved in the revolt were scattered over a wide area in lower Mesopotamia and southern Persia in large bands of 500–5000 labourers.151 The Zandj contingents of ‘Alī b. Muḥammad consisted of the following main groups:

The Zandj Non-Arabophone slaves from the coast of East Africa, who

143. A. Popovic, 1976, p. 83.
144. For details on ‘Alī b. Muḥammad, see ibid., pp. 71–81.
146. A. Popovic, 1976, p. 79.
147. T. H. Nöldeke, 1892, p. 151; F. al-Sāmir, 1971, p. 82.
were imported into the region from an undetermined period. Al-Djähiz distinguished four sub-groupings; Kunbula, Landjawiyya, Naml and Kilāb. These were able to communicate with their leader only through an interpreter.

*The Kārmatīyya* These were an ill-defined group of African slaves, in all probability hailing from the Sudan. They were Arabophone. They had no links with the Kārāmīta movement.

*The Nūba* These were not only Nubians but also included Nilotic peoples as well. They were also Arabic-speaking.

*The Furātīyya* Slaves dwelling on the banks of the lower Euphrates, south of the city of Wāṣīt. They were clearly distinguished from the Zandj and spoke Arabic.

*The Shūridjīyya* These were the labourers (kassāhîn) employed on the salt flats of lower Mesopotamia. Their designation is a derivation of the Persian word shōra, meaning nitrous earth. Under this grouping are also to be found some free men and manumitted slaves as well as the hired hands employed on the date and sugar plantations.

Finally, there were the Beduins inhabiting the marshy districts south of Wāṣīt. The ranks of the insurgents were swelled by the desertion of black soldiers from the caliphal armies.

It is not our intention to give here a detailed account of the various military campaigns of the Zandj revolt, but only a summary of the principal events.

In 256/870, the Zandj army conquered the flourishing port of al-Ubulla and destroyed it. The fall of al-Ubulla terrified into submission the inhabitants of the Persian port of ‘Abbadân on the eastern bank of the Shaṭṭ al-‘Arab. This paved the way for the invasion in the same year of the adjoining province of Khūzistān. The Zandj made themselves masters of Djbūbā and the capital al-Ahwāz. The following year (257/871) witnessed the occupation and sacking of the principal port of Iraq, Basra. This was the most spectacular of the Zandj victories and a great blow to the Abbasid Caliphate. The terrible fate of Basra remained alive in the minds of succeeding generations. The Zandj forces then successfully ad-

---

154. ibid., p. 1745.
155. ibid., p. 1757.
156. See L. Massignon, 1929.
The African diaspora in Asia

The African diaspora in Asia advanced northward, capturing and sacking along the way the cities of Wāsīṭ (264/877–8), Nu‘māniya (265/878) and Djardjarāyā, 110 km below Baghdad. This was the culminating point of their northward expansion.¹⁶²

Between 267/881 and 270/883, the Abbasid crown prince al-Muwaffak undertook the offensive and pushed the invading forces southward and finally imposed a complete economic blockade on their capital, al-Mukhtarā.¹⁶³ After a siege of three years the city succumbed to assault on the 2 Safar 270/11 August 883. The leader of the revolt and many of his commanders were slain.¹⁶⁴

There is no doubt that the economic, political and social consequences of this long revolt profoundly affected the whole Islamic world. At the same time it made Muslims more averse to Africa and Africans in general. The import of Zandj slaves seems subsequently to have been restricted or put under control. Another consequence was the widespread diffusion of the unfavourable image of the black in Islamic countries, from Noah’s curse to the themes propagated by Ibn Butlān.

The cultural Role of Africans in the Islamic world

The contribution of Africans in the cultural sphere as poets, authors, musicians and experts in the Islamic sciences of Qoranic exegesis, transmission of traditions and canon law was an important one.¹⁶⁵

On the testimony of classical Arabic authors, Africans were endowed with eloquence. During the Umayyad and Abbasid Caliphates there were a number of distinguished black poets. An anthology of poems by one, ‘Irār b. ‘Amr, son of a black slave-girl, is preserved for posterity in the Kitāb al-Aghānī and Hamāsa.¹⁶⁶ He flourished during the reign of ‘Abd al-Malik (d. 86/705) and was in the service of the governor of the province of Iraq, al-Hadjdjādī (d. 95/714). Another black poet of unique talent and eloquence during this period was al-Haykātān.¹⁶⁷ However, the most celebrated and eminent of these poets was Abū Miḥdān (d. 108/726–7). He was born in the Ḥijāz of Ethiopian parents and in his youth worked as a camel-driver. Being ambitious, he addressed a series of panegyrics to the Umayyad Prince ‘Azīz b. Marwān, making such an impression that he was purchased from his owner by Marwān for a thousand dinars and manu-

¹⁶³. The capital of the Zandj, according to Nöldeke, ‘covered a large area and included extensive fields and palm groves. It lay somewhat below Bāṣra, abutted on the west bank of the Tigris and was intersected by the canal Nahr Abī ‘l-khāṣīb’. T. H. Nöldeke, 1892, p. 156.
In the early years of the Abbasid dynasty a black Kufan poet—Abū Dulāma (d. 161/778)—was famed for his wit, amusing adventures, acquaintance with general literature and talent for poetry. Caliph al-Manṣūr found pleasure in the verses and drollery of this gifted, bibulous, frivolous black court poet and jester.169

The first really great representative of Arabic artistic prose was 'Amr Bahr al-Djähiz (The goggle-eyed) of Baṣra (d. 255/868–9) where he lived to the age of 96.170 His grandfather was a black camel-driver, named Fazāra—a mawālī of 'Amr ibn Kila'.171 Though deformed in person, as implied in his sobriquet, al-Djähiz was amply compensated with an incisive mind and a sagacious spirit.172 His learning was encyclopaedic and he was a versatile author of numerous works on almost every branch of knowledge. One of his finest productions was the Kitāb al-ḥayawān (The Book of Animals).173 He was equally famed as a freethinker and composed a discourse on the fundamentals of religion. An offshoot of the Mu‘tazilite sect was called ‘al-Djāhizīya’ after him.174

The Africans excelled also in the musical arts and several black virtuosi dominated the musical scene during the first two centuries of the Islamic era, especially in the Hijāz where ‘in the palaces and houses of the nobility and the wealthy, music and musicians came in for special indulgence’.175 The first and greatest musician of the period was the black Abū 'Uthmān Sa‘īd ibn Misdjah (d. c. 715). His desire to learn exotic musical techniques brought him to Persia and Syria. Upon his return to Hijāz he introduced Byzantine and Persian melodies in the singing of Arabic songs. Ibn Misdjah reached the height of his musical attainments during the reign of the Umayyad Caliph 'Abd al-Malik (684–705) and he was acclaimed as one of the four great singers of the epoch.176

Another celebrated black musician was Abū 'Abbād Ma‘bad ibn Wahb (d. 126/743). He was a mulatto from Medina and flourished during the reigns of three Umayyad caliphs, being hailed as the Prince of the Medinese singers. Among his pupils was also Sallāma al-Kass, the mulatto female singer and favourite of Caliph Yazīd b. 'Abd al-Malik. Many other black musicians and singers attained glory during the Abbasid Caliphate.

Arabic biographical sources (tabākāt) mention a number of African traditionists and scholars of religion. One of the most eminent was the

172. ibid., pp. 56–8.
175. H. G. Farmer, 1929, p. 43.
176. ibid., pp. 77–78.
The African diaspora in Asia

black mawlā, Abū 'Abd Allāh Sa ū d ibn D j ubayr ibn H ishām (d. c. 94/712), an authority on the rites of the Pilgrimage, Qoranic exegesis, laws of divorce and questions of ritual.177 Another, Abū ' At ā b. Rabāh (d. 115/733-4) was described as 'black in colour, blind in one eye, flat-nosed, one-armed, lame of a leg and woolly haired'.178 His authority as a traditionist was widely acknowledged and the 'office of muj tā' at Mecca devoted to him'. Yet he was unostentatious and led the life of a devout ascetic.179 The first to distinguish himself in the fields of ḥadīth and fi ḥ in Islamic Egypt was Yazīd b. Abī Ḥ abīb (d. 128/745), the son of a Nubian prisoner of war.180 Al- D jā hī z spoke highly of the black mawlā – Fārād j al- Ḥ adjām of Baṣ rā, whose role as a traditionist was beyond reproach.181 A celebrated ascetic and great sūfī doctor was the black eunuch Abū 1- Hasān al-Baghdādī, generally known by the name of Khā y r al-Nassād j (d. 322/934). He worked as a silk weaver, before he was manumitted by his master. He was equally reputed as an ' a d ī (irreproachable witness).182

Africans in India, South-east Asia and China

Evidence of the presence of Africans in India during this period is scanty. As observed by J. Burton-Page 'there is little information concerning the numbers, status and functions of the Ḥ a bšī s in the earliest Muslim period'.183 It is probable that a thorough and systematic examination of the Indian National Archives as well as the rich body of vernacular literatures of southern and western India would provide us with much valuable data. At present we are in a better position regarding our information on the presence of black African slaves in Indonesia and China, owing to the availability of brief historical notices and paleographical and iconographical materials.

Black African slaves were known in the Malay Archipelago as far back as the early part of the eighth century of the Christian era and were generally referred to as the Zangī.184 Chinese links with this area also brought black slaves to China. In the Chronicle of the T'ang Dynasty of China, under the

178. ibid.
179. ibid., p. 203.
184. It is with the value of 'negro' and often of 'negro slave' that the word Zāngī passed to Indonesia, Central Asia and the Far East. A Javanese inscription of 860 mentions the Jēngī, while other spellings Jaŋi and Jeŋi occur in inscriptions dated 1135, 1140 and 1294. Jāngī or Jeŋi is still the name of the negroes in Malay, it is Jongī in Batak.' P. Pelliot, 1959, p. 598. For the same word in Chinese sources, see ibid., pp. 599–601. The designation ' Ḥ abshi' for blacks or African slaves is of later application. For an example given in the Malay legal digests of the eighteenth century, see R. J. Maxwell, 1932, p. 254.
events of 724 is recorded the reception of an embassy sent by the Ruler of the kingdom of Srivijaya centred at Palembang in Sumatra. A Zandj girl was offered along with other exotic items as tribute. This was not an isolated event, as between 813 and 818 another Indonesian kingdom, that of the Javanese nation of Kalinga despatched three missions to the court of the T'ang Emperor, Hsien Tsung. Among the rarities presented as tribute were several Zandj boys and girls. It is also recorded in the Chronicle of the Sung Dynasty that in 976 an Arab merchant brought to the Imperial Court 'a black K'un Lun slave with deep-set eyes and black body'.

These 'black youths and maidens' were hardly passing 'curiosities for the cultivated courts of the eighth and ninth centuries' but in reality represented only part of the large group of African slaves imported into the region by Arab merchants. Chou Ch'u-fei, a Chinese official, in his work Ling-nai Tai-ta compiled at Kwee Lin in 1178, showed an awareness of this traffic in African slaves. 'Writing of an undetermined sector of the East African coast, which he calls K'un-lun Ts'eng-chi', he noted that 'savages with lacquer-black bodies and frizzy hair were enticed by offers of food and then captured'. Thousands of these negroes, he further remarked, were sold as 'foreign slaves'. It appears that a proportion of this human merchandise was shipped by Arab traders to China via the Malay Archipelago. Canton was the principal port of entry and distributing centre.

There is also evidence of the role played by African slaves in the social and economic fields. In another passage, 'the P'ing-chou K'o-tan adds that these "devil slaves" were employed on shipboard to caulk leaky seams below the water-line from the outside as they were expert swimmers who do not close their eyes under water'. They also appear to have been reasonably common as household servants of the wealthy classes in the main urban areas. G. Ferrand, drawing on Chinese classical sources,

185. G. Ferrand, 1922, pp. 7–8; P. Pelliot, 1959, p. 599, mentions two seng-ch'i (Zandj) girls.
188. P. Wheatley, 1961, p. 54.
189. Ibid.
190. This has been attested by the Chinese scholar of the Sung Period, Chu Yu, who in his work entitled P'ing-chou k'dtan (1119) wrote: 'In Kuang-chou (Canton) most of the wealthy people keep devil-slaves (kuei-nu), who are very strong and can lift [weights of] several hundred catties. Their language and tastes are unintelligible [to the Chinese]. Their nature is simple and they do not abscond. They are also called 'wild men' (yeh-jen). Their colour is as black as [Chinese] ink, their lips are red, their teeth white and their hair curly and yellow [sic]. There are both males and females among them . . . They live on the islands beyond the sea.' Quoted in P. Wheatley, 1961, pp. 54–5. See equally Chang Hsing-Lang, 1930.
192. Chou Ju-kua, 1911, p. 32. 'Many families [in China] buy black people to make gatekeepers of; they are called kui-nu or "devil-slaves" or hei siao ssi (black slaves or servants)'.

732
The African diaspora in Asia speaks of their role as musicians in the Sumatran kingdom of Śrīvijāya (San-fo-ts'í).\textsuperscript{193}

The worldwide presence of Africans was not initially brought about by the forced mass exodus to the Americas. It has been observed that already from the seventh to the eleventh century, large numbers of Africans were to be found in many parts of Asia, occupying various social positions and making important contributions in the economic, political and cultural fields. It is regrettable that this image of the impact of Africa on Asia, though of major historical importance, is still a fragmentary one and is based on non-African sources. For a complete and balanced account, there is an urgent need to study how Africans saw themselves in relation to others in their lands of exile.

\textsuperscript{193} G. Ferrand, 1922, p. 16. 'Les esclaves provenant du K'ouen-louen font de la musique pour les gens du pays, en sautant sur le sol et en chantant'.
The period from the seventh to the eleventh century of the Christian era showed a remarkable growth of relations between the various regions of Africa. The fact that this growth coincided with Muslim expansion led certain authors, such as Raymond Mauny, to say that it was the Arab conquest and Islamization that brought tropical Africa out of its isolation and linked it up with the rest of the world again. Yet, despite considerable gaps in the sources – partly made good by the growing number of archaeological discoveries in recent years – present data bear out the words of Catherine Coquery-Vidrovitch that ‘one of the characteristics of African societies is never to have lived in isolation. The continent of Africa has known two major phenomena: population mobility and the volume of long-distance trade.’ The work of E. W. Bovill, C. A. Diop and T. Obenga among others, has shown the vitality of the relations between the regions north and south of the Sahara since Antiquity. Moreover, it has been appositely demonstrated how the socio-economic context in which Islam came into being was strongly influenced by the development of trade between Ethiopia, the Mediterranean and the Indian Ocean. These comments having been made, it must nevertheless be recognized that the integration of some parts of Africa into the Arab empire set up in the seventh century gave new momentum to inter-African relations. Arab and Muslim influence produced a chain reaction right across the continent, and became the decisive feature in the development of the Maghrib, Egypt and the Saharan peoples from the eighth century onwards. Elsewhere it acted as an external factor whose importance varied according to the geographical posi-

7. E. R. Wolf, 1951; see also M. Rodinson, 1968.
8. On the Muslim expansion, see R. Mantran, 1969 and Chapters 2 and 3 above.
9. Cf. Chapters 7 to 12 above.
FIG. 27.1 Relations between the different parts of Africa from the seventh to the eleventh century
tion of the various regions in relation to the routes of penetration taken by the Muslims.\textsuperscript{10}

The growth of inter-regional trade

The itineraries left by Arab geographers are evidence of the development of trade between the various parts of the continent from the eighth century onwards. The Arab conquest did not only bring about a profound change in the political geography of the Mediterranean world, which was dominated between the seventh and eleventh centuries by the Muslim empire; in particular it also gave 'international' trade unusual dynamism even after the disintegration of that empire. In spite of the constant turbulence that characterized the superstructure of the empire (revolts, schisms, etc.), the Muslim world remained the mainspring of world trade until the thirteenth century. Maurice Lombard's classic article has brought out the fundamental role of African gold in the establishment of Muslim power.\textsuperscript{11} Until the European expansion of the fifteenth century, the fates of Africa and the Arab world were closely linked.\textsuperscript{12}

Inter-African trade during the period under consideration was characterized by three fundamental features: progress in means of communication; expansion of the commercial network; and an increase in the volume of trade. Although to the best of our knowledge, no systematic work exists on the African economy of this period, the few clues furnished by Arabic written sources and archaeology amply bear out the above point of view.

Progress in means of communication

By strengthening permanent links between North Africa and western Asia, the Arab conquest created favourable conditions for the large-scale use of camels. According to some authors the camel, a most opportune animal for desert regions, was introduced into Africa about the first century of the Christian era; according to others, on the other hand, certain species of camels which were extinct during the historical period were found on the continent at the end of the Neolithic period.\textsuperscript{13}

But wherever the camel came from, researchers on the whole agree in recording the widespread use of this beast of burden in trans-Saharan trade from the Islamic period onwards. Thus in Morocco cross-breeding of the two-humped camel of central Asia with the Arabian camel or one-humped dromedary, together with the techniques of selection, produced two types

\textsuperscript{10} See for example Chapters 19 to 21 above.
\textsuperscript{12} E. F. Gautier, 1935.
\textsuperscript{13} Cf. the discussion in Unesco, \textit{General History of Africa}, Vol. II, ch. 20.
Relations between the different regions of Africa

of camel. One, slow of gait, but capable of carrying heavy loads, was used for trade; the other, faster and lighter, was used for warfare and for carrying messages (mehari).\textsuperscript{14} The western Sahara was also famous for the breeding of camels. According to al-Bakrī the king of the Ṣanḥādja possessed over 100,000 thoroughbred camels for his army.\textsuperscript{15} The number of camels making up the various caravans that plied between the Sudan, the Maghrib and Egypt all the year round ran into thousands.

One of the positive aspects of Muslim expansion is that it gave considerable impetus to navigation. At the behest of the Aghlabids and Fāṭimid rulers powerful fleets were built up which enabled Muslim merchants to maintain the flow of trade between East Africa and the countries of the Indian Ocean, Red Sea and Mediterranean. Large harbours with dockyards for shipbuilding were constructed in the Maghrib, such as Tunis (eighth century), Bidjāya (Bougie) and Mahdiyya (915), Algiers (946), Oran (902) and Arzila (tenth century). In Egypt the old port of Alexandria was revived.

It was between the eighth and eleventh centuries that the typical large Mediterranean trading vessel, with a raised hull and two lateen-rigged masts, was evolved under the aegis of the Muslim navy; technically, it was a cross between the merchant ship of the ancient Mediterranean and the ship designs of the Indian Ocean.\textsuperscript{16} Well before the introduction of the compass and other navigational instruments the Muslim seamen were able to ply the seas over great distances by employing a method known as the ‘sidereal rose’;\textsuperscript{17} the compass and astronomical tables were to make these voyages safer.

\textsuperscript{14} N. Pacha, 1976, p. 49; cf. also Chapter 14 above.
\textsuperscript{15} J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 2; N. Levitzone and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 69.
\textsuperscript{17} V. A. Teixeira da Mota, 1963; see also G. Tibbets (ed.), 1971.
Expansion of the commercial network

Between the seventh and the eleventh centuries trade between the various regions of the continent was booming. The growth of cities was the most obvious sign of this development of commercial activity. In about 757 an old nomad camel drivers' fair in the Tafilälet became a town, Sidjilmäsa, which until the eleventh century served as the main staging-post for trans-Saharan trade between the Western Sudan and the western Maghrib. In about 800 the Idrïsids made Fez into a flourishing city. Under the Fätimids Cairo was the pivot between the Muslim East, the Muslim West and Africa south of the Sahara. In the western Sahara, Awdâghust, political capital of the Şan'àda Berbers, became the market place linking black Africa with Barbary, after the manner of Zawîla in the central Sahara. Routes that were much used or little used according to the favourability or otherwise of the political situation linked these markets to others south of the Sahara. Thus, Ghana/Kumbi Saleh, capital of the empire of Ghana/Wagadu, Sillâ and Yearesi on the Senegal River and Kâw-Kâw on the Niger connected the Muslim world with the savanna lands and those of the West African forest. On the East African coast, Muslim merchants founded trading centres such as Mogadishu, Barâwa (Brava), Malindi, Mombasa, Kilwa and Sofâla on the mainland and on the islands of Pate, Kanbalû (Pemba), Kizimkazi (Zanzibar). In the eleventh century these centres became great cosmopolitan markets specializing in the transit of goods from East Africa (Zimbabwe), eastern and southern Asia and the Muslim world.

Thus the new growth of towns that took place from the seventh century onwards as a result of the development of trade led to the expansion of the trade network and then speeded up the integration of the various regional and local economies.

Increase in the volume of trade

The growth of the volume of trade was the direct result of the keen demand created by urban development, population growth in certain regions (e.g. the Maghrib and Bantu regions) and the expansion of foreign markets.

22. See Chapter 21 above.
(India, China and the Arab empire). Products intensively traded during this period fall into four main categories: raw materials; subsistence products; luxury items for domestic use; and luxury goods. Depending on circumstances and places, a single item may have occupied different positions in this range.

**Raw materials**

The most important raw materials were iron, flax, cotton, gum and indigo. Iron manufactured in the empire of Ghana, probably in the area between the Faleme and Senegal rivers, was exported to other parts of Senegambia and the Niger. We know for certain that East and Southern Africa supplied India with iron. The Nilotic countries no doubt participated in this trade with India and even with the Muslim world. In the Maghrib the deposits at Ceuta and Oran and in the area between Salé and Marrakesh were still being worked in the eleventh century.  

Trade in flax, cotton, gum and indigo is connected with the development of the textile industry. The growing of flax has been reported in the Maghrib, and of cotton in several areas (Senegal River, Ethiopia, the Maghrib, etc.). Gum, which was used in the finishing of fabrics, came either from the gum-tree forests of the western Sahara or from Kordofān. Indigo, which is perhaps of Asian (Indian) origin, was grown from the eleventh century in the Maghrib, which must have supplied it to the Western Sudan.

**Subsistence products**

The distribution of subsistence products ranked first in volume in inter-African trade. Wheat from the Maghrib was exported by caravan via Sidjilmāsa to the western Sahara and the Sudan. Despite its large domestic market, Egypt could still export cereal surpluses by caravan to Libya and Nubia and by boat to Cyrenaica. According to al-Bakrī, the wheat harvest in the Bēdja region in Ifrikiya was always to be relied on; and in good years the city supplied 1000 camel-loads a day to several cities including Ǧayrāwān and Tunis.

Millet, sorghum, rice and shea-butter from the Western Sudan and olive oil from the Maghrib were exported in all directions. Dried smoked fish prepared on the coast and in countries on rivers was sent to the interior. The salt trade was the main branch of the subsistence trade. Rock salt from the Sahara (Tāghāzā) and sea salt competed with each other in the interior; but they could never satisfy the keen demand, as is witnessed by the very

---


24. Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 120.
high value of this commodity, which according to Ibn Ḥawkal could reach 200–300 dinars a camel load.\textsuperscript{25}

**Luxury items for domestic use**

Luxury items for domestic use consisted predominantly of slaves and camels. As on all continents at that time, slavery in Africa was a socially legitimate practice. Arabic sources stress the importance of the trade in black slaves by Muslim merchants, but in fact this trade worked both ways. In the royal courts of the Sudan there were Berber and Arab slaves, and no doubt slaves of European origin.\textsuperscript{26} It is reasonable to suppose that economic growth and its corollaries (urban development and the splendour of court life) brought about a keen demand for manpower in black Africa and in the Muslim East and West. Hence the intensification of the slave trade implied by the Arabic chronicles of the period.

Nevertheless, to put forward estimates of the number of slaves exported by black Africa to the Muslim world, as R. Mauny and T. Lewicki have done, is extremely hazardous. Mauny believes that the number of black slaves exported was somewhere around 20,000 a year or two million per century during the Middle Ages\textsuperscript{27} whilst according to Lewicki 12–16 million black slaves passed through Cairo in the sixteenth century alone.\textsuperscript{28} Such estimates are obviously exaggerated. There are at least three reasons to explain why this trade fell short of the figures put forward:

The low level of development of the Muslim economy of the period, which could not absorb such a quantity of slaves. Except for the Zandj (black slaves) from lower Iraq\textsuperscript{29} no large body of blacks historically linked to the trans-Saharan slave trade existed anywhere in the Arab world.

The high cost of slaves, because of the risks inherent in the desert crossing, which would not have permitted such a massive exodus.\textsuperscript{30} In this connection, it is significant that in the Arabic iconography of the period, the slave merchant was often depicted as a man with a hole in his purse.

Until the Crusades the Muslim world drew its slaves from two main sources: Eastern and Central Europe (Slavs) and Turkestan. The Sudan only came third. But it must be added that black slaves were appreciated above all as domestic workers – eunuchs, concubines, wet nurses, cooks, etc.\textsuperscript{31} The descendants of these concubines and wet nurses were integrated

\textsuperscript{25} J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 75; N. Levtzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds), 1981, p. 49.

\textsuperscript{26} Although this practice appears in fourteenth-century sources (Ibn Baṭṭūta in J. M. Cuq, 1975, pp. 316, 390) it probably went on in the previous centuries.

\textsuperscript{27} R. Mauny, 1961.

\textsuperscript{28} T. Lewicki, 1967b.

\textsuperscript{29} Cf. Chapter 26 above.

\textsuperscript{30} For prices on Iraqi markets see E. Ashtor, 1969, pp. 88 ff, 361 ff.

\textsuperscript{31} Thus according to al-Bakrī an excellent black cook was worth 100 mīthkāls and more at Awdāghust; see J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 84.
into Muslim society as full citizens, as illustrated by the cases of Isā ibn Yazīd, the supposed chief of a group of emigrants who founded Sidjil-
māsā and Abū Yazīd, born at Gao of a black mother and a Berber father, who became a famous preacher and led the Fāṭimid s to within an ace of their downfall (late tenth century). 33

Owing to the development of trade between black Africa and the Muslim world, Arab horses multiplied in the savanna lands where the absence of trypanosomiasis made their survival possible. The trade in Arab horses (barbs), which was monopolized by the Sudanic states, led to the gradual disappearance of the smaller, local pony-like race whose presence was still mentioned in the eleventh century by al-Bakrī. 34 Numidia and Nubia gradually came to specialize in the breeding of Barbary horses, which they then exported to the Western and Central Sudan.

**Luxury goods**

Luxury goods consisted predominantly of textiles, precious metals, pearls and ivory. The geographical literature of the period lays particular stress on the flowering of textile crafts in the Maghrib and Egypt. Silk goods from Gabēs and woollen goods from Kayrawān were prized on all markets. Awdāghust exported red and blue dyed garments. 35 The town of Taranka on the middle Senegal was famous for its fine cotton loincloths or shakkiyāyāt, which merchants sent to the north and to the neighbouring countries. 36 Following the work of Charles Monteil, some historians see in the progress of the textile crafts and the fabric trade a consequence of the expansion of Islam. In fact the social changes (urban development, enrichment of the ruling classes through foreign trade, and population growth) seem to have been the root causes that dictated the development of increasingly extensive textile crafts in all areas. Clearly, the new conditions meant that people could no longer rely for their clothing on makeshift expedients like animal skins or textiles made from the bark of certain trees, as they had in earlier periods when the population was more scattered, society less highly organized and certain moral values consequently not yet current.

As regards precious metals, gold of course held first place. During the period that concerns us several producing areas existed that supplied the rest of the continent and foreign markets to an unequal extent. In decreasing order of importance these areas were: Bambuk/Galam and Bure in West Africa; Southern Africa; and Nubia.

33. On Abū Yazīd, see R. Le Tourneau, 1954, and Chapter 12 above.
35. Al-Bakrī, 1913, p. 159.
36. C. Monteil, 1926.
Copper was used as a raw material in the manufacture of art objects and other luxury items. Cut up into rings it served as currency in some localities (e.g. Sillā on the Senegal River). In any case it was extensively traded between the producing areas (Katanga, Air, western Sahara), the Yoruba countries and northern Africa, where the growth of the arts led to keen demand.

The southern Maghrib and the Central Sudan were famous for their pearls and precious stones (agate, amazonite, etc.). Thus the Bèdja country between the Nile and the Red Sea contained deposits of precious stones and emeralds that were worked by the Muslims.

The dissemination of techniques

Trade, and the population mobility that went with it, were instrumental in bringing about the dissemination of techniques. But in this respect, our sources are even more meagre. The Arab geographers which we use as a source were more interested in the mechanism of the distribution of goods than in their production. Archaeological data are still too contradictory to allow us to advance positive opinions about the development of techniques during the period under consideration. The present state of our knowledge suggests that five branches of activity made progress and spread on the continent. These were mining and metallurgy; agriculture; crafts; trading techniques; and techniques of war.

Mining and metallurgy

Mining and metallurgy were booming in all areas. According to S. Gsell, the mining industry’s most active period in the Maghrib was not Antiquity but the Middle Ages. In the Muslim West, attempts were made to improve the technique for treating ores. In Muslim Spain a new process was used for separating gangue from azurite (a copper ore). It consisted of soaking the ore in oil and then throwing it into a rapidly flowing stream; the particles of metal, buoyed up by the oil, were carried away by the current, while the earthy matter dropped to the bottom. It seems highly probable that this method was in use in the Maghrib. The debate on the spread of iron in Africa continues, but L. M. Diop’s thesis, which argues for the indigenous origin of iron-working, seems preferable to the hypotheses of
Relations between the different regions of Africa

dissemination from outside supported by several historians; in any case it is now established that many African peoples went from the Stone Age to the Iron Age during the first millennium of the Christian era. This seems to be true of the Bantu and the peoples living on the Atlantic coast west of the empire of Ghana. Be that as it may, the social processes going on on the continent as a whole most probably led to the intensification and perhaps to the improvement of the techniques for the manufacture of metals.

Agriculture

In the sphere of agriculture, the period is distinguished by the spread of farming techniques and new plants. Thus in the Maghrib and the Saharan oasis a new system of irrigation involving the use of foggāra or stone conduits was adopted, and this made it possible to extend the cultivation of new crops such as rice, cotton and sugar cane.

The Gangara farming area (Assaba, in Mauritania), consisting of walled fields and terracettes whose ruins are still visible, no doubt dates from the Almoravid period. In East Africa, rice-growing in flooded fields seems to have been introduced by Asian immigrants.

Under the impetus of inter-regional trade, plants or new species were spread outside their area of origin. Thus some varieties of rice of Asian origin reached as far as the Egyptian oases and southern Morocco. Sorg-hum, a plant from Africa south of the Sahara, began to be grown in Upper Egypt, Cyrenaica, the Algerian Tell and even in Syria and southern Europe. The species of wheat known in the oral traditions of the Soninke of Wagadu as darma yille (Adrar millet) spread southwards into the Sahel.

The cultivation of olive trees made considerable progress in the Maghrib, to the point of completely changing the countryside of the region. The date palm, a native of Mesopotamia and the Persian Gulf, was found in Egypt in the Pharaonic period; but the planting of it was intensified between the seventh and eleventh centuries. Southern Tunisia and the western Sahara were the main centres of the date palm. The Muslim and Jewish commercial communities introduced to the Sudanic towns (Ghana and Kānem) vegetables such as melons and cucumbers which were grown in gardens. The growing of bananas and coconuts was linked with the growth of the Indian Ocean trade.

Crafts

The process of dissemination of craft techniques is far less well known.

44. J. M. Cuq, 1975, p. 120; N. Levitzion and J. F. P. Hopkins (eds) 1981, p. 98.
45. N. Pacha, 1976, p. 46.
Two facts deserve mention. According to Al-Bakri, Sfax, famous for its sheets, was indebted to Alexandria for the methods of pressing used by the people of that city.\(^{47}\) The manufacture of paper from flax, and then from cotton on the Chinese model brought about a veritable revolution from the end of the tenth century onwards. While the parchment and papyrus used until then for the transmission of texts could not provide the conditions for a democratization of knowledge, cheap paper made by the new process gave a general impetus to intellectual activity.\(^{48}\)

The development of trading techniques

The development of trade and the growth in the volume of goods that resulted from it led to the adoption of increasingly sophisticated methods of payment. The most striking feature of this development was the progressive monetization of the regional economies. While the Maghribian monetary system was linked to that of the Muslim world (which was based on the gold dinar), a wide range of currencies existed in other parts of the continent: various kinds of shells, including cowries (Cypraea moneta) from the Maldive Islands, copper rings, bars of salt and pieces of fabric were used concurrently for trading purposes.

In the Muslim world in particular, trading techniques developed remarkably. Merchants in that region already used drafts, bills of exchange (suftādja) and promises to pay (shakk or cheque). Thus Ibn Ḥawkal, writing towards the end of the tenth century, said that he had seen a cheque in Awdāghust made out in favour of one of the people of Sidjilmāsa and drawn against a certain tradesman of Awdāghust for the sum of 4000 dinars.\(^{49}\) At that time tradesmen engaged in trans-Saharan enterprises set up a highly efficient network organized either on a family basis or on the basis of joint stock companies, with correspondents in all the important places. They did business with countries outside the sphere of Muslim influence with the help of intermediaries (interpreters) recruited in the entrepôt centres such as Ghana/Kumbi Saleh, as Yāḳūt so appositely pointed out.\(^{50}\) The ‘silent trade’ mentioned by a number of chroniclers after Herodotus\(^ {51}\) seems, as Paulo Farias has shown, to be one of the myths that die hard.\(^ {52}\)

---

48. Cf. on this question Chapter 1 above.
52. P. F. de Moraes Farias, 1974.
Techniques of war

In the countries of the Sudanic savanna the increase in imports of Arab horses and the growth of iron metallurgy on the one hand, and the internal development of the societies of the region on the other, led to a profound change in military tactics. Cavalry rather than infantry began to play a predominant rôle in battles. Weapon technology also changed. The bow and arrow, the 'democratic weapon' characteristic of egalitarian societies\textsuperscript{53} which could be made by every individual, was progressively replaced by iron weapons whose manufacture presupposed a more highly developed social context. The manufacture of shields also made definite progress during this period. Thus the shields known as \textit{lamta} manufactured by a Saharan \textit{kabila} of the same name, enjoyed a great reputation as far as the Maghrib.\textsuperscript{54} All in all, thanks to speedier methods of locomotion (horses and camels) and the improvement of weapons, war was henceforth to play the prime rôle in the process of social evolution within African social groupings.

The expansion of Islam and its social significance

From the point of view of the movement of ideas, the period from the seventh to the eleventh century was characterized by the spread of Islam at the expense not only of Christianity and Judaism but also of polytheism. At the end of the seventh century only a minority consisting of the Arab conquerors professed Islam in the Maghrib and Egypt, but by the end of the eleventh century the whole of the Maghrib, Egypt and the western Sahara and large groups of peoples in West, Central and East Africa had gone over to Islam. This extraordinary rise of Islam has been attributed to various causes. According to Mauny, the successes of Islam in West Africa were due to conversion by force and the simplicity of its doctrine, which was 'easy for a black to accept'.\textsuperscript{55}

These explanations are superficial. While the domination of Rome, Byzantium and more recently colonialism, which made themselves tools of Christianity, were accompanied by violence, the expansion of Islam via tropical Africa took the form of an increasingly massive influx of merchants. Moreover, the supposed simplicity of Islam as compared to Christianity is more a value judgement based on prejudice than on objective analysis of the two religions.

Let us sum up by saying that Islam owed its expansion to the new economic and social conditions directly or indirectly created by the commercial

\textsuperscript{53} J. Goody, 1971, p. 43.
\textsuperscript{54} Al-Ya'kūbi in J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 49; Ibn al-Fākīh in J. M. Cuoq, 1975, p. 54.
\textsuperscript{55} R. Mauny, 1961, p. 520.
and political expansion of the Arab empire, in correlation with the internal development processes of African societies.\footnote{56}

**Basic features of the development of African societies from the seventh to the eleventh century**

Three essential features characterized the social changes of this period: major population movements; acceleration of the process of social differentiation, as a result of the division of labour; development of the class struggle, as manifested in revolts and civil wars in several states.

**Population movements**

Population movements markedly changed the human geography of the continent. Whatever the outcome of debates about the Bantu migrations, the movement of this people across Central, East and Southern Africa continued during the period that concerns us.\footnote{57} The political strife that marked the beginning of the Arab conquest, and in particular the development of trans-Saharan trade, led to several Berber groups being driven into the Sahara. It was perhaps the pressure of these newcomers that caused the exodus of certain black peoples such as the proto-Wolof and the Serer from Tāgant (Mauritania) to the south-west (western Senegal). The Soninke Dyula (tradesmen) of Ghana, who were middlemen in the trans-Saharan trade, founded a series of commercial centres on the Niger and its tributaries, the most prosperous of which were to be Dia and Jenne.\footnote{58} The population of the East African coast and Madagascar was swollen by the arrival of successive waves of migrants from Arabia, India, western Asia and Indonesia.\footnote{59}

**Social differentiation**

The acceleration of the process of social differentiation was the result of a more sophisticated division of labour, which in turn was the consequence of the development of trade. The major feature in this sphere was the emergence in the Maghrib and the Sudan of a class of professional middlemen trading between the different regions. These traders managed to transcend their racial differences (Berbers, Arabs, Jews and blacks) and constitute a genuine class, conscious of where its own interests lay. Traders held a dominant economic position in the societies, and even aspired to

\footnote{56. See Chapters 3 and 4 above.}
\footnote{57. B. A. Ogot (ed.), 1974; see also Chapters 5 and 6 above.}
\footnote{58. On the founding of Jenne, see C. Monteil, 1903. But the recent research by S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh has proven the much earlier origin of this town.}
\footnote{59. B. A. Ogot, 1974; Chapters 4, 5 and 21–25 above.}
Relations between the different regions of Africa

take over political power, or at least to use the states as mere police devices for ensuring the security of business transactions.

As regards the military aristocracy, which held political power, foreign trade enabled it to acquire additional means of domination (arms and horses in the case of the Sudanic states, gold in the case of the Muslim states) that tended to strengthen its sway over the ordinary people. Thus in most of these states an increasingly sharp demarcation separated those who benefited from trade (aristocracy and traders) from the common people (peasants and small urban craftsmen). The general consequence of the development of trade was that it broke up social structures founded on kinship and the ethnic group to produce a new social order based on ownership of the means of production (land in the Maghribian states) and trade. The formation of Zimbabwe in the eleventh century and the establishment of the Kongo kingdom (finally completed in the fourteenth century) and the Hausa states was probably to some extent influenced by the changes taking place on the East African coast and in Egypt and the Sahara as a result of the trade boom in the Indian Ocean, the Red Sea and the Mediterranean. A recent version of the legend of Sundiata, the famous Mande emperor of the thirteenth century, suggests that the slaving expeditions of the Malinke princes in league with the Soninke traders acted as a stimulus to the emergence of the empire of Mali. But, unlike many authors, we believe that trade was not the motive force behind the setting up of these states. It merely accelerated the process on the basis of the internal dynamic of these societies, which had reached a level of maturity that allowed them to react favourably to external stresses. In particular making a surplus as a result of improved productivity was the basis on which trade with foreign communities was built up. Thus the social phenomena of this period were the outcome of the dialectic of the production and distribution of goods. Be that as it may, the expansion of Islam during this period was the result of interaction between the economic shifts and the social changes that agitated most regions of Africa, in particular the Maghrib, Egypt, the Sahara, East Africa and the Central and Western Sudan. Islam and its universalist doctrine amounted to more than the old polytheism overlaid by the ethnic variants of Christianity and Judaism, which were no longer valid for the expression of conflicts of interest between the various social groups. Thus the Khâridjite movement, Abû Yazîd's revolt and other messianic movements that disturbed the Maghribian states during the period that concerns us, represented in social terms the rejection of the established order, and above all a determination to put an end to social injustice. The violence with which the Almoravid movement first attacked Awdâghust, a city of Muslim traders, was due not so much to the

fact that the latter had accepted the sway of non-Muslim Ghana as to concern on the part of the Berber masses of the western Sahara to appeal to truth, to rectify injustices and abolish unfair taxation.

In the states of the Western and Central Sudan (Ghana, Gao and Känem), the dominant economic position occupied by the Muslims was what enabled them gradually to gain an ascendancy over society as a whole. In Ghana the emperor chose his interpreters and most of his ministers from among the Muslims. In Gao no one could reign without being converted to Islam. Again, the conversion of one of the kings of Mali in the eleventh century under the influence of a Muslim whose prayers supposedly ended the drought is an indication of the growing ideological influence of the followers of Islam in Sudanic societies. The proselytism of the king of Takrūr, Wār Diabi is another indication of Islam's power of attraction. The economic role and the social prestige of the Muslims were thus the decisive reasons for the success of their religion.

The development of the class struggle

The development of the class struggle, and of social conflicts in general, took place with an intensity that varied according to local peculiarities and the degree of domination and exploitation that operated within each social group. For the Maghrib, C. A. Julien, A. Laroui and to a lesser extent G. Marçais have analysed the revolts and schismatic movements of the period as episodes in the class struggle.

In the Sudanic states the picture is less clear. But the fall of the empire of Ghana/Wagadu at the end of the eleventh century was probably the final consequence of a process of internal decay. According to our hypothesis this decay was due to the conflicts between two groups within the ruling class of Ghana: one Islamized and allied with the traders, and the other loyal to the traditional religion and rural society. Internal dissensions were then aggravated with the sharpening of the contradictions between the people as a whole and the ruling class. Whatever the merits of this hypothesis, it has nevertheless been established that inter-African trade exerted contradictory influences on social groups on the continent. In some cases it favoured political integration (the Almoravid and Fātimid empires, and later Mali and Songhay); in others it led on the contrary to the disintegration of state structures inherited from earlier periods (Ghana and the Christian empire of Ethiopia).

64. ibid., p. 86. Cf. Chapter 13 above.
66. ibid., pp. 102-3.
67. ibid., p. 96.
69. See A. Bathily, 1975, pp. 34-44.
Conclusion

The period from the seventh to the eleventh century marked a peculiar stage in the history of the continent of Africa. The present state of our knowledge does not allow us to grasp every aspect of this development, but it may confidently be asserted that the expansion of the Arab empire was one of its main features. The above study of trade relations and the dissemination of techniques and ideas suggests two basic comments by way of description of the historical movement of African societies during this period.

First, the African economy as a whole remained a self-sufficient one within which productivity standards followed consumption standards. Goods were traded on the basis not of their exchange value as such but of their use value. Economic links between the various regions were based on complementarity between the goods they respectively produced; and these were more subject then than now to natural conditions because of the low level of productivity. But comparison of the various social groups shows that they were unevenly developed. This uneven development is illustrated by the fact that some societies had reached a very advanced process of social differentiation, with a very elaborate economic structure tending towards the establishment of a market economy (the Maghrib and the Sudan), whilst other communities were still at the stage of food-gathering or hunting in hordes. Hence the difficulty the historian has in defining a mode of production specific to Africa taken as a whole.70

Secondly the analysis of specific social groups outlined in this chapter leads to one major observation. From the seventh to the eleventh century, thanks to advances in the economic integration of its regional economies, Africa was able to satisfy most of its needs both of essentials and of luxury items. In the context of the world economy of the period, formed of the Mediterranean and Indian Ocean systems, Africa held a predominant position, especially through its gold exports.

70. See the discussion of this subject in Centre d'Etudes et de Recherche Marxiste, 1974, in particular J. Suret-Canale, 1974; C. Coquery-Vidrovitch, 1976.
Introduction

Historical research over the last thirty years has taught us, especially for Africa, that there are no uniform models and no automatic periodizations that can be safely applied, especially for the period we are dealing with here. There are even good grounds for questioning the broad limits – the seventh and eleventh centuries of the Christian era – chosen for this volume. The earlier date does indeed have some real meaning for the northern part of the continent, where Islam appeared, at least after the middle of the century; and it does for other regions too, quite unrelated to Islam, where, in so far as we know at present, the sixth and seventh centuries saw the emergence of new features that were to develop over the following centuries: this is particularly true for central and southern Africa; it is doubtless wise to recall that this same date – the seventh century, or the first century AH – used to be considered as very significant for West Africa; this is no longer so and research has ‘won’ about a millennium: in West Africa, the origins of the great changes examined in this volume lie in the first or even the second millennium before the Christian era.¹ It is the same for the eleventh century. While it is very significant for West Africa, where it marks the establishment of Mālikite Sunnism and a clear alteration in the relations of force between Muslims and non-Muslims, it probably does not have the same importance in other regions of the continent. However, the impression remains that after 1100 a new world was coming into being in some parts of the continent, for example with the flourishing of the Yoruba cities and the cities on the coast of East Africa, and the birth of the empire of Mali. The following centuries saw the growth of kingdoms in Central Africa, new kingdoms in West Africa and the expansion of pastoralists such as the Khoi, the Fulani and the Baŋkára.

There have been many attempts to find a few general traits to character-

¹. The most significant recent works are: S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b; J. Devisse, 1982.
ize the overall evolution of the continent during these five centuries; but none really stands up to examination, whether one thinks of the continent as a whole or of any particular part of it. Neither the Muslim expansion, so characteristic north of the equator, nor what has been called the 'second Iron Age' – to which we shall have to return later – constitute indisputable general points of reference.

These simple observations should inspire us to be wary: research is making rapid progress and each of its discoveries calls into question the whole gamut of our previous certainties: there can be no doubt that this situation will become even more marked in the coming years. This indicates how hypothetical, how fragile in several cases, and certainly how provisional, are the conclusions that can be drawn today from the analysis of these five centuries. But it is still right that they should be set out for researchers and readers to reflect on. And first of all it deserves repeating that, over these five centuries and for the first time so clearly, it is possible to trace, with all the methodological caution and all the regional nuances necessary, a series of comparable developments throughout the continent.

During these centuries, the geographical distribution of the main socio-cultural landscapes of Africa became stabilized and took shape. They saw the maturation of economies, socio-political formations and collective representations that were to underlie later historical movements. During these centuries slow germination was underway that explains the flowering that was to follow.

The first striking general characteristic, some of whose origins lie well before the seventh century in some regions, is the organization of areas of sedentarization where agricultural production became dominant. The development of technologies constitutes a second major feature; this development involved a better exploitation of resources, the division of labour and the spread of exchange. The complexity of political regimes becomes decipherable to the historian, while at the same time the collective representations, religions, ideologies and the whole range of means of cultural expression that were to ensure their reproduction and transmission to later generations took shape.

The sedentary organization of space

Sedentarization is not in itself a mark of progress; it does not, as is too often said, stand in opposition to the freedom of the semi-nomadic or nomadic pastoralists or to the unsettled life of hunter-gatherers. Everywhere, it resulted, quite clearly, from a new relationship with the environment, made necessary both by climatic changes, almost always unfavourable, and by the demographic growth and increasing complexity of societies seeking to organize the lands on which they lived. It is highly likely that sedentarization increases demographic growth and promotes the division of labour; it makes agricultural progress all the more necessary. Such growth, which
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

corresponds to an increase in the amount of labour necessary for the pro-
duction of food, forms the best survival strategy invented by human
groups, in Africa as in other continents, but not everywhere does it find the
conditions essential for it. The study of these changes, in this period, is
only just beginning; it is far from having provided clear results for the
whole continent. Everywhere, however, where surveys have been carried
out – they are above all the province of archaeology – they reveal the im-
portance of quantitative research into food-use patterns and the signific-
ance – in terms of quantity, nature and quality – of variations observed in
traces of evidence of diet.

Central and Southern Africa

The Bantu expansion really came to an end in about the sixth century.\(^2\) The subcontinent was thenceforward occupied by farmers where the cli-
matic conditions allowed. Appropriate food production complexes were
established. In the forests of Central Africa, a farming technique based on
a field cleared each year was developed. Yams, plantains and vegetables
were grown there; food-growing was only one element in a complex in
which trapping and gathering remained very important. South of the
forest, in the tsetse-fly-infested savannas,\(^3\) the agricultural system was
built around two fields a year; one cleared in the gallery forest and another
in the savanna. Cereals were dominant and the complex was completed by
hunting rather than trapping, while gathering was only a supplementary
activity. In eastern and south-eastern Africa, as well as in the southern part
of Central Africa, food production was based on stock-raising and an agri-
culture based on the growing of cereals cultivated in the savanna, the main
crops being millets, sorghum or finger millet, depending on local variations
in humidity. Hunting, trapping, gathering and small-scale fishing activities
were less important than in Central Africa. As in many other regions,
stock-raising predominated in the drier regions: this was the case in Botsw-
ana, northern Uganda and southern Sudan, as well as in neighbouring
areas of Kenya. However, this was not always a matter of the perpetuation
of old methods of stock-raising. Spectacular advances were under way,
after 800, in the raising of cattle. By 600, wholly pastoral ways of life, using
cattle, only existed in the Horn of Africa, in the Sahel, on the edge of the
Sahara (especially in Mauritania?) and probably in an area stretching from
southern Sudan east of the White Nile as far as central Tanzania. But, from
the ninth century a new variant of the south-eastern African economic
complex developed in Botswana.\(^4\) Cattle-raising came to dominate in it. It

2. J. Vansina, 1984; D. W. Phillipson, 1977a; T. N. Huffman, 1982, pp. 133–8 and see
Chapter 6 above.
3. The tsetse fly needs to be studied in detail from a historical perspective. See J. Ford,
1971.
took several centuries to perfect a pastoral system that would enable the Khoi-Khoi to occupy all the sites favourable to stock-raising in Namibia and Cape Province. They were to do so in the following period.

**Eastern Africa**

In eastern Africa in the widest sense, the historical movement of pastoralist expansion was probably linked to the diffusion of breeds of humped cattle – zebu and Sanga – better adapted to the dry heat than other breeds. These breeds, long known in Egypt and Axum, were to be found in Christian Nubia. But, so far as we know at present, they are to be found only after 1200 in the White Nile region and in the Horn of Africa. One author links the expansion of Nilotic pastoralists to the acquisition of this type of cattle after 1200 and also sees it as the stimulus behind the expansion of the Maasai in East Africa and the Arabic-speaking Ba’kara in the Nilotic Sudan, also after 1200. But the Sanga breed, which is found as far as South Africa where it gave birth to another breed, is older than the zebu breed. It may have spread during the centuries we are looking at and it may even have had something to do with the Khoi expansion. The whole question requires further study. It is of great importance, since in addition to the cases mentioned, this breed may have played a role in the establishment of pastoralists in the Great Lakes region, which occurred during the period under review, and above all it may have led to a more intensive use of all the arid lands of East Africa. South-western Africa, too dry for agriculture, did not undergo very profound changes, even though the raising of ovines was practised there by the beginning of the Christian era.

**Western Africa**

Western Africa underwent an evolution that was at once comparable and different. In the forest zones and the rich savannas, phenomena comparable to those we have just looked at occurred. Population growth was probably already being accompanied by a dangerous destruction of the forest

6. On this breed see H. Epstein, 1971. Thorax vertebrae of the Sanga breed were found at Tsodilo in the north-western corner of the present-day Kalahari, dated c. +1000; cf. J. R. Denbow, 1980, pp. 475–6. Some figurines representing a humped ox, probably a Sanga, date from the Klamomo (Zambia) site c. 1000. It has also been claimed that the zebu was present in Madagascar well before the year 1000. See plate Z1, Fig. 1, in B. Fagan and J. Nenquin (eds), 1966. See also J. O. Vogel, 1975, p. 91, Fig. 93 and compare it with other figures on the same page; B. Fagan, 1967, pp. 65–70, illustration 67. For the Androy (Madagascar), see C. Radimilahy, 1981, p. 63.
PLATE 28.1 Cattle breeds in Africa:
28.1(a) herd of Afrikaander cows, Lubamba (Lomami, Zaire); 28.1(b) a black and white Lugware bull in Aru Camp (Zaire); 28.1(c) bull from Rwanda; 7 years old, it weighs 550 kg (a weight rarely attained in the region); 28.1(d) Devon & Afrikaander cross-bred heifer; 28.1(e) N'dama bull, Kisamba, Zaire; 28.1(f) herd of Friesian cows (Compagnie d'Elevage et d'Alimentation in Katanga (Shaba, Zaire); 28.1(g) Jersey heifer, Kasese (Shaba, Zaire).
cover. The meagre indications that we have for Sierra Leone and Liberia lead one to suppose that farmers were the first occupants of the region; in the forests of Benin (Nigeria) the advance of the farmers into the forest is particularly well documented.  

In the drier parts of the savanna and in the Sahelian zone, the climate had been changing for several centuries; the effects of this deterioration were felt, locally, during the period dealt with in Volume II of the General History of Africa and also during the one with which we have just dealt. While we do not yet know precisely how these changes occurred, there is more or less general agreement that there was a gradual shift from the north-east towards the south-west or south of peoples who were becoming sedentarized and were domesticating plants. In areas where there did not exist water reserves formed by river basins, which had themselves also been in the process of organization for several millennia, they followed the rains and the minima necessary for a true agriculture. The complexity of the forms of settlement in the flood plains of the Senegal and of the Inland Niger Delta are gradually becoming clear; for numerous reasons, not all of which are economic or climatic, these two areas of land surrounded by rivers became areas of high human density and greater economic complexity before the Christian era. The progressive desiccation of the regions between the north banks of the two rivers and the Sahara, which was accompanied by the digging of deeper wells, the withdrawal of farmers and their replacement by pastoralists and, later, by cameleers seems to have gone hand in hand with increasing density on the still quite well-watered lands to the south of the two rivers.

We are now more or less in a position to sketch the outlines of a few typical zones. The Sahel was an area of stock-raising, in which the population subsisted on milk, supplemented by the picking of grain-yielding grasses, and with hunting to complete the diet; cultivation there was only possible where the underground water-table permitted the drawing of water and irrigation. Fishing, which existed in the Neolithic period, had disappeared everywhere and this major change had deprived the inhabitants of their most constant and abundant basic food sources: these were now to be found only in the river valleys; perhaps it was the ‘taste for fish’ that led, in the Sahelian zone, to the buying of dried or smoked fish from the south but as yet there is no archaeological evidence to confirm it. Hunting itself

11. In the twelfth century, al-Idrīsī (J. M. Cuoq, 1975, pp. 147 and 152) states – it is said too rarely – that north of the Senegal bend ‘there are tracks where the markers are no longer known and the track is disappearing because there are so few travellers. The water is going deeper and deeper in the ground . . . ’ (our emphasis); archaeology has confirmed this statement.
probably did not provide sufficient resources for growing populations. Importation became essential when various economic imperatives obliged the peoples to live in an insufficiently productive environment.

The valleys were areas of complex organization, in strips parallel to the rivers, where land was probably bitterly fought over as the number of inhabitants, the division of labour and the organization of authority developed. The waters were the province of an old and well-established settlement of fishermen; in the seventh century they were certainly already practising the drying — perhaps even the smoking — and export of fish. The waters supplied many other foodstuffs; turtles, shellfish, hippopotamus and crocodile meat. Then came the long, narrow and complementary strips of low-water crops and crops that were more difficult to grow as one moved away from the river; these had already been areas of sedentaryization par excellence for centuries when our period opened. When one follows the process of settlement of farmers on the least dry lands, one finds that it was very destructive of the environment as a result of large-scale ground-clearing.

A few kilometres away from the privileged area of the river basins — especially of the vast Inland Niger Delta — there is evidence of already highly elaborate forms of agricultural organization, sparing of water and skilful in making use of all the plants useful to life. While not all aspects of this skilled agriculture were yet in place before the seventh century — we still lack archaeological surveys — it seems highly likely that many of these refined technologies for exploiting the soil, the carriers of 'ethnic groups' later to be well known, such as the Sereer, were becoming organized between the seventh and ninth century.

The lands situated to the north of the rivers were progressively transformed into pasture areas as they were gradually abandoned by farmers for lack of rain. The spread of the Fulani, from present-day Senegal, began, most probably in these areas, in the eleventh century, perhaps earlier; perhaps it too was linked to the acquisition of zebu cattle.

The Sahara

During the previous two or three millennia, the Sahara and its northern and southern fringes had gradually been abandoned by its inhabitants as

---

14. Al-Bakri, 1913, p. 158 gives information on these imports.
17. Al-Bakri, 1913, p. 173 gives a good description of hippopotamus hunting by the people living on the banks of the Senegal.
18. Cultivation of rice — *Oryza glaberrima* — is attested by the excavations at Jenne-Jeno. It remains to be determined whether this was irrigated rice or dry rice.
depleting resources failed to provide them with adequate food. The introduction of the camel into these areas, from the third century of the Christian era on, constituted a revolution in food supply as well as in transport.20

The geographical space of the vastness of the Sahara and the surrounding areas was totally reorganized. The oases were no longer the sole inhabited areas. They became staging points in systems of transhumance that made use of all the routes that had an abundance of wells. The adoption of the camel made possible heavy transport over great distances, a factor that must be taken into account in any discussion of the rise of trans-Saharan relations, a phenomenon that became large-scale towards the end of the Byzantine period.

In the space of a few centuries groups of camel-breeders and those controlling the routes took control of the desert. The peoples of the Sahara, who were overwhelmingly Berber-speaking, played a new sort of active role, following several centuries of torpor and the migration of a section of them towards the edges of the desert. This recovery by the masters of the desert, coinciding with the increased demand for gold by the Muslim states to the north, was to give the Sahara, in the tenth and eleventh centuries, an historical importance that it had not known for a long time. This throws light, among other things, on the ‘adventure of the Almoravids’.

Northern Africa

In northern Africa it is more difficult to discern the evolution of production zones, probably in part because of the lasting consequences of ancient colonial urban settlement. The relationship between the countryside and these towns, with its rejections and revolts, is generally better known than the organization of the producing communities themselves. At most, for example, one can glimpse, through the sources, that the Barghawāṭa in Morocco managed a coherent economy, based on wheat and in a position to export, at the time when the Arab sources mention it (tenth to eleventh centuries); that Sūs was producing sugar cane (but since when and in what circumstances?) in the ninth century; that Idrīšiya – by the time we have descriptions of it in the ninth century – was an enormous production zone, heavily oriented towards export of its products by sea. But the archaeological excavations remain to be carried out that would enable us to build up pictures comparable to those we now have for other parts of the continent.

In the various stretches of the Nile Valley, long since organized, there is nothing strikingly comparable to note. Here, in Egypt at least, the food problem was no longer simply one of production but one of urban over-consumption, and our period saw the emergence of profound crises of wheat supply, a sign of the beginning of a new economic era; feeding an agglomeration like Cairo, which had several hundred thousand inhabitants.

in the eleventh century, posed problems out of all proportion to those facing the producing and consuming communities of black Africa. These crises were so serious that they called into question the policy of the rulers — whoever they were — governing the country and necessitated heavy imports. Feeding the inhabitants of Egypt was a state matter involving, on a country-wide level, the need to adopt a production, financial and import policy; and it therefore falls almost wholly outside the analysis we are attempting for the rest of Africa.

The description left by the Fāṭimid envoy to the ruler of Dūnakūla (Dongola), al-Uswānī, after his journey to Nubia (c. 976), shows clearly that we are here dealing with an area that straddles regions differing greatly from one another. The north of Nubia, north of the second cataract, at Batn al-Hadjar, participated in the Egyptian economy, even though it was firmly controlled by the Christian ruler in Dūnakūla. South of the second cataract was a new economic world. Villages were numerous and productive, the traveller tells us. Gradually, as he moved beyond the last cataracts, to the south, and reached the farthest kingdom, ‘Alwa, he entered a zone where there were no palm trees or vines, but white sorghum appeared ‘which looks like rice and from which they make their bread (?) and their beer’. Meat was plentiful because of the large number of herds. Here we are among the societies of black Africa, and the author, moreover, indicates that, despite his curiosity and his mission, he had been able to obtain almost none of the information he was seeking.

In the present state of research, we are unable to say whether comparable developments occurred in Ethiopia or Madagascar, nor whether they were earlier — as in the case of Ethiopia — or later.

The movement of African societies

The general movement of African societies, from the seventh to the eleventh century, while contradictory in its forms depending on place and time, was, broadly speaking, directed towards consolidating earlier situations, and adjusting and perfecting food production complexes to meet growing needs. There was certainly, during these centuries, a natural population increase. Even though this was very slow and though we know

21. On the famines, see for example, T. Bianquis, 1980, and Chapter 7 above.
22. We here adopt the Arab form of this name, often given in the form Dongola. It is an important site, about which archaeology has recently taught us a great deal.
23. Al-Uswānī (G. Troupeau, 1954, p. 282): ‘One no longer sees either dinar or dirham ... The currencies circulate below the cataract to trade with the Muslims, but above it, the inhabitants do not practise either buying or selling’ (sic).
25. ibid., p. 188.
26. On this period, see W. Y. Adams, 1977; on Alwa and the recent excavations, see D. A. Welsby, 1983. 

759
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

little about it, we cannot ignore it. It was accompanied, in many regions, by a growing deterioration in relations with the environment. The two phenomena combined, probably, to give rise to slow population movements, which were not migrations but which research is gradually bringing to light. This is the case with the reverse movement from the Transvaal towards Zimbabwe, beginning apparently in the eighth or ninth century, which seems to be linked to the effects of overpopulation; it is the case too in the Inland Niger Delta, with the occupation, in the tenth and eleventh centuries, of previously unexploited mounds above the flood plain. A much more refined study of climatological variations would add greatly to our understanding of these questions; even moderate and short-lasting changes probably precipitated phenomena of relative overpopulation or, on the contrary, created temporarily more favourable conditions. In recent years there have been inconclusive attempts to explain the migration of the Banū Hilāl and the Banū Sulaym by environmental considerations.

The new production dynamics led of course to social changes. To some extent it may be said that the main processes of the integration of groups into coherent societies go back to this period. It was assuredly a time of 'ethnogenesis', of the absorption of old groups into larger ones and of relative linguistic integration, at least locally; and all this was far from being undramatic and struggle-free.

In the forest of Central Africa, the specialization of hunter-gatherer persisted and the hunters retained their pygmy physical type. But they lived in close symbiosis with the farmers, adopted their languages and were socially and culturally absorbed to become a 'caste' in large groupings. In most regions, the autochthonous peoples were wholly absorbed by the end of the eleventh century, as in Zimbabwe and in Zambia. Absorption proceeded more slowly in eastern Angola and the neighbouring areas of Zambia where a Late Stone Age still existed in the fifteenth century. In these regions, the hunter-gatherers slowly retreated, particularly as the growing population densities affected the distribution of game. They remained intact in southern Angola on lands where the Bantu-speaking farmers did not penetrate.

In West Africa, already complex communities settled on the forest fringes and in forest zones. Their spatial arrangements brought together hunters, gatherers and agriculturalists in more complex societies in which there developed internal networks of fictive kinship and external ones of spatial alliances intended to ensure the survival of the group through a regional balance of forces. In riverain areas, things were even more complex: production provided surpluses that made trade possible over medium dis-

28. The climatic explanation is often used, between the eighth and eleventh century, for the central plateau in Zimbabwe. See Chapter 24 above.

760
and the division of labour became more pronounced between specialized producers, even if the old complementarities between hunters, gatherers, fishermen and agriculturalists were maintained. The nature of authority was now more complex.

In such more sedentary groups, settled on the land, in environments better exploited until population pressure condemned the groups to various forms of segmentation, the African societies developed new technologies, and not only for food production. At this time, securing better living accommodation quite clearly became a goal: the archaeology of the mud habitat has not yet provided much of the information that it can tell us. But already, at least for West Africa, there are B. Chavane’s comments; and those of W. Filipowiak, who thinks – wrongly in our opinion – that whitewash was only used in Niani after it had been introduced by the Muslims, but who also says that local mud was used to build mud walls over a wooden framework as early as the sixth century; the research of S. and R. J. McIntosh which is conclusive on the presence of the art of mud-building at Jenne-Jeno before any contact with the north; R. Bedaux’s findings on the Bandiagara region; and L. Prussin’s conclusions on savanna building technology. This leaves out of consideration the discovery of structures built of sun-dried bricks, at Tegdaoust, and Kumbi Saleh, since these were contemporaneous with contacts with Islam, even though the archaeologists who excavated them are certain that they did not involve imported techniques. In this area, as in so many others, everything still remains to be done to make the soil of Africa yield up all the information that we need. It is enough to recall that the process of ‘Nubian vaulting’, known in the Egyptian Old Empire, made a spectacular

31. S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980b. In the period before the Christian era. And also R. Håland, 1980. See also, on Ife, Chapter 16 above.
32. Through soil analysis B. Chavane, 1985, has shown that the human group whose homes he excavated, to be dated certainly to the ninth and tenth centuries and which is on the left bank of the Senegal, not far from the river, were building houses using clay walls. See also, on the use of clay at Tondidaru, in the seventh century, P. Fontes et al., 1980 and R. Håland, 1980.
34. S. K. McIntosh and R. J. McIntosh, 1980. See also R. J. McIntosh, 1974.
38. S. Berthier, 1983.
39. The very special technique of building using ‘Nubian’ vaults is clearly set out in G. Jéquier, 1924, pp. 303–6. For the Christian period, there are examples in U. Monneret de Villard, 1935–57. The attention of architects has recently been drawn back to them by the works of Hassan Fathy: see H. Fathy, 1981, pp. 60–1. Recent excavations in the Oases – at Balât – by the Institut Français d’Archéologie Orientale du Caire have uncovered vast vaults of this type dating from the end of the Old and the Middle Empire. The method was used again successfully in the eleventh and twelfth centuries for roofing Nubian churches with sun-dried bricks; see E. Dinkler (ed), 1970.
reappearance in the tenth and eleventh centuries for the roofing of many churches in the Christian kingdoms of Nubia to appreciate that the study of African architecture still remains largely a closed book, but that it is possible and that is has great historical importance.\textsuperscript{40} Of course, research on the ways in which living spaces that are homes are conceived leads directly to the history of techniques and also the history of societies.

Techniques and why they should be studied

The history of African technologies remains to be written. So here we have to raise more problems than we can solve. Some technologies, such as pottery, basketry, tanning, woodworking, stone-working and perhaps salt extraction, were already centuries-old before 600. None of them was unchanging, before or after 600: a technique such as the making of hunting nets, certainly very old, obviously evolved and it would be useful to study this evolution, between Egypt, West Africa and Central Africa for example, in terms of the animals hunted, the hunting techniques used and the types of societies and food. All anthropological studies, in any case, show that there is a relationship between the methods of weaving nets, their size and the size of the meshes, and how they are kept and used, on the one hand, and socio-economic structures on the other; but we know only of a few points that stand out in a centuries-long evolution, not the continuities. In the same way, we do not know anything about the evolution of techniques for extracting salt, nor even how the quantities produced and consumed changed over time. We can be quite certain that the latter varied as a function both of population pressure and types of food.\textsuperscript{41}

One of the most pressing needs in African history and archaeology is the careful and detailed study of technical changes, and of the circumstances that precipitated or encouraged them. Pottery, metals and weaving can act as examples, as yet very incomplete, of what studies of these matters can contribute to the history of the continent.

Pottery

Pottery is 9000 years old in some parts of Africa, such as in Air in modern Niger.\textsuperscript{42} Its use was linked to more and more pronounced forms of sedentarization but not always to the appearance of agriculture. It has become customary, especially in eastern and southern Africa, to designate certain types of pottery by the name of the principal site where they were discovered. When dated by the excavators in satisfactory conditions these

\textsuperscript{40} J. Dévisse, 1981b.

\textsuperscript{41} See J. Bernard, 1982.

\textsuperscript{42} M. Cornevin, 1982; J.-P. Roset, 1983.
PLATE 28.2  House built of clay brickwork: a vaulted chamber.
have then been used as indicators of chronological sequences. In this way, a
link has often been made between the appearance of types of pottery and
the appearance of successive iron ages—a notion to which we shall return—and, too often, to the migration of peoples bearing with them, in one pack­
age, iron, agriculture and pottery. Today, the trend is in the opposite
direction. Laboratory studies complement formal observation and classifi­
cation. The production of pottery, qualitatively and quantitatively, has
become a demographic and economic indicator—giving information about
trade and the area in which objects circulate—as well as a cultural indi­
cator. The series of revelations made by archaeology in recent years is an
indicator of what a more profound archaeology of African pottery has in
store for us: the discovery of the anthropomorphic terracottas of Ife, Owo,
following those of Nok, the equally striking ones around the upper
Niger, those just beginning to be uncovered in Niger, the rare but
interesting artefacts that excavations in Mauritania have brought to
light, and the evidence of rooms and courtyards paved with fragments of
potsherds—these constitute the most spectacular elements in a corpus
that is rapidly being enriched. Pottery has been treated as a vehicle of
changes in techniques, in detail (how the clay is prepared, fired, water­
proofed), and as an indicator of variations in taste, but also as an indicator
of objects available for ornament in the everyday life of the producers, as a
good indicator of—an altogether relative—wealth, as an essential part of
the furniture whose position in habitats provides solid information to
researchers, and has thus become an object vital for our knowledge of the
African past, especially for the period we are studying in this volume. For,
from this period on, the sequences are almost certain down to the present
day. At any event, we have learned to treat this ‘merchandise’ quite differ­
ently from the way it used to be treated, which was quite unsystematic.

Leopard’s Kopje pottery, named after its type-site in Zimbabwe, is one
element in the creation of a much more complex society leading to the
formation of a state about or before 900. Conversely, the appearance of
Kisalian pottery at Sanga in southern Zaire in the eighth century was not

43. Good information in D. W. Phillipson, 1977a. On the misuse of systematization
about pottery and the expansion of the Bantu-speakers, see P. de Maret, 1980.
44. J. Devisse, 1981a; D. Robert, 1980.
45. A. Louhichi, 1984, has provided proof, through laboratory study, that pottery was
transported across the Sahara, from present-day Tunisia or Algeria to the Sahel. See also
J. Devisse, D. Robert-Chaleix et al., 1983.
47. B. de Grunne, 1980.
50. On these pavements, see F. Willett, 1967, 1971 and G. Connah, 1981. Other
examples have come to light more recently in Burkina Faso and Benin.
51. See Chapter 24 above.
PLATE 28.3 Terracotta statuettes were produced within the territory of the present-day Republic of Niger between the sixth and tenth centuries. An example of discoveries made in 1983 and hitherto unpublished.
accompanied by any such phenomenon. It is more likely to mark the appearance of a community of fishermen-agriculturalists of a new type. The new pottery in Rwanda in the same or the following century might be the sign of a quite minor change although it marks the abandonment of the concentration of iron-smelting furnaces. But it could also signal a more profound transformation flowing from the integration of specialized pastoralists into society.

PLATE 28.5 Potsherd pavement: the corner of a courtyard, excavated at Ita Yemoo, Ife. Scale is in feet.
Metals

A few decades ago, there was much writing on the production of metals in Africa. The debates were all the more lively because they rested on a very slender information base.⁵³

African gold has long been surrounded by myths and by a sort of historical magic. Today we know a little more about it, and we are at last moving from the imaginary to more quantified assessments.⁵⁴ Present-day Zimbabwe came into prominence at this time, the last of the old producing regions, after Nubia and West Africa. In this latter zone, alluvial gold was certainly exploited, as it was in Nubia, before 600: the demand might have been local; it could also have come for the north of the continent; at any event, it is more likely that it was so in the Byzantine period.⁵⁵ The quantities were small, and it is unlikely that it was extracted by digging mines. With the establishment of the Muslim states, one of the first users of the gold being surely the Aghlabids, demand grew and throughout the period looked at here, exports of gold were larger. It is extremely difficult to assert that a mining technology involving the systematic digging of mines had been developed before the tenth century, even in the case of Nubia. It is likely that the more and more widespread discovery of areas of active panning was enough, for a long time, to meet the demand: it is today certain that gold from the forest zones of West Africa was, by c. 1100, already being exported, it, too, going northwards. The evidence of written sources makes it certain that mines were being dug in the fourteenth century;⁵⁶ archaeology has also provided proof of it on the Zimbabwe Plateau.⁵⁷ Given then that the real growth of demand, in quantity, dates from the tenth and eleventh centuries and that no one has yet shown that the quantities transported were increased between the tenth and fourteenth century, it is not at all unreasonable to think that the digging of mines was already occurring in the tenth century. It is no doubt possible too that the persistence, over a very long period, of stories about gold being found in the roots of plants reflects a certain degree of reality, if one thinks of gold-panning, and also reflects the desire never to say too much about the true conditions and the exact regions in which African gold was produced. Metal-smelting

⁵³. For iron, for example, a survey of these debates can be made: N. Van der Merwe, 1980, argues (pp. 500–1) for a history of 'pyrotechnology'. See also the review by J. E. G. Sutton, 1984, pp. 222–3, remarking that already in the first centuries of the Christian era the furnaces in Buhaya were different from those in Rwanda; this technical variability is also found in the Great Lakes region. See also P. L. Shinnie, 1971; N. Van de Merwe, 1980, and J. Devisse, 1985a.
⁵⁴. Information on this is to be found in several chapters in this volume.
⁵⁵. See T. F. Garrard, 1982, basing himself on numismatics and metrology.
⁵⁶. Al-'Umarī, 1927, p. 81: 'The sultan [Mansa Mūsā] ... told me that there were pagan peoples in his empire ... whom he used to extract gold in the mines. He also told me that the gold mines consisted of holes dug to the depth of a man's height or almost'.
was known in the regions where it was exploited; it remains difficult and would perhaps be incautious to say that techniques of gold-working did not exist in the producing regions; it is likely that filigree-work, so widespread in Andalusia and North Africa as early as the tenth century, reached the south from these regions: filigreed gold ornaments dating from the eleventh or twelfth century have been found at Tegdaoust. And filigree was used for objects in copper alloys at Igbo-Ukwu in Nigeria.

South of the Sahara copper often rivalled gold as the favoured metal and the raw material for luxury articles and had done so for a very long time. In this field too, there have been many surprises in recent years and research has made enormous advances. Areas where the raw material was produced and the metal was smelted were, in the seventh century — and in many cases much earlier — more numerous than was formerly thought. Mauritania, Niger — Air again — the Copperbelt (Zaire and Zambia), the Transvaal (Phalaborwa), were producing and exporting it throughout the centuries dealt with in this volume. Trade in this metal, attested to by the Arabic sources of the tenth to twelfth centuries and by a number of archaeological discoveries, certainly brought copper and copper alloys from the north to the area south of the Sahara but the picture that we have of this trade today is much more complex than it was formerly: what was yesterday accepted as dogma can no longer be accepted: that products and techniques came exclusively from the north. In Central Africa, copper became a standard currency from 900 on and although copper ornaments and bangles have not yet been found in the Transvaal, the Phalaborwa

58. For Tegdaoust, see Chapter 14 above.
60. E. Herbert, 1984.
61. Important recent surveys: N. Echard (ed.), 1983. The recent work of D. Grebenart will also be looked forward to with great interest. See also for the Upemba, in Zaire, P. de Maret, 1981.
mine was producing the metal, and was no doubt not the only one to be doing so.

The extraction techniques seem to have been limited to the digging of pits and horizontal galleries; systems of deep galleries were rare, for this metal as for gold; essentially, no doubt, this was because of the rise of underground water levels during the rainy seasons. Knowledge of how to cast copper existed in Mauritania and in Air long before the Christian era, and in the fifth to sixth centuries in the Copperbelt. Lost-wax moulds dating from the eighth to ninth centuries have been found in the excavations at Tegdaoust (Mauritania)\(^\text{62}\) and processes well adapted to the various types of metal have been recognized at Igbo-Ukwu, where euphorbia latex replaced wax.\(^\text{63}\) Today, all that we know enables us to say that the metallurgy of copper and its alloys was perfectly mastered, in tropical Africa in the sixth, seventh and eighth centuries. Hammering, cold spinning and casting using the lost-wax process were used, each with the appropriate metal and zinc — and lead-based bronzes and brass — the tin probably came from modern central Nigeria — provided a known and knowledgeably used range of different metals for the production of different objects; even welding was effected according to the known qualities of various metals. It should be noted in passing that some coppers and alloys in West Africa contain a lot of arsenic, which probably provides an important clue to the source of objects found during excavations.\(^\text{64}\)

Contrary to all formerly received ideas, the existence of an ancient and well-mastered copper metallurgy must today be accepted; it does not mean totally excluding highly diverse types of relations with Mediterranean or Asian metallurgies and, no doubt, many revisions will yet have to be made in our mental maps, in particular, makes us better informed.

It is no different with iron. In the past a chronology of two successive iron ages was drawn up that, it was hoped, would be usable for the whole of the black world, the 'second age' appearing precisely during the centuries we are looking at here. An attempt was made to show that significant differences marked the passage from the first age to the second, notably an increase in quantities produced, an improvement and diversification of qualities, and the appearance of new modes of settlement producing characteristic pottery types. More recent research, once again, has destroyed this 'model'.\(^\text{65}\) It is probably dangerous to continue to speak of two clearly distinct sequences, especially for the continent as a whole and, once again,

\(^{62}\) D. Robert, 1980 (to be published, see D. Robert-Chaleix, forthcoming).

\(^{63}\) Which leads one to suppose a prior adaptation in the Sahelian zone, which is rich in euphorbia.

\(^{64}\) C. Vanacker, 1983a.

\(^{65}\) Major recent works indicative of the reasons for calling into question this approach are P. de Maret, 1979, pp. 233–5; M. C. Van Grunderbeck, E. Roche and H. Doutrelepont, 1983b; earlier: P. Schmidt, 1978.
PLATE 28.7(a) (top) Carnelian pendants and strings of carnelian and glass beads, from the burial chamber at Igbo-Ukwu, beads from Igbo Richard

PLATE 28.7(b) (below) Strings of coloured glass beads from the store-house regalia at Igbo-Ukwu
there is a need for more subtle analyses and to accept the heterogeneity of the phenomena and the diversity of significant dates depending on the region.  

The technological history of iron in Africa still remains very little known, despite detailed studies of certain metallurgical sites in West and East Africa and at Phalaborwa. Different types of iron might have been produced, but we do not know how far production was controlled, nor how the different processes, from extraction to the final product, evolved, beginning with the building of furnaces. Plans changed, the manner of using them changed, the raw product was worked in different ways and all the tools used also developed. Even the concentration or dispersion of the industry is little known. We know that in Rwanda and Burundi one type of furnace was abandoned during our period and that the industry was dispersed. But we know little about the type of furnace that took its place or what the effects were on production or the quality of the product that followed the dispersion. The cartographic distribution of types of furnace and equipment (bellows, hammers, mauls, anvils, wire-drawing stones, etc.), as well as fuels and ways of using them, shows that there was major technological activity in the past. All this information remains episodic and poorly correlated and is thus unable to throw the light it should on the technological evolution that one can guess at but which is very inadequately known. We know that iron was present, in numerous regions, from the seventh century onwards and that it supplied the raw materials for implements — axes, working hoes — weapons — cutlasses, spears, arrowheads, harpoon tips, knives — various utensils — scissors, needles — and also for ornaments — necklaces, bracelets, rings. We also know that, on the other hand, there was hoarding: proof of this is provided by the presence of mauls, often in the form of an anvil, sometimes found in context, but which have unfortunately not yet been dated. Ethnographical data at least make it possible to pose a certain number of problems: what was the iron used for? what was its real importance? How was it related to copper and other objects of value or jewels or exchange materials region by region and period by period? A history of iron metallurgy and the use of its products is certainly destined in part to overturn many received interpretations.

Textiles

There has been weaving in Egypt and Nubia for millennia. After the be-


67. The Phalaborwa site is situated in the Transvaal, south-east of Mapungubwe and north of Lydenburg.

68. See for example W. Cline, 1937 or L. Frobenius and R. von Wilm, 1921–31, for example, plan of bellows, Heft 1, Blatt 4.
Africa from the seventh to the eleventh century: five formative centuries

ginning of the Christian era, Coptic techniques reached heights never later surpassed. But cotton as a raw material was recent. The plant had probably been imported to Meroe.\textsuperscript{69} No one disputes the importance and influence of Egyptian weaving, particularly between the seventh and eleventh century.\textsuperscript{70} The debates, which are once again very lively, relate to the development of weaving, especially using cotton, south of the Sahara.\textsuperscript{71} The sources and archaeology provide key elements. Cotton was present in the villages in the Senegal floodplain, by the tenth century,\textsuperscript{72} and cloths made from narrow woven strips dated to the tenth to eleventh centuries have been found in the Tellem caves.\textsuperscript{73} It is important to point out that cotton and cotton-weaving were widespread in Ethiopia and, as early as c. 900, in southern Mozambique and at Mapungubwe.\textsuperscript{74} Cotton was already being cultivated and woven in tropical Africa in the ninth to tenth centuries.

Weaving required two key elements: the spindle whorls for spinning, and looms. Archaeological discoveries, in both areas, are still few and far between and remain difficult to interpret. Positively identified spindle whorls\textsuperscript{75} are abundant for the thirteenth to fourteenth centuries; in the present state of our knowledge they are rarer for earlier periods. As far as looms are concerned, they are different in Mozambique – but knowledge is limited – as compared with West Africa; in the latter case, they can be reconstituted through articles found in excavations. The narrow loom with two heddles was used, as it still is today. This allows long strips some 30 cm wide to be woven and was perhaps introduced before 1000, possibly from the Nile Valley.\textsuperscript{76} In subsequent centuries weaving and the sale of cloth were to become economically very important and generated secondary activities such as indigo growing. It is thus important to discover the origins of this activity which not only supplied new articles of clothing, but was also very rapidly to provide indications of social distinction and objects to be exchanged and hoarded.

Here a major place must be given to the making of mats and carpets, which supplied a large export trade towards the Orient from present-day Tunisia from the ninth century, but of whose techniques we know very little.

In sub-Saharan Africa, not only cotton was woven.\textsuperscript{77} The raffia palm

\begin{footnotesize}
75. There are no obvious formal differences between some old spindle whorls and objects intended for quite different uses.
\end{footnotesize}
PLATE 28.8(a) (above, left) Reconstruction of the trapezoidal tunic, from grotto Z (twelfth-thirteenth centuries of the Christian era)

PLATE 28.8(b) (above, right) Trapezoidal cotton tunic, from grotto C (eleventh-twelfth centuries of the Christian era)

PLATE 28.8(c) (below) Tellem skull with cotton head covering, from grotto C (eleventh-twelfth centuries of the Christian era).
PLATE 28.9  *Spindle whorls found at Tegdaoust*

PLATE 28.10  *Indigo dye-pit in north of the Ivory Coast*
produces a fibre that can be woven. Where this palm tree grows, in West and Central Africa, the fibre is woven on quite a broad vertical or horizontal loom, with one main heddle. We do not know how old this practice is. It is not impossible that this loom is older than the West African loom, but it may be of more recent invention. One of the Nok figurines appears to be wearing a cloth over its shoulder; but it is not altogether certain that it is indeed a cloth.

Raffia fabric was particularly important in Central Africa, where the technique of decorating it was highly developed before the sixteenth century and where raffia squares were used as money. In the forest zone, although this is not really weaving in the strict sense of the term, the production of bark cloth treated by hammering was highly developed. In the open savanna, leather remained the main clothing material. These facts run counter to the argument that the practice of weaving cotton spread as a result of the Muslim impact, as a consequence of the desire to combat nakedness. This line of reasoning begins to carry little conviction as soon as one realizes that other forms of clothing were known.

Demonstrating the importance of a history of technology, and the fact that this history is virtually unknown, must suffice for the present. This is one of the key gaps in African history. Excavations combined with ethnographic studies will help to fill it.

Salt
Among all the commodities whose production most likely increased in quantity during our period, salt represents a particularly interesting one. The techniques of producing and consuming it cut across all the aspects we have touched on above; we shall be dealing with commercialization later. Salt was obtained from the Sahelian, Ethiopian and East African salt mines in the form of rock salt bars; there is an abundant literature on this point. It was also obtained from evaporating sea or lagoon water, by collecting deposits, as in the lower valley of the Sine Saloum in Senegal, and through highly sophisticated techniques using the ashes of xerophilous plants to extract the salt from them by leaching. In addition, where rock salt or sea salt were not available, people had succeeded in cultivating plants producing it, in marshy areas in particular. However, the superiority of sea salt or Sahara salt was such that it was exported over great distances; in some

78. H. Loir, 1935.
79. It would perhaps be interesting to compare the study of it with the one now under way of the silk-weaving loom found in Madagascar.
81. See for example D. W. Phillipson, 1977a, pp. 110 and 150.
82. For an evocative anthropological study see J. Rivallain, 1980.
regions, notably Ethiopia, at certain periods, salt was used as currency. Salt was a greater source of income for coastal dwellers than fresh or dried fish and shellfish; they exchanged it for all sorts of products that they needed. It is difficult to conceive of the settlement of peoples in the salty areas of the Niger delta — and this probably happened in the period we are looking at — without the supply of foodstuffs and implements from the interior, but thanks to salt this supply posed no problems. In the same way, the inhabitants of the Sahara secured the cereals they needed by exchanging them in the Sahel for salt from their mines. The example of salt thus takes us from technological considerations to the unequal distribution of resources and the trade that resulted from it.

The various forms of trade

Local exchanges, over larger or smaller areas, had certainly been going on for a very long time, in essential products such as salt or metals and also in jewelry and ornaments, which were sometimes transported over great distances.

Certain zones, where technological development was intense, became

---

areas of high production of raw materials and elaboration of finished products, and within them developed staging points in the transport of these products along the networks that were progressively being organized. In recent years, archaeology has fully revealed the existence of such networks south of the Senegal and Niger rivers, on which all the other sources were silent; this throws a much clearer light on the genesis of such political entities as Takrûr, Ghana or Gao. During the five centuries we are looking at, trade developed spectacularly, and its high point was the trans-Saharan trade. Before the beginning of the period some internal Sahelian trade existed as no doubt did links with the Nile Valley and North Africa, especially along a link between Lake Chad, Kawar and the Fezzân. The indicators we possess (metrology, numismatics, finds in West Africa) make it possible to hypothesize that it was the adoption of transport by camel that made long-distance trade across the desert a paying proposition. But it still remains true that from c. 800 this trade underwent a dramatic increase. The classical Saharan system with exports of gold and foodstuffs going north in exchange for the import of salt from the desert and manufactured products from the north became established in our period. This trade extended a very long way south. In the ninth century, it probably delivered thousands of beads to Igbo-Ukwu and this site was also linked to the sea to the south. And by c. 1100, the trade had reached the edges of the forest in the area that later came to be called the Gold Coast (present-day Ghana). North as well as south of the desert, the expansion of trans-Saharan trade had major consequences. First among these was the development of state institutions, from Morocco to Egypt, between the eighth and the eleventh centuries; the picture was the same to the south, between the Atlantic and Lake Chad, during the same centuries. Then, of course, the trade led to the development of trading groups that were more or less well organized and more or less dependent on the political authorities.

The role of Ethiopia in international trade collapsed with the major changes in the great Indian Ocean traffic between the sixth and eighth centuries: Adulis lost its role and Axum went into decline. The coast of East Africa, conversely, assumed much more importance, even if at present we are much better informed about the stages of this transformation after the twelfth century than before.

In the eighth century, traces of imports have been found from the coasts of Somalia to those of southern Mozambique. Here too gold played a major role, especially in the south. Here too, international trade took place in the framework of a vigorous regional trade. Gold, ivory, wood and slaves

86. See Chapters 11, 12, 13, 14, 15 and 27 above.
88. Chapters 22 and 26 above, and P. J. J. Sinclair, 1982. The presence of the Zandj in China and India soon after 700 indicates the spread of this trade, even at a date earlier than that of towns so far found.
were exported as well as a few luxury products, while imports included luxury products, such as beads and cloth. Already it was an unequal exchange, but an unequal exchange that gave an impetus to the development of internal communications: at least an attempt has been made to prove this for the Limpopo region⁸⁹ where this trade speeded up or strengthened the construction of large political entities.

Overall economic growth and commercial expansion were not, however, comparable in all societies on the continent. During these centuries, North Africa belonged to the centre of a ‘world’ economy. Technologies developed there through diffusion from one end of the Muslim world to the other and with them particular production systems; for example, the planting of sugar cane or date palms.⁹⁰ The cultural creation of a Muslim and Arab world facilitated and intensified contacts, no doubt even more than attempts at political unification. Egypt, Tunisia, and the leading Muslim cities in Morocco became great manufacturing centres which exported, notably to West Africa. East Africa was linked in an even more complex way to the economy of the Muslim world, as well as to the Asian economies of China, India,⁹¹ and Indonesia.

On the other hand, there remained regions that were hardly affected by international trade or not at all. Southern and Central Africa provide the most extreme examples, although in Central Africa a regional commercial zone centred on the Copperbelt developed that was in indirect contact with the Indian Ocean before 1100. It was based on the exchange of products from different environments and from salt mines. To judge from later periods, salt and iron, fish and raffia cloth, palm oil and mbafu oil, and red dyewood were exchanged, and the general movement was above all from north to south, crossing the ecological zones. Still in Central Africa, the River Zaire and some of its affluents were no doubt already in use as a cheap means of communication, although no evidence of this has yet been found before the period following the one we are concerned with.

The interior of eastern Africa remains a problem. No trace of imports has been found there and it has been concluded from this that there were no links between these regions and the neighbouring coast.⁹² It is difficult to believe that this was so. Perhaps these imports were limited to salt and cloth, the products exported being, in addition to ivory, other luxury objects such as the large rock crystals the Fāṭimids were so fond of.⁹³

⁸⁹. See Chapter 24 above.
⁹⁰. A. M. Watson, 1983, provides the most recent but perhaps exaggerated survey.
⁹¹. Al-Idrīṣī, in the twelfth century, notes that iron was exported from the coast of present-day Kenya to India. See Chapters 1 and 21 above.
⁹². Although there is still the problem of the similarities observed between pottery from the interior and locally produced coastal pottery (see for example H. N. Chittick, 1974, on Kilwa).
⁹³. Which came perhaps from the Laikipia plateau where they are common (personal communication from J. de Vere Allen).
Whatever the case, relations with international trade were at best indirect. In addition, this sector did not form a single regional trading zone. A few small production centres (mainly of salt) can be detected, no doubt serving rather small areas. Further north, in Ethiopia, regional trade doubtless survived and probably spread with the extension of monastic foundations and the transfer of the centre of the kingdom to Lasta. Southern Ethiopia, especially Shoa, saw its links with the outside world develop and the settlement of Muslim traders exporting through the coast of the Horn. The Christian kingdoms of the Nile also remained isolated from intercontinental trade. Two very different economies coexisted there. One, subsistence farming, involved the vast majority of the population; it was not necessarily stagnant, as we have seen above. The other had a dual driving force. One part consisted of complex trade arrangements with the Muslims, who supplied the Nubian court and the privileged groups with Mediterranean products – cloths, wines, grains – in exchange for slaves.\(^94\) The quest for the latter necessitated a second sector consisting of commercial relations with the Chad basin area, and with areas of the continent to the south of Nubia: the circulation of Nubian pottery in Darfur and Koro Toro northeast of Lake Chad has begun to provide evidence that these relations did indeed exist. It is striking that these are not mentioned at all by al-Uswânî, in the account mentioned above,\(^95\) although this Fâṭimid envoy speaks of the relations between Dünkûla and the Red Sea from the great bend made by the Nile: ‘Hippopotamuses abound in this country and roads lead from there towards Sawäkin, Bâdi, Dahlak and the islands of the Red Sea’.\(^96\)

This sketch of commercial activity shows that a good half of the continent was already involved in large-scale trade and that in most of the other parts regional networks were coming into being. Complete absence of a network, even a regional one, was rare, but was probably the case in a few pockets: Namibia and the Cape region, the forests of Liberia and the neighbouring regions perhaps, and the interior of East Africa and part of the savanna lands between Cameroon and the White Nile. But it is possible that this impression is merely a product of our own lack of information.

But the fact remains that there were major innovations in the overall situation of the continent compared with the previous period. The integration of the Sahara, of West Africa, of the eastern coast and of the interior of part of Zimbabwe and the Transvaal into an intercontinental trading network was new, as was the development of regional trade networks. This commercial dynamism was a first fruit of sedentarization and the adjustment of production systems that we have described. Despite all the gaps, we now know enough to assert that this period represents a starting-point from which the economies and trade were to develop with even more intensity, volume and complexity between 1100 and 1500. The regional

\(^{94}\) On this aspect of trade, see L. Török, 1978.
\(^{95}\) G. Troupeau, 1954. See above.
\(^{96}\) ibid., p. 285.
networks would develop and coalesce but always in a subordinate position in relation to the areas of international trade. And by c. 1500 hardly any part of the continent would remain outside a regional trading area. Thus in our period communications over large areas of the continent were forged, linking the human settlements with one another, carrying ideas and social customs along with the goods traded.

Societies and power

The social history of the continent also still remains to be written for the period that concerns us. We know virtually nothing of the real life of the times, the arrangements regarding kinship and living and working together. Even the history of the institutions that structured these relationships such as the family, the extended family (often called the lineage), the household, marriage, and work groups remains unknown. These structures have left few traces in the written or archaeological sources. Moreover, although they are fundamental, they have low visibility, because of their very permanence. The appearance given is one that demonstrates stable features linked to human nature. Yet this is simply not so, although many researchers have allowed themselves to be taken in by it, as if clans, lineages and marriages had always functioned in the same way.

The consequences of the division of labour are more visible, even if the vocabulary here also tends to be misleading and to involve us in schematism. It is quite certain that the division of labour progressed spectacularly between the seventh and the eleventh centuries, and that societies were becoming stratified. Analysis and classification of the phenomena is as yet in its infancy. It is easier, in some parts of the continent, to show that wide divergences of economic and social statuses – classes – appeared in this period than to understand, other than by the application of abstract theories, how relations between these classes actually functioned. In northern Africa, in Nubia, in Ethiopia, we see aristocrats whose landed property, however acquired, was the basis of their power. In North Africa, this aristocracy surrounded itself with numerous clients – mawālī; it sometimes protected non-Muslim groups, and owned slaves, servants, workers or warriors; it had sufficient power to be able sometimes to oblige the official power-holders to treat with it. It may well have been more or less the same in Nubia or Ethiopia. Further south, things are less clear; researchers are still engaged in lively debates on the existence of clearly distinct classes at this time; and in even more lively ones on the existence of closed castes, comparable to those occasionally found in Africa in more recent periods. Al-Mas‘ūdī’s oft-cited allusion to those who exhort the crowd and the

97. The term lineage is more an ideological term than a concept describing social realities. See A. Kuper, 1982b, pp. 71–95.
princes to live according to the examples given by the ancestors and the kings of former times,\textsuperscript{98} should not lead us to think that these are 'bards' nor that they were members of a 'caste'. The equally frequent reference to 'bards' in Sundiata's suite, in the thirteenth century, is only proof of their existence at a time when the traditions that speak of them had been fixed or reworked; as to the dates of these fixings or reworkings, here too the debate is far from closed.

The most recent research, at least for West Africa, tends rather to suggest that castes were of recent rather than ancient appearance.\textsuperscript{99} Much more work is therefore probably needed, with clear testing of all possible research hypotheses, before prematurely freezing a description of societies in the midst of change and at different stages in this change in different places.

To return a moment to what was probably happening between the seventh and eleventh century in Central Africa, things were rather different from what they were in the north and west of the continent. In equatorial Africa, some division of labour, partly regulated by the growing symbiosis between agriculturalists and hunter-gatherers, appeared. The forest people in some cases attached themselves to groups of hunters (especially pygmies) by supplying them with food (especially plantains) and iron implements, and later also with equipment such as heavy hunting nets in exchange for game and honey. This symbiosis necessitated significant surpluses of foodstuffs; it could not have developed before plantains became a basic crop, nor before the period when the density of agriculturalists had increased to the point where it disturbed the hunters. For this reason, we feel that these systems developed during the period studied in this volume. It must be noted that this arrangement was quite different from the regular commercial relations between agriculturalists in the forest and professional fishermen who supplied them with fish, pottery and vegetable salt in exchange for vegetable foodstuffs. These older relations had been formed from the time these regions were occupied. They were based on relations of equality, which is not true for the symbiotic relations.

Naturally, and above all when archaeology enables us to take the exact measure of it, the place where the ongoing social changes will be seen best is in the towns. They are clearly to be seen at Tegdaoust;\textsuperscript{100} and also by examining the Sanga tombs, where inequality is clearly visible and increasing with time. The history of the process of urbanization is also undergoing radical revision.\textsuperscript{101} It was long thought that it was linked exclusively with Muslim influence; it is a fact that Muslims were great founders of towns wherever they lived, both at this time and in more recent ones. But it is

\textsuperscript{98} Al-Mas'üdl, 1965, p. 330.
\textsuperscript{99} See the interesting views in A. R. Ba, 1984.
\textsuperscript{100} J. Dévisse, D. Robert-Chaleix \textit{et al.}, 1983.
\textsuperscript{101} J. Devisse, 1983, for example.
today becoming clearer and clearer that urban agglomerations existed before Islam: this has been spectacularly shown for Jenne-Jeno, and in the south-east of the continent as well; these examples are more conclusive than those involving towns where the settlement of Muslims played an obvious role, such as was the case with Kumbi Saleh, Tegdaoust, and Niani. It is of the greatest importance for the future of this research on urbanization that the fruitful work done at Ife, Igbo-Ukwu, Benin, Begho and Kong should be pursued and developed. Similarly, research on Nyarko, on the edge of gold-bearing areas of the forests of modern Ghana, which was already a town as early as the eleventh century, should be pursued. No doubt other proto-urban or urban centres founded during this period will be discovered. One thinks of Kano, Zaria, and Turunku and the oldest towns along the lower Shari River.

This urbanization of western Africa calls into question a whole series of received ideas, particularly the one that the phenomenon of towns was a more or less late implantation by traders from North Africa. Contrary to the impression left by the vast majority of ethnographic works or those by social anthropologists until very recently, West Africa was not a collection of villages brought together in ethnic groups with distinct and rural cultures and languages living cheek by jowl without influencing one another. As soon as towns appeared, they became cultural centres that influenced vast areas around them. Complex cultural and social spaces were formed before the eleventh century, which is what explains the diffusion of languages such as the Mande languages, Yoruba and Hausa. For a long time, the scale of these societies, their internal dynamics, and their evolution were thus misunderstood.

New questions along the same lines can now be raised concerning the trading posts along the east coast and in Madagascar, their African and Malagasy foundations and the place of Muslim traders in their develop-
ment. Already it is being asked whether in eastern Africa – but how far northwards and southwards? – Swahili culture, with which the development of towns seems to coincide, was not, from its very beginnings, an urban civilization; the debate is far from closed. The trading posts situated in present-day Mozambique maintained contacts with the Limpopo Valley and indirectly made a contribution to the creation of a first proto-urban centre at Mapungubwe, an administrative centre and the first stage in a development that would culminate in the creation of Zimbabwe in the thirteenth century.

Equal attention should be paid, in the north of the continent, to the creation, in this period, of important towns on which sometimes very limited research has yet been done. While the evolution of Fez, Kayrawân, Marракеш, and Rabat, for example, is well known, there has been very little work done on Sîdîjmâsa or Tâhert – creations of the seventh century – on Sadrâta and the whole of the Mzâb, on Ghaḍâmes, or on the Egyptian and Nubian cities of the middle Nile Valley. This formative period was thus also one during which a new urbanization was restructuring space. This phenomenon, all in all, affected only half the continent; but it still remains true that it was characteristic of the whole of Africa.

The Muslim conquest of the northern part of the continent, after a short period of theoretical unity under the authority of the eastern caliphs, led to a political break-up of vital importance for the future. New states came into being in Egypt and present-day Tunisia, and also around important cities such as Fez, Tâhert, and Sîdîjmâsa. They became more and more firmly established in the ninth and tenth centuries. In particular they nearly always used West African gold to ensure the quality of their currency. The territorial bases of this state organization were strengthened, first in Ifríkiya, then in Egypt under the Fâtimids. The most disturbed periods of the eleventh century did not call into question a fact that was gradually becoming established: the territorial basis of the Muslim dynastic rulers, especially in Tunisia and in Egypt and then in the eleventh century in Almoravid Morocco, had become a more or less stable, more or less permanent reality. Muslim states, with their functions and their machinery, were established in this period, even though the dynasties changed, even though

112. See Chapters 13, 14, 15, 21 and 25 above. The expansion of the trading posts as far south as the Sabi dates from the eighth century (P. J. J. Sinclair, 1982).
115. On Küs, a caravan centre in upper Egypt, see J. C. Garcin, 1976. On the importance of funerary steles as a document for demographic, economic and cultural history see M. al-Tawâb ‘Abd ar-Rahmân, 1977. On the towns of Nubia, in particular, the importance of the Polish excavations at Faras and Dongola, see Chapter 8 above. On the recent excavations at Süba, the capital of the southernmost Nubian kingdom, see D. A. Welsby, 1983.
116. See Chapters 7, 10 and 12 above.
incidents of varying seriousness such as Abū Yazīd’s revolt, or the ‘Hilalian invasion’ or Christian attacks from Sicily, from time to time disturbed, sometimes profoundly, the chances of state territorial control and dynastic continuity.

In West Africa, the organization of states probably began before 600, but becomes apparent during the period studied here. Gao, Ghana and Kanem are today apparently well known, although much work remains to be done on the genesis of the state in all three cases. But there are many other areas, where less research has so far been done, and for which the existence of state authorities is no longer in doubt during the period involved. This was certainly the case with Takrūr, on whose origins a recent thesis throws new light. Our inadequate information has led us, apart from these certainties, to believe that African authorities were no more than ‘chiefdoms’ without any great territorial consistency: but is it legitimate to look at the case of Ife in this way? Again, are we to believe that the power of Sumaoro Kante, in the Soso that rivalled Ghana and the Mande Mansaya until its defeat by Sundiata in the thirteenth century, was not yet a state? Research still has much to teach us in this field too. And what was happening among the Hausa or the Yoruba?

The presence of fortifications to the west of the lower Niger, in the lands that were to become the kingdom of Benin, indicates not simply a concentration of power that was territorial in character but also a bitter struggle to enlarge the territorial base of the various states in the process of being formed. This contrasts with the situation to the east of the lower Niger where the absence of fortifications might indicate either a territorial unity headed by Igbo-Ukwu, or the presence of a totally different form of land occupation and political structures; how, politically, should the discovery of a splendid tomb at Igbo-Ukwu be interpreted?

In north-east Africa, the period saw the apogee of the Christian kingdoms formed in the sixth century, particularly in the three sections of Nubia, where the economic and cultural success was still evident in the eleventh century. Ethiopia was in a worse situation, but the monarchy re-established itself, after the collapse of Axum, at Lasta, in the eleventh century.

117. On this subject, a new study, just being completed by an Algerian researcher, Mrs Nachida Rafai, using a new translation of the Arabic sources, will bring out the bitterness of the struggle between Abū Yazīd and the Fātimids.

118. The debate remains open on the economic, social and political consequences of this ‘invasion’. A recent translation of the key text by al-Idrisi (Hadj Sadok, 1983) provides new food for thought.


120. One has only to refer to the monuments found by the excavators at Dongola for example, particularly churches and a royal palace, to appreciate that, in a rather poor country, the Nubian state possessed important assets and played an international role. On Alwa and the recent excavations, see D. A. Welsby, 1983; these excavations confirm the economic and cultural dynamism of Nubia in the eleventh century.
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

century. At the same time, a series of Muslim principalities was formed in the east and south, reaching the Ethiopian lakes.

The organization of a dominant authority in each town seems to have been the rule along the eastern coast. In present-day Zimbabwe, a state was formed in the tenth century, with its capital at Mapungubwe, and Great Zimbabwe appeared in the thirteenth century. In Central Africa or the interior of East Africa, large-scale territorial developments have not yet been observed. All that one can say is that at Sanga the data suggest a slow evolution towards a ‘chieftain’, an evolution that only became clearly established towards the end of the tenth century.  

Outside these developments, we have no direct evidence on the subject of other types of political organization. It can be argued that in eastern and south-eastern Africa, the spatial organization of habitations suggests collective rule carried on by leaders of large groups and based on a kinship ideology. But this line of argument has been questioned very recently.  

It is argued that it relies too heavily on analogies derived from the ethnographic literature of the last two centuries. But it still remains the case that in the present state of our knowledge, what can be observed is the perpetuation of the power of rulers no doubt established before the seventh century. In such cases there was no dynastic pre-eminence, no hierarchies, no marked difference in standards of living. The fact that we are here dealing with agglomerated sites suggests the likelihood of a collective government. The data also probably indicate that the territory thus controlled was very small, corresponding perhaps to a village. Altogether comparable examples can be studied in the forest zones of West Africa.

Collective representations: religions, ideologies, arts

A large part of the African continent was divided between two monotheisms. Islam was continually expanding between the seventh and eleventh century. Christianity disappeared from the whole of northern Africa where it had been established in the Roman period and continued to exist solidly only in Nubia and Ethiopia; a large Christian minority survived in Egypt. Both monotheisms had built a universalizing civilization with which they endeavoured to replace the pre-existing cultures, to a greater or lesser degree, depending on place and time. Christianity was far from being able to overcome the internal divisions that were, to a large degree, the product of its intimate union with the post-Roman authorities. Neither the Copts nor the Nubians nor the Ethiopians were linked to

123. See Chapters 3, 4 and 10 above.
124. Its last cultural manifestations and its last traces date from the eleventh century. See Chapter 3 above.
Africa from the seventh to the eleventh century: five formative centuries

Rome, or even to Byzantium. However brilliant these African Christianities may have been, and they were particularly rich in monasteries, they lived on without much contact with the worlds outside, at least so far as concerns the Mediterranean. A study is needed, particularly for the period discussed here, of their relations with the Christians of Asia, also separated from Rome and Byzantium, in particular with the Nestorians, whose ecclesiastical organization extended as far as China; too few questions have been asked in this area.

The influence of Islam, a religion and a culture that spread right across the known world from Asia to the Atlantic and, for long, separated the blacks in Africa from the peoples to the north of the Mediterranean, grew stronger and stronger, as it achieved greater unity. In the tenth century this unity was strongly threatened by the temporary triumph of Fātimid Shi‘ism throughout Muslim Africa. In the eleventh century the advance of Sunnism, based, in Africa, on Mālikite law, began. It was a way of life that gradually came to dominate, made up of legal and social observances and respect for the fundamental rules of Islam. Gradually, Muslim norms were to triumph, in profoundly Islamized areas, over older cultural ways. Broadly speaking, it can be estimated that this had happened throughout the north of the continent by the end of the eleventh century.125 Advances were made in the Sahel and along the East African coast; but in these last two cases the real cultural triumph of Islam was to come only in the following period. And it is probable that in future we shall have to pay greater attention to the compromises that power-holders were forced into when they converted to Islam, in the Sahel and elsewhere, faced as they were with societies whose functioning ancestral religious norms were incompatible with certain of the demands of Islam.126 It is this that explains both the slowness of progress in some areas, the prolonged urban character of the process of Islamization and the outraged violence of pious jurists against 'slack' rulers, a violence whose effects were felt over several centuries, especially after the fourteenth century. An early example of this violence is perhaps to be sought in the Islamization by the Almoravids of some areas of West Africa at the end of the eleventh century.

For historians, it would be much more important to know what African religion was at the time. We can only interpret the few snippets of information we have with the help of information relating to much more recent periods. There is much talk of 'rain-makers', of 'charms', of 'ancestor

125. Cf. Chapters 2 and 4 above. Beneath the appearance of unity interesting survivals of syncretic cults, of Christianity, Judaism and Khāridjīsm did persist. This is not the place to discuss them.

126. An example of compromise of which al-'Umari speaks as late as the fourteenth century: Mansa Müsā of Mali revealed, in Cairo, that there existed within his empire 'pagan populations whom he did not oblige to pay the tax on infidels, but whom he employed to extract gold from the mines'. Cf. also Chapter 3 above.
worship', of 'idols' - the word comes from monotheistic sources - of 'sorcery'. This sort of approach simply hides our ignorance; it stresses the reassuring continuities and eliminates any evolution; it remains dangerously vague. Here we are in the presence of another great lacuna in research on ancient Africa, a lacuna that it will be possible to fill only partially and only then by developing new methodologies.

The notion that cultures have of the authorities to whom they entrust the leadership of societies is, of course, linked both to the dominant ideologies and to economic structures. We have seen above the probable diversity of concrete forms of authority. The monotheisms placed all authority in the light of the service of God and of a delegation of authority made by Him: even if the imām of Tāhert did not resemble the imāmal power of the Fāṭimids, even if the latter saw themselves as closer to God and the caliphs of the Prophet than the Aghlabid amirs or Idrīsid princes; whatever the case, these dynasties ruled in the name of God and Qur'an. The situation was exactly the same, in terms of the relationship with God, with the Nubian kings and the Neguses of Ethiopia, although as yet we know little for this period of the theoretical analysis of this relationship to God. 127

The situation was different in parts of Africa that had remained faithful to its religion and the socio-economic structures that it gave rise to. The development of large states led to the appearance of an interesting and novel conception of power, often improperly called 'divine kingship'. For more than a century, scholars have noted that the ideologies of kingship were very similar from one end of Africa south of the Sahara to the other. The holder of power was 'sacred', that is respected in so far as he fulfilled the conditions of the human contract that bound him to his group; and also feared, as he - and he alone - was obliged to transgress the ordinary rules of social life; the example most often cited of these transgressions is incest. This individual had a positive effect on the environment and fertility, on rain and water, on food, on social harmony, on the life of the community. By tacit consent, he possessed supernatural powers inherent in his function or obtained through an accumulation of charms. The queen-mother or the king's sisters or even his wife played a major ritual role. Some points of etiquette and symbols associated with kingship were very similar everywhere. The king must have no physical defect. His feet must not touch the bare earth. He must not see blood or corpses; he remained invisible to the people and hid his face; he only communicated with others through intermediaries. He ate alone and no one must see him drink. G. P. Murdock even went so far as to say that all the African kingdoms resembled one another like peas in a pod. 128 If he should fail seriously in one of his obligations especially as regulator of the harvests, in the integrity of his

127. Although it is perfectly easy to analyse in the case of Roman Christianity. See for example J. Devisse, 1985b.
body or by exceeding his power, the individual in question was more or less summarily physically eliminated.\textsuperscript{129} Here, no doubt, lies the greatest concrete difference in the exercise of power in comparison with the Mediterranean worlds.

Similarities between African political powers used to be explained in terms of a shared, single pharaonic origin: This view is less universally accepted today and there is greater stress on the antiquity, local origin and roots in local rites and beliefs of some of the typical features of these political powers: their relations with the land, the source of food, with hunting, with rain, for example. It is also likely that these powers borrowed from one another their most attractive and impressive features: a degree of uniformity perhaps emerged from these borrowings. One example will suffice: that of single or double flange-welded clapperless iron bells. This type of emblem developed in West Africa but is to be found \textit{c. 1200} in Shaba, at Katoto, in the case of the single bell, while the double bell appears in Zimbabwe in the fifteenth century. The single bell was associated with political and above all military authority, the double bell with kingship proper. There was thus diffusion from Nigeria to Zimbabwe (and to the kingdom of Kongo) before 1500 and from Nigeria to Shaba before 1200, again, probably during the centuries with which we are dealing here.\textsuperscript{130} Here is a tangible sign of the diffusion of an element of the divine kingship complex, through channels that are as yet unknown.

An ideology of royalty was certainly also associated with the creation of a kingdom at Mapungubwe. We believe that here the connection between the king and rain was crucial. The king was the supreme rain-maker controlling the rainfall. This was obviously a crucial attribute in a country where rainfall was variable and all crops depended on it. But we know virtually nothing of the other components of this ideology. That of Zimbabwe was to derive from it and when we have information about it – but five centuries later – a good proportion of the elements found in West Africa are also present there.

Thus the factors that favoured the appearance of one or other characteristic feature of this ‘divine’ kingship were very changeable in time and space. Here again, one must be careful to avoid being overly systematic. Forms of etiquette, rituals, beliefs and symbols varied from century to century and from place to place. Even in the nineteenth century, they were not identical from one kingdom to another and the list of ‘divine kingship

\textsuperscript{129} One example: al-Mas’üdi, 1965, p. 330: ‘As soon as the king [of the Zandij] exercised his power tyrannically and strayed from the rules of equity, they put him to death and excluded his posterity from the succession’. The putting to death of a king for a physical defect or after a given number of years of reign has been the subject of an enormous literature. But despite the presence of these rules as ideological norms in many kingdoms, no case of it has yet been proved.

\textsuperscript{130} J. Vansina, 1969.
traits’ is a composite list. It is rare to find all its features together in a single kingdom. Murdock’s similarity is thus in part fictive.

The complexity of the aspects of power appears almost physically in the period under review. In the regions where trade became essential, power could not be indifferent to the way in which it was controlled; nor could it be to the mastery of gold, copper or iron for example. Thus aspects of power that did not exist in a society of hunter-gatherers or in a simple farming group made their appearance.

The rulers of Ghana were assuredly supposed, like others, to be physically strong: the deception reported by al-Bakrī to hide the blindness of one of them is sufficient proof of that;\textsuperscript{131} but it was still the commercial power of these kings that most caught the attention of Arab writers.

Thus, the history of political power seems, in the final analysis, in Africa as elsewhere, to be much more linked to economic and social changes than to ideology: ideology created, as the need arose, the justifications and rituals necessary for the stability and legitimacy of the rulers. What happened then when two legitimacies confronted each other? For example, the legitimacy of the king subject to Allāh and the legitimacy — in the same individual — of the master of iron casting, associated in an ancient alliance with the magician-founders. Merely to ask the question is to answer it. African political powers faced, before the seventh century as after the eleventh and in the centuries in between, contradictions, tensions, choices and evolutions as in any other region of the globe. What is probably today most striking and most disconcerting for historians in this field is the extreme flexibility of the ideological adaptations that reduced contradictions and conflicts, at least so long as the demands of Christianity or Islam did not supervene.

Religion and ideologies treat of the cultural substance. The arts are the expression of this substance. At this level, a distinction is made between two groups of different traditions: the tradition of the \textit{oikoumene}\textsuperscript{132} and the tradition of the arts of regional tradition. For the latter, we possess direct knowledge only of the visual remains.

The Muslim world subordinates art to the life of the Islamic community. Collective monuments, even if they are built at the instance of the political authorities are, primarily, those where this community meets to pray and perform acts of faith. The mosque is at the centre of Muslim architecture. There do of course exist styles, recognizable at first glance, due to the prevailing order, the fashion of the times or the functions given to this or that part of the building; certainly too, each dynasty endeavoured to put its stamp on its mosques. Neither the Tulunids in Fustāḥ, nor the Aghlabids in Kayrawān, nor the Fāṭimids in Mahdiyya or Cairo nor the Almoravids in Morocco or Spain nor the Almohads were exceptions to this

\textsuperscript{131} Al-Bakrī, 1913, pp. 174–5.
\textsuperscript{132} See Ch. 8, note 94 above.
Africa from the seventh to the eleventh century: five formative centuries

rule. But, over and above differences of detail, the mosque proclaimed the unity of the Muslim umma.

In all other areas, the discreet luxury of an aristocracy of government, war or trade might develop. This class was never ostentatious, but developed, in these centuries, a taste for luxury that shows clearly in the production of cloths, sculpted ivories and wood, ceramics, mosaics or sometimes murals. In this field as in that of architecture, borrowings moved, following fashion, from one continent to another. And the taste for luxury is so obvious that the ‘expatriates’ who settled south of the Sahara to trade carried it with them in its most beautiful forms and products.  

Before the end of the eleventh century, the Muslim world produced luxury goods, fine objects that sold very well: already, for example, at Fustat at the end of the tenth century, Chinese celadons, hitherto imported at great expense were being copied.

The arts of Nubia and Ethiopia, more self-contained, yet still borrowing from the Mediterranean basin, have been mentioned in this volume. The place taken by murals in Christian art is in sharp contrast to Muslim practice. The slight influence of the one on the other – of Muslim art on Christian art and vice-versa – is worth stressing. It is negative proof that styles did not spread automatically but followed religious and political lines of force. In this sense, visual art was still an expression of the dominant ideology and world view.

It was long thought and written that nothing remained of the visual arts of Africa south of the Sahara, since wood, the preferred material of artistic expression, did not stand the ravages of time! Moreover, if these arts did exist, they could have been no more than what was disparagingly called ‘tribal’. The journey across the world of the magnificent exhibition of Treasures of Ancient Nigeria has put such notions where they belong and led, along with other recent discoveries and exhibitions, to the question being reopened. Nok has impressed many people over many years: this figurative ceramic art, whose products, in so many varied styles, were spread over almost a millennium beginning in the seventh century before the Christian era, revealed at one stroke the historical depth of the African artistic past. There was then a tendency to move on directly to the production of Ife, in the twelfth century, Ife being seen as the consequence of Nok. The error lay in believing that not much existed for the period between these two manifestations and that ceramic art was limited to Nigeria. Today, it has become clear that Nok was not a closed entity, that figurative ceramic art was also found beyond it and that during our period a plastic art developed that has been found from Tegdaoust to Jenne-Jeno,

133. See the remarkable recent work by a Tunisian researcher on this: A. Louhichi, 1984.
in Niger,\textsuperscript{136} south of Lake Chad\textsuperscript{137} and no doubt elsewhere, notably too at Igbo-Ukwu. There are great stylistic differences. In the present state of research, one may speak of a regional Upper Niger tradition that expressed itself not only in ceramics but in small metal objects and, \textit{c. 1100}, at Bandiagara, also in wood. It is likely that many other objects in wood were carved at this time but have perished. The preservation of wooden neck-rests and a few statuettes at Bandiagara is due to conditions of conservation that were exceptional, but which may be found elsewhere.

Throughout West Africa a figurative expression existed that used baked clay to conserve its products; this production and these techniques were spread over centuries and go back well before the seventh century. Study of them needs now to be co-ordinated and rationalized. But we must also mention in passing the very fine artistic quality of ceramic vases found at Sintiu-Bara, in Senegal, dated to the sixth century, which it seems very likely can be considered as cultural indicators over a much wider geographical area.\textsuperscript{138} What did this artistic output correspond to? What did it represent as an aesthetic need, as an ideological projection? Who ordered it? All so many questions that remain, for the present, unanswered.

In Central Africa two wooden items, the one a helmet mask representing an animal, the other a head on a post dating from the end of the first millennium have survived. They at least show that the practice of carving existed in Angola. Rock drawings are abundant in Angola, and even more so in Central Africa: they have unfortunately been neither carefully collated, nor studied nor, \textit{a fortiori}, dated.\textsuperscript{139} In East Africa, a few figurines of cattle dating from this period come from the White Nile and human figurines from Uganda. In Southern Africa, the period of ceramic masks in the Transvaal came to an end \textit{c. 800}. There is perhaps a link with some gold-covered objects found at Mapungubwe. These objects were certainly the precursors of the stone sculpture that developed later in Zimbabwe. But Mapungubwe was only one case among many in the region. Elsewhere, there were, in our period, clay figurines of cattle and of other domestic animals and of human females in sites of the Leopard’s Kopje tradition. They are also found in older sites in Zimbabwe (Gokomere). In central Zambia (Kalomo), similar figurines of the period studied here show strong stylistic differences to those in Zimbabwe. It should not be forgotten, finally, that the very rich rock art in Zimbabwe died out in the eleventh century, while less complex rock-art styles continued to exist in Namibia and Southern Africa, no doubt the work of the San.

Enough has been said to show that a plastic art existed everywhere south of the \textit{oikoumene}, but that so far only traces of it have been discovered. The

\textsuperscript{136} B. Gado, 1980. Other discoveries have been made more recently by the same author.

\textsuperscript{137} G. Connah, 1981, pp. 136 et seq.

\textsuperscript{138} G. Thilmans and A. Ravisé, 1983, pp. 48 et seq. See also Chapter 13 above.

\textsuperscript{139} On Angolan rock drawings, cf. C. Ervedosa, 1980, with a full bibliography.
spread of stylistic provinces is not yet clear. And we have only vague ideas about the role played by these works and their purpose. Even in the cases where objects have been found, as in Southern Africa, there has not been enough research. One day, however, it can be anticipated that some gaps will be filled and that we will be able to reconstruct a history of art for the arts of regional tradition as has been done for the art of the oikoumene. Contrary to what is so often said and repeated, it is not at all certain that these ancient African arts were as strongly dominated by religious needs and ideas as they were in the oikoumene, unless of course, any and every ideology and value system is called religion.

Conclusion

Five centuries of growing stability, of societies putting down roots, of development in the widest sense of the word. Five centuries marked both by the more coherent exploitation of various environments and the appearance of Islam, which, in the long run, altered the old balances. Five centuries of unequal development, from which some regions of the continent emerge fully from the documentary shadow and enable us to reconstruct, through patient work and methodological inventiveness, the technical, social, cultural and political changes under way. Five centuries during which too some regions remain very inadequately known, which means that we have not done enough work. Central Africa, certainly, was at this time involved in a process of intense socio-political organization: one senses it almost everywhere, but too often the evidence is still lacking.

When one measures the distance research has travelled, especially for these five centuries, over the last twenty years, a journey of which this volume bears the imprint, one cannot but consider this period as one of those on which very serious efforts should be concentrated, in all fields of research, to fill out the knowledge, so intriguing but so incomplete, that we already have of it.

An observer living in 600 could not, even in the broadest outline, have foreseen what Africa would be in 1100. But an observer living in 1100 could have predicted in broad outline what the human situation in the continent would be in 1500 and on the cultural level even in 1900. And that is the significance of the five formative centuries that have been presented in this volume.
Members of the International Scientific Committee for the Drafting of a General History of Africa

The dates cited below refer to dates of membership.

Professor J. F. A. Ajayi (Nigeria), from 1971
Editor Volume VI
Professor F. A. Albuquerque Mourao (Brazil), from 1975
Professor A. A. Boahen (Ghana), from 1971
Editor Volume VII
H. E. Boubou Hama (Niger), 1971–8 (resigned)
H. E. M. Bull (Zambia), from 1971
Professor D. Chanaia (Zimbabwe), from 1975
Professor P. D. Curtin (USA), from 1975
Professor J. Devisse (France), from 1971
Professor M. Difuila (Angola), from 1978
Professor H. Djait (Tunisia), from 1975
The late Professor Cheikh Anta Diop (Senegal), 1971–86; deceased 1986
Professor J. D. Fage (UK), 1971–81 (resigned)
H. E. M. El Fasi (Morocco), from 1971
Editor Volume III
Professor J. L. Franco (Cuba), from 1971
The late Mr M. H. I. Galaal (Somalia), 1971–81; deceased 1981
Professor Dr V. L. Grottanelli (Italy), from 1971
Professor E. Haberland (Federal Republic of Germany), from 1971
Dr Aklilu Habte (Ethiopia), from 1971
H. E. A. Hampate Ba (Mali), 1971–8 (resigned)
Dr I. S. El-Hareir (Libya), from 1978
Dr I. Hrbek (Czechoslovakia), from 1971
Assistant Editor Volume III
Dr A. Jones (Liberia), from 1971
The late Abbé Alexis Kagame (Rwanda), 1971–81; deceased 1981
Professor I. N. Kimambo (Tanzania), from 1971
Professor J. Ki-Zerbo (Upper Volta), from 1971
Editor Volume I
Mr D. Laya (Niger), from 1979
Dr A. Letnev (USSR), from 1971
Dr G. Mokhtar (Egypt), from 1971
Editor Volume II
Professor P. Mutibwa (Uganda), from 1975
Professor D. T. Niane (Senegal), from 1971
Editor Volume IV
Members of the International Scientific Committee

Professor L. D. Ngcongco (Botswana), from 1971
Professor T. Obenga (People's Republic of the Congo), from 1975
Professor B. A. Ogot (Kenya), from 1971
Editor Volume V
Professor C. Ravoajanahary (Madagascar), from 1971
The late Professor W. Rodney (Guyana), 1979–80; deceased 1980
The late Professor M. Shibeika (Sudan), 1971–80; deceased 1980
Professor Y. A. Talib (Singapore), from 1975
The late Professor A. Teixeira da Mota (Portugal), 1978–82; deceased 1982
Mgr T. Tshibangu (Zaire), from 1971
Professor J. Vansina (Belgium), from 1971
The late Rt Hon. Dr E. Williams (Trinidad and Tobago), 1976–8; resigned 1978; deceased 1980
Professor A. A. Mazrui (Kenya)
Editor Volume VIII, not a member of the Committee
Professor C. Wondji (Ivory Coast)
Assistant Editor Volume VIII, not a member of the Committee
Secretariat of the International Scientific Committee
M. Glélé, Director, Division of Studies and Dissemination of Cultures, 1, rue Miollis, 75015 Paris
Biographies of authors

CHAPTER 1  I. Hrbek (Czechoslovakia); specialist in Arabic, African and Islamic history as well as in the Arabic sources of the history of Africa; author of many works and articles in these fields; researcher at the Oriental Institute, Prague, and scientific consultant to the Czechoslovak Academy of Sciences.

CHAPTER 2  M. El Fasi (Morocco); author of a number of works (in Arabic and French) dealing with linguistic history and literary criticism; former Vice-Chancellor of the Karawiyyn University in Fez.

CHAPTER 3  I. Hrbek/M. El Fasi.

CHAPTER 4  Z. Dramani-Issifou (Benin); specialist in relations between Black Africa and the Maghrib; author of numerous papers and an important work on the subject.

CHAPTER 5  F. de Medeiros (Benin); specialist in African historiography; author of works on the relations between Black African world and the other peoples.

CHAPTER 6  S. Lwango-Lunyiigo (Uganda); specialist in early African history, particularly the African Iron Age; author of numerous works on the subject. J. Vansina (Belgium); specialist in African history; author of numerous works and articles on pre-colonial history of Africa; Professor of History, the University of Wisconsin, Madison (U.S.A.).

CHAPTER 7  T. Bianquis (France); specialist in tenth- and eleventh-century history of Arab Orient; author of a work entitled Histoire de Damas et de la Syrie sous la domination fatimide; former director of the Institut français d'études arabes, Damascus; at present lecturer in Islamic history and civilization at the University Lumière-Lyon II.

CHAPTER 8  S. Jakobielski (Poland); specialist in Christian archaeology; has published works on Coptic script; lecturer in Archaeology of Nubia, Catholic Academy of Theology, Warsaw; member of Polish Centre of Mediterranean Archaeology in Cairo.

CHAPTER 9  H. Mones (Egypt); specialist in general history of Islam; has published works on this subject; Professor of History, Faculty of Arts, University of Cairo; member of the Arabic language Academy, Cairo.

CHAPTER 10  M. Talbi (Tunisia); Islamologist; has published many works and articles on the various aspects of Islamic religion and culture; former teacher at the Faculty of Arts, Tunis.

CHAPTER 11  T. Lewicki (Poland), specialist in the history of the Maghrib and in the history of Sudan in the Middle Ages; author of numerous works on the subject; Professor at Jagellonne University, Krakow.

CHAPTER 12  I. Hrbek.

CHAPTER 13  J. Devisse (France); specialist in the history of North-West Africa from the
Biographies of Authors

fourth to the sixteenth century; archaeologist; has published many articles and works on the history of Africa; Professor of African History at the University of Paris I, Panthéon-Sorbonne.

I. Hrbek.

CHAPTER 14 J. Dévisse.

CHAPTER 15 D. Lange (Federal Republic of Germany); specialist in the pre-colonial history of the central Sudan; has published various works on this period; former teacher at the University of Niamey.

B. Barkindo (Nigeria); specialist in pre-colonial and early colonial interstate relations in the Chad basin; author of numerous works on the subject; lecturer in History, Bayero University, Kano.

CHAPTER 16 Thurstan Shaw (U.K.); author of numerous works on the prehistory of West Africa; Professor of Archaeology; Vice-President of the Pan-African Congress on Prehistory; President of the Prehistoric Society.

CHAPTER 17 B. W. Andah (Nigeria); specialist in African history, archaeology and anthropology; author of numerous works on the subject; Professor of Archaeology and Anthropology at the University of Ibadan.

J. R. Anquandah (Ghana); specialist in history and archaeology of Africa from the early Metal Age to c. 1700; has published numerous works on the subject; lecturer in Archaeology, University of Ghana, Legon.

CHAPTER 18 B. W. Andah.

CHAPTER 19 Tekle-Tsadik Mekouriia (Ethiopia); historian, writer; specialist in the political, economic and social history of Ethiopia from its origins to the 20th century; retired.

CHAPTER 20 E. Cerulli (Italy); ethnologist; author of works on the subject.

CHAPTER 21 F. T. Masao (Tanzania); archaeologist; specialist in the Later Stone Age and Prehistory rock art; author of numerous works on the subject; Director, the National Museums of Tanzania.

H. W. Mutoro (Kenya); specialist in African archaeology; author of numerous works on the subject.

CHAPTER 22 C. Ehret (U.S.A.); linguist and historian of East Africa; has published many works and articles on the pre-colonial and colonial history of East Africa; teaches at the University of California, Los Angeles.

CHAPTER 23 D. W. Phillipson (U.K.); museum curator and archaeologist; specialist in the prehistory of sub-Saharan Africa with emphasis on the eastern and southern regions; author of numerous works on these topics and editor of the African Archaeology Review; lecturer at the University of Cambridge.

CHAPTER 24 T. N. Huffman (U.S.A.); specialist in social and cultural anthropological archaeology and the prehistory of sub-Saharan Africa; author of works on the subject.

CHAPTER 25 (Mme) B. Domenichini-Ramiaramanana (Madagascar); specialist in Malagasy language and literature; author of numerous works on the civilization of Madagascar; Vice-President of the section of Language, Literature and
Africa from the Seventh to Eleventh Century

Arts at the Malagasy Academy; teaches oral literature and cultural history at the University of Madagascar; Senior Researcher in the sciences of the language at the Centre national de la recherche scientifique (CNRS), Paris.

CHAPTER 26

Y. A. Talib (Singapore); specialist in Islam, the Malay world and the Middle East, particularly South-West Arabia; author of works on the subject; Associate Professor; Head, Department of Malay Studies, National University of Singapore.

F. El-Samir (Iraq); specialist in Islamic history; author of numerous works on the subject.

CHAPTER 27

A. Bathily (Senegal); specialist in the history of Western Sudan from the eighth to the nineteenth centuries; has published numerous works on the subject.

C. Meillassoux (France); specialist in economic and social history of West Africa; author of many works on the subject; Senior Researcher at the CNRS, Paris.

CHAPTER 28

J. Devisse/J. Vansina.
Bibliography

The publishers wish to point out that while every effort has been made to ensure that the details in this Bibliography are correct, some errors may occur as a result of the complexity and the international nature of the work.

Abbreviations and list of periodicals

AA American Anthropologist, Washington, DC
AARSC Annales de l’Académie Royale des Sciences Coloniales, Brussels
AAW Abhandlungen der Königlich Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Berlin
AB Africana Bulletin, Warsaw: Warsaw University
Actes Vie Congr. PPEQ Actes du Sixième Congrès Pan-Africain de Préhistoire et des études du Quaternaire, Dakar: Cambéry, 1967
AE Annales d’Ethiopie, Paris
AEH African Economic History, Madison, Wisconsin
AES Afrikanskiy etnograficheskiy sbornik, Moscow-Leningrad
AF Altorientalische Forschungen, Schriften zur Geschichte und Kultur des Alten Orients, Akademie der Wissenschaften der DDR, Berlin
AFLSHD Annales de la Faculté des Lettres et Sciences Humaines, Université de Dakar
Africa (INAA) Africa, Institut National d’Archéologie et de l’Art, Tunis
African Arts African Arts, African Studies Center, University of California, Los Angeles
AIES Annales d’Histoire Economique et Sociale, Paris
AHS African Historical Studies (became IJAHS in 1972), Boston University, African Studies Center
AI Annales Islamologiques (earlier Mélanges), Cairo: Institut Français d’Archéologie Orientale du Caire
AIEOA Annales de l’Institut d’Études Orientales de l’Université d’Alger, Alger: Faculté des Lettres
AIMRS Annales de l’Institut mauritanien de Recherche Scientifique, Nouakchott
AION Annali dell’Istituto Orientale di Napoli, Naples
AJ Africana Journal, New York
AJPA American Journal of Physical Anthropology
AKM Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes, Deutsche Morgenlandische Gesellschaft, Leipzig
AL Annali Lateranensi, Vatican
AM Africana Marburgensia, Marburg
AMRAC Annales du Musée Royal d’Afrique Centrale, Sciences Humaines. Tervuren, Belgium
AN African Notes, Ibadan: University of Ibadan, Institute of African Studies
ANM Annals of the Natal Museum, Durban
Annales ESC Annales–Économies, Sociétés, Civilisations, Paris
ANYAS Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, New York
AQ Africa Quarterly, New Delhi
Bibliography

HT Hespéris-Tamuda, Rabat: Université Mohammed V, Faculté de Lettres et des Sciences Humaines
HUP Harvard University Press
IAI Institute of African Studies, London
IC Islamic Culture, Hyderabad
IFAN Institut fondamental de l'Afrique noire
IJAHS International Journal of African Historical Studies, Boston
IJAL International Journal of American Linguistics, Chicago: Linguistic Society of America
IRSH Institut de Recherches Humaines, Niamey
Islam Der Islam: Zeitschrift für Geschichte und Kultur des islamischen Orients, Berlin
JA Journal asiatique, Paris
JAL Journal of African Languages, London
JARCE Journal of the American Research Center in Egypt, Boston, Massachusetts
JAS Journal of African Studies, Los Angeles
JEA Journal of Egyptian Archaeology, London
JES Journal of Ethnographic Studies, Addis Ababa
JESHO Journal of Economic and Social History of the Orient, Leiden
JHISN Journal of the Historical Society of Nigeria, Ibadan
JRAS Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland, London
JSA Journal de la Société des Africanistes, Paris
JSAIMM Journal of the South African Institute of Mining and Metallurgy, Johannesburg
KHB Kenya Historical Review, The Journal of the Historical Association of Kenya, Nairobi
KS Kano Studies, Kano, Nigeria
KSINA Kratkije Soobcheniya Instituta Narodow Azii Akademii Nauk SSSR, Moscow-Leningrad
KUP Khartoum University Press
Kush Kush, Journal of the Sudan Antiquities Service, Khartoum
Likundoli Likundoli, Sér. B, Archives et Documents, Lubumbashi
LNR Lagos Notes and Records, Lagos
LSJ Liberian Studies Journal, Newark, Delaware
MAIB-L Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions et de Belles-Lettres, Paris
Man Man, London
MBT Madjallat al-buhûth al-ta 'rîkhîyya, Tripoli
MHAOM Mélanges d'Histoire et d'Archéologie de l'Occident Musulman, Algiers, 1957, 2 vols
MLI Mare-Luso-Indicum
MSOS Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen an der Friedrich-Wilhelm Universität zu Berlin
NAA Notes Africaines: Bulletin d'Information de l'IFAN, Dakar
NAA Narodul Azii i Afriki, Moskva
Nyame Akuma Nyame Akuma, Calgary: University of Calgary, Department of Archaeology
NC Nubia Christiana, Warsaw, Academy of Catholic Theology
NCAA Nouvelles du Centre d'Art et d'Archéologie, Antananarivo, Université de Madagascar
NUP Northwestern University Press
Odu, Odu, Ife
OH Orientalia Hispanica, Leiden: Brill
Omaly sy Anio Omaly sy Anio, Antananarivo
OUP Oxford University Press
PA Présence Africaine, Paris-Dakar
PAuduma Pauduma. Mitteilungen zur Kulturkunde, Frankfurt
PB Proceedings of the British Academy, London
Proc. KNAW Proceedings-Koninklijke Nederlandse Akademie van Wetenschappen, Amsterdam
PS Palestinskiy Sbornik, Moscow-Leningrad
PUF Presses Universitaires de France
PPW Princeton University Press
RA Revue Africaine, Journal des travaux de la Société Historique algérienne, Alger
RAC Rivista di Archeologia Cristiana, Pontificia Commissione di archeologia sacra, Rome
RAI Royal Anthropological Institute, London
Radiocarbon Radiocarbon, Annual Supplement to the American Journal of Sciences, New York
REI Revue des Etudes Islamiques

801
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

RFHOM Revue française d'Histoire d'Outre-mer, Paris
RHES Revue d'Histoire Economique et Sociale, Paris
RIM Revue d'Histoire Maghrébine, Tunis
RHPR Revue d'Histoire de la Philosophie religieuse, Strasbourg
RÉ Revista del Instituto Egiptio, Madrid
RMAOF Revue militaire de l'A.O.F
RMN Rozmnik Muzeum Narodowego w Warszawie, Annuaire du Musée National de Varsovie, Warsaw
RO Rozmnik Orientalistycky: Polish Archives of Oriental Research, Warsaw
ROMM Revue de l'Occident Musulman et de la Méditerranée, Aix-en-Provence
RPAR Rendiconti della Pontificia Accademia Romana di Archeologia, Rome
RPC Recherche, Pédagogie et Culture, Paris: AUDECAM
RS Revue Sémitique, Paris
RSE Rassegna di studi etiopici, Rome
RT Revue tunisienne
SAAB South African Archeological Bulletin, Cape Town
SAJS South African Journal of Science, Johannesburg
Sankofa Sankofa: The Legon Journal of Archaeology and Historical Studies, Legon
SE Sovietskaya Etnografiya, Moscow
SFHOM Société française d'histoire d'Outre-Mer, Paris
SI Studia Islamica, Paris
SJFE The Scandinavian Joint Expedition to Sudanese Nubia Publications, Uppsala, Lund, Odense, Helsinki
SLLR Sierra Leone Language Review, Freetown
SNR Sudan Notes and Records, Khartoum
Sources Orales et Histoire Sources Orales et Histoire, Valbonne, CEDRASEMI
STB Sudan Texts Bulletin, Caleraine, New University of Ulster
SUGA Sprache und Geschichte in Afrika, Cologne, Institut für Afrikanistik der Universität zu Köln
SWTA South-Western Journal of Anthropology (now Journal of Anthropological Research), Albuquerque, New Mexico
Taloha Taloha, Tananarive
Tarikh Tarikh, Historical Society of Nigeria
THSG Transactions of the Historical Society of Ghana, Legon
TIRS Traux de l'Institut de Recherches Sahariennes, Alger
TJH Transafrican Journal of History, Nairobi: East African Literature Bureau
TNR Tanganyika Notes and Records (now Tanzania Notes and Records), Dar es Salaam
UJ Uganda Journal, Kampala
UWP University of Wisconsin Press
WA World Archaeology, Henley-on-Thames, England
WAAN West African Archaeological Newsletter, Ibadan
WATJ West African Journal of Archaeology, Ibadan
WZHU-S Wissenschaftliche Zeitschrift der Humboldt Universität Ges. Sprachwissenschaft, Berlin
DDR
WZKM Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes, Vienna
YUP Yale University Press
ZAS Zeitschrift für Ägyptische Sprache und Altertumskunde, Leipzig
ZDMG Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft, Leipzig

Bibliography


802
Bibliography


Abu l-'Arab Tamîn (1920) Kitäb Tabakät 'Ulamä Ifrtkiyya, ed. by M. Ben Cheneb (Algiers: Publ. de la Fac. des Lettres).


Ali, Djawād (1952-6) Ta'rikh al-'Arab kabla 'l-Islām (8 vols, Baghdād).


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Amilhat, P. (1937b) 'Petite chronique des Id ou Aïch, héritiers guerriers des Almoravides sahariens', *REI*, 1, pp. 41-130.
Amin, Ahmad (1969a) *Fadjr al-Islam* (Beirut, 10th edn).
Amin, Ahmad (1969b) *Duha al-Isläm* (3 vols, Beirut, 10th edn).
Armstrong, R. G. (1964b) 'The use of linguistic and ethnographic data in the study of Idoma and Yoruba history' in J. Vansina et al. (eds), pp. 127-44.
Bibliography


Basset, I. (1893) 'Les inscriptions arabes de l'Ile de Dahlak', _BIFAN(B), 31_1, pp. 1-94.


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Berchem, M. van (1952) 'Deux campagnes de fouilles à Sedrata en Algérie', C-RAI, pp. 242-6.


Bergman, I. (1975) Late Nubian Textiles (Uppsala: SJE, 8).


Berthier, S. (1976) 'Une maison du quartier de la mosquée à Koumbi Saleh' (2 vols, Mémoire de maîtrise, Université de Lyon II).


Boahen, A. A. (1977) 'Ghana before the Europeans' GSSJ, 1.


Boulnois, J. (1943) 'La Migration des Sao du Tchad', BIFAN (B), 5, pp. 80-121.


al-Bukhâri (1978) Kital al-jâmî' al-jahîh (tr. and notes by Muhammad Asad (New Delhi).


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Cerulli, E. (1941) 'Il sultanato dello Scioa nel secòlo XIII secondo un nuovo documento storico', *RSE*, 1, pp. 5–42.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chittick, H. N. (1968a)</td>
<td>'Two traditions about the early history of Kilwa', Azania, 3, pp. 197-200.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Churakov, M. (1960)</td>
<td>'Maghrib nakannue khairidjiskogo vosstaniya' [The Maghrib at the dawn of the Kharidjite revolts], Palestinskiy Sbornik, 5, 68, pp. 66-84.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Colloque de Saint-Denis (1972) *Colloque de Saint-Denis (Réunion) sur les mouvements de populations dans l’Océan Indien*.


Bibliography


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Devissage, J. (1981a) 'Pour une histoire globale de la céramique africaine' in (Le) sol, la parole et l'écrit, pp. 179-203.


Doke, C. M. (1938) 'The Earliest records of Bantu', *Bantu Studies*, 12, pp. 135–44.


Domenichini-Ramiaramanana, B. (1984) 'De la légende à l'histoire: le cycle de Darafify ou le


Bibliography


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Fage, J. D. (1964) ‘Some thoughts on state-formation in the Western Sudan before the seventeenth century’, *BUPAH*, 1, pp. 17–34.


Farias, P. F. de Moraes (1967) ‘The Almoravids: some questions concerning the character of the movement during its periods of closest contact with the Western Sudan’, *BIFAN* (B), 24, 3–4, pp. 794–878.


Flacourt, E. de, (1661) *Histoire de la Grande Ile Madagascar... avec une relation de ce qui s’est passé...*


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Gartkiewicz, P. M. (1973) "Stary Kościół w Dongoli na tle sakralnej architektury wczesnośredniowiecznej Nubii" [The Old Church in Dongola against the background of sacral architecture in Early Medieval Nubia], *Kwartalnik Architektury i Urbanistyki* (Warsaw), 18, pp. 207-39.


Bibliography


Hair, P. E. H. (1968a) 'Ethnolinguistic continuity on the Guinea Coast', *IJA*, 8, 2, pp. 247–68.


819
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Bibliography


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Ibn 'Abd Rabbihī (1876) *Al-Ikhd al-farash* (3 vols, Cairo).

Ibn 'Abdun (1955) 'Risala fi l-kadâ' wa-l-hisba' in *E. Lévi-Provençal (ed.) Trois traités hispaniques de hisba* (Cairo: Institut français d’archéologie du Caire).

Ibn Abī Dīnār (1869–70) *Kitāb al-mu’nis fi qâbār al-Ifriqiyya wa-Tūnis* (Tunis).


Ibn al-Rûmî (1924) *Dīwān*, ed. by K. Kaylânî (Cairo).
Bibliography


Bibliography


Ibn Chaldün (1875) *Kitäb al-'Ibär 7* vols, Cairo).


Isfahâni, Abu 'l-Faradj (1868–9) *Kitäb al-Aghänî* (Büläk).
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Jean de Nikiou (1883) Chronique de Jean, Eve que de Nikiou, ed. and tr. by H. Zotenberg (Paris: Bibliotheque Nationale).


Jones, A. (1981) ‘Who were the Vai?’, JAH, 22, 2, pp. 159–78.


824


La Chapelle, F. de (1930) 'Esquisse d’une histoire du Sahara occidental', Hespéris, 11, pp. 35-95.


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Law, R. C. C. (1967a) 'Contacts between the Mediterranean civilisations and West Africa in pre-Islamic times', LNR, 1, pp. 52–62.


Bibliography


Le Tourneau, R. (1954) 'La révolte d'Abu Yazid au Xle siècle', CT, 2, pp. 103-25.


Lévi-Provençal, E. (1938) 'La Fondation de Fès', AIEOA, 4.


Lévi-Provençal, E. (1957) 'La fondation de Marrakech (462/1070)', MHAOM, 2, pp. 117-20.


Levtzion, N. (1968a) 'Ibn Hawqal, the cheque and Awdaghost', J AH, 9, 2, pp. 223-33.


Lewicki, T. (1939) 'Sur l'oasis de Şbru (Dbr, Shbru) des géographes arabes', RA, 378, pp. 45-64.


Lewicki, T. (1964) 'L'état nord-africain de Tâhert et ses relations avec le Soudan occidental à la fin du VIIIe et au IXe siècle', CEAs, 4, 8, pp. 293-311.

Lewicki, T. (1965a) 'Animal husbandry among medieval agricultural people of Western and Middle Sudan (according to Arab sources)', Acta Ethnographica Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae, 14, 1-2, pp. 165-78.


McCall, D. F. (1971) 'The cultural map and time profile of the Mande speaking peoples' in C. T. Hodge (ed.).


McIntosh, R. J. (1976) 'Finding lost walls on archaeological sites. The Hani model', *Sankofa*, 2, pp. 45–53.


Madjid, 'Abd al-Mun'im (1968) *Zuhûr khilafât at-Fâtîmîyyîn wa sukûtuhâ*. (Cairo).


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Bibliography

Mason, R. J. (1974) 'Background to the Transvaal Iron Age - new discoveries at Olifantspoort and Broederstroom', JSAIMM, 74, 6, pp. 211-16.


al-Mas'ūdī (1861-77) Les Prairies d'or, ed. and tr. by C. Barbier de Meynard et P. de Courteille (9 vols, Paris: Imprimerie Impériale).

al-Mas'ūdī (1962-5) Les Prairies d'or, tr. by C. Pellat (Paris).

al-Mas'ūdī (1964) Murū Ṭ-dhahab wa ma`ādin al Djiwāh, ed. by M. Abdulhamid (4 vols, Cairo).


Matveyev, V. V. (1960) Northern Boundaries of the Eastern Bantu (Zinj) in the Tenth Century, According to Arab Sources (Moscow: Oriental Institute).


Mauny, R. (1952a) 'Notes d'histoire et d'archéologie sur Azougui, Chinguetti et Oudadane', BIFAN (B), 17, pp. 142-62.


Mauny, R. (1961) Tableau géographique de l'Ouest Africain au Moyen Age d'après les sources écrites, la tradition, l'archéologie (Dakar: IFAN).

Mauny, R. (1965) 'The Wakwak and the Indonesian invasion in East Africa in 945 AD', Studia (Lisbon), pp. 7-16.


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Michalowski, K. (1965a) 'La Nubie chrétienne', AB, 3, pp. 9-25.

Michalowski, K. (1965b) 'Polish excavations at Faras, fourth season, 1963-64', Kush, 13, pp. 177-89.


Michalowski, K. (1967) Faras, die Kathedrale aus dem Wüstensand (Einsiedeln, Zurich, Cologne: Benzinger Verlag).


Monneret de Villard, U. (1948) 'Aksum e i quattro re del mondo', AL, 12, pp. 175-80.

Bibliography


Moorsel, P. van (1966) "Une théophanie nubienne", *RAC*, 42, pp. 207-316.


Moorsel, P. van (1972) "Die Nubier und das glorreiche Kreuz", *BAB*, 47, pp. 125-34.


Bibliography


L'Occidente e l'Islam nell'Alto Medioev (1965) (2 vols, Spoleto: Centro Italiano di Studi sull'Alto Medioevo).


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

Pearce, F. B. (1920) Zanzibar, the Island Metropolis of Eastern Africa (London: T. F. Unwin).

[Further entries and references follow, similar in format to the above examples.]
Poirier, J. (1965) 'Données écologiques et démographiques de la mise en place des Proto-Malgaches', Taloha, 1, pp. 61-82.
Polet, J. (forthcoming) 'Fouille d'un quartier de Tegdaoust. Urbanisation, architecture, utilisation de l'espace construit' (Thèse de 3e cycle, Université de Paris, I).
Priddy, B. (1973) 'Pottery traditions in Ghana, their significance for the archaeologist' (cyclostyled seminar paper, Department of Archaeology, University of Ghana, Legon).
Puglisi, G. (1953) 'Le citerne di Dahlak Chebir e di Adal nell'archipelago delle Dahlak' Bollettino di Istituto di Studi Etiopici (Asmara) 1, pp. 53-70.
Puygaudeau, O. du (1966) 'Une carte des chars à boeufs révèle les rapports trois fois millénaires entre le Maghreb et le Soudan', Archéologie, 3, pp. 37 et seq.
al-Rabi' ibn Habib (n.d.) Munad.
Bibliography


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century

as-Sa'di, A. see Ta'rīkh al-Sūdān.
Saison, B. (1979) 'Fouille d'un quartier artisanal de Tegdaoust' (2 vols, Thèse de Doctorate de 3e cycle, Université de Paris, I).
Schneider, M. (1969) 'Stèles funéraires de la région de Harar et Dahlak (Ethiopie), REI, 37, 2, pp. 339-43.

840
Bibliography


al-Shafi'i (1903) *Kitāb al-'amm* (Cairo).


841
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Stenning, D. J. (1959) *Savannah Nomads: A Study of the Woodaahe Pastoral Fulani of Western Bornu Province, Northern Region, Nigeria* (London: OUP).


Stevenson, R. (1956) 'A survey of the phonetics and grammatical structure of the Nuba Mountain languages', *AU*, 40, pp. 73-84, 93-115.


Bibliography


Ta’rîkh al-Fattâsh (1913–14), ed. and tr. by O. Houdas and M. Delafosse (Paris: Leroux).

Ta’rîkh al-Sudân (1900) Tarikh es-Soudan, par Abderrahmane ben Abdallah ben Imram ben Amir Es-Sadi, tr. by O. Houdas (Paris: Leroux).


843
Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Bibliography


Viré, M. M. (1958) 'Notes sur trois épitaphes royales de Gao', *BIFAN* (B), 20, pp. 368-76.


al-Wâhidî (1315 AH) *Ashâb al-nuzûl* (Cairo).


Africa from the Seventh to the Eleventh Century


Wessel, K. (ed.) Christentum am Nil (Recklinghausen: Vertag Aurel Bongers).


Wüstenfeld, F. (1952) Beiträge zur historischen Geographie der vorislamischen Südarabien (Wiesbaden: Steiner).


al-Ya'kübi (1937) Les pays, tr. by G. Wiet (Cairo: Institut Francaise d'Archéologie Orientale).
Bibliography


Yâkût (1907) Mu’jam al-buldân (10 vols, Cairo: 1325 AH).


Zyhlarz, E. (1928a) Grundzüge der nubischen Grammatik im christlichen Frühmittelalter (Altnubisch), AKM, 18, 1.


Abbasids, 22, 45, 49-53, 314, 577, 581

Abayanland, 524

Abâbîn, 495, 496

Abadan, 21

Abâbatu, 22

Abâbûl Ma‘bad ibn Wahb, 730

Abû ‘Abd Allâh ibn Yâsîn al-Djazûlî, 309

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn al-Khaftib al-Hawwârî, 289

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn al-Zubayr, 231

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn al-Zubayr al-Hawwârî, 289

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn ‘Umar (c. 1059), 346, 348-9, 360-1

Abû ‘Abd Allâh al-Fâsî, 336-7, 342

Abû ‘Abd Allah, Muhammadr, 340, 581

Abû ‘Abd al-Malik b. Habib, 274

Abû ‘Abd Allâh ibn al-Malik ibn Nakhkâs al-Ghara, 406

Abû ‘Abd al-Malik ibn Marwân, 236-7, 238, 243, 281

Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân II, 270-1

Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân III, 52, 263, 271

Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân al-Umâri, 209-10

Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Abî ‘Ubayda al-Fihrî, 280


Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Khârij Habib, 258-8

Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Mu‘wâyaîa, 263

Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Rustum, 65, 253, 278

Abû ‘Abd al-Wâhâb, 254, 281, 288

Abû ‘Abd al-Wâhid al-Hawwârî, 250

Abû ‘Abd al-Rahmân, 309

Abû ‘Abd Allâh ibn Abî Sabîr, 104

Abû ‘Abd Allâh ibn Yâsîn, 65, 71, 106

Abû ‘Abd Allâh ibn Yâsîn al-Djazûlî, 337, 340, 342-3, 348

Abû ‘Abd Allah Nîrî, 197, 204, 221

Abû ‘Abd al-Ansamâmî, 109

Abû ‘Abd ‘al-Shârî, 725

Abîrîbî, 524

Abûdum, 499

Abûfarî, see Bafour

Abraha, 706, 711

Abraham, 31, 93

Abso/Babra Barkân, 581

Abû, 225

Abû ‘Abd al-Qâdir al-Mu‘âmîrî, 250

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn Yâsîn al-Djazûlî, 309

Abû “Abd al-Rahmân, 309

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn al-Khaftib al-Hawwârî, 289

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn al-Zubayr, 231

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn al-Zubayr al-Hawwârî, 289

Abû ‘Abd Allah ibn ‘Umar (c. 1059), 346, 348-9, 360-1

Abû Dhubyán, 708

Abû Dja’far al-Manṣûrî, 260

Abû Dûlâmâ, 730

Abû Hâmîd, 209

Abû Hâmîd al-Ghazâlî, see al-Ghazâlî

Abû Hâtim, 253

Abû Ibrahim Ahmed, 261

Abû ‘Imrân al-Fâsî, 336-7, 342

Abû ‘Imnân, 108

Abû Kâkwa, 184

Abû Khazar, 224

Abû Kurra, 251, 253

Abû L’Abbas al-Saffîh, 726

Abû ‘Lakîf, 709

Abû ‘L’Aâshîya, 725

Abû ‘L’Hassan al-Baghädî, 731

Abû ‘L’hîmar, see Abu Yazid Makhlad

Abû ‘L’Yusîr al-Kâtîh, 270

Abû Marwân ‘Abd al-Malik, 365

Abû Mîhîjân, 729

Abû Musîm, 40

Abû Muwâyhihîb, 710

Abû Raîk, 184, 215

Abû Rustam, 406

Abû Sâlih, 199

Abû Sha’îh, 199

Abû Sh-shîs, 723

Abû Sûfîyân, 254

Abû Tâlib, 86, 575, 710

Abû Tammâm, 270


Abû ‘Uṯmân Sa’d ibn Mindjâh, 730

Abû Yasîd, 69-70, 123, 341, 397, 741, 747, 784

Abû Yasîd Makhlad ibn Kaydâd, 332-4, 336, 338, 331

Abû’l-Khâtîb, 253

Abû’l-Khâtîb ‘Abd Allâh ibn as-Samh al-Ma’sîrî, 284, 289

Abû I’Khuṭâb al-‘Azîd, 308

Abû I’Misk Kâfîr, 717

Abû yawizî (Bayadîjîda), 70

Acera, 489, 495

Adal, 561, 578, 584-5

Adam, 32, 44

Adam, D., 69

Adamawa, 127, 523

Adamu Yanko, 501

Adangme/Dangme, 499, 492, 494, 495, 502-3

Adanse, 501

Aden, 700-1, 714, 715-16

Aden, Gulf of, 85, 87

Adib, 269-70

Afghanistan, 48, 52

Afikpo, 489, 492, 528

Afrikans, 147

Agar/Agar, 492

Agaw, 561, 567

Age-sets, 638-9

al-Aghlab, 51

Aghibids, 7, 51, 65, 243; and Fâtimids,
Index

ku’ud, 249 & n, 252-3
Kuwâr, see Kawâr
Kuzam, 375
Kwa, 490, 492-3, 533-40, 543, 553, 555
Kw’adza/Old Kw’adza, 617, 618–20, 639
 Kwâbu, 490, 501
Kwale, 593, 623–2, 644, 645
Kwâpung, 499
Kyerépong Dawu, 501
Kyríakos, 106
Kyros, 202, 203, 219
Labû bin Wâr-Djûbû, 346
Labour, 780–1; see also slaves
Laccadives, 26
Lacustrine language, 593, 628, 640
Laduq, 495, 502
Ladsu, 249 & n, 252-3
Lagadère, V., 364-5
Laghubät, 299, 302
Lakka, 279, 282
Lakes, see Great Lakes
Laikipia, 631
Lamboharana, 683, 689
Lambo, 492, 501, 531-41; Hamito-Semitic, 215, 560, 565, 570; Guinea/West Africa, 600, 603-6; Latin, 563; Lingala, 147; Lower Guinea, 490, 492–3; Luba, 145; Madagascar, 85, 268; Marriage, 65, 226, 269 (see also Berber); Malinke, 75, 76; Mande, 131; Mongol, 140; Monokita-
ba, 147; Mpongwe 147; Niger-Congo, 492, 534-43; Nilo-Saharan, 444, Nilotic, 146; Nuba, 199, 202, 210, 211, 215; ‘Pa-
hojin’, 145; Persian, 684; Punic, 284; Romance, 269; Rwanda, 140; Saharan, 444-5, 449; San, 147, 160; Sanskrit, 24, 684; Saro-Bongo-Bagirmian, 450; Semitic, 85; Serer, 127; Shona, 140, 160, 662, 667; Songhay, 444-5; in Southern Africa, 664–5, 667, 671; Sudan, 75, 125, 127–8, 140, 154, 159, 160, 162; Swahili, 147 (see also Kiswahili); Syriac, 570; Tch-Daz, 131; Tigre, 84; Tso, 140; Tuareg, 204; Wolof, 137, 532, 536; Yor-
uba, 483, 492, 532, 537–2; Zandzi, 598, 599, 603, 605; see also Bantu-speakers
Lant, Banû, 297
Largeau, V., 97
Larouzi, A., 274
Lasta, 86, 502, 507, 518, 786
Al-Laj, 33
Latin, 356
Lavers, J., 458
Al-Layth, 250
Law, Islamic, 94–6, 99, 166, 174, 240, 274, 366, 387, 719–20; see also societies
Lawå, 186, 335; and Saharan routes, 277, 281, 283–4, 298, 319, 312
Leaders, see rulers
Lebanon, 45
Leh-Blé, 577
Lega-Guha, 159
Legends, see oral
Lelesua ware, 632, 642, 645, 694
Leonitus, 238
Leopard’s Kopje, 162, 665, 667–74 passim, 763, 791
‘Leopoldian Neolithic’, 644, 648
Lepage, C., 570, 572
Leroy, J., 534
Lewis, B., 711, 725
Libya, see Maghrib
Libyan desert, 281–6
Libyco-Berber, 126, 129, 156–7, 303, 306
Light, 459
Limba, 541, 543
Limppö, 139, 641, 779; see also Shashli
Limpopo
Linares de Sapir, O., 544–5
Lingala, 147
Linguistics, see languages
Lisala, 159; Personal
literature/learning, 193; Ethiopia, 565–6, 573, 576; and Islam, 111–12, 113;
Index
Zawil, 322
Zawiya, 282
Zaydites, 258
Zaylā', 9, 58, 84-5, 86, 453, 561, 563
Zayla', 715
Zaynab, 348, 350
Zazzau, see Zaria
Zeila, see Zalha
Zhizo, 665-9 passim, 672, 674, 680
Zibān, see Mzāb
Zimbabwe, 88, 162, 383, 615, 641, 654, 747, 768, 786, see also East Africa
zindākī, 53
Zirī ibn Manād, 323, 328
Zirīds, 54, 66, 186, 225, 339; in Chad, 452; and Fākimids, 316, 328-35; and trade across Sahara, 387-8, 398
Ziyāb, 271
Ziyād b. Kalfūn, 271
Ziyādat Allah I, 263
Ziyādat Allah II, 270
Ziyādat Allah III, 263, 318
Zomba Range, 647, 655
Zoroastrians and Islam, 46, 48, 56
Zughba, 407
Zugwagha, 235
Zuhayr ibn Kays, 237
al-Zuhri, 68-9, 75; on Gambia, 468; on Sahara, 276, 298, 301, 306, 313
zuhūr, 253